

**PROJECT MANUAL** for

Onslow County  
Bid No. 102-25C

**Bear Creek Fire Station**

138 Old Sand Ridge Road  
Hubert NC 28539

BID DOCUMENTS  
MARCH 12, 2025

DKA Project Number 2324



**DAVIS KANE**  
ARCHITECTS, P A

503-300 Oberlin Road  
Raleigh, North Carolina 27605

Phone (919) 833-3737  
Fax (919) 755-1771

This page intentionally left blank.

Onslow County  
Bid No. 102-25C

## Bear Creek Fire Station

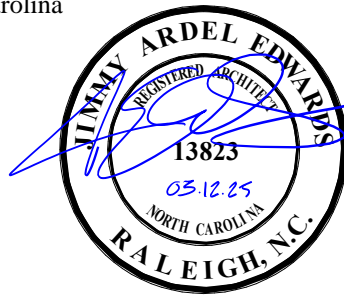
Bid Documents  
March 12, 2025

OWNER

**ONslow COUNTY**  
Jacksonville, North Carolina

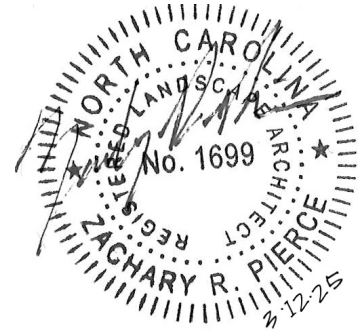
ARCHITECT

**DAVIS KANE ARCHITECTS, PA**  
Raleigh, North Carolina



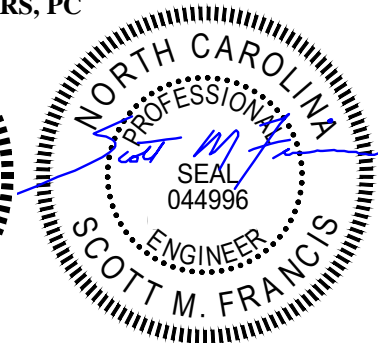
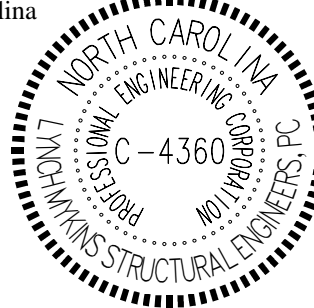
CIVIL/LANDSCAPE  
ENGINEER

**CLH DESIGN, PA**  
Cary, North Carolina



STRUCTURAL  
ENGINEER

**LYNCH MYKINS STRUCTURAL ENGINEERS, PC**  
Raleigh, North Carolina



P.M.E. ENGINEER

**CHEATHAM & ASSOCIATES, PA**  
Wilmington, North Carolina

03/12/25



This page intentionally left blank.



**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

<b>SECTIONS</b>	<b>PAGES</b>
<b>DIVISION 00 — PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS</b>	
ADVERTISEMENT FOR BIDS .....	1
NOTICE TO BIDDERS .....	2
PROPOSAL FORM.....	5
BID BOND .....	1
CERTIFICATION REGARDING DEBARMENT AND SUSPENSION .....	1
NON-COLLUSION AFFIDAVIT .....	1
AFFIDAVIT OF COMPLIANCE .....	1
MBE GUIDELINES .....	8
MBE FORMS .....	8
CONTRACT FOR CONSTRUCTION .....	6
GENERAL CONDITIONS OF THE CONTRACT FOR CONSTRUCTION.....	33
<b>DIVISION 01 — GENERAL REQUIREMENTS</b>	
011000 - SUMMARY .....	16
012100 - ALLOWANCES .....	7
012200 - UNIT PRICES .....	6
012300 - ALTERNATES .....	3
012500 - SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES .....	5
012600 - CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES .....	4
012900 - PAYMENT PROCEDURES .....	8
013100 - PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION .....	18
013200 - CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION .....	13
013233 - PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION .....	9
013300 - SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES .....	14
014000 - QUALITY REQUIREMENTS .....	14
015000 - TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS .....	18
016000 - PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS .....	10
017300 - EXECUTION .....	15
017419 - CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL .....	14
017700 - CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES .....	8
017823 - OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA .....	10
017839 - PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS .....	7
<b>DIVISION 03 — CONCRETE</b>	
033000 - CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE .....	27
034500 - PRECAST ARCHITECTURAL CONCRETE .....	10
<b>DIVISION 04 — MASONRY</b>	
042000 - UNIT MASONRY .....	52
<b>DIVISION 05 — METALS</b>	
051200 - STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING.....	10
053100 - STEEL DECKING .....	6
055000 - METAL FABRICATIONS .....	28
<b>DIVISION 06 — WOOD, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITES</b>	
061000 - ROUGH CARPENTRY .....	23
061600 - SHEATHING .....	24

**DIVISION 07 — THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION**

071113 - BITUMINOUS DAMPPROOFING .....	9
072100 - THERMAL INSULATION .....	22
072726 - FLUID-APPLIED MEMBRANE AIR BARRIERS .....	15
076200 - SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM .....	36
077253 - SNOW GUARDS .....	9
078413 - PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING .....	11
078443 - JOINT FIRESTOPPING .....	11
079200 - JOINT SEALANTS .....	19

**DIVISION 08 — OPENINGS**

081113 - HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES .....	25
081416 - FLUSH WOOD DOORS .....	40
083613 - SECTIONAL DOORS .....	18
083713 - EXTERIOR FOUR-FOLD DOORS .....	5
084113 - ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS .....	32
084413 - GLAZED ALUMINUM CURTAIN WALLS .....	29
087100 - DOOR HARDWARE .....	26
088000 - GLAZING .....	38
089119 - FIXED LOUVERS .....	25

**DIVISION 09 — FINISHES**

092216 - NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING .....	15
092900 - GYPSUM BOARD .....	21
093013 - TILING .....	46
095113 - ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS .....	19
096513 - RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES .....	9
096519 - RESILIENT TILE FLOORING .....	12
096723 - RESINOUS FLOORING .....	9
099123 - INTERIOR PAINTING .....	35
099600 - HIGH-PERFORMANCE COATINGS .....	7

**DIVISION 10 — SPECIALTIES**

101419 - DIMENSIONAL LETTER SIGNAGE .....	17
101423 - PANEL SIGNAGE .....	22
102600 - WALL AND DOOR PROTECTION .....	26
102800 - TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES .....	27
104413 - FIRE PROTECTION CABINETS .....	13
104416 - FIRE EXTINGUISHERS .....	9
105126 - PLASTIC LOCKERS .....	4
105143 - WIRE MESH STORAGE LOCKERS .....	12

**DIVISION 11 — EQUIPMENT**

113300 - RETRACTABLE STAIRS .....	2
-----------------------------------	---

**DIVISION 12 — FURNISHINGS**

122113 - HORIZONTAL LOUVER BLINDS .....	23
122413 - ROLLER WINDOW SHADES .....	27
123530 - RESIDENTIAL CASEWORK .....	6
123661.16 - SOLID SURFACING COUNTERTOPS .....	8
123661.19 - QUARTZ AGGLOMERATE COUNTERTOPS .....	7

**DIVISION 13 — SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION**

133419 - METAL BUILDING SYSTEMS .....	56
---------------------------------------	----

**DIVISION 21 — FIRE SUPPRESSION**

210000 - FIRE PROTECTION.....	11
-------------------------------	----

**DIVISION 22 — PLUMBING**

220000 - PLUMBING .....	23
-------------------------	----

**DIVISION 23 — HEATING VENTILATING AND AIR CONDITIONING**

230500 - HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING .....	19
230900 - INSTRUMENTATION & CONTROL FOR HVAC .....	7

**DIVISION 26 — ELECTRICAL**

260000 - ELECTRICAL, BASICS.....	8
260500 - BASIC MATERIALS & METHODS .....	5
260519 - CONDUCTORS & CABLES.....	4
260526 - GROUNDING & BONDING.....	5
260533 - RACEWAYS & BOXES.....	9
260548 - SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS .....	6
260553 - ELECTRICAL IDENTIFICATION .....	3
260923 - LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES .....	6
262416 - PANELBOARDS .....	5
262726 - WIRING DEVICES .....	5
262816 - ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS .....	5
263213 - ENGINE GENERATORS .....	19
263600 - TRANSFER SWITCHES .....	9
264313 - SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES .....	4
265119 - LED INTERIOR LIGHTING.....	7

**DIVISION 27 — COMMUNICATIONS**

271100 - COMMUNICATION EQUIPMENT ROOM FITTINGS.....	6
271500 - COMMUNICATIONS HORIZONTAL CABLING.....	9

**DIVISION 28 — ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY**

283111 - DIGITAL, ADDRESSABLE FIRE ALARM SYSTEM.....	15
285000 - EMERGENCY RESPONDER COMMUNICATION COVERAGE SYSTEM.....	4

**DIVISION 31 — EARTHWORK**

311000 - SITE CLEARING.....	5
312000 - EARTH MOVING .....	16
312500 - EROSION & SEDIMENT CONTROLS.....	6

**DIVISION 32 — EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS**

321216 - ASPHALT PAVING .....	7
321313 - CONCRETE PAVING .....	11
324000 - SITE FURNISH.....	2
329000 - PLANTING .....	17

**DIVISION 33 — UTILITIES**

331000 - SITE WATER UTILITIES.....	12
333000 - SITE SANITARY SEWER UTILITIES .....	7
333200 - SEWER PUMP STATION & FORCE MAIN .....	11
334000 - SITE STORM DRAINAGE UTILITIES .....	9

This page intentionally left blank.

## ADVERTISEMENT FOR BIDS

Sealed proposals will be received until 2:00pm  
(Time)

on 04/29/2025, at 234 NW Corridor Blvd, Jacksonville, NC, for the construction of Bear Creek Fire Station at which time and place bids will be opened and read. Bids may be hand carried or mailed to:

Onslow County Purchasing Department  
Attn: Christina Russell  
234 NW Corridor Blvd  
Jacksonville, NC 28540  
Hours of Operation 8:00am - 5:00pm (EST) Monday through Friday

Complete plans, specifications and contract documents will be open for inspection in the offices of Davis Kane Architects PA. and in the plan rooms of Dodge Construction Network, ConstructConnect, and in Minority Plan Rooms in:

East Coast Digital - Minority Plan Room Provider 703 SE Greenville Blvd, Greenville, NC 27858, 252-758-1616.

Onslow County Government reserves the unqualified right to reject any and all proposals.

Christina Russell, CLGPO  
Purchasing Division Manager

This page intentionally left blank.

## NOTICE TO BIDDERS

Sealed proposals will be received by Onslow County at 234 NW Corridor Blvd, Jacksonville, NC 28540 up to 2:00pm April 29, 2025, and immediately thereafter publicly opened and read for the furnishing of labor, material and equipment entering into the construction of

Bear Creek Fire Station

*This project is the new construction of a fire station. The structure is a pre-engineered metal building and new plumbing, mechanical, and electrical systems are to be provided. Site scope includes water and sewage connection to Sand Ridge Rd.*

Bids will be received for Single Prime Contract. All proposals shall be lump sum.

### Pre-Bid Meeting

An open pre-bid meeting will be held for all interested bidders on March 25, 2025 at 11:00am at 234 NW Corridor Blvd, Jacksonville, NC 28540. The meeting will address project specific questions, issues, bidding procedures and bid forms.

*The meeting is also to identify preferred brand alternates and their performance standards that the owner will consider for approval on this project.*

*In accordance with General Statute GS 133-3, Specifications may list one or more preferred brands as an alternate to the base bid in limited circumstances. Specifications containing a preferred brand alternate under this section must identify the performance standards that support the preference. Performance standards for the preference must be approved in advance by the owner in an open meeting. Any alternate approved by the owner shall be approved only where (i) the preferred alternate will provide cost savings, maintain or improve the functioning of any process or system affected by the preferred item or items, or both, and (ii) a justification identifying these criteria is made available in writing to the public.*

*In accordance with GS133-3 and SCO procedures the following preferred brand items are being considered as Alternates by the owner for this project:*

G-1: Provide Lock Cylinders by Best, dormakaba Group in lieu of door closers by other acceptable manufacturers.

G-2: Provide Door Hardware Door Keying and Cores by Best, dormakaba Group in lieu of door keying and cores by other acceptable manufacturers.

*Justification of any approvals will be made available to the public in writing no later than seven (7) days prior to bid date.*

Complete plans, specifications and contract documents will be open for inspection in the offices of Davis Kane Architects PA. and in the plan rooms of the local North Carolina offices of Dodge Construction Network, ConstructConnect, and in Minority Plan Rooms in

**East Coast Digital – Minority Plan Room Provider 703 SE Greenville Blvd, Greenville, NC 27858, 252-758-1616**

**NOTE:** The bidder shall include with the bid proposal the form *Identification of Minority Business Participation* identifying the minority business participation it will use on the project and shall include either *Affidavit A* or *Affidavit B* as applicable. Forms and instructions are included within the Proposal Form in the bid documents. Failure to complete these forms is grounds for rejection of the bid. (GS143-128.2c Effective 1/1/2002.)

All contractors are hereby notified that they must have proper license as required under the state laws governing their respective trades.

General contractors are notified that Chapter 87, Article 1, General Statutes of North Carolina, will be observed in receiving and awarding general contracts. General contractors submitting bids on this project must have license classification for "Unlimited Building" or "Unclassified", required by the NC General Contractors Licensing Board under G.S. 87-1.

**NOTE--SINGLE PRIME CONTRACTS:** Under GS 87-1, a contractor that superintends or manages construction of any building, highway, public utility, grading, structure or improvement shall be deemed a "general contractor" and shall be so licensed. Therefore a single prime project that involves other trades will require the single prime contractor to hold a proper General Contractors license. **EXCEPT:** On public buildings being bid single prime, where the total value of the general construction does not exceed 25% of the total construction value, contractors under GS87- Arts 2 and 4 (Plumbing, Mechanical & Electrical) may bid and contract directly with the Owner as the SINGLE PRIME CONTRACTOR and may subcontract to other properly licensed trades. GS87-1.1- Rules .0210

Each proposal shall be accompanied by a cash deposit or a certified check drawn on some bank or trust company, insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, of an amount equal to not less than five percent (5%) of the proposal, or in lieu thereof a bidder may offer a bid bond of five percent (5%) of the bid executed by a surety company licensed under the laws of North Carolina to execute the contract in accordance with the bid bond. Said deposit shall be retained by the owner as liquidated damages in event of failure of the successful bidder to execute the contract within ten days after the award or to give satisfactory surety as required by law.

A performance bond and a payment bond will be required for one hundred percent (100%) of the contract price.

Payment will be made based on ninety-five percent (95%) of monthly estimates and final payment made upon completion and acceptance of work.

No bid may be withdrawn after the scheduled closing time for the receipt of bids for a period of 60 days unless in accordance with G.S. 143-129-1.

The owner reserves the right to reject any or all bids and to waive informalities.

Designer:  
Davis Kane Architects  
*(Name)*

503 Oberlin Road, Raleigh, NC 27605  
*(Address)*

919-833-3737  
*(Phone)*

Owner:  
Onslow County  
*(Agency/Institution)*

234 NW Corridor Blvd, Jacksonville, NC 28540

910-455-1750



## FORM OF PROPOSAL

Bear Creek Fire Station

Onslow County

Contract: \_\_\_\_\_

Bidder: \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

The undersigned, as bidder, hereby declares that the only person or persons interested in this proposal as principal or principals is or are named herein and that no other person than herein mentioned has any interest in this proposal or in the contract to be entered into; that this proposal is made without connection with any other person, company or parties making a bid or proposal; and that it is in all respects fair and in good faith without collusion or fraud. The bidder further declares that he has examined the site of the work and the contract documents relative thereto, and has read all special provisions furnished prior to the opening of bids; that he has satisfied himself relative to the work to be performed. The bidder further declares that he and his subcontractors have fully complied with NCGS 64, Article 2 in regards to E-Verification as required by Section 2.(c) of Session Law 2013-418, codified as N.C. Gen. Stat. § 143-129(j).

The Bidder proposes and agrees if this proposal is accepted to contract with **Onslow County** in the form of contract specified below, to furnish all necessary materials, equipment, machinery, tools, apparatus, means of transportation and labor necessary to complete the construction of Bear Creek Fire Station in full in complete accordance with the plans, specifications and contract documents, to the full and entire satisfaction of Onslow County and Davis Kane Architects PA, with a definite understanding that no money will be allowed for extra work except as set forth in the General Conditions and the contract documents. The low Bidder will be determined by the total cost of the Contract with the lump sum prices if the alternates accepted being added to or deducted from the Base Bid to give the total cost of the Contract. Bidders are required to be licensed and in good standing with their respective North Carolina Licensing Board.

### SINGLE PRIME CONTRACT:

Base Bid: \_\_\_\_\_ Dollars(\$)

General Subcontractor:

\_\_\_\_\_ Lic \_\_\_\_\_

Plumbing Subcontractor:

\_\_\_\_\_ Lic \_\_\_\_\_

Mechanical Subcontractor:

\_\_\_\_\_ Lic \_\_\_\_\_

Electrical Subcontractor:

\_\_\_\_\_ Lic \_\_\_\_\_

GS143-128(d) requires all single prime bidders to identify their subcontractors for the above subdivisions of work. A contractor whose bid is accepted shall not substitute any person as subcontractor in the place of the subcontractor listed in the original bid, except (i) if the listed subcontractor's bid is later determined by the contractor to be non-responsible or non-responsive or the listed subcontractor refuses to enter into a contract for the complete performance of the bid work, or (ii) with the approval of the awarding authority for good cause shown by the contractor.

**GENERAL CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT:**

Base Bid:

Dollars(\$)

**PLUMBING CONTRACT:**

Base Bid:

Dollars(\$)

**HEATING, VENTILATION AND AIR CONDITIONING CONTRACT:**

Base Bid:

Dollars(\$)

**ELECTRICAL CONTRACT:**

Base Bid:

Dollars(\$)

**ALTERNATES:**

Should any of the alternates as described in the contract documents be accepted, the amount written below shall be the amount to be "added to" or "deducted from" the base bid. (Strike out "Add" or "Deduct" as appropriate.)

**GENERAL CONTRACT:**

Alternate A-1:

(Add) Dollars(\$)

Alternate C-1:

(Add) Dollars(\$)

Alternate C-2:

(Add) Dollars(\$)

Alternate G-1:

(Add) Dollars(\$)

Alternate G-2:

(Add) Dollars(\$)

Alternate M-1:

(Add) Dollars(\$)

**UNIT PRICES**

Unit prices quoted and accepted shall apply throughout the life of the contract, except as otherwise specifically noted. Unit prices shall be applied, as appropriate, to compute the total value of changes in the base bid and quantity of the work all in accordance with the contract documents.

**GENERAL CONTRACT:**

No. C1 Rock removal and disposal off site	cubic yard	Unit Price (\$)
No. C2 Unsuitable soils removal and disposal on-site	cubic yard	Unit Price (\$)
No. C3 Unsuitable soils removal and disposal off-site	cubic yard	Unit Price (\$)
No. C4 Replacement of removed rock or unsuitable soils with on-site suitable soil in-place	cubic yard	Unit Price (\$)
No. C5 Replacement of removed rock or unsuitable soils with off-site suitable soil in-place	cubic yard	Unit Price (\$)
No. C6 Replacement of removed rock or unsuitable soils with Aggregate Base Course in-place.	cubic yard	Unit Price (\$)
No. C7 Replacement of removed rock or unsuitable soils with No. 57 washed stone in-place	cubic yard	Unit Price (\$)
No. C8 Woven Geo-Textile Fabric in-place	square yard	Unit Price (\$)
No. C9 Biaxial Geo-Grid in-place	square yard	Unit Price (\$)
No. A1 Duplex receptacle	each	Unit Price (\$)
No. A2 Communication outlet	each	Unit Price (\$)
No. A3 Exit sign	each	Unit Price (\$)
No. A4 Fire alarm annunciating device	each	Unit Price (\$)
No. A5 Fire alarm initiating device	each	Unit Price (\$)

The bidder further proposes and agrees hereby to commence work under this contract on a date to be specified in a written order of the designer and shall fully complete all work thereunder within the time specified in the Supplementary General Conditions Article 23. Applicable liquidated damages amount is also stated in the Supplementary General Conditions Article 23.

**MINORITY BUSINESS PARTICIPATION REQUIREMENTS**

Provide with the bid - Under GS 143-128.2(c) the undersigned bidder shall identify **on its bid** (Identification of Minority Business Participation Form) the minority businesses that it will use on the project with the total dollar value of the bids that will be performed by the minority businesses. **Also** list the good faith efforts (Affidavit **A**) made to solicit minority participation in the bid effort.

**NOTE:** A contractor that performs all of the work with its own workforce may submit an Affidavit (**B**) to that effect in lieu of Affidavit (**A**) required above. The MB Participation Form must still be submitted even if there is zero participation.

After the bid opening - The Owner will consider all bids and alternates and determine the lowest responsible, responsive bidder. Upon notification of being the apparent low bidder, the bidder shall then file within 72 hours of the notification of being the apparent lowest bidder, the following:

An Affidavit (**C**) that includes a description of the portion of work to be executed by minority businesses, expressed as a percentage of the total contract price, which is equal to or more than the 10% goal established. This affidavit shall give rise to the presumption that the bidder has made the required good faith effort and Affidavit **D** is not necessary;

**\* OR \***

If less than the 10% goal, Affidavit (**D**) of its good faith effort to meet the goal shall be provided. The document must include evidence of all good faith efforts that were implemented, including any advertisements, solicitations and other specific actions demonstrating recruitment and selection of minority businesses for participation in the contract.

**Note:** Bidders must always submit **with their bid** the Identification of Minority Business Participation Form listing all MB contractors, vendors and suppliers that will be used. If there is no MB participation, then enter none or zero on the form. Affidavit A or Affidavit B, as applicable, also must be submitted with the bid. Failure to file a required affidavit or documentation with the bid or after being notified apparent low bidder is grounds for rejection of the bid.

## Proposal Signature Page

The undersigned further agrees that in the case of failure on his part to execute the said contract and the bonds within ten (10) consecutive calendar days after being given written notice of the award of contract, the certified check, cash or bid bond accompanying this bid shall be paid into the funds of the owner's account set aside for the project, as liquidated damages for such failure; otherwise the certified check, cash or bid bond accompanying this proposal shall be returned to the undersigned. No proposal may be withdrawn after the scheduled closing time for the receipt of Bids for a period of sixty (60) days.

Respectfully submitted this day of \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Name of firm or corporation making bid)

WITNESS:

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Signature

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Proprietorship or Partnership)

Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Print or type

Title \_\_\_\_\_  
(Owner/Partner/Pres./V.Pres)

Address \_\_\_\_\_

ATTEST:

\_\_\_\_\_

By: \_\_\_\_\_

License No. \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_  
(Corp. Sec. or Asst. Sec. only)

Federal I.D. No. \_\_\_\_\_

Email Address: \_\_\_\_\_

(CORPORATE SEAL)

Addendum received and used in computing bid:

Addendum No. 1 \_\_\_\_\_ Addendum No. 3 \_\_\_\_\_ Addendum No. 5 \_\_\_\_\_ Addendum No. 6 \_\_\_\_\_

Addendum No. 2 \_\_\_\_\_ Addendum No. 4 \_\_\_\_\_ Addendum No. 6 \_\_\_\_\_ Addendum No. 7 \_\_\_\_\_

## FORM OF BID BOND

KNOW ALL MEN BY THESE PRESENTS THAT \_\_\_\_\_ as  
\_\_\_\_\_, as principal, and \_\_\_\_\_, as surety, who is  
duly licensed to act as surety in North Carolina, are held and firmly bound unto the State of  
North Carolina\* through \_\_\_\_\_ as  
obligee, in the penal sum of \_\_\_\_\_ DOLLARS, lawful money of  
the United States of America, for the payment of which, well and truly to be made, we bind  
ourselves, our heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns, jointly and  
severally, firmly by these presents.

Signed, sealed and dated this \_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_ 20\_\_

WHEREAS, the said principal is herewith submitting proposal for  
and the principal desires to file this bid bond in lieu of making  
the cash deposit as required by G.S. 143-129.

NOW, THEREFORE, THE CONDITION OF THE ABOVE OBLIGATION is such, that  
if the principal shall be awarded the contract for which the bid is submitted and shall  
execute the contract and give bond for the faithful performance thereof within ten days after  
the award of same to the principal, then this obligation shall be null and void; but if the  
principal fails to so execute such contract and give performance bond as required by G.S.  
143-129, the surety shall, upon demand, forthwith pay to the obligee the amount set forth in  
the first paragraph hereof. Provided further, that the bid may be withdrawn as provided by  
G.S. 143-129.1

\_\_\_\_\_(SEAL)

\_\_\_\_\_(SEAL)

\_\_\_\_\_(SEAL)

\_\_\_\_\_(SEAL)

\_\_\_\_\_(SEAL)

This page intentionally left blank.

**CERTIFICATION REGARDING DEBARMENT AND SUSPENSION**

The undersigned applicant certifies to the best of his or her knowledge and belief, that the applicant and its principals:

- (a) are not presently debarred, suspended, proposed for debarment, declared ineligible or voluntarily excluded from covered transactions by any Federal Department or agency;
- (b) have not within a 3-year period preceding this proposal been convicted of or had a civil judgment rendered against them for commission of fraud or a criminal offense in connection with obtaining, attempting to obtain, or performing a public (Federal, State, or local) transaction or contract under a public transaction; violation of Federal or State antitrust statutes or commission of embezzlement, theft, forgery, bribery, falsification or destruction of records, making false statements, or receiving stolen property;
- (c) are not presently indicted or otherwise criminally or civilly charged by a governmental entitle (Federal, State, or local) with commission of any of the offenses enumerated in paragraph (b) of this certification; and
- (d) have not within a 3-year period preceding this application/proposal had one or more public transactions (Federal, State, or local) terminated for cause or default.

Where the prospective participant is unable to certify to any of the statements in this certification, such prospective participant shall attach an explanation to this proposal.

Firm Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Address: \_\_\_\_\_

City/State/Zip: \_\_\_\_\_

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_

(Seal if Corporation)

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

**NOTARIZE**

SUBSCRIBED AND SWORN TO BEFORE ME,

This \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 202\_\_\_\_

NOTARY PUBLIC \_\_\_\_\_

My Commission Expires: \_\_\_\_\_

This page intentionally left blank.



NON-COLLUSION AFFIDAVIT

State of North Carolina  
County of Onslow

\_\_\_\_\_ (name), being first duly sworn, deposes and says that:

- I. He/She is the \_\_\_\_\_ (title) of \_\_\_\_\_ (firm's name), the responder that has submitted the attached response;
2. He/She is fully informed respecting the preparation and contents of the attached response and of all pertinent circumstances respecting such response;
3. Such response is genuine and is not a collusive or sham response;
4. Neither the said responder nor any of its officers, partners, owners, agents, representatives, employees or parties in interest, including this affiant, has in any way colluded, conspired, connived or agreed, directly or indirectly, with any other responder firm or Person to submit a collusive or sham response in connection with the contract for which the attached response has been submitted or to refrain from responding in connection with such contract, or has in any manner, directly or indirectly sought by agreement or collusion of communication or conference with any other responder, firm or person to fix the price or prices in the attached response, if applicable, or of any other responders, or to fix any overhead, profit or cost element of the response price of the response, if applicable, of any other responder or to secure through collusion, conspiracy, connivance or unlawful agreement any advantage against the County of Onslow or any person interested in the proposed contract; and

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature

\_\_\_\_\_  
Title

**NOTARIZE**

Subscribed and sworn to before me,

This \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 202\_\_\_\_

Notary Public \_\_\_\_\_

My Commission Expires: \_\_\_\_\_

This page intentionally left blank.

**STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA  
COUNTY OF ONSLOW**

**AFFIDAVIT OF COMPLIANCE: E-VERIFY**

I, \_\_\_\_\_ (the individual attesting below), being duly authorized by and on behalf of \_\_\_\_\_ (hereinafter "Firm") after first being duly sworn hereby swears or affirms as follows:

1. Firm understands that E-Verify is the federal E-Verify program operated by the United States Department of Homeland Security and other federal agencies, or any successor or equivalent program used to verify the work authorization of newly hired employees pursuant to federal law in accordance with Article 2 of Chapter 65 of the North Carolina General Statutes; and
2. Firm understands that "Employer", as defined in NCGS§64-25(4), are required by law to use E-Verify to verify the work authorization of the employee through E-Verify in accordance with NCGS§64-26(a). The term "Employer" does not include State agencies, counties, municipalities, or other governmental bodies.
3. Firm is a person, business entity, or other organization that transacts business in this State and that employs 25 or more employees in the state of North Carolina. (Mark Yes or No)  
  
a. YES \_\_\_\_\_, or b. NO \_\_\_\_\_
4. Firm will ensure compliance with E-Verify by any subcontractors/subconsultants subsequently hired by Firm to perform work under Firm's contract with Onslow County.
5. Firm shall keep the County of Onslow informed of any change on its status pursuant to Article 2 of Chapter 64 of the North Carolina Statutes.

This \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 202\_\_\_\_\_.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature of Affiant

Print or Type Name: \_\_\_\_\_

State of \_\_\_\_\_ County of \_\_\_\_\_

Signed and sworn to (or affirmed) before me, this the \_\_\_\_\_

day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_\_.

My Commission Expires: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
Notary Public

(Affix Official/Notarial  
Seal)

This page intentionally left blank.

# **GUIDELINES FOR RECRUITMENT AND SELECTION OF MINORITY BUSINESSES FOR PARTICIPATION IN STATE CONSTRUCTION CONTRACTS**

In accordance with G.S. 143-128.2 (effective January 1, 2002) these guidelines establish goals for minority participation in single-prime bidding, separate-prime bidding, construction manager at risk, and alternative contracting methods, on State construction projects in the amount of \$300,000 or more. The legislation provides that the State shall have a verifiable ten percent (10%) goal for participation by minority businesses in the total value of work for each project for which a contract or contracts are awarded. These requirements are published to accomplish that end.

## **SECTION A: INTENT**

It is the intent of these guidelines that the State of North Carolina, as awarding authority for construction projects, and the contractors and subcontractors performing the construction contracts awarded shall cooperate and in good faith do all things legal, proper and reasonable to achieve the statutory goal of ten percent (10%) for participation by minority businesses in each construction project as mandated by GS 143-128.2. Nothing in these guidelines shall be construed to require contractors or awarding authorities to award contracts or subcontracts to or to make purchases of materials or equipment from minority-business contractors or minority-business subcontractors who do not submit the lowest responsible, responsive bid or bids.

## **SECTION B: DEFINITIONS**

1. Minority - a person who is a citizen or lawful permanent resident of the United States and who is:
  - a. Black, that is, a person having origins in any of the black racial groups in Africa;
  - b. Hispanic, that is, a person of Spanish or Portuguese culture with origins in Mexico, South or Central America, or the Caribbean Islands, regardless of race;
  - c. Asian American, that is, a person having origins in any of the original peoples of the Far East, Southeast Asia and Asia, the Indian subcontinent, the Pacific Islands;
  - d. American Indian, that is, a person having origins in any of the original peoples of North America; or
  - e. Female
2. Minority Business - means a business:
  - a. In which at least fifty-one percent (51%) is owned by one or more minority persons, or in the case of a corporation, in which at least fifty-one percent (51%) of the stock is owned by one or more minority persons or socially and economically disadvantaged individuals; and
  - b. Of which the management and daily business operations are controlled by one or more of the minority persons or socially and economically disadvantaged individuals who own it.
3. Socially and economically disadvantaged individual - means the same as defined in 15 U.S.C. 637. "Socially disadvantaged individuals are those who have been subjected to racial or ethnic prejudice or cultural bias because of their identity as a member of a group without regard to their individual qualities". "Economically disadvantaged individuals are those socially disadvantaged individuals whose ability to compete in the free enterprise system has been impaired due to diminished capital and credit opportunities as compared to others in the same business area who are not socially disadvantaged".
4. Public Entity - means State and all public subdivisions and local governmental units.
5. Owner - The State of North Carolina, through the Agency/Institution named in the contract.
6. Designer - Any person, firm, partnership, or corporation, which has contracted with the State of North Carolina to perform architectural or engineering, work.
7. Bidder - Any person, firm, partnership, corporation, association, or joint venture seeking to be awarded a public contract or subcontract.

8. Contract - A mutually binding legal relationship or any modification thereof obligating the seller to furnish equipment, materials or services, including construction, and obligating the buyer to pay for them.
9. Contractor - Any person, firm, partnership, corporation, association, or joint venture which has contracted with the State of North Carolina to perform construction work or repair.
10. Subcontractor - A firm under contract with the prime contractor or construction manager at risk for supplying materials or labor and materials and/or installation. The subcontractor may or may not provide materials in his subcontract.

## **SECTION C: RESPONSIBILITIES**

1. Office for Historically Underutilized Businesses, Department of Administration (hereinafter referred to as HUB Office).

The HUB Office has established a program, which allows interested persons or businesses qualifying as a minority business under G.S. 143-128.2, to obtain certification in the State of North Carolina procurement system. The information provided by the minority businesses will be used by the HUB Office to:

- a. Identify those areas of work for which there are minority businesses, as requested.
- b. Make available to interested parties a list of prospective minority business contractors and subcontractors.
- c. Assist in the determination of technical assistance needed by minority business contractors.

In addition to being responsible for the certification/verification of minority businesses that want to participate in the State construction program, the HUB Office will:

- (1) Maintain a current list of minority businesses. The list shall include the areas of work in which each minority business is interested.
- (2) Inform minority businesses on how to identify and obtain contracting and subcontracting opportunities through the State Construction Office and other public entities.
- (3) Inform minority businesses of the contracting and subcontracting process for public construction building projects.
- (4) Work with the North Carolina trade and professional organizations to improve the ability of minority businesses to compete in the State construction projects.
- (5) The HUB Office also oversees the minority business program by:
  - a. Monitoring compliance with the program requirements.
  - b. Assisting in the implementation of training and technical assistance programs.
  - c. Identifying and implementing outreach efforts to increase the utilization of minority businesses.
  - d. Reporting the results of minority business utilization to the Secretary of the Department of Administration, the Governor, and the General Assembly.

2. State Construction Office

The State Construction Office will be responsible for the following:

- a. Furnish to the HUB Office a minimum of twenty-one days prior to the bid opening the following:
  - (1) Project description and location;
  - (2) Locations where bidding documents may be reviewed;
  - (3) Name of a representative of the owner who can be contacted during the advertising period to advise who the prospective bidders are;
  - (4) Date, time and location of the bid opening.
  - (5) Date, time and location of prebid conference, if scheduled.
- b. Attending scheduled prebid conference, if necessary, to clarify requirements of the general statutes regarding minority-business participation, including the bidders' responsibilities.

- c. Reviewing the apparent low bidders' statutory compliance with the requirements listed in the proposal, that must be complied with, if the bid is to be considered as responsive, prior to award of contracts. The State reserves the right to reject any or all bids and to waive informalities.
- d. Reviewing of minority business requirements at Preconstruction conference.
- e. Monitoring of contractors' compliance with minority business requirements in the contract documents during construction.
- f. Provide statistical data and required reports to the HUB Office.
- g. Resolve any protest and disputes arising after implementation of the plan, in conjunction with the HUB Office.

### 3. Owner

Before awarding a contract, owner shall do the following:

- a. Develop and implement a minority business participation outreach plan to identify minority businesses that can perform public building projects and to implement outreach efforts to encourage minority business participation in these projects to include education, recruitment, and interaction between minority businesses and non-minority businesses.
- b. Attend the scheduled prebid conference.
- c. At least 10 days prior to the scheduled day of bid opening, notify minority businesses that have requested notices from the public entity for public construction or repair work and minority businesses that otherwise indicated to the Office for Historically Underutilized Businesses an interest in the type of work being bid or the potential contracting opportunities listed in the proposal. The notification shall include the following:
  - 1. A description of the work for which the bid is being solicited.
  - 2. The date, time, and location where bids are to be submitted.
  - 3. The name of the individual within the owner's organization who will be available to answer questions about the project.
  - 4. Where bid documents may be reviewed.
  - 5. Any special requirements that may exist.
- d. Utilize other media, as appropriate, likely to inform potential minority businesses of the bid being sought.
- e. Maintain documentation of any contacts, correspondence, or conversation with minority business firms made in an attempt to meet the goals.
- f. Review, jointly with the designer, all requirements of G.S. 143-128.2(c) and G.S. 143-128.2(f) – (i.e. bidders' proposals for identification of the minority businesses that will be utilized with corresponding total dollar value of the bid and affidavit listing good faith efforts, or affidavit of self-performance of work, if the contractor will perform work under contract by its own workforce) - prior to recommendation of award to the State Construction Office.
- g. Evaluate documentation to determine good faith effort has been achieved for minority business utilization prior to recommendation of award to State Construction Office.
- h. Review prime contractors' pay applications for compliance with minority business utilization commitments prior to payment.
- i. Make documentation showing evidence of implementation of Owner's responsibilities available for review by State Construction Office and HUB Office, upon request

### 4. Designer

Under the single-prime bidding, separate prime bidding, construction manager at risk, or alternative contracting method, the designer will:

- a. Attend the scheduled prebid conference to explain minority business requirements to the prospective bidders.
- b. Assist the owner to identify and notify prospective minority business prime and subcontractors of potential contracting opportunities.
- c. Maintain documentation of any contacts, correspondence, or conversation with minority business firms made in an attempt to meet the goals.
- d. Review jointly with the owner, all requirements of G.S. 143-128.2(c) and G.S. 143-128.2(f) – (i.e. bidders' proposals for identification of the minority businesses that will be utilized with

corresponding total dollar value of the bid and affidavit listing Good Faith Efforts, or affidavit of self-performance of work, if the contractor will perform work under contract by its own workforce) - prior to recommendation of award.

- e. During construction phase of the project, review “MBE Documentation for Contract Payment” – (Appendix E) for compliance with minority business utilization commitments. Submit Appendix E form with monthly pay applications to the owner and forward copies to the State Construction Office.
- f. Make documentation showing evidence of implementation of Designer’s responsibilities available for review by State Construction Office and HUB Office, upon request.

5. Prime Contractor(s), CM at Risk, and Its First-Tier Subcontractors

Under the single-prime bidding, the separate-prime bidding, construction manager at risk and alternative contracting methods, contractor(s) will:

- a. Attend the scheduled prebid conference.
- b. Identify or determine those work areas of a subcontract where minority businesses may have an interest in performing subcontract work.
- c. At least ten (10) days prior to the scheduled day of bid opening, notify minority businesses of potential subcontracting opportunities listed in the proposal. The notification will include the following:
  - (1) A description of the work for which the subbid is being solicited.
  - (2) The date, time and location where subbids are to be submitted.
  - (3) The name of the individual within the company who will be available to answer questions about the project.
  - (4) Where bid documents may be reviewed.
  - (5) Any special requirements that may exist, such as insurance, licenses, bonds and financial arrangements.

If there are more than three (3) minority businesses in the general locality of the project who offer similar contracting or subcontracting services in the specific trade, the contractor(s) shall notify three (3), but may contact more, if the contractor(s) so desires.

- d. During the bidding process, comply with the contractor(s) requirements listed in the proposal for minority participation.
- e. Identify on the bid, the minority businesses that will be utilized on the project with corresponding total dollar value of the bid and affidavit listing good faith efforts as required by G.S. 143-128.2(c) and G.S. 143-128.2(f).
- f. Make documentation showing evidence of implementation of PM, CM-at-Risk and First-Tier Subcontractor responsibilities available for review by State Construction Office and HUB Office, upon request.
- g. Upon being named the apparent low bidder, the Bidder shall provide one of the following: (1) an affidavit (Affidavit C) that includes a description of the portion of work to be executed by minority businesses, expressed as a percentage of the total contract price, which is equal to or more than the applicable goal; (2) if the percentage is not equal to the applicable goal, then documentation of all good faith efforts taken to meet the goal. Failure to comply with these requirements is grounds for rejection of the bid and award to the next lowest responsible and responsive bidder.
- h. The contractor(s) shall identify the name(s) of minority business subcontractor(s) and corresponding dollar amount of work on the schedule of values. The schedule of values shall be provided as required in Article 31 of the General Conditions of the Contract to facilitate payments to the subcontractors.
- i. The contractor(s) shall submit with each monthly pay request(s) and final payment(s), “MBE Documentation for Contract Payment” – (Appendix E), for designer’s review.
- j. During the construction of a project, at any time, if it becomes necessary to replace a minority business subcontractor, immediately advise the owner, State Construction Office, and the Director of the HUB Office in writing, of the circumstances involved. The prime contractor shall make a good faith effort to replace a minority business subcontractor with another minority business subcontractor.



- k. If during the construction of a project additional subcontracting opportunities become available, make a good faith effort to solicit subbids from minority businesses.
- l. It is the intent of these requirements apply to all contractors performing as prime contractor and first tier subcontractor under construction manager at risk on state projects.

6. **Minority Business Responsibilities**

While minority businesses are not required to become certified in order to participate in the State construction projects, it is recommended that they become certified and should take advantage of the appropriate technical assistance that is made available. In addition, minority businesses who are contacted by owners or bidders must respond promptly whether or not they wish to submit a bid.

**SECTION 4: DISPUTE PROCEDURES**

It is the policy of this state that disputes that involves a person's rights, duties or privileges, should be settled through informal procedures. To that end, minority business disputes arising under these guidelines should be resolved as governed under G.S. 143-128(g).

**SECTION 5:** These guidelines shall apply upon promulgation on state construction projects. Copies of these guidelines may be obtained from the Department of Administration, State Construction Office, (physical address) 301 North Wilmington Street, Suite 450, NC Education Building, Raleigh, North Carolina, 27601-2827, (mail address) 1307 Mail Service Center, Raleigh, North Carolina, 27699-1307, phone (919) 807-4100, Website: [www.nc-sco.com](http://www.nc-sco.com)

**SECTION 6:** In addition to these guidelines, there will be issued with each construction bid package provisions for contractual compliance providing minority business participation in the state construction program.

## MINORITY BUSINESS CONTRACT PROVISIONS (CONSTRUCTION)

### APPLICATION:

The **Guidelines for Recruitment and Selection of Minority Businesses for Participation in State Construction Contracts** are hereby made a part of these contract documents. These guidelines shall apply to all contractors regardless of ownership. Copies of these guidelines may be obtained from the Department of Administration, State Construction Office, (physical address) 301 North Wilmington Street, Suite 450, NC Education Building, Raleigh, North Carolina, 27601-2827, (mail address) 1307 Mail Service Center, Raleigh, North Carolina, 27699-1307, phone (919) 807-4100, Website: <http://www.nc-sco.com>

### MINORITY BUSINESS SUBCONTRACT GOALS:

The goals for participation by minority firms as subcontractors on this project have been set at 10%.

The bidder must identify on its bid, the minority businesses that will be utilized on the project with corresponding total dollar value of the bid and affidavit (Affidavit A) listing good faith efforts or affidavit (Affidavit B) of self-performance of work, if the bidder will perform work under contract by its own workforce, as required by G.S. 143-128.2(c) and G.S. 143-128.2(f).

The lowest responsible, responsive bidder must provide Affidavit C, that includes a description of the portion of work to be executed by minority businesses, expressed as a percentage of the total contract price, which is equal to or more than the applicable goal.

**OR**

Provide Affidavit D, that includes a description of the portion of work to be executed by minority businesses, expressed as a percentage of the total contract price, **with documentation of Good Faith Effort, if the percentage is not equal to the applicable goal.**

**OR**

Provide Affidavit B, which includes sufficient information for the State to determine that the bidder does not customarily subcontract work on this type project.

**The above information must be provided as required. Failure to submit these documents is grounds for rejection of the bid.**

## **MINIMUM COMPLIANCE REQUIREMENTS:**

All written statements, affidavits or intentions made by the Bidder shall become a part of the agreement between the Contractor and the State for performance of this contract. Failure to comply with any of these statements, affidavits or intentions, or with the minority business Guidelines shall constitute a breach of the contract. A finding by the State that any information submitted either prior to award of the contract or during the performance of the contract is inaccurate, false or incomplete, shall also constitute a breach of the contract. Any such breach may result in termination of the contract in accordance with the termination provisions contained in the contract. It shall be solely at the option of the State whether to terminate the contract for breach.

In determining whether a contractor has made Good Faith Efforts, the State will evaluate all efforts made by the Contractor and will determine compliance in regard to quantity, intensity, and results of these efforts. Good Faith Efforts include:

- (1) Contacting minority businesses that reasonably could have been expected to submit a quote and that were known to the contractor or available on State or local government maintained lists at least 10 days before the bid or proposal date and notifying them of the nature and scope of the work to be performed.
- (2) Making the construction plans, specifications and requirements available for review by prospective minority businesses, or providing these documents to them at least 10 days before the bid or proposals are due.
- (3) Breaking down or combining elements of work into economically feasible units to facilitate minority participation.
- (4) Working with minority trade, community, or contractor organizations identified by the Office for Historically Underutilized Businesses and included in the bid documents that provide assistance in recruitment of minority businesses.
- (5) Attending any prebid meetings scheduled by the public owner.
- (6) Providing assistance in getting required bonding or insurance or providing alternatives to bonding or insurance for subcontractors.
- (7) Negotiating in good faith with interested minority businesses and not rejecting them as unqualified without sound reasons based on their capabilities. Any rejection of a minority business based on lack of qualification should have the reasons documented in writing.
- (8) Providing assistance to an otherwise qualified minority business in need of equipment, loan capital, lines of credit, or joint pay agreements to secure loans, supplies, or letters of credit, including waiving credit that is ordinarily required. Assisting minority businesses in obtaining the same unit pricing with the bidder's suppliers in order to help minority businesses in establishing credit.
- (9) Negotiating joint venture and partnership arrangements with minority businesses in order to increase opportunities for minority business participation on a public construction or repair project when possible.
- (10) Providing quick pay agreements and policies to enable minority contractors and suppliers to meet cash-flow demands.

## APPENDIX E

### MBE DOCUMENTATION FOR CONTRACT PAYMENTS

Prime Contractor/Architect: \_\_\_\_\_

Address & Phone: \_\_\_\_\_

Project Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Pay Application #: \_\_\_\_\_ Period: \_\_\_\_\_

The following is a list of payments made to Minority Business Enterprises on this project for the above-mentioned period.

MBE FIRM NAME	* INDICATE TYPE OF MBE	AMOUNT PAID THIS MONTH	TOTAL PAYMENTS TO DATE	TOTAL AMOUNT COMMITTED

\*Minority categories: Black, African American (B), Hispanic (H), Asian American (A), American Indian (I), Female (F), Social and Economically Disadvantage (D)

Date: \_\_\_\_\_ Approved/Certified By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name

\_\_\_\_\_  
Title

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature

**SUBMIT WITH EACH PAY REQUEST & FINAL PAYMENT**

## Identification of HUB Certified/ Minority Business Participation

I, \_\_\_\_\_  
(Name of Bidder)

do hereby certify that on this project, we will use the following HUB Certified/ minority business as construction subcontractors, vendors, suppliers or providers of professional services.

Firm Name, Address and Phone #

### Work Type

\*Minority  
Category

**\*\*HUB  
Certified  
(Y/N)**

[illegible]

\*Minority categories: Black, African American (**B**), Hispanic (**H**), Asian American (**A**) American Indian (**I**), Female (**F**) Socially and Economically Disadvantaged (**D**)

**\*\* HUB Certification with the state HUB Office required to be counted toward state participation goals.**

**The total value of minority business contracting will be (\$)**\_\_\_\_\_.

# State of North Carolina AFFIDAVIT A – Listing of Good Faith Efforts

County of \_\_\_\_\_

(Name of Bidder)

Affidavit of \_\_\_\_\_

I have made a good faith effort to comply under the following areas checked:

**Bidders must earn at least 50 points from the good faith efforts listed for their bid to be considered responsive.** (1 NC Administrative Code 30 I.0101)

- ☐ **1 – (10 pts)** Contacted minority businesses that reasonably could have been expected to submit a quote and that were known to the contractor, or available on State or local government maintained lists, at least 10 days before the bid date and notified them of the nature and scope of the work to be performed.
- ☐ **2 --(10 pts)** Made the construction plans, specifications and requirements available for review by prospective minority businesses, or providing these documents to them at least 10 days before the bids are due.
- ☐ **3 – (15 pts)** Broken down or combined elements of work into economically feasible units to facilitate minority participation.
- ☐ **4 – (10 pts)** Worked with minority trade, community, or contractor organizations identified by the Office of Historically Underutilized Businesses and included in the bid documents that provide assistance in recruitment of minority businesses.
- ☐ **5 – (10 pts)** Attended prebid meetings scheduled by the public owner.
- ☐ **6 – (20 pts)** Provided assistance in getting required bonding or insurance or provided alternatives to bonding or insurance for subcontractors.
- ☐ **7 – (15 pts)** Negotiated in good faith with interested minority businesses and did not reject them as unqualified without sound reasons based on their capabilities. Any rejection of a minority business based on lack of qualification should have the reasons documented in writing.
- ☐ **8 – (25 pts)** Provided assistance to an otherwise qualified minority business in need of equipment, loan capital, lines of credit, or joint pay agreements to secure loans, supplies, or letters of credit, including waiving credit that is ordinarily required. Assisted minority businesses in obtaining the same unit pricing with the bidder's suppliers in order to help minority businesses in establishing credit.
- ☐ **9 – (20 pts)** Negotiated joint venture and partnership arrangements with minority businesses in order to increase opportunities for minority business participation on a public construction or repair project when possible.
- ☐ **10 - (20 pts)** Provided quick pay agreements and policies to enable minority contractors and suppliers to meet cash-flow demands.

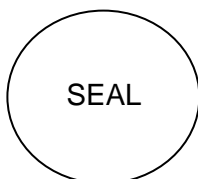
The undersigned, if apparent low bidder, will enter into a formal agreement with the firms listed in the Identification of Minority Business Participation schedule conditional upon scope of contract to be executed with the Owner. Substitution of contractors must be in accordance with GS143-128.2(d) Failure to abide by this statutory provision will constitute a breach of the contract.

The undersigned hereby certifies that he or she has read the terms of the minority business commitment and is authorized to bind the bidder to the commitment herein set forth.

Date: \_\_\_\_\_ Name of Authorized Officer: \_\_\_\_\_

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_



State of \_\_\_\_\_, County of \_\_\_\_\_

Subscribed and sworn to before me this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_ 20\_\_\_\_

Notary Public \_\_\_\_\_

My commission expires \_\_\_\_\_

**State of North Carolina --AFFIDAVIT B-- Intent to Perform Contract  
with Own Workforce.**

County of \_\_\_\_\_

Affidavit of \_\_\_\_\_  
(Name of Bidder)

I hereby certify that it is our intent to perform 100% of the work required for the \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ contract.  
(Name of Project)

In making this certification, the Bidder states that the Bidder does not customarily subcontract elements of this type project, and normally performs and has the capability to perform and will perform all elements of the work on this project with his/her own current work forces; and

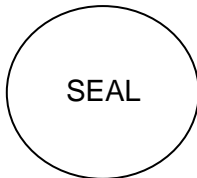
The Bidder agrees to provide any additional information or documentation requested by the owner in support of the above statement. The Bidder agrees to make a Good Faith Effort to utilize minority suppliers where possible.

The undersigned hereby certifies that he or she has read this certification and is authorized to bind the Bidder to the commitments herein contained.

Date: \_\_\_\_\_ Name of Authorized Officer: \_\_\_\_\_

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_



State of \_\_\_\_\_, County of \_\_\_\_\_

Subscribed and sworn to before me this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_ 20\_\_\_\_

Notary Public \_\_\_\_\_

My commission expires \_\_\_\_\_

# State of North Carolina - AFFIDAVIT C - Portion of the Work to be Performed by HUB Certified/Minority Businesses

County of \_\_\_\_\_

(Note this form is to be submitted only by the apparent lowest responsible, responsive bidder.)

If the portion of the work to be executed by HUB certified/minority businesses as defined in GS143-128.2(g) and 128.4(a),(b),(e) is equal to or greater than 10% of the bidders total contract price, then the bidder must complete this affidavit.

This affidavit shall be provided by the apparent lowest responsible, responsive bidder within **72 hours** after notification of being low bidder.

Affidavit of \_\_\_\_\_ I do hereby certify that on the \_\_\_\_\_  
(Name of Bidder)

Project ID# \_\_\_\_\_ (Project Name) Amount of Bid \$ \_\_\_\_\_

I will expend a minimum of \_\_\_\_\_% of the total dollar amount of the contract with minority business enterprises. Minority businesses will be employed as construction subcontractors, vendors, suppliers or providers of professional services. Such work will be subcontracted to the following firms listed below. Attach additional sheets if required

Name and Phone Number	*Minority Category	**HUB Certified Y/N	Work Description	Dollar Value

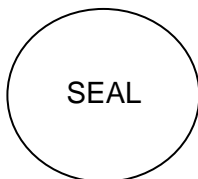
\*Minority categories: Black, African American (**B**), Hispanic (**H**), Asian American (**A**) American Indian (**I**), Female (**F**) Socially and Economically Disadvantaged (**D**)

**\*\* HUB Certification with the state HUB Office required to be counted toward state participation goals.**

Pursuant to GS143-128.2(d), the undersigned will enter into a formal agreement with Minority Firms for work listed in this schedule conditional upon execution of a contract with the Owner. Failure to fulfill this commitment may constitute a breach of the contract.

The undersigned hereby certifies that he or she has read the terms of this commitment and is authorized to bind the bidder to the commitment herein set forth.

Date: \_\_\_\_\_ Name of Authorized Officer: \_\_\_\_\_



Signature: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

State of \_\_\_\_\_, County of \_\_\_\_\_

Subscribed and sworn to before me this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_ 20\_\_\_\_

Notary Public \_\_\_\_\_



Onslow County | Bear Creek Fire Station  
My commission expires\_\_\_\_\_

**State of North Carolina****AFFIDAVIT D – Good Faith Efforts**

County of \_\_\_\_\_

**(Note this form is to be submitted only by the apparent lowest responsible, responsive bidder.)**If the goal of 10% participation by HUB Certified/ minority business **is not** achieved, the Bidder shall provide the following documentation to the Owner of his good faith efforts:Affidavit of \_\_\_\_\_ I do hereby certify that on the  
(Name of Bidder)\_\_\_\_\_  
(Project Name)  
Project ID# \_\_\_\_\_ Amount of Bid \$ \_\_\_\_\_

I will expend a minimum of \_\_\_\_\_% of the total dollar amount of the contract with HUB certified/ minority business enterprises. Minority businesses will be employed as construction subcontractors, vendors, suppliers or providers of professional services. Such work will be subcontracted to the following firms listed below. (Attach additional sheets if required)

Name and Phone Number	*Minority Category	**HUB Certified Y/N	Work Description	Dollar Value

\*Minority categories: Black, African American (**B**), Hispanic (**H**), Asian American (**A**) American Indian (**I**), Female (**F**) Socially and Economically Disadvantaged (**D**)**\*\* HUB Certification with the state HUB Office required to be counted toward state participation goals.****Examples** of documentation that may be required to demonstrate the Bidder's good faith efforts to meet the goals set forth in these provisions include, but are not necessarily limited to, the following:

- A. Copies of solicitations for quotes to at least three (3) minority business firms from the source list provided by the State for each subcontract to be let under this contract (if 3 or more firms are shown on the source list). Each solicitation shall contain a specific description of the work to be subcontracted, location where bid documents can be reviewed, representative of the Prime Bidder to contact, and location, date and time when quotes must be received.
- B. Copies of quotes or responses received from each firm responding to the solicitation.
- C. A telephone log of follow-up calls to each firm sent a solicitation.
- D. For subcontracts where a minority business firm is not considered the lowest responsible sub-bidder, copies of quotes received from all firms submitting quotes for that particular subcontract.
- E. Documentation of any contacts or correspondence to minority business, community, or contractor organizations in an attempt to meet the goal.
- F. Copy of pre-bid roster
- G. Letter documenting efforts to provide assistance in obtaining required bonding or insurance for minority business.
- H. Letter detailing reasons for rejection of minority business due to lack of qualification.
- I. Letter documenting proposed assistance offered to minority business in need of equipment, loan capital, lines of credit, or joint pay agreements to secure loans, supplies, or letter of credit, including waiving credit that is ordinarily required.

Failure to provide the documentation as listed in these provisions may result in rejection of the bid and award to the next lowest responsible and responsive bidder.

Onslow County | Bear Creek Fire Station

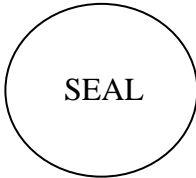
Pursuant to GS143-128.2(d), the undersigned will enter into a formal agreement with Minority Firms for work listed in this schedule conditional upon execution of a contract with the Owner. Failure to fulfill this commitment may constitute a breach of the contract.

The undersigned hereby certifies that he or she has read the terms of this commitment and is authorized to bind the bidder to the commitment herein set forth.

Date: \_\_\_\_\_ Name of Authorized Officer: \_\_\_\_\_

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_



State of \_\_\_\_\_, County of \_\_\_\_\_

Subscribed and sworn to before me this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_ 20\_\_\_\_

Notary Public \_\_\_\_\_

My commission expires \_\_\_\_\_

**NORTH CAROLINA**  
**ONSLOW COUNTY**

**CONTRACT for CONSTRUCTION**  
**BETWEEN OWNER AND**  
**CONTRACTOR**

**This Contract for Construction** is made, and entered into this the      day of      , 20      , by and between the **COUNTY OF ONSLOW**, a political subdivision of the State of North Carolina, (hereinafter “**OWNER**”), and      , (hereinafter “**CONTRACTOR**”), whose principal place of business is:      .

The Project:  
Name and Location:

The Designer is:

1. **CONTRACT DOCUMENTS.** The “Contract Documents” consist of this Contract for Construction, General Conditions, Bid Proposal Package No.      entitled      , Contractor Bid Proposal dated      , Addenda issued prior to execution of this Agreement and listed below, and any Modifications executed by the parties after execution of this Contract. The Contract Documents form the Contract and are fully a part of the Contract as if attached to this Contract or repeated herein. The Contract represents the entire and integrated agreement between the Owner and Contractor hereto and supersedes any and all prior negotiations, representations or agreements, either written or oral. An enumeration of the Contract Documents and other than Modifications, appears in Article 18, herein.

Owner and Contractor agree that should the Contractor utilize the services of a subcontractor for any Work under this Contract, the subcontractor shall be required to comply with all terms and conditions of this Contract and any and all Contract Documents entered into between the Owner and Contractor and any of its contractors or subcontractors shall so require of their subcontractors.

2. **WORK.** Contractor shall execute all of the Work described collectively in the Contract Documents, except to the extent specifically indicated in the Contract Documents to be the responsibility of others.

3. **DATE OF COMMENCEMENT AND SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION.**

- 3.1 This Contract shall commence on the date first written above (hereinafter “Commencement Date”). The Contractor shall notify the Owner in writing not less than five (5) days before commencing the Work.

- 3.2 The Contractor shall achieve Substantial Completion of the entire Work no later than the time established in the Contract Documents; subject to adjustments of the Contract Time as provided in the Contract Documents. In view of the difficulty of estimating damages to the Owner by reason of the failure of the Contractor to complete the work herein proposed within the time limit herein proposed, or within such further time as same may be extended, as provided for, proposed, Owner shall be and hereby is authorized to deduct and retain out of the moneys which may be due or become due to Contractor the sum of      (\$      .00) per day for each and every calendar day that the work may be incomplete beyond the time limit fixed for its completion, or as same may have been extended, which sum per day is hereby

agreed upon, fixed and determined by the parties hereto as the ascertained and liquidated damages that the Owner will suffer by reason of such default. The above sum shall be held to include the additional expense to the Owner for loss of interest or investment, for the employment of architects, engineers, inspectors, and other employees, together with their expenses, and all other damages to the Owner by reason of such delay.

4. **CONTRACT SUM AND PAYMENT**

4.1 Contractor shall receive from Owner a sum not to exceed \_\_\_\_\_ Dollars (\$ ), as full compensation for the provision of construction services provided under this Contract, subject to additions and deductions as provided in the Contract Documents. Owner agrees to pay for services, satisfactorily performed, in accordance with the Contract Documents. Unless otherwise specified, Contractor shall submit an Application for Payment in the manner described in Article 9 of the General Conditions. Payment will be processed promptly upon receipt and approval of the Application by Owner.

4.2 The Contract Sum is based upon the following alternates, if any, which are described in the Contract Documents and are hereby accepted by the Owner:

4.3 Unit prices, if any, are as follows:

5. **PROGRESS PAYMENTS.** Based upon Applications for Payment submitted to the Designer by the Contractor and Certificates for Payment issued by the Designer, the Owner shall make progress payments on account of the Contract Sum to the Contractor as provided in Paragraph 9.3 of the General Conditions.
6. **FINAL PAYMENT.** Final payment, constituting the entire unpaid balance of the Contract Sum, shall be made by the Owner to the Contractor when (1) the Contract has been fully performed by the Contractor and all requirements imposed by Paragraphs 9.3 and 9.11 of the General Conditions have been satisfied except for those requirements set forth in Paragraphs 11.2 and 11.3 of the General Conditions and any other requirements which necessarily survive final payment; and (2) a final Certificate for Payment has been issued by the Designer; such final payment shall be made by the Owner not more than 30 days after the issuance of the Designer's final Certificate for Payment.
7. **INDEMNIFICATION.** Contractor shall indemnify and hold harmless the Owner and its officials, agents, and employees from and against all claims, damages, losses, and expenses (including but not limited to fees and charges of engineers, attorneys, and other professionals and costs related to court action or arbitration) arising out of or resulting from the performance of this Contract or the actions of the Contractor or its officials, employees, or contractors under this Contract or under the contracts entered into by the Contractor in connection with the work to be performed and as further set forth in Paragraph 3.17 of the General Conditions.
8. **NOTICES.** All notices which may be required by this Contract or any rule of law shall be effective when received by certified mail sent to the following addresses:

**FOR: COUNTY OF ONSLOW**

FOR: **CONTRACTOR**

9. **NON-DISCRIMINATION.** Contractor shall not discriminate against any employee or applicant for employment because of age, sex, race, creed, national origin, or disability. Contractor shall take affirmative action to ensure that applicants are employed and that employees are treated fairly and legally during employment with regard to their age, sex, race, creed, national origin, or disability. In the event Contractor is determined by the final order of an appropriate agency or court to be in violation of any non-discrimination provision of federal, state or local law or this provision, this Contract may be canceled, terminated or suspended in whole or in part by Owner, and Contractor may be declared ineligible for further Owner contracts.
10. **HEALTH AND SAFETY.** Contractor shall be responsible for initiating, maintaining and supervising all safety precautions and programs required by OSHA and all other regulatory agencies while providing services under this Contract.
11. **NON-ASSIGNMENT.** This Contract is not assignable by either party, by operation of law or otherwise.
12. **MODIFICATION.** This Contract may be modified only by a written agreement executed by both parties hereto.
13. **TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION.** This Contract may be terminated by the Owner or the Contractor as provided in Article 13 of the General Conditions. The Work may be suspended by the Owner as provided in Paragraph 13.3 of the General Conditions.
14. **E-VERIFY.** As a condition of payment for services rendered under this agreement, CONTRACTOR shall comply with the requirements of Article 2 of Chapter 64 of the General Statutes. Further, if CONTRACTOR provides the services to the County utilizing a subcontractor, CONTRACTOR shall require the subcontractor to comply with the requirements of Article 2 of Chapter 64 of the General Statutes as well. CONTRACTOR shall verify, by affidavit, compliance of the terms of this section upon request by the COUNTY.
15. **IRAN DIVESTMENT ACT.** Contractor certifies that they are not listed on the Final Divestment List created by the State Treasurer pursuant to N.C.G.S. 143-6A-4. Individuals or companies on the Final Divestment List are ineligible to contract or subcontract with Local Government Units. (G.S. 143C-6A-6(a).) It is each vendor's or contractor's responsibility to monitor its compliance with this restriction. Contracts valued at less than \$1,000.00 are exempt from this restriction.
16. **DIVESTMENT FROM COMPANIES THAT BOYCOTT ISRAEL.** The vendor or contractor certifies that it has not been designated by the North Carolina State Treasurer as a company engaged in the boycott of Israel pursuant to N.C.G.S. 147-86.81. It is the responsibility of each vendor or contractor to monitor compliance with this restriction. Contracts valued at less than \$1,000.00 are exempt from this restriction.

## 17. INSURANCE AND BONDS

- 17.1 **CONTRACTOR'S LIABILITY INSURANCE.** Contractor shall purchase from and maintain in a company or companies lawfully authorized to do business in North Carolina such insurance as will protect the Contractor from claims set forth below which may arise out of or result from the Contractor's operations under the Contract and for which the Contractor may be legally liable, whether such operations be by the Contractor or by a subcontractor or by anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them, or by anyone for whose acts any of them may be liable:
- (1) claims under workers' compensation, disability benefit and other similar employee benefit acts which are applicable to the work to be performed;
  - (2) claims for damages because of bodily injury, occupational sickness or disease, or death of the Contractor's employees;
  - (3) claims for damages because of bodily injury, sickness or disease, or death of any person other than the Contractor's employees;
  - (4) claims for damages insured by usual personal injury liability coverage which are sustained by a person as a result of an offense directly or indirectly related to employment of such person by the Contractor, or by another person;
  - (5) claims for damages, other than to the Work itself, because of injury to or destruction of tangible property, including loss of use resulting therefrom;
  - (6) claims for damages because of bodily injury, death of a person or property damage arising out of ownership, maintenance or use of a motor vehicle; and
  - (7) claims involving contractual liability insurance applicable to the Contractor's obligations under Article 3 of the General Conditions.
- 17.2 The insurance required as stated above shall be written for not less than the limits of liability specified in the Contract Documents or required by law, whichever coverage is greater. Coverage, whether written on an occurrence or claims-made basis, shall be maintained without interruption from date of commencement of the Work until date of final payment and termination of any coverage required to be maintained after final payment.
- 17.3 Certificates of Insurance acceptable to the Owner shall be filed with the Owner prior to commencement of the Work. The Certificates and the insurance policies required by this Article 17 shall contain a provision that coverage afforded under the policies will not be canceled or allowed to expire until at least 30 days prior written notice has been given to the Owner. If any of the foregoing insurance coverage are required to remain in force after final payment and are reasonably available, an additional certificate evidencing continuation of such coverage shall be submitted with the Final Application for Payment as required by Subparagraph 9.11.2 of the General Conditions. Information concerning reduction of coverage shall be furnished by the Contractor with reasonable promptness in accordance with the Contractor's information and belief.



17.4 BUILDER'S ALL RISK COVERAGE. Unless otherwise provided the Contractor shall purchase and maintain, in a company or companies lawfully authorized to do business in North Carolina, Builder's All Risk Coverage, in an amount equal to 100% of the Contract Sum under this Agreement.

17.5 PERFORMANCE BOND AND PAYMENT BOND. The Contractor shall furnish bonds covering the faithful performance of the Contract and payment of obligations arising thereunder as stipulated in bidding requirements or required by North Carolina law.

Upon the request of any person or entity appearing to be a potential beneficiary of bonds covering payment of obligations arising under the Contract, the Contractor shall promptly furnish a copy of the bonds or shall permit a copy to be made.

## 18. ENUMERATION OF CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

18.1 The Contract Documents, except for Modifications issued after execution of this Agreement, are enumerated as follows:

- (1) This executed Contract for Construction between Owner and Contractor.
- (2) The General Conditions of the Contract for Construction. Where reference is made in this Contract to a provision of the General Conditions or another Contract Document, the reference refers to that provision as amended or supplemented by other provisions of the Contract Documents.
- (3) The Supplementary and other Conditions of the Contract are those contained in the Project Manual dated .
- (4) The Specifications are those contained in the Project Manual dated as in Paragraph 18.1(3) above, and are as follows:

<u>Section</u>	<u>Title</u>	<u>Pages</u>
----------------	--------------	--------------

- (5) The Drawings are as follows, and are dated\_ , unless a different date is shown below:

<u>Number</u>	<u>Title</u>	<u>Date</u>
---------------	--------------	-------------

- (6) The Addenda, if any, are as follows:

Addendum No. \_\_\_\_\_ Dated: \_\_\_\_\_ Addendum No. \_\_\_\_\_ Dated: \_\_\_\_\_

Addendum No. \_\_\_\_\_ Dated: \_\_\_\_\_ Addendum No. \_\_\_\_\_ Dated: \_\_\_\_\_

- (7) Other documents, if any, forming part of the Contract Documents are as follows:

Invitation to Bid  
Instruction to Bidders

19. GOOD STANDING WITH COUNTY. CONTRACTOR certifies that it is not delinquent on any taxes, fees, or other debt owed by CONTRACTOR to COUNTY. CONTRACTOR covenants and

agrees to remain current on any taxes, fees, or other debt owed by CONTRACTOR to COUNTY during the Term of this Contract

20. This Contract and the Contract Documents described herein set forth the entire agreement between the parties and supersedes any and all other agreements on this subject between the parties.
21. This Contract, together with any amendments or modifications, may be executed in one or more counterparts, each of which shall be deemed an original and all of which shall be considered one and the same agreement. This Contract may also be executed electronically. By signing electronically, the parties indicate their intent to comply with the Electronic Commerce in Government Act (N.C.G.S § 66-358.1 et seq.) and the Uniform Electronic Transactions Act (N.C.G.S § 66-311 et seq.). Delivery of an executed counterpart of this Contract by either electronic means or by facsimile shall be as effective as a manually executed counterpart.

This Agreement is entered into as of the day and year first written above and is executed in at least three original copies of which one is to be delivered to the Contractor, one to the Designer for use in the administration of the Contract, and the remainder to the Owner.

**COUNTY OF ONSLOW**

This instrument has been pre-audited  
in the manner required by the Local  
Government Budget and Fiscal Control Act.

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
Finance Officer

**CONTRACTOR**

ATTEST:

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Secretary

Print Name/Title: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA  
COUNTY OF \_\_\_\_\_

I, a Notary Public in and for the aforesaid County and State, do hereby certify that \_\_\_\_\_ personally appeared before me this day and acknowledged that he is \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_, a North Carolina corporation, and that by authority duly given and as the act of the corporation, the foregoing instrument was signed in its name by its \_\_\_\_\_, sealed with its corporate seal and attested by \_\_\_\_\_ as its \_\_\_\_\_.

Witness my hand and notarial seal this \_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Notary Public  
My commission expires: \_\_\_\_\_

(SEAL)

# **GENERAL CONDITIONS OF THE CONTRACT FOR CONSTRUCTION**

## **Table of Articles**

1. General Provisions
2. Owner
3. Contractor
4. Administration of the Contract
5. Subcontractors
6. Construction by Owner or by Separate Contractors
7. Changes in the Work
8. Time
9. Payments and Completion
10. Protection of Persons and Property
11. Uncovering and Correction of Work
12. Miscellaneous Provisions
13. Termination or Suspension of the Contract
14. Security of Non-Public Records

## **Article 1**

### **General Provisions**

#### **1.1 BASIC DEFINITIONS**

- 1.1.1 Contract for Construction. The Contract Documents form the contract for construction. The Contract represents the entire and integrated agreement between the parties hereto and supersedes prior negotiations, representations, or agreements, either written or oral. The contract may be amended or modified only by a Modification.
- 1.1.2 Contract Documents. The Contract Documents consist of the Agreement between Owner and Contractor (hereinafter the Agreement), Conditions of the Contract (General, Supplementary and other Conditions), Drawings, Specifications, addenda issued prior to execution of the Contract, Advertisement, or Invitation to Bid, Instructions to Bidders, other documents listed in the Agreement and Modifications issued after execution of the Contract. In the event of conflicts among the contract documents, the Specifications shall take precedence over the Drawings, and the Supplementary Conditions shall take precedence over the General Conditions. The Contract Documents shall not be construed to create a contractual relationship of any kind between the Owner and a Subcontractor or Sub-subcontractor.
- 1.1.3 Contractor. The person or entity identified as such in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number. Unless otherwise stated, the term “Contractor” means the General Contractor or the General Contractor’s authorized representative.
- 1.1.4 Drawings. The Drawings are the graphic and pictorial portions of the Contract Documents, wherever located and whenever issued, showing the design, location and dimensions of the Work, generally including plans, elevations, sections, details, schedules and diagrams.
- 1.1.5 Designer. The architect or engineer registered in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 89C of the North Carolina General Statutes identified as such in the Contract for Construction and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number. The term “Designer” refers to the Designer or the Designer’s authorized representative(s). The Designer shall be entitled to performance and enforcement of obligations under the Contract for Construction intended to facilitate performance of the Designer’s duties.
- 1.1.6 Modification. A Modification is (1) a written amendment to the Contract signed by the parties, (2) a Change Order, (3) a Construction Change Directive, or (4) a written order for a minor change in the Work issued by the Designer.
- 1.1.7 Owner. The person or entity identified as such in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number. The term “Owner” means the Owner or the Owner’s authorized representative.
- 1.1.8 Project. The Project is the total construction of which the Work performed under the Contract Documents may be the whole or a part and which may include construction by the Owner or by separate contractors.
- 1.1.9 Project Manual. The Project Manual is the volume usually assembled by the Designer, for the Work which may include the bidding requirements, sample forms, conditions of the contract and specifications.

- 1.1.10 Specifications. The Specifications are that portion of the Contract Documents consisting of the written requirements for materials, equipment, construction systems, standards and workmanship for the Work, and performance of related services.
- 1.1.11 Work. The term “Work” means the construction and services required by the Contract Documents, whether completed or partially completed, and includes all other labor, materials, equipment, and services provided or to be provided by the Contractor to fulfill the Contractor’s obligations. The Work may constitute the whole or part of the Project.

## **1.2 EXECUTION, CORRELATION, AND INTENT**

- 1.2.1 The Contract Documents shall be signed by the Owner and Contractor as provided in the Agreement. If either the Owner or Contractor or both do not sign all the Contract Documents, the Designer shall identify such unsigned Documents and ensure that they are properly signed by the necessary parties.
- 1.2.2 Execution of the Contract by the Contractor is a representation that the Contractor has visited the site, become familiar with local conditions under which the Work is to be performed, correlated personal observations with requirements of the Contract Documents, has checked and verified all site conditions, and hereby waives any and all claims, present or future, for misrepresentation on the part of the Owner or Designer.
- 1.2.3 The intent of the Contract Documents is to include all items necessary for the proper execution and completion of the Work by the Contractor. The Contract Documents are complementary, and what is required by one shall be as binding as if required by all.
- 1.2.4 Organization of the Specifications into divisions, sections, and articles, and arrangement of Drawings shall not control the Contractor in dividing the Work among Subcontractors or in establishing the extent of Work to be performed by any Subcontractor.
- 1.2.5 Unless otherwise stated in the Contract Documents, words which have well-known technical or construction industry meanings are used in the Contract Documents in accordance with such recognized meanings.

## **1.3 OWNERSHIP AND USE OF DESIGNER’S DRAWINGS, SPECIFICATIONS, AND OTHER DOCUMENTS**

- 1.3.1 The Drawings, Specifications and other documents prepared by the Designer are instruments of the Designer’s service through which the Work to be executed by the Contractor is described. The Contractor may retain one contract record set. Neither the Contractor nor any Subcontractor, Sub-subcontractor or material or equipment supplier shall own or claim a copyright in the Drawings, Specifications and other documents prepared by the Designer. The Owner will retain all common law, statutory and other reserved rights, in addition to the copyright of the drawings, specifications and other documents prepared by the Designer. All copies of them, except the Contractor’s record set, shall be returned or suitably accounted for to the Designer, on request, upon completion of the Work. The Drawings, Specifications and other documents prepared by the Designer, and copies thereof furnished to the Contractor, are for use solely with respect to this Project; they are not to be used by the Contractor or any Subcontractor, Sub-subcontractor or material or equipment supplier on other projects without the specific written consent of the Owner and Designer. The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors and material or equipment suppliers are granted a limited license to use and reproduce applicable portions of the Drawings, Specifications and other

documents prepared by the Designer appropriate to and for use in the execution of their Work under the Contract Documents. All copies made under this license shall bear the statutory copyright notice, if any, shown on the Drawings, Specifications and other documents prepared by the Designer. Submittal or distribution to meet official regulatory requirements or for other purposes in connection with the Project is not to be construed as publication in derogation of the Owner's copyright or other reserved rights.

## **1.4 CAPITALIZATION**

Terms capitalized in these General Conditions include those which are (1) specifically defined, (2) the titles of numbered Articles and identified reference to Paragraphs, Subparagraphs and Clauses in the document or (3) the titles of other documents.

## **1.5 INTERPRETATION**

In the interest of brevity, the Contract Documents frequently omit modifying words such as "all" and "any" and Articles such as "the" and "an," but the fact that a modifier or an Article is absent from one statement and appears in another is not intended to affect the interpretation of either statement.

### **Article 2** **Owner**

## **2.1 INFORMATION AND SERVICES REQUIRED OF THE OWNER**

- 2.1.1 The Contractor is responsible for locating all existing utilities prior to Work.
- 2.1.2 Except for permits and fees which are the responsibility of the Contractor under the Contract Documents, the Owner shall secure and pay for necessary approvals, easements, assessments, and charges required for construction, use or occupancy of permanent structures or for permanent changes in existing facilities.
- 2.1.3 Information or services under the Owner's control shall be furnished by the Owner with reasonable promptness to avoid delay in orderly progress of Work.
- 2.1.4 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor will be furnished, free of charge, such copies of Drawings and Project Manuals as are reasonably necessary for execution of the Work.

## **2.2 OWNER'S RIGHT TO CARRY OUT THE WORK**

If the Contractor defaults or neglects to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents and fails within a seven-day period after receipt of written notice from the Owner to commence and continue correction of such default or neglect with diligence and promptness, the Owner may after such seven-day period, without prejudice to other remedies the Owner may have, correct such deficiencies. In such case, an appropriate Change Order shall be issued deducting from payments then or thereafter due to the Contractor the cost of correcting such deficiencies, including compensation for the Designer's additional services and expenses made necessary by such default, neglect or failure. Such action by the Owner and amounts charged to the Contractor are both subject to prior review and confirmation by the Designer. If payments then or thereafter

due to the Contractor are not sufficient to cover such amounts, the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner.

### **Article 3** **Contractor**

#### **3.1 REVIEW OF CONTRACT DOCUMENTS AND FIELD CONDITIONS BY CONTRACTOR**

- 3.1.1 The Contractor shall carefully study and compare the Contract Documents with each other and with information furnished by the Owner pursuant to Paragraph 2.1, and shall at once report to the Designer errors, inconsistencies or omissions discovered. If the Contractor performs any construction activity knowing or should have known it involves an error, inconsistency, or omission in the Contract Documents without such notice to the Designer, the Contractor shall assume full responsibility for such performance and shall bear the full costs for correction.
- 3.1.2 The Contractor shall take field measurements and verify field conditions and shall carefully compare such field measurements and conditions and other information known to the Contractor with the Contract Documents before commencing activities. Errors, inconsistencies, or omissions discovered shall be reported to the Designer immediately.
- 3.1.3 The Contractor shall perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents and submittals approved pursuant to Paragraph 3.11.

#### **3.2 SUPERVISION AND CONSTRUCTION PROCEDURES**

- 3.2.1 The Contractor shall supervise and direct the Work using the Contractor's best skill and attention. The Contractor shall be solely responsible for and have control over construction means, methods, techniques, sequences and procedures and for coordinating all portions of the Work under the Contract, unless Contract Documents give other specific instructions concerning these matters.
- 3.2.2 The Contractor shall be responsible to the Owner for acts and omissions of the Contractor's employees, Subcontractors and their agents and employees, and other persons performing portions of the Work under a contract with the Contractor.
- 3.2.3 The Contractor shall not be relieved of obligations to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents either by activities or duties of the Designer in the Designer's administration of the Contract, or by tests, inspections or approvals required or performed by persons other than the Contractor.
- 3.2.4 The Contractor shall be responsible for inspection of portions of Work already performed under this Contract to determine that such portions are in proper condition to receive subsequent Work.

#### **3.3 LABOR AND MATERIALS**

- 3.3.1 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall provide and pay for labor, materials, equipment, tools, construction equipment and machinery, water, heat, utilities, transportation, and other facilities and services necessary for proper execution and completion of the Work, whether temporary or permanent and whether or not incorporated or to be incorporated in the Work.

- 3.3.2 The Contractor shall enforce strict discipline and good order among the Contractor's employees and other persons carrying out the Contract. The Contract shall not permit employment of unfit persons or persons not skilled in tasks assigned to them.
- 3.3.3 Materials, equipment or items required for a complete job which are shown on the drawings but not mentioned in the specifications or materials, equipment or items required by the specifications but not shown on the drawings, shall be furnished and installed the same as though both shown on the drawings and required by the specifications.

### **3.4 WARRANTY**

- 3.4.1 The Contractor warrants to the Owner and Designer that materials and equipment furnished under the Contract will be of good quality and new unless otherwise required or permitted by the Contract Documents; that the Work will be free from defects not inherent in the quality required or permitted; and that the Work will conform with the requirements of the Contract Documents. Work not conforming to these requirements, including substitutions not properly approved and authorized, may be considered defective. If required by the Designer, the Contractor shall furnish satisfactory evidence as to the kind and quality of materials and equipment.
- 3.4.2 Except as otherwise specifically stated below, the Contractor shall guarantee his materials and workmanship against defect due to faulty materials or faulty workmanship or negligence for a period of twelve (12) months following Substantial Completion of the Work. Where the manufacturer's warranty on equipment or parts thereof exceeds twelve (12) months, the guarantee period on such equipment or parts thereof shall be extended to include the full warranty of the manufacturer. The Contractor shall repair or replace such defective materials, equipment or workmanship to the full satisfaction of the Owner within the stipulated guarantee period without cost to the Owner.

### **3.5 TAXES**

The Contractor shall pay sales, consumer, use and similar taxes for the Work or portions thereof provided by the Contractor which are legally enacted when bids are received or negotiations concluded, whether or not yet effective or merely scheduled to go into effect.

### **3.6 PERMITS, FEES AND NOTICES**

- 3.6.1 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall secure and pay for the building permit and other permits and governmental fees, licenses and inspections necessary for proper execution and completion of the Work, which are customarily secured after execution of the Contract for Construction, and which are legally required when bids are received or negotiations concluded.
- 3.6.2 The Contractor shall comply with and give notices required by laws, ordinances, rules, regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities bearing on performance of the Work.
- 3.6.3 It is not the Contractor's responsibility to ascertain that the Contract Documents are in accordance with applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, building codes, and rules and regulations. However, if the Contractor observes that portions of the Contract Documents are at variance therewith, the Contractor shall promptly notify the Designer and Owner in writing, and necessary changes shall be accomplished by appropriate Modification.



- 3.6.4 If the Contractor performs Work that the Contractor knows, or should have known, it to be contrary to laws, statutes, ordinances, building codes, and rules and regulations without such notice to the Designer and Owner, the Contractor shall assume full responsibility for such Work and shall bear the attributable costs.

### **3.7 ALLOWANCES**

- 3.7.1 The Contractor shall include in the Contract Sum all allowances stated in the Contract Documents. Items covered by allowances shall be supplied for such amounts and by such persons or entities as the Owner may direct, but the Contractor shall not be required to employ persons or entities against which the Contractor makes reasonable objection.

- 3.7.2 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents:

- (1) materials and equipment under an allowance shall be selected promptly by the Owner to avoid delay in the Work;
- (2) allowances shall cover the cost to the Contractor of materials and equipment Delivered to the site and all required taxes, less applicable trade discounts;
- (3) Contractor's costs for unloading and handling at the site, labor, installation costs, overhead, profit and other expenses contemplated for stated allowance amounts shall be included in the Contract Sum and not in the allowances;
- (4) whenever costs are more than or less than allowances, the Contract Sum shall be adjusted accordingly by a Change Order. The amount of the Change Order shall reflect (a) the difference between actual costs and the allowances under Clause 3.72(2) and (b) changes in Contractor's costs under Clause 3.7.2(3). To the extent that any allowance is not fully used, then the unused amount of each allowance shall be credited to the Owner by a Change Order.

### **3.8 SUPERINTENDENT**

The Contractor shall employ a competent superintendent and necessary assistants who shall be in attendance at the Project site during performance of the Work. The superintendent shall represent the Contractor, and communications given to the superintendent shall be as binding as if given to the Contractor. Important communications shall be confirmed in writing upon request.

### **3.9 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULES**

- 3.9.1 Promptly after being awarded the Contract, the Contractor shall prepare and submit for the Designer's review and comment a construction schedule for the Work. The schedule shall not exceed time limits provided in the Contract Documents, shall be revised at appropriate intervals as required by the conditions of the Work and Project, shall be related to the entire Project to the extent required by the Contract Documents, and shall provide for expeditious and practicable execution of the Work. If separate prime contracts are awarded by the Owner in connection with this Project, the Contractor shall additionally submit a Contractor's construction schedule for the Work to the General Contractor in order for the General Contractor to carry out its duties under Article 6.

3.9.2 The Contractor shall prepare and keep current, for the Designer's approval, a schedule of submittals which is coordinated with the Contractor's construction schedule and allows the Designer reasonable time to review submittals.

3.9.3 The Contractor shall conform to the most recent schedules.

### **3.10 DOCUMENTS AND SAMPLES AT THE SITE**

The Contractor shall maintain at the site for the Owner one record copy of the Drawings, Specifications, addenda, Change Orders, and other Modifications, in good order and marked currently to record changes and selections made during construction, and in addition approved Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples and similar required submittals. These shall be available to the Designer and shall be delivered to the Designer for submittal to the Owner upon completion of the Work.

### **3.11 SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA AND SAMPLES**

3.11.1 Shop Drawings are drawings, diagrams, schedules, and other data specifically prepared for the Work

by the Contractor or a Subcontractor, Sub-subcontractor, manufacturer, supplier, or distributor to illustrate some portion of the Work.

3.11.2 Product Data are illustrations, standard schedules, performance charts, instructions, brochures, diagrams and other information furnished by the Contractor to illustrate materials or equipment for some portion of the Work.

3.11.3 Samples are physical examples, which illustrate materials, equipment or workmanship and establish standards by which the Work will be judged.

3.11.4 Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals are not Contract Documents. The purpose of their submittal is to demonstrate for those portions of the Work for which submittals are required the way the Contractor proposes to conform to the information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents. Review by the Designer is subject to the limitations of Subparagraph 4.1.6.

3.11.5 The Contractor shall review, approve, and submit to the Designer Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples and similar submittals required by the Contract Documents with reasonable promptness and in such sequence as to cause no delay in the Work or in the activities of the Owner or of separate contractors. Submittals made by the Contractor which are not required by the Contract Documents may be returned without action.

3.11.6 The Contractor shall perform no portion of the Work requiring submittal and review of Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals until the respective submittal has been reviewed and approved or other appropriate action taken by the Designer. Such Work shall be in accordance with approved submittals.

3.11.7 By approving and submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples and similar submittals, the Contractor represents that the Contractor has determined and verified materials, field measurements and field construction criteria related thereto, or will do so, and has checked and coordinated the information contained within such submittals with the requirements of the Work and of the Contract Documents.

- 3.11.8 The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for deviations from requirements of the Contract Documents by the Designer's review and approval of Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals unless the Contractor has specifically informed the Designer in writing of such deviation at the time of submittal and the Designer has given written approval to the specific deviation. The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for errors or omissions in Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals by the Designer's approval thereof.
- 3.11.9 The Contractor shall direct specific attention, in writing or on resubmitted Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples or similar submittals, to revisions other than those requested by the Designer on previous submittals.
- 3.11.10 Informational submittals upon which the Designer is not expected to take responsive action may be so identified in the Contract Documents.
- 3.11.11 When professional certification of performance criteria of materials, systems, or equipment is required by the Contract Documents, the Designer shall be entitled to rely upon the accuracy and completeness of such calculations and certificates.

### **3.12 USE OF SITE**

The Contractor shall confine operations at the site to areas permitted by law, ordinances, permits, and the Contract Documents and shall not unreasonably encumber the site with materials or equipment.

### **3.13 CUTTING AND PATCHING**

- 3.13.1 The Contractor shall be responsible for all cutting, fitting, or patching required to complete the Work or to make its parts fit together properly.
- 3.13.2 The Contractor shall not damage or endanger a portion of the Work or fully or partially completed construction of the Owner or separate contractors by cutting, patching, or otherwise altering such construction, or by excavation. The Contractor shall not cut or otherwise alter such construction by the Owner or a separate contractor except with written consent of the Owner and of such separate contractor; such consent shall not be unreasonably withheld. The Contractor shall not unreasonably withhold from the Owner or a separate contractor the Contractor's consent to cutting or otherwise altering the Work.

### **3.14 CLEANING UP**

- 3.14.1 The Contractor shall keep the premises and surrounding area free from accumulation of waste materials rubbish caused by operations under the Contract. At completion of the Work the Contractor shall remove from and about the Project waste materials, rubbish, the Contractor's tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus materials.
- 3.14.2 If the Contractor fails to clean up as provided in the Contract Documents, the Owner may do so and the cost thereof shall be charged to the Contractor.

### **3.15 ACCESS TO WORK**

The Contractor shall provide the Owner and Designer access to the Work in preparation and progress wherever located.

### **3.16 ROYALTIES AND PATENTS**

The Contractor shall pay all royalties and license fees. The Contractor shall defend suits or claims for infringement of patent rights and shall hold the Owner and Designer harmless from loss unless a particular design, process or product of a particular manufacturer or manufacturers is required by the Contract Documents. However, if the Contractor has reason to believe that the required design, process, or product is an infringement of a patent, the Contractor shall be responsible for such loss unless such information is promptly furnished to the Designer.

### **3.17 INDEMNIFICATION**

- 3.17.1 To the fullest extent permitted by law, the Contractor shall indemnify and hold harmless the Owner, Designer, Designer's consultants, and agents and its employees, from and against claims, damages, economic losses and expenses of any kind (including but not limited to fees and charges of engineers, attorneys, and other professionals and costs related to court action or arbitration), arising out of or resulting from performance of the Work under this Agreement, provided such claim, damage, loss or expense is attributable to bodily injury, sickness, disease or death, or to injury to or destruction of tangible property (other than the Work itself) including loss of use resulting therefrom, caused in whole or in part by negligent acts or omissions of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by them or anyone for whose acts they may be liable unless caused in whole or part by the negligence of Owner. Such obligation shall not be construed to negate, abridge, or reduce other rights or obligations of indemnity which would otherwise exist as to a party or person described in this Paragraph 3.17.
- 3.17.2 In claims against any person or entity indemnified under this Paragraph 3.17, by an employee of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by them or anyone for whose acts they may be liable, the indemnification obligation under this Paragraph 3.17, shall not be limited by a limitation on amount or type of damages, compensation or benefits payable by or for the Contractor or a Subcontractor under workers' compensation acts, disability benefit acts or other employee benefit acts.
- 3.17.3 The obligations of the Contractor under this Paragraph 3.17, shall not extend to the liability of the Designer, the Designer's consultants, and agents and employees of any of them arising out of (a) the preparation or approval of maps, drawings, opinions, reports, surveys, Change Orders, designs or specifications, or (b) the giving of or the failure to give directions or instructions by the Designer, the Designer's consultants, and agents and employees of any of them provided such giving or failure to give is the primary cause of the injury or damage.

## **Article 4**

### **Administration of the Contract**

#### **4.1 DESIGNER'S ADMINISTRATION OF THE CONTRACT**

- 4.1.1 The Designer will provide administration of the Contract as described in the Contract Documents and will be the Owner's representative during construction through final payment, and with the Owner's concurrence, from time to time during the correction period described in Paragraph 11.2. The Designer will advise and consult with the Owner. The Designer will have authority to act on behalf of the Owner only to the extent provided in the Contract Documents, unless otherwise modified by written instrument in accordance with other provisions of the Contract.

- 4.1.2 The Designer will not have control over or charge of and will not be responsible for construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures, or for safety precautions and programs in connection with the Work, since these are solely the Contractor's responsibility. The Designer will not be responsible for the Contractor's failure to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents. The Designer will not have control over or charge of and will not be responsible for acts or omissions of the Contractor, Subcontractors, or their agents or employees, or of any other persons performing portions of the Work.
- 4.1.3 Communications Facilitating Contract Administration. Except as otherwise provided in the Contract Documents or when direct communications have been specifically authorized, the Owner and Contractor shall endeavor to communicate through the Designer. Communications by and with the Designer's consultants shall be through the Designer. Communications by and with Subcontractors and material suppliers shall be through the Contractor. Communications by and with separate contractors shall be through the Designer.
- 4.1.4 Based on the Designer's inspections, observations and evaluations of the Contractor's Applications for Payment, the Designer will review and certify the amounts due to the Contractor and will issue Certificates for Payment in such amounts.
- 4.1.5 The Designer will have authority to reject Work which does not conform to the Contract Documents. Whenever the Designer considers it necessary or advisable for implementation of the intent of the Contract Documents, the Designer will have authority to require additional inspection or testing of the Work in accordance with Subparagraphs 12.7.2 and 12.7.3, whether or not such Work is fabricated, installed or completed. However, neither this authority of the Designer nor a decision made in good faith either to exercise or not to exercise such authority shall give rise to a duty or responsibility of the Designer to the Contractor. Subcontractors, material and equipment suppliers, their agents or employees, or other persons performing portions of the Work.
- 4.1.6 The Designer will review and approve or take other appropriate action upon the Contractor's submittals such as Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples but only for the limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents. The Designer's action will be taken with such reasonable promptness as to cause no delay in the Work or in the activities of the Owner, Contractor, or separate contractors, while allowing sufficient time in the Designer's professional judgement to permit adequate review. Review of such submittals is not conducted for the purpose of determining the accuracy and completeness of other details such as dimensions and quantities, or for substantiating instructions for installation or performance of equipment or systems, all of which remain the responsibility of the Contractor as required by the Contract Documents. The Designer's review of the Contractor's submittals shall not relieve the Contractor of the obligations under Article 3. The Designer's review shall not constitute approval of safety precautions or, unless otherwise specifically stated by the Designer, of any construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. The Designer's approval of a specific item shall not indicate approval of an assembly of which the item is a component.
- 4.1.7 The Designer will prepare Change Orders and Construction Change Directives and may authorize minor changes in the Work as provided in Paragraph 7.4.
- 4.1.8 The Designer will conduct inspections to determine the date or dates of Substantial Completion and the date of final completion, will receive and forward to the Owner for the Owner's review and records, written warranties and related documents required by the Contract and assembled by the

Contractor, and will issue a final Certificate for Payment upon compliance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

- 4.1.9 The Designer will interpret and decide matters concerning performance under and requirements of the Contract documents on written request of either the Owner or Contractor. The Designer's response to such requests will be made with reasonable promptness and within any time limits agreed upon. If no agreement is made concerning the time within which interpretations required of the Designer shall be furnished in compliance with this Subparagraph 4.1.9, then delay shall not be recognized on account of failure by the Designer to furnish such interpretations until 15 days after written request is made for them.
- 4.1.10 Interpretations and decisions of the Designer will be consistent with the intent of and reasonably inferable from the Contract Documents and will be in writing or in the form of drawings. When making such interpretations and decisions, the Designer will endeavor to secure faithful performance by both Owner and Contractor and will not show partiality to either.
- 4.1.11 The Designer's decisions on matters relating to aesthetic effect will be final if consistent with the intent expressed in the Contract Documents.
- 4.1.12 If the Contractor fails to correct Work which is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents as required by Paragraph 11.2 or persistently fails to carry out Work in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Designer may order the Contractor to stop the Work, or any portion thereof, until the cause for such order has been eliminated; however, the right of the Designer to stop the Work shall not give rise to a duty on the part of the Designer to exercise this right for the benefit of the Contractor or any other person or entity.

## **4.2 CLAIMS AND DISPUTES**

- 4.2.1 A Claim is demand or assertion by one of the parties seeking, as a matter of right, adjustment or interpretation of Contract terms, payment of money, extension of time or other relief with respect to the terms of the Contract. The term "Claim" also includes other disputes and matters in question between the Owner and Contractor arising out of or relating to the Contract. Claims must be made pursuant to the Dispute Resolution Procedure set forth in Paragraph 4.4. The responsibility to substantiate Claims shall rest with the party making the Claim.
- 4.2.2 Decision of Designer. Claims, including those alleging an error or omission by the Designer, shall be referred initially to the Designer for action as provided in Paragraph 4.4. A decision by the Designer shall be required as a condition precedent to mediation and litigation of a Claim between any party involved in this construction Project as to all such matters arising prior to the date final payment is due, regardless of whether such matters relate to execution and progress of the Work or the extent to which the Work has been completed. The decision by the Designer in response to a Claim shall not be a condition precedent to litigation in the event (1) the position of Designer is vacant, (2) the Designer has not received evidence or has failed to render a decision within agreed time limits, or (3) 45 days have passed after the Claim has been referred to the Designer.
- 4.2.3 Time Limits on Claims. Claims by the Contractor must be made within 10 days after occurrence of the event giving rise to such Claim or within 10 days after the Contractor first recognizes the condition giving rise to the Claim, whichever is later. Claims must be made by written notice. An additional Claim made after the initial Claim has been implemented by Change Order will not be considered.

- 4.2.4 Continuing Contract Performance. Pending final resolution of a Claim, unless otherwise agreed in writing, the Contractor shall proceed diligently with performance of the Contract and the Owner shall continue to make payments in accordance with the Contract Documents.
- 4.2.5 Waivers of Claims: Final Payment. The making of final payment shall constitute a waiver of Claims by the Owner except those arising from:
- (1) unsettled claims arising out of the Contract; or
  - (2) failure of the Work to comply with the requirements of the Contract Documents; or
  - (3) terms of special warranties required by the Contract Documents.
- 4.2.6 Claims for Concealed or Unknown Conditions. If conditions are encountered at the site which are (a) subsurface or otherwise concealed physical conditions which differ materially from those indicated in the Contract Documents or (b) unknown physical conditions of an unusual nature, which differ materially from those ordinarily found to exist and generally recognized as inherent in construction activities of the character provided for in the Contract Documents, then notice by the observing party shall be given to the other party promptly before conditions are disturbed and in no event later than 10 days after first observance of the conditions. The Designer will promptly investigate such conditions and, if they differ materially and cause an increase or decrease in the Contractor's cost of, or time required for, performance of any part of the Work, will recommend an equitable adjustment in the Contract Sum or Contract Time, or both. If the Designer determines that the conditions at the site are not materially different from those indicated in the Contract Documents and that no change in the terms of the Contract is justified, the Designer shall notify the Owner and Contractor in writing stating the reasons. Claims by either party in opposition to such determination must be made within 21 days after the Designer has given notice of the decision. If the Owner and Contractor cannot agree on an adjustment in the Contract Sum or Contract Time, the adjustment shall be referred to the Designer for initial determination, subject to further proceedings pursuant to Paragraph 4.4.
- 4.2.7 Claims for Additional Cost. If the Contractor wishes to make Claim for an increase in the Contract Sum, written notice as provided herein shall be given before proceeding to execute the Work. Prior notice is not required for Claims relating to an emergency endangering life or property arising under Paragraph 10.3. If the Contractor believes additional cost is involved for reasons including but not limited to (a) a written interpretation from the Designer, (b) a written order for a minor change in the Work issued by the Designer, (c) termination of the Contract by the Owner, Claim shall be filed in accordance with the procedure established herein. This Article, and Article 7, shall be the exclusive means by which the Contractor hereby waives any and all right to claim additional cost or damages by any other remedy including, without limitation, quantum meruit, subrogation, or implied contract.
- 4.2.8 Claims for Additional Time. If the Contractor wishes to make Claim for an increase in the Contract Time, written notice as provided herein shall be given. The Contractor's Claim shall include an estimate of cost and of probable effect of delay on progress of the Work. In the case of a continuing delay only one Claim is necessary. Adverse weather conditions shall not be a basis for a Claim for additional costs.

### **4.3 INJURY OR DAMAGE TO PERSON OR PROPERTY**

If either party to the Contract suffers injury or damage to person or property because of an act or omission of the other party, of any of the other party's employees or agents, or of others for whose acts such party is legally liable, written notice as such injury or damage, whether or not insured, shall be given to the other party within a reasonable time not exceeding 10 days after first observance. The notice shall provide sufficient detail to enable the other party to investigate the matter. If a Claim for additional cost or time related to this Claim is to be asserted, it shall be filed as provided in Subparagraphs 4.2.7 or 4.2.8.

### **4.4 DISPUTE RESOLUTION PROCEDURE**

- 4.4.1 To prevent all disputes and litigation, it is agreed by the parties that any claim, question, difficulty or dispute arising from this Agreement, or the construction process shall be first submitted to the Designer to address the issue. Upon review of the Claim, the Designer shall take one or more of the following preliminary actions within ten (10) days of receipt of a Claim: (1) request additional supporting data from the claimant, (2) submit a schedule to the parties indicating when the Designer expects to take action, (3) reject the Claim in whole or in part stating reasons for rejection, (4) recommend approval of the Claim by the other party, or (5) suggest a compromise. The Designer may also, but is not obligated to, notify the surety, if any, of the nature and amount of the Claim.
- 4.4.2 If a Claim has been resolved, the Designer will prepare or obtain appropriate documentation.
- 4.4.3 If a Claim has not been resolved, the party making the Claim shall, within ten (10) days after the Designer's preliminary response, take one or more of the following actions: (1) submit additional supporting data requested by the Designer, (2) modify the initial Claim and resubmit it to the Designer, or (3) notify the Designer that the initial Claim stands and submit the Claim to the Onslow County Manager for mediation pursuant to Subparagraph 4.4.4, below.
- 4.4.4 The Onslow County Manager, as mediator, shall address any properly submitted claim, question, difficulty or dispute arising from this Agreement or the construction process, which has not been satisfactorily resolved by the Designer. Such requests shall be made to the Onslow County Manager in writing within ten (10) days after the Designer's preliminary response. The mediator shall notify Contractor in writing of the decision within thirty (30) calendar days from the date of the submission of the claim, question, difficulty, or dispute, unless the mediator requires additional time to gather information or allow the parties to provide additional information. The mediator's orders, decisions, and decrees shall be non-binding. Mediation, pursuant to the Subparagraph, shall be a pre-condition to initiating litigation concerning the dispute. During the pendency of any dispute and after a determination thereof, the parties to the dispute shall act in good faith to mitigate any potential damages including utilization of construction schedule changes and alternate means of construction.
- 4.4.5 The mediation session shall be private. Prior to commencement of mediation, if requested by either party or the mediator, the parties and the mediator shall execute a written confidentiality agreement in accordance with the provisions of North Carolina law. All such mediation sessions shall be held in Onslow County, North Carolina.
- 4.4.6 If, as a result of mediation, a voluntary settlement is reached and the parties to the dispute agree that such settlement shall be reduced to writing, the mediator shall be deemed appointed and constituted an arbitrator for the sole purpose of signing the mediated settlement agreement. Such



agreement shall be and shall have the same force and effect as an arbitration award, and judgement may be entered upon it in accordance with applicable law in any court of competent jurisdiction.

- 4.4.7 If the disputed issue cannot be resolved in mediation or either party disagrees with the results of the mediation, the parties may seek resolution in the General Court of Justice in the County of Onslow and the State of North Carolina. If a party fails to comply in strict accordance with the requirements of this Article, the non-complying party specifically waives all of its rights provided hereunder, including its rights and remedies under State law.
- 4.4.8 The dispute resolution procedure set forth in this Paragraph shall be made available to any party involved in this construction project including County, Contractor, Designer, Subcontractors as well as Sub-subcontractors and is a precondition to initiation of litigation concerning the dispute.

## **Article 5**

### **Subcontractors**

#### **5.1 DEFINITIONS**

- 5.1.1 A Subcontractor is a person or entity who has a direct contract with the Contractor to perform a portion of the Work at the site. The term "Subcontractor" is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number and means a Subcontractor or an authorized representative of the Subcontractor. The term "Subcontractor" does not include a separate contractor or subcontractors of a separate contractor.
- 5.1.2 A Sub-subcontractor is a person or entity who has a direct or indirect contract with a Subcontractor to perform a portion of the Work at the site. The term "Sub-subcontractor" is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number and means a Sub-subcontractor or an authorized representative of the Sub-subcontractor.

#### **5.2 AWARD OF SUBCONTRACTS AND OTHER CONTRACTS FOR PORTIONS OF THE WORK**

- 5.2.1 Unless otherwise stated in the Contract Documents or the bidding requirements, the Contractor, as soon as practicable after award of the Contract, shall furnish in writing to the Owner through the Designer the names of persons or entities (including those who are to furnish materials or equipment fabricated to a special design) proposed for each principal portion of the Work, including (1) Heating, ventilating, and air conditioning, (2) Plumbing, (3) Electrical, and (4) General. The Designer will promptly reply to the Contractor in writing stating whether or not the Owner or the Designer, after due investigation, has reasonable objection to any such proposed person or entity. Failure of the Owner or Designer to reply promptly shall constitute notice of no reasonable objection.
- 5.2.2 The Contractor shall NOT substitute any person or company listed in the Contractor's original Bid Proposal, except (1) when one of the listed subcontractor's bid is later determined by the Contractor to be non-responsible or non-responsive or the listed subcontractor refuses to enter into a contract for the complete performance of the Work, or (2) with the approval of the Owner for good cause shown by the Contractor.

### **5.3 SUBCONTRACTUAL RELATIONS**

By appropriate agreement, written where legally required for validity, the Contractor shall require each Subcontractor, to the extent of the Work to be performed by the Subcontractor, to be bound to the Contractor by terms and conditions of the Contract Documents and Contract for Construction, and to assume toward the Contractor all the obligations and responsibilities which the Contractor, by these documents, assumes toward the Owner and Designer. Each subcontract agreement shall preserve and protect the rights of the Owner and Designer under the Contract Documents with respect to the Work to be performed by the Subcontractor so that subcontracting thereof will not prejudice such rights, and shall allow to the Subcontractor, unless specifically provided otherwise in the subcontract agreement, the benefit of all rights, remedies and redress against the Contractor that the Contractor, by the Contract Documents, has against the Owner. Where appropriate, the Contractor shall require each Subcontractor to enter into similar agreements with Sub-subcontractors. The Contractor shall make available to each proposed Subcontractor, prior to the execution of the subcontract agreement, copies of the Contract Documents to which the Subcontractor will be bound, and, upon written request of the Subcontractor, identify to the Subcontractor terms and conditions of the proposed subcontract agreement which may be at variance with the Contract Documents. Subcontractors shall similarly make copies of applicable portions of such documents available to their respective proposed Sub-subcontractors.

### **Article 6**

#### **Construction by Owner or by Separate Contractors**

#### **6.1 OWNER'S RIGHT TO PERFORM CONSTRUCTION AND TO AWARD SEPARATE CONTRACTS**

- 6.1.1 The Owner reserves the right to perform construction or operations related to the Project with the Owner's own forces, and to award separate contracts in connection with other portions of the Project or other construction or operations on the site.
- 6.1.2 When separate contracts are awarded for different portions of the Project or other construction or operations on the site, the term "Contractor" in the Contract Documents in each case shall mean the Contractor who executes each separate Owner-Contractor Agreement.
- 6.1.3 The General Contractor shall provide for coordination of the activities of each separate Contractor with the Work of the Contractor, who shall cooperate with them. The Contractor shall participate with other separate Contractors and the General Contractor in reviewing their construction schedules. The Contractor shall make any revisions to the construction schedule deemed necessary after a joint review and mutual agreement. The construction schedules shall then constitute the schedules to be used by the Contractor and separate contractors until subsequently revised.
- 6.1.4 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, when the Owner performs construction or operations related to the Project with the Owner's own forces, the Owner shall be deemed to be subject to the same obligations and to have the same rights which apply to the Contractor under the Conditions of the Contract, including, without excluding others, those stated in Article 3, this Article 6, and Articles 10 and 11.
- 6.1.5 The General Contractor shall be responsible for scheduling the work of all contractors; the maintenance of the progress schedule for all prime contractors for this Project; and for the notification of the Designer of any changes in the progress schedule.

## **6.2 MUTUAL RESPONSIBILITY**

- 6.2.1 The Contractor shall afford the Owner and separate Contractors reasonable opportunity for introduction and storage of their materials and equipment and performance of their activities and shall connect and coordinate the Contractor's construction and operations with theirs as required by the Contract Documents.
- 6.2.2 If part of the Contractor's Work depends for proper execution or results upon construction or operations by the Owner or a separate Contractor, the Contractor shall, prior to proceeding with that portion of the Work, promptly report to the Designer apparent discrepancies or defects in such other construction that would render it unsuitable for such proper execution and results. Failure of the Contractor to report shall constitute an acknowledgement that the Owner's or separate Contractors completed, or partially completed, construction is fit and proper to receive the Contractor's Work, except as to defects not then reasonably discoverable.
- 6.2.3 Costs caused by delays, by improperly timed activities, defective construction, or any other damages shall be borne by the party responsible therefor. The Owner shall not be liable nor responsible for any delays or damages to the Contractor caused by separate Contractors or the Designer.
- 6.2.4 The Contractor shall promptly remedy damage wrongfully caused by the Contractor to completed or partially completed construction or to property of the Owner or separate Contractors as provided in Subparagraph 10.2.5.
- 6.2.5 Claims and other disputes and matters in question between the Contractor and a separate Contractor shall be subject to the provisions of Paragraphs 4.2 and 4.4, provided the separate Contractor has reciprocal obligations.
- 6.2.6 The Owner and each separate Contractor shall have the same responsibilities for cutting and patching as are described for the Contractor in Paragraph 3.13.

## **6.3 OWNER'S RIGHT TO CLEAN UP**

If a dispute arises among the Contractor, separate Contractors, and the Owner as to the responsibility under their respective contracts for maintaining the premises and surrounding area free from waste materials and rubbish as described in Paragraph 3.14, the Owner may clean up and allocate the cost among those responsible as the Designer determines to be just.

## **Article 7** **Changes in the Work**

### **7.1 CHANGES**

- 7.1.1 Changes in the Work may be accomplished after execution of the Contract, and without invalidating the Contract, by Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or order for a minor change in the Work, subject to the limitations stated in this Article 7 and elsewhere in the Contract Documents.
- 7.1.2 A Change Order shall be based upon agreement among the Owner, Contractor, and Designer; a Construction Change Directive requires agreement by the Owner and Designer and may or may

not be agreed to by the Contractor; an order for a minor change in the Work may be issued by the Designer alone pursuant to Paragraph 7.4.

- 7.1.3 Changes in the Work shall be performed under applicable Provisions of the Contract Documents, and the Contractor shall proceed promptly, unless otherwise provided in the Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or order for a minor change in the Work.
- 7.1.4 If unit prices are stated in the Contract Documents or subsequently agreed upon, and if quantities originally contemplated are so changed in a proposed Change Order or Construction Change Directive that application of such unit prices to quantities of Work proposed will cause substantial inequity to the Owner or Contractor, the applicable unit prices shall be equitably adjusted.
- 7.1.5 Overhead and profit shall not exceed 15% of the value of labor and material for work performed by any contractor or subcontractor. If the work is performed by a subcontractor, the prime contractor's overhead and profit shall not exceed 5%.

## **7.2 CHANGE ORDERS**

- 7.2.1 A Change Order is a written instrument prepared by the Designer and signed by the Owner, Contractor, and Designer, stating their agreement upon all of the following:
  - (1) a change in the Work;
  - (2) the amount of the adjustment in the Contract Sum, if any; and
  - (3) the extent of the adjustment in the Contract Time, if any.
- 7.2.2 Methods used in determining adjustments to the Contract Sum may include those listed in Subparagraph 7.3.3.

## **7.3 CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVES**

- 7.3.1 A Construction Change Directive is a written order prepared by the Designer and signed by the Owner and Designer, directing a change in the Work, and stating a proposed basis for adjustment, if any, in the Contract Sum or Contract Time, or both. The Owner may by Construction Change Directive, without invalidating the Contract, order changes in the Work within the general scope of the Contract consisting of additions, deletions or other revisions, the Contract Sum and Contract Time being adjusted accordingly.
- 7.3.2 A Construction Change Directive shall be used in the absence of total agreement on the terms of a Change Order.
- 7.3.3 If the Construction Change Directive provides for an adjustment to the Contract Sum, the adjustment shall be based on one of the following methods:
  - (1) mutual acceptance of a lump sum properly itemized and supported by sufficient substantiating data to permit evaluation;
  - (2) unit prices stated in the Contract Documents or subsequently agreed upon;
  - (3) cost to be determined in a manner agreed upon by the parties and a mutually

acceptable fixed or percentage fee; or

(4) as provided in Subparagraph 7.3.6.

7.3.4 Upon receipt of Construction Change Directive, the Contractor shall promptly proceed with the change in the Work involved and advise the Designer of the Contractor's agreement or disagreement with the method, if any, provided in the Construction Change Directive for determining the proposed adjustment in the Contract Sum or Contract Time.

7.3.5 A Construction Change Directive signed by the Contractor indicates the agreement of the Contractor therewith, including adjustment in Contract Sum and Contract Time or the method for determining them. Such agreement shall be effective immediately and shall be recorded as a Change Order.

7.3.6 If the Contractor does not respond promptly or disagrees with the method for adjustment in the Contract Sum, the method and the adjustment shall be determined by the Designer on the basis of reasonable expenditures and savings of those performing the Work attributable to the change, including, in case of an increase in the Contract Sum, a reasonable allowance for overhead and profit. In such case, and also under Clause 7.3.3(3), the Contractor shall keep and present, in such form as the Designer may prescribe, an itemized accounting together with appropriate supporting data. Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, costs for the purposes of this Subparagraph 7.3.6 shall be limited to the following:

- (1) costs of labor, including social security, old age and unemployment insurance, fringe benefits required by agreement or custom, and workers' compensation insurance;
- (2) costs of materials, supplies and equipment, including cost of transportation, whether incorporated or consumed;
- (3) rental costs of machinery and equipment, exclusive of hand tools, whether rented from the Contractor or others;
- (4) costs of premiums for all bonds and insurance, permit fees, and sales, use or similar taxes related to the Work; and
- (5) additional costs of supervision and field office personnel directly attributable to the change.

7.3.7 Pending final determination of cost to the Owner, amounts not in dispute may be included in Applications for Payment. The amount of credit to be allowed by the Contractor to the Owner for a deletion or change which results in a net decrease in the Contract Sum shall be actual net cost as confirmed by the Designer. When both additions and credits covering related Work or substitutions are involved in a change, the allowance for overhead and profit shall be figured on the basis of net increase, if any, with respect to that change.

7.3.8 If the Owner and Contractor do not agree with the adjustment in Contract Time or the method for determining it, the adjustment or the method shall be referred to the Designer for determination.

7.3.9 When the Owner and Contractor agree with the determination made by the Designer concerning the adjustments in the Contract Sum and Contract Time, or otherwise reach agreement upon the

adjustments, such agreement shall be effective immediately and shall be recorded by preparation and execution of an appropriate Change Order.

#### **7.4 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK**

The Designer will have authority to order minor changes in the Work not involving adjustment in the Contract Sum or extension of the Contract Time and not inconsistent with the intent of the Contract Documents. Such changes shall be affected by written order and shall be binding on the Owner and Contractor. The Contractor shall carry out such written orders promptly.

### **Article 8** **Time**

#### **8.1 DEFINITIONS**

- 8.1.1 Unless otherwise provided, Contract Time is the period of time, including authorized adjustments, allotted in the Contract Documents for Substantial Completion of the Work.
- 8.1.2 The date of commencement of the Work is the date established in the Agreement. The date shall not be postponed by the failure to act of the Contractor or of persons or entities for whom the Contractor is responsible.
- 8.1.3 The date of Substantial Completion is the date certified by the Designer in accordance with Paragraph 9.9.
- 8.1.4 The term “day” as used in the Contract Documents shall mean calendar day unless otherwise specifically defined.

#### **8.2 PROGRESS AND COMPLETION**

- 8.2.1 Time limits stated in the Contract Documents are of the essence of the Contract. By executing the Agreement, the Contractor confirms that the Contract Time is a reasonable period for performing the Work. The Contractor and the Contractor’s surety shall be liable for and shall pay the Owner such sums as shall be set forth in the Agreement between Owner and Contractor as liquidated damages each calendar day of delay until the Work is substantially complete.
- 8.2.2 The Contractor shall not knowingly, except by agreement or instruction of the Owner in writing, prematurely commence operations on the site or elsewhere prior to the effective date of insurance required by the Contract for Construction to be furnished by the Contractor. The date of commencement of the Work shall not be changed by the effective date of such insurance. Unless the date of commencement is established by a notice to proceed given by the Designer, the Contractor shall notify the Owner and Designer in writing not less than five days before commencing the Work.
- 8.2.3 The Contractor shall proceed expeditiously with adequate forces and shall achieve Substantial Completion within the Contract Time.

#### **8.3 DELAYS AND EXTENSIONS OF TIME**

- 8.3.1 If the Contractor is delayed at any time in progress of the Work by an act or neglect of the Owner or Designer, or of an employee of either, or of a separate Contractor employed by the Owner, or by

changes ordered in the Work, or by labor disputes, fire, unusual delay in deliveries, unavoidably casualties or other causes beyond the Contractor's control, or by delay authorized by the Owner pending litigation, or by other causes which the Designer determines may justify delay, then the Contract Time shall be extended by Change Order for such reasonable time as the Designer may determine.

- 8.3.2 Claims relating to time shall be made in accordance with applicable provisions of Subparagraph 4.2.8.
- 8.3.3 Should the Work be interrupted or hindered by the Owner or Designer, the Contractor shall be entitled to an extension of time pursuant to Paragraph 4.2 in an amount equal to such interruption or hindrance, but such interruption or hindrance shall not constitute a claim for damages nor for loss of anticipated profits by the Contractor.
- 8.3.4 Should the Work be delayed in whole by any act or acts of the Contractor, the Contractor shall not be entitled to an extension of time pursuant to Paragraph 4.2, nor shall such delay constitute a claim either for damages or for loss of anticipated profits by the Contractor. Should the Work be delayed in part by any act or acts of the Contractor and in part by any act or acts of the Owner or Designer, the Contractor shall be entitled to an extension of time pursuant to Paragraph 4.2 in an amount equal to that portion of the delay for which the Contractor is not responsible, but such delay shall not constitute a claim either for damages or for loss of anticipated profits by the Contractor.
- 8.3.5 Should the Work be delayed, interrupted, or hindered, in whole or in part, by any act or acts of any separate prime contractors, the Contractor shall be entitled to an extension of time pursuant to Subparagraph 4.2.8 in an amount equal to such delay, interruption or hindrance but such delay, interruption or hindrance shall not constitute a claim for damages nor for loss of anticipated profits by the Contractor.

## **Article 9**

### **Payments and Completion**

#### **9.1 CONTRACT SUM**

The Contract Sum is stated in the Agreement and, including authorized adjustments, is the total amount payable by the Owner to the Contractor for performance of the Work under the Contract Documents.

#### **9.2 SCHEDULE OF VALUES**

Before the first Application for Payment, the Contractor shall submit to the Designer a Schedule of Values allocated to various portions of the Work, prepared in such form, and supported by such data to substantiate its accuracy as the Designer may require. This Schedule of Values, unless objected to by the Designer, shall be used as a basis for reviewing the Contractor's Applications for Payment.

#### **9.3 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT**

- 9.3.1 At least twenty (20) days before the date established for each progress payment, the Contractor shall submit to the Designer an itemized Application for Payment for operations completed in accordance with the Schedule of Values. Such application shall be notarized, supported by such data substantiating the Contractor's right to payment as the Owner or Designer may require, such

as copies of requisitions from subcontractors and material suppliers and reflecting retainage if provided for elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

- 9.3.2 Such applications may include requests for payment on account of changes in the Work which have been properly authorized by Construction Change Directives but not yet included in Change Orders.
- 9.3.3 Such applications may not include requests for payment of amounts the Contractor does not intend to pay to a Subcontractor or material supplier because of a dispute or other reason.
- 9.3.4 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, payments shall be made on account of materials and equipment delivered and suitably stored at the site for subsequent incorporation in the Work. If approved in advance by the Owner, payment may similarly be made for materials and equipment suitably stored off the site at a location agreed upon in writing. Payment for materials and equipment stored on or off the site shall be conditioned upon compliance by the Contractor with procedures satisfactory to the Owner to establish the Owner's title to such materials and equipment or otherwise protect the Owner's interest, and shall include applicable insurance, storage, and transportation to the site for such materials and equipment stored off the site.
- 9.3.5 The Contractor warrants that title to all Work covered by an Application for Payment will pass to the Owner no later than the time of payment. The Contractor further warrants that upon submittal of an Application for Payment all Work for which Certificates for Payment have been previously issued and payments received from the Owner shall, to the best of the Contractor's knowledge, information and belief, be free and clear of liens, claims, security interests, or encumbrances in favor of the Contractor, Subcontractors, material suppliers, or other persons or entities making a claim by reason of having provided labor, materials, and equipment relating to the Work.
- 9.3.6 Provided an Application for Payment is received by the Designer not later than the tenth (10<sup>th</sup>) day of a month, the Owner shall make payment to the Contractor pursuant to a Certificate of Payment not later than the thirtieth (30<sup>th</sup>) day of the month.

#### **9.4 RETAINAGE**

To ensure proper performance of this Contract, Owner shall retain five percent (5%) of the amount of each approved Application for Payment until the project Work is 50% complete provided that the Contractor continues to perform satisfactorily, and any non-conforming Work identified in writing prior to that date has been corrected by the Contractor and accepted by the Owner. If the Owner determines the Contractor's performance is unsatisfactory, the Owner may reinstate retainage in the amount of 5% for each subsequent periodic Application for Payment until the Contractor's performance becomes satisfactory. The project shall be deemed fifty percent (50%) complete when the Contractor's gross project invoices, excluding the value of materials stored off-site, equal or exceed fifty percent (50%) of the value of the contract, except the value of materials stored on-site shall not exceed twenty percent (20%) of the contractor's gross project invoices for the purpose of determining whether the project is fifty percent (50%) complete. Following 50% completion of the project, the Owner may also withhold additional retainage from any subsequent periodic payment, not to exceed 5%, in order to allow the Owner to retain 2 1/2% total retainage through the completion of the project. Within sixty (60) days after the submission of a final pay application, the Owner with written consent of the Surety shall release to the Contractor all retainage on payments held by the Owner if (1) the Owner receives a certificate of substantial completion from the architect, Designer, or design consultant in charge of this Project, or (2) the Owner receives beneficial occupancy or use of the project. However, the Owner may retain



sufficient funds to secure completion of the project or corrections to any Work. If the Owner retains funds, the amount retained shall not exceed two- and one-half times the estimated cost of the Work to be completed or corrected. Any reduction in the amount of retainage on payments shall be with the consent of the Contractor's Surety. Retainer provisions contained in Contractor's subcontracts may not exceed the terms and conditions for retainage provided herein. Contractor is further required to satisfy the retainage provisions of N.C.G.S. §143-134.1(b2) with regard to subcontracts for early finishing trades (structural steel, piling, caisson, and demolition) and to coordinate the release of retainage for such trades from the retainage held by Owner from the Contractor pursuant to statute. Nothing herein shall prevent the Owner from withholding payment to the Contractor in addition to the amounts identified herein for unsatisfactory job progress, defective construction not remedied, disputed Work, or third-party claims filed against the Owner or reasonable evidence that a third-party claim will be filed.

## **9.5 CERTIFICATES FOR PAYMENT**

- 9.5.1 The Designer will, within seven days after receipt of the Contractor's Application for Payment, either issue to the Owner a Certificate for Payment, with a copy to the Contractor, for such amount as the Designer determines is properly due or notify the Contractor and Owner in writing of the Designer's reasons for withholding certification in whole, or in part, as provided in Paragraph 9.6.1.
- 9.5.2 The Designer's certification for payment shall constitute a representation to the Owner, based on the Designer's inspections at the site and on the data comprising the Contractor's Application for Payment, that the Work has progressed to the point indicated and that the inspections of the construction, repairs, or installations have been conducted with the degree of care and professional skill and judgement ordinarily exercised by a member of his profession; and that to the best of his knowledge and in the professional opinion of the Designer, the Contractor has fulfilled the obligations of such plans, specifications, and contract. The Designer's certification for payment shall be signed and sealed by the Designer and presented to the Owner. The foregoing representations are subject to an evaluation of the Work for conformance with the Contract Documents upon Substantial Completion, to results of subsequent tests and inspections, to minor deviations from the Contract Documents correctable prior to completion and to specific qualifications expressed by the Designer. The issuance of a Certificate for Payment shall further constitute a representation by the Designer, that the Contractor is entitled to payment in the amount certified.

## **9.6 DECISIONS TO WITHHOLD CERTIFICATION**

- 9.6.1 The Designer may decide not to certify payment and may withhold a Certificate for Payment in whole or in part, to the extent reasonably necessary to protect the Owner, if in the Designer's opinion, the representations to the Owner required by Subparagraph 9.5.2 cannot be made. If the Designer is unable to certify payment in the amount of the Application, the Designer will notify the Contractor and Owner as provided in Subparagraph 9.5.1. If the Contractor and Designer cannot agree on a revised amount, the Designer will promptly issue a Certificate for Payment for the amount for which the Designer is able to make such representations to the Owner. The Designer may also decide not to certify payment or, because of subsequently discovered evidence or subsequent observations, may nullify the whole or a part of a Certificate for Payment previously issued, to such extent as may be necessary in the Designer's opinion to protect the Owner from loss due to:

- (1) defective Work not remedied;

- (2) third party claims filed or reasonable evidence indicating probable filing of such claims;
- (3) failure of the Contractor to make payments properly to Subcontractors or for labor, materials or equipment;
- (4) reasonable evidence that the Work cannot be completed for the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum;
- (5) damage to the Owner or another contractor;
- (6) reasonable evidence that the Work will not be completed within the Contract Time, and that the unpaid balance would not be adequate to cover actual or liquidated damages for the anticipated delay; or
- (7) persistent failure to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

9.6.2 When the above reasons for withholding certification are removed, certification will be made for amounts previously withheld.

## **9.7 PROGRESS PAYMENTS**

9.7.1 After the Designer has issued a Certificate for Payment, the Owner shall make payment in the manner and within the time provided in the Contract Documents and shall so notify the Designer.

9.7.2 The Contractor shall promptly pay each Subcontractor, upon receipt of payment from the Owner, out of the amount paid to the Contractor on account of such Subcontractor's portion of the Work, the amount to which said Subcontractor is entitled, reflecting percentages actually retained from payments to the Contractor on account of such Subcontractor's portion of the Work. The Contractor shall, by appropriate agreement with each Subcontractor, require each Subcontractor to make payments to Sub-subcontractors in similar manner.

9.7.3 The Designer will furnish to a Subcontractor, upon request and if practicable, information regarding percentages of completion or amounts applied for by the Contractor and action taken thereon by the Designer and Owner on account of portions of the Work done by such Subcontractor.

9.7.4 Neither the Owner nor Designer shall have an obligation to pay or to see to the payment of money to a Subcontractor except as may otherwise be required by law.

9.7.5 Payment to material suppliers shall be treated in a manner similar to that provided in Subparagraphs 9.7.2, 9.7.3, and 9.7.4.

9.7.6 A Certificate for Payment, a progress payment, or partial or entire use or occupancy of the Project by the Owner shall not constitute acceptance of Work not in accordance with the Contract Documents.

## **9.8 FAILURE OF PAYMENT**

The Contractor shall not stop the Work for the failure of the Designer to issue a Certificate of Payment, or the Owner to make timely payment.

## **9.9 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION**

- 9.9.1 Substantial Completion is the stage in the progress of the Project when the Work or designated portion thereof is sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract Documents, so the Owner can occupy or utilize the Work for its intended use.
- 9.9.2 When the Contractor considers that the Work, or a portion thereof which the Owner agrees to accept separately, is substantially complete, the Contractor shall prepare and submit to the Designer a comprehensive list of items to be completed or corrected. The Contractor shall proceed promptly to complete and correct items on the list. Failure to include an item on such list does not alter the responsibility for the Contractor to complete all Work in accordance with the Contract Documents. Upon receipt of the Contractor's list, the Designer will make an inspection to determine whether the Work or designated portion thereof is substantially complete. If the Designer's inspection discloses any item, whether or not included the Contractor's list, which is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall, before issuance of the Certificate of Substantial Completion, complete or correct such item upon notification by the Designer. The Contractor shall then submit a request for another inspection by the Designer to determine Substantial Completion. When the Work or designated portion thereof is substantially complete, the Designer will prepare a Certificate of Substantial Completion which shall establish the date of Substantial Completion, shall establish responsibilities of the Owner and Contractor for security, maintenance, heat, utilities, damage to the Work and insurance, and shall fix the time within which the Contractor shall finish all items on the list accompanying the Certificate. Warranties required by the Contract Documents shall commence on the date of Substantial Completion of the Work or designated portion thereof unless otherwise provided in the Certificate of Substantial Completion. The Certificate of Substantial Completion shall be submitted to the Owner and Contractor for their written acceptance of responsibilities assigned to them in such Certificate.
- 9.9.3 Upon Substantial Completion of the Work or designated portion thereof and upon application by the Contractor and certification by the Designer, the Owner shall make payment, reflecting adjustment in retainage, if any, for such Work or portion thereof as provided in the Contract Documents.

## **9.10 PARTIAL OCCUPANCY OR USE**

- 9.10.1 The Owner may occupy or use any completed or partially completed portion of the Work at any stage when such portion is designated by separate agreement with the Contractor, provided such occupancy or use is authorized by public authorities having jurisdiction over the Work. Such partial occupancy or use may commence whether or not the portion is substantially complete, provided the Owner and Contractor have accepted in writing the responsibilities assigned to each of them for payments, retainage if any, security, maintenance, heat, utilities, damage to the Work and insurance, and have agreed in writing concerning the period for correction of the Work and commencement of warranties required by the Contract Documents. When the Contractor considers a portion substantially complete, the Contractor shall prepare and submit a list to the Designer as provided under Subparagraph 9.9.2. Consent of the Contractor to partial occupancy or use shall not be unreasonably withheld. The stage of the progress of the Work shall be determined by written agreement between the Owner and Contractor or, if no agreement is reached, by decision of the Designer.
- 9.10.2 Immediately prior to such partial occupancy or use, the Owner, Contractor, and Designer shall jointly inspect the area to be occupied or portion of the Work to be used in order to determine and record the condition of the Work.

- 9.10.3 Unless otherwise agreed upon, partial occupancy or use of a portion or portions of the Work shall not constitute acceptance of Work not complying with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

## **9.11 FINAL COMPLETION AND FINAL PAYMENT**

- 9.11.1 Upon receipt of written notice that the Work is ready for final inspection and acceptance and upon receipt of a final Application for Payment, the Designer will promptly make such inspections and, when the Designer finds the Work acceptable under the Contract Documents and the Contract fully performed, the Designer will promptly issue a Final Certificate for Payment stating that to the best of the Designer's knowledge, information and belief, and on the basis of the Designer's observations and inspections, the Work has been completed in accordance with terms and conditions of the Contract Documents and that the entire balance found to be due to the Contractor and noted in said Final Certificate is due and payable. The Designer's Final Certificate for Payment will constitute a further representation that the conditions listed in Subparagraph 9.11.2 as precedent to the Contractor's being entitled to final payment have been fulfilled.
- 9.11.2 Neither final payment nor any remaining retained percentage shall become due until the Contractor submits to the Designer (1) an affidavit that payrolls, bills for materials and equipment, and other indebtedness connected with the Work for which the Owner or the Owner's property might be responsible or encumbered (less amounts withheld by Owner) have been paid or otherwise satisfied, (2) a certificate evidencing that insurance required by the Contract for Construction to remain in force after final payment is currently in effect and will not be canceled or allowed to expire until at least 30 days prior written notice has been given to the Owner, (3) a written statement that the Contractor knows of no substantial reason that the insurance will not be renewable to cover the period required by the Contract Documents, (4) consent of surety, if any, to final payment and (5) if required by the Owner, other or additional data establishing payment or satisfaction of obligations, such as receipts, releases and waivers of liens, claims, security interests or encumbrances rising out of the Contract, to the extent and in such form as may be designated by the Owner. If a Subcontractor refuses to furnish a release or waiver required by the Owner, the Contractor may furnish a bond satisfactory to the Owner to indemnify the Owner against such lien. If such lien remains unsatisfied after payments are made, the Contractor shall refund to the Owner all money that the Owner may be compelled to pay in discharging such lien, including all costs and reasonable attorneys' fees.
- 9.11.3 If, after Substantial Completion of the Work, final completion thereof is materially delayed through no fault of the Contractor or by issuance of Change Orders affecting final completion, and the Designer so confirms, the Owner shall, upon application by the Contractor and certification by the Designer, and without terminating the Contract, make payment of the balance due for that portion of the Work fully completed and accepted. If the remaining balance for Work not fully completed and accepted is less than retainage stipulated in the Contract Documents, and if bonds have been furnished, the written consent of surety to payment of the balance due for that portion of the Work fully completed and accepted shall be submitted by the Contractor to the Designer prior to certification of such payment. Such payment shall be made under terms and conditions governing final payment, except that it shall not constitute a waiver of claims.
- 9.11.4 Acceptance of final payment by the Contractor, Subcontractor or material supplier shall constitute a waiver of claims by that payee except those previously made in writing and identified by that payee as unsettled at the time of final Application for Payment.

**Article 10**  
**Protection of Persons and Property**

**10.1 SAFETY PRECAUTIONS AND PROGRAMS**

- 10.1.1 The Contractor shall be responsible for initiating, maintaining, and supervising all safety precautions and programs in connection with the performance of the Contract and construction of the Project.
- 10.1.2 In the event the Contractor encounters on the site material reasonably believed to be asbestos or polychlorinated biphenyl (hereinafter APCB”) which has not been rendered harmless, the Contractor shall immediately stop Work in the area affected and report the condition to the Owner and Designer by phone and in writing. The Work in the affected area shall not thereafter be resumed except by written agreement of the Owner and Contractor if in fact the material is asbestos or PCB and has not been rendered harmless. The Work in the affected area shall be resumed in the absence of asbestos or PCB, or when it has been rendered harmless, by written agreement of the Owner and Contractor, or in accordance with final determination by the Designer.
- 10.1.3 The Contractor shall not be required to perform without consent of Owner and Designer any Work relating to asbestos or PCB.

**10.2 SAFETY OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY**

- 10.2.1 The Contractor shall take reasonable precautions for safety of, and shall provide reasonable protection to prevent damage, injury or loss to:
- (1) employees working on the Project and other persons who may be affected thereby;
  - (2) the Work and materials and equipment to be incorporated therein, whether in storage on or off the site, under care, custody, or control of the Contractor or the Contractor’s Subcontractors or Sub-subcontractors; and
  - (3) other property at the site or adjacent thereto, such as trees, shrubs, lawns, walks, pavements, roadways, structures, and utilities not designated for removal, relocation, or replacement in the course of construction.
- 10.2.2 The Contractor shall give notices and comply with applicable laws, ordinances, rules, regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities bearing on safety of persons or property or their protection from damage, injury, or loss.
- 10.2.3 The Contractor shall erect and maintain, as required by existing conditions and performance of the Contract, reasonable safeguards for safety and protection, including erecting necessary barricades or other temporary walls and structures as required during the period of construction, posting danger signs and other warnings against hazards, promulgating safety regulations, and notifying owners and users of adjacent sites and utilities.
- 10.2.4 When use or storage of explosives or other hazardous materials or equipment or unusual methods are necessary for execution of Work, the Contractor shall exercise utmost care and carry on such activities under supervision of properly qualified personnel.

- 10.2.5 The Contractor shall promptly remedy damage and loss to property referred to in Clauses 10.2.1(2) and (3), caused in whole or in part by the Contractor, Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, or anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them, or by anyone for whose acts they may be liable and for which the Contractor is responsible under Clauses 10.2.1(2) and (3), except damage or loss attributable to acts or omissions of the Owner or Designer and not attributable to the fault or negligence of the Contractor. The foregoing obligations of the Contractor are in addition to the Contractor's obligations under Article 3. All costs to repair any damage and loss to property referred to in Clauses 10.2.1(2) and (3), shall be the sole responsibility of the Contractor and such repair or replacement shall be performed expeditiously without cost to the Owner.
- 10.2.6 The Contractor shall designate a responsible member of the Contractor's organization at the site whose duty shall be the prevention of accidents. This person shall be the Contractor's Superintendent, required under Paragraph 3.8, unless otherwise designated by the Contractor in writing to the Owner or Designer.
- 10.2.7 The Contractor shall not load or permit any part of the construction or site to be loaded so as to endanger its safety.
- 10.2.8 Existing utilities have been identified and described in the Contract Documents insofar as information is reasonably available, however, it is the Contractor's responsibility to verify such information and to preserve all existing utilities whether shown in the Contract Documents or not. If utility conflicts are encountered by the Contractor during construction, Contractor shall file sufficient notice to the Owners of the utilities so that they may make the necessary adjustments, as well as the Designer.

### **10.3 EMERGENCIES**

In an emergency affecting the safety of persons or property, the Contractor shall act, at the Contractor's discretion, to prevent threatened damage, injury, or loss. Additional compensation or extension of time claimed by the Contractor on account of an emergency shall be determined as provided in Subparagraphs 4.2.7, 4.2.8 and Article 7.

## **Article 11** **Uncovering and Correction of Work**

### **11.1 UNCOVERING OF WORK**

- 11.1.1 If a portion of the Work is covered contrary to the Designer's request or to requirements specifically expressed in the Contract Documents, it must, if required in writing by the Designer, be uncovered for the Designer's observation and be replaced at the Contractor's sole expense without change in the Contract Time.
- 11.1.2 If a portion of the Work has been covered which the Designer has not specifically requested to observe prior to its being covered, the Designer may request to see such Work and it shall be uncovered by the Contractor. If such Work is not in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall pay such costs unless the condition was caused by the Owner or a separate contractor in which event the Owner or separate contractor shall be responsible for payment of such costs. If such Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Owner, by appropriate Change Order, shall be charged with the cost of uncovering and replacement.

## **11.2 CORRECTION OF WORK**

- 11.2.1 The Contractor shall promptly correct Work rejected by the Designer or failing to conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents, whether observed before or after Substantial Completion and whether or not fabricated, installed or completed. The Contractor shall bear any and all costs of correcting such rejected Work, including additional testing and inspections and compensation for the Designer's services and expenses made necessary thereby.
- 11.2.2 If, within one year after the date of Substantial Completion of the Work or designated portion thereof, or after the date for commencement of warranties established under Subparagraph 9.10.1 or by terms of an applicable special warranty required by the Contract Documents, any of the Work is found to be not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall correct it promptly after receipt of written notice from the Owner to do so unless the Owner has previously given the Contractor a written acceptance of such condition. This period of one year shall be extended with respect to portions of Work first performed after Substantial Completion by the period of time between Substantial Completion and the actual performance of the Work. This obligation under this Subparagraph 11.2.2 shall survive acceptance of the Work under the Contract and termination of the Contract. The Owner shall give such notice promptly after discovery of the condition.
- 11.2.3 The Contractor shall remove from the site portions of the Work which are not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents and are neither corrected by the Contractor nor accepted by the Owner.
- 11.2.4 If the Contractor fails to correct nonconforming Work within a reasonable time, the Owner may correct it in accordance with Paragraph 2.2. If the Contractor does not proceed with correction of such nonconforming Work within a reasonable time fixed by written notice from the Designer, the Owner may remove it and store the salvageable materials or equipment at the Contractor's expense. If the Contractor does not pay costs of such removal and storage within ten days after written notice, the Owner may upon ten additional days written notice sell such materials and equipment at auction or at private sale and shall account for the proceeds thereof, after deducting costs and damages that should have been borne by the Contractor, including compensation for the Designer's services and expenses made necessary thereby. If such proceeds of sale do not cover costs which the Contractor should have borne, the Contract Sum shall be reduced by the deficiency. If payments then or thereafter due to the Contractor are not sufficient to cover such amount, the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner.
- 11.2.5 The Contractor shall bear the cost of correcting destroyed or damaged construction, whether completed or partially completed, of the Owner or separate contractors caused by the Contractor's correction or removal of Work which is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.
- 11.2.6 Nothing contained in this Paragraph 11.2 shall be construed to establish a period of limitation with respect to other obligations which the Contractor might have under the Contract Documents. Establishment of the time period of one year as described in Subparagraph 11.2.2, related only to the specific obligation of the Contractor to correct the Work, and has no relationship to the time within which the obligations to comply with the Contract Documents may be sought to be enforced nor to the time within which proceedings may be commenced to establish the Contractor's liability with respect to the Contractor's obligations other than specifically to correct the Work.

### **11.3 ACCEPTANCE OF NONCONFORMING WORK**

If the Owner prefers to accept Work which is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, the Owner may do so instead of requiring its removal and correction, in which case the Contract Sum will be reduced as appropriate and equitable. Such adjustment shall be affected whether or not final payment has been made.

### **Article 12 Miscellaneous Provisions**

- 12.1 Governing Law. This Contract for Construction shall be governed by and in accordance with the laws of the State of North Carolina. All actions relating in any way to this Contract, shall be brought in the General Court of Justice in the County of Onslow and the State of North Carolina, after exhausting the dispute resolution procedure set forth in Paragraph 4.4, herein.
- 12.2 Successors and Assigns. The Owner and Contractor respectively bind themselves, their partners, successors, assigns, and legal representatives to the other party hereto and to partners, successors, assigns, and legal representatives of such other party in respect to covenants, agreements, and obligations contained in the Contract Documents. Neither party to the Contract shall assign the Contract as a whole without written consent of the other. If either party attempts to make such an assignment without such consent, that party shall nevertheless remain legally responsible for all obligations under the Contract.
- 12.3 Written Notice. Written notice shall be deemed to have been duly served if delivered in person to the individual or a member of the firm or entity or to an officer of the corporation for which it was intended, or if delivered at or sent by registered or certified mail to the business address listed in the Contract for Construction.
- 12.4 Rights and Remedies. Duties and obligations imposed by the Contract Documents and rights and remedies available thereunder shall be in addition to and not a limitation of duties, obligations, rights and remedies otherwise imposed or available by law.
- 12.5 Waiver of Rights. No action or failure to act by the Owner or Designer shall constitute an obligation or duty afforded them under the Contract, nor shall such action or failure to act constitute approval of or acquiescence in a breach thereunder, except as may be specifically agreed in writing.
- 12.6 Compliance with Laws. Contractor represents that it is in compliance with all Federal, State, and local laws, regulations or orders, as amended or supplemented. The implementation of this contract will be carried out in strict compliance with all Federal, State, or local laws regarding discrimination in employment.

### **12.7 TESTS AND INSPECTIONS**

- 12.7.1 Tests, inspections, and approvals of portions of the Work required by the Contract Documents or by laws, ordinances, rules, regulations, or orders of public authorities having jurisdiction shall be made at an appropriate time. Unless otherwise provided, the Contractor shall make arrangements for such tests, inspections, and approvals with an independent testing laboratory or entity acceptable to the Owner, or with the appropriate public authority, and the Owner shall bear the costs of tests, inspections, and approvals. Should any retest be necessary due to the failure of the Work to pass the first test or for any other reason whatsoever, the Contractor shall bear all related costs of retests,



inspections or re-inspections or approvals. The Contractor shall give the Designer timely notice of when and where tests and inspections are to be made so the Designer may observe such procedures.

- 12.7.2 If the Designer, Owner, or public authorities having jurisdictions determine that portions of the Work require additional testing, inspection or approval not included under Subparagraph 12.7.1, the Designer will, upon written authorization from the Owner, instruct the Contractor to make arrangements for such additional testing, inspection or approval by an entity acceptable to the Owner, and the Contractor shall give timely notice to the Designer of when and where tests and inspections are to be made so the Designer may observe such procedures.
- 12.7.3 If such procedures for testing, inspection, or approval under Subparagraphs 12.7.1 and 12.7.2 reveal failure of the portions of the Work to comply with requirements established by the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall bear all costs made necessary by such failure including those of repeated procedures and compensation for the Designer's services and expenses.
- 12.7.4 Required certificates of testing, inspection, or approval shall, unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents, be secured by the Contractor, and promptly delivered to the Designer.
- 12.7.5 If the Designer is required by the Contract Documents to observe tests, inspections, or approvals, the Designer will do so promptly and, where practicable, at the normal place of testing.
- 12.7.6 Tests or inspections conducted pursuant to the Contract Documents shall be made promptly to avoid unreasonable delay in the Work.

## **12.8 COMMENCEMENT OF STATUTORY LIMITATION PERIOD**

As between the Owner and Contractor:

- (1) Before Substantial Completion. As to acts or failures to act occurring prior to the relevant date of Substantial Completion, any applicable statute of limitations shall commence to run, and any alleged cause of action shall be deemed to have accrued in any and all events not later than such date of Substantial Completion;
- (2) Between Substantial Completion and Final Certificate for Payment. As to acts or failures to act occurring subsequent to the relevant date of Substantial Completion and prior to issuance of the Final Certificate for Payment, any applicable statute of limitations shall commence to run, and any alleged cause of action shall be deemed to have accrued in any and all events not later than the date of issuance of the Final Certificate for Payment; and
- (3) After Final Certificate for Payment. As to acts or failures to act occurring after the relevant date of issuance of the Final Certificate for Payment, any applicable statute of limitations shall commence to run and any alleged cause of action shall be deemed to have accrued in any and all events not later than the date of any act or failure to act by the Contractor pursuant to any warranty provided under Paragraph 3.4, the date of any correction of the Work or failure to correct the Work by the Contractor under Paragraph 11.2 or the date of actual commission of any other act or failure to perform any duty or obligation by the Contractor or Owner, whichever occurs last.

**Article 13**  
**Termination or Suspension of the Contract**

**13.1 TERMINATION BY THE CONTRACTOR**

13.1.1 The Contractor may terminate the Contract if the Work is stopped for a period of 180 consecutive days through no act or fault of the Contractor or a Subcontractor, Sub-subcontractor or their agents or employees or any other persons performing portions of the Work under contract with the Contractor, for any of the following reasons.

- (1) issuance of an order of a court or other public authority having jurisdiction;
- (2) an act of government, such as a declaration of national emergency, making material unavailable;
- (3) because the Designer has not issued a Certificate for Payment and has not notified the Contractor of the reason for withholding certification as provided in Paragraph 9.6.

13.1.2 If one of the above reasons exists, the Contractor may, upon seven (7) additional days written notice to the Owner and Designer, terminate the Contract and recover from the Owner payment for work executed and for proven loss with respect to materials, equipment, tools, and construction equipment and machinery, not including overhead, profit, or damages.

**13.2 TERMINATION BY THE OWNER FOR CAUSE**

13.2.1 The Owner may terminate the Contract if the Contractor:

- (1) persistently or repeatedly refuses or fails to supply enough properly skilled workers or proper materials;
- (2) fails to make payment to Subcontractors for materials or labor in accordance with the respective agreements between the Contractor and the Subcontractors;
- (3) persistently disregards laws, ordinances, or rules, regulations or orders of a public authority having jurisdiction; or
- (4) otherwise, is in substantial breach of a provision of the Contract Documents.

13.2.2 When any of the above reasons exist, the Owner, upon certification by the Designer that sufficient cause exists to justify such action, may without prejudice to any other rights or remedies of the Owner and after giving the Contractor and the Contractor's surety, if any, seven days written notice, terminate employment of the Contractor and may, subject to any prior rights of surety:

- (1) take possession of the site and of all materials, equipment, tools, and construction equipment and machinery thereon owned by the Contractor; and
- (2) finish the Work by whatever reasonable method the Owner may deem expedient.

13.2.3 When the Owner terminates the Contract for one of the reasons stated in Subparagraph 13.2.1, the Contractor shall not be entitled to receive further payment.

- 13.2.4 If the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum does not cover the cost of finishing the Work, the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner. The amount to be paid to the Owner shall be certified by the Designer, upon application, and this obligation for payment shall survive termination of the Contract.

### **13.3 SUSPENSION BY THE OWNER FOR CONVENIENCE**

The Owner may, without cause, order the Contractor in writing to suspend, delay, or interrupt the Work in whole or in part for such period of time as the Owner may determine.

### **13.4 BANKRUPTCY**

- 13.4.1 The bankruptcy of the Contractor shall not terminate this Contract until such time that it is specifically rejected by the Trustee or Contractor in bankruptcy. During the election period the Contractor has to assume or reject this Contract, the Contractor shall continue to perform its Work under the Contract.
- 13.4.2 In the event the Contractor in Bankruptcy assumes the Contract, the Contractor shall apply progress payments to all of its unpaid obligations on this project before using any of these monies for either administrative expenses of the bankruptcy or as general assets of the estate.

## **Article 14** **Security of Non-Public Records**

### **14.1 SECURITY OF NON-PUBLIC RECORDS**

Pursuant to N.C.G.S. § 132-1.7 entitled, “Sensitive Public Security Information”, public records, as defined in N.C.G.S. § 132-1, shall not include information containing specific details of public security plans and arrangements or the detailed plans and drawings of public buildings and infrastructure facilities. Therefore, all information provided, received, gathered, or obtained by Contractor containing specific details of public security plans and arrangements or the detailed plans and drawings of public buildings and infrastructure facilities shall be held confidential and shall be used by the Contractor only for the purpose of fulfilling the terms of this Agreement. All plans and drawings shall be returned to the County, or otherwise destroyed at the direction of the County, upon termination or expiration of this Agreement. Any breach of this Paragraph by Contractor shall result in the immediate termination of this Contract.

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 011000 - SUMMARY

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Project information.
- 2. Work covered by Contract Documents.
- 3. Work performed by Owner.
- 4. Multiple Work Packages.
- 5. Work under Owner's separate contracts.
- 6. Contractor's use of site and premises.
- 7. Coordination with occupants.
- 8. Work restrictions.
- 9. Specification and Drawing conventions.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for limitations and procedures governing temporary use of Owner's facilities.
- 2. Section 017300 "Execution" for coordination of Owner-installed products.

#### 1.3 PROJECT INFORMATION

- A. Project Identification: Bear Creek Fire Station.

- 1. Project Location: 138 Old Sand Ridge Rd, Hubert, NC 28539.

- B. Owner: Onslow County.

- 1. Owner's Representative: Christina Russell.
  - a. [christina\\_russell@onslowcountync.gov](mailto:christina_russell@onslowcountync.gov)

- C. Architect: Davis Kane Architects.

- 1. Architect's Representative: Alexandre Penegre.
  - a. [apenegre@daviskane.com](mailto:apenegre@daviskane.com)

- D. Architect's Consultants: Architect has retained the following design professionals, who have prepared designated portions of the Contract Documents:

1. Civil Engineer:
  - a. CLH Design
  - b. Y'Hoshua Aal-Anubia
  - c. 919-443-4072
2. Structural Engineer:
  - a. Lynch Mykins
  - b. Scott Francis
  - c. 757-293-8549
3. Plumbing, Mechanical, & Electrical Engineer:
  - a. Cheatham and Associates
  - b. Kenneth Lynch
  - c. 910-452-4210

E. Web-Based Project Software: Project software will be used for purposes of managing communication and documents during the construction stage.

1. See Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination." for requirements for using web-based Project software.

#### 1.4 WORK COVERED BY CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

A. The Work of Project is defined by the Contract Documents and includes, but is not limited to, the following:

1. The new station will be approximately 14,680 square feet and will include 5 drive-through bays, bunk rooms, day room, kitchen, office spaces, and accessory rooms for servicing the fire station. This project is located on an undeveloped piece of property located by Sand Ridge Elementary School in Hubert, NC, and will also include all site work and landscaping. Trenching and waste/plumbing line installation will need to occur to connect at Sand Ridge Rd.

B. Type of Contract:

1. Project will be constructed under a single prime contract.

#### 1.5 CONTRACTOR'S USE OF SITE AND PREMISES

A. Unrestricted Use of Site: Contractor shall have full use of Project site for construction operations during construction period. Contractor's use of Project site is limited only by Owner's right to perform work or to retain other contractors on portions of Project.

#### 1.6 WORK RESTRICTIONS

A. Comply with restrictions on construction operations.

1. Comply with limitations on use of public streets, work on public streets, rights of way, and other requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

- B. On-Site Work Hours: Limit work to between 7:00 a.m. to 7:00 p.m., Monday through Friday, unless otherwise indicated. Work hours may be modified to meet Project requirements if approved by Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Weekend Hours: None, unless approved by Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Early Morning Hours: None, unless approved by Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Smoking and Controlled Substance Restrictions: Use of tobacco products , alcoholic beverages, and other controlled substances on Project site is not permitted.
- D. Employee Contractor personnel to wear identifiable corporate logos on PPE and/or clothing attire.

## 1.7 SPECIFICATION AND DRAWING CONVENTIONS

- A. Specification Content: The Specifications use certain conventions for the style of language and the intended meaning of certain terms, words, and phrases when used in particular situations. These conventions are as follows:
  - 1. Imperative mood and streamlined language are generally used in the Specifications. The words "shall," "shall be," or "shall comply with," depending on the context, are implied where a colon (:) is used within a sentence or phrase.
  - 2. Text Color: Text used in the Specifications, including units of measure, manufacturer and product names, and other text may appear in multiple colors or underlined as part of a hyperlink; no emphasis is implied by text with these characteristics.
  - 3. Hypertext: Text used in the Specifications may contain hyperlinks. Hyperlinks may allow for access to linked information that is not residing in the Specifications. Unless otherwise indicated, linked information is not part of the Contract Documents.
  - 4. Specification requirements are to be performed by Contractor unless specifically stated otherwise.
- B. Division 00 Contracting Requirements: General provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions, apply to all Sections of the Specifications.
- C. Division 01 General Requirements: Requirements of Sections in Division 01 apply to the Work of all Sections in the Specifications.
- D. Drawing Coordination: Requirements for materials and products identified on Drawings are described in detail in the Specifications. One or more of the following are used on Drawings to identify materials and products:
  - 1. Terminology: Materials and products are identified by the typical generic terms used in the individual Specifications Sections.
  - 2. Abbreviations: Materials and products are identified by abbreviations scheduled on Drawings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 011000



## SECTION 012100 - ALLOWANCES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements governing allowances.
- B. Types of allowances include the following:
  - 1. Lump-sum allowances.
  - 2. Unit-cost allowances.
  - 3. Quantity allowances.
  - 4. Contingency allowances.
  - 5. Testing and inspecting allowances.
- C. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 012200 "Unit Prices" for procedures for using unit prices, including adjustment of quantity allowances when applicable.
  - 2. Section 012600 "Contract Modification Procedures" for procedures for submitting and handling Change Orders.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Allowance: A quantity of work or dollar amount included in the Contract, established in lieu of additional requirements, used to defer selection of actual materials and equipment to a later date when direction will be provided to Contractor. If necessary, additional requirements will be issued by Change Order.

#### 1.4 SELECTION AND PURCHASE

- A. At the earliest practical date after award of the Contract, advise Architect of the date when final selection, or purchase and delivery, of each product or system described by an allowance must be completed by the Owner to avoid delaying the Work.
- B. At Architect's request, obtain proposals for each allowance for use in making final selections. Include recommendations that are relevant to performing the Work.
- C. Purchase products and systems selected by Architect from the designated supplier.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit proposals for purchase of products or systems included in allowances in the form specified for Change Orders.

#### 1.6 LUMP-SUM ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowance shall include cost to Contractor of specific products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Architect under allowance and shall include taxes, freight, and delivery to Project site.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, Contractor's costs for receiving and handling at Project site, labor, installation, overhead and profit, and similar costs related to products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Architect under allowance shall be included as part of the Contract Sum and not part of the allowance.
- C. Unused Materials: Return unused materials purchased under an allowance to manufacturer or supplier for credit to Owner, after installation has been completed and accepted.
  - 1. If requested by Architect, retain and prepare unused material for storage by Owner. Deliver unused material to Owner's storage space as directed.

#### 1.7 UNIT-COST ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowance shall include cost to Contractor of specific products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Architect under allowance and shall include taxes, freight, and delivery to Project site.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, Contractor's costs for receiving and handling at Project site, labor, installation, overhead and profit, and similar costs related to products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Architect under allowance shall be included as part of the Contract Sum and not part of the allowance.
- C. Unused Materials: Return unused materials purchased under an allowance to manufacturer or supplier for credit to Owner, after installation has been completed and accepted.
  - 1. If requested by Architect, retain and prepare unused material for storage by Owner. Deliver unused material to Owner's storage space as directed.

#### 1.8 QUANTITY ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowance shall include cost to Contractor of specific products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Architect under allowance and shall include taxes, freight, and delivery to Project site.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, Contractor's costs for receiving and handling at Project site, labor, installation, overhead and profit, and similar costs related to products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Architect under allowance shall be included as part of the Contract Sum and not part of the allowance.

- C. Unused Materials: Return unused materials purchased under an allowance to manufacturer or supplier for credit to Owner, after installation has been completed and accepted.

1. If requested by Architect, retain and prepare unused material for storage by Owner. Deliver unused material to Owner's storage space as directed.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine products covered by an allowance promptly on delivery for damage or defects. Return damaged or defective products to manufacturer for replacement.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate materials and their installation for each allowance with related materials and installations to ensure that each allowance item is completely integrated and interfaced with related work.

### 3.3 SCHEDULE OF ALLOWANCES

#### A. Lump Sum Allowances

Item	Description	Amount
LS-1	Bi-Directional Antenna (BDA) System surveying and installation, as specified in Specification 285000 – “Emergency Responder Communication Coverage System.	\$50,000

#### B. Unit-Cost Allowances

Item	Description	Unit	Allowance Quantity
UC-1	Brick: Provide Brick Color as specified in Division 04 Section “Unit Masonry” utilizing a unit cost of \$550 per 1000 nominal. Allowance cost for light brown-colored modular-size, wire cut, cored-face brick only, exclusive of special shapes.	1,000 nominal	\$550

- C. Quantity Allowances - See Division 01 Section “Unit Prices” for complete descriptions of Work included under applicable Allowances.

Item	Description	Unit	Allowance Quantity
C1	Mass rock removal and disposal off-site.	CY	10
C2	Unsuitable soils removal and disposal on-site.	CY	500

C3	Unsuitable soils removal and disposal off-site.	CY	3000
C4	Replacement of removed rock or unsuitable soils with on-site suitable soil in-place.	CY	500
C5	Replacement of rock or unsuitable soils with off-site suitable soil in-place.	CY	2000
C6	Replacement of removed rock or unsuitable soils with Aggregate Base Course in-place.	CY	800
C7	Replacement of removed rock or unsuitable soils with No.57 washed stone in-place.	CY	200
C8	Woven Geo-Textile Fabric in-place.	SY	1000
C9	Biaxial Geo-Grid in-place.	SY	500
A1	Duplex receptacle with 30 feet conduit, 30 feet wiring.	Each	6
A2	Communication outlet (2 data drops) with 30 feet conduit, 30 feet wiring.	Each	6
A3	Exit sign with 30 feet conduit, 30 feet wiring.	Each	6
A4	Fire alarm annunciating device (ceiling- or wall-mounted) as a speaker/strobe/combination with 75 feet conduit, 75 feet cabling, programming.	Each	6
A5	Fire alarm initiating device (ceiling- or wall-mounted) as a pull station or smoke/heat/CO detector with 75 feet conduit, 75 feet cabling, programming.	Each	6

END OF SECTION 012100

## SECTION 012200 - UNIT PRICES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for unit prices.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 012100 "Allowances" for procedures for using unit prices to adjust quantity allowances.
  - 2. Section 012600 "Contract Modification Procedures" for procedures for submitting and handling Change Orders.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Unit price is an amount incorporated into the Agreement, applicable during the duration of the Work as a price per unit of measurement for materials, equipment, or services, or a portion of the Work, added to or deducted from the Contract Sum by appropriate modification, if the scope of Work or estimated quantities of Work required by the Contract Documents are increased or decreased.

#### 1.4 PROCEDURES

- A. Unit prices include all necessary material, plus cost for delivery, installation, insurance, applicable taxes, overhead, and profit.
- B. Measurement and Payment: See individual Specification Sections for work that requires establishment of unit prices. Methods of measurement and payment for unit prices are specified in those Sections.
- C. Owner reserves the right to reject Contractor's measurement of work-in-place that involves use of established unit prices and to have this work measured, at Owner's expense, by an independent surveyor acceptable to Contractor.
- D. List of Unit Prices: A schedule of unit prices is included in Part 3. Specification Sections referenced in the Part 3 "Schedule of Unit Prices" Article contain requirements for materials described under each unit price.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SCHEDULE OF UNIT PRICES

- A. Unit Price No. C1: Mass Rock removal and disposal off-site.
  - 1. Purpose: To adjust the contract sum in case a quantity different from that indicated in the allowance is required.
  - 2. Unit of measurement: cubic yard measured before removal.
  - 3. Include the following in the unit price:
    - a. Excavation, loading, transport, and legal disposal of all materials.
    - b. All disposal fees.
    - c. Overhead and profit.
  - 4. Include all other related costs in the contract sum.
  - 5. Method of measurement: Quantities will be verified by a soils and materials engineer employed by the Owner.
- B. Unit Price No. C2: Unsuitable soils removal and disposal on-site.
  - 1. Purpose: To adjust the contract sum in case a quantity different from that indicated in the allowance is required.
  - 2. Unit of measurement: cubic yard measured before removal.
  - 3. Include the following in the unit price:
    - a. Excavation, loading and transport of all materials.
    - b. Placement and compaction of materials in on-site disposal or fill area.
    - c. Overhead and profit.
  - 4. Include all other related costs in the contract sum.
  - 5. Method of measurement: Quantities will be verified by a soils and materials engineer employed by the Owner based on measured volume of excavation.
- C. Unit Price No. C3: Unsuitable soils removal and disposal off-site.
  - 1. Purpose: To adjust the contract sum in case a quantity different from that indicated in the allowance is required.
  - 2. Unit of measurement: cubic yard measured before removal.
  - 3. Include the following in the unit price:
    - a. Excavation, loading, transport, and legal disposal of all materials.
    - b. All disposal fees.
    - c. Overhead and profit.
  - 4. Include all other related costs in the contract sum.
  - 5. Method of measurement: Quantities will be verified by a soils and materials engineer employed by the Owner based on volume of excavation.
- D. Unit Price No. C4: Replacement of removed rock or unsuitable soils with on-site suitable soil in-place.
  - 1. Purpose: To adjust the contract sum in case a quantity different from that indicated in the allowance is required.
  - 2. Unit of measurement: cubic yard of void to be filled.
  - 3. Include the following in the unit price:
    - a. Excavation, loading, transport, of suitable soil materials from on-site borrow area.

- b. Placement and compaction of soil into void remaining from removed rock or unsuitable soil.
    - c. Overhead and profit.
  - 4. Include all other related costs in the contract sum.
  - 5. Include costs related to removal of rock or unsuitable soil in other Unit Prices.
  - 6. Method of measurement: Quantities will be verified by a soils and materials engineer employed by the Owner based on volume of void to be filled.
- E. Unit Price No. C5: Replacement of removed rock or unsuitable soils with off-site suitable soil in-place.
  - 1. Purpose: To adjust the contract sum in case a quantity different from that indicated in the allowance is required.
  - 2. Unit of measurement: cubic yard of void to be filled.
  - 3. Include the following in the unit price:
    - a. Suitable soil materials from contractor's off-site source.
    - b. Excavation, loading, transport, placement and compaction of soil into void remaining from removed rock or unsuitable soil.
    - c. Overhead and profit.
  - 4. Include all other related costs in the contract sum.
  - 5. Include costs related to removal of rock or unsuitable soil in other Unit Prices.
  - 6. Method of measurement: Quantities will be verified by a soils and materials engineer employed by the Owner based on volume of void to be filled.
- F. Unit Price No. C6: Replacement of removed rock or unsuitable soils with Aggregate Base Course in-place.
  - 1. Purpose: To adjust the contract sum in case a quantity different from that indicated in the allowance is required.
  - 2. Unit of measurement: cubic yard of void to be filled.
  - 3. Include the following in the unit price:
    - a. Certified ABC materials from contractor's off-site source.
    - b. Excavation, loading, transport, placement and compaction of ABC into void remaining from removed rock or unsuitable soil.
    - c. Overhead and profit.
  - 4. Include all other related costs in the contract sum.
  - 5. Include costs related to removal of rock or unsuitable soil in other Unit Prices.
  - 6. Method of measurement: Quantities will be verified by a soils and materials engineer employed by the Owner based on volume of void to be filled.
- G. Unit Price No. C7: Replacement of removed rock or unsuitable soils with No.57 washed stone in-place.
  - 1. Purpose: To adjust the contract sum in case a quantity different from that indicated in the allowance is required.
  - 2. Unit of measurement: cubic yard of void to be filled.
  - 3. Include the following in the unit price:
    - a. Certified #57 washed stone from contractor's off-site source.
    - b. Excavation, loading, transport, placement and compaction of #57 washed stone into void remaining from removed rock or unsuitable soil.
    - c. Overhead and profit.
  - 4. Include all other related costs in the contract sum.
  - 5. Include costs related to removal of rock or unsuitable soil in other Unit Prices.

6. Method of measurement: Quantities will be verified by a soils and materials engineer employed by the Owner based on volume of void to be filled.
- H. Unit Price No. C8: Woven Geo-Textile Fabric in place.
1. Purpose: To adjust the contract sum in case a quantity different from that indicated in the allowance is required.
  2. Unit of measurement: square yard of surface to be covered.
  3. Include the following in the unit price:
    - a. Materials and transport to site.
    - b. Unloading, handling, and placement.
    - c. Overhead and profit.
  4. Include all other related costs in the contract sum.
  5. Method of measurement: Quantities will be verified by a soils and materials engineer employed by the Owner based on the area of ground covered by the fabric. Excess and/or overlap shall not be included in the measurement.
- I. Unit Price No. C9: Biaxial Geo-Grid in place.
1. Purpose: To adjust the contract sum in case a quantity different from that indicated in the allowance is required.
  2. Unit of measurement: square yard of surface to be covered.
  3. Include the following in the unit price:
    - a. Materials and transport to site.
    - b. Unloading, handling, and placement.
    - c. Overhead and profit.
  4. Include all other related costs in the contract sum.
  5. Method of measurement: Quantities will be verified by a soils and materials engineer employed by the Owner based on the area of ground covered by the fabric. Excess and/or overlap shall not be included in the measurement.
- J. Unit Price No. A1: Duplex receptacle.
1. Description: Provide and install duplex receptacle including up to 30 feet of all required concealed conduit, wiring, fittings and connections for a functioning device. As further described in Section 262726 – Wiring Devices.
  2. Unit of measurement: Each.
- K. Unit Price No. A2: Communication outlet.
1. Description: Provide and install communication outlet box (sized for 2 data drops) including up to 30 feet of concealed conduit, fittings and connections stubbed to accessible ceiling. As further described in Section 260533 – Boxes and Cabinets and Section 260545 – Conduit and Conduit Fittings.
  2. Unit of measurement: Each.
- L. Unit Price No. A3: Exit light.
1. Description: Provide and install exit light including up to 30 feet of all required concealed conduit, wiring, fittings and connections for a functioning device. As further described on Sheet E-3.1.
  2. Unit of measurement: Each.
- M. Unit Price No. A4: Fire alarm annunciating device (ceiling- or wall-mounted).
1. Description: Provide and install fire alarm annunciating device (ceiling- or wall-mounted) as a speaker/strobe/combination including up to 75 feet of all required



- concealed conduit, cabling, fittings, connections, and programming for a functioning device. As further described in Section 283111 – Addressable Fire Alarm System.
  - 2. Unit of measurement: Each.
- N. Unit Price No. A5: Fire alarm initiating device (ceiling- or wall-mounted).
- 1. Description: Provide and install fire alarm initiating device (ceiling- or wall-mounted) as a pull station or smoke/heat/CO detector including up to 75 feet of all required concealed conduit, cabling, fittings, connections, and programming for a functioning device. As further described in Section 283111 – Addressable Fire Alarm System.
  - 2. Unit of measurement: Each.

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 012300 - ALTERNATES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for alternates.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Alternate: An amount proposed by bidders and stated on the Bid Form for certain work defined in the bidding requirements that may be added to or deducted from the base bid amount if the Owner decides to accept a corresponding change either in the amount of construction to be completed or in the products, materials, equipment, systems, or installation methods described in the Contract Documents.
  - 1. Alternates described in this Section are part of the Work only if enumerated in the Agreement.
  - 2. The cost or credit for each alternate is the net addition to or deduction from the Contract Sum to incorporate alternates into the Work. No other adjustments are made to the Contract Sum.

#### 1.4 PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected adjacent work as necessary to completely integrate work of the alternate into Project.
  - 1. Include, as part of each alternate, miscellaneous devices, accessory objects, and similar items incidental to or required for a complete installation, whether or not indicated as part of alternate.
- B. Execute accepted alternates under the same conditions as other Work of the Contract.
- C. Schedule: A Part 3 "Schedule of Alternates" Article is included at the end of this Section. Specification Sections referenced in schedule contain requirements for materials necessary to achieve the work described under each alternate.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SCHEDULE OF ALTERNATES

1. Alternate A-1: Four-Fold Doors in Lieu of Sectional Doors. Base Bid: Doors 129.8, 129.9, 129.10, 129.11, 129.12 to be Type G as indicated on Sheet A700 and as specified in Section 083613 "Sectional Doors".
  2. Alternate: Doors 129.8, 129.9, 129.10, 129.11, 129.12 to be Type F as indicated on Sheet A700 and as specified in Section 083713 "Exterior Four-Fold Doors".
- B. Alternate C-1: Concrete Pavement in Lieu of Heavy Duty Asphalt Pavement Drive.
1. Base Bid: Heavy duty asphalt pavement with extents as shown on Sheet C100 and as specified in Section 321216 "Asphalt Paving".
  2. Alternate: Concrete pavement with extents as shown on Sheet C100 and as specified in Section 321313 "Concrete Paving".
- C. Alternate C-2: Concrete Pavement in Lieu of Light Duty Asphalt Pavement at Parking.
1. Base Bid: Light duty asphalt pavement with extents as shown on Sheet C100 and as specified in Section 321216 "Asphalt Paving".
  2. Alternate: Concrete pavement with extents as shown on Sheet C100 and as specified in Section 321313 "Concrete Paving".
- D. Alternate G-1: Door Hardware Lock Cylinders (preferred brand alternate)
1. Base Bid: Provide Door Lock Cylinders as specified in Section 087100 "Door Hardware".
  2. Alternate: Provide Door Lock Cylinders by Best, dormakaba Group in lieu of door closers by other acceptable manufacturers.
- E. Alternate G-2: Provide Door Hardware Door Keying and Cylinders
1. Base Bid: Provide Door Hardware Keying and Cores as specified in Section 087100 "Door Hardware".
  2. Alternate: Provide Door Hardware Keying and Cores by Best, dormakaba Group in lieu of door keying and cores by other acceptable manufacturers.
- F. Alternate M-1: Provide and install ten air scrubbers to Apparatus Bay.
1. Base Bid: No air scrubbers.
  2. Alternate: Provide and install ten air scrubbers as shown on Sheets M100 and M701.

END OF SECTION 012300

## SECTION 012500 - SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for substitutions.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 012100 "Allowances" for products selected under an allowance.
  - 2. Section 012300 "Alternates" for products selected under an alternate.
  - 3. Section 016000 "Product Requirements" for requirements for submitting comparable product submittals for products by listed manufacturers.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Substitutions: Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those required by the Contract Documents.
  - 1. Substitutions for Cause: Changes proposed by Contractor that are required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms.
  - 2. Substitutions for Convenience: Changes proposed by Contractor or Owner that are not required to meet other Project requirements but may offer advantage to Contractor or Owner.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Substitution Requests: Submit documentation identifying product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
  - 1. Substitution Request Form: Use form acceptable to Architect.
  - 2. Documentation: Show compliance with requirements for substitutions and the following, as applicable:
    - a. Statement indicating why specified product or fabrication or installation method cannot be provided, if applicable.
    - b. Coordination of information, including a list of changes or revisions needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.

- c. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitutions with those of the Work specified. Include annotated copy of applicable Specification Section. Significant qualities may include attributes, such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.
  - d. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
  - e. Samples, where applicable or requested.
  - f. Certificates and qualification data, where applicable or requested.
  - g. List of similar installations for completed projects, with project names and addresses as well as names and addresses of architects and owners.
  - h. Material test reports from a qualified testing agency, indicating and interpreting test results for compliance with requirements indicated.
  - i. Research reports evidencing compliance with building code in effect for Project, from ICC-ES.
  - j. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitutions with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.
  - k. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
  - l. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents, except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related materials and is appropriate for applications indicated.
  - m. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.
3. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within seven days of receipt of a request for substitution. Architect will notify Contractor of acceptance or rejection of proposed substitution within 15 days of receipt of request, or seven days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
- a. Forms of Acceptance: Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or Architect's Supplemental Instructions for minor changes in the Work.
  - b. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a proposed substitution within time allocated.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Substitutions: Investigate and document compatibility of proposed substitution with related products and materials. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform compatibility tests recommended by manufacturers.

## 1.6 PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of the approved substitutions.

## 1.7 SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. Substitutions for Cause: Submit requests for substitution immediately on discovery of need for change, but not later than 15 days prior to time required for preparation and review of related submittals.
  - 1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
    - a. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
    - b. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
    - c. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
    - d. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
    - e. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
    - f. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
    - g. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
    - h. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.
- B. Substitutions for Convenience: Not allowed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 012500

This page intentionally left blank.



## SECTION 012600 - CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for handling and processing Contract modifications.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for administrative procedures for handling requests for substitutions made after the Contract award.
  - 2. Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination" for requirements for forms for contract modifications provided as part of web-based Project management software.

#### 1.3 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK

- A. Architect will issue supplemental instructions authorizing minor changes in the Work, not involving adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time, on AIA Document G710.

#### 1.4 PROPOSAL REQUESTS

- A. Owner-Initiated Proposal Requests: Architect will issue a detailed description of proposed changes in the Work that may require adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time. If necessary, the description will include supplemental or revised Drawings and Specifications.
  - 1. Work Change Proposal Requests issued by Architect are not instructions either to stop work in progress or to execute the proposed change.
  - 2. Within 20 days, when not otherwise specified, after receipt of Proposal Request, submit a quotation estimating cost adjustments to the Contract Sum and the Contract Time necessary to execute the change.
    - a. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
    - b. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
    - c. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
    - d. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and

finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.

- e. Quotation Form: Use forms acceptable to Architect.
- B. Contractor-Initiated Proposals: If latent or changed conditions require modifications to the Contract, Contractor may initiate a claim by submitting a request for a change to Architect.
  - 1. Include a statement outlining reasons for the change and the effect of the change on the Work. Provide a complete description of the proposed change. Indicate the effect of the proposed change on the Contract Sum and the Contract Time.
  - 2. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
  - 3. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
  - 4. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
  - 5. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
  - 6. Comply with requirements in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" if the proposed change requires substitution of one product or system for product or system specified.
  - 7. Proposal Request Form: Use form acceptable to Architect.

#### 1.5 ADMINISTRATIVE CHANGE ORDERS

- A. Allowance Adjustment: See Section 012100 "Allowances" for administrative procedures for preparation of Change Order Proposal for adjusting the Contract Sum to reflect actual costs of allowances.
- B. Unit-Price Adjustment: See Section 012200 "Unit Prices" for administrative procedures for preparation of Change Order Proposal for adjusting the Contract Sum to reflect measured scope of unit-price work.

#### 1.6 CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES

- A. On Owner's approval of a Work Change Proposal Request, Architect will issue a Change Order for signatures of Owner and Contractor on AIA Document G701.

#### 1.7 CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVE

- A. Construction Change Directive: Architect may issue a Construction Change Directive on AIA Document G714. Construction Change Directive instructs Contractor to proceed with a change in the Work, for subsequent inclusion in a Change Order.
  - 1. Construction Change Directive contains a complete description of change in the Work. It also designates method to be followed to determine change in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time.

- B. Documentation: Maintain detailed records on a time and material basis of work required by the Construction Change Directive.
  - 1. After completion of change, submit an itemized account and supporting data necessary to substantiate cost and time adjustments to the Contract.

#### 1.8 WORK CHANGE DIRECTIVE

- A. Work Change Directive: Architect may issue a Work Change Directive on EJCDC Document C-940. Work Change Directive instructs Contractor to proceed with a change in the Work, for subsequent inclusion in a Change Order.
  - 1. Work Change Directive contains a complete description of change in the Work. It also designates method to be followed to determine change in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time.
- B. Documentation: Maintain detailed records on a time and material basis of work required by the Work Change Directive.
  - 1. After completion of change, submit an itemized account and supporting data necessary to substantiate cost and time adjustments to the Contract.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 012600

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 012900 - PAYMENT PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements necessary to prepare and process Applications for Payment.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 012100 "Allowances" for procedural requirements governing the handling and processing of allowances.
  - 2. Section 012200 "Unit Prices" for administrative requirements governing the use of unit prices.
  - 3. Section 012600 "Contract Modification Procedures" for administrative procedures for handling changes to the Contract.
  - 4. Section 013200 "Construction Progress Documentation" for administrative requirements governing the preparation and submittal of the Contractor's construction schedule.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Schedule of Values: A statement furnished by Contractor allocating portions of the Contract Sum to various portions of the Work and used as the basis for reviewing Contractor's Applications for Payment.

#### 1.4 SCHEDULE OF VALUES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate preparation of the schedule of values with preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 1. Coordinate line items in the schedule of values with items required to be indicated as separate activities in Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 2. Submit the schedule of values to Architect at earliest possible date, but no later than seven days before the date scheduled for submittal of initial Applications for Payment.
- B. Format and Content: Use Project Manual table of contents as a guide to establish line items for the schedule of values. Provide at least one line item for each Specification Section.
  - 1. Identification: Include the following Project identification on the schedule of values:
    - a. Project name and location.

- b. Owner's name.
  - c. Owner's Project number.
  - d. Name of Architect.
  - e. Architect's Project number.
  - f. Contractor's name and address.
  - g. Date of submittal.
2. Arrange schedule of values consistent with format of AIA Document G703.
3. Arrange the schedule of values in tabular form, with separate columns to indicate the following for each item listed:
  - a. Related Specification Section or division.
  - b. Description of the Work.
  - c. Name of subcontractor.
  - d. Name of manufacturer or fabricator.
  - e. Name of supplier.
  - f. Change Orders (numbers) that affect value.
  - g. Dollar value of the following, as a percentage of the Contract Sum to nearest one-hundredth percent, adjusted to total 100 percent. Round dollar amounts to whole dollars, with total equal to Contract Sum.
    - 1) Labor.
    - 2) Materials.
    - 3) Equipment.
4. Provide a breakdown of the Contract Sum in enough detail to facilitate continued evaluation of Applications for Payment and progress reports. Provide multiple line items for principal subcontract amounts in excess of five percent of the Contract Sum.
5. Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each part of the Work where Applications for Payment may include materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed.
  - a. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site.
6. Allowances: Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each allowance. Show line-item value of unit-cost allowances, as a product of the unit cost, multiplied by measured quantity. Use information indicated in the Contract Documents to determine quantities.
7. Temporary Facilities: Show cost of temporary facilities and other major cost items that are not direct cost of actual work-in-place as separate line items.
8. Schedule of Values Revisions: Revise the schedule of values when Change Orders or Construction Change Directives result in a change in the Contract Sum. Include at least one separate line item for each Change Order and Construction Change Directive.

## 1.5 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT

- A. Each Application for Payment following the initial Application for Payment shall be consistent with previous applications and payments, as certified by Architect and paid for by Owner.

- B. Payment Application Times: The date for each progress payment is indicated in the Owner/Contractor Agreement. The period of construction work covered by each Application for Payment is the period indicated in the Agreement.
- C. Payment Application Times: Submit Application for Payment to Architect by the **5th** of the month. The period covered by each Application for Payment is one month, ending on the last day of the month.
  - 1. Submit draft copy of Application for Payment seven days prior to due date for review by Architect.
- D. Application for Payment Forms: Use AIA Document G702 and AIA Document G703 as form for Applications for Payment.
  - 1. Other Application for Payment forms proposed by the Contractor may be acceptable to Architect and Owner. Submit forms for approval with initial submittal of schedule of values.
- E. Application Preparation: Complete every entry on form. Notarize and execute by a person authorized to sign legal documents on behalf of Contractor. Architect will return incomplete applications without action.
  - 1. Entries shall match data on the schedule of values and Contractor's construction schedule. Use updated schedules if revisions were made.
  - 2. Include amounts for work completed following previous Application for Payment, whether or not payment has been received. Include only amounts for work completed at time of Application for Payment.
  - 3. Include amounts of Change Orders and Construction Change Directives issued before last day of construction period covered by application.
  - 4. Indicate separate amounts for work being carried out under Owner-requested project acceleration.
- F. Stored Materials: Include in Application for Payment amounts applied for materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site.
  - 1. Provide certificate of insurance, evidence of transfer of title to Owner, and consent of surety to payment for stored materials.
  - 2. Provide supporting documentation that verifies amount requested, such as paid invoices. Match amount requested with amounts indicated on documentation; do not include overhead and profit on stored materials.
  - 3. Provide summary documentation for stored materials indicating the following:
    - a. Value of materials previously stored and remaining stored as of date of previous Applications for Payment.
    - b. Value of previously stored materials put in place after date of previous Application for Payment and on or before date of current Application for Payment.
    - c. Value of materials stored since date of previous Application for Payment and remaining stored as of date of current Application for Payment.

- G. Transmittal: Submit three signed and notarized original copies of each Application for Payment to Architect by a method ensuring receipt within 24 hours. One copy shall include waivers of lien and similar attachments if required.
  - 1. Transmit each copy with a transmittal form listing attachments and recording appropriate information about application.
- H. Waivers of Mechanic's Lien: With each Application for Payment, submit waivers of mechanic's lien from entities lawfully entitled to file a mechanic's lien arising out of the Contract and related to the Work covered by the payment.
  - 1. Submit partial waivers on each item for amount requested in previous application, after deduction for retainage, on each item.
  - 2. When an application shows completion of an item, submit conditional final or full waivers.
  - 3. Owner reserves the right to designate which entities involved in the Work must submit waivers.
  - 4. Submit final Application for Payment with or preceded by conditional final waivers from every entity involved with performance of the Work covered by the application who is lawfully entitled to a lien.
- I. Initial Application for Payment: Administrative actions and submittals that must precede or coincide with submittal of first Application for Payment include the following:
  - 1. List of subcontractors.
  - 2. Schedule of values.
  - 3. Contractor's construction schedule (preliminary if not final).
  - 4. Products list (preliminary if not final).
  - 5. Sustainable design action plans, including preliminary project materials cost data.
  - 6. Schedule of unit prices.
  - 7. Submittal schedule (preliminary if not final).
  - 8. List of Contractor's staff assignments.
  - 9. List of Contractor's principal consultants.
  - 10. Copies of building permits.
  - 11. Copies of authorizations and licenses from authorities having jurisdiction for performance of the Work.
  - 12. Initial progress report.
  - 13. Report of preconstruction conference.
  - 14. Certificates of insurance and insurance policies.
  - 15. Performance and payment bonds.
  - 16. Data needed to acquire Owner's insurance.
- J. Application for Payment at Substantial Completion: After Architect issues the Certificate of Substantial Completion, submit an Application for Payment showing 100 percent completion for portion of the Work claimed as substantially complete.
  - 1. Include documentation supporting claim that the Work is substantially complete and a statement showing an accounting of changes to the Contract Sum.
    - a. Complete administrative actions, submittals, and Work preceding this application, as described in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."



2. This application shall reflect Certificate(s) of Substantial Completion issued previously for Owner occupancy of designated portions of the Work.
- K. Final Payment Application: After completing Project closeout requirements, submit final Application for Payment with releases and supporting documentation not previously submitted and accepted, including, but not limited, to the following:
1. Evidence of completion of Project closeout requirements.
  2. Certification of completion of final punch list items.
  3. Insurance certificates for products and completed operations where required and proof that taxes, fees, and similar obligations were paid.
  4. Updated final statement, accounting for final changes to the Contract Sum.
  5. AIA Document G706.
  6. AIA Document G706A.
  7. AIA Document G707.
  8. Evidence that claims have been settled.
  9. Final meter readings for utilities, a measured record of stored fuel, and similar data as of date of Substantial Completion or when Owner took possession of and assumed responsibility for corresponding elements of the Work.
  10. Final liquidated damages settlement statement.
  11. Proof that taxes, fees, and similar obligations are paid.
  12. Waivers and releases.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 012900

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 013100 - PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative provisions for coordinating construction operations on Project, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. General coordination procedures.
  - 2. Coordination drawings.
  - 3. Web-based Project management software package.
  - 4. Project meetings.
- B. Each contractor shall participate in coordination requirements. Certain areas of responsibility are assigned to a specific contractor.
- C. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 013200 "Construction Progress Documentation" for preparing and submitting Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 2. Section 017300 "Execution" for procedures for coordinating general installation and field-engineering services, including establishment of benchmarks and control points.
  - 3. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for coordinating closeout of the Contract.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. RFI: Request for Information. Request from Owner, Architect, or Contractor seeking information required by or clarifications of the Contract Documents.

#### 1.4 GENERAL COORDINATION PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.
  - 1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results, where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
  - 2. Coordinate installation of different components to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.

3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.
- B. Prepare memoranda for distribution to each party involved, outlining special procedures required for coordination. Include such items as required notices, reports, and list of attendees at meetings.
  1. Prepare similar memoranda for Owner and separate contractors if coordination of their Work is required.
- C. Administrative Procedures: Coordinate scheduling and timing of required administrative procedures with other construction activities and scheduled activities of other contractors to avoid conflicts and to ensure orderly progress of the Work. Such administrative activities include, but are not limited to, the following:
  1. Preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
  2. Preparation of the schedule of values.
  3. Installation and removal of temporary facilities and controls.
  4. Delivery and processing of submittals.
  5. Progress meetings.
  6. Preinstallation conferences.
  7. Project closeout activities.
  8. Startup and adjustment of systems.

#### 1.5 PROJECT MEETINGS

- A. General: Architect will schedule and conduct meetings and conferences at Project site unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Attendees: Inform participants and others involved, and individuals whose presence is required, of date and time of each meeting. Notify Owner and Architect of scheduled meeting dates and times a minimum of seven days prior to meeting.
  2. Agenda: Prepare the meeting agenda. Distribute the agenda to all invited attendees.
  3. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record significant discussions and agreements achieved. Distribute the meeting minutes to everyone concerned, including Owner and Architect, within three days of the meeting.
- B. Preconstruction Conference: Architect will schedule and conduct a preconstruction conference before starting construction, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 15 days after execution of the Agreement.
  1. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the conference. Participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  2. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect progress, including the following:
    - a. Tentative construction schedule.
    - b. Critical work sequencing and long lead items.
    - c. Designation of key personnel and their duties.
    - d. Lines of communications.
    - e. Use of web-based Project software.

- f. Procedures for processing field decisions and Change Orders.
    - g. Procedures for RFIs.
    - h. Procedures for testing and inspecting.
    - i. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment.
    - j. Submittal procedures.
    - k. Preparation of Record Documents.
    - l. Use of the premises.
    - m. Work restrictions.
    - n. Working hours.
    - o. Responsibility for temporary facilities and controls.
    - p. Construction waste management and recycling.
    - q. Security.
    - r. Progress cleaning.
  - 3. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.
- C. Preinstallation Conferences: Conduct a preinstallation conference at Project site before each construction activity when required by other Sections and when required for coordination with other construction.
- 1. Attendees: Installer and representatives of manufacturers and fabricators involved in or affected by the installation and its coordination or integration with other materials and installations that have preceded or will follow, shall attend the meeting. Advise Architect of scheduled meeting dates.
  - 2. Agenda: Review progress of other construction activities and preparations for the particular activity under consideration, including requirements for the following:
    - a. Contract Documents.
    - b. Options.
    - c. Related RFIs.
    - d. Related Change Orders.
    - e. Purchases.
    - f. Deliveries.
    - g. Submittals.
    - h. Review of mockups.
    - i. Possible conflicts.
    - j. Compatibility requirements.
    - k. Time schedules.
    - l. Weather limitations.
    - m. Manufacturer's written instructions.
    - n. Warranty requirements.
    - o. Compatibility of materials.
    - p. Acceptability of substrates.
    - q. Temporary facilities and controls.
    - r. Space and access limitations.
    - s. Regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
    - t. Testing and inspecting requirements.
    - u. Installation procedures.
    - v. Coordination with other work.
    - w. Required performance results.

- x. Protection of adjacent work.
    - y. Protection of construction and personnel.
  - 3. Record significant conference discussions, agreements, and disagreements, including required corrective measures and actions.
  - 4. Reporting: Distribute minutes of the meeting to each party present and to other parties requiring information.
  - 5. Do not proceed with installation if the conference cannot be successfully concluded. Initiate whatever actions are necessary to resolve impediments to performance of the Work and reconvene the conference at earliest feasible date.
- D. Progress Meetings: Architect will conduct progress meetings at biweekly intervals.
- 1. Coordinate dates of meetings with preparation of payment requests.
  - 2. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  - 3. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of previous progress meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
    - a. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last meeting. Determine whether each activity is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
      - 1) Review schedule for next period.
    - b. Review present and future needs of each entity present, including the following:
      - 1) Interface requirements.
      - 2) Sequence of operations.
      - 3) Status of submittals.
      - 4) Deliveries.
      - 5) Off-site fabrication.
      - 6) Access.
      - 7) Site use.
      - 8) Temporary facilities and controls.
      - 9) Progress cleaning.
      - 10) Quality and work standards.
      - 11) Status of correction of deficient items.
      - 12) Field observations.
      - 13) Status of RFIs.
      - 14) Status of Proposal Requests.
      - 15) Pending changes.
      - 16) Status of Change Orders.
      - 17) Pending claims and disputes.

- 18) Documentation of information for payment requests.
4. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting the meeting will record and distribute the meeting minutes to each party present and to parties requiring information.
  - a. Schedule Updating: Revise Contractor's construction schedule after each progress meeting, where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with the report of each meeting.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 013100

This page intentionally left blank.



## SECTION 013200 - CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for documenting the progress of construction during performance of the Work, including the following:
  - 1. Startup construction schedule.
  - 2. Contractor's Construction Schedule.
  - 3. Construction schedule updating reports.
  - 4. Daily construction reports.
  - 5. Site condition reports.
  - 6. Unusual event reports.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 012900 "Payment Procedures" for schedule of values and requirements for use of cost-loaded schedule for Applications for Payment.
  - 2. Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for schedule of tests and inspections.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Activity: A discrete part of a project that can be identified for planning, scheduling, monitoring, and controlling the construction Project. Activities included in a construction schedule consume time and resources.
  - 1. Critical Activity: An activity on the critical path that must start and finish on the planned early start and finish times.
  - 2. Predecessor Activity: An activity that precedes another activity in the network.
  - 3. Successor Activity: An activity that follows another activity in the network.
- B. Cost Loading: The allocation of the schedule of values for completing an activity as scheduled. The sum of costs for all activities must equal the total Contract Sum.
- C. CPM: Critical path method, which is a method of planning and scheduling a construction project where activities are arranged based on activity relationships. Network calculations determine the critical path of Project and when activities can be performed.
- D. Critical Path: The longest connected chain of interdependent activities through the network schedule that establishes the minimum overall Project duration and contains no float.
- E. Event: The starting or ending point of an activity.
- F. Float: The measure of leeway in starting and completing an activity.
  - 1. Float time belongs to Owner.

2. Free float is the amount of time an activity can be delayed without adversely affecting the early start of the successor activity.
  3. Total float is the measure of leeway in starting or completing an activity without adversely affecting the planned Project completion date.
- G. Resource Loading: The allocation of labor and equipment necessary for completing an activity as scheduled.

### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Format for Submittals: Submit required submittals in the following format:
1. Working electronic copy of schedule file.
  2. PDF file.
- B. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Initial schedule, of size required to display entire schedule for entire construction period.
1. Submit a working digital copy of schedule, using software indicated, and labeled to comply with requirements for submittals.
- C. CPM Reports: Concurrent with CPM schedule, submit each of the following reports. Format for each activity in reports to contain activity number, activity description, cost and resource loading, original duration, remaining duration, early start date, early finish date, late start date, late finish date, and total float in calendar days.
1. Activity Report: List of activities sorted by activity number and then early start date, or actual start date if known.
  2. Logic Report: List of preceding and succeeding activities for each activity, sorted in ascending order by activity number and then by early start date, or actual start date if known.
  3. Total Float Report: List of activities sorted in ascending order of total float.
- D. Construction Schedule Updating Reports: Submit with Applications for Payment.
- E. Daily Construction Reports: Submit at monthly intervals.
- F. Site Condition Reports: Submit at time of discovery of differing conditions.
- G. Unusual Event Reports: Submit at time of unusual event.

### 1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate Contractor's Construction Schedule with the schedule of values, list of subcontracts, submittal schedule, progress reports, payment requests, and other required schedules and reports.
1. Secure time commitments for performing critical elements of the Work from entities involved.

2. Coordinate each construction activity in the network with other activities, and schedule them in proper sequence.

#### 1.5 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

- A. Computer Scheduling Software: Prepare schedules using current version of a program that has been developed specifically to manage construction schedules.
- B. Time Frame: Extend schedule from date established for the Notice to Proceed to date of Final Completion.
  1. Contract completion date to not be changed by submission of a schedule that shows an early completion date, unless specifically authorized by Change Order.
- C. Activities: Treat each floor or separate area as a separate numbered activity for each main element of the Work. Comply with the following:
  1. Activity Duration: Define activities so no activity is longer than 20 days, unless specifically allowed by Architect.
  2. Procurement Activities: Include procurement process activities for the following long lead-time items and major items, requiring a cycle of more than 60 days, as separate activities in schedule. Procurement cycle activities include, but are not limited to, submittals, approvals, purchasing, fabrication, and delivery.
  3. Submittal Review Time: Include review and resubmittal times indicated in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" in schedule. Coordinate submittal review times in Contractor's Construction Schedule with submittal schedule.
  4. Startup and Testing Time: Include no fewer than 15 days for startup and testing.
  5. Substantial Completion: Indicate completion in advance of date established for Substantial Completion, and allow time for Architect's administrative procedures necessary for certification of Substantial Completion.
  6. Punch List and Final Completion: Include not more than 30 days for completion of punch list items and Final Completion.
- D. Constraints: Include constraints and work restrictions indicated in the Contract Documents and as follows in schedule, and show how the sequence of the Work is affected.
  1. Work by Owner: Include a separate activity for each portion of the Work performed by Owner.
  2. Owner-Furnished Products: Include a separate activity for each product. Include delivery date indicated in Section 011000 "Summary." Delivery dates indicated stipulate the earliest possible delivery date.
- E. Milestones: Include milestones indicated in the Contract Documents in schedule, including, but not limited to, the Notice to Proceed, Substantial Completion, and Final Completion , and the following interim milestones:
  1. Temporary enclosure and space conditioning.

- F. Upcoming Work Summary: Prepare summary report indicating activities scheduled to occur or commence prior to submittal of next schedule update. Summarize the following issues:
  - 1. Unresolved issues.
  - 2. Unanswered Requests for Information.
  - 3. Rejected or unreturned submittals.
  - 4. Notations on returned submittals.
  - 5. Pending modifications affecting the Work and the Contract Time.
- G. Contractor's Construction Schedule Updating: At monthly intervals, update schedule to reflect actual construction progress and activities. Issue schedule one week before each regularly scheduled progress meeting.
  - 1. Revise schedule immediately after each meeting or other activity where revisions have been recognized or made. Issue updated schedule concurrently with the report of each such meeting.
  - 2. Include a report with updated schedule that indicates every change, including, but not limited to, changes in logic, durations, actual starts and finishes, and activity durations.
  - 3. As the Work progresses, indicate Final Completion percentage for each activity.
- H. Recovery Schedule: When periodic update indicates the Work is 14 or more calendar days behind the current approved schedule, submit a separate recovery schedule indicating means by which Contractor intends to regain compliance with the schedule. Indicate changes to working hours, working days, crew sizes, equipment required to achieve compliance, and date by which recovery will be accomplished.
- I. Distribution: Distribute copies of approved schedule to Architect Owner, separate contractors, testing and inspecting agencies, and other parties identified by Contractor with a need-to-know schedule responsibility.
  - 1. Post copies in Project meeting rooms and temporary field offices.
  - 2. When revisions are made, distribute updated schedules to the same parties and post in the same locations. Delete parties from distribution when they have completed their assigned portion of the Work and are no longer involved in performance of construction activities.

#### 1.6 GANTT-CHART SCHEDULE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Gantt-Chart Schedule: Submit a comprehensive, fully developed, horizontal, Gantt-chart-type, Contractor's Construction Schedule within 30 days of date established for the Notice of Award.
  - 1. Base schedule on the startup construction schedule and additional information received since the start of Project.
- B. Preparation: Indicate each significant construction activity separately. Identify first workday of each week with a continuous vertical line.
  - 1. For construction activities that require three months or longer to complete, indicate an estimated completion percentage in 10 percent increments within time bar.

## 1.7 REPORTS

- A. Daily Construction Reports: Prepare a daily construction report recording the following information concerning events at Project site:
1. List of subcontractors at Project site.
  2. List of separate contractors at Project site.
  3. Approximate count of personnel at Project site.
  4. Equipment at Project site.
  5. Material deliveries.
  6. High and low temperatures and general weather conditions, including presence of rain or snow.
  7. Testing and inspection.
  8. Accidents.
  9. Meetings and significant decisions.
  10. Unusual events.
  11. Stoppages, delays, shortages, and losses.
  12. Meter readings and similar recordings.
  13. Emergency procedures.
  14. Orders and requests of authorities having jurisdiction.
  15. Change Orders received and implemented.
  16. Construction Change Directives received and implemented.
  17. Services connected and disconnected.
  18. Equipment or system tests and startups.
  19. Partial completions and occupancies.
  20. Substantial Completions authorized.
- B. Site Condition Reports: Immediately on discovery of a difference between site conditions and the Contract Documents, prepare and submit a detailed report. Submit with a Request for Information. Include a detailed description of the differing conditions, together with recommendations for changing the Contract Documents.
- C. Unusual Event Reports: When an event of an unusual and significant nature occurs at Project site, whether or not related directly to the Work, prepare and submit a special report. List chain of events, persons participating, responses by Contractor's personnel, evaluation of results or effects, and similar pertinent information. Advise Owner in advance when these events are known or predictable.
1. Submit unusual event reports directly to Owner within one day(s) of an occurrence. Distribute copies of report to parties affected by the occurrence.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 013200

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 013233 - PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:
  - 1. Preconstruction photographs.
  - 2. Periodic construction photographs.

#### 1.2 FORMATS AND MEDIA

- A. Digital Images: Submit digital media as originally recorded in the digital camera, without alteration, manipulation, editing, or modifications using image-editing software.

#### 1.3 CONSTRUCTION PHOTOGRAPHS

- A. General: Take photographs with maximum depth of field and in focus.
  - 1. Maintain key plan with each set of construction photographs that identifies each photographic location.
- B. Preconstruction Photographs: Before commencement of the Work, take photographs of Project site and surrounding properties, including existing items to remain during construction, from different vantage points, as directed by Architect.
  - 1. Flag construction limits before taking construction photographs.
  - 2. Take [photographs to show existing conditions adjacent to property before starting the Work.
- C. Periodic Construction Photographs: Take photographs weekly. Select vantage points to show status of construction and progress since last photographs were taken.
- D. Additional Photographs: Architect may request photographs in addition to periodic photographs specified.
  - 1. Three days' notice will be given, where feasible.
  - 2. In emergency situations, take additional photographs within 24 hours of request.
  - 3. Circumstances that could require additional photographs include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Immediate follow-up when on-site events result in construction damage or losses.
    - b. Substantial Completion of a major phase or component of the Work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 013233



## SECTION 013300 - SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Submittal schedule requirements.
2. Administrative and procedural requirements for submittals.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 012900 "Payment Procedures" for submitting Applications for Payment and the schedule of values.
2. Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination" for submitting coordination drawings and subcontract list and for requirements for web-based Project software.
3. Section 013200 "Construction Progress Documentation" for submitting schedules and reports, including Contractor's construction schedule.
4. Section 013233 "Photographic Documentation" for submitting preconstruction photographs, periodic construction photographs, and Final Completion construction photographs.
5. Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for submitting test and inspection reports, and schedule of tests and inspections.
6. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting closeout submittals and maintenance material submittals.
7. Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for submitting operation and maintenance manuals.
8. Section 017839 "Project Record Documents" for submitting record Drawings, record Specifications, and record Product Data.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Action Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that require Architect's responsive action. Action submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "action submittals."
- B. Informational Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that do not require Architect's responsive action. Submittals may be rejected for not complying with requirements. Informational submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "informational submittals."

#### 1.3 SUBMITTAL SCHEDULE

- A. Submittal Schedule: Submit, as an action submittal, a list of submittals, arranged in chronological order by dates required by construction schedule. Include time required for review, ordering, manufacturing, fabrication, and delivery when establishing dates. Include

additional time required for making corrections or revisions to submittals noted by Architect and additional time for handling and reviewing submittals required by those corrections.

1. Coordinate submittal schedule with list of subcontracts, the schedule of values, and Contractor's construction schedule.
2. Initial Submittal Schedule: Submit concurrently with startup construction schedule. Include submittals required during the first 60 days of construction. List those submittals required to maintain orderly progress of the Work and those required early because of long lead time for manufacture or fabrication.
3. Final Submittal Schedule: Submit concurrently with the first complete submittal of Contractor's construction schedule.
  - a. Submit revised submittal schedule as required to reflect changes in current status and timing for submittals.
4. Format: Arrange the following information in a tabular format:
  - a. Scheduled date for first submittal.
  - b. Specification Section number and title.
  - c. Submittal Category: Action; informational.
  - d. Name of subcontractor.
  - e. Description of the Work covered.
  - f. Scheduled date for Architect's final release or approval.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTAL FORMATS

A. Submittal Information: Include the following information in each submittal:

1. Project name.
2. Date.
3. Name of Architect.
4. Name of Contractor.
5. Name of firm or entity that prepared submittal.
6. Names of subcontractor, manufacturer, and supplier.
7. Unique submittal number, including revision identifier. Include Specification Section number with sequential alphanumeric identifier and alphanumeric suffix for resubmittals.
8. Category and type of submittal.
9. Submittal purpose and description.
10. Number and title of Specification Section, with paragraph number and generic name for each of multiple items.
11. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
12. Indication of full or partial submittal.
13. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
14. Other necessary identification.
15. Remarks.
16. Signature of transmitter.

B. Options: Identify options requiring selection by Architect.

- C. Deviations and Additional Information: On each submittal, clearly indicate deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations; include relevant additional information and revisions, other than those requested by Architect on previous submittals. Indicate by highlighting on each submittal or noting on attached separate sheet.
- D. Paper Submittals:
  - 1. Place a permanent label or title block on each submittal item for identification; include name of firm or entity that prepared submittal.
  - 2. Provide a space approximately 6 by 8 inches (150 by 200 mm) on label or beside title block to record Contractor's review and approval markings and action taken by Architect.
- E. Submittals Utilizing Web-Based Project Software: Prepare submittals as PDF files or other format indicated by Project management software.

## 1.5 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

- A. Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.
  - 1. Web-Based Project Management Software: Prepare submittals in PDF form, and upload to web-based Project management software website. Enter required data in web-based software site to fully identify submittal.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities.
  - 1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.
  - 2. Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless partial submittals for portions of the Work are indicated on approved submittal schedule.
  - 3. Submit action submittals and informational submittals required by the same Specification Section as separate packages under separate transmittals.
  - 4. Coordinate transmittal of submittals for related parts of the Work specified in different Sections, so processing will not be delayed because of need to review submittals concurrently for coordination.
    - a. Architect reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received.
- C. Processing Time: Allow time for submittal review, including time for resubmittals, as follows. Time for review shall commence on Architect's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.
  - 1. Initial Review: Allow 15 days for initial review of each submittal. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Architect will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.

2. Intermediate Review: If intermediate submittal is necessary, process it in same manner as initial submittal.
  3. Resubmittal Review: Allow 15 days for review of each resubmittal.
  4. Sequential Review: Where sequential review of submittals by Architect's consultants, Owner, or other parties is indicated, allow 21 days for initial review of each submittal.
- D. Resubmittals: Make resubmittals in same form and number of copies as initial submittal.
1. Note date and content of previous submittal.
  2. Note date and content of revision in label or title block, and clearly indicate extent of revision.
  3. Resubmit submittals until they are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.
- E. Distribution: Furnish copies of final submittals to manufacturers, subcontractors, suppliers, fabricators, installers, authorities having jurisdiction, and others as necessary for performance of construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.
- F. Use for Construction: Retain complete copies of submittals on Project site. Use only final action submittals that are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.

## 1.6 SUBMITTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Product Data: Collect information into a single submittal for each element of construction and type of product or equipment.
1. If information must be specially prepared for submittal because standard published data are unsuitable for use, submit as Shop Drawings, not as Product Data.
  2. Mark each copy of each submittal to show which products and options are applicable.
  3. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Manufacturer's catalog cuts.
    - b. Manufacturer's product specifications.
    - c. Standard color charts.
    - d. Statement of compliance with specified referenced standards.
    - e. Testing by recognized testing agency.
    - f. Application of testing agency labels and seals.
    - g. Notation of coordination requirements.
  4. For equipment, include the following in addition to the above, as applicable:
    - a. Wiring diagrams that show factory-installed wiring.
    - b. Printed performance curves.
    - c. Operational range diagrams.
    - d. Clearances required to other construction, if not indicated on accompanying Shop Drawings.
  5. Submit Product Data before Shop Drawings, and before or concurrently with Samples.

- B. Shop Drawings: Prepare Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Shop Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed data.
1. Preparation: Fully illustrate requirements in the Contract Documents. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Identification of products.
    - b. Schedules.
    - c. Compliance with specified standards.
    - d. Notation of coordination requirements.
    - e. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
    - f. Relationship and attachment to adjoining construction clearly indicated.
    - g. Seal and signature of professional engineer if specified.
- C. Samples: Submit Samples for review of type, color, pattern, and texture for a check of these characteristics with other materials.
1. Transmit Samples that contain multiple, related components, such as accessories together in one submittal package.
  2. Identification: Permanently attach label on unexposed side of Samples that includes the following:
    - a. Project name and submittal number.
    - b. Generic description of Sample.
    - c. Product name and name of manufacturer.
    - d. Sample source.
    - e. Number and title of applicable Specification Section.
    - f. Specification paragraph number and generic name of each item.
  3. Web-Based Project Management Software: Prepare submittals in PDF form, and upload to web-based Project software website. Enter required data in web-based software site to fully identify submittal.
  4. Samples for Initial Selection: Submit manufacturer's color charts consisting of units or sections of units, showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available.
    - a. Number of Samples: Submit one full set(s) of available choices where color, pattern, texture, or similar characteristics are required to be selected from manufacturer's product line. Architect will return submittal with options selected.
  5. Samples for Verification: Submit full-size units or Samples of size indicated, prepared from same material to be used for the Work, cured and finished in manner specified, and physically identical with material or product proposed for use, and that show full range of color and texture variations expected. Samples include, but are not limited to, the following: partial sections of manufactured or fabricated components; small cuts or containers of materials; complete units of repetitively used materials; swatches showing color, texture, and pattern; color range sets; and components used for independent testing and inspection.
    - a. Number of Samples: Submit three sets of Samples. Architect will retain two Sample sets; remainder will be returned.

- 1) Submit a single Sample where assembly details, workmanship, fabrication techniques, connections, operation, and other similar characteristics are to be demonstrated.
  - 2) If variation in color, pattern, texture, or other characteristic is inherent in material or product represented by a Sample, submit at least three sets of paired units that show approximate limits of variations.
- D. Product Schedule: As required in individual Specification Sections, prepare a written summary indicating types of products required for the Work and their intended location. Include the following information in tabular form:
  1. Type of product. Include unique identifier for each product indicated in the Contract Documents or assigned by Contractor if none is indicated.
  2. Manufacturer and product name, and model number if applicable.
  3. Number and name of room or space.
  4. Location within room or space.
- E. Qualification Data: Prepare written information that demonstrates capabilities and experience of firm or person. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, contact information of architects and owners, and other information specified.
- F. Design Data: Prepare and submit written and graphic information indicating compliance with indicated performance and design criteria in individual Specification Sections. Include list of assumptions and summary of loads. Include load diagrams if applicable. Provide name and version of software, if any, used for calculations. Number each page of submittal.
- G. Test and Research Reports:
  1. Compatibility Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of compatibility tests performed before installation of product. Include written recommendations for substrate preparation and primers required.
  2. Field Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating and interpreting results of field tests performed either during installation of product or after product is installed in its final location, for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
  3. Material Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting test results of material for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
  4. Preconstruction Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of tests performed before installation of product, for compliance with performance requirements in the Contract Documents.
  5. Product Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating that current product produced by manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Base reports on evaluation of tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, or on comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
  6. Research Reports: Submit written evidence, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, that product complies with building code in effect for Project. Include the following information:
    - a. Name of evaluation organization.

- b. Date of evaluation.
- c. Time period when report is in effect.
- d. Product and manufacturers' names.
- e. Description of product.
- f. Test procedures and results.
- g. Limitations of use.

#### 1.7 DELEGATED DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
  - 1. If criteria indicated are insufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.
- B. Delegated Design Services Certification: In addition to Shop Drawings, Product Data, and other required submittals, submit digitally signed PDF file paper copies of certificate, signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional.
  - 1. Indicate that products and systems comply with performance and design criteria in the Contract Documents. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

#### 1.8 CONTRACTOR'S REVIEW

- A. Action Submittals and Informational Submittals: Review each submittal and check for coordination with other Work of the Contract and for compliance with the Contract Documents. Note corrections and field dimensions. Mark with approval stamp before submitting to Architect.
- B. Contractor's Approval: Indicate Contractor's approval for each submittal with a uniform approval stamp. Include name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.
  - 1. Architect will not review submittals received from Contractor that do not have Contractor's review and approval.

#### 1.9 ARCHITECT'S REVIEW

- A. Action Submittals: Architect will review each submittal, indicate corrections or revisions required.
  - 1. PDF Submittals: Architect will indicate, via markup on each submittal, the appropriate action.

2. Submittals by Web-Based Project Management Software: Architect will indicate, on Project management software website, the appropriate action.
- B. Informational Submittals: Architect will review each submittal and will not return it, or will return it if it does not comply with requirements. Architect will forward each submittal to appropriate party.
- C. Partial submittals prepared for a portion of the Work will be reviewed when use of partial submittals has received prior approval from Architect.
- D. Incomplete submittals are unacceptable, will be considered nonresponsive, and will be returned for resubmittal without review.
- E. Architect will return without review submittals received from sources other than Contractor.
- F. Submittals not required by the Contract Documents will be returned by Architect without action.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 013300



## SECTION 014000 - QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for quality assurance and quality control.
- B. Testing and inspection services are required to verify compliance with requirements specified or indicated. These services do not relieve Contractor of responsibility for compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
  - 1. Specific quality-assurance and quality-control requirements for individual work results are specified in their respective Specification Sections. Requirements in individual Sections may also cover production of standard products.
  - 2. Specified tests, inspections, and related actions do not limit Contractor's other quality-assurance and quality-control procedures that facilitate compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
  - 3. Requirements for Contractor to provide quality-assurance and quality-control services required by Architect, Owner, or authorities having jurisdiction are not limited by provisions of this Section.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, "experienced," unless otherwise further described, means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Quality-Control Tests and Inspections: Tests and inspections that are performed on-site for installation of the Work and for completed Work.
- C. Installer/Applicator/Erector: Contractor or another entity engaged by Contractor as an employee, subcontractor, or sub-subcontractor, to perform a particular construction operation, including installation, erection, application, assembly, and similar operations.
  - 1. Use of trade-specific terminology in referring to a Work result does not require that certain construction activities specified apply exclusively to specific trade(s).
- D. Mockups: Physical assemblies of portions of the Work constructed to establish the standard by which the Work will be judged. Mockups are not Samples.
  - 1. Mockups are used for one or more of the following:
    - a. Verify selections made under Sample submittals.
    - b. Demonstrate aesthetic effects.
    - c. Demonstrate the qualities of products and workmanship.

- d. Demonstrate successful installation of interfaces between components and systems.
    - e. Perform preconstruction testing to determine system performance.
  - 2. Product Mockups: Mockups that may include multiple products, materials, or systems specified in a single Section.
  - 3. In-Place Mockups: Mockups constructed on-site in their actual final location as part of permanent construction.
- E. Preconstruction Testing: Tests and inspections performed specifically for Project before products and materials are incorporated into the Work, to verify performance or compliance with specified criteria. Unless otherwise indicated, copies of reports of tests or inspections performed for other than the Project do not meet this definition.
- F. Product Tests: Tests and inspections that are performed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.7, by a testing agency accredited in accordance with NIST's National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program (NVLAP), or by a testing agency qualified to conduct product testing and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, to establish product performance and compliance with specified requirements.
- G. Source Quality-Control Tests and Inspections: Tests and inspections that are performed at the source (e.g., plant, mill, factory, or shop).
- H. Testing Agency: An entity engaged to perform specific tests, inspections, or both. The term "testing laboratory" has the same meaning as the term "testing agency."
- I. Quality-Assurance Services: Activities, actions, and procedures performed before and during execution of the Work, to guard against defects and deficiencies and substantiate that proposed construction will comply with requirements.
- J. Quality-Control Services: Tests, inspections, procedures, and related actions during and after execution of the Work, to evaluate that actual products incorporated into the Work and completed construction comply with requirements. Contractor's quality-control services do not include contract administration activities performed by Architect.

### 1.3 DELEGATED DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
- 1. If criteria indicated are not sufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.
- B. Delegated Design Services Statement: Submit a statement signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional, indicating that the products and systems are in compliance with performance and design criteria indicated. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

#### 1.4 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conflicting Standards and Other Requirements: If compliance with two or more standards or requirements is specified and the standards or requirements establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, inform the Architect regarding the conflict and obtain clarification prior to proceeding with the Work. Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Architect for clarification before proceeding.
- B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified is the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Architect for a decision before proceeding.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Mockup Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include plans, sections, elevations, and details, indicating materials and size of mockup construction.
  - 2. Indicate manufacturer and model number of individual components.
  - 3. Provide axonometric drawings for conditions difficult to illustrate in two dimensions.

#### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Contractor's Quality-Control Plan: For quality-assurance and quality-control activities and responsibilities.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agencies specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include proof of qualifications in the form of a recent report on the inspection of the testing agency by a recognized authority.
- C. Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports and documents as specified.
- D. Permits, Licenses, and Certificates: For Owner's record, submit copies of permits, licenses, certifications, inspection reports, releases, jurisdictional settlements, notices, receipts for fee payments, judgments, correspondence, records, and similar documents established for compliance with standards and regulations bearing on performance of the Work.

#### 1.7 CONTRACTOR'S QUALITY-CONTROL PLAN

- A. Quality-Control Plan, General: Submit quality-control plan within 10 days of Notice of Award, and not less than five days prior to preconstruction conference. Submit in format acceptable to Architect. Identify personnel, procedures, controls, instructions, tests, records, and forms to be used to carry out Contractor's quality-assurance and quality-control responsibilities and to

coordinate Owner's quality-assurance and quality-control activities. Coordinate with Contractor's Construction Schedule.

- B. Submittal Procedure: Describe procedures for ensuring compliance with requirements through review and management of submittal process. Indicate qualifications of personnel responsible for submittal review.
- C. Testing and Inspection: In quality-control plan, include a comprehensive schedule of Work requiring testing or inspection, including the following:
  - 1. Contractor-performed tests and inspections, including subcontractor-performed tests and inspections. Include required tests and inspections and Contractor-elected tests and inspections. Distinguish source quality-control tests and inspections from field quality-control tests and inspections.
  - 2. Special inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction and indicated on the Statement of Special Inspections.
  - 3. Owner-performed tests and inspections indicated in the Contract Documents.
- D. Continuous Inspection of Workmanship: Describe process for continuous inspection during construction to identify and correct deficiencies in workmanship in addition to testing and inspection specified. Indicate types of corrective actions to be required to bring the Work into compliance with standards of workmanship established by Contract requirements and approved mockups.
- E. Monitoring and Documentation: Maintain testing and inspection reports, including log of approved and rejected results. Include Work Architect has indicated as nonconforming or defective. Indicate corrective actions taken to bring nonconforming Work into compliance with requirements. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

## 1.8 REPORTS AND DOCUMENTS

- A. Test and Inspection Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports specified in other Sections. Include the following:
  - 1. Date of issue.
  - 2. Project title and number.
  - 3. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of testing agency.
  - 4. Dates and locations of samples and tests or inspections.
  - 5. Names of individuals making tests and inspections.
  - 6. Description of the Work and test and inspection method.
  - 7. Identification of product and Specification Section.
  - 8. Complete test or inspection data.
  - 9. Test and inspection results and an interpretation of test results.
  - 10. Record of temperature and weather conditions at time of sample-taking and testing and inspection.
  - 11. Comments or professional opinion on whether tested or inspected Work complies with the Contract Document requirements.
  - 12. Name and signature of laboratory inspector.
  - 13. Recommendations on retesting and reinspecting.

- B. **Manufacturer's Technical Representative's Field Reports:** Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's technical representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
  - 1. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of technical representative making report.
  - 2. Statement on condition of substrates and their acceptability for installation of product.
  - 3. Statement that products at Project site comply with requirements.
  - 4. Summary of installation procedures being followed, whether they comply with requirements and, if not, what corrective action was taken.
  - 5. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
  - 6. Statement of whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
  - 7. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.
- C. **Factory-Authorized Service Representative's Reports:** Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's factory-authorized service representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
  - 1. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of factory-authorized service representative making report.
  - 2. Statement that equipment complies with requirements.
  - 3. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
  - 4. Statement of whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
  - 5. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.

## 1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Qualifications paragraphs in this article establish the minimum qualification levels required; individual Specification Sections specify additional requirements.
- B. **Manufacturer Qualifications:** A firm experienced in manufacturing products or systems similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units. As applicable, procure products from manufacturers able to meet qualification requirements, warranty requirements, and technical or factory-authorized service representative requirements.
- C. **Fabricator Qualifications:** A firm experienced in producing products similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
- D. **Installer Qualifications:** A firm or individual experienced in installing, erecting, applying, or assembling work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- E. **Professional Engineer Qualifications:** A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed

for installations of the system, assembly, or product that is similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.

- F. Testing and Inspecting Agency Qualifications: An NRTL, an NVLAP, or an independent agency with the experience and capability to conduct testing and inspection indicated, as documented in accordance with ASTM E329, and with additional qualifications specified in individual Sections; and, where required by authorities having jurisdiction, that is acceptable to authorities.
- G. Manufacturer's Technical Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to observe and inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- H. Factory-Authorized Service Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to inspect, demonstrate, repair, and perform service on installations of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- I. Preconstruction Testing: Where testing agency is indicated to perform preconstruction testing for compliance with specified requirements for performance and test methods, comply with the following:
  - 1. Contractor's Responsibilities:
    - a. Provide test specimens representative of proposed products and construction.
    - b. Submit specimens in a timely manner with sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
    - c. Provide sizes and configurations of test assemblies, mockups, and laboratory mockups to adequately demonstrate capability of products to comply with performance requirements.
    - d. Build site-assembled test assemblies and mockups, using installers who will perform same tasks for Project.
    - e. When testing is complete, remove test specimens and test assemblies, and mockups; do not reuse products on Project.
  - 2. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Submit a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-assurance service to Architect, with copy to Contractor. Interpret tests and inspections, and state in each report whether tested and inspected Work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.
- J. Mockups: Before installing portions of the Work requiring mockups, build mockups for each form of construction and finish required to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for the completed Work:
  - 1. Build mockups of size indicated.
  - 2. Build mockups in location indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
  - 3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
  - 4. Employ supervisory personnel who will oversee mockup construction. Employ workers who will be employed to perform same tasks during the construction at Project.

5. Demonstrate the proposed range of aesthetic effects and workmanship.
6. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting corresponding Work, fabrication, or construction.
  - a. Allow seven days for initial review and each re-review of each mockup.
7. Promptly correct unsatisfactory conditions noted by Architect's preliminary review, to the satisfaction of the Architect, before completion of final mockup.
8. Approval of mockups by the Architect does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
9. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
10. Demolish and remove mockups when directed unless otherwise indicated.

#### 1.10 QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner Responsibilities: Where quality-control services are indicated as Owner's responsibility, Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform these services.
  1. Owner will furnish Contractor with names, addresses, and telephone numbers of testing agencies engaged and a description of types of testing and inspection they are engaged to perform.
  2. Costs for retesting and reinspecting construction that replaces or is necessitated by Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents will be charged to Contractor, and the Contract Sum will be adjusted by Change Order.
- B. Contractor Responsibilities: Tests and inspections not explicitly assigned to Owner are Contractor's responsibility. Perform additional quality-control activities, whether specified or not, to verify and document that the Work complies with requirements.
  1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide quality-control services specified and those required by authorities having jurisdiction. Perform quality-control services required of Contractor by authorities having jurisdiction, whether specified or not.
  2. Notify testing agencies at least 24 hours in advance of time when Work that requires testing or inspection will be performed.
  3. Where quality-control services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each quality-control service.
  4. Testing and inspection requested by Contractor and not required by the Contract Documents are Contractor's responsibility.
  5. Submit additional copies of each written report directly to authorities having jurisdiction, when they so direct.
- C. Retesting/Reinspecting: Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and reinspecting, for construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.
- D. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Cooperate with Architect and Contractor in performance of duties. Provide qualified personnel to perform required tests and inspections.

1. Notify Architect and Contractor promptly of irregularities or deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
  2. Determine the locations from which test samples will be taken and in which in-situ tests are conducted.
  3. Conduct and interpret tests and inspections, and state in each report whether tested and inspected Work complies with or deviates from requirements.
  4. Submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service through Contractor.
  5. Do not release, revoke, alter, or increase the Contract Document requirements or approve or accept any portion of the Work.
  6. Do not perform duties of Contractor.
- E. Manufacturer's Field Services: Where indicated, engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including service connections. Report results in writing as specified in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."
- F. Manufacturer's Technical Services: Where indicated, engage a manufacturer's technical representative to observe and inspect the Work. Manufacturer's technical representative's services include participation in preinstallation conferences, examination of substrates and conditions, verification of materials, observation of Installer activities, inspection of completed portions of the Work, and submittal of written reports.
- G. Contractor's Associated Requirements and Services: Cooperate with agencies and representatives performing required tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services, and provide reasonable auxiliary services as requested. Notify agency sufficiently in advance of operations to permit assignment of personnel. Provide the following:
1. Access to the Work.
  2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
  3. Adequate quantities of representative samples of materials that require testing and inspection. Assist agency in obtaining samples.
  4. Facilities for storage and field curing of test samples.
  5. Delivery of samples to testing agencies.
  6. Preliminary design mix proposed for use for material mixes that require control by testing agency.
  7. Security and protection for samples and for testing and inspection equipment at Project site.
- H. Coordination: Coordinate sequence of activities to accommodate required quality-assurance and quality-control services with a minimum of delay and to avoid necessity of removing and replacing construction to accommodate testing and inspection.
1. Schedule times for tests, inspections, obtaining samples, and similar activities.
- 1.11 SPECIAL TESTS AND INSPECTIONS
- A. Special Tests and Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified special inspector to conduct special tests and inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction as the responsibility of



Owner, as indicated in the Statement of Special Inspections attached to this Section, and as follows:

1. Verifying that manufacturer maintains detailed fabrication and quality-control procedures, and reviewing the completeness and adequacy of those procedures to perform the Work.
2. Notifying Architect and Contractor promptly of irregularities and deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
3. Submitting a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service to Architect with copy to Contractor and to authorities having jurisdiction.
4. Submitting a final report of special tests and inspections at Substantial Completion, which includes a list of unresolved deficiencies.
5. Interpreting tests and inspections, and stating in each report whether tested and inspected Work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.
6. Retesting and reinspecting corrected Work.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 TEST AND INSPECTION LOG

- A. Test and Inspection Log: Prepare a record of tests and inspections. Include the following:
  1. Date test or inspection was conducted.
  2. Description of the Work tested or inspected.
  3. Date test or inspection results were transmitted to Architect.
  4. Identification of testing agency or special inspector conducting test or inspection.
- B. Maintain log at Project site. Post changes and revisions as they occur. Provide access to test and inspection log for Architect's reference during normal working hours.
  1. Submit log at Project closeout as part of Project Record Documents.

### 3.2 REPAIR AND PROTECTION

- A. General: On completion of testing, inspection, sample-taking, and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes.
  1. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Specification Sections or matching existing substrates and finishes. Restore patched areas and extend restoration into adjoining areas with durable seams that are as invisible as possible. Comply with the Contract Document requirements for cutting and patching in Section 017300 "Execution."
- B. Protect construction exposed by or for quality-control service activities.

- C. Repair and protection are Contractor's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of responsibility for quality-control services.

END OF SECTION 014000

## SECTION 015000 - TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes requirements for temporary utilities, support facilities, and security and protection facilities.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 011000 "Summary" for work restrictions and limitations on utility interruptions.

#### 1.2 USE CHARGES

- A. Installation, removal, and use charges for temporary facilities to be included in the Contract Sum unless otherwise indicated. Allow other entities engaged in the Project to use temporary services and facilities without cost, including, but not limited to, Owner's construction forces, Architect, occupants of Project, testing agencies, and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Sewer Service: Contractor will pay sewer-service use charges for sewer usage by all entities for construction operations.
  - 1. Contractor will pay for actual sewer service use charges until Substantial Completion.
- C. Water Service: Contractor will pay water-service use charges for water used by all entities for construction operations.
  - 1. Contractor will pay for actual water service use charges until Substantial Completion.
- D. Electric Power Service: Contractor will pay electric-power-service use charges for electricity used by all entities for construction operations.
  - 1. Contractor will pay for actual electric power service use charges until Substantial Completion.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Site Utilization Plan: Show temporary facilities, temporary utility lines and connections, staging areas, construction site entrances, vehicle circulation, and parking areas for construction personnel.
- B. Project Identification and Temporary Signs: Show fabrication and installation details, including plans, elevations, details, layouts, typestyles, graphic elements, and message content.
- C. Fire-Safety Program: Show compliance with requirements of NFPA 241 and authorities having jurisdiction. Indicate Contractor personnel responsible for management of fire-prevention program.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electric Service: Comply with NECA, NEMA, and UL standards and regulations for temporary electric service. Install service to comply with NFPA 70.
- B. Tests and Inspections: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to test and inspect each temporary utility before use. Obtain required certifications and permits.
- C. Accessible Temporary Egress: Comply with applicable provisions in the DOJ's "2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design".

#### 1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Temporary Use of Permanent Facilities: Engage Installer of each permanent service to assume responsibility for operation, maintenance, and protection of each permanent service during its use as a construction facility before Owner's acceptance, regardless of previously assigned responsibilities.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 TEMPORARY FACILITIES

- A. Common-Use Field Office: Of sufficient size to accommodate needs of Owner, Architect, and construction personnel office activities and to accommodate Project meetings specified in other Division 01 Sections. Keep office clean and orderly. Furnish and equip offices as follows:
  - 1. Furniture required for Project-site documents, including file cabinets, plan tables, plan racks, and bookcases.
  - 2. Conference room of sufficient size to accommodate meetings of 10 individuals. Provide electrical power service and 120-V ac duplex receptacles, with no fewer than one receptacle on each wall. Furnish room with conference table, chairs, and 4-foot- (1.2-m-) square tack and marker boards.
  - 3. Drinking water.
  - 4. Heating and cooling equipment necessary to maintain a uniform indoor temperature of 68 to 72 deg F (20 to 22 deg C).
  - 5. Lighting fixtures capable of maintaining average illumination of 20 fc (215 lx) at desk height.
- B. Storage and Fabrication Sheds: Provide sheds sized, furnished, and equipped to accommodate materials and equipment for construction operations.
  - 1. Store combustible materials apart from building.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 TEMPORARY FACILITIES, GENERAL

- A. Conservation: Coordinate construction and use of temporary facilities with consideration given to conservation of energy, water, and materials. Coordinate use of temporary utilities to minimize waste.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Locate facilities where they will serve Project adequately and result in minimum interference with performance of the Work. Relocate and modify facilities as required by progress of the Work.
  - 1. Locate facilities to limit site disturbance as specified in Section 011000 "Summary."
- B. Provide each facility ready for use when needed to avoid delay. Do not remove until facilities are no longer needed or are replaced by authorized use of completed permanent facilities.

### 3.3 TEMPORARY UTILITY INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install temporary service or connect to existing service.
  - 1. Arrange with utility company, Owner, and existing users for time when service can be interrupted, if necessary, to make connections for temporary services.
- B. Sewers and Drainage: Provide temporary utilities to remove effluent lawfully.
  - 1. Connect temporary sewers to municipal system as directed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Water Service:
  - 1. Install water service and distribution piping in sizes and pressures adequate for construction.
- D. Sanitary Facilities: Provide temporary toilets, wash facilities, safety shower and eyewash facilities, and drinking water for use of construction personnel. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for type, number, location, operation, and maintenance of fixtures and facilities.
- E. Temporary Heating and Cooling: Provide temporary heating and cooling required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of low temperatures or high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed.
  - 1. Provide temporary dehumidification systems when required to reduce ambient and substrate moisture levels to level required to allow installation or application of finishes and their proper curing or drying.

- F. Electric Power Service:
  - 1. Provide electric power service and distribution system of sufficient size, capacity, and power characteristics required for construction operations.
    - a. Install electric power service underground unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Lighting: Provide temporary lighting with local switching that provides adequate illumination for construction operations, observations, inspections, and traffic conditions.
  - 1. Install and operate temporary lighting that fulfills security and protection requirements without operating entire system.

### 3.4 SUPPORT FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with the following:
  - 1. Provide construction for temporary field offices, shops, and sheds located within construction area or within 30 feet (9 m) of building lines that is noncombustible in accordance with ASTM E136. Comply with NFPA 241.
  - 2. Maintain support facilities until Architect schedules Substantial Completion inspection. Remove before Substantial Completion. Personnel remaining after Substantial Completion will be permitted to use permanent facilities, under conditions acceptable to Owner.

Revise "Dewatering Facilities and Drains" Paragraph below to suit soil-conservation district requirements. See the Evaluations. Consult soil engineer about expected ground water.

- B. Dewatering Facilities and Drains: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Maintain Project site, excavations, and construction free of water.
  - 1. Dispose of rainwater in a lawful manner that will not result in flooding Project or adjoining properties or endanger permanent Work or temporary facilities.
  - 2. Remove snow and ice as required to minimize accumulations.
- C. Project Signs: Provide Project signs as indicated. Unauthorized signs are not permitted.
  - 1. Temporary Signs: Provide other signs as indicated and as required to inform public and individuals seeking entrance to Project.
  - 2. Maintain and touch up signs, so they are legible at all times.
- D. Waste Disposal Facilities:
  - 1. Comply with requirements specified in Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."

### 3.5 SECURITY AND PROTECTION FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. Environmental Protection: Provide protection, operate temporary facilities, and conduct construction as required to comply with environmental regulations and that minimize possible air, waterway, and subsoil contamination or pollution or other undesirable effects.

1. Comply with work restrictions specified in Section 011000 "Summary."
- B. Temporary Erosion and Sedimentation Control:
1. Comply with requirements of EPA Construction General Permit or authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent and requirements specified in Section 311000 "Site Clearing."
  2. Provide measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff and airborne dust to undisturbed areas and to adjacent properties and walkways, in accordance with requirements of EPA Construction General Permit or authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent.
    - a. Verify that flows of water redirected from construction areas or generated by construction activity do not enter or cross tree- or plant-protection zones.
    - b. Inspect, repair, and maintain erosion- and sedimentation-control measures during construction until permanent vegetation has been established.
    - c. Clean, repair, and restore adjoining properties and roads affected by erosion and sedimentation from Project site during the course of Project.
    - d. Remove erosion and sedimentation controls, and restore and stabilize areas disturbed during removal.
- C. Stormwater Control: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Provide barriers in and around excavations and subgrade construction to prevent flooding by runoff of stormwater from heavy rains.
- D. Tree and Plant Protection:
1. Comply with requirements specified in Section 015639 "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection."
- E. Pest Control: Engage pest-control service to recommend practices to minimize attraction and harboring of rodents, roaches, and other pests and to perform extermination and control procedures at regular intervals, so Project will be free of pests and their residues at Substantial Completion. Perform control operations lawfully, using materials approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- F. Barricades, Warning Signs, and Lights: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for erecting structurally adequate barricades, including warning signs and lighting.
- G. Temporary Fire Protection: Install and maintain temporary fire-protection facilities of types needed to protect against reasonably predictable and controllable fire losses. Comply with NFPA 241; manage fire-prevention program.
1. Prohibit smoking in construction areas. Comply with additional limits on smoking specified in other Sections.
  2. Supervise welding operations, combustion-type temporary heating units, and similar sources of fire ignition in accordance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  3. Develop and supervise an overall fire-prevention and -protection program for personnel at Project site. Review needs with local fire department and establish procedures to be followed. Instruct personnel in methods and procedures. Post warnings and information.

4. Provide temporary standpipes and hoses for fire protection. Hang hoses with a warning sign, stating that hoses are for fire-protection purposes only and are not to be removed. Match hose size with outlet size and equip with suitable nozzles.

### 3.6 MOISTURE AND MOLD CONTROL

- A. Moisture and Mold Protection: Protect stored materials and installed Work in accordance with Moisture and Mold Protection Plan.
- B. Exposed Construction Period: Before installation of weather barriers, when materials are subject to wetting and exposure and to airborne mold spores, protect as follows:
  1. Protect porous materials from water damage.
  2. Protect stored and installed material from flowing or standing water.
  3. Keep porous and organic materials from coming into prolonged contact with concrete.
  4. Remove standing water from decks.
  5. Keep deck openings covered or dammed.
- C. Partially Enclosed Construction Period: After installation of weather barriers but before full enclosure and conditioning of building, when installed materials are still subject to infiltration of moisture and ambient mold spores, protect as follows:
  1. Do not load or install drywall or other porous materials or components, or items with high organic content, into partially enclosed building.
  2. Keep interior spaces reasonably clean and protected from water damage.
  3. Periodically collect and remove waste containing cellulose or other organic matter.
  4. Discard or replace water-damaged material.
  5. Do not install material that is wet.
  6. Discard and replace stored or installed material that begins to grow mold.
  7. Perform work in a sequence that allows wet materials adequate time to dry before enclosing the material in gypsum board or other interior finishes.
- D. Controlled Construction Period: After completing and sealing of the building enclosure but prior to the full operation of permanent HVAC systems, maintain as follows:
  1. Control moisture and humidity inside building by maintaining effective dry-in conditions.
  2. Use temporary or permanent HVAC system to control humidity within ranges specified for installed and stored materials.
  3. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, relative humidity, and exposure to water limits.
    - a. Hygroscopic materials that may support mold growth, including wood and gypsum-based products, that become wet during the course of construction and remain wet for 48 hours are considered defective and require replacing.
    - b. Measure moisture content of materials that have been exposed to moisture during construction operations or after installation. Record readings beginning at time of exposure and continuing daily for 48 hours. Identify materials containing moisture levels higher than allowed. Report findings in writing to Architect.
    - c. Remove and replace materials that cannot be completely restored to their manufactured moisture level within 48 hours.



### 3.7 OPERATION, TERMINATION, AND REMOVAL

- A. Maintenance: Maintain facilities in good operating condition until removal.
  - 1. Maintain operation of temporary enclosures, heating, cooling, humidity control, ventilation, and similar facilities on a 24-hour basis where required to achieve indicated results and to avoid possibility of damage.
- B. Temporary Facility Changeover: Do not change over from using temporary security and protection facilities to permanent facilities until Substantial Completion.
- C. Termination and Removal: Remove each temporary facility when need for its service has ended, when it has been replaced by authorized use of a permanent facility, or no later than Substantial Completion. Complete or, if necessary, restore permanent construction that may have been delayed because of interference with temporary facility. Repair damaged Work, clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.
  - 1. Materials and facilities that constitute temporary facilities are property of Contractor. Owner reserves right to take possession of Project identification signs.
  - 2. Remove temporary roads and paved areas not intended for or acceptable for integration into permanent construction. Where area is intended for landscape development, remove soil and aggregate fill that do not comply with requirements for fill or subsoil. Remove materials contaminated with road oil, asphalt and other petrochemical compounds, and other substances that might impair growth of plant materials or lawns. Repair or replace street paving, curbs, and sidewalks at temporary entrances, as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 3. At Substantial Completion, repair, renovate, and clean permanent facilities used during construction period. Comply with final cleaning requirements specified in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."

END OF SECTION 015000

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 016000 - PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. The Work of This Section Includes: Administrative and procedural requirements for selection of products for use in Project; product delivery, storage, and handling; manufacturers' standard warranties on products; special warranties; and comparable products.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 011000 "Summary" for Contractor requirements related to Owner-furnished products.
  - 2. Section 012100 "Allowances" for products selected under an allowance.
  - 3. Section 012300 "Alternates" for products selected under an alternate.
  - 4. Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for requests for substitutions.
  - 5. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting warranties.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Products: Items obtained for incorporating into the Work, whether purchased for Project or taken from previously purchased stock. The term "product" includes the terms "material," "equipment," "system," and terms of similar intent.
  - 1. Named Products: Items identified by manufacturer's product name, including make or model number or other designation shown or listed in manufacturer's published product literature that is current as of date of the Contract Documents.
  - 2. New Products: Items that have not previously been incorporated into another project or facility. Salvaged items or items reused from other projects are not considered new products. Items that are manufactured or fabricated to include recycled content materials are considered new products unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Comparable Product: Product by named manufacturer that is demonstrated and approved through the comparable product submittal process described in "Comparable Products" Article, to have the indicated qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics that equal or exceed those of specified product.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification: A specification in which a single manufacturer's product is named and accompanied by the words "basis-of-design product," including make or model number or other designation. Published attributes and characteristics of basis-of-design product establish salient characteristics of products.
  - 1. Evaluating Comparable Products: In addition to the basis-of-design product description, product attributes and characteristics may be listed to establish the significant qualities related to type, function, in-service performance and physical properties, weight, dimension, durability, visual characteristics, and other special features and requirements

for purposes of evaluating comparable products of additional manufacturers named in the specification.

- C. Subject to Compliance with Requirements: Where the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements" introduces a product selection procedure in an individual Specification Section, provide products qualified under the specified product procedure. In the event that a named product or product by a named manufacturer does not meet the other requirements of the specifications, select another named product or product from another named manufacturer that does meet the requirements of the specifications; submit a comparable product request or substitution request, if applicable.
- D. Substitution: Refer to Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for definition and limitations on substitutions.

### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Options: If Contractor is given option of selecting between two or more products for use on Project, select product compatible with products previously selected, even if previously selected products were also options.
- B. Identification of Products: Except for required labels and operating data, do not attach or imprint manufacturer or product names or trademarks on exposed surfaces of products or equipment that will be exposed to view in occupied spaces or on the exterior.
  - 1. Labels: Locate required product labels and stamps on a concealed surface, or, where required for observation following installation, on a visually accessible surface that is inconspicuous.
  - 2. Equipment Nameplates: Provide a permanent nameplate on each item of service- or power-operated equipment. Locate on a visually accessible but inconspicuous surface. Include information essential for operation, including the following:
    - a. Name of product and manufacturer.
    - b. Model and serial number.
    - c. Capacity.
    - d. Speed.
    - e. Ratings.
  - 3. See individual identification Sections in Divisions 21, 22, 23, and 26 for additional equipment identification requirements.

### 1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Modify or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of approved comparable products and approved substitutions.

## 1.5 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle products, using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss, including theft and vandalism. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Delivery and Handling:
  - 1. Schedule delivery to minimize long-term storage at Project site and to prevent overcrowding of construction spaces.
  - 2. Coordinate delivery with installation time to ensure minimum holding time for items that are flammable, hazardous, easily damaged, or sensitive to deterioration, theft, and other losses.
  - 3. Deliver products to Project site in an undamaged condition in manufacturer's original sealed container or other packaging system, complete with labels and instructions for handling, storing, unpacking, protecting, and installing.
  - 4. Inspect products on delivery to determine compliance with the Contract Documents and that products are undamaged and properly protected.
- C. Storage:
  - 1. Provide a secure location and enclosure at Project site for storage of materials and equipment.
  - 2. Store products to allow for inspection and measurement of quantity or counting of units.
  - 3. Store materials in a manner that will not endanger Project structure.
  - 4. Store products that are subject to damage by the elements under cover in a weathertight enclosure above ground, with ventilation adequate to prevent condensation and with adequate protection from wind.
  - 5. Protect foam plastic from exposure to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
  - 6. Comply with product manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, humidity, ventilation, and weather-protection requirements for storage.
  - 7. Protect stored products from damage and liquids from freezing.
  - 8. Provide a secure location and enclosure at Project site for storage of materials and equipment by Owner's construction forces. Coordinate location with Owner.

## 1.6 PRODUCT WARRANTIES

- A. Warranties specified in other Sections are to be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of the Contract Documents.
  - 1. Manufacturer's Warranty: Written standard warranty form furnished by individual manufacturer for a particular product and issued in the name of Owner or endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.
  - 2. Special Warranty: Written warranty required by the Contract Documents to provide specific rights for Owner and issued in the name of Owner or endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.

- B. Special Warranties: Prepare a written document that contains appropriate terms and identification, ready for execution.
  - 1. Manufacturer's Standard Form: Modified to include Project-specific information and properly executed.
  - 2. Specified Form: When specified forms are included in the Project Manual, prepare a written document, using indicated form properly executed.
  - 3. See other Sections for specific content requirements and particular requirements for submitting special warranties.
- C. Submittal Time: Comply with requirements in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PRODUCT SELECTION PROCEDURES

- A. General Product Requirements: Provide products that comply with the Contract Documents, are undamaged and, unless otherwise indicated, are new at time of installation.
  - 1. Provide products complete with accessories, trim, finish, fasteners, and other items needed for a complete installation and indicated use and effect.
  - 2. Standard Products: If available, and unless custom products or nonstandard options are specified, provide standard products of types that have been produced and used successfully in similar situations on other projects.
  - 3. Owner reserves the right to limit selection to products with warranties meeting requirements of the Contract Documents.
  - 4. Where products are accompanied by the term "as selected," Architect will make selection.
  - 5. Descriptive, performance, and reference standard requirements in Specifications establish salient characteristics of products.
  - 6. Or Equal: For products specified by name and accompanied by the term "or equal," "or approved equal," or "or approved," comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article to obtain approval for use of an unnamed product.
    - a. Submit additional documentation required by Architect in order to establish equivalency of proposed products. Unless otherwise indicated, evaluation of "or equal" product status is by Architect, whose determination is final.
- B. Product Selection Procedures:
  - 1. Non-Limited List of Products: Where Specifications include a list of names of both available manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed or an unnamed product that complies with requirements.
    - a. Non-limited list of products is indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following."
    - b. Provision of an unnamed product is not considered a substitution, if the product complies with requirements.

2. Limited List of Manufacturers: Where Specifications include a list of manufacturers' names, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will be considered unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. Limited list of manufacturers is indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following."
3. Non-Limited List of Manufacturers: Where Specifications include a list of available manufacturers, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed or a product by an unnamed manufacturer that complies with requirements.
  - a. Non-limited list of manufacturers is indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers whose products may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following."
  - b. Provision of products of an unnamed manufacturer is not considered a substitution, if the product complies with requirements.
4. Basis-of-Design Product: Where Specifications name a product, or refer to a product indicated on Drawings, and include a list of manufacturers, provide the specified or indicated product or a comparable product by one of the other named manufacturers. Drawings and Specifications may additionally indicate sizes, profiles, dimensions, and other characteristics that are based on the product named. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed product by one of the other named manufacturers.
  - a. For approval of products by unnamed manufacturers, comply with requirements in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for substitutions for convenience.

## 2.2 COMPARABLE PRODUCTS

- A. Conditions for Consideration of Comparable Products: Architect will consider Contractor's request for comparable product when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect may return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with the following requirements:
  1. Evidence that proposed product does not require revisions to the Contract Documents, is consistent with the Contract Documents, will produce the indicated results, and is compatible with other portions of the Work.
  2. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed product with those of the named basis-of-design product. Significant product qualities include attributes such as type, function, in-service performance and physical properties, weight, dimension, durability, visual characteristics, and other specific features and requirements.
  3. Evidence that proposed product provides specified warranty.
  4. List of similar installations for completed projects, with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners, if requested.
  5. Samples, if requested.
- B. Architect's Action on Comparable Products Submittal: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within seven days of receipt of a request

for a comparable product. Architect will notify Contractor of approval or rejection of proposed comparable product within 15 days of receipt of request, or seven days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.

1. Architect's Approval of Submittal: Marked with approval notation from Architect's and Construction Manager's action stamp. See Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."
  2. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a comparable product request within time allocated.
- C. Submittal Requirements, Two-Step Process: Approval by Architect of Contractor's request for use of comparable product is not intended to satisfy other submittal requirements. Comply with specified submittal requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 016000



## SECTION 017300 - EXECUTION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general administrative and procedural requirements governing execution of the Work, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Construction layout.
  - 2. Field engineering.
  - 3. Installation.
  - 4. Cutting and patching.
  - 5. Coordination of Owner's portion of the Work.
  - 6. Progress cleaning.
  - 7. Starting and adjusting.
  - 8. Protection of installed construction.
  - 9. Correction of the Work.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 011000 "Summary" for coordination of Owner-furnished products , Owner-performed work , Owner's separate contracts, and limits on use of Project site.
  - 2. Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" for submitting surveys.
  - 3. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting final property survey with Project Record Documents, recording of Owner-accepted deviations from indicated lines and levels, replacing defective work, and final cleaning.
  - 4. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for patching penetrations in fire-rated construction.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cutting: Removal of in-place construction necessary to permit installation or performance of subsequent work.
- B. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore construction to original conditions after installation of subsequent work.

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Layout Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Prior to establishing layout of new perimeter and structural column grid(s), review building location requirements. Review benchmark, control point, and layout and dimension requirements. Inform Architect of scheduled meeting. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with Project layout to attend, including the following:

- a. Contractor's superintendent.
  - b. Contractor's personnel responsible for performing Project surveying and layout.
  - c. Professional engineer responsible for performing site survey serving as basis for Project design.
2. Review meanings and intent of dimensions, notes, terms, graphic symbols, and other layout information indicated on the Drawings.
3. Review requirements for including layouts on Shop Drawings and other submittals.
4. Review areas of potential interference and conflict. Coordinate procedures and resolve potential conflicts before proceeding.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For land surveyor.
- B. Certified Surveys: Submit certificate signed by land surveyor.
- C. Certificates: Submit certificate signed by land surveyor, certifying that location and elevation of improvements comply with requirements.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Land Surveyor Qualifications: A professional land surveyor who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing land-surveying services of the kind indicated.
- B. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Obtain and maintain on-site manufacturer's written recommendations and instructions for installation of specified products and equipment.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.
  1. Use cleaning products that comply with Green Seal's GS-37, or if GS-37 is not applicable, use products that comply with the California Code of Regulations maximum allowable VOC levels.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate and verify the existence and location of underground utilities, and other construction affecting the Work.
  - 1. Before construction, verify the location and invert elevation at points of connection of sanitary sewer, storm sewer, gas service piping, and water-service piping; underground electrical services; and other utilities.
  - 2. Furnish location data for work related to Project that must be performed by public utilities serving Project site.
- B. Examination and Acceptance of Conditions: Before proceeding with each component of the Work, examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer or Applicator present where indicated, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance. Record observations.
  - 1. Examine roughing-in for mechanical and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment and fixture installation.
  - 2. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where products and systems are to be installed.
  - 3. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
- C. Written Report: Where a written report listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work is required by other Sections, include the following:
  - 1. Description of the Work, including Specification Section number and paragraph, and Drawing sheet number and detail, where applicable.
  - 2. List of detrimental conditions, including substrates.
  - 3. List of unacceptable installation tolerances.
  - 4. Recommended corrections.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Proceeding with the Work indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to local utility and Owner that is necessary to adjust, move, or relocate existing utility structures, utility poles, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before

fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

- C. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown diagrammatically on Drawings.
- D. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for clarification of the Contract Documents, submit a request for information to Architect in accordance with requirements in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination."

### 3.3 CONSTRUCTION LAYOUT

- A. Verification: Before proceeding to lay out the Work, verify layout information shown on Drawings, in relation to the property survey and existing benchmarks and existing conditions. If discrepancies are discovered, notify Architect promptly.
- B. Engage a land surveyor experienced in laying out the Work, using the following accepted surveying practices:
  - 1. Establish benchmarks and control points to set lines and levels at each story of construction and elsewhere as needed to locate each element of Project.
  - 2. Establish limits on use of Project site.
  - 3. Establish dimensions within tolerances indicated. Do not scale Drawings to obtain required dimensions.
  - 4. Inform installers of lines and levels to which they must comply.
  - 5. Check the location, level and plumb, of every major element as the Work progresses.
  - 6. Notify Architect when deviations from required lines and levels exceed allowable tolerances.
  - 7. Close site surveys with an error of closure equal to or less than the standard established by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Site Improvements: Locate and lay out site improvements, including pavements, grading, fill and topsoil placement, utility slopes, and rim and invert elevations.
- D. Building Lines and Levels: Locate and lay out control lines and levels for structures, building foundations, column grids, and floor levels, including those required for mechanical and electrical work. Transfer survey markings and elevations for use with control lines and levels. Level foundations and piers from two or more locations.
- E. Record Log: Maintain a log of layout control work. Record deviations from required lines and levels. Include beginning and ending dates and times of surveys, weather conditions, name and duty of each survey party member, and types of instruments and tapes used. Make the log available for reference by Architect.

### 3.4 FIELD ENGINEERING

- A. Reference Points: Locate existing permanent benchmarks, control points, and similar reference points before beginning the Work. Preserve and protect permanent benchmarks and control points during construction operations.

1. Do not change or relocate existing benchmarks or control points without prior written approval of Architect. Report lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks or control points promptly. Report the need to relocate permanent benchmarks or control points to Architect before proceeding.
  2. Replace lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks and control points promptly. Base replacements on the original survey control points.
- B. Benchmarks: Establish and maintain a minimum of two permanent benchmarks on Project site, referenced to data established by survey control points. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction for type and size of benchmark.
1. Record benchmark locations, with horizontal and vertical data, on Project Record Documents.
  2. Where the actual location or elevation of layout points cannot be marked, provide temporary reference points sufficient to locate the Work.
  3. Remove temporary reference points when no longer needed. Restore marked construction to its original condition.
- C. Final Property Survey: Engage a land surveyor to prepare a final property survey showing significant features (real property) for Project. Include on the survey a certification, signed by land surveyor, that principal metes, bounds, lines, and levels of Project are accurately positioned as shown on the survey.
1. Show boundary lines, monuments, streets, site improvements and utilities, existing improvements and significant vegetation, adjoining properties, acreage, grade contours, and the distance and bearing from a site corner to a legal point.
  2. Recording: At Substantial Completion, have the final property survey recorded by or with authorities having jurisdiction as the official "property survey."

### 3.5 INSTALLATION

- A. Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and elevation, as indicated.
1. Make vertical work plumb, and make horizontal work level.
  2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance and ease of removal for replacement.
  3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Maintain minimum headroom clearance of 96 inches (2440 mm) in occupied spaces and 90 inches (2300 mm) in unoccupied spaces, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in applications indicated.
- C. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure satisfactory results as judged by Architect. Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.

- D. Conduct construction operations, so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy of type expected for Project.
- E. Sequence the Work and allow adequate clearances to accommodate movement of construction items on-site and placement in permanent locations.
- F. Tools and Equipment: Select tools or equipment that minimize production of excessive noise levels.
- G. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved templates for Work specified to be factory prepared and field installed. Check Shop Drawings of other portions of the Work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing products to comply with indicated requirements.
- H. Attachment: Provide blocking and attachment plates and anchors and fasteners of adequate size and number to securely anchor each component in place, accurately located and aligned with other portions of the Work. Where size and type of attachments are not indicated, verify size and type required for load conditions with manufacturer.
  - 1. Mounting Heights: Where mounting heights are not indicated, mount components at heights directed by Architect.
  - 2. Allow for building movement, including thermal expansion and contraction.
  - 3. Coordinate installation of anchorages. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- I. Joints: Make joints of uniform width. Where joint locations in exposed Work are not indicated, arrange joints for the best visual effect, as judged by Architect. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints.

### 3.6 COORDINATION OF OWNER'S PORTION OF THE WORK

- A. Site Access: Provide access to Project site for Owner's construction personnel and Owner's separate contractors.
  - 1. Provide temporary facilities required for Owner-furnished, Contractor-installed and Owner-furnished, Owner-installed products.
  - 2. Refer to Section 011000 "Summary" for other requirements for Owner-furnished, Contractor-installed and Owner-furnished, Owner-installed products.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate construction and operations of the Work with work performed by Owner's construction personnel and Owner's separate contractors.
  - 1. Construction Schedule: Inform Owner of Contractor's preferred construction schedule for Owner's portion of the Work. Adjust construction schedule based on a mutually agreeable timetable. Notify Owner if changes to schedule are required due to differences in actual construction progress.

2. Preinstallation Conferences: Include Owner's construction personnel and Owner's separate contractors at preinstallation conferences covering portions of the Work that are to receive Owner's work. Attend preinstallation conferences conducted by Owner's construction personnel if portions of the Work depend on Owner's construction.

### 3.7 PROGRESS CLEANING

- A. Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Enforce requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.
  1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and debris.
  2. Do not hold waste materials more than seven days during normal weather or three days if the temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F (27 deg C).
  3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste. Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, in accordance with regulations.
    - a. Use containers intended for holding waste materials of type to be stored.
  4. Coordinate progress cleaning for joint-use areas where Contractor and other contractors are working concurrently.
- B. Site: Maintain Project site free of waste materials and debris.
- C. Work Areas: Clean areas where Work is in progress to the level of cleanliness necessary for proper execution of the Work.
  1. Remove liquid spills promptly.
  2. Where dust would impair proper execution of the Work, broom-clean or vacuum the entire work area, as appropriate.
- D. Installed Work: Keep installed work clean. Clean installed surfaces in accordance with written instructions of manufacturer or fabricator of product installed, using only cleaning materials specifically recommended. If specific cleaning materials are not recommended, use cleaning materials that are not hazardous to health or property and that will not damage exposed surfaces.
- E. Concealed Spaces: Remove debris from concealed spaces before enclosing the space.
- F. Exposed Surfaces: Clean exposed surfaces and protect as necessary to ensure freedom from damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- G. Waste Disposal: Do not bury or burn waste materials on-site. Do not wash waste materials down sewers or into waterways. Comply with waste disposal requirements in Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
- H. During handling and installation, clean and protect construction in progress and adjoining materials already in place. Apply protective covering where required to ensure protection from damage or deterioration at Substantial Completion.

- I. Clean and provide maintenance on completed construction as frequently as necessary through the remainder of the construction period. Adjust and lubricate operable components to ensure operability without damaging effects.
- J. Limiting Exposures: Supervise construction operations to ensure that no part of the construction, completed or in progress, is subject to harmful, dangerous, damaging, or otherwise deleterious exposure during the construction period.

### 3.8 STARTING AND ADJUSTING

- A. Start equipment and operating components to confirm proper operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest.
- B. Adjust equipment for proper operation. Adjust operating components for proper operation without binding.
- C. Test each piece of equipment to verify proper operation. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Manufacturer's Field Service: Comply with qualification requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements."

### 3.9 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure installed Work is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature and relative humidity.

### 3.10 CORRECTION OF THE WORK

- A. Repair or remove and replace damaged, defective, or nonconforming Work. Restore damaged substrates and finishes.
  - 1. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment.
- B. Repair Work previously completed and subsequently damaged during construction period. Repair to like-new condition.
- C. Restore permanent facilities used during construction to their specified condition.
- D. Remove and replace damaged surfaces that are exposed to view if surfaces cannot be repaired without visible evidence of repair.
- E. Repair components that do not operate properly. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired.
- F. Remove and replace chipped, scratched, and broken glass or reflective surfaces.



END OF SECTION 017300

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 017419 - CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:
  - 1. Recycling nonhazardous construction waste.
  - 2. Disposing of nonhazardous construction waste.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 042000 "Unit Masonry" for disposal requirements for masonry waste.
  - 2. Section 311000 "Site Clearing" for disposition of waste resulting from site clearing and removal of above- and below-grade improvements.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Construction Waste: Building, structure, and site improvement materials and other solid waste resulting from construction, remodeling, renovation, or repair operations. Construction waste includes packaging.
- B. Disposal: Removal of demolition or construction waste and subsequent salvage, sale, recycling, or deposit in landfill, incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, or designated spoil areas on Owner's property.
- C. Recycle: Recovery of demolition or construction waste for subsequent processing in preparation for reuse.
- D. Salvage: Recovery of demolition or construction waste and subsequent sale or reuse in another facility.
- E. Salvage and Reuse: Recovery of demolition or construction waste and subsequent incorporation into the Work.

#### 1.4 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, demolition and construction waste becomes property of Contractor.
- B. Historic items, relics, antiques, and similar objects including, but not limited to, cornerstones and their contents, commemorative plaques and tablets, and other items of interest or value to Owner that may be uncovered during demolition remain the property of Owner.

1. Carefully salvage in a manner to prevent damage and promptly return to Owner.

## 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Waste Management Plan: Submit plan within 7 days of date established for the Notice to Proceed.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Achieve end-of-Project rates for salvage/recycling of 75 percent by weight of total nonhazardous solid waste generated by the Work. Practice efficient waste management in the use of materials in the course of the Work. Use all reasonable means to divert construction and demolition waste from landfills and incinerators. Facilitate recycling and salvage of materials.

#### 1. Construction Waste:

- a. Masonry and CMU.
- b. Lumber.
- c. Wood sheet materials.
- d. Wood trim.
- e. Metals.
- f. Roofing.
- g. Insulation.
- h. Gypsum board.
- i. Piping.
- j. Electrical conduit.
- k. Packaging: Regardless of salvage/recycle goal indicated in "General" Paragraph above, salvage or recycle 100 percent of the following uncontaminated packaging materials:

- 1) Paper.
- 2) Cardboard.
- 3) Boxes.
- 4) Plastic sheet and film.
- 5) Polystyrene packaging.
- 6) Wood crates.
- 7) Wood pallets.
- 8) Plastic pails.

1. Construction Office Waste: Regardless of salvage/recycle goal indicated in "General" Paragraph above, salvage or recycle 100 percent of the following construction office waste materials:

- 1) Paper.
- 2) Aluminum cans.
- 3) Glass containers.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PLAN IMPLEMENTATION

- A. General: Implement approved waste management plan. Provide handling, containers, storage, signage, transportation, and other items as required to implement waste management plan during the entire duration of the Contract.
  - 1. Comply with operation, termination, and removal requirements in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls."
- B. Training: Train workers, subcontractors, and suppliers on proper waste management procedures, as appropriate for the Work.
  - 1. Distribute waste management plan to everyone concerned within three days of submittal return.
  - 2. Distribute waste management plan to entities when they first begin work on-site. Review plan procedures and locations established for salvage, recycling, and disposal.
- C. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct waste management operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
  - 1. Designate and label specific areas on Project site necessary for separating materials that are to be salvaged and recycled.
  - 2. Comply with Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for controlling dust and dirt, environmental protection, and noise control.

### 3.2 RECYCLING CONSTRUCTION WASTE, GENERAL

- A. General: Recycle paper and beverage containers used by on-site workers.
- B. Recycling Incentives: Revenues, savings, rebates, tax credits, and other incentives received for recycling waste materials shall accrue to Contractor.
- C. Preparation of Waste: Prepare and maintain recyclable waste materials according to recycling or reuse facility requirements. Maintain materials free of dirt, adhesives, solvents, petroleum contamination, and other substances deleterious to the recycling process.
- D. Procedures: Separate recyclable waste from other waste materials, trash, and debris. Separate recyclable waste by type at Project site to the maximum extent practical according to approved construction waste management plan.
  - 1. Provide appropriately marked containers or bins for controlling recyclable waste until removed from Project site. Include list of acceptable and unacceptable materials at each container and bin.
    - a. Inspect containers and bins for contamination and remove contaminated materials if found.

2. Stockpile processed materials on-site without intermixing with other materials. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.
3. Stockpile materials away from construction area. Do not store within drip line of remaining trees.
4. Store components off the ground and protect from the weather.
5. Remove recyclable waste from Owner's property and transport to recycling receiver or processor as often as required to prevent overfilling bins.

### 3.3 DISPOSAL OF WASTE

- A. General: Except for items or materials to be salvaged or recycled, remove waste materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in a landfill or incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  1. Except as otherwise specified, do not allow waste materials that are to be disposed of accumulate on-site.
  2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
- B. Burning: Do not burn waste materials.

END OF SECTION 017419

## SECTION 017700 - CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for Contract closeout, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Substantial Completion procedures.
  - 2. Final Completion procedures.
  - 3. List of incomplete items.
  - 4. Submittal of Project warranties.
  - 5. Final cleaning.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 012900 "Payment Procedures" for requirements for Applications for Payment for Substantial Completion and Final Completion.
  - 2. Section 013233 "Photographic Documentation" for submitting Final Completion construction photographic documentation.
  - 3. Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for additional operation and maintenance manual requirements.
  - 4. Section 017839 "Project Record Documents" for submitting Record Drawings, Record Specifications, and Record Product Data.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. List of Incomplete Items: Contractor-prepared list of items to be completed or corrected, prepared for the Architect's use prior to Architect's inspection, to determine if the Work is substantially complete.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of cleaning agent.
- B. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Initial submittal at Substantial Completion.
- C. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Final submittal at Final Completion.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Certificates of Release: From authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Certificate of Insurance: For continuing coverage.

- C. Field Report: For pest-control inspection.

#### 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: For maintenance material submittal items required by other Sections.

#### 1.6 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Prepare and submit a list of items to be completed and corrected (Contractor's "punch list"), indicating the value of each item on the list and reasons why the Work is incomplete.
- B. Submittals Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
  - 1. Certificates of Release: Obtain and submit releases from authorities having jurisdiction, permitting Owner unrestricted use of the Work and access to services and utilities. Include occupancy permits, operating certificates, and similar releases.
  - 2. Submit closeout submittals specified in other Division 01 Sections, including Project Record Documents, operation and maintenance manuals, damage or settlement surveys, property surveys, and similar final record information.
  - 3. Submit closeout submittals specified in individual Sections, including specific warranties, workmanship bonds, maintenance service agreements, final certifications, and similar documents.
  - 4. Submit maintenance material submittals specified in individual Sections, including tools, spare parts, extra materials, and similar items, and deliver to location designated by Architect. Label with manufacturer's name and model number.
    - a. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: Prepare and submit schedule of maintenance material submittal items, including name and quantity of each item and name and number of related Specification Section. Obtain Architect's signature for receipt of submittals.
  - 5. Submit testing, adjusting, and balancing records.
  - 6. Submit changeover information related to Owner's occupancy, use, operation, and maintenance.
- C. Procedures Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
  - 1. Advise Owner of pending insurance changeover requirements.
  - 2. Make final changeover of permanent locks and deliver keys to Owner. Advise Owner's personnel of changeover in security provisions.
  - 3. Complete startup and testing of systems and equipment.
  - 4. Perform preventive maintenance on equipment used prior to Substantial Completion.



5. Instruct Owner's personnel in operation, adjustment, and maintenance of products, equipment, and systems. Submit demonstration and training video recordings specified in Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training."
  6. Advise Owner of changeover in utility services.
  7. Participate with Owner in conducting inspection and walkthrough with local emergency responders.
  8. Terminate and remove temporary facilities from Project site, along with mockups, construction tools, and similar elements.
  9. Complete final cleaning requirements.
  10. Touch up paint and otherwise repair and restore marred exposed finishes to eliminate visual defects.
- D. Inspection: Submit a written request for inspection to determine Substantial Completion a minimum of 10 days prior to date the Work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare the Certificate of Substantial Completion after inspection or will notify Contractor of items, either on Contractor's list or additional items identified by Architect, that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
1. Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.
  2. Results of completed inspection will form the basis of requirements for Final Completion.

#### 1.7 FINAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Submittals Prior to Final Completion: Before requesting final inspection for determining Final Completion, complete the following:
1. Submit a final Application for Payment in accordance with Section 012900 "Payment Procedures."
  2. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Submit certified copy of Architect's Substantial Completion inspection list of items to be completed or corrected (punch list), endorsed and dated by Architect. Certified copy of the list will state that each item has been completed or otherwise resolved for acceptance.
  3. Certificate of Insurance: Submit evidence of final, continuing insurance coverage complying with insurance requirements.
  4. Submit pest-control final inspection report.
  5. Submit Final Completion photographic documentation.
- B. Inspection: Submit a written request for final inspection to determine acceptance a minimum of 10 days prior to date the Work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare a final Certificate for Payment after inspection or will notify Contractor of construction that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
1. Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.

## 1.8 LIST OF INCOMPLETE ITEMS

- A. Organization of List: Include name and identification of each space and area affected by construction operations for incomplete items and items needing correction including, if necessary, areas disturbed by Contractor that are outside the limits of construction.
  - 1. Organize list of spaces in sequential order, starting with exterior areas first, listed by room or space number.
  - 2. Organize items applying to each space by major element, including categories for ceilings, individual walls, floors, equipment, and building systems.
  - 3. Include the following information at the top of each page:
    - a. Project name.
    - b. Date.
    - c. Name of Architect.
    - d. Name of Contractor.
    - e. Page number.

## 1.9 SUBMITTAL OF PROJECT WARRANTIES

- A. Time of Submittal: Submit written warranties on request of Architect for designated portions of the Work where warranties are indicated to commence on dates other than date of Substantial Completion, or when delay in submittal of warranties might limit Owner's rights under warranty.
- B. Partial Occupancy: Submit properly executed warranties within 15 days of completion of designated portions of the Work that are completed and occupied or used by Owner during construction period by separate agreement with Contractor.
- C. Organize warranty documents into an orderly sequence based on the table of contents of Project Manual.
- D. Warranty Electronic File: Provide warranties and bonds in PDF format. Assemble complete warranty and bond submittal package into a single electronic PDF file with bookmarks enabling navigation to each item. Provide bookmarked table of contents at beginning of document.
  - 1. Submit on digital media acceptable to Architect.
- E. Warranties in Paper Form:
  - 1. Bind warranties and bonds in heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, thickness as necessary to accommodate contents, and sized to receive 8-1/2-by-11-inch (215-by-280-mm) paper.
  - 2. Provide heavy paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each separate warranty. Mark tab to identify the product or installation. Provide a typed description of the product or installation, including the name of the product and the name, address, and telephone number of Installer.
  - 3. Identify each binder on the front and spine with the typed or printed title "WARRANTIES," Project name, and name of Contractor.

- F. Provide additional copies of each warranty to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.
  - 1. Use cleaning products that comply with Green Seal's GS-37, or if GS-37 is not applicable, use products that comply with the California Code of Regulations maximum allowable VOC levels.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 FINAL CLEANING

- A. General: Perform final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with local laws and ordinances and Federal and local environmental and antipollution regulations.
- B. Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a designated portion of Project:
    - a. Clean Project site of rubbish, waste material, litter, and other foreign substances.
    - b. Sweep paved areas broom clean. Remove petrochemical spills, stains, and other foreign deposits.
    - c. Rake grounds that are not planted, mulched, or paved to a smooth, even-textured surface.
    - d. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
    - e. Remove snow and ice to provide safe access to building.
    - f. Clean exposed exterior and interior hard-surfaced finishes to a dirt-free condition, free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances. Avoid disturbing natural weathering of exterior surfaces. Restore reflective surfaces to their original condition.
    - g. Remove debris and surface dust from limited-access spaces, including roofs, plenums, shafts, trenches, equipment vaults, manholes, attics, and similar spaces.
    - h. Clean flooring, removing debris, dirt, and staining; clean in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
    - i. Vacuum and mop concrete.

- j. Vacuum carpet and similar soft surfaces, removing debris and excess nap; clean in accordance with manufacturer's instructions if visible soil or stains remain.
  - k. Clean transparent materials, including mirrors and glass in doors and windows. Remove glazing compounds and other noticeable, vision-obscuring materials. Polish mirrors and glass, taking care not to scratch surfaces.
  - l. Remove labels that are not permanent.
  - m. Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment and similar equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.
  - n. Clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition, free of stains, including stains resulting from water exposure.
  - o. Replace disposable air filters and clean permanent air filters. Clean exposed surfaces of diffusers, registers, and grills.
  - p. Clean ducts, blowers, and coils if units were operated without filters during construction or that display contamination with particulate matter on inspection.
  - q. Clean luminaires, lamps, globes, and reflectors to function with full efficiency.
  - r. Clean strainers.
  - s. Leave Project clean and ready for occupancy.
- C. Pest Control: Comply with pest control requirements in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls." Prepare written report.
- D. Construction Waste Disposal: Comply with waste-disposal requirements in Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."

### 3.2 CORRECTION OF THE WORK

- A. Complete repair and restoration operations required by "Correction of the Work" Article in Section 017300 "Execution" before requesting inspection for determination of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 017700

## SECTION 017823 - OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes: Administrative and procedural requirements for preparing operation and maintenance manuals, including the following:
  - 1. Operation and maintenance documentation directory manuals.
  - 2. Emergency manuals.
  - 3. Systems and equipment operation manuals.
  - 4. Systems and equipment maintenance manuals.
  - 5. Product maintenance manuals.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" for submitting copies of submittals for operation and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. System: An organized collection of parts, equipment, or subsystems united by regular interaction.
- B. Subsystem: A portion of a system with characteristics similar to a system.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit operation and maintenance manuals indicated. Provide content for each manual as specified in individual Specification Sections, and as reviewed and approved at the time of Section submittals. Submit reviewed manual content formatted and organized as required by this Section.
  - 1. Architect will comment on whether content of operation and maintenance submittals is acceptable.
  - 2. Where applicable, clarify and update reviewed manual content to correspond to revisions and field conditions.
- B. Format: Submit operation and maintenance manuals in the following format:
  - 1. Submit on digital media acceptable to Architect. Enable reviewer comments on draft submittals.
- C. Submit three paper copies. Initial Manual Submittal: Submit draft copy of each manual at least 30 days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect will comment on whether general scope and content of manual are acceptable.

- D. Final Manual Submittal: Submit each manual in final form prior to requesting inspection for Substantial Completion and at least 15 days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect will return copy with comments.
  - 1. Correct or revise each manual to comply with Architect's comments. Submit copies of each corrected manual within 15 days of receipt of Architect's comments and prior to commencing demonstration and training.
- E. Comply with Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for schedule for submitting operation and maintenance documentation.

#### 1.4 FORMAT OF OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Manuals, Electronic Files: Submit manuals in the form of a multiple file composite electronic PDF file for each manual type required.
  - 1. Electronic Files: Use electronic files prepared by manufacturer where available. Where scanning of paper documents is required, configure scanned file for minimum readable file size.
  - 2. File Names and Bookmarks: Bookmark individual documents based on file names. Name document files to correspond to system, subsystem, and equipment names used in manual directory and table of contents. Group documents for each system and subsystem into individual composite bookmarked files, then create composite manual, so that resulting bookmarks reflect the system, subsystem, and equipment names in a readily navigated file tree. Configure electronic manual to display bookmark panel on opening file.
- B. Manuals, Paper Copy: Submit manuals in the form of hard-copy, bound and labeled volumes.
  - 1. Binders: Heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, in thickness necessary to accommodate contents, sized to hold 8-1/2-by-11-inch (215-by-280-mm) paper; with clear plastic sleeve on spine to hold label describing contents and with pockets inside covers to hold folded oversize sheets.
  - 2. Dividers: Heavy-paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each section of the manual. Mark each tab to indicate contents. Include typed list of products and major components of equipment included in the section on each divider, cross-referenced to Specification Section number and title of Project Manual.
  - 3. Protective Plastic Sleeves: Transparent plastic sleeves designed to enclose diagnostic software storage media for computerized electronic equipment. Enclose title pages and directories in clear plastic sleeves.
  - 4. Supplementary Text: Prepared on 8-1/2-by-11-inch (215-by-280-mm) white bond paper.

#### 1.5 EMERGENCY MANUALS

- A. Emergency Manual: Assemble a complete set of emergency information indicating procedures for use by emergency personnel and by Owner's operating personnel for types of emergencies indicated.
- B. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each of the following:

1. Type of emergency.
  2. Emergency instructions.
  3. Emergency procedures.
- C. Type of Emergency: Where applicable for each type of emergency indicated below, include instructions and procedures for each system, subsystem, piece of equipment, and component:
1. Fire.
  2. Flood.
  3. Gas leak.
  4. Water leak.
  5. Power failure.
  6. Water outage.
  7. System, subsystem, or equipment failure.
  8. Chemical release or spill.
- D. Emergency Instructions: Describe and explain warnings, trouble indications, error messages, and similar codes and signals. Include responsibilities of Owner's operating personnel for notification of Installer, supplier, and manufacturer to maintain warranties.
- E. Emergency Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:
1. Instructions on stopping.
  2. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
  3. Operating instructions for conditions outside normal operating limits.
  4. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
  5. Special operating instructions and procedures.

## 1.6 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT OPERATION MANUALS

- A. Systems and Equipment Operation Manual: Assemble a complete set of data indicating operation of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system. Include information required for daily operation and management, operating standards, and routine and special operating procedures.
1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to assemble and prepare information for each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
  2. Prepare a separate manual for each system and subsystem, in the form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's operating personnel.
- B. Content: In addition to requirements in this Section, include operation data required in individual Specification Sections and the following information:
1. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions. Use designations for systems and equipment indicated on Contract Documents.
  2. Performance and design criteria if Contractor has delegated design responsibility.
  3. Operating standards.
  4. Operating procedures.
  5. Operating logs.
  6. Wiring diagrams.

7. Control diagrams.
8. Piped system diagrams.
9. Precautions against improper use.
10. License requirements including inspection and renewal dates.

C. Descriptions: Include the following:

1. Product name and model number. Use designations for products indicated on Contract Documents.
2. Manufacturer's name.
3. Equipment identification with serial number of each component.
4. Equipment function.
5. Operating characteristics.
6. Limiting conditions.
7. Performance curves.
8. Engineering data and tests.
9. Complete nomenclature and number of replacement parts.

D. Operating Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:

1. Startup procedures.
2. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
3. Routine and normal operating instructions.
4. Regulation and control procedures.
5. Instructions on stopping.
6. Normal shutdown instructions.
7. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
8. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
9. Special operating instructions and procedures.

E. Systems and Equipment Controls: Describe the sequence of operation, and diagram controls as installed.

F. Piped Systems: Diagram piping as installed, and identify color coding where required for identification.

## 1.7 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. Systems and Equipment Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of data indicating maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system. Include manufacturers' maintenance documentation, preventive maintenance procedures and frequency, repair procedures, wiring and systems diagrams, lists of spare parts, and warranty information.

1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to assemble and prepare information for each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
2. Prepare a separate manual for each system and subsystem, in the form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's operating personnel.

B. Content: For each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system, include source information, manufacturers' maintenance documentation, maintenance procedures,



maintenance and service schedules, spare parts list and source information, maintenance service contracts, and warranties and bonds as described below.

- C. Source Information: List each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.
- D. Manufacturers' Maintenance Documentation: Include the following information for each component part or piece of equipment:
  - 1. Standard maintenance instructions and bulletins; include only sheets pertinent to product or component installed. Mark each sheet to identify each product or component incorporated into the Work. If data include more than one item in a tabular format, identify each item using appropriate references from the Contract Documents. Identify data applicable to the Work and delete references to information not applicable.
    - a. Prepare supplementary text if manufacturers' standard printed data are not available and where the information is necessary for proper operation and maintenance of equipment or systems.
  - 2. Drawings, diagrams, and instructions required for maintenance, including disassembly and component removal, replacement, and assembly.
  - 3. Identification and nomenclature of parts and components.
  - 4. List of items recommended to be stocked as spare parts.
- E. Maintenance Procedures: Include the following information and items that detail essential maintenance procedures:
  - 1. Test and inspection instructions.
  - 2. Troubleshooting guide.
  - 3. Precautions against improper maintenance.
  - 4. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
  - 5. Aligning, adjusting, and checking instructions.
  - 6. Demonstration and training video recording, if available.
- F. Maintenance and Service Schedules: Include service and lubrication requirements, list of required lubricants for equipment, and separate schedules for preventive and routine maintenance and service with standard time allotment.
  - 1. Scheduled Maintenance and Service: Tabulate actions for daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, semiannual, and annual frequencies.
  - 2. Maintenance and Service Record: Include manufacturers' forms for recording maintenance.
- G. Spare Parts List and Source Information: Include lists of replacement and repair parts, with parts identified and cross-referenced to manufacturers' maintenance documentation and local sources of maintenance materials and related services.

- H. Maintenance Service Contracts: Include copies of maintenance agreements with name and telephone number of service agent.
- I. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
  - 1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.
- J. Drawings: Prepare drawings supplementing manufacturers' printed data to illustrate the relationship of component parts of equipment and systems and to illustrate control sequence and flow diagrams. Coordinate these drawings with information contained in record Drawings to ensure correct illustration of completed installation.
  - 1. Do not use original project record documents as part of maintenance manuals.

#### 1.8 PRODUCT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Product Maintenance Manual: Assemble a complete set of maintenance data indicating care and maintenance of each product, material, and finish incorporated into the Work.
- B. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each product, material, and finish. Include source information, product information, maintenance procedures, repair materials and sources, and warranties and bonds, as described below.
- C. Source Information: List each product included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.
- D. Product Information: Include the following, as applicable:
  - 1. Product name and model number.
  - 2. Manufacturer's name.
  - 3. Color, pattern, and texture.
  - 4. Material and chemical composition.
  - 5. Reordering information for specially manufactured products.
- E. Maintenance Procedures: Include manufacturer's written recommendations and the following:
  - 1. Inspection procedures.
  - 2. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
  - 3. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
  - 4. Schedule for routine cleaning and maintenance.
  - 5. Repair instructions.
- F. Repair Materials and Sources: Include lists of materials and local sources of materials and related services.

- G. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.

- 1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 017823

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 017839 - PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for Project Record Documents, including the following:
  - 1. Record Drawings.
  - 2. Record specifications.
  - 3. Record Product Data.
  - 4. Miscellaneous record submittals.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 017300 "Execution" for final property survey.
  - 2. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for general closeout procedures.
  - 3. Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for operation and maintenance manual requirements.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Record Drawings: Comply with the following:
  - 1. Number of Copies: Submit one set(s) of marked-up record prints.
  - 2. Number of Copies: Submit copies of Record Drawings as follows:
    - a. Initial Submittal:
      - 1) Submit one paper-copy set(s) of marked-up record prints.
      - 2) Submit PDF electronic files of scanned record prints and one set(s) of file prints.
      - 3) Architect will indicate whether general scope of changes, additional information recorded, and quality of drafting are acceptable.
    - b. Final Submittal:
      - 1) Submit three paper-copy set(s) of marked-up record prints.
      - 2) Submit PDF electronic files of scanned Record Prints and three set(s) of file prints.
      - 3) Print each drawing, whether or not changes and additional information were recorded.

#### 1.4 RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. Record Prints: Maintain one set of marked-up paper copies of the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings, incorporating new and revised drawings as modifications are issued.
1. Preparation: Mark record prints to show the actual installation, where installation varies from that shown originally. Require individual or entity who obtained record data, whether individual or entity is Installer, subcontractor, or similar entity, to provide information for preparation of corresponding marked-up record prints.
    - a. Give particular attention to information on concealed elements that would be difficult to identify or measure and record later.
    - b. Accurately record information in an acceptable drawing technique.
    - c. Record data as soon as possible after obtaining it.
    - d. Record and check the markup before enclosing concealed installations.
    - e. Cross-reference record prints to corresponding photographic documentation.
  2. Content: Types of items requiring marking include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Dimensional changes to Drawings.
    - b. Revisions to details shown on Drawings.
    - c. Depths of foundations.
    - d. Locations and depths of underground utilities.
    - e. Revisions to routing of piping and conduits.
    - f. Revisions to electrical circuitry.
    - g. Actual equipment locations.
    - h. Duct size and routing.
    - i. Locations of concealed internal utilities.
    - j. Changes made by Change Order or Construction Change Directive.
    - k. Changes made following Architect's written orders.
    - l. Details not on the original Contract Drawings.
    - m. Field records for variable and concealed conditions.
    - n. Record information on the Work that is shown only schematically.
  3. Mark the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings completely and accurately. Use personnel proficient at recording graphic information in production of marked-up record prints.
  4. Mark record prints with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
  5. Mark important additional information that was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.
  6. Note Construction Change Directive numbers, alternate numbers, Change Order numbers, and similar identification, where applicable.
- B. Record Digital Data Files: Immediately before inspection for Certificate of Substantial Completion, review marked-up record prints with Architect. When authorized, prepare a full set of corrected digital data files of the Contract Drawings, as follows:
1. Format: Annotated PDF electronic file.
  2. Incorporate changes and additional information previously marked on record prints. Delete, redraw, and add details and notations where applicable.
  3. Refer instances of uncertainty to Architect for resolution.

4. Architect will furnish Contractor with one set of digital data files of the Contract Drawings for use in recording information.
  - a. See Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination" for requirements related to use of Architect's digital data files.
- C. Format: Identify and date each Record Drawing; include the designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWING" in a prominent location.
  1. Record Prints: Organize record prints into manageable sets. Bind each set with durable paper cover sheets. Include identification on cover sheets.
  2. Format: Annotated PDF electronic file.
  3. Record Digital Data Files: Organize digital data information into separate electronic files that correspond to each sheet of the Contract Drawings. Name each file with the sheet identification. Include identification in each digital data file.
  4. Identification: As follows:
    - a. Project name.
    - b. Date.
    - c. Designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWINGS."
    - d. Name of Architect.
    - e. Name of Contractor.

#### 1.5 MAINTENANCE OF RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Maintenance of Record Documents: Store Record Documents in the field office apart from the Contract Documents used for construction. Do not use Project Record Documents for construction purposes. Maintain Record Documents in good order and in a clean, dry, legible condition, protected from deterioration and loss. Provide access to Project Record Documents for Architect's reference during normal working hours.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 017839

This page intentionally left blank.



## SECTION 033000 - CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes cast-in-place concrete, including formwork, reinforcement, concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, and finishes, for the following:
  - 1. Footings.
  - 2. Foundation walls.
  - 3. Slabs-on-grade.
  - 4. Suspended slabs.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 033300 "Architectural Concrete" for general building applications of specially finished formed concrete.
  - 2. Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for drainage fill under slabs-on-ground.
  - 3. Section 321313 "Concrete Paving" for concrete pavement and walks.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of the following: blended hydraulic cement, fly ash, slag cement, other pozzolans, and silica fume; materials subject to compliance with requirements.
- B. Water/Cement Ratio (w/cm): The ratio by weight of water to cementitious materials.

### 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at the Project site.
  - 1. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with cast-in-place concrete to attend, including the following:
    - a. Contractor's superintendent.
    - b. Independent testing agency responsible for concrete design mixtures.
    - c. Ready-mix concrete manufacturer.
    - d. Concrete Subcontractor.
    - e. Special concrete finish Subcontractor.
  - 2. Review the following:

- a. Special inspection and testing and inspecting agency procedures for field quality control.
- b. Construction joints, control joints, isolation joints, and joint-filler strips.
- c. Semirigid joint fillers.
- d. Vapor-retarder installation.
- e. Anchor rod and anchorage device installation tolerances.
- f. Cold and hot weather concreting procedures.
- g. Concrete finishes and finishing.
- h. Curing procedures.
- i. Forms and form-removal limitations.
- j. Methods for achieving specified floor and slab flatness and levelness.
- k. Floor and slab flatness and levelness measurements.
- l. Concrete repair procedures.
- m. Concrete protection.
- n. Initial curing and field curing of field test cylinders (ASTM C31/C31M.)
- o. Protection of field cured field test cylinders.

## 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

### A. Product Data: For each of the following.

1. Portland cement.
2. Fly ash.
3. Slag cement.
4. Blended hydraulic cement.
5. Silica fume.
6. Performance-based hydraulic cement
7. Aggregates.
8. Admixtures:
  - a. Include limitations of use, including restrictions on cementitious materials, supplementary cementitious materials, air entrainment, aggregates, temperature at time of concrete placement, relative humidity at time of concrete placement, curing conditions, and use of other admixtures.
9. Vapor retarders.
10. Floor and slab treatments.
11. Liquid floor treatments.
12. Curing materials.
  - a. Include documentation from color pigment manufacturer, indicating that proposed methods of curing are recommended by color pigment manufacturer.
13. Joint fillers.
14. Repair materials.

### B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture, include the following:

1. Mixture identification.
2. Minimum 28-day compressive strength.
3. Durability exposure class.

4. Maximum w/cm.
5. Calculated equilibrium unit weight, for lightweight concrete.
6. Slump limit.
7. Air content.
8. Nominal maximum aggregate size.
9. Steel-fiber reinforcement content.
10. Synthetic micro-fiber content.
11. Include manufacturer's certification that permeability-reducing admixture is compatible with mix design.
12. Include certification that dosage rate for permeability-reducing admixture matches dosage rate used in performance compliance test.
13. Intended placement method.
14. Submit alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.

C. Shop Drawings:

1. Construction Joint Layout: Indicate proposed construction joints required to construct the structure.
  - a. Location of construction joints is subject to approval of the Architect.

D. Samples: For vapor retarder

E. Concrete Schedule: For each location of each Class of concrete indicated in "Concrete Mixtures" Article, including the following:

1. Concrete Class designation.
2. Location within Project.
3. Exposure Class designation.
4. Formed Surface Finish designation and final finish.
5. Final finish for floors.
6. Curing process.
7. Floor treatment if any.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For the following:

1. Installer: Include copies of applicable ACI certificates.
2. Ready-mixed concrete manufacturer.
3. Testing agency: Include copies of applicable ACI certificates.

B. Material Certificates: For each of the following, signed by manufacturers:

1. Cementitious materials.
2. Admixtures.
3. Curing compounds.
4. Floor and slab treatments.
5. Bonding agents.

6. Adhesives.
7. Vapor retarders.
8. Semirigid joint filler.
9. Joint-filler strips.
10. Repair materials.

C. Material Test Reports: For the following, from a qualified testing agency:

1. Portland cement.
2. Fly ash.
3. Slag cement.
4. Blended hydraulic cement.
5. Silica fume.
6. Performance-based hydraulic cement.
7. Aggregates.
8. Admixtures:

- a. Permeability-Reducing Admixture: Include independent test reports, indicating compliance with specified requirements, including dosage rate used in test.

D. Floor surface flatness and levelness measurements report, indicating compliance with specified tolerances.

E. Research Reports:

1. For concrete admixtures in accordance with ICC's Acceptance Criteria AC198.
2. For sheet vapor retarder/termite barrier, showing compliance with ICC AC380.

F. Preconstruction Test Reports: For each mix design.

G. Field quality-control reports.

H. Minutes of preinstallation conference.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs Project personnel qualified as an ACI-certified Flatwork Technician and Finisher and a supervisor who is a certified ACI Flatwork Concrete Finisher/Technician or an ACI Concrete Flatwork Technician with experience installing and finishing concrete, incorporating permeability-reducing admixtures.

1. Post-Installed Concrete Anchors Installers: ACI-certified Adhesive Anchor Installer.

B. Ready-Mixed Concrete Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C94/C94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.

1. Manufacturer certified in accordance with NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities."

- C. Laboratory Testing Agency Qualifications: A testing agency qualified in accordance with ASTM C1077 and ASTM E329 for testing indicated and employing an ACI-certified Concrete Quality Control Technical Manager.
  - 1. Personnel performing laboratory tests shall be an ACI-certified Concrete Strength Testing Technician and Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician, Grade I. Testing agency laboratory supervisor shall be an ACI-certified Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician, Grade II.
- D. Field Quality Control Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified in accordance with ASTM C1077 and ASTM E329 for testing indicated.
  - 1. Personnel conducting field tests shall be qualified as an ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician, Grade 1, in accordance with ACI CPP 610.1 or an equivalent certification program.
- E. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.4/D 1.4M, "Structural Welding Code - Reinforcing Steel."

#### 1.8 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Testing Service: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform preconstruction testing on each concrete mixture.
  - 1. Include the following information in each test report:
    - a. Admixture dosage rates.
    - b. Slump.
    - c. Air content.
    - d. Water-Cement ratio.
    - e. Seven-day compressive strength.
    - f. 28-day compressive strength.
    - g. Standard deviation.
    - h. ACI required compressive strength
    - i. Unit weight.
    - j. Water-soluble chloride ion content determined in accordance with ASTM C1218 at age between 28 and 42 days.

#### 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with ASTM C94/C94M and ACI 301.
- B. Steel Reinforcement: Deliver, store, and handle steel reinforcement to prevent bending and damage.
- C. Waterstops: Store waterstops under cover to protect from moisture, sunlight, dirt, oil, and other contaminants.

## 1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

### A. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and ACI 306.1 and as follows.

1. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.
2. When average high and low temperature is expected to fall below 40 deg F, maintain delivered concrete mixture temperature within the temperature range required by ACI 301.
3. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow.
4. Do not place concrete in contact with surfaces less than 35 deg F, other than reinforcing steel.
5. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mixture designs.

### B. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and ACI 305.1, and as follows:

1. Maintain concrete temperature at time of discharge to not exceed 95 deg F.
2. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade uniformly moist without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.
  - a. Maintain forms, steel reinforcement, embedded items, and subgrade temperature less than 115 deg F.

## 1.11 WARRANTY

### A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to furnish replacement sheet vapor retarder/termite barrier material and accessories for sheet vapor retarder/ termite barrier and accessories that do not comply with requirements or that fail to resist penetration by termites within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 CONCRETE, GENERAL

#### A. ACI Publications: Comply with ACI 301 unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.

### 2.2 FORM-FACING MATERIALS

#### A. General: Formwork and accessories shall conform to ACI 301, Section 2.

#### B. Contractor shall discuss with Architect forms that will be used for exposed finished concrete within finished spaces. Mock-ups may be requested by the Architect.

#### C. Rough-Formed Finished Concrete: Plywood, lumber, metal, or another approved material. Provide lumber dressed on at least two edges and one side for tight fit.

- D. Forms for Cylindrical Columns, Pedestals, and Supports: Metal, glass-fiber reinforced plastic, paper, or fiber tubes that produce surfaces with gradual or abrupt irregularities not exceeding specified formwork surface class. Provide units with sufficient wall thickness to resist plastic concrete loads without detrimental deformation.
- E. Chamfer Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, 3/4 by 3/4 inch, minimum.
- F. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.
  - 1. Formulate form-release agent with rust inhibitor for steel form-facing materials.

## 2.3 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Low-Alloy-Steel Reinforcing Bars (weldable): ASTM A 706/A 706M, deformed.
- B. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 1064/A 1064M, plain, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.

## 2.4 REINFORCEMENT ACCESSORIES

- A. Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, plain-steel bars, cut true to length with ends square and free of burrs.
- B. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire reinforcement in place. Manufacture bar supports from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice," of greater compressive strength than concrete and as follows:
  - 1. For concrete surfaces exposed to view where legs of wire bar supports contact forms, use CRSI Class 1 plastic-protected steel wire or CRSI Class 2 stainless-steel bar supports.

## 2.5 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Source Limitations:
  - 1. Obtain all concrete mixtures from a single ready-mixed concrete manufacturer for entire Project.
  - 2. Obtain each type or class of cementitious material of the same brand from the same manufacturer's plant.
  - 3. Obtain aggregate from single source.
  - 4. Obtain each type of admixture from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Cementitious Materials:
  - 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C150/C150M, Type I or Type III
  - 2. Fly Ash: ASTM C618, Class C or F.
  - 3. Slag Cement: ASTM C989/C989M, Grade 100 or 120.

4. Blended Hydraulic Cement: ASTM C595/C595M
  5. Silica Fume: ASTM C1240 amorphous silica.
  6. Performance-Based Hydraulic Cement: ASTM C1157/C1157M
- C. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C33/C33M, coarse aggregate or better, graded. Provide aggregates from a single source.
1. Alkali-Silica Reaction: Comply with one of the following:
    - a. Expansion Result of Aggregate: Not more than 0.04 percent at one-year when tested in accordance with ASTM C1293.
    - b. Expansion Results of Aggregate and Cementitious Materials in Combination: Not more than 0.10 percent at an age of 16 days when tested in accordance with ASTM C1567.
    - c. Alkali Content in Concrete: Not more than 4 lb./cu. yd. for moderately reactive aggregate or 3 lb./cu. yd. for highly reactive aggregate, when tested in accordance with ASTM C1293 and categorized in accordance with ASTM C1778, based on alkali content being calculated in accordance with ACI 301.
  2. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: 1-1/2 inches nominal for footings and concrete below grade. 1-inch nominal for interior concrete and concrete exposed to the weather. See drawings for additional information.
  3. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
- D. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C260/C260M.
- E. Chemical Admixtures: Certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures that do not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride.
1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type A.
  2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type B.
  3. Water-Reducing and -Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type D.
  4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type F.
  5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and -Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type G.
  6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C1017/C1017M, Type II.
- F. Water and Water Used to Make Ice: ASTM C94/C94M, potable or complying with ASTM C1602/C1602M, including all limits listed in Table 2 and the requirements of paragraph 5.4

## 2.6 VAPOR RETARDERS

- A. Sheet Vapor Retarder/Termite Barrier: ASTM E1745, Class A, except with maximum water-vapor permeance of 0.03 perms; complying with ICC AC380. Include manufacturer's recommended adhesive or pressure-sensitive tape.
1. Low-Temperature Flexibility: Pass at minus 15 deg F; ASTM D146/D146M.
  2. Puncture Resistance: 224 lbf minimum; ASTM E154/E154M.
  3. Water Absorption: 0.1 percent weight-gain maximum after 48-hour immersion at 70 deg F; ASTM D570.



4. Hydrostatic-Head Resistance: 231 feet minimum; ASTM D5385.

## 2.7 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber or ASTM D1752, cork or self-expanding cork. ½” thick x full depth of slab.
- B. Semirigid Joint Filler: Two-component, semirigid, 100 percent solids, aromatic polyurea with a Type A shore durometer hardness range of 90 to 95 in accordance with ASTM D2240.
- C. Bonding Agent: ASTM C1059/C1059M, Type II, nonredispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.
- D. Epoxy Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C881, two-component epoxy resin, capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces, of class suitable for application temperature and of grade and class to suit requirements, and as follows:
  1. Types IV and V, load bearing, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.
- E. Floor Slab Protective Covering: Eight-feet- wide cellulose fabric.

## 2.8 REPAIR MATERIALS

- A. Repair Underlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/8 inch and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
  1. Cement Binder: ASTM C150/C150M portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement, as defined in ASTM C219.
  2. Primer: Product of underlayment manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
  3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch or coarse sand, as recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
  4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 4100 psi at 28 days when tested in accordance with ASTM C109/C109M.
- B. Repair Overlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/4 inch and that can be filled in over a scarified surface to match adjacent floor elevations.
  1. Cement Binder: ASTM C150/C150M portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement, as defined in ASTM C219.
  2. Primer: Product of topping manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
  3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch or coarse sand as recommended by topping manufacturer.
  4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 5000 psi at 28 days when tested in accordance with ASTM C109/C109M.

## 2.9 CONCRETE MIXTURES, GENERAL

- A. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, in accordance with ACI 301.
  - 1. Use a qualified testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mixture designs, based on laboratory trial mixtures.
- B. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement in concrete as follows:
  - 1. Fly Ash or Other Pozzolans: 25 percent by mass.
  - 2. Slag Cement: 50 percent by mass.
  - 3. Silica Fume: 10 percent by mass.
  - 4. Total of Fly Ash or Other Pozzolans, Slag Cement, and Silica Fume: 50 percent by mass, with fly ash or pozzolans not exceeding 25 percent by mass and silica fume not exceeding 10 percent by mass.
  - 5. Total of Fly Ash or Other Pozzolans and Silica Fume: 35 percent by mass with fly ash or pozzolans not exceeding 25 percent by mass and silica fume not exceeding 10 percent by mass.
- C. Admixtures: Use admixtures in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Use water-reducing, high-range water-reducing or plasticizing admixture in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.
  - 2. Use water-reducing and -retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.
  - 3. Use water-reducing admixture in pumped concrete, concrete for heavy-use industrial slabs
  - 4. Use corrosion-inhibiting admixture in concrete mixtures where indicated.
  - 5. Use permeability-reducing admixture in concrete mixtures where indicated.
- D. Color Pigment: Add color pigment to concrete mixture in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and to result in hardened concrete color consistent with approved mockup.

## 2.10 CONCRETE MIXTURES

- A. Normal-weight concrete used for footings and piers below grade:
  - 1. Exposure Class: ACI 318 F0
  - 2. Minimum Compressive Strength at 28 Days: 3000psi.
  - 3. Maximum w/cm: 0.60
  - 4. Minimum Cementitious Materials Content: 470 lb/cu. yd.
  - 5. Slump Limit: 5 inches, plus or minus 1 inch
  - 6. Air Content: 0% to 3% Entrapped
- B. Normal-weight concrete used for interior slabs-on-ground and interior elevated slabs:
  - 1. Exposure Class: ACI 318 F0
  - 2. Minimum Compressive Strength: 4000 psi at 28 days.

3. Maximum w/cm: 0.48
  4. Slump Limit: 3 to 5 inches
  5. Air Content: 0% to 3% Entrapped
- C. Normal-weight concrete used for exterior slabs-on-ground and concrete walls and retaining walls exposed to weather:
1. Exposure Class: ACI 318 F2
  2. Minimum Compressive Strength: 4500 psi at 28 days.
  3. Maximum w/cm: 0.45.
  4. Minimum Cementitious Materials Content: 564 lb/cu. yd.
  5. Slump Limit: 5 inches, plus or minus 1 inch
  6. Air Content: 6% +/- 1.5%

## 2.11 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete in accordance with ASTM C94/C94M and ASTM C1116/C1116M and furnish batch ticket information.
- B. Project-Site Mixing: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete in accordance with ASTM C94/C94M. Mix concrete materials in appropriate drum-type batch machine mixer.
1. For mixer capacity of 1 cu. yd. or smaller, continue mixing at least 1-1/2 minutes, but not more than five minutes after ingredients are in mixer, before any part of batch is released.
  2. For mixer capacity larger than 1 cu. yd., increase mixing time by 15 seconds for each additional 1 cu. yd..
  3. Provide batch ticket for each batch discharged and used in the Work, indicating Project identification name and number, date, mixture type, mixture time, quantity, and amount of water added. Record approximate location of final deposit in structure.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verification of Conditions:
1. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of concrete forms, accessories, and reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections have been performed.
  2. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Provide reasonable auxiliary services to accommodate field testing and inspections, acceptable to testing agency, including the following:

1. Daily access to the Work.
2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
3. Secure space for storage, initial curing, and field curing of test samples, including source of water and continuous electrical power at Project site during site curing period for test samples.
4. Security and protection for test samples and for testing and inspection equipment at Project site.

### 3.3 FORMWORK

- A. Design, erect, shore, brace, and maintain formwork, according to ACI 301, to support vertical, lateral, static, and dynamic loads, and construction loads that might be applied, until structure can support such loads.
- B. Construct formwork so concrete members and structures are of size, shape, alignment, elevation, and position indicated, within tolerance limits of ACI 117.
- C. Limit concrete surface irregularities, designated by ACI 347 as abrupt or gradual, as follows:
  1. Class A, 1/8 inch for smooth-formed finished surfaces exposed to view.
  2. Class B, 1/4 inch for rough-formed finished surfaces intended to receive plaster, stucco or wainscoting.
  3. Class C, 1/2 inch for permanently exposed surfaces where finishes are not specified
- D. Construct forms tight enough to prevent loss of concrete mortar.
- E. Construct forms for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces. Provide crush or wrecking plates where stripping may damage cast-concrete surfaces. Provide top forms for inclined surfaces steeper than 1.5 horizontal to 1 vertical.
  1. Install keyways, reglets, recesses, and the like, for easy removal.
  2. Do not use rust-stained steel form-facing material.
- F. Set edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed strips for slabs to achieve required elevations and slopes in finished concrete surfaces. Provide and secure units to support screed strips; use strike-off templates or compacting-type screeds.
- G. Provide temporary openings for cleanouts and inspection ports where interior area of formwork is inaccessible. Close openings with panels tightly fitted to forms and securely braced to prevent loss of concrete mortar. Locate temporary openings in forms at inconspicuous locations
- H. All exterior corners and edges of permanently exposed concrete shall be chamfered where shown on the drawings.
- I. Form openings, chases, offsets, sinkages, keyways, reglets, blocking, screeds, and bulkheads required in the Work. Determine sizes and locations from trades providing such items.
- J. Clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete. Remove chips, wood, sawdust, dirt, and other debris just before placing concrete.

- K. Retighten forms and bracing before placing concrete, as required, to prevent mortar leaks and maintain proper alignment.
- L. Coat contact surfaces of forms with form-release agent, according to manufacturer's written instructions, before placing reinforcement.

### 3.4 REMOVING AND REUSING FORMS

- A. General: Formwork for sides of beams, walls, columns, and similar parts of the Work that does not support weight of concrete may be removed after cumulatively curing at not less than 50 deg F for 24 hours after placing concrete. Concrete has to be hard enough to not be damaged by form-removal operations, and curing and protection operations need to be maintained.
  - 1. Leave formwork for beam soffits, joists, slabs, and other structural elements that support weight of concrete in place until concrete has achieved at least 70 percent of its 28-day design compressive strength.
  - 2. Remove forms only if shores have been arranged to permit removal of forms without loosening or disturbing shores.
- B. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be reused in the Work. Split, frayed, delaminated, or otherwise damaged form-facing material are not acceptable for exposed surfaces. Apply new form-release agent.
- C. When forms are reused, clean surfaces, remove fins and laitance, and tighten to close joints. Align and secure joints to avoid offsets. Do not use patched forms for exposed concrete surfaces unless approved by Architect.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF EMBEDDED ITEMS

- A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - 1. Install anchor rods, accurately located, to elevations required and complying with tolerances in Section 7.5 of ANSI/AISC 303 "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF VAPOR RETARDER

- A. Sheet Vapor Retarders: Place, protect, and repair sheet vapor retarder in accordance with ASTM E1643 and manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Install vapor retarder with longest dimension parallel with direction of concrete pour.
  - 2. Face laps away from exposed direction of concrete pour.
  - 3. Lap vapor retarder over footings and grade beams not less than 6 inches, sealing vapor retarder to concrete.
  - 4. Lap joints 6 inches and seal with manufacturer's recommended tape.

5. Terminate vapor retarder at the top of floor slabs, grade beams, and pile caps, sealing entire perimeter to floor slabs, grade beams, foundation walls, or pile caps.
6. Seal penetrations in accordance with vapor retarder manufacturer's instructions.
7. Protect vapor retarder during placement of reinforcement and concrete.
  - a. Repair damaged areas by patching with vapor retarder material, overlapping damages area by 6 inches on all sides, and sealing to vapor retarder.

### 3.7 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. General: Reinforcement shall conform to ACI 301, and shall comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for placing reinforcement.
  1. Do not cut or puncture vapor retarder. Repair damage and reseal vapor retarder before placing concrete.
- B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other foreign materials that would reduce bond to concrete.
- C. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement. Locate and support reinforcement with bar supports to maintain minimum concrete cover. Do not tack weld crossing reinforcing bars.
  1. Weld reinforcing bars according to AWS D1.4, where indicated.
- D. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.
- E. Install welded wire reinforcement in longest practicable lengths on bar supports spaced to minimize sagging. Lap edges and ends of adjoining sheets at least one mesh spacing. Offset laps of adjoining sheet widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction. Lace overlaps with wire.

### 3.8 JOINTS

- A. Construct joints true to line, with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.
- B. Construction Joints: Coordinate with floor slab pattern and concrete placement sequence.
  1. Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated on Drawings or as approved by Architect.
  2. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement.
    - a. Continue reinforcement across construction joints unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip placements of floors and slabs.
  3. Form keyed joints as indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches into concrete.
  4. Locate joints for beams, slabs, joists, and girders at third points of spans. Offset joints in girders a minimum distance of twice the beam width from a beam-girder intersection.
  5. Locate horizontal joints in walls and columns at underside of floors, slabs, beams, and girders and at the top of footings or floor slabs.

6. Space vertical joints in walls as indicated on Drawings. Unless otherwise indicated on Drawings, locate vertical joints beside piers integral with walls, near corners, and in concealed locations where possible.
  7. Use a bonding agent at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
  8. Use epoxy-bonding adhesive at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
- C. Control Joints in Slabs-on-Ground: Form weakened-plane control joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct control joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of concrete thickness as follows:
1. Sawed Joints: Form control joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch- wide joints into concrete when cutting action does not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random cracks.
- D. Isolation Joints in Slabs-on-Ground: After removing formwork, install joint-filler strips at slab junctions with vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and other locations, as indicated.
1. Extend joint-filler strips full width and depth of joint, terminating flush with finished concrete surface unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
  2. Terminate full-width joint-filler strips not less than 1/2 inch or more than 1 inch below finished concrete surface, where joint sealants, specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants," are indicated.
  3. Install joint-filler strips in lengths as long as practicable. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip sections together.
- E. Doweled Joints:
1. Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated on Drawings.
  2. Lubricate or asphalt coat one-half of dowel bar length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.
- F. Diamond Dowel Plates: Install diamond dowel plates at joints where indicated on Drawings.

### 3.9 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, embedded items, and vapor retarder is complete and that required inspections are completed.
1. Immediately prior to concrete placement, inspect vapor retarder for damage and deficient installation, and repair defective areas.
  2. Provide continuous inspection of vapor retarder during concrete placement and make necessary repairs to damaged areas as Work progresses.
- B. Notify Architect and testing and inspection agencies 24 hours prior to commencement of concrete placement.

- C. Do not add water to concrete during delivery, at Project site, or during placement unless approved by Architect in writing, but not to exceed the amount indicated on the concrete delivery ticket.
  - 1. Do not add water to concrete after adding high-range water-reducing admixtures to mixture.
- D. Before test sampling and placing concrete, water may be added at Project site, subject to limitations of ACI 301, but not to exceed the amount indicated on the concrete delivery ticket.
  - 1. Do not add water to concrete after adding high-range water-reducing admixtures to mixture.
- E. Deposit concrete continuously in one layer or in horizontal layers of such thickness that no new concrete is placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness.
  - 1. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as indicated.
  - 2. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.
  - 3. Limit concrete freefall distance to the minimum of the following:
    - a. Smallest width of formwork in horizontal dimension less than, or equal to, twenty-four inches: Ten-foot maximum freefall.
    - b. Smallest width of formwork in horizontal dimension greater than twenty-four inches, but less than thirty-six inches: Fifteen-foot maximum freefall.
    - c. Within formwork that has cross ties, spacers, rods, reinforcing, or other embedded items: Ten-foot maximum freefall.
    - d. All other conditions: Twenty-foot maximum freefall.
  - 4. Deposit concrete in horizontal layers of depth not to exceed formwork design pressures and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints.
  - 5. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment in accordance with ACI 301.
    - a. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms.
    - b. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least 6 inches into preceding layer.
    - c. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to lose plasticity.
    - d. At each insertion, limit duration of vibration to time necessary to consolidate concrete, and complete embedment of reinforcement and other embedded items without causing mixture constituents to segregate.
- F. Deposit and consolidate concrete for floors and slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until placement of a panel or section is complete.
  - 1. Do not place concrete floors and slabs in a checkerboard sequence.
  - 2. Consolidate concrete during placement operations, so concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
  - 3. Maintain reinforcement in position on chairs during concrete placement.
  - 4. Screed slab surfaces with a straightedge and strike off to correct elevations.
  - 5. Level concrete, cut high areas, and fill low areas.



6. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required.
7. Begin initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane, before excess bleedwater appears on the surface.
8. Do not further disturb slab surfaces before starting finishing operations.

### 3.10 FINISHING FORMED SURFACES

#### A. As-Cast Surface Finishes:

1. ACI 301 Surface Finish SF-1.0: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material.
  - a. Patch voids larger than 1-1/2 inches wide or 1/2 inch deep.
  - b. Remove projections larger than 1 inch.
  - c. Tie holes do not require patching.
  - d. Surface Tolerance: ACI 117 Class D.
  - e. Apply to concrete surfaces not exposed to public view.
2. ACI 301 Surface Finish SF-2.0: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material, arranged in an orderly and symmetrical manner with a minimum of seams.
  - a. Patch voids larger than 3/4 inch wide or 1/2 inch deep.
  - b. Remove projections larger than 1/4 inch.
  - c. Patch tie holes.
  - d. Surface Tolerance: ACI 117 Class B.
  - e. Locations: Apply to concrete surfaces exposed to public view, to receive a rubbed finish, or to be covered with a coating or covering material applied directly to concrete.
3. ACI 301 Surface Finish SF-3.0:
  - a. Patch voids larger than 3/4 inch wide or 1/2 inch deep.
  - b. Remove projections larger than 1/8 inch.
  - c. Patch tie holes.
  - d. Surface Tolerance: ACI 117 Class A.
  - e. Locations: Apply to concrete surfaces where indicated on the Architectural drawings.

#### B. Rubbed Finish: Apply the following to as cast surface finishes where indicated on Architectural Drawings:

1. Smooth-Rubbed Finish:
  - a. Perform no later than one day after form removal.
  - b. Moisten concrete surfaces and rub with carborundum brick or another abrasive until producing a uniform color and texture.
  - c. If sufficient cement paste cannot be drawn from the concrete by the rubbing process, use a grout made from the same cementitious materials used in the in-place concrete.

- d. Maintain required patterns or variances as shown on Drawings or to match design reference sample per architect.

C. Related Unformed Surfaces:

1. At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces adjacent to formed surfaces, strike off smooth and finish with a color and texture matching adjacent formed surfaces.
2. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.11 FINISHING FLOORS AND SLABS

- A. Comply with ACI 302.1R recommendations for screeding, restraighening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.

B. Scratch Finish:

1. While still plastic, texture concrete surface that has been screeded and bull-floated or darbied.
2. Use stiff brushes, brooms, or rakes to produce a profile depth of 1/4 inch in one direction.
3. Apply scratch finish to surfaces to receive concrete floor toppings, or to receive mortar setting beds for bonded cementitious floor finishes.

C. Float Finish:

1. When bleedwater sheen has disappeared and concrete surface has stiffened sufficiently to permit operation of specific float apparatus, consolidate concrete surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power-driven floats.
2. Repeat float passes and restraighening until surface is left with a uniform, smooth, granular texture and complies with ACI 117 tolerances for conventional concrete.
3. Apply float finish to surfaces to receive trowel finish and to be covered with fluid-applied or sheet waterproofing, built-up or membrane roofing, or sand-bed terrazzo.
4. Apply float finish to surfaces to be covered with resilient flooring, carpet, ceramic or quarry tile set over a cleavage membrane, paint, or another thin-film-finish coating system when the total air content of concrete exceeds 3 percent.
  - a. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.
  - b. Comply with flatness and levelness tolerances for trowel-finished floors.

D. Float and Fine-Broom Finish.

1. Immediately after float finishing, while concrete is still plastic, slightly scarify surface with a fine broom perpendicular to main traffic route
2. Apply to surfaces where ceramic or quarry tile is to be installed by either thickset or thinset method when the total air content of concrete exceeds 3 percent.
  - a. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.
  - b. Comply with flatness and levelness tolerances for trowel-finished floor surfaces.

E. Trowel Finish:

1. After applying float finish, apply first troweling and consolidate concrete by hand or power-driven trowel.
2. Continue troweling passes and restraighthen until surface is free of trowel marks and uniform in texture and appearance.
3. Grind smooth any surface defects that would telegraph through applied coatings or floor coverings.
4. Do not add water to concrete surface.
5. Do not apply hard-troweled finish to concrete, which has a total air content greater than 3 percent.
6. Apply a trowel finish to surfaces exposed to view or to be covered with resilient flooring, carpet, ceramic or quarry tile set over a cleavage membrane, paint, or another thin-film-finish coating system, where the total air content of concrete is less than 3 percent.
7. Finish surfaces to the following tolerances, in accordance with ASTM E1155, for a randomly trafficked floor surface:

a. Slabs on Ground:

- 1) Finish and measure surface so gap at any point between concrete surface and an unleveled, freestanding, 10-ft.- long straightedge resting on two high spots and placed anywhere on the surface does not exceed 1/8 inch.
- 2) Specified overall values of flatness,  $F_F$  25; and of levelness,  $F_L$  20; with minimum local values of flatness,  $F_F$  17; and of levelness,  $F_L$  15; for carpeted slabs-on-grade and non-critical floors where slabs remain exposed, such as mechanical rooms.
- 3) Specified overall values of flatness,  $F_F$  35; and of levelness,  $F_L$  25; with minimum local values of flatness,  $F_F$  24; and of levelness,  $F_L$  17; for slabs-on-grade with thin floor coverings.
- 4) Specified overall values of flatness,  $F_F$  45; and of levelness,  $F_L$  35; with minimum local values of flatness,  $F_F$  30; and of levelness,  $F_L$  24; for very flat floors for high-speed forklifts, air pallets, ice rink, roller rink, slabs to receive polished concrete finish.

F. Trowel and Fine-Broom Finish: Apply a first trowel finish; while concrete is still plastic, slightly scarify surface with a fine broom perpendicular to main traffic route. Apply to surfaces indicated on Drawings, where ceramic or quarry tile is to be installed by either thickset or thinset method, where total air content of concrete does not exceed 3 percent.

1. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.
2. Comply with flatness and levelness tolerances for trowel-finished floor surfaces.

G. Broom Finish: Apply a broom finish to exterior concrete platforms, steps, ramps, and locations indicated on Drawings.

1. Immediately after float finishing, slightly roughen trafficked surface by brooming with fiber-bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route.
2. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.

### 3.12 INSTALLATION OF MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEMS

A. Filling In:

1. Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures after Work of other trades is in place unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Mix, place, and cure concrete, as specified, to blend with in-place construction.
  3. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling indicated or required to complete the Work.
- B. Curbs: Provide monolithic finish to interior curbs by stripping forms while concrete is still green and by steel-troweling surfaces to a hard, dense finish with corners, intersections, and terminations slightly rounded.
- C. Steel Pan Stairs: Provide concrete fill for steel pan stair treads, landings, and associated items.
1. Cast-in inserts and accessories, as shown on Drawings.
  2. Screed, tamp, and trowel finish concrete surfaces.

### 3.13 CONCRETE CURING

- A. Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures.
1. Comply with ACI 301 and ACI 306.1 for cold weather protection during curing.
  2. Comply with ACI 301 and ACI 305.1 for hot-weather protection during curing.
  3. Maintain moisture loss no more than 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h before and during finishing operations.
- B. Curing Formed Surfaces: Comply with ACI 308.1 as follows:
1. Cure formed concrete surfaces, including underside of beams, supported slabs, and other similar surfaces.
    - a. Curing Period: 7 days, or until concrete reaches 70% of its design strength.
  2. Cure concrete containing color pigments in accordance with color pigment manufacturer's instructions.
  3. If forms remain during curing period, moist cure after loosening forms.
  4. If removing forms before end of curing period, continue curing for remainder of curing period, as follows:
    - a. Continuous Fogging: Maintain standing water on concrete surface until final setting of concrete.
    - b. Continuous Sprinkling: Maintain concrete surface continuously wet.
    - c. Absorptive Cover: Pre-dampen absorptive material before application; apply additional water to absorptive material to maintain concrete surface continuously wet.
    - d. Water-Retention Sheeting Materials: Cover exposed concrete surfaces with sheeting material, taping, or lapping seams.
    - e. Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
      - 1) Recoat areas subject to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application.
      - 2) Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
- C. Curing Unformed Surfaces: Comply with ACI 308.1 as follows:

1. Begin curing immediately after finishing concrete.
  - a. Curing Period: 10 days or until concrete reaches 70% of its design strength, typical. 28 days for surfaces to receive a polished concrete finish
2. Interior Concrete Floors:
  - a. Floors to Receive Floor Coverings Specified in Other Sections: Contractor has option of the following:
    - 1) Absorptive Cover: As soon as concrete has sufficient set to permit application without marring concrete surface, install prewetted absorptive cover over entire area of floor.
      - a) Lap edges and ends of absorptive cover not less than 12-inches.
      - b) Maintain absorptive cover water saturated, and in place, for duration of curing period, but not less than seven days.
    - 2) Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive.
      - a) Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period, using cover material and waterproof tape.
      - b) Cure for not less than seven days.
    - 3) Ponding or Continuous Sprinkling of Water: Maintain concrete surfaces continuously wet for not less than seven days, utilizing one, or a combination of, the following:
      - a) Water.
      - b) Continuous water-fog spray.
    - 4) Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
      - a) Recoat areas subject to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application.
      - b) Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
  - b. Floors to Receive Curing Compound:
    - 1) Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
    - 2) Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application.
    - 3) Maintain continuity of coating, and repair damage during curing period.
    - 4) Removal: After curing period has elapsed, remove curing compound without damaging concrete surfaces by method recommended by curing compound manufacturer unless manufacturer certifies curing compound does not interfere with bonding of floor covering used on Project.

c. Floors to Receive Curing and Sealing Compound:

- 1) Apply uniformly to floors and slabs indicated in a continuous operation by power spray or roller in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- 2) Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application.
- 3) Repeat process 24 hours later, and apply a second coat. Maintain continuity of coating, and repair damage during curing period.

3.14 TOLERANCES

- A. Conform to ACI 117.

3.15 APPLICATION OF LIQUID FLOOR TREATMENTS

- A. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatment: Prepare, apply, and finish penetrating liquid floor treatment in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Remove curing compounds, sealers, oil, dirt, laitance, and other contaminants and complete surface repairs.
  2. Do not apply to concrete that is less than 28 days' old.
  3. Apply liquid until surface is saturated, scrubbing into surface until a gel forms; rewet; and repeat brooming or scrubbing.
  4. Rinse with water; remove excess material until surface is dry.
  5. Apply a second coat in a similar manner if surface is rough or porous.
- B. Sealing Coat: Uniformly apply a continuous sealing coat of curing and sealing compound to hardened concrete by power spray or roller in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

3.16 JOINT FILLING

- A. Prepare, clean, and install joint filler in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Defer joint filling until concrete has aged at least one to six month(s).
  2. Do not fill joints until construction traffic has permanently ceased.
- B. Remove dirt, debris, saw cuttings, curing compounds, and sealers from joints; leave contact faces of joints clean and dry.
- C. Install semirigid joint filler full depth in saw-cut joints and at least 2 inches deep in formed joints.
- D. Overfill joint, and trim joint filler flush with top of joint after hardening.

3.17 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS

- A. Defective Concrete:

1. Do not repair and patch defective areas until such repair and patch is approved by Architect.
    - a. Architect will require engineered concrete repair products and details, other than those listed in this specification, where defective area affects the structural integrity of the concrete in question as determined by Structural Engineer.
  2. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to Architect's approval.
- B. Patching Mortar: Mix dry-pack patching mortar, consisting of 1 part portland cement to 2-1/2 parts fine aggregate passing a No. 16 sieve, using only enough water for handling and placing.
- C. Repairing Formed Surfaces: Surface defects include color and texture irregularities, cracks, spalls, air bubbles, honeycombs, rock pockets, fins and other projections on the surface, and stains and other discolorations that cannot be removed by cleaning.
1. Immediately after form removal, cut out honeycombs, rock pockets, and voids more than 1/2 inch in any dimension to solid concrete.
    - a. Limit cut depth to 3/4 inch.
    - b. Make edges of cuts perpendicular to concrete surface.
    - c. Clean, dampen with water, and brush-coat holes and voids with bonding agent.
    - d. Fill and compact with patching mortar before bonding agent has dried.
    - e. Fill form-tie voids with patching mortar or cone plugs secured in place with bonding agent.
  2. Repair defects on surfaces exposed to view by blending white portland cement and standard portland cement, so that, when dry, patching mortar matches surrounding color.
    - a. Patch a test area at inconspicuous locations to verify mixture and color match before proceeding with patching.
    - b. Compact mortar in place and strike off slightly higher than surrounding surface.
  3. Repair defects on concealed formed surfaces that will affect concrete's durability and structural performance as determined by Architect.
- D. Repairing Unformed Surfaces:
1. Test unformed surfaces, such as floors and slabs, for finish, and verify surface tolerances specified for each surface.
    - a. Correct low and high areas.
    - b. Test surfaces sloped to drain for trueness of slope and smoothness; use a sloped template.
  2. Repair finished surfaces containing surface defects, including spalls, popouts, honeycombs, rock pockets, crazing, and cracks in excess of 0.1 inch wide or that penetrate to reinforcement or completely through unreinforced sections regardless of width, and other objectionable conditions.
  3. After concrete has cured at least 14 days, correct high areas by grinding.

4. Correct localized low areas during, or immediately after, completing surface-finishing operations by cutting out low areas and replacing with patching mortar.
  - a. Finish repaired areas to blend into adjacent concrete.
5. Correct other low areas scheduled to receive floor coverings with a repair underlayment.
  - a. Prepare, mix, and apply repair underlayment and primer in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.
  - b. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
6. Correct other low areas scheduled to remain exposed with repair topping.
  - a. Cut out low areas to ensure a minimum repair topping depth of 1/4 inch to match adjacent floor elevations.
  - b. Prepare, mix, and apply repair topping and primer in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.
7. Repair defective areas, except random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter, by cutting out and replacing with fresh concrete.
  - a. Remove defective areas with clean, square cuts, and expose steel reinforcement with at least a 3/4-inch clearance all around.
  - b. Dampen concrete surfaces in contact with patching concrete and apply bonding agent.
  - c. Mix patching concrete of same materials and mixture as original concrete, except without coarse aggregate.
  - d. Place, compact, and finish to blend with adjacent finished concrete.
  - e. Cure in same manner as adjacent concrete.
8. Repair random cracks > 1/16" and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter with patching mortar.
  - a. Groove top of cracks and cut out holes to sound concrete, and clean off dust, dirt, and loose particles.
  - b. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces and apply bonding agent.
  - c. Place patching mortar before bonding agent has dried.
  - d. Compact patching mortar and finish to match adjacent concrete.
  - e. Keep patched area continuously moist for at least 72 hours.
- E. Perform structural repairs of concrete, subject to Architect's approval, using epoxy adhesive and patching mortar.
- F. Repair materials and installation not specified above may be used, subject to Architect's approval.



### 3.18 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field Quality Control: Owner will engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform tests and inspections and to submit reports.
1. Testing agency shall be responsible for providing curing container for composite samples on Site and verifying that field-cured composite samples are cured in accordance with ASTM C31/C31M.
  2. Testing agency shall immediately report to Architect, Contractor, and concrete manufacturer any failure of Work to comply with Contract Documents.
  3. Testing agency shall report results of tests and inspections, in writing, to Owner, Architect, Contractor, and concrete manufacturer within 48 hours of inspections and tests.
    - a. Test reports shall include reporting requirements of ASTM C31/C31M, ASTM C39/C39M, and ACI 301, including the following as applicable to each test and inspection:
      - 1) Project name.
      - 2) Name of testing agency.
      - 3) Names and certification numbers of field and laboratory technicians performing inspections and testing.
      - 4) Name of concrete manufacturer.
      - 5) Date and time of inspection, sampling, and field testing.
      - 6) Date and time of concrete placement.
      - 7) Location in Work of concrete represented by samples.
      - 8) Date and time sample was obtained.
      - 9) Truck and batch ticket numbers.
      - 10) Design compressive strength at 28 days.
      - 11) Concrete mixture designation, proportions, and materials.
      - 12) Field test results.
      - 13) Information on storage and curing of samples before testing, including curing method and maximum and minimum temperatures during initial curing period.
      - 14) Type of fracture and compressive break strengths at seven days and 28 days.
- B. Batch Tickets: For each load delivered, submit three copies of batch delivery ticket to testing agency, indicating quantity, mix identification, admixtures, design strength, aggregate size, design air content, design slump at time of batching, and amount of water that can be added at Project site.
- C. Inspections:
1. Headed bolts and studs.
  2. Verification of use of required design mixture.
  3. Concrete placement, including conveying and depositing.
  4. Curing procedures and maintenance of curing temperature.
  5. Verification of concrete strength before removal of shores and forms from beams and slabs.
  6. Batch Plant Inspections: On a random basis, as determined by Architect.
  7. Steel Reinforcement and placement
  8. Steel Reinforcement Welding

9. Post-installed anchors in hardened concrete.
- D. Concrete Tests: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained in accordance with ASTM C 172/C 172M shall be performed in accordance with the following requirements:
1. Testing Frequency: Obtain one composite sample for each day's pour of each concrete mixture exceeding 5 cu. yd., but less than 25 cu. yd., plus one set for each additional 150 cu. yd. or fraction thereof.
    - a. When frequency of testing provides fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
  2. Slump: ASTM C143/C143M:
    - a. One test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
    - b. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
  3. Slump Flow: ASTM C1611/C1611M:
    - a. One test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
    - b. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
  4. Air Content: ASTM C231/C231M pressure method, for normal-weight concrete;
    - a. One test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
  5. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C1064/C1064M:
    - a. One test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below or 80 deg F and above, and one test for each composite sample.
    - b. One test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
  6. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C31/C31M:
    - a. Cast and laboratory cure six 6-inch by 12-inch or 4-inch by 8-inch standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
  7. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C39/C39M.
    - a. Test one set of two laboratory-cured specimens at seven days and one set of three specimens at 28 days. Maintain remainder of specimens in reserve for later testing if required.
    - b. A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from a set of two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at age indicated.

8. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if every average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength, and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi if specified compressive strength is 5000 psi, or no compressive strength test value is less than 10 percent of specified compressive strength if specified compressive strength is greater than 5000 psi.
  9. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
  10. Additional Tests:
    - a. Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect.
    - b. Testing and inspecting agency may conduct tests to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C42/C42M or by other methods as directed by Architect.
      - 1) Acceptance criteria for concrete strength shall be in accordance with ACI 301 section 1.6.6.3.
  11. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
  12. Correct deficiencies in the Work that test reports and inspections indicate do not comply with the Contract Documents.
- E. Measure floor and slab flatness and levelness in accordance with ASTM E1155 within 48 hours of completion of floor finishing and promptly report test results to Architect.

### 3.19 PROTECTION

- A. Protect concrete surfaces as follows:
1. Protect from petroleum stains.
  2. Diaper hydraulic equipment used over concrete surfaces.
  3. Prohibit vehicles from interior concrete slabs.
  4. Prohibit use of pipe-cutting machinery over concrete surfaces.
  5. Prohibit placement of steel items on concrete surfaces.
  6. Prohibit use of acids or acidic detergents over concrete surfaces.
  7. Protect liquid floor treatment from damage and wear during the remainder of construction period. Use protective methods and materials, including temporary covering, recommended in writing by liquid floor treatments installer.
  8. Protect concrete surfaces scheduled to receive surface hardener or polished concrete finish using Floor Slab Protective Covering.

END OF SECTION 033000

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 034500 – PRECAST ARCHITECTURAL CONCRETE

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Architectural precast concrete units for wall cap.
  - 2. Architectural precast for exterior shield plaque.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Division 03 Section “Cast-in-Place Concrete” for installing connection anchors in concrete.
  - 2. Division 04 Unit Masonry for installing connection anchors in Concrete Masonry Units.
  - 3. Division 07 Section “Joint Sealants” for sealing joints between precast concrete units.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

- B. Design Mixtures: For each precast concrete mixture. Include compressive strength and water-absorption tests.

- C. Shop Drawings:

- 1. Detail fabrication and installation of architectural precast concrete units.
  - 2. Indicate locations, plans, elevations, dimensions, shapes, and cross sections of each unit.
  - 3. Indicate joints, reveals, drips, chamfers, and extent and location of each surface finish.
  - 4. Indicate details at building corners.
  - 5. Indicate separate face and backup mixture locations and thicknesses.
  - 6. Indicate type, size, and length of welded connections by AWS standard symbols. Detail loose and cast-in hardware and connections.
  - 7. Indicate locations, tolerances, and details of anchorage devices to be embedded in or attached to structure or other construction.
  - 8. Indicate location of each architectural precast concrete unit by same identification mark placed on panel.
  - 9. Indicate relationship of architectural precast concrete units to adjacent materials.

10. If design modifications are proposed to meet performance requirements and field conditions, submit design calculations and Shop Drawings. Do not adversely affect the appearance, durability, or strength of units when modifying details or materials and maintain the general design concept.
- D. Samples: Design reference samples for initial verification of design intent, for each type of finish indicated on exposed surfaces of architectural precast concrete units, in sets of three, representative of finish, color, and texture variations expected; approximately 12 by 12 by 2 inches (150 by 300 by 50 mm).

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer and fabricator.
- B. Material Test Reports: For aggregates.
- C. Material Certificates: For the following items, signed by manufacturers:
  1. Cementitious materials.
  2. Admixtures.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs experienced stonemasons and masons.
- B. Installer Qualifications: A precast concrete erector qualified and designated by PCI's Certificate of Compliance to erect Category A (Architectural Systems) for non-load-bearing members.
- C. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm that assumes responsibility for engineering architectural precast concrete units to comply with performance requirements. This responsibility includes preparation of Shop Drawings.
  1. Firms which have a minimum of 5 years successful experience in the fabrication of architectural precast concrete units, similar to units required for this project. Fabricator must have sufficient production capacity to produce, transport, and deliver required units without causing delay in work.
- D. Quality-Control Standard: For manufacturing procedures and testing requirements, quality-control recommendations, and dimensional tolerances for types of units required, comply with PCI MNL 117, "Manual for Quality Control for Plants and Production of Architectural Precast Concrete Products." Note that more stringent manufacturing and installation tolerances may be specified herein. The more stringent must be adhered to.
- E. Sample Panels: After sample approval and before fabricating architectural precast concrete units, produce a minimum of two sample panels approximately 3-feet-long and in profile indicated in drawings, for review by Architect. Incorporate full-scale details of architectural features, finishes, textures, and transitions in sample panels. Include portion of specialty seal imprint on sample panel.
  1. Locate panels where indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.

2. Damage part of an exposed-face surface for each finish, color, and texture, and demonstrate adequacy of repair techniques proposed for repair of surface blemishes.
3. After acceptance of repair technique, maintain one sample panel at manufacturer's plant and one at Project site in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
4. Demolish and remove sample panels when directed.

#### 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Furnish loose connection hardware and anchorage items to be embedded in or attached to other construction without delaying the Work. Provide locations, setting diagrams, templates, instructions, and directions, as required, for installation.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver architectural precast concrete units in such quantities and at such times to limit unloading units temporarily on the ground or other rehandling.
- B. Support units during shipment on nonstaining shock-absorbing material.
- C. Store units with adequate dunnage and bracing and protect units to prevent contact with soil, to prevent staining, and to prevent cracking, distortion, warping or other physical damage.
- D. Place stored units so identification marks are clearly visible, and units can be inspected.
- E. Handle and transport units in a manner that avoids excessive stresses that cause cracking or damage.
- F. Lift and support units only at designated points indicated on Shop Drawings.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MOLD MATERIALS

- A. Molds: Rigid, dimensionally stable, non-absorptive material, warp and buckle free, that will provide continuous and true precast concrete surfaces within fabrication tolerances indicated; nonreactive with concrete and suitable for producing required finishes.
  1. Mold-Release Agent: Commercially produced liquid-release agent that will not bond with, stain or adversely affect precast concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent surface or joint treatments of precast concrete.
- B. Form Liners: Units of face design, texture, arrangement, and configuration indicated. Furnish with manufacturer's recommended liquid-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect precast concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent surface or joint treatments of precast concrete.

#### 2.2 REINFORCING MATERIALS

- A. Galvanized Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A615/A615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), deformed bars, with ASTM A767/A767M, Class II zinc coating and chromate treatment. Galvanize after fabrication and bending.
- B. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A185/A185M, fabricated from galvanized-steel wire into flat sheets.
- C. Supports: Suspend reinforcement from back of mold or use bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire reinforcement in place according to PCI MNL 117.

## 2.3 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or Type III, white, unless otherwise indicated, as required to produce color to match architect's sample.
- B. Normal-Weight Aggregates: Except as modified by PCI MNL 117, ASTM C 33, with coarse aggregates complying with Class 5S. Stockpile fine and coarse aggregates for each type of exposed finish from a single source (pit or quarry) for Project.
  - 1. Face-Mixture-Coarse Aggregates: Selected, hard, and durable; free of material that reacts with cement or causes staining; to match selected finish sample.
    - a. Gradation: Uniformly graded.
  - 2. Face-Mixture-Fine Aggregates: Selected, natural or manufactured sand compatible with coarse aggregate; to match approved finish sample.
- C. Coloring Admixture: ASTM C 979, synthetic or natural mineral-oxide pigments or colored water-reducing admixtures, temperature stable, and nonfading.
- D. Water: Potable; free from deleterious material that may affect color stability, setting, or strength of concrete and complying with chemical limits of PCI MNL 117.

## 2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Precast Accessories: Provide clips, hangers, plastic or steel shims, and other accessories required to install architectural precast concrete units.

## 2.5 GROUT MATERIALS

- A. Sand-Cement Grout: Portland cement, ASTM C 150, Type I, and clean, natural sand, ASTM C 144, or ASTM C 404. Mix at ratio of 1 part cement to 2-1/2 parts sand, by volume, with minimum water required for placement and hydration.

## 2.6 CONCRETE MIXTURES

- A. Prepare design mixtures for each type of precast concrete required.



- B. Design mixtures may be prepared by a qualified independent testing agency or by qualified precast plant personnel at architectural precast concrete fabricator's option.
- C. Limit water-soluble chloride ions to maximum percentage by weight of cement permitted by ACI 318 (ACI 318M) or PCI MNL 117 when tested according to ASTM C 1218/C 1218M.
- D. Normal-Weight Concrete Mixtures: Proportion full-depth mixtures by either laboratory trial batch or field test data methods according to ACI 211.1, with materials to be used on Project, to provide normal-weight concrete with the following properties:
  - 1. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 5000 psi (34.5 MPa) minimum.
  - 2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.45.
  - 3. Total Air Content: Not less than 4%, nor more than 6%.
- E. Water Absorption: 6 percent by weight or 14 percent by volume, tested according to ASTM C642, except for boiling requirement.
- F. When included in design mixtures, add other admixtures to concrete mixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.

## 2.7 MOLD FABRICATION

- A. Molds: Accurately construct molds, mortar tight, of sufficient strength to withstand pressures due to concrete-placement operations and temperature changes. Coat contact surfaces of molds with release agent before reinforcement is placed. Avoid contamination of reinforcement by release agent.
  - 1. Place form liners accurately to provide finished surface texture indicated. Provide solid backing and supports to maintain stability of liners during concrete placement. Coat form liner with form-release agent.
- B. Maintain molds to provide completed architectural precast concrete units of shapes, lines, and dimensions indicated, within fabrication tolerances specified.
  - 1. Form joints are not permitted on faces exposed to view in the finished work.
  - 2. Edge and Corner Treatment: Uniformly radiused, dimension as indicated.

## 2.8 FABRICATION

- A. Cast-in Anchors, Inserts, Plates, Angles, and Other Anchorage Hardware: Fabricate anchorage hardware with sufficient anchorage and embedment to comply with design requirements. Accurately position for attachment of loose hardware, and secure in place during precasting operations. Locate anchorage hardware where it does not affect position of main reinforcement or concrete placement.
- B. Furnish loose hardware items including steel plates, clip angles, seat angles, anchors, dowels, cramps, hangers, and other hardware shapes for securing architectural precast concrete units to supporting and adjacent construction.

- C. Cast-in reglets, slots, holes, and other accessories in architectural precast concrete units as indicated on the Contract Drawings.
- D. Reinforcement: Comply with recommendations in PCI MNL 117 for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.
  - 1. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, and other materials that reduce or destroy the bond with concrete. When damage to epoxy-coated reinforcing exceeds limits specified in ASTM A 775/A 775M, repair with patching material compatible with coating material and epoxy coat bar ends after cutting.
  - 2. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement during concrete-placement and consolidation operations. Completely conceal support devices to prevent exposure on finished surfaces.
  - 3. Place reinforcing steel to maintain at least 3/4-inch (19-mm) minimum concrete cover. Arrange, space, and securely tie bars and bar supports to hold reinforcement in position while placing concrete. Direct wire tie ends away from finished, exposed concrete surfaces.
  - 4. Install welded wire reinforcement in lengths as long as practicable. Lap adjoining pieces at least one full mesh spacing and wire tie laps, where required by design. Offset laps of adjoining widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction.
- E. Reinforce architectural precast concrete units to resist handling, transportation, and erection stresses.
- F. Comply with requirements in PCI MNL 117 and requirements in this Section for measuring, mixing, transporting, and placing concrete. After concrete batching, no additional water may be added.
- G. Place face mixture to a minimum thickness after consolidation of the greater of 1 inch (25 mm) or 1.5 times the maximum aggregate size, but not less than the minimum reinforcing cover specified.
- H. Place concrete in a continuous operation to prevent cold joints or planes of weakness from forming in precast concrete units.
  - 1. Place backup concrete mixture to ensure bond with face-mixture concrete.
- I. Thoroughly consolidate placed concrete by internal and external vibration without dislocating or damaging reinforcement and built-in items, and minimize pour lines, honeycombing, or entrapped air on surfaces. Use equipment and procedures complying with PCI MNL 117.
  - 1. Place self-consolidating concrete without vibration according to PCI TR-6, "Interim Guidelines for the Use of Self-Consolidating Concrete in Precast/Prestressed Concrete Institute Member Plants." Ensure adequate bond between face and backup concrete, if used.
- J. Comply with PCI MNL 117 for hot- and cold-weather concrete placement.
- K. Identify pickup points of architectural precast concrete units and orientation in structure with permanent markings, complying with markings indicated on Shop Drawings. Imprint or

permanently mark casting date on each architectural precast concrete unit on a surface that does not show in finished structure.

- L. Cure concrete, according to requirements in PCI MNL 117, by moisture retention without heat or by accelerated heat curing using low-pressure live steam or radiant heat and moisture. Cure units until compressive strength is high enough to ensure that stripping does not have an effect on performance or appearance of final product.
- M. Discard and replace architectural precast concrete units that do not comply with requirements, including structural, manufacturing tolerance, and appearance, unless repairs meet requirements in PCI MNL 117 and Architect's approval.

## 2.9 FABRICATION TOLERANCES

- A. Fabricate architectural precast concrete units straight and true to size and shape with exposed edges and corners precise and true so each finished panel complies with PCI MNL 117 product tolerances as well as position tolerances for cast-in items unless more stringent tolerances are specified herein. The more restrictive tolerances must be adhered to.
- B. Position Tolerances: For cast-in items measured from datum line location, as indicated on Shop Drawings.
  - 1. Inserts: Plus or minus 1/2 inch (13 mm).
  - 2. Reinforcing Steel and Welded Wire Fabric: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm) where position has structural implications or affects concrete cover; otherwise, plus or minus 1/2 inch (13 mm).
  - 3. Reinforcing Steel Extending out of Member: Plus or minus 1/2 inch (13 mm) of plan dimensions.
  - 4. Location of Bearing Surface from End of Member: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).

## 2.10 FINISHES

- A. Exposed precast surfaces shall be free of joint marks, grain, and other obvious defects. Corners, including false joints shall be uniform, straight, and sharp. Finish exposed surfaces of architectural precast concrete units to match approved sample panels and as follows:
  - 1. PCI's "Architectural Precast Concrete - Color and Texture Selection Guide."
  - 2. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of at least 12 color options.
  - 3. Abrasive-Blast Finish: Use abrasive grit, equipment, application techniques, and cleaning procedures for lightly blasted finish.
- B. Finish exposed top surfaces of architectural precast concrete units to match face-surface finish.
- C. Finish unexposed surfaces of architectural precast concrete units by float finish except at corner where concealed surface is adjacent to exposed surface; at these corners the concealed surface to be trowel finished for 2" minimum from corner to maintain straight corner.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine supporting structural frame or foundation and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, true and level bearing surfaces, and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- C. Do not install precast concrete units until supporting construction has attained minimum allowable design compressive strength or other structure is complete.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Erect architectural precast concrete level, plumb, and square within specified allowable tolerances. Provide temporary supports and bracing as required to maintain position, stability, and alignment of units until permanent connections are completed.
  - 1. Install temporary steel or plastic spacing shims as precast concrete units are being erected. Tack weld steel shims to each other to prevent shims from separating.
  - 2. Maintain horizontal and vertical joint alignment and uniform joint width as erection progresses.
  - 3. Unless otherwise indicated, maintain uniform joint widths of 3/8 inch. Provide 3/8" shim at bearing locations in order to maintain uniform joint width.
- B. Connect architectural precast concrete units in position by bolting, welding, grouting, or as otherwise indicated on Shop Drawings. Remove temporary shims, wedges, and spacers as soon as practical after connecting and grouting are completed.
  - 1. Do not permit connections to disrupt continuity of flashing.
- C. Grouting or Dry-Packing Connections and Joints: Grout connections where required or indicated. Retain flowable grout in place until hard enough to support itself. Alternatively, pack spaces with stiff dry-pack grout material, tamping until voids are completely filled. Place grout and finish smooth, level, and plumb with adjacent concrete surfaces. Promptly remove grout material from exposed surfaces before it affects finishes or hardens. Keep grouted joints damp for not less than 24 hours after initial set.

### 3.3 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Erect architectural precast concrete units level, plumb, square, and true, without exceeding the noncumulative erection tolerances of PCI MNL 117, Appendix I.

### 3.4 REPAIRS

- A. Repair architectural precast concrete units if permitted by Architect. Architect reserves the right to reject repaired units that do not comply with requirements.

- B. Mix patching materials and repair units so cured patches blend with color, texture, and uniformity of adjacent exposed surfaces and show no apparent line of demarcation between original and repaired work, when viewed in typical daylight illumination from a distance of 20 feet (6 m).
- C. Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings with galvanizing repair paint according to ASTM A780/A780M.
- D. Wire brush, clean, and paint damaged prime-painted components with same type of shop primer.
- E. Remove and replace damaged architectural precast concrete units when repairs do not comply with requirements.

### 3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean surfaces of precast concrete units exposed to view.
- B. Clean mortar, grease, tar, plaster, fireproofing, weld slag, and other deleterious material from concrete surfaces and adjacent materials immediately.
- C. Clean exposed surfaces of precast concrete units after erection and completion of joint treatment to remove weld marks, other markings, dirt, and stains.
  - 1. Perform cleaning procedures, if necessary, according to precast concrete fabricator's recommendations. Protect other work from staining or damage due to cleaning operations.
  - 2. Do not use cleaning materials or processes that could change the appearance of exposed concrete finishes or damage adjacent materials.

END OF SECTION 034500

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 042000 - UNIT MASONRY

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Concrete masonry units.
2. Lintels.
3. Brick.
4. Mortar and grout.
5. Reinforcement.
6. Ties and anchors.
7. Embedded flashing.
8. Accessories.

B. Products Installed but not Furnished under This Section:

1. Lintels in unit masonry.
2. Steel shelf angles for supporting unit masonry.
3. Cavity wall insulation adhered to masonry backup.

C. Related Requirements:

1. Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation" for cavity wall insulation.
2. Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for sheet metal flashing and for furnishing manufactured reglets installed in masonry joints.

#### 1.2 ALLOWANCES

- A. See Section 012100 "Allowances" for description of allowances affecting items specified in this Section.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CMU(s): Concrete masonry unit(s).
- B. Reinforced Masonry: Masonry containing reinforcing steel in grouted cells.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For the following:
1. Masonry Units: Indicate sizes, profiles, coursing, and locations of special shapes.

2. Reinforcing Steel: Indicate bending, lap lengths, and placement of unit masonry reinforcing bars. Comply with ACI 315R.
  3. Fabricated Flashing: Detail corner units, end-dam units, and other special applications.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type and color of the following:
1. Clay face brick, in the form of straps of five or more bricks.
  2. Pigmented and colored-aggregate mortar. Make Samples using same sand and mortar ingredients to be used on Project.
  3. Weep/cavity vents.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates: For each type of the following:
1. Masonry units.
    - a. Include material test reports substantiating compliance with requirements.
    - b. For brick, include size-variation data verifying that actual range of sizes falls within specified tolerances.
    - c. For exposed brick, include test report for efflorescence in accordance with ASTM C67/C67M.
    - d. For masonry units, include data and calculations establishing average net-area compressive strength of units.
  2. Cementitious materials. Include name of manufacturer, brand name, and type.
  3. Mortar admixtures.
  4. Preblended, dry mortar mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
  5. Grout mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
  6. Joint reinforcement.
  7. Anchors, ties, and metal accessories.
- B. Mix Designs: For each type of mortar and grout. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
1. Include test reports for mortar mixes required to comply with property specification. Test in accordance with ASTM C109/C109M for compressive strength, ASTM C1506 for water retention, and ASTM C91/C91M for air content.
  2. Include test reports, in accordance with ASTM C1019, for grout mixes required to comply with compressive strength requirement.
- C. Statement of Compressive Strength of Masonry: For each combination of masonry unit type and mortar type, provide statement of average net-area compressive strength of masonry units, mortar type, and resulting net-area compressive strength of masonry determined in accordance with TMS 602.
- D. Cold-Weather and Hot-Weather Procedures: Detailed description of methods, materials, and equipment to be used to comply with requirements.



## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

### A. Qualifications:

1. Installers: All masonry flashing installers must complete the International Masonry Institute Flashing Upgrade training course.

## 1.7 MOCKUPS

### A. Wall Mockups: Build mockups to demonstrate aesthetic effects, to set quality standards for materials and execution, and to set quality standards for installation.

1. Build mockups for each type of exposed unit masonry construction in sizes approximately 60 inches (1524 mm) long by 48 inches (1219 mm) high by full thickness, including face and backup wythes and accessories.
  - a. Include a sealant-filled joint at least 16 inches (406 mm) long in each mockup.
  - b. Include lower corner of window opening at upper corner of exterior wall mockup. Make opening approximately 12 inches (305 mm) wide by 16 inches (406 mm) high.
  - c. Include through-wall flashing installed for a 24-inch (610-mm) length in corner of exterior wall mockup approximately 16 inches (406 mm) down from top of mockup, with a 12-inch (305-mm) length of flashing left exposed to view (omit masonry above half of flashing).
  - d. Include metal studs, sheathing, air barrier, veneer anchors, flashing, cavity drainage material, and weep holes in exterior masonry-veneer wall mockup.
2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations by Change Order.
3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store masonry units on elevated platforms in a dry location. If units are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof sheeting, securely tied. If units become wet, do not install until they are dry.
- B. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
- C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.
- D. Deliver preblended, dry mortar mix in moisture-resistant containers. Store preblended, dry mortar mix in delivery containers on elevated platforms in a dry location or in covered weatherproof dispensing silos.
- E. Store masonry accessories, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt and oil.

## 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Protection of Masonry: During construction, cover tops of walls, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed masonry when construction is not in progress.
  - 1. Extend cover a minimum of 24 inches (610 mm) down both sides of walls, and hold cover securely in place.
  - 2. Where one wythe of multiwythe masonry walls is completed in advance of other wythes, secure cover a minimum of 24 inches (610 mm) down face next to unconstructed wythe, and hold cover in place.
- B. Do not apply uniform floor or roof loads for at least 12 hours and concentrated loads for at least three days after building masonry walls or columns.
- C. Stain Prevention: Prevent grout, mortar, and soil from staining the face of masonry to be left exposed or painted. Immediately remove grout, mortar, and soil that come in contact with such masonry.
  - 1. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and from mortar splatter by spreading coverings on ground and over wall surface.
  - 2. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar droppings.
  - 3. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and integral finishes, from mortar droppings.
  - 4. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at the end of each day to prevent rain from splashing mortar and dirt onto completed masonry.
- D. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost or by freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in TMS 602.
  - 1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40 deg F (4 deg C) and higher and will remain so until masonry has dried, but not less than seven days after completing cleaning.
- E. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in TMS 602.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain exposed masonry units, cementitious mortar components, and mortar aggregate from single source producer or manufacturer for each type of product.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide structural unit masonry that develops indicated net-area compressive strengths at 28 days.

1. Determine net-area compressive strength of masonry from average net-area compressive strengths of masonry units and mortar types (unit-strength method) in accordance with TMS 602.
2. Determine net-area compressive strength of masonry by testing masonry prisms in accordance with ASTM C1314.

## 2.3 UNIT MASONRY, GENERAL

- A. Masonry Standard: Comply with TMS 602, except as modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.
- B. Defective Units: Referenced masonry unit standards may allow a certain percentage of units to contain chips, cracks, or other defects exceeding limits stated. Do not use units where such defects are exposed in the completed Work and will be within 20 ft. (6 m) vertically and horizontally of a walking surface.
- C. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with requirements for fire-resistance-rated assembly designs indicated.
  1. Where fire-resistance-rated construction is indicated, units are listed by UL or a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

## 2.4 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS

- A. Shapes: Provide shapes indicated and as follows, with exposed surfaces matching exposed faces of adjacent units unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Provide special shapes for lintels, corners, jambs, sashes, movement joints, headers, bonding, and other special conditions.
  2. Provide bullnose units for outside corners unless otherwise indicated.
- B. CMUs: ASTM C90, lightweight unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Size (Width): Manufactured to dimensions 3/8 inch (10 mm) less than nominal dimensions.
  2. Exposed Faces: Provide color and texture matching the range represented by Architect's sample.

## 2.5 BRICK

- A. General: Provide shapes indicated and as follows, with exposed surfaces matching finish and color of exposed faces of adjacent units:
  1. For ends of sills and caps and for similar applications that would otherwise expose unfinished brick surfaces, provide units without cores or frogs and with exposed surfaces finished.
  2. Provide special shapes for applications requiring brick of size, form, color, and texture on exposed surfaces that cannot be produced by sawing or where shapes produced by sawing would result in sawed surfaces being exposed to view.
- B. Building (Common) Brick: ASTM C62, Grade SW.

1. Size (Actual Dimensions): 3-5/8 inches (92 mm) wide by 2-1/4 inches (57 mm) high by 7-5/8 inches (194 mm) long.

## 2.6 MORTAR AND GROUT MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C150/C150M, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color indicated.
  1. Alkali content will not be more than 0.1 percent when tested in accordance with ASTM C114.
- B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C207, Type S.
- C. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement and hydrated lime containing no other ingredients.
- D. Masonry Cement: ASTM C91/C91M.
- E. Mortar Cement: ASTM C1329/C1329M.
- F. Mortar Pigments: Natural and synthetic iron oxides and chromium oxides, compounded for use in mortar mixes and complying with ASTM C979/C979M. Use only pigments with a record of satisfactory performance in masonry mortar.
- G. Colored Cement Products: Packaged blend made from masonry cement and mortar pigments, all complying with specified requirements, and containing no other ingredients.
  1. Colored Masonry Cement:
    - a. Cemex
    - b. Essroc
    - c. Holcim Inc
    - d. Lafarge North America Inc
    - e. Lehigh Hanson
  2. Formulate blend as required to produce color indicated or, if not indicated, as selected from manufacturer's standard colors.
  3. Pigments do not exceed 10 percent of portland cement by weight.
- H. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C144.
  1. For mortar that is exposed to view, use washed aggregate consisting of natural sand or crushed stone.
  2. For joints less than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) thick, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing the No. 16 (1.18-mm) sieve.

- I. Aggregate for Grout: ASTM C404.
- J. Cold-Weather Admixture: Nonchloride, noncorrosive, accelerating admixture complying with ASTM C494/C494M, Type C, and recommended by manufacturer for use in masonry mortar of composition indicated.
- K. Water: Potable.

## 2.7 REINFORCEMENT

- A. Masonry-Joint Reinforcement, General: ASTM A951/A951M.
  - 1. Interior Walls: Hot-dip galvanized carbon steel.
  - 2. Exterior Walls: Hot-dip galvanized carbon steel.
  - 3. Wire Size for Side Rods: 0.148-inch (3.77-mm) diameter.
  - 4. Wire Size for Cross Rods: 0.148-inch (3.77-mm) diameter.
  - 5. Wire Size for Veneer Ties: 0.148-inch (3.77-mm) diameter.
  - 6. Provide in lengths of not less than 10 ft. (3 m), with prefabricated corner and tee units.
- B. Masonry-Joint Reinforcement for Single-Wythe Masonry: Ladder type with single pair of side rods.
- C. Masonry-Joint Reinforcement for Multiwythe Masonry:
  - 1.
  - 2. Ladder type with one side rod at each face shell of hollow masonry units more than 4 inches (102 mm) wide, plus one side rod at each wythe of masonry 4 inches (102 mm) wide or less.
  - 3. Tab type, either ladder or truss design, with one side rod at each face shell of backing wythe and with rectangular tabs sized to extend at least halfway through facing wythe, but with at least 5/8-inch (16-mm) cover on outside face.
  - 4. Adjustable (two-piece) type, either ladder or truss design, with one side rod at each face shell of backing wythe and with separate adjustable ties with pintle-and-eye connections having a maximum horizontal play of 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) and maximum vertical adjustment of 1-1/4 inches (32 mm). Size ties to extend at least halfway through facing wythe but with at least 5/8-inch (16-mm) cover on outside face. Ties have hooks or clips to engage a continuous horizontal wire in the facing wythe.
    - a. Use where indicated and where horizontal joints of facing wythe do not align with those of backup wythe
    - b. Use where facing wythe is different material than backup wythe

## 2.8 TIES AND ANCHORS

- A. General: Ties and anchors extend at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) into veneer but with at least a 5/8-inch (16-mm) cover on outside face.
- B. Materials: Provide ties and anchors specified in this article that are made from materials that comply with the following unless otherwise indicated:

1. Hot-Dip Galvanized, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A1064/A1064M, with ASTM A153/A153M, Class B-2 coating.
  2. Steel Sheet, Galvanized after Fabrication: ASTM A1008/A1008M, Commercial Steel, with ASTM A153/A153M, Class B coating.
- C. Individual Wire Ties: Rectangular units with closed ends and not less than 4 inches (100 mm) wide.
1. Z-shaped ties with ends bent 90 degrees to provide hooks not less than 2 inches (51 mm) long for masonry constructed from solid units.
  2. Where wythes do not align are of different materials, use adjustable ties with pintle-and-eye connections having a maximum adjustment of 1-1/4 inches (32 mm).
  3. Wire: Fabricate from 3/16-inch- (4.76-mm-) diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel wire.
- D. Adjustable Masonry-Veneer Anchors:
1. General: Provide anchors that allow vertical adjustment but resist a 100 lbf (445 N) load in both tension and compression perpendicular to plane of wall without deforming or developing play in excess of 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
  2. Fabricate wire ties from 0.187-inch- (4.76-mm-) diameter, hot-dip galvanized-steel wire unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Masonry-Veneer Anchors; Single-Barrel Screw: Self-drilling, single-barrel screw designed to receive wire tie. Screw has a smooth barrel the same thickness as insulation with factory-installed gasketed washer to seal at face of insulation and sheathing.

## 2.9 EMBEDDED FLASHING

- A. Metal Flashing: Provide metal flashing complying with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" and as follows:
1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304, 0.016 inch (0.40 mm) thick.
  2. Fabricate continuous flashings in sections 96 inches (2438 mm) long minimum, but not exceeding 12 ft. (3.7 m). Provide splice plates at joints of formed, smooth metal flashing.
  3. Fabricate through-wall flashing with snaplock receiver on exterior face where indicated to receive counterflashing.
  4. Fabricate through-wall flashing with drip edge unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate by extending flashing 1/2 inch (13 mm) out from wall, with outer edge bent down 30 degrees and hemmed.
  5. Fabricate metal drip edges from stainless steel. Extend at least 3 inches (76 mm) into wall and 1/2 inch (13 mm) out from wall, with outer edge bent down 30 degrees and hemmed.
  6. Fabricate metal sealant stops from stainless steel. Extend at least 3 inches (76 mm) into wall and out to exterior face of wall. At exterior face of wall, bend metal back on itself for 3/4 inch (19 mm) and down into joint 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) to form a stop for retaining sealant backer rod.
  7. Fabricate metal expansion-joint strips from stainless steel to shapes indicated.
  8. Solder metal items at corners.

B. Flexible Flashing: Use one of the following unless otherwise indicated:

1. Self-Adhering, Stainless Steel Fabric Flashing: Composite, flashing product consisting of 2 mil (0.05 mm) of Type 304 stainless steel sheet, bonded to a layer of polymeric fabric with a butyl adhesive, to produce an overall thickness of 10 mil (0.25 mm) or 40 mil (1.0 mm).
  - a. Applications: Use 10-mil- (0.25-mm-) thick flashing at windows, doors, and small wall penetrations; not at base of walls. Use 40-mil- (1.0-mm-) thick flashing at base of walls.

C. Drainage Plane Flashing: Fabricate from stainless steel and drainage membrane to shapes indicated. Provide flashing materials as follows:

1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304, 0.016 inch (0.40 mm) thick.
2. Fabricate continuous flashings in sections 60 inches (1524 mm) long, minimum.
3. Accessories: Provide preformed corners, end dams, other special shapes, and seaming materials produced by flashing manufacturer.

D. Solder and Sealants for Sheet Metal Flashings: As specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."

E. Adhesives, Primers, and Seam Tapes for Flashings: Flashing manufacturer's standard products or products recommended by flashing manufacturer for bonding flashing sheets to each other and to substrates.

2.10 ACCESSORIES

A. Compressible Filler: Premolded filler strips complying with ASTM D1056, Grade 2A1; compressible up to 35 percent; of width and thickness indicated; formulated from neoprene or urethane.

B. Preformed Control-Joint Gaskets: Made from styrene-butadiene-rubber compound, complying with ASTM D2000, Designation M2AA-805 and designed to fit standard sash block and to maintain lateral stability in masonry wall; size and configuration as indicated.

C. Weep/Cavity Vents: Use the following unless otherwise indicated:

1. Cellular Plastic Weep/Vent: One-piece, flexible extrusion made from UV-resistant polypropylene copolymer, full height and width of head joint and depth 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) less than depth of outer wythe, in color selected from manufacturer's standard.

D. Cavity Drainage Material: Free-draining mesh, made from polymer strands that will not degrade within the wall cavity.

1. Mortar Deflector: Strips, full depth of cavity and 10 inches (254 mm) high, with dovetail-shaped notches that prevent clogging with mortar droppings, with insect barrier.
  - a. Manufacturers:
    - 1) Mortar Net Solutions
    - 2) Advanced Building Products
    - 3) Hohmann & Barnard

4) Wire-Bond

- E. Masonry Cell Fill: Loose-Fill Insulation: Perlite complying with ASTM C549, Type II (surface treated for water repellency and limited moisture absorption) or Type IV (surface treated for water repellency and to limit dust generation).
- F. Proprietary Acidic Masonry Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard-strength cleaner designed for removing mortar/grout stains, efflorescence, and other new construction stains from new masonry without discoloring or damaging masonry surfaces. Use product expressly approved for intended use by cleaner manufacturer and manufacturer of masonry units being cleaned.
  - 1. At walls adjacent to storefront, curtainwall, or other metal surfaces use non-acidic cleaners that will not damage the curtainwall, storefront, or metal finishes or glass.

2.11 MORTAR AND GROUT MIXES

- A. General: Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
  - 2. Use masonry cement or mortar cement mortar unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. For exterior masonry, use masonry cement or mortar cement mortar.
  - 4. For reinforced masonry, use masonry cement or mortar cement mortar.
  - 5. Add cold-weather admixture (if used) at same rate for all mortar that will be exposed to view, regardless of weather conditions, to ensure that mortar color is consistent.
- B. Preblended, Dry Mortar Mix: Furnish dry mortar ingredients in form of a preblended mix. Measure quantities by weight to ensure accurate proportions, and thoroughly blend ingredients before delivering to Project site.
- C. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C270, Property Specification. Provide the following types of mortar for applications stated unless another type is indicated.
  - 1. For masonry below grade or in contact with earth, use Type M.
  - 2. For reinforced masonry, use Type M.
  - 3. For exterior, above-grade, load-bearing, nonload-bearing walls, and parapet walls; for interior load-bearing walls; for interior nonload-bearing partitions; and for other applications where another type is not indicated, use Type N.
  - 4. For interior nonload-bearing partitions, Type O may be used instead of Type N.
- D. Pigmented Mortar: Use colored cement product or select and proportion pigments with other ingredients to produce color required. Do not add pigments to colored cement products.
  - 1. Pigments do not exceed 10 percent of portland cement by weight.
  - 2. Mix to match Architect's sample.
- E. Grout for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C476.



1. Use grout of type indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, of type (fine or coarse) that will comply with TMS 602 for dimensions of grout spaces and pour height.
2. Proportion grout in accordance with ASTM C476, Table 1 or paragraph 4.2.1.2 for specified 28-day compressive strength indicated, but not less than 2000 psi (14 MPa).
3. Provide grout with a slump of 8 to 11 inches (203 to 279 mm) as measured in accordance with ASTM C143/C143M.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  1. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
  2. Verify that foundations are within tolerances specified.
  3. Verify that reinforcing dowels are properly placed.
  4. Verify that substrates are free of substances that impair mortar bond.
- B. Before installation, examine rough-in and built-in construction for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Thickness: Build cavity and composite walls and other masonry construction to full thickness shown. Build single-wythe walls to actual widths of masonry units, using units of widths indicated.
- B. Build chases and recesses to accommodate items specified in this and other Sections.
- C. Leave openings for equipment to be installed before completing masonry. After installing equipment, complete masonry to match construction immediately adjacent to opening.
- D. Use full-size units without cutting if possible. If cutting is required to provide a continuous pattern or to fit adjoining construction, cut units with motor-driven saws; provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Allow units to dry before laying unless wetting of units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed.
- E. Select and arrange units for exposed unit masonry to produce a uniform blend of colors and textures. Mix units from several pallets or cubes as they are placed.
- F. Matching Existing Masonry: Match coursing, bonding, color, and texture of existing masonry.
- G. Wetting of Brick: Wet brick before laying if initial rate of absorption exceeds 30 g/30 sq. in. (30 g/194 sq. cm) per minute when tested in accordance with ASTM C67/C67M. Allow units to absorb water so they are damp but not wet at time of laying.

### 3.3 TOLERANCES

#### A. Dimensions and Locations of Elements:

1. For dimensions in cross section or elevation, do not vary by more than plus 1/2 inch (13 mm) or minus 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
2. For location of elements in plan, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/2 inch (13 mm).
3. For location of elements in elevation, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) in a story height or 1/2 inch (13 mm) total.

#### B. Lines and Levels:

1. For bed joints and top surfaces of bearing walls, do not vary from level by more than 1/4 inch in 10 ft. (6.4 mm in 3 m), or 1/2-inch (13-mm) maximum.
2. For conspicuous horizontal lines, such as lintels, sills, parapets, and reveals, do not vary from level by more than 1/8 inch in 10 ft. (3.2 mm in 3 m), 1/4 inch in 20 ft. (6.4 mm in 6 m), or 1/2-inch (13-mm) maximum.
3. For vertical lines and surfaces, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 ft. (6.4 mm in 3 m), 3/8 inch in 20 ft. (10 mm in 6 m), or 1/2-inch (13-mm) maximum.
4. For conspicuous vertical lines, such as external corners, door jambs, reveals, and expansion and control joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/8 inch in 10 ft. (3.2 mm in 3 m), 1/4 inch in 20 ft. (6.4 mm in 6 m), or 1/2-inch (13-mm) maximum.
5. For lines and surfaces, do not vary from straight by more than 1/4 inch in 10 ft. (6.4 mm in 3 m), 3/8 inch in 20 ft. (10 mm in 6 m), or 1/2-inch (13-mm) maximum.
6. For vertical alignment of exposed head joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 ft. (6.4 mm in 3 m), or 1/2-inch (13-mm) maximum.
7. For faces of adjacent exposed masonry units, do not vary from flush alignment by more than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) except due to warpage of masonry units within tolerances specified for warpage of units.

#### C. Joints:

1. For bed joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch (3.2 mm), with a maximum thickness limited to 1/2 inch (13 mm).
2. For exposed bed joints, do not vary from bed-joint thickness of adjacent courses by more than 1/8 inch (3.2 mm).
3. For head and collar joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus 3/8 inch (10 mm) or minus 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
4. For exposed head joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch (3.2 mm).
5. For exposed bed joints and head joints of stacked bond, do not vary from a straight line by more than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) from one masonry unit to the next.

### 3.4 LAYING MASONRY WALLS

- A. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint thicknesses and for accurate location of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets. Avoid using less-than-half-size units, particularly at corners, jambs, and, where possible, at other locations.

- B. Bond Pattern for Exposed Masonry: Unless otherwise indicated, lay exposed masonry in running bond; do not use units with less-than-nominal 4-inch (102-mm) horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
- C. Lay concealed masonry with all units in a wythe in running bond or bonded by lapping not less than 2 inches (51 mm). Bond and interlock each course of each wythe at corners. Do not use units with less-than-nominal 4-inch (102-mm) horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
- D. Stopping and Resuming Work: Stop work by stepping back units in each course from those in course below; do not tooth. When resuming work, clean masonry surfaces that are to receive mortar, remove loose masonry units and mortar, and wet brick if required before laying fresh masonry.
- E. Built-in Work: As construction progresses, build in items specified in this and other Sections. Fill in solidly with masonry around built-in items.
- F. Where built-in items are to be embedded in cores of hollow masonry units, place a layer of metal lath, wire mesh, or plastic mesh in the joint below, and rod mortar or grout into core.
- G. Fill cores in hollow CMUs with grout 24 inches (610 mm) under bearing plates, beams, lintels, posts, and similar items unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Build nonload-bearing interior partitions full height of story to underside of solid floor or roof structure above unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Install compressible filler in joint between top of partition and underside of structure above.
  - 2. Fasten partition top anchors to structure above and build into top of partition. Grout cells of CMUs solidly around plastic tubes of anchors, and push tubes down into grout to provide 1/2-inch (13-mm) clearance between end of anchor rod and end of tube. Space anchors 48 inches (1219 mm) o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. At fire-rated partitions, treat joint between top of partition and underside of structure above to comply with Section 078443 "Joint Firestopping."

### 3.5 MORTAR BEDDING AND JOINTING

- A. Lay CMUs and hollow brick as follows:
  - 1. Bed face shells in mortar and make head joints of depth equal to bed joints.
  - 2. Bed webs in mortar in all courses of piers, columns, and pilasters.
  - 3. Bed webs in mortar in grouted masonry, including starting course on footings.
  - 4. Fully bed entire units, including areas under cells, at starting course on footings where cells are not grouted.
  - 5. Fully bed units and fill cells with mortar at anchors and ties as needed to fully embed anchors and ties in mortar.
- B. Lay solid masonry units and hollow brick with completely filled bed and head joints; butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Do not deeply furrow bed joints or slush head joints.

- C. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Cut joints flush where indicated to receive waterproofing, cavity wall insulation, or air barriers unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.6 CAVITY WALLS

- A. Bond wythes of cavity walls together as follows:
  - 1. Individual Metal Ties: Provide ties as indicated installed in horizontal joints, but not less than one metal tie for 2.67 sq. ft. (0.25 sq. m) of wall area spaced not to exceed 24 inches (610 mm) o.c. horizontally and 16 inches (406 mm) o.c. vertically. Stagger ties in alternate courses. Provide additional ties within 12 inches (305 mm) of openings and space not more than 36 inches (914 mm) apart around perimeter of openings. At intersecting and abutting walls, provide ties at no more than 24 inches (610 mm) o.c. vertically.
    - a. Where bed joints of wythes do not align, use adjustable-type (two-piece-type) ties.
    - b. Where one wythe is of clay masonry and the other of concrete masonry, use adjustable-type (two-piece-type) ties to allow for differential movement regardless of whether bed joints align.
  - 2. Header Bonding: Provide masonry unit headers extending not less than 3 inches (76 mm) into each wythe. Space headers not more than **[8 inches (203 mm)] [12 inches (305 mm)]** clear horizontally and 16 inches (406 mm) clear vertically.
  - 3. Masonry-Veneer Anchors: Comply with requirements for anchoring masonry veneers.
- B. Bond wythes of cavity walls together using bonding system indicated on Drawings.
- C. Keep cavities clean of mortar droppings and other materials during construction. Bevel beds away from cavity, to minimize mortar protrusions into cavity. Do not attempt to trowel or remove mortar fins protruding into cavity.
- D. Installing Cavity Wall Insulation: Place small dabs of adhesive, spaced approximately 12 inches (305 mm) o.c. both ways, on inside face of insulation boards, or attach with plastic fasteners designed for this purpose. Fit courses of insulation between wall ties and other confining obstructions in cavity, with edges butted tightly both ways. Press units firmly against inside wythe of masonry or other construction as indicated.
  - 1. Fill cracks and open gaps in insulation with crack sealer compatible with insulation and masonry.
- E. Leave inspection openings at each course immediately above through-wall flashing and lintels by omitting one whole unit for every eight units laid horizontally. After wall cavity inspection and approval by the Architect, infill openings by inserting like units and properly filling head and bed joints and pointing as required for smooth, uniform appearance.
  - 1. Cavities that have excessive mortar build-up will be cleaned by removal of the veneer. Excessive mortar build-up will be determined by the Architect.

### 3.7 ANCHORED MASONRY VENEERS

- A. Anchor masonry veneers to wall framing and concrete and masonry backup with masonry-veneer anchors to comply with the following requirements:
  - 1. Fasten anchors through sheathing to wall framing with metal fasteners of type indicated. Use two fasteners unless anchor design only uses one fastener.
  - 2. Embed connector sections and continuous wire in masonry joints.
  - 3. Locate anchor sections to allow maximum vertical differential movement of ties up and down.
  - 4. Space anchors not more than 16 inches (406 mm) o.c. vertically and 24 inches (635 mm) o.c. horizontally, with not less than one anchor for each 2.67 sq. ft. (0.25 sq. m) of wall area. Install additional anchors within 12 inches (305 mm) of openings and at intervals, not exceeding 36 inches (914 mm), around perimeter.

### 3.8 MASONRY-CELL FILL

- A. Pour loose-fill insulation into cavities to fill void spaces. Maintain inspection ports to show presence of fill at extremities of each pour area. Close the ports after filling has been confirmed. Limit the fall of fill to one story high, but not more than 20 ft. (6 m).

### 3.9 MASONRY-JOINT REINFORCEMENT

- A. General: Install entire length of longitudinal side rods in mortar with a minimum cover of 5/8 inch (16 mm) on exterior side of walls, 1/2 inch (13 mm) elsewhere. Lap reinforcement a minimum of 6 inches (152 mm).
  - 1. Space reinforcement not more than 16 inches (406 mm) o.c.
  - 2. Space reinforcement not more than 8 inches (203 mm) o.c. in foundation walls and parapet walls.
  - 3. Provide reinforcement not more than 8 inches (203 mm) above and below wall openings and extending 12 inches (305 mm) beyond openings in addition to continuous reinforcement.
- B. Interrupt joint reinforcement at control and expansion joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Provide continuity at wall intersections by using prefabricated T-shaped units.
- D. Provide continuity at corners by using prefabricated L-shaped units.
- E. Cut and bend reinforcing units as directed by manufacturer for continuity at [ **corners,**] returns, offsets, column fireproofing, pipe enclosures, and other special conditions.

### 3.10 CONTROL AND EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. General: Install expansion joints in unit masonry and control joints in brick where indicated. Install control joints in CMU at 20'-0" on center maximum, maintain 2 feet minimum from jamb at all openings. Do not allow materials to span control and expansion joints without provision to allow for in-plane wall or partition movement.

- B. Form control joints in concrete masonry as follows:
  - 1. Install temporary foam-plastic filler in head joints, and remove filler when unit masonry is complete for application of sealant.
- C. Form expansion joints in brick as follows:
  - 1. Build flanges of metal expansion strips into masonry. Lap each joint 4 inches (102 mm) in direction of water flow. Seal joints below grade and at junctures with horizontal expansion joints if any.
  - 2. Build flanges of factory-fabricated, expansion-joint units into masonry.
  - 3. Build in compressible joint fillers where indicated.
  - 4. Form open joint full depth of brick wythe and of width indicated, but not less than 3/8 inch (10 mm) for installation of sealant and backer rod specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- D. Provide horizontal, pressure-relieving joints by either leaving an airspace or inserting a compressible filler of width required for installing sealant and backer rod specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants," but not less than 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  - 1. Locate horizontal, pressure-relieving joints beneath shelf angles supporting masonry.

### 3.11 LINTELS

- A. Install steel lintels where indicated.
- B. Provide concrete or masonry lintels where indicated and where openings of more than 12 inches (305 mm) for brick-size units and 24 inches (610 mm) for block-size units are indicated without structural steel or other supporting lintels.
- C. Provide minimum bearing of 8 inches (203 mm) at each jamb unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.12 FLASHING, WEEP HOLES, AND CAVITY VENTS

- A. General: Install embedded flashing and weep holes in masonry at shelf angles, lintels, ledges, other obstructions to downward flow of water in wall, and where indicated. Install cavity vents at shelf angles, ledges, and other obstructions to upward flow of air in cavities, and where indicated.
- B. Install flashing as follows unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Prepare masonry surfaces so they are smooth and free from projections that could puncture flashing. Where flashing is within mortar joint, place through-wall flashing on sloping bed of mortar and cover with mortar. Before covering with mortar, seal penetrations in flashing with adhesive, sealant, or tape as recommended by flashing manufacturer.
  - 2. At multiwythe masonry walls, including cavity walls, extend flashing through outer wythe, turned up a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm), and 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) into the inner wythe.
  - 3. At lintels and shelf angles, extend flashing 6 inches (152 mm) minimum at each end. At heads and sills, extend flashing 6 inches (152 mm) minimum and turn ends up not less than 2 inches (51 mm) to form end dams.

4. Install metal drip edges with sawtooth sheet metal flashing by interlocking hemmed edges to form hooked seam. Seal seam with elastomeric sealant complying with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for application indicated.
  5. Install metal drip edges beneath flexible flashing at exterior face of wall. Stop flexible flashing 1/2 inch (13 mm) back from outside face of wall, and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal drip edge.
  6. Install metal flashing termination beneath flexible flashing at exterior face of wall. Stop flexible flashing 1/2 inch (13 mm) back from outside face of wall, and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal flashing termination.
- C. Install single-wythe CMU flashing system in bed joints of CMU walls where indicated to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install CMU cell pans with upturned edges located below face shells and webs of CMUs above and with weep spouts aligned with face of wall. Install CMU web covers so that they cover upturned edges of CMU cell pans at CMU webs and extend from face shell to face shell.
- D. Install reglets and nailers for flashing and other related construction where they are indicated to be built into masonry.
- E. Install weep holes in exterior wythes and veneers in head joints of first course of masonry immediately above embedded flashing.
1. Use specified weep/cavity vent products to form weep holes.
  2. Use wicking material to form weep holes above flashing under brick sills. Turn wicking down at lip of sill to be as inconspicuous as possible.
  3. Space weep holes 24 inches (610 mm) o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Place cavity drainage material in airspace behind veneers to comply with configuration requirements for cavity drainage material in "Accessories" Article.

### 3.13 REINFORCED UNIT MASONRY

- A. Temporary Formwork and Shores: Construct formwork and shores as needed to support reinforced masonry elements during construction.
1. Construct formwork to provide shape, line, and dimensions of completed masonry as indicated. Make forms sufficiently tight to prevent leakage of mortar and grout. Brace, tie, and support forms to maintain position and shape during construction and curing of reinforced masonry.
  2. Do not remove forms and shores until reinforced masonry members have hardened sufficiently to carry their own weight and that of other loads that may be placed on them during construction.
- B. Placing Reinforcement: Comply with requirements in TMS 602.
- C. Grouting: Do not place grout until entire height of masonry to be grouted has attained enough strength to resist grout pressure.
1. Comply with requirements in TMS 602 for cleanouts and for grout placement, including minimum grout space and maximum pour height.

2. Limit height of vertical grout pours to not more than 60 inches (1524 mm).

### 3.14 REPAIRING, POINTING, AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace masonry units that are loose, chipped, broken, stained, or otherwise damaged or that do not match adjoining units. Install new units to match adjoining units; install in fresh mortar, pointed to eliminate evidence of replacement.
- B. Pointing: During the tooling of joints, enlarge voids and holes, except weep holes, and completely fill with mortar. Point up joints, including corners, openings, and adjacent construction, to provide a neat, uniform appearance. Prepare joints for sealant application, where indicated.
- C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
- D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:
  1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
  2. Test cleaning methods on sample wall panel; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of masonry.
  3. Protect adjacent stone and nonmasonry surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent or polyethylene film and waterproof masking tape.
  4. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing surfaces thoroughly with clear water.
  5. Clean brick by bucket-and-brush hand-cleaning method described in BIA Technical Notes 20.
  6. Clean concrete masonry by applicable cleaning methods indicated in NCMA TEK 8-4A.
  7. Clean masonry with a proprietary acidic masonry cleaner applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.15 MASONRY WASTE DISPOSAL

- A. Salvageable Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, excess masonry materials are Contractor's property. At completion of unit masonry work, remove from Project site.
- B. Waste Disposal as Fill Material: Dispose of clean masonry waste, including excess or soil-contaminated sand, waste mortar, and broken masonry units, by crushing and mixing with fill material as fill is placed.
  1. Crush masonry waste to less than 4 inches (102 mm) in each dimension.
  2. Mix masonry waste with at least two parts of specified fill material for each part of masonry waste. Fill material is specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
  3. Do not dispose of masonry waste as fill within 18 inches (457 mm) of finished grade.
- C. Masonry Waste Recycling: Return broken CMUs not used as fill to manufacturer for recycling.



- D. Excess Masonry Waste: Remove excess clean masonry waste that cannot be used as fill, as described above or recycled, and other masonry waste, and legally dispose of off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 042000

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 051200 - STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Structural-steel materials.
2. Shrinkage-resistant grout.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Structural Steel: Elements of the structural frame indicated on Drawings and as described in ANSI/AISC 303.

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of anchorage items to be embedded in or attached to other construction without delaying the Work. Provide setting diagrams, sheet metal templates, instructions, and directions for installation.

#### 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Structural-steel materials.
2. High-strength, bolt-nut-washer assemblies.
3. Anchor rods.
4. Threaded rods.
5. Prefabricated building columns.
6. Shop primer.
7. Shrinkage-resistant grout.

- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication of structural-steel components.

1. Include details of cuts, connections, splices, camber, holes, and other pertinent data.

2. Include embedment Drawings.
  3. Indicate welds by standard AWS symbols, distinguishing between shop and field welds, and show size, length, and type of each weld. Show backing bars that are to be removed and supplemental fillet welds where backing bars are to remain.
  4. Indicate type, size, and length of bolts, distinguishing between shop and field bolts. Identify pretensioned and slip-critical, high-strength bolted connections.
- C. Welding Procedure Specifications (WPSs) and Procedure Qualification Records (PQRs): Provide in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M for each welded joint whether prequalified or qualified by testing, including the following:
1. Power source (constant current or constant voltage).
  2. Electrode manufacturer and trade name, for demand-critical welds.
- D. Delegated Design Submittal: For structural-steel connections indicated on Drawings to comply with design loads, include analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation. In addition, the professional engineer responsible for connection design shall review the shop drawings prior to submittal to verify that the connections detailed comply with the calculations provided as well as the design requirements. A review letter, signed and sealed by the professional engineer responsible for connection design, shall be provided with the shop drawings and calculations submittal stating that this review and verification has been completed.

#### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For fabricator professional engineer.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers, certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.
- D. Mill test reports for structural-steel materials, including chemical and physical properties.
- E. Product Test Reports: For the following:
1. Bolts, nuts, and washers, including mechanical properties and chemical analysis.
  2. Direct-tension indicators.
  3. Tension-control, high-strength, bolt-nut-washer assemblies.
- F. Source quality-control reports.
- G. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: A qualified fabricator that participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Plant, Category BU or is accredited by the IAS Fabricator Inspection Program for Structural Steel (Acceptance Criteria 172).

- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified Installer who participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Erector, Category ACSE.
- C. Shop-Painting Applicator Qualifications: Qualified in accordance with AISC's Sophisticated Paint Endorsement P1 or to SSPC-QP 3.
- D. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
  - 1. Welders and welding operators performing work on bottom-flange, demand-critical welds are to pass the supplemental welder qualification testing, as required by AWS D1.8/D1.8M. FCAW-S and FCAW-G are to be considered separate processes for welding personnel qualification.

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification. Keep steel members off ground and spaced by using pallets, dunnage, or other supports and spacers. Protect steel members and packaged materials from corrosion and deterioration.
  - 1. Do not store materials on structure in a manner that might cause distortion, damage, or overload to members or supporting structures. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.
- B. Store fasteners in a protected place in sealed containers with manufacturer's labels intact.
  - 1. Fasteners may be repackaged provided Owner's testing and inspecting agency observes repackaging and seals containers.
  - 2. Clean and relubricate bolts and nuts that become dry or rusty before use.
  - 3. Comply with manufacturers' written recommendations for cleaning and lubricating ASTM F3125/F3125M, Grade F1852 bolt assemblies and for retesting bolt assemblies after lubrication.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents:
  - 1. ANSI/AISC 303.
  - 2. ANSI/AISC 360.
  - 3. RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts."
- B. Connection Design Information:
  - 1. Option 3 and 3B: Design connections and final configuration of member reinforcement at connections in accordance with ANSI/AISC 303 by fabricator's qualified professional engineer.

- a. Use Load and Resistance Factor Design; data are given at factored-load level.

## 2.2 STRUCTURAL-STEEL MATERIALS

- A. W-Shapes: ASTM A992/A992M.
- B. Channels, Angles, M-Shapes: ASTM A572/A572M, Grade 50.
- C. Plate and Bar: ASTM A572/A572M, Grade 50.

## 2.3 BOLTS AND CONNECTORS

- A. High-Strength A325 Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM F3125/F3125M, Grade A325, Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A563, Grade DH, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F436/F436M, Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers; all with plain finish.
  1. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F959/F959M, Type 325-1, compressible-washer type with plain finish.

## 2.4 RODS

- A. Headed Anchor Rods: ASTM F1554, Grade 36, straight.
  1. Nuts: ASTM A563 heavy-hex carbon steel.
  2. Plate Washers: ASTM A36/A36M carbon steel.
  3. Washers: ASTM F436, Type 1, hardened carbon steel.
  4. Finish: Plain.

## 2.5 PRIMER

- A. Steel Primer:
- B. Galvanized-Steel Primer: MPI#26.
  1. Etching Cleaner: MPI#25, for galvanized steel.
  2. Galvanizing Repair Paint: MPI#18, MPI#19, or SSPC-Paint 20.

## 2.6 SHRINKAGE-RESISTANT GROUT

- A. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C1107/C1107M, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive and nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

## 2.7 FABRICATION

- A. Structural Steel: Fabricate and assemble in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate in accordance with ANSI/AISC 303 and to ANSI/AISC 360.
  - 1. Camber structural-steel members where indicated.
  - 2. Fabricate beams with rolling camber up.
  - 3. Identify high-strength structural steel in accordance with ASTM A6/A6M and maintain markings until structural-steel framing has been erected.
  - 4. Mark and match-mark materials for field assembly.
  - 5. Complete structural-steel assemblies, including welding of units, before starting shop-priming operations.
- B. Thermal Cutting: Perform thermal cutting by machine to greatest extent possible.
  - 1. Plane thermally cut edges to be welded to comply with requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Bolt Holes: Cut, drill, mechanically thermal cut, or punch standard bolt holes perpendicular to metal surfaces.
- D. Finishing: Accurately finish ends of columns and other members transmitting bearing loads.
- E. Cleaning: Clean and prepare steel surfaces that are to remain unpainted in accordance with SSPC-SP 1.
- F. Holes: Provide holes required for securing other work to structural steel and for other work to pass through steel members.
  - 1. Baseplate Holes: Cut, drill, mechanically thermal cut, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces.
  - 2. Weld threaded nuts to framing and other specialty items indicated to receive other work.

## 2.8 SHOP CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Shop install high-strength bolts in accordance with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
  - 1. Joint Type: Snug tightened.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.
  - 1. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in ANSI/AISC 303 for mill material.

## 2.9 GALVANIZING

- A. Hot-Dip Galvanized Finish: Apply zinc coating by the hot-dip process to structural steel in accordance with ASTM A123/A123M.

1. Fill vent and drain holes that are exposed in the finished Work unless they function as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.

## 2.10 SHOP PRIMING

### A. Shop prime steel surfaces, except the following:

1. Surfaces embedded in concrete or mortar. Extend priming of partially embedded members to a depth of 2 inches.
2. Surfaces to be field welded.
3. Surfaces of high-strength bolted, slip-critical connections.
4. Surfaces to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials (applied fireproofing).
5. Galvanized surfaces.
6. Corrosion-resisting (weathering) steel surfaces.
7. Surfaces enclosed in interior construction.

### B. Surface Preparation of Steel: Clean surfaces to be painted. Remove loose rust and mill scale and spatter, slag, or flux deposits. Prepare surfaces in accordance with the following specifications and standards:

1. SSPC-SP 2.
2. SSPC-SP 3.
3. SSPC-SP 7 (WAB)/NACE WAB-4.
4. SSPC-SP 14 (WAB)/NACE WAB-8.
5. SSPC-SP 11.
6. SSPC-SP 6 (WAB)/NACE WAB-3.
7. SSPC-SP 10 (WAB)/NACE WAB-2.
8. SSPC-SP 5 (WAB)/NACE WAB-1.
9. SSPC-SP 8.

### C. Surface Preparation of Galvanized Steel: Prepare galvanized-steel surfaces for shop priming by thoroughly cleaning steel of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treating with etching cleaner or in accordance with SSPC-SP 16.

### D. Priming: Immediately after surface preparation, apply primer in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and at rate recommended by SSPC to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils. Use priming methods that result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces.

1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.
2. Apply two coats of shop paint to surfaces that are inaccessible after assembly or erection. Change color of second coat to distinguish it from first.

## 2.11 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

### A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform shop tests and inspections.



1. Allow testing agency access to places where structural-steel work is being fabricated or produced to perform tests and inspections.
2. Bolted Connections: Inspect shop-bolted connections in accordance with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts."
3. Welded Connections: Visually inspect shop-welded connections in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:
  - a. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E165/E165M.
  - b. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration are not accepted.
  - c. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E164.
  - d. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E94/E94M.
4. In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect shop-welded shear stud connectors in accordance with requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M for stud welding and as follows:
  - a. Perform bend tests if visual inspections reveal either a less-than-continuous 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear stud connector.
  - b. Conduct tests in accordance with requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M on additional shear stud connectors if weld fracture occurs on shear stud connectors already tested.
5. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify, with certified steel erector present, elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments for compliance with requirements.
  1. Prepare a certified survey of existing conditions. Include bearing surfaces, anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments showing dimensions, locations, angles, and elevations.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Provide temporary shores, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep structural steel secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loads and loads equal in intensity to design loads. Remove temporary supports when permanent structural steel, connections, and bracing are in place unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
  1. Do not remove temporary shoring supporting composite deck construction and structural-steel framing until cast-in-place concrete has attained its design compressive strength.

### 3.3 ERECTION

- A. Set structural steel accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and in accordance with ANSI/AISC 303 and ANSI/AISC 360.
- B. Baseplates, Bearing Plates, and Leveling Plates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting plates. Clean bottom surface of plates.
  - 1. Set plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.
  - 2. Weld plate washers to top of baseplate.
  - 3. Snug-tighten anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of plate before packing with grout.
  - 4. Promptly pack shrinkage-resistant grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates, so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for grouting.
- C. Maintain erection tolerances of structural steel within ANSI/AISC 303.
- D. Align and adjust various members that form part of complete frame or structure before permanently fastening. Before assembly, clean bearing surfaces and other surfaces that are in permanent contact with members. Perform necessary adjustments to compensate for discrepancies in elevations and alignment.
  - 1. Level and plumb individual members of structure. Slope roof framing members to slopes indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Make allowances for difference between temperature at time of erection and mean temperature when structure is completed and in service.
- E. Splice members only where indicated.
- F. Do not use thermal cutting during erection.
- G. Do not enlarge unfair holes in members by burning or using drift pins. Ream holes that must be enlarged to admit bolts.

### 3.4 FIELD CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Install high-strength bolts in accordance with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts" for bolt and joint type specified.
  - 1. Joint Type: Snug tightened.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.
  - 1. Comply with ANSI/AISC 303 and ANSI/AISC 360 for bearing, alignment, adequacy of temporary connections, and removal of paint on surfaces adjacent to field welds.
  - 2. Remove backing bars or runoff tabs where indicated, back gouge, and grind steel smooth.

3. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in ANSI/AISC 303 for mill material.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF PREFABRICATED BUILDING COLUMNS

- A. Install prefabricated building columns to comply with ANSI/AISC 360, manufacturer's written recommendations, and requirements of testing and inspecting agency that apply to the fire-resistance rating indicated.

### 3.6 REPAIR

- A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean areas where galvanizing is damaged or missing, and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A780/A780M.
- B. Touchup Painting:
  1. Immediately after erection, clean exposed areas where primer is damaged or missing, and paint with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
    - a. Clean and prepare surfaces by SSPC-SP 2 hand-tool cleaning or SSPC-SP 3 power-tool cleaning.
- C. Touchup Priming: Cleaning and touchup priming are specified in Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
  1. Verify structural-steel materials and inspect steel frame joint details.
  2. Verify weld materials and inspect welds.
  3. Verify connection materials and inspect high-strength bolted connections.
- B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
  1. Bolted Connections: Inspect bolted connections in accordance with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts."
  2. Welded Connections: Visually inspect field welds in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
    - a. In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect field welds in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:
      - 1) Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E165/E165M.
      - 2) Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration are not accepted.

- 3) Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E164.
  - 4) Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E94/E94M.
- 3. Shear Stud Connectors: In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect field-welded shear connectors according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M for stud welding and as follows:
  - a. Perform bend tests if visual inspections reveal either a less-than-continuous 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear connector.
  - b. Conduct tests according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M on additional shear connectors if weld fracture occurs on shear connectors already tested.

END OF SECTION 051200

## SECTION 053100 - STEEL DECKING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Composite floor deck.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of deck, accessory, and product indicated
  - 1.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include layout and types of deck panels, anchorage details, reinforcing channels, pans, cut deck openings, special jointing, accessories, and attachments to other construction.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of steel deck.
- C. Test and Evaluation Reports:
  - 1. Research Reports: For steel deck, from ICC-ES showing compliance with the building code.
- D. Field Quality-Control Submittals:
  - 1. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Qualification Statements: For welding personnel and testing agency.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with SDI QA/QC and the following welding codes:
  - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
  - 2. AWS D1.3/D1.3M.

- B. Electrical Raceway Units: Provide UL-labeled cellular floor-deck units complying with UL 209 and listed in UL's "Electrical Construction Equipment Directory" for use with standard header ducts and outlets for electrical distribution systems.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect steel deck from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.
- B. Store products in accordance with SDI MOC3. Stack steel deck on platforms or pallets and slope to provide drainage. Protect with a waterproof covering and ventilate to avoid condensation.
  - 1. Protect and ventilate acoustical cellular roof deck with factory-installed insulation to maintain insulation free of moisture.

## 1.6 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. AISI Specifications: Comply with calculated structural characteristics of steel deck according to AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members."
- B. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with ASTM E119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 COMPOSITE FLOOR DECK

- A. Fabrication of Composite Floor Deck: Fabricate panels, with integrally embossed or raised pattern ribs and interlocking side laps, to comply with SDI C, with the minimum section properties indicated, and with the following:
  - 1. Prime-Painted Steel Sheet: ASTM A1008/A1008M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 minimum, with top surface phosphatized and unpainted and underside surface shop primed with manufacturers' standard gray or white baked-on, rust-inhibitive primer.
  - 2. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33, zinc coating.
  - 3. Profile Depth: As indicated.
  - 4. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: As indicated..
  - 5. Span Condition: As indicated.

## 2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Provide manufacturer's standard accessory materials for deck that comply with requirements indicated.
- B. Mechanical Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, low-velocity, power-actuated or pneumatically driven carbon-steel fasteners; or self-drilling, self-threading screws.
- C. Side-Lap Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, hexagonal washer head; self-drilling, carbon-steel screws, No. 10 minimum diameter.
- D. Flexible Closure Strips: Vulcanized, closed-cell, synthetic rubber.
- E. Miscellaneous Sheet Metal Deck Accessories: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 33,000 psi, not less than 0.0359-inch design uncoated thickness, of same material and finish as deck; of profile indicated or required for application.
- F. Pour Stops and Girder Fillers: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 33,000 psi, of same material and finish as deck, and of thickness and profile indicated.
- G. Column Closures, End Closures, Z-Closures, and Cover Plates: Steel sheet, of same material, finish, and thickness as deck unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Piercing Hanger Tabs: Piercing steel sheet hanger attachment devices for use with floor deck.
- I. Repair Paint: Manufacturer's standard rust-inhibitive primer of same color as primer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine supporting frame and field conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install deck panels and accessories in accordance with SDI C, SDI NC, and SDI RD, as applicable; manufacturer's written instructions; and requirements in this Section.
- B. Install temporary shoring before placing deck panels if required to meet deflection limitations.
- C. Locate deck bundles to prevent overloading of supporting members.
- D. Place deck panels on supporting frame and adjust to final position with ends accurately aligned and bearing on supporting frame before being permanently fastened. Do not stretch or contract side-lap interlocks.

- E. Place deck panels flat and square and fasten to supporting frame without warp or deflection.
- F. Cut and neatly fit deck panels and accessories around openings and other work projecting through or adjacent to deck.
- G. Provide additional reinforcement and closure pieces at openings as required for strength, continuity of deck, and support of other work.
- H. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for manual shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used for correcting welding work.
- I. Mechanical fasteners may be used in lieu of welding to fasten deck. Locate mechanical fasteners and install in accordance with deck manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF FLOOR DECK

- A. Fasten floor-deck panels to steel supporting members by arc spot (puddle) welds of the surface diameter indicated and as follows:
  - 1. Weld Diameter: 5/8 inch, nominal.
  - 2. Weld Spacing:
    - a. Weld edge ribs of panels at each support. Space additional welds an average of 16 inches apart, but not more than 18 inches apart.
    - b. Space and locate welds as indicated.
- B. Side-Lap and Perimeter Edge Fastening: Fasten side laps and perimeter edges of panels between supports, at intervals not exceeding the lesser of one-half of the span or 36 inches, and as follows:
  - 1. Mechanically fasten with self-drilling, No. 10 diameter or larger, carbon-steel screws.
  - 2. Mechanically clinch or button punch.
  - 3. Fasten with a minimum of 1-1/2-inch- long welds.
- C. End Bearing: Install deck ends over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of 1-1/2 inches, with end joints as follows:
  - 1. End Joints: Butted.
- D. Pour Stops and Girder Fillers: Weld steel sheet pour stops and girder fillers to supporting structure in accordance with SDI recommendations unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Floor-Deck Closures: Weld steel sheet column closures, cell closures, and Z-closures to deck, in accordance with SDI recommendations, to provide tight-fitting closures at open ends of ribs and sides of deck.

### 3.4 SPECIAL INSPECTIONS

- A. Special Inspections and tests shall be performed by the Special Inspector or Special Inspection Agency.



- B. Verification and inspection of metal deck construction shall be in accordance with **Table 1704.3 of North Carolina State Building Code 2018**
  - 1. Welding: Welding inspection shall be in compliance with AWS D1.3.
  - 2. Details: Perform an inspection of the steel decking to verify compliance with the details shown on the approved construction documents, such as layout, bearing and laps, quantity and spacing of welds and screws.
- C. Remove and replace work that does not comply with specified requirements.
- D. Additional inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of corrected work with specified requirements.

### 3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on both surfaces of deck with galvanized repair paint in accordance with ASTM A780/A780M and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Repair Painting:
  - 1. Wire brush and clean rust spots, welds, and abraded areas on both surfaces of prime-painted deck immediately after installation, and apply repair paint.
  - 2. Apply repair paint, of same color as adjacent shop-primed deck, to bottom surfaces of deck exposed to view.
  - 3. Wire brushing, cleaning, and repair painting of bottom deck surfaces are included in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
  - 4. Wire brushing, cleaning, and repair painting of rust spots, welds, and abraded areas of both deck surfaces are included in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
  - 5. Provide final protection and maintain conditions to ensure that steel deck is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Special inspections and qualification of welding special inspectors for cold-formed steel floor and roof deck in accordance with quality-assurance inspection requirements of SDI QA/QC.
    - a. Field welds will be subject to inspection.

2. Steel decking will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 053100

## SECTION 055000 - METAL FABRICATIONS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Metal bollards.
- B. Products furnished, but not installed, under this Section include the following:
  - 1. Steel weld plates and angles for casting into concrete for applications where they are not specified in other Sections.
  - 2. Anchor bolts, steel pipe sleeves, slotted-channel inserts, and wedge-type inserts indicated to be cast into concrete or built into unit masonry.
- C. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 042000 "Unit Masonry" for installing loose lintels, anchor bolts, and other items built into unit masonry.
  - 2. Section 051200 "Structural Steel Framing" for steel framing, supports, elevator machine beams, hoist beams, divider beams, door frames, and other steel items attached to the structural-steel framing.

#### 1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written instructions to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of metal fabrications that are anchored to or that receive other work. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
  - 1. Fasteners.
  - 2. Shop primers.
  - 3. Metal bollards.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details of metal fabrications and their connections. Show anchorage and accessory items. Provide Shop Drawings for the following:
  - 1. Miscellaneous framing and supports for applications where framing and supports are not specified in other Sections.

2. Metal bollards.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers, certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

#### 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls, floor slabs, decks, and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 METALS

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For metal fabrications exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.
- B. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A36/A36M.
- C. Stainless Steel Sheet, Strip, and Plate: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304.
- D. Stainless Steel Bars and Shapes: ASTM A276/A276M, Type 304.
- E. Steel Tubing: ASTM A500/A500M, cold-formed steel tubing.
- F. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, Standard Weight (Schedule 40) unless otherwise indicated.

#### 2.2 FASTENERS

- A. General: Unless otherwise indicated, provide Type 304 stainless steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B633 or ASTM F1941/F1941M, Class Fe/Zn 5, at exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.
  1. Provide stainless steel fasteners for fastening stainless steel.
- B. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A307, Grade A (ISO 898-1, Property Class 4.6); with hex nuts, ASTM A563 (ASTM A563M); and, where indicated, flat washers.
- C. Stainless Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head annealed stainless steel bolts, ASTM F593 (ISO 3506-1); with hex nuts, ASTM F594 (ASTM F836M); and, where indicated, flat washers; Alloy Group 1 (A1).

- D. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F1554, Grade 36, of dimensions indicated; with nuts, ASTM A563 (ASTM A563M); and, where indicated, flat washers.
  - 1. Hot-dip galvanize or provide mechanically deposited, zinc coating where item being fastened is indicated to be galvanized.
- E. Anchors, General: Capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing in accordance with ASTM E488/E488M, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- F. Cast-in-Place Anchors in Concrete: Either threaded or wedge type unless otherwise indicated; galvanized ferrous castings, either ASTM A47/A47M malleable iron or ASTM A27/A27M cast steel. Provide bolts, washers, and shims as needed, all hot-dip galvanized per ASTM F2329/F2329M.
- G. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors.
  - 1. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 (A1) stainless steel bolts, ASTM F593 (ISO 3506-1), and nuts, ASTM F594 (ASTM F836M).

## 2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."
- B. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
  - 1. Use primer that contains pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.
- C. Water-Based Primer: Emulsion type, anticorrosive primer for mildly corrosive environments that is resistant to flash rusting when applied to cleaned steel, complying with MPI#107 and compatible with topcoat.
- D. Epoxy Zinc-Rich Primer: Complying with MPI#20 and compatible with topcoat.
- E. Shop Primer for Galvanized Steel: Primer formulated for exterior use over zinc-coated metal and compatible with finish paint systems indicated.
- F. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
- G. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D1187/D1187M.
- H. Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: Factory-packaged, nonmetallic, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C1107/C1107M. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
- I. Concrete: Comply with requirements in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight, air-entrained concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi (20 MPa).

## 2.4 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Shop Assembly: Preassemble items in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- B. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch (1 mm) unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- C. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.
- D. Form exposed work with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.
- E. Weld corners and seams continuously to comply with the following:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing.
- F. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners or welds where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) fasteners unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
- G. Fabricate seams and other connections that are exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
- H. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap metal fabrications as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- I. Provide for anchorage of type indicated; coordinate with supporting structure. Space anchoring devices to secure metal fabrications rigidly in place and to support indicated loads.
- J. Where units are indicated to be cast into concrete or built into masonry, equip with integrally welded steel strap anchors, 1/8 by 1-1/2 inches (3.2 by 38 mm), with a minimum 6-inch (150-mm) embedment and 2-inch (50-mm) hook, not less than 8 inches (200 mm) from ends and corners of units and 24 inches (600 mm) o.c., unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.5 METAL BOLLARDS

- A. Fabricate metal bollards from Schedule 40 steel pipe.
- B. Prime steel bollards with zinc-rich primer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal fabrications. Set metal fabrications accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true, and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.
- B. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where metal fabrications are required to be fastened to in-place construction. Provide threaded fasteners for use with concrete and masonry inserts, toggle bolts, through bolts, lag screws, wood screws, and other connectors.
- E. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.
- F. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum that come into contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals with the following:
  - 1. Cast Aluminum: Heavy coat of bituminous paint.
  - 2. Extruded Aluminum: Two coats of clear lacquer.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF METAL BOLLARDS

- A. Fill bollards solidly with concrete, mounding top surface to shed water.

### 3.3 REPAIRS

- A. Touchup Painting:
  - 1. Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas. Paint uncoated and abraded areas with same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.

- a. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil (0.05-mm) dry film thickness.
- 2. Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A780/A780M.

END OF SECTION 055000



## SECTION 061000 - ROUGH CARPENTRY

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Wood products.
2. Wood-preservative-treated lumber.
3. Fire-retardant-treated lumber.
4. Miscellaneous lumber.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 064023 "Interior Architectural Woodwork" for custom interior millwork elements.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Boards or Strips: Lumber of less than 2 inches nominal (38 mm actual) size in least dimension.
- B. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of 2 inches nominal (38 mm actual) size or greater but less than 5 inches nominal (114 mm actual) size in least dimension.
- C. Exposed Framing: Framing not concealed by other construction.
- D. Lumber grading agencies, and abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:
1. NeLMA: Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers' Association.
  2. NLGA: National Lumber Grades Authority.
  3. SPIB: The Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.
  4. WCLIB: West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.
  5. WWPA: Western Wood Products Association.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
  2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency.

3. For fire-retardant treatments, include physical properties of treated lumber both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures, based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency in accordance with ASTM D5664.
4. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

##### A. Material Certificates:

1. For dimension lumber specified to comply with minimum allowable unit stresses. Indicate species and grade selected for each use and design values approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
2. For preservative-treated wood products. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- ##### A.
- Stack wood products flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect wood products from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS

- ##### A.
- Lumber: Comply with DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, comply with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Grade lumber by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.
1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
  2. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece.
  3. Where nominal sizes are indicated, provide actual sizes required by DOC PS 20 for moisture content specified. Where actual sizes are indicated, they are minimum dressed sizes for dry wood products.
- ##### B.
- Maximum Moisture Content:
1. Boards: 19 percent.
  2. Dimension Lumber: 19 percent unless otherwise indicated.

#### 2.2 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED LUMBER

- ##### A.
- Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWP A U1, Use categories as follows:

1. UC1: Interior construction not in contact with ground or subject to moisture. Include the following items:
    - a. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.
    - b. .
  2. UC3A (Commodity Specification A): Coated sawn products in exterior construction not in contact with ground but exposed to all weather cycles including intermittent wetting. Include the following items:
    - a. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
    - b. Wood framing members that are less than 18 inches (460 mm) above the ground in crawlspaces or unexcavated areas.
    - c. .
  3. UC4A (All Other Commodity Specifications): Non-critical products excluding sawn products in contact with ground and exposed to all weather cycles, normal exposure conditions. Include all rough carpentry.
  4. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.
  5. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, chemical formulations are not to require incising, contain colorants, bleed through, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
  6. After treatment, redry to 19 percent maximum moisture content.
- B. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Do not use material that is warped or that does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
- C. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
- D. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings, and the following:
1. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
  2. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.
  3. Wood framing members that are less than 18 inches (460 mm) above the ground in crawlspaces or unexcavated areas.
  4. .

## 2.3 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED LUMBER

- A. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, materials are to comply with requirements in this article, that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and with fire-test-response characteristics specified as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by a qualified testing agency.

- B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Lumber and Plywood by Pressure Process: Products with a flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84, and with no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is extended an additional 20 minutes, and with the flame front not extending more than 10.5 feet (3.2 m) beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.
  - 1. Treatment is not to promote corrosion of metal fasteners.
  - 2. Exterior Type: Treated materials are to comply with requirements specified above for fire-retardant-treated lumber and plywood by pressure process after being subjected to accelerated weathering in accordance with ASTM D2898. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.
  - 3. Design Value Adjustment Factors: Treated lumber is to be tested according to ASTM D5664 and design value adjustment factors are to be calculated according to ASTM D6841.
- C. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Kiln-dry plywood after treatment to maximum moisture content of 15 percent.
- D. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of qualified testing agency and other information required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- E. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, chemical formulations are not to bleed through, contain colorants, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
- F. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings, and the following:
  - 1. Concealed blocking.
  - 2. Plywood backing panels.
  - 3. .

## 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

- A. Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:
  - 1. Blocking.
  - 2. Nailers.
  - 3. Cants.
- B. Dimension Lumber Items: Construction or No. 2 grade lumber of any of the following species:
  - 1. Hem-fir (north); NLGA.
  - 2. Mixed southern pine or southern pine; SPIB.
  - 3. Spruce-pine-fir; NLGA.
  - 4. Hem-fir; WCLIB or WWPA.
  - 5. Spruce-pine-fir (south); NeLMA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
  - 6. Western woods; WCLIB or WWPA.
  - 7. Northern species; NLGA.
  - 8. Eastern softwoods; NeLMA.

- C. Concealed Boards: 19 percent maximum moisture content and any of the following species and grades:
  - 1. Mixed southern pine or southern pine; No. 2 grade; SPIB.
  - 2. Hem-fir or hem-fir (north); Construction or No. 2 Common grade; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWP.
  - 3. Spruce-pine-fir (south) or spruce-pine-fir; Construction or No. 2 Common grade; NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWP.
  - 4. Eastern softwoods; No. 2 Common grade; NeLMA.
  - 5. Northern species; No. 2 Common grade; NLGA.
  - 6. Western woods; Construction or No. 2 Common grade; WCLIB or WWP.
- D. For blocking not used for attachment of other construction, Utility, Stud, or No. 3 grade lumber of any species may be used provided that it is cut and selected to eliminate defects that will interfere with its attachment and purpose.

## 2.5 FASTENERS

- A. General: Fasteners are to be of size and type indicated and comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture. Provide nails or screws, in sufficient length, to penetrate not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) into wood substrate.
  - 1. Where rough carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, pressure-preservative treated, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners of Type 304 stainless steel.
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F1667.
- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA's WCD 1, "Details for Conventional Wood Frame Construction," unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Set work to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit rough carpentry accurately to other construction. Locate nailers, blocking, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.
- C. Install plywood backing panels by fastening to studs; coordinate locations with utilities requiring backing panels. Install fire-retardant-treated plywood backing panels with classification marking of testing agency exposed to view.
- D. Install metal framing anchors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install fasteners through each fastener hole.
- E. Do not splice structural members between supports unless otherwise indicated.

- F. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
  - 1. Provide metal clips for fastening gypsum board or lath at corners and intersections where framing or blocking does not provide a surface for fastening edges of panels. Space clips not more than 16 inches (406 mm) o.c.
- G. Provide fire blocking in furred spaces, stud spaces, and other concealed cavities as indicated and as follows:
  - 1. Fire block furred spaces of walls, at each floor level, at ceiling, and at not more than 96 inches (2438 mm) o.c. with solid wood blocking or noncombustible materials accurately fitted to close furred spaces.
  - 2. Fire block concealed spaces of wood-framed walls and partitions at each floor level, at ceiling line of top story, and at not more than 96 inches (2438 mm) o.c. Where fire blocking is not inherent in framing system used, provide closely fitted solid wood blocks of same width as framing members and 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness.
  - 3. Fire block concealed spaces between floor sleepers with same material as sleepers to limit concealed spaces to not more than 100 sq. ft. (9.3 sq. m) and to solidly fill space below partitions.
  - 4. Fire block concealed spaces behind combustible cornices and exterior trim at not more than 20 feet (6 m) o.c.
- H. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics do not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
- I. Comply with AWP A M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
  - 1. Use inorganic boron for items that are continuously protected from liquid water.
  - 2. Use copper naphthenate for items not continuously protected from liquid water.
- J. Where wood-preservative-treated lumber is installed adjacent to metal decking, install continuous flexible flashing separator between wood and metal decking.
- K. Securely attach rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
  - 1. Table 2304.10.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code (IBC).
  - 2. Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.
  - 3. ICC-ES evaluation report for fastener.
- L. Securely attach roofing nailers to substrates by anchoring and fastening to withstand bending, shear, or other stresses imparted by Project wind loads and fastener-resistance loads as designed in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7.

- M. Use steel common nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood. Drive nails snug but do not countersink nail heads unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF WOOD BLOCKING AND NAILERS

- A. Install where indicated and where required for attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.
- B. Attach wood blocking to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Attach wood roofing nailers securely to substrate to resist the designed outward and upward wind loads indicated on Drawings and in accordance with ANSI/SPRI ED-1, Tables A6 and A7.
- D. Provide permanent grounds of dressed, pressure-preservative-treated, key-beveled lumber not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) wide and of thickness required to bring face of ground to exact thickness of finish material. Remove temporary grounds when no longer required.

### 3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

END OF SECTION 061000

This page intentionally left blank.



## SECTION 061600 - SHEATHING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Wall sheathing.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for plywood backing panels.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Wall sheathing.

B. Product Data Submittals: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

#### 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Stack panels flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect sheathing from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Fire-Resistance Ratings: As tested in accordance with ASTM E119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Indicated by design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.

## 2.2 WALL SHEATHING

- A. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing, Walls: ASTM C1177/C1177M.
  - 1. Type and Thickness: Type X, 1/2 inch thick.
  - 2. Size: 48 by 96 inches (1219 by 2438 mm) or 48 by 120 inches (1219 by 3048 mm) for vertical installation.

## 2.3 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
  - 1. For parapet and wall sheathing, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A153/A153M.
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F1667.
- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.
- D. Screws for Fastening Gypsum Sheathing to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: Steel drill screws, in length recommended by sheathing manufacturer for thickness of sheathing to be attached.
  - 1. For steel framing less than 0.0329 inch (0.835 mm) thick, use screws that comply with ASTM C1002.
  - 2. For steel framing from 0.033 to 0.112 inch (0.84 to 2.84 mm) thick, use screws that comply with ASTM C954.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Do not use materials with defects that impair quality of sheathing or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement. Arrange joints so that pieces do not span between fewer than three support members.
- B. Cut panels at penetrations, edges, and other obstructions of work; fit tightly against abutting construction unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Securely attach to substrate by fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
  - 1. Table 2304.10.1, "Fastening Schedule," in the ICC's International Building Code.
  - 2. ICC-ES evaluation report for fastener.
- D. Coordinate wall and parapet sheathing installation with flashing and joint-sealant installation so these materials are installed in sequence and manner that prevent exterior moisture from passing through completed assembly.

- E. Do not bridge building expansion joints; cut and space edges of panels to match spacing of structural support elements.
- F. Coordinate sheathing installation with installation of materials installed over sheathing so sheathing is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at end of the workday when rain is forecast.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF GYPSUM SHEATHING

- A. Comply with GA-253 and with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Fasten gypsum sheathing to cold-formed metal framing with screws.
  - 2. Install panels with a 3/8-inch (9.5-mm) gap where non-load-bearing construction abuts structural elements.
  - 3. Install panels with a 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) gap where they abut masonry or similar materials that might retain moisture, to prevent wicking.
- B. Apply fasteners so heads bear tightly against face of sheathing, but do not cut into facing.
- C. Horizontal Installation: Install sheathing with V-grooved edge down and tongue edge up. Interlock tongue with groove to bring long edges in contact with edges of adjacent panels without forcing. Abut ends over centers of studs, and stagger end joints of adjacent panels not less than one stud spacing. Attach at perimeter and within field of panel to each stud.
  - 1. Space fasteners approximately 8 inches (200 mm) o.c. and set back a minimum of 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) from edges and ends of panels.
- D. Vertical Installation: Install vertical edges centered over studs. Abut ends and edges with those of adjacent panels. Attach at perimeter and within field of panel to each stud.
  - 1. Space fasteners approximately 8 inches (200 mm) o.c. and set back a minimum of 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) from edges and ends of panels.
- E. Seal sheathing joints in accordance with sheathing manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Apply elastomeric sealant to joints and fasteners and trowel flat. Apply sufficient amount of sealant to completely cover joints and fasteners after troweling. Seal other penetrations and openings.
  - 2. Apply glass-fiber sheathing tape to glass-mat gypsum sheathing joints and apply and trowel sealant to embed entire face of tape in sealant. Apply sealant to exposed fasteners with a trowel so fasteners are completely covered. Seal other penetrations and openings.

END OF SECTION 061600

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 071113 - BITUMINOUS DAMPPROOFING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Cold-applied, cut-back-asphalt dampproofing.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 042000 "Unit Masonry" for mortar parge coat on masonry surfaces.
2. Division 33 for filter fabric associated with foundation drainage

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### 1.3 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with application only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit dampproofing to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

A. Source Limitations: Obtain primary dampproofing materials and primers from single source from single manufacturer. Provide drainage panels and auxiliary materials recommended in writing by manufacturer of primary materials.

#### 2.2 COLD-APPLIED, CUT-BACK-ASPHALT DAMPPROOFING

1. Karnak Corporation.
2. W. R. Meadows.
3. Henry Company

B. Trowel Coats: ASTM D4586/D4586M, Type I, Class 1, fibered.

C. Brush and Spray Coats: ASTM D4479/D4479M, Type I, fibered.

## 2.3 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. Furnish auxiliary materials recommended in writing by dampproofing manufacturer for intended use and compatible with bituminous dampproofing.
- B. Cut-Back-Asphalt Primer: ASTM D41/D41M.
- C. Asphalt-Coated Glass Fabric: ASTM D1668/D1668M, Type I.
- D. Patching Compound: Epoxy or latex-modified repair mortar of type recommended in writing by dampproofing manufacturer.

## 2.4 MOLDED-SHEET DRAINAGE PANELS

- A. Nonwoven-Geotextile-Faced, Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Composite subsurface drainage panel acceptable to dampproofing manufacturer and consisting of a studded, nonbiodegradable, molded-plastic-sheet drainage core; with a nonwoven, needle-punched geotextile facing with an apparent opening size not exceeding No. 70 (0.21-mm) sieve laminated to one side of the core, with or without a polymeric film bonded to the other side; and with a vertical flow rate through the core of 9 to 21 gpm per ft. (112 to 261 L/min. per m).
  - 1. Provide by same manufacturer as dampproofing

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for surface smoothness, maximum surface moisture content, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with application only after substrate construction and penetrating work have been completed and unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean, prepare, and treat substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions. Provide clean, dust-free, and dry substrates for dampproofing application.
- B. Mask or otherwise protect adjoining exposed surfaces from being stained, spotted, or coated with dampproofing. Prevent dampproofing materials from entering and clogging weep holes and drains.
- C. Clean substrates of projections and substances detrimental to dampproofing work; fill voids, seal joints, and remove bond breakers if any.
- D. Apply patching compound to patch and fill tie holes, honeycombs, reveals, and other imperfections.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for dampproofing application, cure time between coats, and drying time before backfilling unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Apply dampproofing to provide continuous plane of protection.
  - 2. Apply additional coats if recommended in writing by manufacturer or to achieve a smooth surface and uninterrupted coverage.
- B. Where dampproofing footings and foundation walls, apply from finished-grade line to top of footing; extend over top of footing and down a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) over outside face of footing.
  - 1. Extend dampproofing 12 inches (300 mm) onto intersecting walls and footings, but do not extend onto surfaces exposed to view when Project is completed.
  - 2. Install flashings and corner protection stripping at internal and external corners, changes in plane, construction joints, cracks, and where indicated as "reinforced," by embedding an 8-inch- (200-mm-) wide strip of asphalt-coated glass fabric in a heavy coat of dampproofing. Dampproofing coat for embedding fabric is in addition to other coats required.
- C. Where dampproofing exterior face of inner wythe of exterior masonry cavity walls, lap dampproofing at least 1/4 inch (6 mm) onto flashing, masonry reinforcement, veneer ties, and other items that penetrate inner wythe.
  - 1. Extend dampproofing over outer face of structural members and concrete slabs that interrupt inner wythe.
  - 2. Lap dampproofing at least 1/4 inch (6 mm) onto shelf angles supporting veneer.
- D. Where dampproofing interior face of above-grade, exterior concrete and masonry walls, continue dampproofing through intersecting walls by keeping vertical mortar joints at intersection temporarily open or by dampproofing wall before constructing intersecting walls.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF COLD-APPLIED, CUT-BACK-ASPHALT DAMPPROOFING

- A. Unparged Masonry Foundation Walls: Apply primer and two brush or spray coats at not less than 1.25 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.5 L/sq. m) for first coat and 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m) for second coat.
- B. Masonry Backup for Masonry Veneer Assemblies: Apply primer and one brush or spray coat at not less than 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m).
- C. Exterior Face of Inner Wythe of Cavity Walls: Apply primer and one brush or spray coat at not less than 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m).

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF DRAINAGE PANEL

- A. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panels: Install panels, with geotextile facing away from wall substrate, according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use adhesive or another method that does not

penetrate dampproofing. Lap edges and ends of geotextile to maintain continuity. Protect installed molded-sheet drainage panels during subsequent construction.

1. Install before installing drainage panels.

### 3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed insulation drainage panels from damage due to UV light, harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings where panels are subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.
- B. Correct dampproofing that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates, and reapply dampproofing.

END OF SECTION 071113



## SECTION 072100 - THERMAL INSULATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Extruded polystyrene foam-plastic board insulation.
2. Mineral-wool board insulation.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 092900 "Gypsum Board" for sound attenuation blanket used as acoustic insulation.
2. Section 133419 for insulation specified as part of the pre-engineered metal building system.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Installer's Certification: Listing type, manufacturer, and R-value of insulation installed in each element of the building thermal envelope.

1. For blown-in or sprayed fiberglass and cellulosic-fiber loose-fill insulation, indicate initial installed thickness, settled thickness, settled R-value, installed density, coverage area, and number of bags installed.
2. Sign, date, and post the certification in a conspicuous location on Project site.

B. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

C. Research Reports: For foam-plastic insulation, from ICC-ES.

#### 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration due to moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store inside and in a dry location. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.

B. Protect foam-plastic board insulation as follows:

1. Do not expose to sunlight except to necessary extent for period of installation and concealment.
2. Protect against ignition at all times. Do not deliver foam-plastic board materials to Project site until just before installation time.

3. Quickly complete installation and concealment of foam-plastic board insulation in each area of construction.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes less than Class A, 25 and 450 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
- B. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with ASTM E119 or UL 263; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  1. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from listings of another qualified testing agency.
- C. Fire Propagation Characteristics: Passes NFPA 285 testing as part of an approved assembly.
- D. Labeling: Provide identification of mark indicating R-value of each piece of insulation 12 inches (305 mm) and wider in width.
- E. Thermal-Resistance Value (R-Value): R-value as indicated on Drawings in accordance with ASTM C518.

### 2.2 EXTRUDED POLYSTYRENE FOAM-PLASTIC BOARD INSULATION (XPS)

- A. Extruded Polystyrene Board Insulation, Type IV>: ASTM C578, Type IV, 25 psi (173 kPa) minimum compressive strength; unfaced, ship-lap or tongue-and-groove edges. Applies to foundation conditions. Manufacturers:
  1. DiversiFoam Products.
  2. Dow Chemical Company (The).
  3. Kingspan Insulation Limited.
  4. Owens Corning.
- B. Mineral-Wool Board Insulation, Type IVB: ASTM C612, Type IVB; unfaced.
  1. Nominal Density: 8 lb/cu. ft. (128 kg/cu. m).

### 2.3 INSULATION FASTENERS

- A. Adhesively Attached, Spindle-Type Anchors: Plate welded to projecting spindle; capable of holding insulation of specified thickness securely in position with self-locking washer in place.
  1. Plate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch (0.762 mm) thick by 2 inches (50 mm) square.
  2. Spindle: Copper-coated, low-carbon steel; fully annealed; 0.105 inch (2.67 mm) in diameter; length to suit depth of insulation.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of substances that are harmful to insulation, including removing projections capable of puncturing insulation or vapor retarders, or those that interfere with insulation attachment.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products, applications and applicable codes.
- B. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed to ice, rain, or snow at any time.
- C. Install insulation with manufacturer's R-value label exposed after insulation is installed.
- D. Extend insulation to envelop entire area to be insulated. Fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.
- E. Provide sizes to fit applications and selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths. Apply single layer of insulation units unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness or to achieve R-value.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF SLAB INSULATION

- A. On vertical slab edge and foundation surfaces, set insulation units using manufacturer's recommended adhesive in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. If not otherwise indicated, extend insulation a minimum of 24 inches (610 mm) below exterior grade line.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF FOUNDATION WALL INSULATION

- A. Butt panels together for tight fit.
- B. Anchor Installation: Install board insulation on concrete substrates by adhesively attached, spindle-type insulation anchors as follows:
  - 1. Fasten insulation anchors to concrete substrates with insulation anchor adhesive in accordance with anchor manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Space anchors in accordance with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for insulation type, thickness, and application.
  - 3. Apply insulation standoffs to each spindle to create cavity width indicated on Drawings between concrete substrate and insulation.

4. After adhesive has dried, install board insulation by pressing insulation into position over spindles and securing it tightly in place with insulation-retaining washers, taking care not to compress insulation.
  5. Where insulation will not be covered by other building materials, apply capped washers to tips of spindles.
- C. Adhesive Installation: Install with adhesive or press into tacky waterproofing or dampproofing in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF INSULATION IN FRAMED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Blanket Insulation: Install in cavities formed by framing members in accordance with the following requirements:
1. Use insulation widths and lengths that fill the cavities formed by framing members. If more than one length is required to fill the cavities, provide lengths that will produce a snug fit between ends.
  2. Place insulation in cavities formed by framing members to produce a friction fit between edges of insulation and adjoining framing members.
  3. Maintain 3-inch (76-mm) clearance of insulation around recessed lighting fixtures not rated for or protected from contact with insulation.
  4. For metal-framed wall cavities where cavity heights exceed 96 inches (2438 mm), support unfaced blankets mechanically and support faced blankets by taping flanges of insulation to flanges of metal studs.
- B. Miscellaneous Voids: Install insulation in miscellaneous voids and cavity spaces where required to prevent gaps in insulation using the following materials:
1. Mineral Wool Insulation).

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF BOARD INSULATION

- A. Install board insulation in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions per project applications and conditions.

### 3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed insulation from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes.
- B. Provide temporary coverings or enclosures where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.

END OF SECTION 072100

## SECTION 072726 - FLUID-APPLIED MEMBRANE AIR BARRIERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. High-build air barriers, vapor permeable.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 061600 "Sheathing" for wall sheathings and wall sheathing joint-and-penetration treatments.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Air-Barrier Accessory: A transitional component of the air barrier that provides continuity.
- B. Air-Barrier Assembly: The collection of air-barrier materials and accessories applied to an opaque wall, including joints and junctions to abutting construction, to control air movement through the wall.
- C. Air-Barrier Material: A primary element that provides a continuous barrier to the movement of air.

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Review air-barrier requirements and installation, special details, mockups, air-leakage and bond testing, air-barrier protection, and work scheduling that covers air barriers.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include manufacturer's written instructions for evaluating, preparing, and treating each substrate; technical data; dry film thickness; and tested physical and performance properties of products.
  - 1. High-build air barriers, vapor permeable.
- B. Shop Drawings: For air-barrier assemblies.
  - 1. Show locations and extent of air-barrier materials, accessories, and assemblies specific to Project conditions.
  - 2. Include details for substrate joints and cracks, counterflashing strips, penetrations, inside and outside corners, terminations, and tie-ins with adjoining construction.
  - 3. Include details of interfaces with other materials that form part of air barrier.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Certificates: From air-barrier manufacturer, certifying compatibility of air barriers and accessory materials with Project materials that connect to or that come in contact with the barrier.
- C. Product Test Reports: For each air-barrier assembly, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.
  - 1. Installer to be licensed by ABAA in accordance with ABAA's Quality Assurance Program and to employ ABAA-certified installers and supervisors on Project.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Remove and replace liquid materials that cannot be applied within their stated shelf life.
- B. Protect stored materials from direct sunlight.

## 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Apply air barrier within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended in writing by air-barrier manufacturer.
  - 1. Protect substrates from environmental conditions that affect air-barrier performance.
  - 2. Do not apply air barrier to a damp or wet substrate or during snow, rain, fog, or mist.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain primary air-barrier materials and air-barrier accessories from single manufacturer.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Air-Barrier Performance: Air-barrier assembly and seals with adjacent construction to be capable of performing as a continuous air barrier and as a liquid-water drainage plane flashed to discharge to the exterior incidental condensation or water penetration. Air-barrier assemblies to be capable of accommodating substrate movement and of sealing substrate expansion and control joints,

construction material changes, penetrations, and transitions at perimeter conditions without deterioration and air leakage exceeding specified limits.

- B. Air-Barrier Assembly Air Leakage: Maximum 0.04 cfm/sq. ft. of surface area at 1.57 lbf/sq. ft. (0.2 L/s x sq. m of surface area at 75 Pa), when tested in accordance with ASTM E2357.

## 2.3 HIGH-BUILD AIR BARRIERS, VAPOR PERMEABLE

- A. High-Build, Vapor-Permeable Air Barrier, Synthetic Polymer Type: Synthetic polymer membrane with an installed dry film thickness, according to manufacturer's written instructions, of 35 mils (0.9 mm) or thicker over smooth, void-free substrates.
  - 1. Soprema: LM 204 VP
  - 2. Polyguard Airluk STPE WRB Spray & Roll
  - 3. Dupont Tyvek Fluid Applied WB+
  - 4. Carlisle Coatings and Waterproofing VP
  - 5. Grace Perma-A-Barrier VPL 50 Membrane
- B. Vapor Permeance: Minimum 5 perms (290 ng/Pa x s x sq. m); ASTM E96/E96M, Procedure A, Desiccant Method.

## 2.4 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Provide primers, transition strips, termination strips, joint reinforcing fabric and strips, joint sealants, counterflashing strips, flashing sheets and metal termination bars, termination mastic, substrate patching materials, adhesives, tapes, foam sealants, lap sealants, and other accessory materials that are recommended in writing by air-barrier manufacturer to produce a complete air-barrier assembly and that are compatible with primary air-barrier material and adjacent construction to which they may seal.
- B. Primer: Liquid waterborne primer recommended for substrate by air-barrier material manufacturer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Verify that substrates are sound and free of oil, grease, dirt, excess mortar, or other contaminants.
  - 2. Verify that substrates have cured and aged for minimum time recommended in writing by air-barrier manufacturer.
  - 3. Verify that substrates are visibly dry and free of moisture.
  - 4. Verify that masonry joints are flush and completely filled with mortar.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. Clean, prepare, treat, fill, and seal substrate and joints and cracks in substrate in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and details. Provide clean, dust-free, and dry substrate for air-barrier application.
- B. Mask off adjoining surfaces not covered by air barrier to prevent spillage and overspray affecting other construction.
- C. Remove grease, oil, bitumen, form-release agents, paints, curing compounds, and other penetrating contaminants or film-forming coatings from concrete.
- D. Remove fins, ridges, mortar, and other projections and fill honeycomb, aggregate pockets, holes, and other voids in concrete with substrate-patching material.
- E. Remove excess mortar from masonry ties, shelf angles, and other obstructions.
- F. At changes in substrate plane, apply sealant or termination mastic beads at sharp corners and edges to form a smooth transition from one plane to another.
- G. Cover gaps in substrate plane and form a smooth transition from one substrate plane to another with stainless steel sheet mechanically fastened to structural framing to provide continuous support for air barrier.
- H. Bridge isolation joints expansion joints, and discontinuous wall-to-wall, deck-to-wall, and deck-to-deck joints with air-barrier accessory material that accommodates joint movement in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and details.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF ACCESSORIES

- A. Install accessory materials in accordance with air-barrier manufacturer's written instructions and details to form a seal with adjacent construction and ensure continuity of air and water barrier.
  - 1. Coordinate the installation of air barrier with installation of roofing membrane and base flashing to ensure continuity of air barrier with roofing membrane.
  - 2. Install transition strip on roofing membrane or base flashing so that a minimum of 3 inches (75 mm) of coverage is achieved over each substrate.
  - 3. Unless manufacturer recommends in writing against priming, apply primer to substrates at required rate and allow it to dry.
  - 4. Apply primer to substrates at required rate and allow it to dry. Limit priming to areas that will be covered by air-barrier material on same day. Reprime areas exposed for more than 24 hours.
- B. Connect and seal exterior wall air-barrier material continuously to roofing-membrane air barrier, concrete below-grade structures, floor-to-floor construction, exterior glazing and window systems, glazed curtain-wall systems, storefront systems, exterior louvers, exterior door framing, and other construction used in exterior wall openings, using accessory materials.
- C. At end of each working day, seal top edge of strips and transition strips to substrate with termination mastic.



- D. Apply joint sealants forming part of air-barrier assembly within manufacturer's recommended application temperature ranges. Consult manufacturer when sealant cannot be applied within these temperature ranges.
- E. Wall Openings: Prime concealed, perimeter frame surfaces of windows, curtain walls, storefronts, and doors. Apply transition strip so that a minimum of 3 inches (75 mm) of coverage is achieved over each substrate. Maintain 3 inches (75 mm) of full contact over firm bearing to perimeter frames, with not less than 1 inch (25 mm) of full contact.
  - 1. Transition Strip: Roll firmly to enhance adhesion.
- F. Fill gaps in perimeter frame surfaces of windows, curtain walls, storefronts, and doors, and miscellaneous penetrations of air-barrier material with foam sealant.
- G. Seal strips and transition strips around masonry reinforcing or ties and penetrations with termination mastic.
- H. Seal top of through-wall flashings to air barrier with an additional 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide, transition strip.
- I. Seal exposed edges of strips at seams, cuts, penetrations, and terminations not concealed by metal counterflashings or ending in reglets with termination mastic.
- J. Repair punctures, voids, and deficient lapped seams in strips and transition strips. Slit and flatten fishmouths and blisters. Patch with transition strips extending 6 inches (150 mm) beyond repaired areas in strip direction.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF PRIMARY AIR-BARRIER MATERIAL

- A. Apply air-barrier material to form a seal with strips and transition strips and to achieve a continuous air barrier in accordance with air-barrier manufacturer's written instructions and details. Apply air-barrier material within manufacturer's recommended application temperature ranges.
  - 1. Unless manufacturer recommends in writing against priming, apply primer to substrates at required rate and allow it to dry.
  - 2. Limit priming to areas that will be covered by air-barrier material on same day. Reprime areas exposed for more than 24 hours.
  - 3. Where multiple prime coats are needed to achieve required bond, allow adequate drying time between coats.
- B. High-Build Air Barriers: Apply continuous unbroken air-barrier material to substrates according to the following thickness. Apply air-barrier material in full contact around protrusions such as masonry ties.
  - 1. Vapor-Permeable, High-Build Air Barrier: Total dry film thickness as recommended in writing by manufacturer to comply with performance requirements, but not less than 35 mils (0.9 mm), applied in one or more equal coats.
- C. Do not cover air barrier until it has been tested and inspected by testing agency.

- D. Correct deficiencies in or remove air barrier that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates and reapply air-barrier components.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. ABAA Quality Assurance Program: Perform examinations, preparation, installation, testing, and inspections under ABAA's Quality Assurance Program.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Inspections: Air-barrier materials, accessories, and installation are subject to inspection for compliance with requirements. Inspections may include the following:
  - 1. Continuity of air-barrier system has been achieved throughout the building envelope with no gaps or holes.
  - 2. Air-barrier dry film thickness.
  - 3. Continuous structural support of air-barrier system has been provided.
  - 4. Masonry and concrete surfaces are smooth, clean, and free of cavities, protrusions, and mortar droppings.
  - 5. Site conditions for application temperature and dryness of substrates have been maintained.
  - 6. Maximum exposure time of materials to UV deterioration has not been exceeded.
  - 7. Surfaces have been primed, if applicable.
  - 8. Laps in strips and transition strips have complied with minimum requirements and have been shingled in the correct direction (or mastic has been applied on exposed edges), with no fishmouths.
  - 9. Termination mastic has been applied on cut edges.
  - 10. Strips and transition strips have been firmly adhered to substrate.
  - 11. Compatible materials have been used.
  - 12. Transitions at changes in direction and structural support at gaps have been provided.
  - 13. Connections between assemblies (air-barrier and sealants) have complied with requirements for cleanliness, surface preparation and priming, structural support, integrity, and continuity of seal.
  - 14. All penetrations have been sealed.
- D. Tests: As determined by testing agency from among the following tests:
  - 1. Air-Leakage-Location Testing: Air-barrier assemblies will be tested for evidence of air leakage in accordance with ASTM E1186, chamber pressurization or depressurization with smoke tracers.
  - 2. Adhesion Testing: Air-barrier assemblies will be tested for required adhesion to substrate in accordance with ASTM D4541 for each 600 sq. ft. (56 sq. m) of installed air barrier or part thereof.
- E. Air barriers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
  - 1. Apply additional air-barrier material, in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions, where inspection results indicate insufficient thickness.
  - 2. Remove and replace deficient air-barrier components for retesting as specified above.
- F. Repair damage to air barriers caused by testing; follow manufacturer's written instructions.

- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Protect air-barrier system from damage during application and remainder of construction period, in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Protect air barrier from exposure to UV light and harmful weather exposure as recommended in writing by manufacturer. If exposed to these conditions for longer than recommended, remove and replace air barrier or install additional, full-thickness, air-barrier application after repairing and preparing the overexposed materials in accordance with air-barrier manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Protect air barrier from contact with incompatible materials and sealants not approved by air-barrier manufacturer.
- B. Clean spills, stains, and soiling from construction that would be exposed in the completed work using cleaning agents and procedures recommended in writing by manufacturer of affected construction.
- C. Remove masking materials after installation.

END OF SECTION 072726

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 076200 - SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes: Custom flashing and trim fabrications, made from the following:
  - 1. Sheet metal materials.
  - 2. Miscellaneous materials.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking.
  - 2. Section 042000 "Unit Masonry" for materials and installation of manufactured sheet metal through-wall flashing and trim integral with masonry.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For sheet metal flashing and trim.
  - 1. Plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
  - 2. Fabrication and installation layouts, expansion-joint locations, and keyed details. Distinguish between shop- and field-assembled Work.
  - 3. Identification of material, thickness, weight, and finish for each item and location in Project.
  - 4. Details for forming, including profiles, shapes, seams, and dimensions.
  - 5. Details for joining, supporting, and securing, including layout and spacing of fasteners, cleats, clips, and other attachments. Include pattern of seams.
  - 6. Details of termination points and assemblies.
  - 7. Details of expansion joints and expansion-joint covers, including showing direction of expansion and contraction from fixed points.
  - 8. Details of edge conditions, including eaves, ridges, valleys, rakes, crickets, flashings, and counterflashings.
  - 9. Details of special conditions.
  - 10. Details of connections to adjoining work.
  - 11. Formed flashing and trim at scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches (1:10).
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, 12 inches (300 mm) long by actual width.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For sheet metal flashing and trim, and its accessories.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Entity that employs skilled workers who custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim similar to that required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store sheet metal flashing and trim materials in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.
  - 1. Store sheet metal flashing and trim materials away from uncured concrete and masonry.
  - 2. Protect stored sheet metal flashing and trim from contact with water.
- B. Protect strippable protective covering on sheet metal flashing and trim from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for period of sheet metal flashing and trim installation.

#### 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim layout and seams with sizes and locations of penetrations to be flashed, and joints and seams in adjacent materials.
- B. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim installation with adjoining roofing and wall materials, joints, and seams to provide leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

#### 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty on Finishes: Manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace sheet metal flashing and trim that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
    - a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested in accordance with ASTM D2244.
    - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested in accordance with ASTM D4214.
    - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
  - 2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Sheet metal flashing and trim assemblies, including cleats, anchors, and fasteners, are to withstand wind loads, structural movement, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without

failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Completed sheet metal flashing and trim are not to rattle, leak, or loosen, and are to remain watertight.

- B. Sheet Metal Standard for Flashing and Trim: Comply with NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing Manual: Architectural Metal Flashing, Condensation and Air Leakage Control, and Reroofing" requirements for dimensions and profiles shown unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- C. SPRI Wind Design Standard: Manufacture and install roof edge flashings and copings tested in accordance with ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1 and capable of resisting the following design pressure:
  - 1. Design Pressure: As indicated on Drawings.
- D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
  - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

## 2.2 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. Protect mechanical and other finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying strippable, temporary protective film before shipping.
- B. Aluminum Sheet: Coil-coated sheet, ASTM B209/B209M, alloy as standard with manufacturer, with temper as required to suit forming operations and structural performance required.
  - 1. Thickness: 0.040 inch (1.02 mm).
  - 2. Surface: Smooth, flat.
  - 3. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:
    - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 2605. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
  - 4. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  - 5. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil (0.013 mm).

## 2.3 UNDERLAYMENT

- A. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet Underlayment: Provide self-adhering, cold-applied, sheet underlayment, a minimum of 30 mils (0.76 mm) thick, specifically designed to withstand high metal temperatures beneath metal roofing. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
  - 1. Thermal Stability: Stable after testing at 240 deg F (116 deg C); ASTM D1970/D1970M.

2. Low-Temperature Flexibility: Passes after testing at minus 20 deg F (minus 29 deg C) or lower; ASTM D1970/D1970M.
3. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Carlisle
  - b. Metal-Fab Manufacturing
  - c. Owens Corning

## 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Provide materials and types of fasteners, solder, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for complete sheet metal flashing and trim installation and as recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Fasteners: Wood screws, annular threaded nails, self-tapping screws, self-locking rivets and bolts, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads and recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item.
  1. General: Blind fasteners or self-drilling screws, gasketed, with hex-washer head.
    - a. Exposed Fasteners: Heads matching color of sheet metal using plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide metal-backed EPDM or PVC sealing washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of metal.
    - b. Blind Fasteners: High-strength aluminum or stainless steel rivets suitable for metal being fastened.
    - c. Spikes and Ferrules: Same material as gutter; with spike with ferrule matching internal gutter width.
  2. Fasteners for Aluminum Sheet: Aluminum or Series 300 stainless steel.
- C. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2 inch (13 mm) wide and 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick.
- D. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C920, elastomeric polyurethane polymer sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.
- E. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for hooked-type expansion joints with limited movement.
- F. Epoxy Seam Sealer: Two-part, noncorrosive, aluminum seam-cementing compound, recommended by aluminum manufacturer for exterior nonmoving joints, including riveted joints.
- G. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion in accordance with ASTM D1187/D1187M.



- H. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D4586/D4586M, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.
- I. Reglets: Units of type, material, and profile required, formed to provide secure interlocking of separate reglet and counterflashing pieces, and compatible with flashing indicated with factory-mitered and -welded corners and junctions.
  - 1. Material: Aluminum, 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick.
  - 2. Surface-Mounted Type: Provide with slotted holes for fastening to substrate, with neoprene or other suitable weatherproofing washers, and with channel for sealant at top edge.
  - 3. Masonry Type: Provide with offset top flange for embedment in masonry mortar joint.
  - 4. Accessories:
    - a. Flexible-Flashing Retainer: Provide resilient plastic or rubber accessory to secure flexible flashing in reglet where clearance does not permit use of standard metal counterflashing or where Drawings show reglet without metal counterflashing.
    - b. Counterflashing Wind-Restraint Clips: Provide clips to be installed before counterflashing to prevent wind uplift of counterflashing's lower edge.
  - 5. Finish: With manufacturer's standard color coating.

## 2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with details indicated and recommendations in cited sheet metal standard that apply to design, dimensions, geometry, metal thickness, and other characteristics of item required.
  - 1. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in shop to greatest extent possible.
  - 2. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in thickness or weight needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than that specified for each application and metal.
  - 3. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered and obtain field measurements for accurate fit before shop fabrication.
  - 4. Form sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates without excessive oil-canning, buckling, and tool marks; true to line, levels, and slopes; and with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
  - 5. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Do not use exposed fasteners on faces exposed to view.
- B. Fabrication Tolerances:
  - 1. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that is capable of installation to a tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 ft. (6 mm in 6 m) on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within 1/8-inch (3-mm) offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.
  - 2. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that is capable of installation to tolerances specified.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Form metal for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim.
  - 1. Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch (25 mm) deep, filled with butyl sealant concealed within joints.
  - 2. Use lapped expansion joints only where indicated on Drawings.

- D. Sealant Joints: Where movable, nonexpansion-type joints are required, form metal in accordance with cited sheet metal standard to provide for proper installation of elastomeric sealant.
- E. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal.
- F. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices of sizes as recommended by cited sheet metal standard for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.
- G. Seams:
  - 1. Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
  - 2. Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with elastomeric sealant unless otherwise recommended by sealant manufacturer for intended use.
  - 3. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer.
- H. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.

## 2.6 ROOF-DRAINAGE SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Hanging Gutters:
  - 1. Fabricate to cross section required, complete with end pieces, outlet tubes, and other accessories as required.
  - 2. Fabricate in minimum 96-inch- (2400-mm-) long sections.
  - 3. Furnish flat-stock gutter brackets and flat-stock gutter spacers and straps fabricated from same metal as gutters, of size recommended by cited sheet metal standard, but with thickness not less than twice the gutter thickness.
  - 4. Fabricate expansion joints, expansion-joint covers, and gutter accessories from same metal as gutters. Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners.
  - 5. Gutter Profile: Style D in accordance with cited sheet metal standard.
  - 6. Expansion Joints: Lap type.
  - 7. Accessories: Wire-ball downspout strainer.
  - 8. Fabricate from the following materials:
    - a. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.028 inch thick.
- B. Downspouts: Fabricate rectangular downspouts to dimensions indicated on Drawings, complete with mitered elbows. Furnish with metal hangers from same material as downspouts and anchors.
  - 1. Fabricated Hanger Style: Fig. 1-35A in accordance with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual."
  - 2. Fabricate from the following materials:
    - a. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.028 inch thick.

## 2.7 LOW-SLOPE ROOF SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Roof Edge Flashing (Gravel Stop) and Fascia Cap: Fabricate in minimum 96-inch- (2400-mm-) long, but not exceeding 12 ft. (3.6 m) long sections. Furnish with 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide, joint cover plates.
  - 1. Joint Style: Butted with expansion space and 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide, concealed backup plate.
  - 2. Fabricate from the following materials:
    - a. Aluminum: 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) thick.
- B. Base Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
  - 1. Aluminum: 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) thick.
- C. Counterflashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
  - 1. Aluminum: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.
- D. Flashing Receivers: Fabricate from the following materials:
  - 1. Aluminum: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.
- E. Roof-Penetration Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
  - 1. Stainless Steel: 0.0188 inch (0.477 mm) thick.
- F. Roof-Drain Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
  - 1. Stainless Steel: 0.0156 inch (0.396 mm) thick.

## 2.8 WALL SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Through-Wall Flashing: Fabricate continuous flashings in minimum 96-inch- (2400-mm-) long, but not exceeding 12 ft. (3.6 m) long, sections, under copings, and at shelf angles. Fabricate discontinuous lintel, sill, and similar flashings to extend 6 inches (150 mm) beyond each side of wall openings; and form with 2-inch- (50-mm-) high, end dams. Fabricate from the following materials:
  - 1. Stainless Steel: 0.0156 inch (0.396 mm) thick.

## 2.9 MISCELLANEOUS SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Equipment Support Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
  - 1. Stainless Steel: 0.0188 inch (0.477 mm) thick.
- B. Overhead-Piping Safety Pans: Fabricate from the following materials:
  - 1. Stainless Steel: 0.0250 inch (0.635 mm) thick.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Verify compliance with requirements for installation tolerances of substrates.
  - 2. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
  - 3. Verify that air- or water-resistant barriers have been installed over substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF UNDERLAYMENT

- A. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet Underlayment:
  - 1. Install self-adhering, high-temperature sheet underlayment; wrinkle free.
  - 2. Prime substrate if recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
  - 3. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation; use primer for installing underlayment at low temperatures.
  - 4. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with end laps of not less than 6 inches (150 mm) staggered 24 inches (600 mm) between courses.
  - 5. Overlap side edges not less than 3-1/2 inches (90 mm). Roll laps and edges with roller.
  - 6. Roll laps and edges with roller.
  - 7. Cover underlayment within 14 days.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM, GENERAL

- A. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with details indicated and recommendations of cited sheet metal standard that apply to installation characteristics required unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
  - 1. Install fasteners, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete sheet metal flashing and trim system.
  - 2. Install sheet metal flashing and trim true to line, levels, and slopes. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of sealant.
  - 3. Anchor sheet metal flashing and trim and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
  - 4. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance.
  - 5. Install continuous cleats with fasteners spaced not more than 12 inches (300 mm) o.c.
  - 6. Space individual cleats not more than 12 inches (300 mm) apart. Attach each cleat with at least two fasteners. Bend tabs over fasteners.
  - 7. Install exposed sheet metal flashing and trim with limited oil-canning, and free of buckling and tool marks.

8. Do not field cut sheet metal flashing and trim by torch.
  9. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.
- B. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other, or where metal contacts pressure-treated wood or other corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action or corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by sheet metal manufacturer or cited sheet metal standard.
1. Coat concealed side of uncoated-aluminum sheet metal flashing and trim with bituminous coating where flashing and trim contact wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
  2. Underlayment: Where installing sheet metal flashing and trim directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install underlayment and cover with slip sheet.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim.
1. Space movement joints at maximum of 10 ft. (3 m) with no joints within 24 inches (600 mm) of corner or intersection.
  2. Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch (25 mm) deep, filled with sealant concealed within joints.
  3. Use lapped expansion joints only where indicated on Drawings.
- D. Fasteners: Use fastener sizes that penetrate wood blocking or sheathing not less than 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) for nails and not less than 3/4 inch (19 mm) for wood screws.
- E. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible in exposed work and locate to minimize possibility of leakage. Cover and seal fasteners and anchors as required for a tight installation.
- F. Seal joints as required for watertight construction.
1. Use sealant-filled joints unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Embed hooked flanges of joint members not less than 1 inch (25 mm) into sealant.
    - b. Form joints to completely conceal sealant.
    - c. When ambient temperature at time of installation is between 40 and 70 deg F (4 and 21 deg C), set joint members for 50 percent movement each way.
    - d. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures.
      - 1) Do not install sealant-type joints at temperatures below 40 deg F (4 deg C).
  2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF ROOF-DRAINAGE SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Install sheet metal roof-drainage items to produce complete roof-drainage system in accordance with cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Coordinate installation of roof perimeter flashing with installation of roof-drainage system.
- B. Hanging Gutters:

1. Join sections with joints sealed with sealant.
2. Provide for thermal expansion.
3. Attach gutters at eave or fascia to firmly anchor them in position.
4. Provide end closures and seal watertight with sealant.
5. Slope to downspouts.
6. Fasten gutter spacers to front and back of gutter.
7. Anchor back of gutter that extends onto roof deck with cleats spaced not more than 24 inches (600 mm) apart.
8. Anchor gutter with gutter brackets spaced not more than 24 inches (600 mm) apart to roof deck unless otherwise indicated, and loosely lock to front gutter bead.
9. Install gutter with expansion joints at locations indicated on Drawings, but not exceeding, 50 ft. (15.2 m) apart. Install expansion-joint caps.

C. Downspouts:

1. Join sections with 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) telescoping joints.
2. Provide hangers with fasteners designed to hold downspouts securely to walls.
3. Locate hangers at top and bottom and at approximately 60 inches (1500 mm) o.c.
4. Provide elbows at base of downspout to direct water away from building.
5. Connect downspouts to underground drainage system.

D. Conductor Heads: Anchor securely to wall, with elevation of conductor head rim at minimum of 1 inch (25 mm) below scupper discharge.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF MISCELLANEOUS SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

A. Equipment Support Flashing:

1. Coordinate installation of equipment support flashing with installation of roofing and equipment.
2. Weld or seal flashing with elastomeric sealant to equipment support member.

B. Overhead-Piping Safety Pans:

1. Suspend pans from structure above, independent of other overhead items such as equipment, piping, and conduit, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
2. Pipe and install drain line to plumbing waste or drainage system.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Shim and align sheet metal flashing and trim within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 ft. (6 mm in 6 m) on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within 1/8-inch (3-mm) offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

### 3.7 CLEANING

- A. Clean and neutralize flux materials. Clean off excess solder.
- B. Clean off excess sealants.

### 3.8 PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as sheet metal flashing and trim are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. On completion of sheet metal flashing and trim installation, remove unused materials and clean finished surfaces as recommended in writing by sheet metal flashing and trim manufacturer.
- C. Maintain sheet metal flashing and trim in clean condition during construction.
- D. Replace sheet metal flashing and trim that have been damaged or that have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures, as determined by Architect.

END OF SECTION 076200

This page intentionally left blank.



## SECTION 077253 - SNOW GUARDS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Rail-type, seam-mounted snow guards.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
  - 1. Rail-type, seam-mounted snow guards.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include roof plans showing layouts and attachment details of snow guards.
  - 1. Include details of rail-type snow guards.
- C. Delegated Design Submittals: For snow guards, include analysis reports signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  - 1. Include calculation of number and location of snow guards.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For professional engineer's experience with providing delegated design engineering services of the kind indicated, including documentation that the engineer is licensed in the jurisdiction in which the Project is located.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each type of snow guard, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency, indicating load at failure of attachment to roof system identical to roof system used on this Project.

#### 1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit adhesive-mounted snow guards to be installed, and adhesive cured, according to adhesive manufacturer's written instructions.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design snow guards, including attachment to roofing material and roof deck, as applicable for attachment method, based on the following:
1. Roof snow load.
  2. Snow drifting
  3. Roof slope.
  4. Roof type.
  5. Roof dimensions.
  6. Roofing substrate type and thickness.
  7. Snow guard type.
  8. Snow guard fastening method and strength.
  9. Snow guard spacing.
  10. Coefficient of Friction Between Snow and Roof Surface: 0.
  11. Factor of Safety: 2.
- B. Performance Requirements: Provide snow guards that withstand exposure to weather and resist thermally induced movement without failure, rattling, or fastener disengagement due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.
- C. Structural Performance: Snow guards to withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated.
1. Snow Loads: As indicated on Drawings.

### 2.2 RAIL-TYPE SNOW GUARDS

- A. Rail-Type, Seam-Mounted Snow Guards:
1. Description: Snow guard rails fabricated from metal pipes, bars, or extrusions, anchored to brackets and equipped with one rail with integral track to accept color-matching inserts of material and finish used for metal roof.
  2. Brackets and Baseplate: ASTM B209 (ASTM B209M) aluminum; clear anodized.
  3. Bars: ASTM B221 (ASTM B221M) aluminum, clear anodized.
    - a. Profile: Square with integral track to accept color-matching inserts of material and finish used for metal roof.
  4. Seam Clamps: ASTM B221 (ASTM B221M) aluminum extrusion or ASTM B85/B85M aluminum casting with stainless steel set screws incorporating round nonpenetrating point; designed for use with applicable roofing system to which clamp is attached.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, snow guard attachment, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install snow guards according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Space rows as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Attachment for Standing-Seam Metal Roofing:
  - 1. Do not use fasteners that will penetrate metal roofing or fastening methods that void metal roofing finish warranty.
  - 2. Rail-Type, Seam-Mounted Snow Guards:
    - a. Install brackets to vertical ribs in straight rows.
    - b. Secure with stainless steel set screws, incorporating round nonpenetrating point, on same side of standing seam.
    - c. Torque set screw in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
    - d. Install cross members to brackets.

END OF SECTION 077253

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 078413 - PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Penetration firestopping systems.
2. Penetrations in fire-resistance-rated walls.
3. Penetrations in horizontal assemblies.
4. Penetrations in smoke barriers.
5. Exposed penetration firestopping systems.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 078443 "Joint Firestopping" for joints in or between fire-resistance-rated construction, at exterior curtain-wall/floor intersections, and in smoke barriers.
2. Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for non-fire-resistance-rated joint sealants.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Unlisted Firestopping Systems: Obtain an Engineering Judgment (EJ) from firestopping manufacturer where no UL, FM Approvals, or other listed assembly is available for particular firestop configuration. Follow International Firestop Council (IFC) recommended guidelines for evaluating firestopping systems in EJs.

C. Product Schedule: For each penetration firestopping system. Include location, illustration of firestopping system, and design designation of qualified testing and inspecting agency.

1. Engineering Judgments: Where Project conditions require modification to a qualified testing and inspecting agency's illustration for a particular penetration firestopping system, submit illustration, with modifications marked, approved by penetration firestopping system manufacturer's fire-protection engineer as an engineering judgment or equivalent fire-resistance-rated assembly developed in accordance with current International Firestop Council (IFC) guidelines. Obtain approval of authorities having jurisdiction prior to submittal.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

B. Listed System Designs: For each penetration firestopping system, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Installer Certificates: From Installer indicating that penetration firestopping systems have been installed in compliance with requirements and manufacturer's written instructions.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Entity that has received UL's "Firestop Movement Certification," which demonstrates that manufacturer's firestopping products designated with M-Ratings are based on exposure to cyclic movement and UL 1479 fire test evaluation when tested in accordance with ASTM E3037.

#### 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install penetration firestopping systems when ambient or substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by penetration firestopping system manufacturers or when substrates are wet because of rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
- B. Install and cure penetration firestopping system materials in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions using natural means of ventilations or, where this is inadequate, forced-air circulation.

#### 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate construction of openings and penetrating items to ensure that penetration firestopping systems can be accessed and installed in accordance with specified firestopping system design.
- B. Coordinate sizing of sleeves, openings, core-drilled holes, or cut openings to accommodate penetration firestopping systems.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain penetration firestopping systems for each type of opening indicated from single manufacturer.

#### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics:
  - 1. A qualified testing agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, will perform penetration firestopping system tests.
  - 2. Test in accordance with testing standards referenced in "Penetration Firestopping Systems" Article. Provide rated systems complying with the following requirements:

- a. Penetration firestopping systems installed with products bearing the classification marking of a qualified testing agency.
  - 1) UL in its online directory "Product iQ."
- B. Provide components for each penetration firestopping system that, upon curing, do not re-emulsify, dissolve, leach, break down, or otherwise deteriorate over time from exposure to atmospheric moisture, sweating pipes, ponding water, or other forms of moisture characteristic during and after construction.
- C. Provide components for each penetration firestopping system that do not contain ethylene glycol.
- D. Provide components for each penetration firestopping system that are sufficiently flexible to accommodate movement, such as pipe vibration, water hammer, thermal expansion, and other normal building movement without damage.
- E. Provide components for each penetration firestopping system that are appropriately tested for the thickness and type of insulation utilized.

## 2.3 PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING SYSTEMS

- A. Penetration Firestopping Systems: Systems that resist spread of fire, passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of construction penetrated. Penetration firestopping systems must be compatible with one another, with the substrates forming openings, and with penetrating items if any.
- B. Penetrations in Fire-Resistance-Rated Walls: Penetration firestopping systems with ratings determined in accordance with ASTM E814 or UL 1479.
  - 1. F-Rating: Not less than the fire-resistance rating of the wall penetrated.
  - 2. Membrane Penetrations: Install recessed fixtures such that the required fire resistance will not be reduced.
  - 3. M-Rating: Provide penetration firestopping systems meeting specified F-Rating after being tested in accordance with ASTM E3037.
- C. Exposed Penetration Firestopping Systems: Flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

## 2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Provide components for each penetration firestopping system that are needed to install fill materials and to maintain ratings required. Use only those components specified by penetration firestopping system manufacturer and approved by qualified testing and inspecting agency for conditions indicated, including but not limited to:
  - 1. Permanent forming/damming/backing materials.
  - 2. Substrate primers.
  - 3. Collars.
  - 4. Steel sleeves.

## 2.5 FILL MATERIALS

- A. Cast-in-Place Firestopping Devices: Factory-assembled devices for use in cast-in-place concrete floors and consisting of an outer sleeve lined with an intumescent strip, a flange attached to one end of the sleeve for fastening to concrete formwork, and a neoprene gasket.
- B. Latex Sealants: Single-component latex formulations that do not re-emulsify after cure during exposure to moisture.
- C. Firestopping Devices: Factory-assembled collars formed from galvanized steel and lined with intumescent material sized to fit specific diameter of penetrant.
- D. Intumescent Composite Sheets: Rigid panels consisting of aluminum-foil-faced intumescent elastomeric sheet bonded to galvanized-steel sheet.
- E. Intumescent Putties: Nonhardening, water-resistant, intumescent putties containing no solvents or inorganic fibers.
- F. Intumescent Wrap Strips: Single-component intumescent elastomeric strips for use around combustible penetrants.
- G. Mortars: Prepackaged dry mixes consisting of a blend of inorganic binders, hydraulic cement, fillers and lightweight aggregate formulated for mixing with water at Project site to form a nonshrinking, homogeneous mortar.
- H. Pillows/Bags: Compressible, removable, and reusable intumescent pillows encased in fire-retardant polyester or glass-fiber cloth. Where exposed, and when required by a listed system, cover openings with steel-reinforcing wire mesh to protect pillows/bags from being easily removed or dislodged.
- I. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.
- J. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants.
- K. Thermal and Endothermic Wraps: Flexible, insulating, and fire-resistant protective wraps tested and listed for up to 2-hour fire ratings in accordance with ASTM E814 or UL 1479; for protecting membrane penetrations of utility boxes, critical electrical circuits, communications lines, and fuel lines, and for thermal barrier and circuit integrity protection in accordance with ASTM E1725 or UL 1724.
- L. Fire-Rated Cable Sleeve Kits: Complete kits designed for new or existing cable penetrations through walls which accept standard accessories.
- M. Fire-Rated Cable Pathways: Single or gangable device modules composed of a steel raceway with integral intumescent material and requiring no additional action in the form of plugs, twisting closure, putty, pillows, sealant, or otherwise to achieve fire and air-leakage ratings.
  - 1. Fire-rated cable pathway devices are the preferred product for data, video, and communications cable penetrations. Install these devices in locations where frequent cable moves, add-ons, and changes will occur. Such devices must be:



- a. Capable of retrofit around existing cables.
  - b. Designed so that two or more devices can be ganged together.
  - c. Maintenance-free so no action is required to activate the smoke- and fire-sealing mechanism.
- 2. Where fire-rated cable pathway devices are not practical, openings within walls and floors designed to accommodate data, video, and communications cabling must be provided with re-enterable products specifically designed for retrofit, such as retrofit devices for cable bundles, firestopping putty, plugs, or pillows.
- N. Retrofit Device for Cable Bundles: Factory-made, intumescent, collar-like device for firestopping existing over-filled cable sleeves and capable of being installed around projecting sleeves and cable bundles.
- O. Wall-Opening Protective Materials: Intumescent, non-curing putty pads or self-adhesive inserts for protection of electrical switch and receptacle boxes.
- P. Fire-Rated HVAC Retaining Angles: Steel angle system with integral intumescent firestopping gasket for use around rectangular steel HVAC ducts without fire dampers.
- Q. Firestopping Plugs: Flexible, re-enterable, intumescent, foam-rubber plug for use in blank round openings and cable sleeves.
- R. Fire-Rated Cable Grommet: Molded two-piece grommet made of plenum-grade polymer and foam inner core for sealing small cable penetrations in gypsum walls up to 1/2 inch (13 mm) in diameter.
- S. Closet Flange Gasket: Molded, single-component, flexible, intumescent gasket for use beneath a water closet (toilet) flange in floor applications.

## 2.6 MIXING

- A. Penetration Firestopping Materials: For those products requiring mixing before application, comply with penetration firestopping system manufacturer's written instructions for accurate proportioning of materials, water (if required), type of mixing equipment, selection of mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other items or procedures needed to produce products of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for application indicated.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for opening configurations, penetrating items, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning: Before installing penetration firestopping systems, clean out openings in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and with the following requirements:
  - 1. Remove foreign materials from substrate surfaces that could interfere with adhesion of penetration firestopping materials.
  - 2. Clean opening substrates and penetrating items to produce clean, sound surfaces capable of developing optimum bond with penetration firestopping materials. Remove loose particles remaining from cleaning operation.
  - 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
- B. Prime substrates in accordance with penetration firestopping system manufacturer's written installation instructions, using that manufacturer's recommended products and methods. Confine primers to areas of bond; do not allow spillage and migration onto exposed surfaces.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install penetration firestopping systems in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions and published drawings for products and applications.
- B. Install forming materials and other accessories of types required to support fill materials during their application and in the position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings indicated.
  - 1. After installing fill materials and allowing them to fully cure, remove combustible forming materials and other accessories not forming permanent components of firestopping.
- C. Install fill materials by proven techniques to produce the following results:
  - 1. Fill voids and cavities formed by openings, forming materials, accessories, and penetrating items to achieve required fire-resistance ratings.
  - 2. Apply materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by openings and penetrating items.
  - 3. For fill materials that will remain exposed after completing the Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.

### 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Wall Identification: Permanently label walls containing penetration firestopping systems with the words "FIRE AND/OR SMOKE BARRIER - PROTECT ALL OPENINGS," using lettering not less than 3 inches (76 mm) high and with minimum 0.375-inch (9.5-mm) strokes.
  - 1. Locate in accessible concealed floor, floor-ceiling, or attic space at 15 ft. (4.57 m) from end of wall and at intervals not exceeding 30 ft. (9.14 m).
- B. Penetration Identification: Identify each penetration firestopping system with legible metal or plastic labels. Attach labels permanently to surfaces adjacent to and within 6 inches (150 mm) of penetration firestopping system edge so labels are visible to anyone seeking to remove penetrating

items or firestopping systems. Use mechanical fasteners or self-adhering-type labels with adhesives capable of permanently bonding labels to surfaces on which labels are placed. Include the following information on labels:

1. The words "Warning - Penetration Firestopping - Do Not Disturb. Notify Building Management of Any Damage."
2. Contractor's name, address, and phone number.
3. Designation of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
4. Date of installation.
5. Manufacturer's name.
6. Installer's name.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner will engage a qualified inspection agency to conduct and report on inspections in accordance with ASTM E2174.
- B. Where deficiencies are found or penetration firestopping system is damaged or removed because of testing, repair or replace penetration firestopping system to comply with requirements.
- C. Proceed with enclosing penetration firestopping systems with other construction only after inspection reports are issued and installations comply with requirements.

### 3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean off excess fill materials adjacent to openings as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials that are approved in writing by penetration firestopping system manufacturers and that do not damage materials in which openings occur.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions during and after installation that ensure that penetration firestopping systems are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, immediately cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated penetration firestopping material and install new materials to produce systems complying with specified requirements.

END OF SECTION 078413

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 078443 - JOINT FIRESTOPPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Joints in or between fire-resistance-rated construction.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for penetrations in fire-resistance-rated walls .
  - 2. Section 092216 "Non-Structural Metal Framing" for firestop tracks for metal-framed partition heads.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
  - 1. For each type of product.
- B. Unlisted Firestopping Systems: Obtain an Engineering Judgment (EJ) from firestop manufacturer where no UL, FM Approvals, or other listed assembly is available for particular firestop configuration. Follow International Firestop Council (IFC) recommended guidelines for evaluating firestop systems in EJs.
- C. Product Schedule: For each joint firestopping system. Include location, illustration of firestopping system, and design designation of qualified testing agency.
  - 1. Engineering Judgments: Where Project conditions require modification to a qualified testing agency's illustration for a particular joint firestopping system condition, submit illustration, with modifications marked, approved by joint firestopping system manufacturer's fire-protection engineer as an EJ or equivalent fire-resistance-rated assembly developed in accordance with current IFC guidelines.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Listed System Designs: For each joint firestopping system, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Installer Certificates: From Installer indicating that joint firestopping systems have been installed in compliance with requirements and manufacturer's written installation instructions.

## 1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install joint firestopping systems when ambient or substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by joint firestopping system manufacturers or when substrates are wet due to rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
- B. Install and cure joint firestopping systems in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions using natural means of ventilation or, where this is inadequate, forced-air circulation.

## 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate construction of joints to ensure that joint firestopping systems can be installed in accordance with specified firestopping system design.
- B. Coordinate sizing of joints to accommodate joint firestopping systems.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain joint firestop systems for each type of joint opening indicated from single manufacturer.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics:
  - 1. A qualified testing agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, will perform joint firestopping system tests.
  - 2. Test in accordance with testing standards referenced in "Joint Firestopping Systems" Article. Provide rated systems complying with the following requirements:
    - a. Joint firestop systems installed with products bearing the classification marking of a qualified product certification agency in accordance with listed system designs published by a qualified testing agency.
      - 1) UL in its online directory "Product iQ."
      - 2) Intertek Group in its "Directory of Building Products."
- B. Rain/Water Resistance: For perimeter fire-barrier system applications, where inclement weather or greater-than-transient water exposure is expected, use products that dry rapidly and cure in the presence of atmospheric moisture sufficient to pass ASTM D6904 early rain-resistance test (24-hour exposure).

### 2.3 JOINT FIRESTOPPING SYSTEM TYPES

- A. General: Systems that resist spread of fire, passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of assemblies in or between which joint firestopping systems are

installed. Joint firestopping systems must accommodate building movements without impairing their ability to resist the passage of fire and hot gases.

1. Joint firestopping systems that are compatible with one another, with the substrates forming openings, and with penetrating items, if any.
  2. Provide products that, upon curing, do not re-emulsify, dissolve, leach, break down, or otherwise deteriorate over time from exposure to atmospheric moisture, sweating pipes, ponding water or other forms of moisture.
  3. Provide firestop products that do not contain ethylene glycol.
- B. Joints in or between Fire-Resistance-Rated Construction: Provide joint firestopping systems with ratings determined in accordance with ASTM E1966 or UL 2079, with published L-Ratings for ambient and elevated temperatures as evidence of the ability of the fire-resistive joint system to restrict the movement of smoke.
1. Fire-Resistance Rating: Equal to or exceeding the fire-resistance rating of the wall, floor, or roof in or between which it is installed.

## 2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Provide components of joint firestopping systems, including primers and forming materials, that are needed to install elastomeric fill materials and to maintain ratings required. Use only components specified by joint firestopping system manufacturer and approved by the qualified testing agency for conditions indicated.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configurations, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning: Before installing joint firestopping systems, clean joints in accordance with fire-resistive joint system manufacturer's written installation instructions and the following requirements:
1. Remove foreign materials from substrate surfaces that could interfere with adhesion of elastomeric fill materials or compromise fire-resistive rating.
  2. Clean joint substrates to produce clean, sound surfaces capable of developing optimum bond with elastomeric fill materials. Remove loose particles remaining from cleaning operation.
  3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.

- B. Prime substrates in accordance with joint firestopping system manufacturer's written installation instructions, using that manufacturer's recommended products and methods. Confine primers to areas of bond; do not allow spillage and migration onto exposed surfaces.
- C. Apply a suitable bond breaker to prevent three-sided adhesion in applications where condition occurs.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install joint firestopping systems in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions and published drawings for products and applications indicated.
- B. Install forming materials and other accessories of types required to support elastomeric fill materials during their application and in position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings indicated.
  - 1. After installing elastomeric fill materials and allowing them to fully cure, remove combustible forming materials and other accessories not indicated as permanent components of fire-resistive joint system.
- C. Install elastomeric fill materials for joint firestopping systems by proven techniques to produce the following results:
  - 1. Apply elastomeric fill in voids and cavities formed by joints and forming materials as required to achieve fire-resistance ratings indicated.
  - 2. Apply elastomeric fill materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by joints.
  - 3. For elastomeric fill materials that will remain exposed after completing the Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.

### 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Wall Identification: Permanently label walls containing firestopping systems with the words "FIRE AND/OR SMOKE BARRIER - PROTECT ALL OPENINGS," using lettering not less than 3 inches (76 mm) high and with minimum 0.375-inch (9.5-mm) strokes.
  - 1. Locate in accessible concealed floor, floor-ceiling, or attic space at 15 ft. (4.57 m) from end of wall and at intervals not exceeding 30 ft. (9.14 m).
- B. Joint Identification: Identify joint firestopping systems with legible metal or plastic labels. Attach labels permanently to surfaces adjacent to and within 6 inches (150 mm) of joint edge, so labels are visible to anyone seeking to remove joint firestopping system. Use mechanical fasteners or self-adhering-type labels with adhesives capable of permanently bonding labels to surfaces on which labels are placed. Include the following information on labels:
  - 1. The words "Warning - Joint Firestopping - Do Not Disturb. Notify Building Management of Any Damage."
  - 2. Contractor's name, address, and phone number.
  - 3. Designation of applicable testing agency.
  - 4. Date of installation.



5. Manufacturer's name.
6. Installer's name.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections in accordance with ASTM E2393.
- B. Where deficiencies are found or joint firestopping systems are damaged or removed due to testing, repair or replace joint firestopping systems so they comply with requirements.
- C. Proceed with enclosing joint firestopping systems with other construction only after inspection reports are issued and installations comply with requirements.

### 3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean off excess elastomeric fill materials adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials that are approved in writing by joint firestopping system manufacturers and that do not damage materials in which joints occur.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions during and after installation that ensure joint firestopping systems are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion. If damage or deterioration occurs despite such protection, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated joint firestopping systems immediately and install new materials to produce joint firestopping systems complying with specified requirements.

END OF SECTION 078443

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Nonstaining silicone joint sealants.
  - 2. Mildew-resistant joint sealants.
  - 3. Butyl joint sealants.
  - 4. Latex joint sealants.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
  - 1. Silicone joint sealants.
  - 2. Nonstaining silicone joint sealants.
  - 3. Urethane joint sealants.
  - 4. Mildew-resistant joint sealants.
  - 5. Butyl joint sealants.
  - 6. Latex joint sealants.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's standard color charts consisting of strips of cured sealants showing the full range of colors available for each product exposed to view.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type and color of joint sealant required, provide Samples with joint sealants in 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) wide joints formed between two 6-inch- (150-mm-) long strips of material matching the appearance of exposed surfaces adjacent to joint sealants.
- D. Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:
  - 1. Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
  - 2. Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
  - 3. Joint-sealant formulation.
  - 4. Joint-sealant color.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Preconstruction Laboratory Test Schedule: Include the following information for each joint sealant and substrate material to be tested:
  - 1. Joint-sealant location and designation.
  - 2. Manufacturer and product name.
  - 3. Type of substrate material.
  - 4. Proposed test.
  - 5. Number of samples required.

- B. Preconstruction Laboratory Test Reports: For each joint sealant and substrate material to be tested from sealant manufacturer, indicating the following:
  - 1. Materials forming joint substrates and joint-sealant backings have been tested for compatibility and adhesion with joint sealants.
  - 2. Interpretation of test results and written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation are needed for adhesion.
- C. Preconstruction Field-Adhesion-Test Reports: Indicate which sealants and joint preparation methods resulted in optimum adhesion to joint substrates based on testing specified in "Preconstruction Testing" Article.
- D. Field Quality-Control Reports: For field-adhesion-test reports, for each sealant application tested.
- E. Sample warranties.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Manufacturers' special warranties.
- B. Installer's special warranties.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified in accordance with ASTM C1021 to conduct the testing indicated.

#### 1.6 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Field-Adhesion Testing: Before installing sealants, field test their adhesion to Project joint substrates as follows:
  - 1. Locate test joints where indicated on Project or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
  - 2. Conduct field tests for each kind of sealant and joint substrate.
  - 3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when test joints will be erected.
  - 4. Arrange for tests to take place with joint-sealant manufacturer's technical representative present.
  - 5. Test Method: Test joint sealants in accordance with Method A, Tail Procedure, in ASTM C1521.
    - a. For joints with dissimilar substrates, verify adhesion to each substrate separately; extend cut along one side, verifying adhesion to opposite side. Repeat procedure for opposite side.
  - 6. Report whether sealant failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each kind of product and joint substrate. For sealants that fail adhesively, retest until satisfactory adhesion is obtained.

7. Evaluation of Preconstruction Field-Adhesion-Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing, in absence of other indications of noncompliance with requirements, will be considered satisfactory. Do not use sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing.

## 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
  1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F (5 deg C).
  2. When joint substrates are wet.
  3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
  4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Installer's Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
  1. Warranty Period: five years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to furnish joint sealants to repair or replace those joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
  1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Special warranties specified in this article exclude deterioration or failure of joint sealants from the following:
  1. Movement of the structure caused by stresses on the sealant exceeding sealant manufacturer's written specifications for sealant elongation and compression.
  2. Disintegration of joint substrates from causes exceeding design specifications.
  3. Mechanical damage caused by individuals, tools, or other outside agents.
  4. Changes in sealant appearance caused by accumulation of dirt or other atmospheric contaminants.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain joint sealants from single manufacturer for each sealant type.

## 2.2 JOINT SEALANTS, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
- B. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## 2.3 NONSTAINING SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Nonstaining Joint Sealants: No staining of substrates when tested in accordance with ASTM C1248.
- B. Silicone, Nonstaining, S, NS, 50, NT: Nonstaining, single-component, nonsag, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT.
- C. Silicone, Nonstaining, S, NS, 100/50, T, NT: Nonstaining, single-component, nonsag, plus 100 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, Uses T and NT.

## 2.4 BUTYL JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Butyl-Rubber-Based Joint Sealants: ASTM C1311.
- B. Butyl-Rubber-Based Joint Sealants: ASTM C 1311, US FED Spec TT-S01657.
  - 1. Compound shall be a single-component, gun-grade, curing, butyl-rubber sealant. Cured sealant shall have the following physical properties:
    - a. Elongation: ASTM D412 150%.
    - b. Hardness (Shore A): ASTM D642 40 minutes.
    - c. Shrinkage: TT-S-0011657 <5%.
  - 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Bostik, Inc; Chem-Calk 300 or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Pecora Corporation.

## 2.5 LATEX JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Acrylic Latex: Acrylic latex or siliconized acrylic latex, ASTM C834, Type OP, Grade NF.
- B. For interior use only.
- C. Acrylic Latex: Acrylic latex or siliconized acrylic latex, ASTM C 834, Type OP, Grade NF.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. May National Associates, Inc.; a subsidiary of Sika Corporation.
    - b. Pecora Corporation.
    - c. Tremco Incorporated.

## 2.6 JOINT-SEALANT BACKING

- A. Sealant Backing Material, General: Nonstaining; compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and approved for applications indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.
  - 1. Adfast
  - 2. Alcot Plastics
  - 3. BASF Corporation
  - 4. Construction Foam Products, division of Nomaco
- B. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C1330, Type C (closed-cell material with a surface skin), and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance.

## 2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Primer: Material recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.
- B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way, and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants to joint substrates.
- C. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:

1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
  2. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining after cleaning operations above by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint substrates include the following:
    - a. Concrete.
    - b. Masonry.
    - c. Unglazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
  3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
  4. Clean nonporous joint substrate surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants. Nonporous joint substrates include the following:
    - a. Metal.
    - b. Glass.
    - c. Porcelain enamel.
    - d. Glazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer or as indicated by preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

- A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- C. Install sealant backings of type indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
  1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
  2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
  3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application, and replace them with dry materials.



- D. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and backs of joints.
- E. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
  - 1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
  - 2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
  - 3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- F. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants in accordance with requirements specified in subparagraphs below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
  - 1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
  - 2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
  - 3. Provide concave joint profile in accordance with Figure 8A in ASTM C1193 unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Provide flush joint profile at in accordance with Figure 8B in ASTM C1193.
  - 5. Provide recessed joint configuration of recess depth and at in accordance with Figure 8C in ASTM C1193.
    - a. Use masking tape to protect surfaces adjacent to recessed tooled joints.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Field-Adhesion Testing: Field test joint-sealant adhesion to joint substrates as follows:
    - a. Extent of Testing: Test completed and cured sealant joints as follows:
      - 1) Perform 10 tests for the first 1000 ft. (300 m) of joint length for each kind of sealant and joint substrate.
      - 2) Perform one test for each 1000 ft. (300 m) of joint length thereafter or one test per each floor per elevation.
    - b. Test Method: Test joint sealants in accordance with Method A, Tail Procedure, in ASTM C1521.
      - 1) For joints with dissimilar substrates, verify adhesion to each substrate separately; extend cut along one side, verifying adhesion to opposite side. Repeat procedure for opposite side.
    - c. Inspect tested joints and report on the following:
      - 1) Whether sealants filled joint cavities and are free of voids.

- 2) Whether sealant dimensions and configurations comply with specified requirements.
      - 3) Whether sealants in joints connected to pulled-out portion failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each kind of product and joint substrate. Compare these results to determine if adhesion complies with sealant manufacturer's field-adhesion hand-pull test criteria.
    - d. Record test results in a field-adhesion-test log. Include dates when sealants were installed, names of persons who installed sealants, test dates, test locations, whether joints were primed, adhesion results and percent elongations, sealant material, sealant configuration, and sealant dimensions.
    - e. Repair sealants pulled from test area by applying new sealants following same procedures used originally to seal joints. Ensure that original sealant surfaces are clean and that new sealant contacts original sealant.
  2. Evaluation of Field-Adhesion-Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing or noncompliance with other indicated requirements will be considered satisfactory. Remove sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing or to comply with other requirements. Retest failed applications until test results prove sealants comply with indicated requirements.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

### 3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out, remove, and repair damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

END OF SECTION 079200

## SECTION 081113 - HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Interior standard steel doors and frames.
2. Exterior standard steel doors and frames.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 087100 "Door Hardware" for door hardware for hollow-metal doors.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Minimum Thickness: Minimum thickness of base metal without coatings in accordance with NAAMM-HMMA 803 or ANSI/SDI A250.8.

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate anchorage installation for hollow-metal frames. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- B. Coordinate requirements for installation of door hardware, electrified door hardware, and access control and security systems.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Interior standard steel doors and frames.
2. Exterior standard steel doors and frames.

B. Product Data Submittals: For each product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, core descriptions, fire-resistance ratings, and finishes.

C. Shop Drawings: Include the following:

1. Elevations of each door type.
2. Details of doors, including vertical- and horizontal-edge details and metal thicknesses.
3. Frame details for each frame type, including dimensioned profiles and metal thicknesses.
4. Locations of reinforcement and preparations for hardware.

5. Details of each different wall opening condition.
  6. Details of electrical raceway and preparation for electrified hardware, access control systems, and security systems.
  7. Details of anchorages, joints, field splices, and connections.
  8. Details of accessories.
  9. Details of moldings, removable stops, and glazing.
- D. Product Schedule: For hollow-metal doors and frames, prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on Drawings. Coordinate with final door hardware schedule.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: For each type of fire-rated hollow-metal door and frame assembly for tests performed by a qualified testing agency indicating compliance with performance requirements.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Record Documents: For fire-rated doors, list of door numbers and applicable room name and number to which door accesses.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver hollow-metal doors and frames palletized, packaged, or crated to provide protection during transit and Project-site storage. Do not use nonvented plastic.
1. Provide additional protection to prevent damage to factory-finished units.
- B. Deliver welded frames with two removable spreader bars across bottom of frames, tack welded to jambs and mullions.
- C. Store hollow-metal doors and frames vertically under cover at Project site with head up. Place on minimum 4-inch- (102-mm-) high wood blocking. Provide minimum 1/4-inch (6-mm) space between each stacked door to permit air circulation.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:
1. Ceco Door; ASSA ABLOY.
  2. Curries Company; ASSA ABLOY.
  3. Republic Doors and Frames
  4. Steelcraft
  5. MPI Group, LLC (The).

## 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for fire-protection ratings indicated on Drawings, based on testing at positive pressure in accordance with NFPA 252 or UL 10C.
- B. Fire-Rated, Borrowed-Lite Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 and listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing in accordance with NFPA 257 or UL 9.
- C. Windborne-Debris Impact Resistance: Passes ASTM E1886 missile-impact and cyclic-pressure tests in accordance with ASTM E1996 for Wind Zone 4 for enhanced protection.
- D. Thermally Rated Door Assemblies: Provide door assemblies with U-factor of not more than 0.50 deg Btu/F x h x sq. ft. (2.84 W/K x sq. m) when tested in accordance with ASTM C1363 or ASTM E1423.

## 2.3 INTERIOR STANDARD STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Construct hollow-metal doors and frames to comply with standards indicated for materials, fabrication, hardware locations, hardware reinforcement, tolerances, and clearances, and as specified.
- B. Extra-Heavy-Duty Doors and Frames: ANSI/SDI A250.8, Level 3; ANSI/SDI A250.4, Level A.
  - 1. Doors:
    - a. Type: As indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule on Drawings.
    - b. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches (44.5 mm).
    - c. Face: Uncoated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch (1.3 mm).
    - d. Edge Construction: Model 2, Seamless.
    - e. Edge Bevel: Provide manufacturer's standard beveled or square edges.
    - f. Core: Manufacturer's standard.
    - g. Fire-Rated Core: Manufacturer's standard laminated mineral board core for fire-rated doors.
  - 2. Frames:
    - a. Materials: Uncoated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch (1.3 mm).
    - b. Sidelite and Transom Frames: Fabricated from same thickness material as adjacent door frame.
    - c. Construction: Full profile welded.
  - 3. Exposed Finish: Prime.

## 2.4 EXTERIOR STANDARD STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Construct hollow-metal doors and frames to comply with standards indicated for materials, fabrication, hardware locations, hardware reinforcement, tolerances, and clearances, and as specified.
- B. Extra-Heavy-Duty Doors and Frames: ANSI/SDI A250.8, Level 3; ANSI/SDI A250.4, Level A.
  - 1. Doors:
    - a. Type: As indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule on Drawings.
    - b. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches (44.5 mm).
    - c. Face: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch (1.3 mm), with minimum A40 (ZF120) coating.
    - d. Edge Construction: Model 2, Seamless.
    - e. Edge Bevel: Provide manufacturer's standard beveled or square edges.
    - f. Top Edge Closures: Close top edges of doors with flush closures of same material as face sheets. Seal joints against water penetration.
    - g. Bottom Edges: Close bottom edges of doors with end closures or channels of same material as face sheets. Provide weep-hole openings in bottoms of exterior doors to permit moisture to escape.
    - h. Core: Manufacturer's standard.
    - i. Fire-Rated Core: Manufacturer's standard laminated mineral board core for fire-rated doors.
  - 2. Frames:
    - a. Materials: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch (1.3 mm), with minimum A40 (ZF120) coating.
    - b. Construction: Full profile welded.
  - 3. Exposed Finish: Prime.

## 2.5 FRAME ANCHORS

- A. Jamb Anchors:
  - 1. Type: Anchors of minimum size and type required by applicable door and frame standard, and suitable for performance level indicated.
  - 2. Quantity: Minimum of three anchors per jamb, with one additional anchor for frames with no floor anchor. Provide one additional anchor for each 24 inches (610 mm) of frame height above 7 feet (2.1 m).
  - 3. Postinstalled Expansion Anchor: Minimum 3/8-inch- (9.5-mm-) diameter bolts with expansion shields or inserts, with manufacturer's standard pipe spacer.
- B. Floor Anchors: Provide floor anchors for each jamb and mullion that extends to floor.
- C. Floor Anchors for Concrete Slabs with Underlayment: Adjustable-type anchors with extension clips, allowing not less than 2-inch (51-mm) height adjustment. Terminate bottom of frames at top of underlayment.

- D. Material: ASTM A879/A879M, Commercial Steel (CS), 04Z (12G) coating designation; mill phosphatized.
  - 1. For anchors built into exterior walls, steel sheet complying with ASTM A1008/A1008M or ASTM A1011/A1011M; hot-dip galvanized in accordance with ASTM A153/A153M, Class B.

## 2.6 MATERIALS

- A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A1008/A1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; suitable for exposed applications.
- B. Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A1011/A1011M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; free of scale, pitting, or surface defects; pickled and oiled.
- C. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.
- D. Inserts, Bolts, and Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized in accordance with ASTM A153/A153M.
- E. Power-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hollow-metal frames of type indicated.
- F. Mineral-Fiber Insulation: ASTM C665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers manufactured from slag or rock wool; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively; passing ASTM E136 for combustion characteristics.
- G. Glazing: Comply with requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing."

## 2.7 FABRICATION

- A. Hollow-Metal Frames: Fabricate in one piece except where handling and shipping limitations require multiple sections. Where frames are fabricated in sections, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of metal of same or greater thickness as frames.
  - 1. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Door Silencers: Except on weather-stripped frames, drill stops to receive door silencers as follows. Keep holes clear during construction.
    - a. Single-Door Frames: Drill stop in strike jamb to receive three door silencers.
    - b. Double-Door Frames: Drill stop in head jamb to receive two door silencers.
- B. Hardware Preparation: Factory prepare hollow-metal doors and frames to receive templated mortised hardware, and electrical wiring; include cutouts, reinforcement, mortising, drilling, and tapping in accordance with ANSI/SDI A250.6, the Door Hardware Schedule on Drawings, and templates.
  - 1. Reinforce doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.

2. Comply with BHMA A156.115 for preparing hollow-metal doors and frames for hardware.
- C. Glazed Lites: Provide stops and moldings around glazed lites where indicated. Form corners of stops and moldings with butted hairline joints.
1. Provide stops and moldings flush with face of door, and with square stops unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Multiple Glazed Lites: Provide fixed and removable stops and moldings so that each glazed lite is capable of being removed independently.
  3. Provide fixed frame moldings on outside of exterior and on secure side of interior doors and frames. Provide loose stops and moldings on inside of hollow-metal doors and frames.
  4. Coordinate rabbet width between fixed and removable stops with glazing and installation types indicated.
  5. Provide stops for installation with countersunk flat- or oval-head machine screws spaced uniformly not more than 9 inches (230 mm) o.c. and not more than 2 inches (51 mm) o.c. from each corner.

## 2.8 STEEL FINISHES

- A. Prime Finish: Clean, pretreat, and apply manufacturer's standard primer.
1. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free primer complying with ANSI/SDI A250.10; recommended by primer manufacturer for substrate; compatible with substrate and field-applied coatings despite prolonged exposure.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Remove welded-in shipping spreaders installed at factory. Restore exposed finish by grinding, filling, and dressing, as required to make repaired area smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces. Touch up factory-applied finishes where spreaders are removed.
- B. Drill and tap doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install hollow-metal doors and frames plumb, rigid, properly aligned, and securely fastened in place. Comply with approved Shop Drawings and with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Hollow-Metal Frames: Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.11.
1. Set frames accurately in position; plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is complete, remove temporary braces without damage to completed Work.



- a. Where frames are fabricated in sections, field splice at approved locations by welding face joint continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make splice smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces. Touch-up finishes.
    - b. Install frames with removable stops located on secure side of opening.
  2. Fire-Rated Openings: Install frames in accordance with NFPA 80.
  3. Floor Anchors: Secure with postinstalled expansion anchors.
    - a. Floor anchors may be set with power-actuated fasteners instead of postinstalled expansion anchors if so indicated and approved on Shop Drawings.
  4. Solidly pack mineral-fiber insulation inside frames.
  5. Masonry Walls: Coordinate installation of frames to allow for solidly filling space between frames and masonry with grout or mortar.
  6. In-Place Concrete or Masonry Construction: Secure frames in place with postinstalled expansion anchors.
  7. Installation Tolerances: Adjust hollow-metal frames to the following tolerances:
    - a. Squareness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
    - b. Alignment: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
    - c. Twist: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
    - d. Plumbness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at jambs at floor.
- C. Hollow-Metal Doors: Fit and adjust hollow-metal doors accurately in frames, within clearances specified below.
  1. Non-Fire-Rated Steel Doors: Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.8.
  2. Fire-Rated Doors: Install doors with clearances in accordance with NFPA 80.
- D. Glazing: Comply with installation requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing" and with hollow-metal manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.3 REPAIR

- A. Prime-Coat Touchup: Immediately after erection, sand smooth rusted or damaged areas of prime coat and apply touchup of compatible air-drying, rust-inhibitive primer.
- B. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of abraded areas of paint are specified in painting Sections.

END OF SECTION 081113

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 081416 - FLUSH WOOD DOORS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Solid-core five-ply flush wood veneer-faced doors and transom panels for transparent finish.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 088000 "Glazing" for glass view panels in flush wood doors.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Solid-core five-ply flush wood veneer-faced doors and transom panels for transparent finish.

B. Product Data Submittals: For each product, including the following:

1. Door core materials and construction.
2. Door edge construction
3. Door face type and characteristics.
4. Factory-machining criteria.
5. Factory- finishing specifications.

C. Shop Drawings: Indicate location, size, and hand of each door; elevation of each type of door; construction details not covered in Product Data; and the following:

1. Door schedule indicating door location, type, size, fire protection rating, and swing.
2. Door elevations, dimension and locations of hardware, lite and louver cutouts, and glazing thicknesses.
3. Details of frame for each frame type, including dimensions and profile.
4. Details of electrical raceway and preparation for electrified hardware, access control systems, and security systems.
5. Dimensions and locations of blocking for hardware attachment.
6. Dimensions and locations of mortises and holes for hardware.
7. Clearances and undercuts.
8. Requirements for veneer matching.
9. Doors to be factory finished and application requirements.
10. Apply AWI Quality Certification Program label to Shop Drawings.

D. Samples for Initial Selection: For factory-finished doors.

E. Samples for Verification:

1. Factory finishes applied to actual door face materials, approximately 8 by 10 inches (200 by 250 mm), for each material and finish. For each wood species and transparent finish, provide set of three Samples showing typical range of color and grain to be expected in finished Work.

### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Special warranties.
- B. Quality Standard Compliance Certificates: AWI Quality Certification Program certificates.
- C. Record Documents: For fire-rated doors, list of door numbers and applicable room name and number to which door accesses.

### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer's Certification: Licensed participant in AWI's Quality Certification Program.
- B. Quality Standard: Comply with WDMA I.S.1-A, "Architectural Wood Flush Doors", AWI Sections 1300 and 1500 "Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards" whichever is more stringent.

### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with requirements of referenced standard and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Package doors individually in plastic bags or cardboard cartons.
- C. Mark each door on top and bottom rail with opening number used on Shop Drawings.
- D. Stack doors flat and off the floor, supported to prevent warpage. Protect doors from damage and direct exposure to sunlight. Do not walk or place other material on top of stacked doors. Do not drag doors across one another. Contractor shall use all means necessary to protect doors from damage prior to, during, and after installation. All damaged doors shall be repaired or replaced by the contractor at no cost to the owner.

### 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations:
  1. Do not deliver or install doors until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature

- and relative humidity at levels designed for building occupants for the remainder of construction period.
- 2. Do not deliver or install doors until building is enclosed and weathertight, wet work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature between 60 and 90 deg F (16 and 32 deg C) and relative humidity between 25 and 55 percent during remainder of construction period.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace doors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Delamination of veneer.
    - b. Warping (bow, cup, or twist) more than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) in a 42-by-84-inch (1067-by-2134-mm) section.
    - c. Telegraphing of core construction in face veneers exceeding 0.01 inch in a 3-inch (0.25 mm in a 76.2-mm) span.
  - 2. Warranty also includes installation and finishing that may be required due to repair or replacement of defective doors.
  - 3. Warranty Period for Solid-Core Interior Doors: Life of installation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain flush wood doors from single manufacturer.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Wood Door and Frame Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire-protection ratings indicated on Drawings, based on testing at positive pressure in accordance with UL 10C or NFPA 252.
  - 1. Temperature-Rise Limit: At vertical exit enclosures and exit passageways, provide doors that have a maximum transmitted temperature end point of not more than 450 deg F (250 deg C) above ambient after 30 minutes of standard fire-test exposure.
- B. Smoke- and Draft-Control Door Assemblies: Listed and labeled for smoke and draft control by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on testing in accordance with UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105.

## 2.3 FLUSH WOOD DOORS AND FRAMES, GENERAL

- A. Quality Standard: In addition to requirements specified, comply with AWI/AWMAC/WT's "Architectural Woodwork Standards."
1. Provide labels and certificates from AWI certification program indicating that doors comply with requirements of grades specified.
    - a. Contractor registers the Work under this Section with the AWI Quality Certification Program at [www.awiqcp.org](http://www.awiqcp.org) or by calling 855-345-0991.
  2. The Contract Documents contain requirements that are more stringent than the referenced quality standard. Comply with the Contract Documents in addition to those of the referenced quality standard.

## 2.4 SOLID-CORE FIVE-PLY FLUSH WOOD VENEER-FACED DOORS AND TRANSOM PANELS FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

- A. Interior Doors, Solid-Core Five-Ply Veneer-Faced :
1. Manufacturers
    - a. Eggers Industries
    - b. Masonsite Architectural
    - c. VT Industries
  2. Performance Grade: ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A Extra Heavy Duty.
  3. ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A Quality Grade: Premium.
  4. Faces: Single-ply wood veneer not less than 1/50 inch (0.508 mm) thick.
    - a. Species: Select white maple.
    - b. Cut: Plain sliced (flat sliced).
    - c. Match between Veneer Leaves: Slip match.
    - d. Assembly of Veneer Leaves on Door Faces: Running match.
    - e. Pair and Set Match: Provide for doors hung in same opening or separated only by mullions.
  5. Exposed Vertical and Top Edges: Same species as faces or a compatible species - Architectural Woodwork Standards edge Type A.
  6. Core:
    - a. WDMA I.S. 10 structural composite lumber.
      - 1) Screw Withdrawal, Door Face: 550 lbf (2440 N).
      - 2) Screw Withdrawal, Vertical Door Edge: 550 lbf (2440 N).
    - b. Either glued wood stave or WDMA I.S. 10 structural composite lumber.
  7. Construction: Five plies, hot-pressed bonded (vertical and horizontal edging is bonded to core), with entire unit abrasive planed before veneering.
  8. Adhesives: Type I in accordance with WDMA T.M. 6.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Factory machine doors for hardware that is not surface applied.
  - 1. Locate hardware to comply with DHI-WDHS-3.
  - 2. Comply with final hardware schedules, door frame Shop Drawings, ANSI/BHMA-156.115-W, and hardware templates.
  - 3. Coordinate with hardware mortises in metal frames, to verify dimensions and alignment before factory machining.
  - 4. For doors scheduled to receive electrified locksets, provide factory-installed raceway and wiring to accommodate specified hardware.
- B. Openings: Factory cut and trim openings through doors.
  - 1. Light Openings: Trim openings with moldings of material and profile indicated.
  - 2. Glazing: Factory install glazing in doors indicated to be factory finished. Comply with applicable requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing."

## 2.6 FACTORY FINISHING

- A. Comply with referenced quality standard for factory finishing.
  - 1. Complete fabrication, including fitting doors for openings and machining for hardware that is not surface applied, before finishing.
  - 2. Finish faces, all four edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises.
  - 3. Stains and fillers may be omitted on top and bottom edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises.
- B. Factory finish doors.
- C. Transparent Finish:
  - 1. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: Premium.
    - a. System-11, Polyurethane, Catalyzed.
  - 2. Sheen: Satin.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine doors and installed door frames, with Installer present, before hanging doors.
  - 1. Verify that installed frames comply with indicated requirements for type, size, location, and swing characteristics and have been installed with level heads and plumb jambs.
  - 2. Reject doors with defects.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Hardware: For installation, see Section 087100 "Door Hardware."
- B. Install doors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and referenced quality standard, and as indicated.
- C. Install frames level, plumb, true, and straight.
  - 1. Shim as required with concealed shims. Install level and plumb to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches (3.2 mm in 2400 mm).
  - 2. Anchor frames to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates.
    - a. Secure with countersunk, concealed fasteners and blind nailing.
    - b. Use fine finishing nails for exposed fastening, countersunk and filled flush with woodwork.
      - 1) For factory-finished items, use filler matching finish of items being installed.
  - 3. Install fire-rated doors and frames in accordance with NFPA 80.
- D. Job-Fitted Doors:
  - 1. Align and fit doors in frames with uniform clearances and bevels as indicated below.
    - a. Do not trim stiles and rails in excess of limits set by manufacturer or permitted for fire-rated doors.
  - 2. Machine doors for hardware.
  - 3. Seal edges of doors, edges of cutouts, and mortises after fitting and machining.
  - 4. Clearances:
    - a. Provide 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) at heads, jambs, and between pairs of doors.
    - b. Provide 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) from bottom of door to top of decorative floor finish or covering unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
    - c. Where threshold is shown or scheduled, provide 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) from bottom of door to top of threshold unless otherwise indicated.
    - d. Comply with NFPA 80 for fire-rated doors.
  - 5. Bevel non-fire-rated doors 1/8 inch in 2 inches (3-1/2 degrees) at lock and hinge edges.
  - 6. Bevel fire-rated doors 1/8 inch in 2 inches (3-1/2 degrees) at lock edge; trim stiles and rails only to extent permitted by labeling agency.
- E. Factory-Finished Doors: Restore finish before installation if fitting or machining is required at Project site.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspection Agency: Engage a qualified inspector to perform inspections and to furnish reports to Architect.



B. Inspections:

1. Provide inspection of installed Work through AWI's Quality Certification Program, certifying that wood doors and frames, including installation, comply with requirements of AWI/AWMCA/WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards" for the specified grade.
2. Egress Door Inspections: Inspect each door equipped with panic hardware, each door equipped with fire exit hardware, each door located in an exit enclosure, each electrically controlled egress door, and each door equipped with special locking arrangements in accordance with NFPA 101, Section 7.2.1.15.

C. Repair or remove and replace installations where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.

D. Reinspect repaired or replaced installations to determine if replaced or repaired door assembly installations comply with specified requirements.

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Operation: Rehang or replace doors that do not swing or operate freely.

B. Finished Doors: Replace doors that are damaged or that do not comply with requirements. Doors may be repaired or refinished if Work complies with requirements and shows no evidence of repair or refinishing.

END OF SECTION 081416

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 083613 - SECTIONAL DOORS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Sectional-door assemblies.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type and size of sectional door and accessory.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components, profile door sections, and finishes.
  - 2. For power-operated doors, include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each installation and for components not dimensioned or detailed in manufacturer's product data.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
  - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 3. Include points of attachment and their corresponding static and dynamic loads imposed on structure.
  - 4. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, in manufacturer's standard size.
- D. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied finishes.
  - 1. Include Samples of accessories involving color selection.
- E. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish and for each color and texture required on the following components, in manufacturer's standard sizes:
  - 1. Glazing.
  - 2. Metal for door sections.
  - 3. Hardware.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's warranty and finish warranty.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For sectional doors to include in maintenance manuals.
- B. Manufacturer's warranty.
- C. Finish warranty.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer for both installation and maintenance of units required for this Project.
- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with provisions in the U.S. Department of Justice's "2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design" applicable to sectional doors.

#### 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of sectional doors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
    - b. Failure of components or operators before reaching required number of operation cycles.
    - c. Faulty operation of hardware.
    - d. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering and use; rust through.
    - e. Delamination of exterior or interior facing materials.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Finish Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS, GENERAL

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain sectional doors from single source from single manufacturer.
  - 1. Obtain operators and controls from sectional door manufacturer.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Provide sectional doors that comply with performance requirements specified without failure from defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction and without requiring temporary installation of reinforcing components.
- B. Structural Performance, Exterior Doors: Capable of withstanding the design wind loads.
  - 1. Design Wind Load: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Testing: In accordance with ASTM E330/E330M.
  - 3. Deflection Limits: Design sectional doors to withstand design wind loads without evidencing permanent deformation or disengagement of door components.
    - a. Deflection of door sections in horizontal position (open) shall not exceed 1/120 of door width.
    - b. Deflection of horizontal track assembly shall not exceed 1/240 of door height.
  - 4. Operability under Wind Load: Design sectional doors to remain operable under design wind load, acting inward and outward.
- C. Windborne-Debris Impact Resistance: Provide sectional doors complying with the following requirements:
  - 1. Glazed Openings: Pass ASTM E1886 Large Missile Test and cyclic-pressure tests in accordance with ASTM E1996 for enhanced protection and Wind Zone applicable to basic design wind speed indicated on Drawings.
- D. Seismic Performance: Provide sectional doors that withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7.
  - 1. Component Importance Factor: As indicated on drawings.

### 2.3 SECTIONAL-DOOR ASSEMBLY

- A. Aluminum Sectional Door: Provide sectional door formed with hinged sections and fabricated so that finished door assembly is rigid and aligned with tight hairline joints; free of warp, twist, and deformation; and complies with requirements in DASMA 102.
- B. Operation Cycles: Door components and operators capable of operating for not less than 25,000 operation cycles. One operation cycle is complete when door is opened from closed position to the open position and returned to closed position.

- C. Air Infiltration: Maximum rate of 0.4 cfm/sq. ft. (2.03 L/s per sq. m) when tested in accordance with ASTM E283 or DASMA 105.
- D. U-Value: 0.052 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F (0.295 W/sq. m x K).
- E. Aluminum Sections: ASTM B221 (ASTM B221M) extruded-aluminum stile and rail members of alloy and temper standard with manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated; in minimum thickness required to comply with requirements; with rail and stile dimensions and profiles indicated on Drawings; and with overlapped or interlocked weather- and pinch-resistant seal at meeting rails.
  - 1. Door-Section Thickness: 1-3/4 inches (44 mm).
  - 2. Section Reinforcing: Continuous horizontal and diagonal reinforcement as required to stiffen door and for wind loading. Ensure that reinforcement does not obstruct vision lites.
    - a. Hardware Locations: Provide reinforcement for hardware attachment.
  - 3. Insulated Stiles and Rails: Fill stiles and rails manufacturer's standard polyurethane expanding foam.
  - 4. Glazed Panels: Manufacturer's standard, aluminum-framed section with glazing sealed with glazing tape and aluminum glazing bead. Glazing as follows:
    - a. Insulating Glass Units: Manufacturers' standard unit with tempered glass lites complying with ASTM C1048, Kind FT (fully tempered), Condition A (uncoated), Type I, Class 1 (clear), Quality-Q3.
  - 5. Solid Aluminum Panels: ASTM B209 (ASTM B209M), alloy and temper standard with manufacturer for use and finish indicated.
    - a. Description: 1/2-inch- (12.7-mm-) thick overall insulated panel composed of 0.050-inch (1.3-mm) aluminum interior and exterior panels with an extruded polystyrene (EPS) core.
    - b. Attachment to Frame: Sealed with glazing tape and aluminum glazing bead.
    - c. Aluminum Surface: Smooth.
- F. Track: Manufacturer's standard, galvanized-steel, standard-lift track system. Provide complete system including brackets, bracing, and reinforcement to ensure rigid support of ball-bearing roller guides.
  - 1. Material: Galvanized steel, ASTM A653/A653M, minimum G60 (Z180) zinc coating.
  - 2. Size: As recommended in writing by manufacturer for door size, weight, track configuration and door clearances indicated on Drawings.
  - 3. Track Reinforcement and Supports: Provide galvanized-steel members to support track without sag, sway, and vibration during opening and closing of doors. Slot vertical sections of track spaced 2 inches (51 mm) apart for door-drop safety device.
    - a. Horizontal Track: Provide continuous reinforcing angle from curve in track to end of track, attached to track and supported at points by laterally braced attachments to overhead structural members.
- G. Weatherseals: Replaceable, adjustable, continuous, compressible weather-stripping gaskets of flexible vinyl, rubber, or neoprene fitted to bottom top and jambs of door. Provide combination bottom weatherseal and sensor edge for bottom seal.

- H. Hardware: Heavy-duty, corrosion-resistant hardware, with hot-dip galvanized, stainless steel, or other corrosion-resistant fasteners, to suit door type.
  - 1. Hinges: Heavy-duty, galvanized-steel hinges of not less than 0.079-inch (2.01-mm) nominal coated thickness at each end stile and at each intermediate stile, in accordance with manufacturer's written recommendations for door size.
    - a. Attach hinges to door sections through stiles and rails with bolts and lock nuts or lock washers and nuts. Use rivets or self-tapping fasteners where access to nuts is impossible.
    - b. Provide double-end hinges where required for doors more than 16 ft. (4.88 m) wide unless otherwise recommended by door manufacturer in writing.
  - 2. Rollers: Heavy-duty rollers with steel ball bearings in case-hardened steel races, mounted to suit slope of track. Extend roller shaft through both hinges where double hinges are required. Match roller-tire diameter to track width.
    - a. Roller-Tire Material: Case-hardened steel.
- I. Locking Device:
  - 1. Locking Device Assembly: Fabricate with cylinder lock, spring-loaded deadbolt, operating handle, cam plate, and adjustable locking bars to engage through slots in tracks.
    - a. Lock Cylinders: Cylinders complying with Section 087100 "Door Hardware" requirements.
  - 2. Safety Interlock Switch: Equip power-operated doors with safety interlock switch to disengage power supply when door is locked.
- J. Electric Door Operator: Electric door operator assembly of size and capacity recommended by door manufacturer for door and operation cycles specified, with electric motor and factory-prewired motor controls, starter, gear-reduction unit, solenoid-operated brake, clutch, control stations, control devices, integral gearing for locking door, and accessories required for proper operation.
  - 1. Comply with NFPA 70.
  - 2. Control equipment complying with NEMA ICS 1, NEMA ICS 2, and NEMA ICS 6; with NFPA 70, Class 2 control circuit, maximum 24 V ac or dc.
  - 3. Safety: Listed in accordance with UL 325 by a qualified testing agency for commercial or industrial use; moving parts of operator enclosed or guarded if exposed and mounted at 8 ft. (2.4 m) or lower.
  - 4. Usage Classification: Heavy duty, 25 or more cycles per hour and more than 90 cycles per day.
  - 5. Operator Type: Manufacturer's standard for door requirements.
  - 6. Motor: Reversible-type with controller (disconnect switch) for motor exposure. Use adjustable motor-mounting bases for belt-driven operators.
    - a. Motor Size: As required to start, accelerate, and operate door in either direction from any position, at a speed not less than 8 in./sec. (203 mm/s) and not more than 12 in./sec. (305 mm/s), without exceeding nameplate ratings or service factor.
    - b. Electrical Characteristics:
      - 1) See Electrical Drawings.

7. Limit Switches: Equip motorized door with adjustable switches interlocked with motor controls and set to automatically stop door at fully opened and fully closed positions.
  8. Obstruction Detection: Automatic external entrapment protection consisting of automatic safety sensor capable of protecting full width of door opening. Activation of device immediately stops and reverses downward door travel.
    - a. Monitored Entrapment Protection: Photoelectric sensor Electric sensor edge on bottom section designed to interface with door-operator control circuit to detect damage to or disconnection of sensor and complying with requirements in UL 325.
  9. Control Station: Surface mounted, three-position (open, close, and stop) control.
    - a. Operation: Push button interior and key exterior.
    - b. Interior-Mounted Unit: Full-guarded, surface-mounted, heavy-duty type, with general-purpose NEMA ICS 6, Type 1 enclosure.
    - c. Features: Provide the following:
      - 1) Vehicle detection operation.
      - 2) Radio-control operation.
      - 3) Audible and visual signals that comply with regulatory requirements for accessibility.
  10. Emergency Manual Operation: Push-up type designed so required force for door operation does not exceed 25 lbf (111 N).
  11. Emergency Operation Disconnect Device: Hand-operated disconnect mechanism for automatically engaging manual operator and releasing brake for emergency manual operation while disconnecting motor without affecting timing of limit switch. Mount mechanism so it is accessible from floor level. Include interlock device to automatically prevent motor from operating when emergency operator is engaged.
  12. Motor Removal: Design operator so motor can be removed without disturbing limit-switch adjustment and without affecting emergency manual operation.
- K. Metal Finish: Comply with NAAMM/NOMMA's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products (AMP 500-06)" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
1. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: Manufacturer's standard baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, pretreatment, application, and minimum dry film thickness.
    - a. Aluminum Finish: Comply with AAMA 2604 requirements for pigmented organic coatings applied to aluminum extrusions and panels.
    - b. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for substrate construction and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.



- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install sectional doors and operating equipment complete with necessary hardware, anchors, inserts, hangers, and equipment supports; in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Tracks:
  - 1. Fasten vertical track assembly to opening jambs and framing with fasteners spaced not more than 24 inches (610 mm) apart.
  - 2. Hang horizontal track assembly from structural overhead framing with angles or channel hangers attached to framing by welding or bolting, or both. Provide sway bracing, diagonal bracing, and reinforcement as required for rigid installation of track and door-operating equipment.
- C. Accessibility: Install sectional doors, switches, and controls along accessible routes in compliance with regulatory requirements for accessibility.
- D. Power-Operated Doors: Install **automatic garage doors openers** in accordance with UL 325.

### 3.3 STARTUP SERVICES

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
  - 1. Complete installation and startup checks in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Test and adjust controls and safety devices. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust hardware and moving parts to function smoothly so that doors operate easily, free of warp, twist, or distortion.
- B. Lubricate bearings and sliding parts as recommended by manufacturer.
- C. Adjust doors and seals to provide weather-resistant fit around entire perimeter.
- D. Touchup Painting Galvanized Material: Immediately after welding galvanized materials, clean welds and abraded galvanized surfaces and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A780/A780M.

### 3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain sectional doors.

END OF SECTION 083613

## SECTION 083713 – EXTERIOR FOUR-FOLD DOORS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes exterior swinging Four-Fold metal doors with surface mounted angle frames.
- B. Operation of Four-Fold metal doors includes overhead mounted electro-mechanical operator(s) located on the interior side of the wall.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit each item in this Article according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.
- B. Product Data for each type of product specified consisting of manufacturer's technical Product Data and installation instructions for each type of door required, including data substantiating that products comply with requirements.
- C. Submittal Drawings showing fabrication and installation of Four-Fold metal doors including plans, elevations, sections, details of components, hardware, operating mechanism, and attachments to the other units of Work. Include wiring diagrams for coordination with electrical trade.
- D. Reference list including (5) successful installations of this type of door within the past two (2) years.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Doors shall be designed to withstand external or internal horizontal wind loads of 23 pounds minimum per square foot. The maximum allowable deflection shall not exceed 1/120 of the span. Fiber stresses in main members shall be limited to 27,000 pounds per square inch. Steel frames shall be designed in accordance with the AISC "Steel Construction Manual".
- B. Door manufacturer shall have at least 10 years experience in manufacturing door type specified for emergency vehicle applications.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store delivered materials and equipment in dry locations with adequate ventilation, free from dust and water, and so as to permit access for inspection and handling.
- B. Handle materials carefully to prevent damage.

## 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Provide to the Owner a written guarantee, warranting the doors against any defects or materials and/or workmanship for the new door for a period of 2 years. With proper maintenance, commencing from the date of final acceptance of the project. Motors shall be guaranteed for a period of 2 years. State that all door and control work that becomes defective during the guarantee period shall be repaired promptly, to the requirements of these Specifications and at no cost to the Owner.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PRODUCTS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Four-Fold industrial metal doors manufactured by Door Engineering and Manufacturing; FF300Series: Interior Swinging Four-Fold Doors with interior mounted operators or comparable product by one of the following:
  - a. Interior Tech
  - b. EPD Electric Power Door

### 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Steel Tube: ASTM A513 and ASTM A500/A500M
- B. Steel Sheets: Steel sheets of commercial quality, complying with ASTM A1011/A1011M hot-rolled steel sheet.
- C. Hardware: Manufacturer's standard components.
- D. Fasteners: Zinc-coated steel.

### 2.3 FOUR-FOLD DOORS

- A. Construction: Door framing shall be minimum 11-gauge structural steel tube with 14-gauge steel sheet on the exterior and interior faces. Sheetting shall be formed on the vertical edges with no visible welds on the interior or exterior panel faces. All frames and framing members shall be true to dimension and square in all directions, and no door shall be bowed, warped, or out of line, in the vertical or horizontal plane of the door opening by more than 1/8 inch in 20 feet. Exposed welds and welds which interfere with the installation of various parts shall be ground smooth and flush.

- B. Angle Frame: Supply pre-hung tube frame system constructed of minimum L6x6x0.25, designed to anchor to masonry wall construction or weld to steel structure. All hinges, track supports and operator supports shall be factory attached.
- C. Factory finish: Operator and operating hardware shall be powdercoated manufacturer's standard finish. Architect to select from Manufacturer's standard color chart or furnish color to match Panels, frame and all other hardware shall be finished as follows:
  - a. All exposed steel shall be finished with manufacturer's standard epoxy primer and polyurethane top coat, PPG Spectracron or equal. Architect to select from Manufacturer's standard color chart or furnish color to match.
- D. Operating Hardware: Hardware shall include guide tracks and brackets, trolleys, center guides, not less than three pairs of jamb and fold hinges per opening, and all bolts, nuts, fasteners, etc. necessary for complete installation and operation. Jamb hinges shall be dual shear and have two thrust bearings and two needle bearings. Jamb hinges shall be gusseted. Fold hinges shall be dual shear with two thrust bearings. Fold hinges shall be stainless steel. All bearings shall be completely concealed within the hinge barrel and include grease zerks. All hinge pins shall be minimum  $\frac{3}{4}$ " diameter hardened steel.
- E. Weatherstripping: Material shall be adjustable and readily replaceable and provide a substantially weather-tight installation. Weatherstripping at center shall be 1/16" cloth inserted neoprene and include no exposed fasteners on the exterior face of the panel. Weatherstripping at sill shall include two 1/16" cloth inserted neoprene sweeps with an aluminum retainer. The retainer shall be attached to the door with adhesive.
- F. Perimeter Weatherstripping: Provide jamb and head weatherstripping of 1/16" cloth-inserted neoprene bulb (or closed cell neoprene).
- G. Vision Panels: Provide 1" insulated vision panels or grilles of the size, shape and location as noted on the drawings.

#### 2.4 OPERATOR

- A. Each Four-Fold door shall be operated by an overhead mounted electro-mechanical drive unit designed for high cycle operation. Each Operator consists of an electric motor, gear reducer, and rotating drive arm. The door shall be operated with connecting rods attached to the rotating drive arm on the operator and to control arms attached to the jamb door section and to the door lintel. The connecting rods shall be positive drive, keeping the door under firm control at all times. The connecting rods shall be fitted with spherical bearings and control arms shall be equipped with oil impregnated bronze bearings on polished shafts.
- B. Operator shall be instantly reversible, open and close rapidly and start and stop gradually. Operator shall be adjustable to allow door to fully clear the opening. Operator shall automatically lock the door in the closed position. Operator shall be equipped with disengaging mechanism to convert to free wheeling mode for manual operation.
- C. Electric motor shall be of sufficient size to operate doors under normal operating conditions at no more than 75 percent of rated capacity. The motor shall be wound for single phase 120 VAC, 60 Hertz operation.

D. Electric Controls: Controls shall be furnished by the door manufacturer and shall be complete for each door, and built in accordance with the latest NEMA standards. **Incoming electrical shall be: three phase.**

1. Controls shall include a programmable logic controller with digital message display or LED indicators. Controller shall include programmable close timers and programmable inputs/outputs.
2. All control components shall be enclosed in one enclosure with a wiring diagram placed on the inside of the cover.
3. Controls shall include a Variable Frequency Drive (VFD) with adjustable open and closed speed capability.
4. Enclosures shall be NEMA 4 with disconnect switch.
5. Pushbuttons (interior) for each door shall have one (1) momentary pressure three-button push-button station marked "OPEN", "CLOSE" and "STOP". Push button enclosure shall be NEMA 4. Location by Architect.
6. Limit switches shall be provided to stop the travel of the door in its fully open or fully closed position.
7. Safety edges: Provide electric safety edges on leading edge of all doors to reverse door upon contact with obstruction.
8. Photo eyes: Provide (1) interior, jamb mounted, thru-beam type photo eyes, NEMA 4 rated.
9. **Radio controls: Provide one (1) radio receiver and (1) single button remotes per door. Remotes to open and close doors with single button.**
10. **Timer Activation Loop Detectors (fire station applications): Provide "pulse on exit type" loop detector to activate auto close timer once loop has been activated and cleared, include hand/auto switch to deactivate timer. G.C. to coordinate installation of preformed loop with installer prior to exterior apron being poured.**
11. Wiring: Door manufacturer shall supply controls and components only. Electrical contractor shall install controls and furnish and install conduits and wiring for jobsite power and control wiring.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install Four-Fold metal doors in strict accordance with the approved drawings by qualified door erection crews. All door openings shall be completely prepared by the general contractor prior to the installation of the doors. Permanent or temporary electric wiring shall

be brought to the door opening before installation is started and shall be completed so as not to delay the inspection test.

- B. Doors shall be set plumb, level, and square, and with all parts properly fastened and mounted. All moving parts shall be tested and adjusted and left in good operating condition.

### 3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Inspection of the doors and a complete operating test will be made by the installer in the presence of the general contractor or architect as soon as the erection is complete. Any defects noted shall be corrected. After door approval in the above test, the general contractor must assume the responsibility for any damage or rough handling of the doors during construction until the building is turned over to the owner and final inspection is made.
- B. Clean surfaces and repaint abraded or damaged finished surfaces to match factory-applied finish.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank.



## SECTION 084113 - ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 088000 "Glazing"

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems.

B. Product Data Submittals: For each product.

1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
2. Operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories.

C. Shop Drawings:

1. Plans, elevations, sections, full-size details, and attachments to other work.
2. Details of provisions for assembly expansion and contraction and for draining moisture occurring within the assembly to the exterior.
3. Full-size isometric details of each type of vertical-to-horizontal intersection of aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems, showing the following:
  - a. Joinery, including concealed welds.
  - b. Anchorage.
  - c. Expansion provisions.
  - d. Glazing.
  - e. Flashing and drainage.
4. Connection to and continuity with adjacent thermal, weather, air, and vapor barriers.

D. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's standard color sheets, showing full range of available colors for each type of exposed finish.

E. Fabrication Sample: Of each vertical-to-horizontal intersection of assemblies, made from 12-inch (300-mm) lengths of full-size components and showing details of the following:

1. Joinery, including concealed welds.

2. Anchorage.
3. Expansion provisions.
4. Glazing.
5. Flashing and drainage.

- F. Delegated Design Submittals: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefront systems, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Energy Performance Certificates: For aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
1. Basis for Certification: NFRC-certified energy performance values for each aluminum-framed entrance and storefront system.
- B. Product Test Reports: For aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Preconstruction Test Reports: For aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems.
1. Test Reports: Prepared by a qualified preconstruction testing agency for each preconstruction test.
- D. Source Quality-Control Reports: For aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems.
- E. Field Quality-Control Reports: For aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems.
- F. Quality-Control Program: Developed specifically for Project, including fabrication and installation, in accordance with recommendations in ASTM C1401. Include periodic quality-control reports.
- G. Qualification Statements:
1. For Installer.
- H. Delegated Design Engineer Qualifications: For aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems.
- I. Sample Warranties: For aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems.

### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems.
- B. Maintenance Data for Structural Sealant: For structural-sealant-glazed storefront. Include ASTM C1401 recommendations for post-installation-phase quality-control program.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications:
  - 1. Entity that is certified under the North American Contractor Certification Program (NACC) and that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer and who are certified under the Architectural Glass and Metal Technician (AGMT) certification program.
- B. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for aesthetic effects and performance characteristics of assemblies. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction.
  - 1. Do not change intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If changes are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.
- C. Structural-Sealant Glazing: Comply with ASTM C1401 for design and installation of storefront systems that include structural glazing.

## 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures, including but not limited to excessive deflection.
    - b. Noise or vibration created by wind, thermal, and/or structural movements
    - c. Faulty operation of doors, hardware, or other operating components
    - d. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering and use.
    - e. Water penetration at glazed areas
  - 2. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Finish Warranty, Anodized Finishes: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace aluminum that shows evidence of deterioration of anodized finishes within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
    - a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested in accordance with ASTM D 2244.
    - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested in accordance with ASTM D 4214.
    - c. Cracking, peeling, or chipping.
  - 2. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain all components of aluminum-framed entrance and storefront system, including framing and accessories, from single manufacturer.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems.
- B. General Performance: Comply with performance requirements specified, as determined by testing of aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems representing those indicated for this Project without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
  - 1. Aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems to withstand movements of supporting structure, including, but not limited to, twist, column shortening, long-term creep, and deflection from uniformly distributed and concentrated live loads.
  - 2. Failure also includes the following:
    - a. Thermal stresses transferring to building structure.
    - b. Glass breakage.
    - c. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
    - d. Loosening or weakening of fasteners, attachments, and other components.
    - e. Failure of operating units.
- C. Structural Loads:
  - 1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Other Design Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
- D. Deflection of Framing Members Supporting Glass: At design wind load, as follows:
  - 1. Deflection Normal to Wall Plane: Limited to 1/175 of clear span for spans of up to 13 feet 6 inches (4.1 m) and to 1/240 of clear span plus 1/4 inch (6.35 mm) for spans greater than 13 feet 6 inches (4.1 m).
  - 2. Deflection Parallel to Glazing Plane: Limited to amount not exceeding that which reduces glazing bite to less than 75 percent of design dimension and that which reduces edge clearance between framing members and glazing or other fixed components to less than 1/8 inch (3.2 mm).
- E. Structural: Test in accordance with ASTM E330/E330M as follows:
  - 1. When tested at positive and negative wind-load design pressures, storefront assemblies, including entrance doors, do not evidence deflection exceeding specified limits.
  - 2. When tested at 150 percent of positive and negative wind-load design pressures, storefront assemblies, including entrance doors and anchorage, do not evidence material failures,

- structural distress, or permanent deformation of main framing members exceeding 0.2 percent of span.
  - 3. Test Durations: As required by design wind velocity, but not less than 10 seconds.
- F. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: Test in accordance with ASTM E331 as follows:
- 1. No evidence of water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas, including entrance doors, when tested in accordance with a minimum static-air-pressure differential of 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (300 Pa).
- G. Energy Performance: Certified and labeled by manufacturer for energy performance as follows:
- 1. Thermal Transmittance (U-factor):
    - a. Fixed Glazing and Framing Areas: U-factor for the system of not more than 0.36 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F (2.33 W/sq. m x K) as determined in accordance with NFRC 100.
  - 2. Solar Heat-Gain Coefficient (SHGC):
    - a. Fixed Glazing and Framing Areas: SHGC for the system of not more than 0.35 as determined in accordance with NFRC 200.
    - b. Entrance Doors: SHGC of not more than 0.33 as determined in accordance with NFRC 200.
  - 3. Air Leakage:
    - a. Fixed Glazing and Framing Areas: Air leakage for the system of not more than 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. (0.30 L/s per sq. m) at a static-air-pressure differential of 1.57 lbf/sq. ft. (75 Pa) when tested in accordance with ASTM E283.
  - 4. Condensation Resistance Factor (CRF):
    - a. Fixed Glazing and Framing Areas: CRF for the system of not less than 55 as determined in accordance with AAMA 1503.
- H. Windborne-Debris Impact Resistance: Passes ASTM E1886 missile-impact and cyclic-pressure tests in accordance with ASTM E1996 for Wind Zone 4 for enhanced protection.
- I. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements resulting from ambient and surface temperature changes.
- 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.
  - 2. Thermal Cycling: No buckling; stress on glass; sealant failure; excess stress on framing, anchors, and fasteners; or reduction of performance when tested in accordance with AAMA 501.5.
    - a. High Exterior Ambient-Air Temperature: That which produces an exterior metal-surface temperature of 180 deg F (82 deg C).

- b. Low Exterior Ambient-Air Temperature: 0 deg F (minus 18 deg C).
- c. Interior Ambient-Air Temperature: 75 deg F (24 deg C).

## 2.3 ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCE AND STOREFRONT SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers  $\geq$ 
  - 1. YKK AP America
  - 2. Kawneer North America
  - 3. Oldcastle Building Envelope
- B. Framing Members: Manufacturer's extruded- or formed-aluminum framing members of thickness required and reinforced as required to support imposed loads.
  - 1. Exterior Framing Construction: Thermally broken.
  - 2. Interior Vestibule Framing Construction: Nonthermal.
  - 3. Glazing System: Retained mechanically with gaskets on four sides.
  - 4. Glazing Plane: Front.
  - 5. Finish: Color anodic finish.
  - 6. Fabrication Method: Field-fabricated stick system.
  - 7. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
  - 8. Steel Reinforcement: As required by manufacturer.
- C. Backer Plates: Manufacturer's standard, continuous backer plates for framing members, if not integral, where framing abuts adjacent construction.
- D. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's standard high-strength aluminum with nonstaining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.

## 2.4 GLAZING

- A. Glazing: Comply with Section 088000 "Glazing."
- B. Glazing Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard sealed-corner pressure-glazing system of black, resilient elastomeric glazing gaskets, setting blocks, and shims or spacers.
- C. Glazing Sealants: As recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Weatherseal Sealants: ASTM C920 for Type S; Grade NS; Class 25; Uses NT, G, A, and O; chemically curing silicone formulation that is compatible with structural sealant and other system components with which it comes in contact; recommended by structural-sealant, weatherseal-sealant, and structural-sealant-glazed storefront manufacturers for this use.
  - 1. Color: Match structural sealant.

## 2.5 MATERIALS

- A. Sheet and Plate: ASTM B209 (ASTM B209M).

- B. Extruded Bars, Rods, Profiles, and Tubes: ASTM B221 (ASTM B221M).
- C. Structural Profiles: ASTM B308/B308M.
- D. Steel Reinforcement:
  - 1. Structural Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A36/A36M.
  - 2. Cold-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A1008/A1008M.
  - 3. Hot-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A1011/A1011M.
- E. Steel Reinforcement Primer: Manufacturer's standard zinc-rich, corrosion-resistant primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide No. 12.00; applied immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment. Select surface preparation methods in accordance with recommendations in SSPC-SP COM, and prepare surfaces in accordance with applicable SSPC standard.

## 2.6 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.
  - 1. Use self-locking devices where fasteners are subject to loosening or turning out from thermal and structural movements, wind loads, or vibration.
  - 2. Reinforce members as required to receive fastener threads.
  - 3. Use exposed fasteners with countersunk Phillips screw heads, finished to match framing system.
- B. Anchors: Three-way adjustable anchors with minimum adjustment of 1 inch (25.4 mm) that accommodate fabrication and installation tolerances in material and finish compatible with adjoining materials and recommended by manufacturer.
  - 1. Concrete and Masonry Inserts: Hot-dip galvanized cast-iron, malleable-iron, or steel inserts complying with ASTM A123/A123M or ASTM A153/A153M requirements.
- C. Concealed Flashing: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding flashing compatible with adjacent materials.
- D. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt-mastic paint containing no asbestos, formulated for 30-mil (0.762-mm) thickness per coat.
- E. Rigid PVC filler.

## 2.7 FABRICATION

- A. Form or extrude aluminum shapes before finishing.
- B. Weld in concealed locations to greatest extent possible to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Remove weld spatter and welding oxides from exposed surfaces by descaling or grinding.
- C. Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:

1. Profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.
2. Accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered.
3. Physical and thermal isolation of glazing from framing members.
4. Accommodations for thermal and mechanical movements of glazing and framing to maintain required glazing edge clearances.
5. Provisions for field replacement of glazing from exterior.
6. Fasteners, anchors, and connection devices that are concealed from view to greatest extent possible.

- D. Mechanically Glazed Framing Members: Fabricate for flush glazing without projecting stops.
- E. Structural-Sealant-Glazed Framing Members: Include accommodations for using temporary support device to retain glazing in place while structural sealant cures.
- F. Storefront Framing: Fabricate components for assembly using shear-block system or screw-spline system.
- G. After fabrication, clearly mark components to identify their locations in Project in accordance with Shop Drawings.

## 2.8 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A42/A44, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.
  1. Color: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors and color densities.

## 2.9 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Structural Sealant: Perform quality-control procedures complying with ASTM C1401 recommendations, including, but not limited to, assembly material qualification procedures, sealant testing, and assembly fabrication reviews and checks.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION OF ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCE AND STOREFRONT SYSTEMS

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Do not install damaged components.



- C. Fit joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
- D. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints.
- E. Install anchors with separators and isolators to prevent metal corrosion and electrolytic deterioration and to prevent impeding movement of moving joints.
- F. Seal perimeter and other joints watertight unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Metal Protection:
  - 1. Where aluminum is in contact with dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with materials recommended by manufacturer for this purpose or by installing nonconductive spacers.
  - 2. Where aluminum is in contact with concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.
- H. Set continuous sill members and flashing in full sealant bed, as specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants," to produce weathertight installation.
- I. Install joint filler behind sealant as recommended by sealant manufacturer.
- J. Install components plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades.
- K. Install glazing as specified in Section 088000 "Glazing."
- L. Install structural glazing as follows:
  - 1. Prepare surfaces that will contact structural sealant in accordance with sealant manufacturer's written instructions, to ensure compatibility and adhesion. Preparation includes, but is not limited to, cleaning and priming surfaces.
  - 2. Set glazing into framing in accordance with sealant manufacturer and framing manufacturer's written instructions and standard practice. Use a spacer or backer as recommended by manufacturer.
  - 3. Set glazing with proper orientation so that coatings face exterior or interior as specified.
  - 4. Hold glazing in place using temporary retainers of type and spacing recommended by manufacturer, until structural sealant joint has cured.
  - 5. Apply structural sealant to completely fill cavity, in accordance with sealant manufacturer and framing manufacturer's written instructions and in compliance with local codes.
  - 6. Apply structural sealant at temperatures indicated by sealant manufacturer for type of sealant.
  - 7. Allow structural sealant to cure in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 8. Clean and protect glass as indicated in Section 088000 "Glazing."
  - 9. After structural sealant has completely cured, remove temporary retainers and insert backer rod between lites of glass as recommended by sealant manufacturer.
  - 10. Install weatherseal sealant to completely fill cavity, in accordance with sealant manufacturer's written instructions, to produce weatherproof joints.

### 3.3 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Install aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems to comply with the following maximum tolerances:
1. Plumb: 1/8 inch in 10 feet (3.2 mm in 3 m); 1/4 inch in 40 feet (6.35 mm in 12.2 m).
  2. Level: 1/8 inch in 20 feet (3.2 mm in 6 m); 1/4 inch in 40 feet (6.35 mm in 12.2 m).
  3. Alignment:
    - a. Where surfaces abut in line or are separated by reveal or protruding element up to 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
    - b. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element from 1/2 to 1 inch (12.7 to 25.4 mm) wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/8 inch (3.2 mm).
    - c. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element of 1 inch (25.4 mm) wide or more, limit offset from true alignment to 1/4 inch (6 mm).
  4. Location: Limit variation from plane to 1/8 inch in 12 feet (3.2 mm in 3.6 m); 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) over total length.

END OF SECTION 084113

## SECTION 084413 - GLAZED ALUMINUM CURTAIN WALLS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Glazed aluminum curtain wall systems:
  - a. Conventionally glazed.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for installation of joint sealants installed with glazed aluminum curtain walls and for sealants to the extent not specified in this Section.
2. Section 088000 "Glazing" for curtain wall glazing.

#### 1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: For glazed aluminum curtain walls. Include plans, elevations, sections, full-size details, and attachments to other work.

1. Include details of provisions for assembly expansion and contraction and for draining moisture occurring within the assembly to the exterior.
2. Include full-size isometric details of each type of vertical-to-horizontal intersection of glazed aluminum curtain walls, showing the following:
  - a. Joinery, including concealed welds.
  - b. Anchorage.
  - c. Expansion provisions.
  - d. Glazing.
  - e. Flashing and drainage.

3. Show connection to and continuity with adjacent thermal, weather, air, and vapor barriers.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.

- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, in manufacturer's standard sizes.
- E. Delegated-Design Submittal: For glazed aluminum curtain walls, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data:
  - 1. For Installer.
- B. Energy Performance Certificates: For glazed aluminum curtain walls, accessories, and components from manufacturer.
  - 1. Basis for Certification: NFRC-certified energy performance values for each glazed aluminum curtain wall.
- C. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For glazed aluminum curtain walls to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer and that employs a qualified glazing contractor for this Project who is certified under the North American Contractor Certification Program (NACC) for Architectural Glass & Metal (AGM) contractors and that employs glazing technicians certified under the Architectural Glass and Metal Technician (AGMT) certification program.

#### 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Assembly Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace components of glazed aluminum curtain wall that do not comply with requirements or that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
    - b. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
    - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
    - d. Water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas.
    - e. Failure of operating components.
  - 2. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

- B. Special Finish Warranty, Anodized Finishes: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace aluminum that shows evidence of deterioration of anodized finishes within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
    - a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested in accordance with ASTM D2244.
    - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested in accordance with ASTM D4214.
    - c. Cracking, peeling, or chipping.
  - 2. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design glazed aluminum curtain walls.
- B. General Performance: Comply with performance requirements specified, as determined by testing of glazed aluminum curtain walls representing those indicated for this Project without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
  - 1. Glazed aluminum curtain walls shall withstand movements of supporting structure, including, but not limited to, story drift, twist, column shortening, long-term creep, and deflection from uniformly distributed and concentrated live loads.
  - 2. Failure also includes the following:
    - a. Thermal stresses transferring to building structure.
    - b. Glass breakage.
    - c. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
    - d. Loosening or weakening of fasteners, attachments, and other components.
    - e. Failure of operating units.
- C. Structural Loads:
  - 1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Other Design Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
- D. Deflection of Framing Members Supporting Glass: At design wind load, as follows:
  - 1. Deflection Normal to Wall Plane: Limited to 1/175 of clear span for spans of up to 13 feet 6 inches (4.1 m) and to 1/240 of clear span plus 1/4 inch (6.35 mm) for spans of greater than 13 feet 6 inches (4.1 m).
  - 2. Deflection Parallel to Glazing Plane: Limited to amount not exceeding that which reduces glazing bite to less than 75 percent of design dimension and that which reduces edge clearance between framing members and glazing or other fixed components to less than 1/8 inch (3.2 mm).

- a. Operable Units: Provide a minimum 1/16-inch (1.6-mm) clearance between framing members and operable units.
- E. Structural: Test in accordance with ASTM E330/E330M as follows:
  - 1. When tested at positive and negative wind-load design pressures, assemblies do not evidence deflection exceeding specified limits.
  - 2. When tested at 150 percent of positive and negative wind-load design pressures, assemblies, including anchorage, do not evidence material failures, structural distress, or permanent deformation of main framing members exceeding 0.2 percent of span.
  - 3. Test Durations: As required by design wind velocity, but not less than 10 seconds.
- F. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: Test in accordance with ASTM E331 as follows:
  - 1. No evidence of water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas when tested in accordance with a minimum static-air-pressure differential of 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (300 Pa).

## 2.2 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain all components of curtain-wall system and storefront system, including framing and accessories, from single manufacturer.

## 2.3 GLAZED ALUMINUM CURTAIN WALL SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturer's: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. EFCO Corporation
  - 2. Kawneer North America
  - 3. YKK AP America Inc
- B. Framing Members: Manufacturer's extruded- or formed-aluminum framing members of thickness required and reinforced as required to support imposed loads.
  - 1. Construction: Thermally broken.
  - 2. Glazing System: Retained mechanically with gaskets on four sides.
  - 3. Glazing Plane: Front.
  - 4. Finish: Color anodic finish.
  - 5. System: Stick system.
  - 6. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
  - 7. Steel Reinforcement: As required by manufacturer.
- C. Pressure Caps: Manufacturer's standard aluminum components that mechanically retain glazing.
  - 1. Include snap-on aluminum trim that conceals fasteners.
- D. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's standard high-strength aluminum with nonstaining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.

## 2.4 GLAZING

- A. Glazing: Comply with Section 088000 "Glazing."
- B. Glazing Gaskets: ASTM C509 or ASTM C864. Compression-type, replaceable EPDM.
  - 1. Color: Black.
- C. Glazing Sealants: As recommended by manufacturer.

## 2.5 MATERIALS

- A. Sheet and Plate: ASTM B209 (ASTM B209M).
- B. Extruded Bars, Rods, Profiles, and Tubes: ASTM B221 (ASTM B221M).
- C. Structural Profiles: ASTM B308/B308M.
- D. Steel Reinforcement:
  - 1. Structural Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A36/A36M.
  - 2. Cold-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A1008/A1008M.
  - 3. Hot-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A1011/A1011M.
- E. Steel Reinforcement Primer: Manufacturer's standard zinc-rich, corrosion-resistant primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide No. 12.00; applied immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment. Select surface preparation methods in accordance with recommendations in SSPC-SP COM, and prepare surfaces in accordance with applicable SSPC standard.

## 2.6 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.
  - 1. Use self-locking devices where fasteners are subject to loosening or turning out from thermal and structural movements, wind loads, or vibration.
  - 2. Reinforce members as required to receive fastener threads.
- B. Anchors: Three-way adjustable anchors with minimum adjustment of 1 inch (25.4 mm) that accommodate fabrication and installation tolerances in material and finish compatible with adjoining materials and recommended by manufacturer.
- C. Concealed Flashing: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding flashing compatible with adjacent materials.
- D. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt-mastic paint containing no asbestos, formulated for 30-mil (0.762-mm) thickness per coat.

## 2.7 FABRICATION

- A. Form or extrude aluminum shapes before finishing.
- B. Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:
  - 1. Profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.
  - 2. Accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered.
  - 3. Physical and thermal isolation of glazing from framing members.
  - 4. Accommodations for thermal and mechanical movements of glazing and framing to maintain required glazing edge clearances.
  - 5. Provisions for field replacement of glazing from exterior.
  - 6. Fasteners, anchors, and connection devices that are concealed from view to greatest extent possible.
- C. Fabricate components to resist water penetration as follows:
  - 1. Internal guttering system or other means to drain water passing joints, condensation occurring within framing members, and moisture migrating within glazed aluminum curtain wall to exterior.
  - 2. Pressure-equalized system or double barrier design with primary air and vapor barrier at interior side of glazed aluminum curtain wall and secondary seal weeped and vented to exterior.
- D. Curtain-Wall Framing: Fabricate components for assembly using head-and-sill-receptor system with shear blocks at intermediate horizontal members.
- E. After fabrication, clearly mark components to identify their locations in Project in accordance with Shop Drawings.

## 2.8 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A42/A44, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.
  - 1. Color: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors and color densities.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.



- B. Do not install damaged components.
- C. Fit joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
- D. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints.
- E. Install anchors with separators and isolators to prevent metal corrosion and electrolytic deterioration and to prevent impeding movement of moving joints.
- F. Where welding is required, weld components in concealed locations to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Protect glazing surfaces from welding.
- G. Seal joints watertight unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Metal Protection:
  - 1. Where aluminum is in contact with dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with primer, applying sealant or tape, or installing nonconductive spacers as recommended by manufacturer for this purpose.
  - 2. Where aluminum is in contact with concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.
- I. Install components to drain water passing joints, condensation occurring within framing members, and moisture migrating within glazed aluminum curtain wall to exterior.
- J. Install components plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF OPERABLE UNITS

- A. Install operable units level and plumb, securely anchored, and without distortion. Adjust weather-stripping contact and hardware movement to produce proper operation.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF GLAZING

- A. Install glazing as specified in Section 088000 "Glazing."

### 3.5 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Install glazed aluminum curtain walls to comply with the following maximum tolerances:
  - 1. Plumb: 1/8 inch in 10 feet (3.2 mm in 3 m); 1/4 inch in 40 feet (6.35 mm in 12.2 m).
  - 2. Level: 1/8 inch in 20 feet (3.2 mm in 6 m); 1/4 inch in 40 feet (6.35 mm in 12.2 m).
  - 3. Alignment:
    - a. Where surfaces abut in line or are separated by reveal or protruding element up to 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
    - b. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element from 1/2 to 1 inch (12.7 to 25.4 mm) wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/8 inch (3.2 mm).

- c. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element of 1 inch (25.4 mm) wide or more, limit offset from true alignment to 1/4 inch (6 mm).
- 4. Location: Limit variation from plane to 1/8 inch in 12 feet (3.2 mm in 3.6 m); 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) over total length.

END OF SECTION 084413

## SECTION 087100 - DOOR HARDWARE

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Hardware for wood and hollow metal doors.
2. Hardware for fire-rated doors.
3. Electrically operated and controlled hardware.
4. Lock cylinders for doors with balance of hardware specified in other sections.
5. Thresholds.
6. Weatherstripping and gasketing.

B. Related Requirements

1. Section 081113 - Hollow Metal Doors and Frames.
2. Section 081416 - Flush Wood Doors.
3. Section 281000 - Access Control: Electronic access control devices.

C. Reference Standards

1. ADA Standards - 2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design; 2010.
2. BHMA A156.1 - Standard for Butts and Hinges; 2021.
3. BHMA A156.2 - Bored and Preassembled Locks and Latches; 2022.
4. BHMA A156.3 - Exit Devices; 2020.
5. BHMA A156.4 - Door Controls - Closers; 2019.
6. BHMA A156.5 - Cylinders and Input Devices for Locks; 2020.
7. BHMA A156.6 - Standard for Architectural Door Trim; 2021.
8. BHMA A156.7 - Template Hinge Dimensions; 2016.
9. BHMA A156.8 - Door Controls - Overhead Stops and Holders; 2021.
10. BHMA A156.13 - Mortise Locks & Latches Series 1000; 2022.
11. BHMA A156.16 - Auxiliary Hardware; 2018.
12. BHMA A156.21 - Thresholds; 2019.
13. BHMA A156.22 - Standard for Gasketing; 2021.
14. BHMA A156.28 - Standard for Recommended Practices for Mechanical Keying Systems; 2018.
15. BHMA A156.115 - Hardware Preparation in Steel Doors and Steel Frames; 2016.
16. BHMA A156.115W - Hardware Preparation in Wood Doors with Wood or Steel Frames; 2006.
17. DHI (H&S) - Sequence and Format for the Hardware Schedule; 2019.
18. DHI (KSN) - Keying Systems and Nomenclature; 2019.
19. DHI (LOCS) - Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Standard Steel Doors and Frames; 2004.
20. DHI WDHS.3 - Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Flush Wood Doors; 1993; also in WDHS-1/WDHS-5 Series, 1996.
21. ICC (IBC) - International Building Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
22. ICC A117.1 - Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities; 2017.
23. ITS (DIR) - Directory of Listed Products; Current Edition.

24. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
25. NFPA 80 - Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives; 2022.
26. NFPA 101 - Life Safety Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
27. NFPA 105 - Standard for Smoke Door Assemblies and Other Opening Protectives; 2022.
28. NFPA 252 - Standard Methods of Fire Tests of Door Assemblies; 2022.
29. UL (DIR) - Online Certifications Directory; Current Edition.
30. UL 10C - Standard for Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

## 1.2 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate the manufacture, fabrication, and installation of products that door hardware is installed on.
- B. Sequence installation to ensure facility services connections are achieved in an orderly and expeditious manner.
- C. Preinstallation Meeting: Convene a preinstallation meeting one week prior to commencing work of this section; require attendance by affected installers and the following:
  1. Architect.
  2. Hardware Installer.
  3. Owner's Security Consultant.
- D. Furnish templates for door and frame preparation to manufacturers and fabricators of products requiring internal reinforcement for door hardware.
- E. Keying Requirements Meeting:
  1. Attendance Required:
    - a. Contractor.
    - b. Door Hardware Installer.
    - c. Owner's Security Consultant.
  2. Agenda:
    - a. Establish keying requirements.
    - b. Verify locksets and locking hardware are functionally correct for project requirements.
    - c. Verify that keying and programming complies with project requirements.
    - d. Establish keying submittal schedule and update requirements.
  3. Incorporate "Keying Requirements Meeting" decisions into keying submittal upon review of door hardware keying system including, but not limited to, the following:
  4. Record minutes and distribute copies within two days after meeting to participants, with two copies to Architect, Owner, participants, and those affected by decisions made.
  5. Deliver established keying requirements to manufacturers.

## 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.

- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's catalog literature for each type of hardware, marked to clearly show products to be furnished for this project, and includes construction details, material descriptions, finishes, and dimensions and profiles of individual components.
- C. Shop Drawings - Door Hardware Schedule: A detailed listing that includes each item of hardware to be installed on each door.
  - 1. Comply with DHI (H&S) using door numbering scheme and hardware set numbers as indicated in Contract Documents.
    - a. Submit in vertical format.
  - 2. List groups and suffixes in proper sequence.
  - 3. Include complete description for each door listed.
  - 4. Include manufacturer's and product names, and catalog numbers; include functions, types, styles, sizes and finishes of each item.
  - 5. Include account of abbreviations and symbols used in schedule.
- D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special procedures and perimeter conditions requiring special attention.
- E. Manufacturer's qualification statement.
- F. Installer's qualification statement.
- G. Supplier's qualification statement.
- H. Maintenance Data: Include data on operating hardware, lubrication requirements, and inspection procedures related to preventative maintenance.
- I. Keying Schedule:
  - 1. Submit three (3) copies of Keying Schedule in compliance with requirements established during Keying Requirements Meeting unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Warranty: Submit manufacturer's warranty and ensure that forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.
- K. Maintenance Materials and Tools: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
  - 1. See Section 016000 - Product Requirements, for additional provisions.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Standards for Fire-Rated Doors: Maintain one copy of each referenced standard on site, for use by Architect and Contractor.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section with minimum three years of documented experience.
- C. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of the type specified for commercial door hardware with at least three years of documented experience.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Package hardware items individually; label and identify each package with door opening code to match door hardware schedule.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 017800 - Closeout Submittals for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Manufacturer Warranty: Provide manufacturer warranty against defects in material and workmanship for period indicated, from Date of Substantial Completion. Complete forms in Owner's name and register with manufacturer.
  - 1. Closers: Five years, minimum.
  - 2. Exit Devices: Three years, minimum.
  - 3. Locksets and Cylinders: Three years, minimum.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For each type of door hardware to include in maintenance manuals.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Standards for Fire-Rated Doors: Maintain one copy of each referenced standard on site, for use by Architect and Contractor.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section with minimum three years of documented experience.
- C. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of the type specified for commercial door hardware with at least three years of documented experience.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Inventory door hardware on receipt and provide secure lockup for door hardware delivered to Project site.
- B. Tag each item or package separately with identification coordinated with the final door hardware schedule, and include installation instructions, templates, and necessary fasteners with each item or package.
- C. Deliver keys to manufacturer of key control system for subsequent delivery to Owner.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of door hardware that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Structural failures, including excessive deflection, cracking, or breakage.
  - b. Faulty operation of doors and door hardware.
  - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering and use.
2. Warranty Period: **Three** years from date of Substantial Completion unless otherwise indicated below:
  - a. Electromagnetic and Delayed-Egress Locks: **Five** years from date of Substantial Completion.
  - b. Exit Devices: **Two** years from date of Substantial Completion.
  - c. Manual Closers: **10** years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain each type of door hardware from single manufacturer.
  1. Provide electrified door hardware from same manufacturer as mechanical door hardware unless otherwise indicated. Manufacturers that perform electrical modifications and that are listed by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction are acceptable.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Where fire-rated doors are indicated, provide door hardware complying with NFPA 80 that is listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing at positive pressure in accordance with NFPA 252 or UL 10C.
- B. Smoke- and Draft-Control Door Assemblies: Where smoke- and draft-control door assemblies are required, provide door hardware that complies with requirements of assemblies tested in accordance with UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105.
  1. Air-Leakage Rate: Maximum air leakage of **0.3 cfm per sq. ft. (3 cu. m per minute/sq. m)** at the tested pressure differential of **0.3 inch wg (75 Pa)** of water.
- C. Electrified Door Hardware: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Means of Egress Doors: Latches do not require more than 15 lbf (67 N) to release the latch. Locks do not require use of a key, tool, or special knowledge for operation.
- E. Accessibility Requirements: For door hardware on doors in an accessible route, comply with **the USDOJ's "2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design"**.

1. Provide operating devices that do not require tight grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist and that operate with a force of not more than 5 lbf (22.2 N).
2. Comply with the following maximum opening-force requirements:
  - a. Interior, Non-Fire-Rated Hinged Doors: 5 lbf (22.2 N) applied perpendicular to door.
  - b. Sliding or Folding Doors: 5 lbf (22.2 N) applied parallel to door at latch.
  - c. Fire Doors: Minimum opening force allowable by authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Bevel raised thresholds with a slope of not more than 1:2. Provide thresholds not more than 1/2 inch (13 mm) high.
4. Adjust door closer sweep periods so that, from an open position of 90 degrees, the door will take at least 5 seconds to move to a position of 12 degrees from the latch.
5. Adjust spring hinges so that, from an open position of 70 degrees, the door will take at least 1.5 seconds to move to the closed position.

## 2.3 HINGES

- A. Manufacturers: Conventional butt hinges.
  1. BEST; dormakaba Group
  2. Hager.
  3. Mckinney.
- B. Properties:
  1. Butt Hinges: As applicable to each item specified.
    - a. Heavy Duty Hinges: Minimum of three (3) permanently lubricated non-detachable bearings.
    - b. Template screw hole locations.
    - c. Bearing assembly installed after plating.
    - d. Bearings: Concealed fully hardened bearings, 5 knuckle.
    - e. Bearing Shells: Shapes consistent with barrels.
    - f. Pins: Easily seated, non-rising pins.
      - 1) Fully plate hinge pins.
      - 2) Non-Removable Pins: Slotted stainless steel screws.
    - g. UL 10C listed for fire-resistance-rated doors.
- C. Sizes: See Door Hardware Schedule.
  1. Hinge Widths: As required to clear surrounding trim.
  2. Sufficient size to allow 180 degree swing of door.
- D. Finishes: See Door Hardware Schedule.
  1. Fully polish hinges; front, back, and barrel.
- E. Grades:
  1. Butt Hinges: Comply with BHMA A156.1 and BHMA A156.7 for templated hinges.
- F. Material: Base metal as indicated for each item by BHMA material and finish designation.
- G. Types:
  1. Butt Hinges: Include full mortise hinges.



- H. Options: As applicable to each item specified.
- I. Applications: At swinging doors.
  - 1. Provide non-removable pins at out-swinging doors with locking hardware and all exterior doors.

## 2.4 BOLTS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Trimco
  - 2. Rockwood.
  - 3. Ives.
- B. Properties:
  - 1. Flush Bolts:
    - a. Manual Flush Bolts: Manually latching upon closing of door leaf.
      - 1) Bolt Throw: 3/4 inch (19 mm), minimum.
  - 2. Dustproof Strikes: For bolting into floor, provide except at metal thresholds.
- C. Options:
  - 1. Extension Bolts: In leading edge of door, one bolt into floor, one bolt into top of frame.

## 2.5 EXIT DEVICES

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. BEST, dormakaba Group
  - 2. Von Duprin.
  - 3. Detex.
- B. Properties:
  - 1. Actuation: Full-length touchpad.
  - 2. Touchpads: "T" style metal touchpads and rail assemblies with matching chassis covers end caps.
  - 3. Latch Bolts: Stainless steel deadlocking with 3/4 inch (19 mm) projection using latch bolt.
  - 4. Lever Design: Match project standard lockset trims.
  - 5. Cylinder: Include where cylinder dogging or locking trim is indicated.
  - 6. Strike as recommended by manufacturer for application indicated.
  - 7. Sound dampening on touch bar.
  - 8. Dogging:
    - a. Non-Fire-Resistance-Rated Devices: Cylinder 1/4 inch (6 mm) hex key dogging.
    - b. Fire-Resistance-Rated Devices: Manual dogging not permitted.
  - 9. Touch bar assembly on wide style exit devices to have a 1/4 inch (6.3 mm) clearance to allow for vision frames.
  - 10. All exposed exit device components to be of architectural metals and "true" architectural finishes.
  - 11. Handing: Field-reversible.
  - 12. Fasteners on Back Side of Device Channel: Concealed - exposed fasteners not allowed.
  - 13. Vertical Latch Assemblies' Operation: Gravity, without use of springs.

- C. Grades: Complying with BHMA A156.3, Grade 1.
  - 1. Provide exit devices tested and certified by UL or by a recognized independent laboratory for mechanical operational testing to 10 million cycles minimum with inspection confirming Grade 1 Loaded Forces have been maintained.
- D. Options:
  - 1. Electrified Devices:
    - a. Latchbolt Retraction: motorized latchbolt retraction.

## 2.6 Removable Mullions

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. BEST, dormakaba Group
  - 2. Von Duprin.
  - 3. Detex.
- B. Properties:
  - 1. Rectangular shape 3 inches (76 mm) by 2 inches (51 mm) tubes with minimum 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) wall thickness.
  - 2. Furnished by the same manufacturer as exit devices.
  - 3. Pre-drilled holes for installation of exit device strikes.
  - 4. Spacers: Provide as required for proper installation, based on frame profile and dimensions.
- C. Grades: Complying with BHMA A156.3.
- D. Materials: Manufacturer's standard for items specified.
  - 1. Top and Bottom Brackets: Investment-cast steel.
- E. Options:
  - 1. Furnish Keyed Removable "KR" feature and corresponding cylinders as specified.
    - a. Mullions capable of being installed without physical key present.
    - b. Physical key required to operate.
- F. Applications: As indicated on drawings and in Door Hardware Schedule.

## 2.7 LOCK CYLINDERS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. BEST, dormakaba Group
  - 2. Sargent
  - 3. Schlage
- B. Properties:
  - 1. Lock Cylinders: Provide key access on outside of each lock, unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Provide cams and/or tailpieces as required for locking devices.
    - b. Provide cylinders with appropriate format interchangeable cores where indicated.
- C. Grades:

1. Standard Security Cylinders: Comply with BHMA A156.5.

D. Material:

1. Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant brass alloy.

E. Types: As applicable to each item specified.

1. Standard security small format interchangeable core (SFIC) type cylinders, with seven-pin, 1C - 7-pin cores.

F. Products:

1. Rim/mortise: 1E.

## 2.8 MORTISE LOCKS

A. Manufacturers:

1. BEST, dormakaba Group
2. Schlage.
3. Sargent.

B. Properties:

1. Mechanical Locks: Manufacturer's standard.
  - a. Fitting modified ANSI A115.1 door preparation.
  - b. Door Thickness Coordination Fitting 1-3/4 inch (44 mm) to 2-1/4 inch (57 mm) thick doors.
  - c. Auxiliary Deadlatch: One piece stainless steel, permanently lubricated.
  - d. Backset: 2-3/4 inch (70 mm).
  - e. Provide visual locking indicator mounted on both sides of the door. (VIB)
  - f. Lever Trim:
    - 1) Functionality: Allow the lever handle to move up to 45 degrees from horizontal position prior to engaging the latchbolt assembly.
    - 2) Strength: Locksets outside locked lever designed to withstand minimum 1,400 inch-lbs (158.2 Nm) of torque. In excess of that, a replaceable part will shear. Key from outside and/or inside lever will still operate lockset.
    - 3) Spindle: Designed to prevent forced entry from attacking of lever.
    - 4) Independent spring mechanism for each lever.
      - a) Trim to be self-aligning and thru-bolted.
    - 5) Handles: Made of forged or cast brass, bronze, or stainless steel construction. Levers that contain a hollow cavity are not acceptable.
    - 6) Levers to operate a roller bearing spindle hub mechanism.

C. Finishes: See Door Hardware Schedule.

1. Core Faces: Match finish of lockset.

D. Grades:

1. Comply with BHMA A156.13, Grade 1, Security; Grade 2.

## 2.9 CYLINDRICAL LOCKS

A. Manufacturers:

1. BEST, dormakaba Group: [www.bestaccess.com/#sle](http://www.bestaccess.com/#sle).
2. Schlage.
3. Sargent.

B. Properties:

1. Mechanical Locks:
  - a. Fitting modified ANSI A115.2 door preparation.
  - b. Door Thickness Fit: 1-3/8 inches (35 mm) to 2-1/4 inches (57 mm) thick doors.
  - c. Construction: Hub, side plate, shrouded rose, locking pin to be a one-piece casting with a shrouded locking lug.
    - 1) Through-bolted anti-rotational studs.
  - d. Cast stainless steel latch retractor with roller bearings for exceptionally smooth operation and superior strength and durability.
  - e. Bored Hole: 2-1/8 inch (54 mm) diameter.
  - f. Backset: 2-3/4 inches (70 mm) unless otherwise indicated.
  - g. Latch: Single piece tail-piece construction.
    - 1) Latchbolt Throw: 9/16 inch (14.3 mm), minimum.
  - h. Cylinders:
    - 1) Cylinder Core Types: Locks capable of supporting manufacturers' cores, as applicable.
      - a) Small format interchangeable.
  - i. Lever Trim:
    - 1) Style: See Door Hardware Schedule.
    - 2) Functionality: Allow the lever handle to move up to 45 degrees from horizontal position prior to engaging the latchbolt assembly.
    - 3) Strength: Locksets outside locked lever designed to withstand minimum 1,400 inch-lbs (158.2 Nm) of torque. In excess of that, a replaceable part will shear. Key from outside and/or inside lever will still operate lockset.
    - 4) Independent spring mechanism for each lever.
      - a) Contain lever springs in the main lock hub.
    - 5) Outside Lever Sleeve: Seamless one-piece construction.
    - 6) Keyed Levers: Removable only after core is removed by authorized control key.

C. Finishes: See Door Hardware Schedule.

1. Core Faces: Match finish of lockset.

D. Grades: Comply with BHMA A156.2, Grade 1, Series 4000, Operational Grade 1, Extra Heavy Duty.

1. Durability: Passing 50 million cycle tests verified by third party testing agency.

E. Material: Manufacturer's standard for specified lock.

1. Critical Latch and Chassis Components: Brass or corrosion-resistance treated steel.
2. Outside Lever Sleeve: Hardened steel alloy.

## 2.10 DOOR PULLS AND PUSH PLATES

A. Manufacturers:

1. Trimco
2. Baldwin.

3. Burns.

B. Properties:

1. Pull Type: Straight, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Push Plate Type: Flat, with square corners, unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. Edges: Beveled, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Grades: Comply with BHMA A156.6.

D. Material: Stainless steel, unless otherwise indicated.

2.11 CLOSERS

A. Manufacturers:

1. BEST, dormakaba Group
2. Norton.
3. Sargent.

B. Properties:

1. Surface Mounted Closers: Manufacturer's standard.
  - a. Construction: Aluminum.
  - b. Maximum Projection from Face of Door: 2-7/16 inches (62 mm).
  - c. Mechanism: Separate tamper-resistant adjusting valves for closing and latching speeds.
    - 1) Include advanced backcheck feature.
    - 2) Include delayed action feature.
  - d. Hydraulic Fluid: All-weather type.
  - e. Arm Assembly: Standard for product specified.
    - 1) Include spring-loaded stop feature, as specified in Door Hardware Schedule.
    - 2) Parallel arm to be a heavy-duty rigid arm.
  - f. Covers:
    - 1) Type: Standard for product selected.
      - a) Full.
    - 2) Material: Metal.

C. Grades:

1. Closers: Comply with BHMA A156.4, Grade 1.
  - a. Underwriters Laboratories Compliance:
    - 1) Product Listing: UL (DIR) and ULC for use on fire-resistance-rated doors.
      - a) UL 228 - Door Closers-Holders, With or Without Integral Smoke Detectors.

D. Types:

1. Rack-and-pinion, surface-mounted. 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) minimum bore.

E. Installation:

1. Mounting: Includes surface mounted installations.
2. Mount closers on non-public side of door and stair side of stair doors unless otherwise noted in hardware sets.
3. At out swinging exterior doors, mount closer on interior side of door.

4. Provide adapter plates, shim spacers, and blade stop spacers as required by frame and door conditions.
5. Where an overlapping astragal is included on pairs of swinging doors, provide coordinator to ensure door leaves close in proper order.

## 2.12 OVERHEAD STOPS AND HOLDERS

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. dormakaba; dormakaba Group
  2. Architectural Builders Hardware Mfg (ABH)
  3. Glynn Jonson.
- B. Properties:
- C. Sizes: Manufacturer's standard for the application.
- D. Finishes:
  1. Arms and Brackets: Zinc-plated.
- E. Grades: As applicable to item specified.
  1. Comply with BHMA A156.8, Grade 1.
- F. Material: Base metal as indicated for each item by BHMA material and finish designation.
  1. Track Channel: Extruded aluminum alloy.
  2. Slide Block: Machined from solid brass alloy.
- G. Types:
  1. Concealed.

## 2.13 PROTECTION PLATES

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. Baldwin.
  2. Burns.
- B. Properties:
  1. Edges: Beveled, on four (4) unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Grades: Comply with BHMA A156.6.
- D. Material: As indicated for each item by BHMA material and finish designation.
  1. Metal Properties: Stainless steel.
    - a. Metal, Standard Duty: Thickness 0.050 inch (1.27 mm), minimum.
- E. Installation:
  1. Fasteners: Countersunk screw fasteners

## 2.14 STOPS AND HOLDERS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Trimco
  - 2. Baldwin.
  - 3. Burns.
- B. General: Provide overhead stop/holder when wall or floor stop is not feasible.
- C. Grades:
  - 1. Wall Bumpers: Comply with BHMA A156.16 and Resilient Material Retention Test as described in this standard.
- D. Material: Base metal as indicated for each item by BHMA material and finish designation.
- E. Types:
  - 1. Wall Bumpers: Bumper, concave, wall stop.
- F. Installation:
  - 1. Non-Masonry Walls: Confirm adequate wall reinforcement has been installed to allow lasting installation of wall bumpers.

## 2.15 THRESHOLDS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. National Guard Products, Inc
  - 2. Reese.
  - 3. Zero.
- B. Properties:
  - 1. Threshold Surface: Fluted horizontal grooves across full width.
- C. Grades: Thresholds: Comply with BHMA A156.21.
- D. Material: Base metal as indicated for each item by BHMA material and finish designation.
  - 1. Threshold Assemblies: Aluminum.
- E. Types: As applicable to project conditions. Provide barrier-free type at every location where specified.
  - 1. Saddle Thresholds: With thermal break.

## 2.16 WEATHERSTRIPPING AND GASKETING

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. National Guard Products, Inc
  - 2. Reese.
  - 3. Zero.
- B. Properties:

1. Adhesive-Backed Perimeter Gasketing: Silicone gasket material applied to frame with self- adhesive.
2. Rigid, Housed, Perimeter Gasketing: Neoprene bulb gasket material held in place by aluminum housing; fastened to frame stop with screws.
3. Door Sweeps: Neoprene gasket material held in place by flat aluminum housing or flange; surface mounted to face of door with screws.
4. Door Sweeps: Nylon gasket material held in place by flat aluminum housing or flange; surface mounted to face of door with screws.

C. Grades: Comply with BHMA A156.22.

## 2.17 ELECTRIFIED HARDWARE

A. Manufacturers:

1. BEST, dormakaba Group
2. RCI; dormakaba Group
3. Security Door Controls.

B. Properties:

1. Door Position Switches: Recessed devices with balanced magnetic contacts.
  - a. Power Requirement: 50 mA @ 30 VDC.
  - b. SPDT configuration with magnetic tamper.
2. Power Supply Units: Manufacturer's standard.
  - a. Enclosures: Lockable NEMA Type 1, with hinged cover and knockouts.
  - b. Power: 14 VDC; 2 AMP.
    - 1) Incoming Power Voltage: 120 VAC.
  - c. Emergency Release Terminals: Designed to release devices upon activation of fire alarm system.
  - d. Auxiliary contacts for remote signaling.
  - e. User-selectable time delay from 0 to 4 minutes.
  - f. Fire Alarm System Interface: Standard.
    - 1) Fire alarm terminal with green LED indicating power is available.
  - g. Output Distribution Board with indicator LEDs.
  - h. On/Off LED power indicator.
3. Power Transfers: Manufacturer's standard.
4. Wire Harnesses: Of sufficient length, with quick connectors.
  - a. Wire Harness End Connection to Power Supply or Junction Box: One end with bare leads.

## 2.18 Keys and Cores

A. Properties: Complying with guidelines of BHMA A156.28.

1. Provide small format interchangeable core.
2. Provide Patented CORMAX keys and cores.
3. Provide keying information in compliance with DHI (KSN) standards.
4. Keying Schedule: Arrange for a keying meeting, with Architect, Owner and hardware supplier, and other involved parties to ensure locksets and locking hardware, are functionally correct and keying complies with project requirements.
5. Keying: Master keyed.



6. Include construction keying and control keying with removable core cylinders.
7. Supply keys in following quantities:
  - a. Master Keys: 4 each.
  - b. Construction Master Keys: 6 each.
  - c. Construction Keys: 15 each.
  - d. Construction Control Keys: 2 each.
  - e. Control Keys if New System: 2 each.
  - f. Change Keys: 2 each for each keyed core.
8. Provide key collection envelopes, receipt cards, and index cards in quantity suitable to manage number of keys.
9. Deliver keys with identifying tags to Owner by security shipment direct from manufacturer.
10. Permanent Keys and Cores: Stamped with applicable key marking for identification. Do not include actual key cuts within visual key control marks or codes. Stamp permanent keys "Do Not Duplicate."
11. Include installation of permanent cores and return construction cores to hardware supplier. Construction cores and keys to remain property of hardware supplier.

## 2.19 FINISHES

- A. Finishes: Identified in Hardware Sets.

## 2.20 FABRICATION

- A. Manufacturer's Nameplate: Do not provide products that have manufacturer's name or trade name displayed in a visible location except in conjunction with required fire-rating labels and as otherwise approved by Architect.
  1. Manufacturer's identification is permitted on rim of lock cylinders only.
- B. Base Metals: Produce door hardware units of base metal indicated, fabricated by forming method indicated, using manufacturer's standard metal alloy, composition, temper, and hardness. Furnish metals of a quality equal to or greater than that of specified door hardware units and ANSI/BHMA A156.18.
- C. Fasteners: Provide door hardware manufactured to comply with published templates prepared for machine, wood, and sheet metal screws. Provide screws that comply with commercially recognized industry standards for application intended; however, aluminum fasteners are not permitted. Provide Phillips flat-head screws with finished heads to match surface of door hardware unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Concealed Fasteners: For door hardware units that are exposed when door is closed, except for units already specified with concealed fasteners. Do not use through bolts for installation where bolt head or nut on opposite face is exposed unless it is the only means of securely attaching the door hardware. Where through bolts are used on hollow door and frame construction, provide sleeves for each through bolt.
  2. Fire-Rated Applications:
    - a. Wood or Machine Screws: For the following:

- 1) Hinges mortised to doors or frames.
  - 2) Strike plates to frames.
  - 3) Closers to doors and frames.
- b. Steel Through Bolts: For the following unless door blocking is provided:
  - 1) Surface hinges to doors.
  - 2) Closers to doors and frames.
  - 3) Surface-mounted exit devices.
3. Spacers or Sex Bolts: For through bolting of hollow-metal doors.
4. Gasketing Fasteners: Provide noncorrosive fasteners for exterior applications and elsewhere as indicated.

## 2.21 FINISHES

- A. Provide finishes complying with ANSI/BHMA A156.18 as indicated in door hardware schedule.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine doors and frames, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, labeled fire-rated door assembly construction, wall and floor construction, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for electrical power systems to verify actual locations of wiring connections before electrified door hardware installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Steel Doors and Frames: For surface-applied door hardware, drill and tap doors and frames in accordance with ANSI/SDI A250.6.
- B. Wood Doors: Comply with door and hardware manufacturers' written instructions.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Mounting Heights: Mount door hardware units at heights unless otherwise indicated or required to comply with governing regulations.
  1. Install hardware in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and applicable codes.
  2. Install hardware using the manufacturer's fasteners provided. Drill and tap all screw holes located in metallic materials. Do not use "Riv-Nuts" or similar products.
  3. Install hardware on fire-rated doors and frames in accordance with applicable codes and NFPA 80.
  4. Install hardware for smoke and draft control doors in accordance with NFPA 105.
  5. Use templates provided by hardware item manufacturer.
  6. Do not install surface mounted items until application of finishes to substrate are fully completed.
  7. Wash down masonry walls and complete painting or staining of doors and frames.
  8. Complete finish flooring prior to installation of thresholds.
  9. Door Hardware Mounting Heights: Distance from finished floor to center line of hardware item. As indicated in following list; unless noted otherwise in Door Hardware Schedule or on drawings.
    - a. For Steel Doors and Frames: Install in compliance with DHI (LOCS) recommendations.
    - b. For Steel Doors and Frames: See Section 081113.
    - c. For Wood Doors: Install in compliance with DHI WDHS.3 recommendations.
    - d. Flush Wood Doors: See Section 081416.
    - e. Mounting heights in compliance with ADA Standards and coordinated with door lites so that hardware does not interfere with lite.
  10. Set exterior door thresholds with full-width bead of elastomeric sealant at each point of contact with floor providing a continuous weather seal; anchor thresholds with stainless steel countersunk screws.
  11. Include in installation for existing doors and frames any necessary field modification and field preparation of doors and frames for new hardware. Provide necessary fillers, reinforcements, and fasteners for mounting new hardware and to cover existing door and frame preparations.
- B. Install each door hardware item to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Where cutting and fitting are required to install door hardware onto or into surfaces that are later to be painted or finished in another way, coordinate removal, storage, and reinstallation of surface protective trim units with finishing work. Do not install surface-mounted items until finishes have been completed on substrates involved.
  1. Set units level, plumb, and true to line and location. Adjust and reinforce attachment substrates as necessary for proper installation and operation.
  2. Drill and countersink units that are not factory prepared for anchorage fasteners. Space fasteners and anchors in accordance with industry standards.
- C. Hinges: Install types and in quantities indicated in door hardware schedule, but not fewer than the number recommended by manufacturer for application indicated or one hinge for every 30 inches (760 mm) of door height, whichever is more stringent, unless other equivalent means of support for door, such as spring hinges or pivots, are provided.
- D. Intermediate Offset Pivots: Where offset pivots are indicated, provide intermediate offset pivots in quantities indicated in door hardware schedule, but not fewer than one intermediate offset pivot

per door and one additional intermediate offset pivot for every 30 inches (760 mm) of door height greater than 90 inches (2286 mm).

- E. Lock Cylinders: Install construction cores to secure building and areas during construction period.
  - 1. Replace construction cores with permanent cores as indicated in keying schedule.
  - 2. Furnish permanent cores to Owner for installation.
- F. Key Control System:
  - 1. Key Control Cabinet: Tag keys and place them on markers and hooks in key control system cabinet, as determined by final keying schedule.
  - 2. Key Lock Boxes: Install where indicated or approved by Architect to provide controlled access for fire and medical emergency personnel.
  - 3. Key Control System Software: Set up multiple-index system based on final keying schedule.
- G. Boxed Power Supplies: Locate power supplies as indicated or, if not indicated, above accessible ceilings. Verify location with Architect.
  - 1. Configuration: Provide one power supply for each door opening with electrified door hardware.
- H. Thresholds: Set thresholds for exterior doors and other doors indicated in full bed of sealant complying with requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- I. Perimeter Gasketing: Apply to head and jamb, forming seal between door and frame.
  - 1. Do not notch perimeter gasketing to install other surface-applied hardware.
- J. Meeting Stile Gasketing: Fasten to meeting stiles, forming seal when doors are closed.
- K. Door Bottoms: Apply to bottom of door, forming seal with threshold when door is closed.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Initial Adjustment: Adjust and check each operating item of door hardware and each door to ensure proper operation or function of every unit. Replace units that cannot be adjusted to operate as intended. Adjust door control devices to compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment and to comply with referenced accessibility requirements.
  - 1. Door Closers: Adjust sweep period to comply with accessibility requirements and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Spring Hinges: Adjust to achieve positive latching when door is allowed to close freely from an open position of 70 degrees and so that closing time complies with accessibility requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 3. Electric Strikes: Adjust horizontal and vertical alignment of keeper to properly engage lock bolt.

### 3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean adjacent surfaces soiled by door hardware installation.
- B. Clean operating items as necessary to restore proper function and finish.
- C. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure that door hardware is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

### 3.7 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Maintenance Tools and Instructions: Furnish a complete set of specialized tools and maintenance instructions for Owner's continued adjustment, maintenance, and removal and replacement of door hardware.

### 3.8 DOOR HARDWARE SCHEDULE

- A. Manufacturer List
  - 1. BES Best
  - 2. PRE BEST (Precision)
  - 3. DK dormakaba
  - 4. DKA dormakaba Architectural
  - 5. NGP National Guard Products
  - 6. TRI Trimco
- B. Schedule:

Set #1

Doors: 100.1, 109.2, 112.2

3	Hinge	CB199 NRP 45X45	32D	BES
1	Power Transfer	EPT-12C		PRE
1	Exit Device	2103 MLR TS 4903 A	630	PRE
1	Rim Cylinder	12E 7 2 PATD	626	BES
1	Door Closer	HD80 16 SPA PC	689	BES
1	Overhead Stop	91 2 S	626	DK
1	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 2" LDW CSK	630	TRI
1	Threshold	425 (10-24 SS MS/LA)	US27	NGP
1	Gasketing	700N Head & Jambs (2)	A	NGP
1	Sweep	200N	A	NGP
1	Power Supply	RPSMLR2BB		PRE
1	Wiring Harness	WH-6E		BES
1	Wiring Harness	WH-192		BES
1	Wiring Harness	WH-38		BES
1	Card Reader	BY DIV. 28		

NOTE: Door 100.1 is normally unlocked during the day and locked at night. Doors 109.2 and 114.2 are normally locked. Presenting proper credentials to the card reader will momentarily retract the latch of the exit device. Egress is always allowed. In the event of power loss, door will remain locked. Door position switch alerts security if door is held open. Touch bar monitor shunts alarm.

## Set #2

Doors: 127.1, 127.7, 127.13

3	Hinge	CB199 NRP 45X45	32D	BES
1	Power Transfer	EPT-12C		PRE
1	Exit Device	2103 MLR TS 4903 A	630	PRE
1	Rim Cylinder	12E 7 2 PATD	626	BES
1	Door Closer	HD80 16 SPA PC	689	BES
1	Overhead Stop	91 2 S	626	DK
1	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 2" LDW CSK	630	TRI
1	Threshold	425 (10-24 SS MS/LA)	US27	NGP
1	Gasketing	700N Head & Jambs (2)	A	NGP
1	Sweep	200N	A	NGP
1	Drip Cap	16 4" ODW	A	NGP
1	Power Supply	RPSMLR2BB		PRE
1	Door Position Switch	MC7		DKA
1	Door Position Switch	MC7		DKA
1	Wiring Harness	WH-6E		BES
1	Wiring Harness	WH-192		BES
1	Wiring Harness	WH-38		BES
1	Card Reader	BY DIV. 28		

NOTE: Door is normally locked. Presenting proper credentials to the card reader will momentarily retract the latch of the exit device. Egress is always allowed. In the event of power loss, door will remain locked. Door position switch alerts security if door is held open. Touch bar monitor shunts alarm.

## Set #3

Doors: 126

3	Hinge	CB191 NRP 45X45	32D	BES
1	Cylindrical Lock	9K 3 7 D 15 D PATD	626	BES
1	Door Closer	HD80 16 SDS PC	689	BES
1	Threshold	425 (10-24 SS MS/LA)	US27	NGP
1	Gasketing	700N Head & Jambs (2)	A	NGP
1	Sweep	200N	A	NGP
1	Drip Cap	16 4" ODW	A	NGP
1	Door Position Switch	MC7		DKA

NOTE: Door position switch alerts security if door is held open.

## Set #4

Doors: 107.2

6	Hinge	CB199 NRP 45X45	32D	BES
1	Mullion	RM 0 KR 822	689	PRE
2	Exit Device	2103 MLR TS 4903 A	630	PRE
3	Rim Cylinder	12E 7 2 PATD	626	BES
2	Overhead Stop	91 2 S	626	DK
2	Door Closer	HD80 16 SPA PC	689	BES
2	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 2" LDW CSK	630	TRI
1	Threshold	425 (10-24 SS MS/LA)	US27	NGP
1	Gasketing	5100N Head & Jambs (2)		NGP
2	Sweep	200N	A	NGP
1	Drip Cap	16 4" ODW	A	NGP
1	Power Supply	RPSMLR2BB		PRE
2	Wiring Harness	WH-6E		BES
2	Wiring Harness	WH-192		BES
2	Wiring Harness	WH-38		BES
1	Card Reader	BY DIV. 28		

NOTE: Door is normally locked. Presenting proper credentials to the card reader will momentarily retract the latch of the exit device. Egress is always allowed. In the event of power loss, door will remain locked. Door position switch alerts security if door is held open. Touch bar monitor shunts alarm.

## Set #5

Doors: 100.2

3	Hinge	CB168 NRP 45X45	26D	BES
1	Power Transfer	EPT-12C		PRE
1	Exit Device	2103 MLR TS 4903 A	630	PRE
1	Rim Cylinder	12E 7 2 PATD	626	BES
1	Door Closer	HD80 16 SPA PC	689	BES
1	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 2" LDW CSK	630	TRI
3	Silencer	1229A	Gray	TRI
1	Power Supply	RPSMLR2BB		PRE
1	Door Position Switch	MC7		DKA
1	Wiring Harness	WH-6E		BES
1	Wiring Harness	WH-192		BES
1	Wiring Harness	WH-38		BES
1	Card Reader	BY DIV. 28		
1	Remote Release	BY DIV. 28		
1	Wall Stop	1270 CV	630	TRI

NOTE: Door is normally locked. Presenting proper credentials to the card reader will momentarily retract the latch of the exit device. Remote release, located in office, retracts the latch of the exit device. Egress is always allowed. In the event of power loss, door will remain locked. Door position switch alerts security if door is held open. Touch bar monitor shunts alarm.

## Set #6

Doors: 108.2, 112.1, 119.1

3	Hinge	CB168 45X45	26D	BES
1	Exit Device	2114 FL 4914 A	630	PRE
1	Door Closer	HD80 16 SPA PC	689	BES
1	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 2" LDW CSK	630	TRI
1	Gasketing	5050 Head & Jambs (2)	B	NGP
1	Wall Stop	1270 CV	630	TRI

## Set #7

Doors: 104.2, 119.2

3	Hinge	CB168 45X45	26D	BES
1	Exit Device	2114 FL 4914 A	630	PRE
1	Door Closer	HD80 16 SPA PC	689	BES
1	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 2" LDW CSK	630	TRI
1	Threshold	425 (10-24 SS MS/LA)	US27	NGP
1	Gasketing	5050 Head & Jambs (2)	B	NGP
1	Gasketing	600	A	NGP
1	Wall Stop	1270 CV	630	TRI

## Set #8

Doors: 117

3	Hinge	CB168 45X45	26D	BES
1	Cylindrical Lock	9K 3 7 D 15 D PATD	626	BES
1	Door Closer	HD80 16 SPA PC	689	BES
1	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 2" LDW CSK	630	TRI
1	Gasketing	5050 Head & Jambs (2)	B	NGP
1	Wall Stop	1270 CV	630	TRI

## Set #9

Doors: 104.1, 111.1, 111.2

3	Hinge	CB168 45X45	26D	BES
1	Exit Device	2114 4914 A	630	PRE
1	Door Closer	HD80 16 SPA PC	689	BES
1	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 2" LDW CSK	630	TRI
3	Silencer	1229A	Gray	TRI
1	Wall Stop	1270 CV	630	TRI



Set #10

Doors: 125

3	Hinge	CB179 NRP 45X45	26D	BES
1	Exit Device	2103 FL 4903 A	630	PRE
1	Rim Cylinder	12E 7 2 PATD	626	BES
1	Overhead Stop	91 2 S	626	DK
1	Door Closer	HD80 16 SPA PC	689	BES
1	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 2" LDW CSK	630	TRI
1	Gasketing	5050 Head & Jambs (2)	B	NGP

Set #11

Doors: 121

3	Hinge	CB168 45X45	26D	BES
1	Exit Device	2114 4914 A	630	PRE
1	Door Closer	HD80 16 SPA PC	689	BES
1	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 2" LDW CSK	630	TRI
1	Threshold	425 (10-24 SS MS/LA)	US27	NGP
1	Gasketing	5050 Head & Jambs (2)	B	NGP
1	Gasketing	600	A	NGP
1	Wall Stop	1270 CV	630	TRI

Set #12

Doors: 124

3	Hinge	CB179 45X45	26D	BES
1	Cylindrical Lock	9K 3 0 N 15 D	626	BES
1	Door Closer	HD80 16 AF80P PC	689	BES
1	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 2" LDW CSK	630	TRI
1	Threshold	425 (10-24 SS MS/LA)	US27	NGP
1	Gasketing	5050 Head & Jambs (2)	B	NGP
1	Gasketing	600	A	NGP
1	Wall Stop	1270 CV	630	TRI

Set #13

Doors: 122, 123

3	Hinge	CB179 45X45	26D	BES
1	Cylindrical Lock	9K 3 0 N 15 D	626	BES
1	Door Closer	HD80 16 AF80P PC	689	BES
1	Door Closer	HD8P BP80	689	BES
1	Overhead Stop	91 2 S	626	DK
1	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 2" LDW CSK	630	TRI
1	Threshold	425 (10-24 SS MS/LA)	US27	NGP
1	Gasketing	5050 Head & Jambs (2)	B	NGP
1	Gasketing	600	A	NGP

Set #14

Doors: 114, 116, 118, 120

3	Hinge	CB179 45X45	26D	BES
1	Cylindrical Lock	9K 3 0 N 15 D	626	BES
1	Door Closer	HD80 16 AF80P PC	689	BES
1	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 2" LDW CSK	630	TRI
1	Gasketing	5050 Head & Jambs (2)	B	NGP
1	Wall Stop	1270 CV	630	TRI

Set #15

Doors: 106

3	Hinge	CB179 45X45	26D	BES
1	Cylindrical Lock	9K 3 0 N 15 D	626	BES
1	Door Closer	HD80 16 AF80P PC	689	BES
1	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 2" LDW CSK	630	TRI
3	Silencer	1229A	Gray	TRI
1	Wall Stop	1270 CV	630	TRI

Set #16

Doors: 103, 107.1, 107A

3	Hinge	CB179 45X45	26D	BES
1	Cylindrical Lock	9K 3 0 N 15 D	626	BES
3	Silencer	1229A	Gray	TRI
1	Wall Stop	1270 CV	630	TRI

Set #17

Doors: 108.1

3	Hinge	CB179 45X45	26D	BES
1	Push Plate	1001 3	630	TRI
1	Pull Plate	1018 3	630	TRI
1	Door Closer	HD80 16 AF80P PC	689	BES
1	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 2" LDW CSK	630	TRI
3	Silencer	1229A	Gray	TRI
1	Wall Stop	1270 CV	630	TRI

Set #18

Doors: 113

3	Hinge	CB179 45X45	26D	BES
1	Cylindrical Lock	9K 3 7 R 15 D PATD	626	BES
3	Silencer	1229A	Gray	TRI
1	Wall Stop	1270 CV	630	TRI

Set #20

Doors: 102, 108A, 108B, 108C, 110D

3	Hinge	CB191 45X45	26D	BES
1	Mortise Lock	45H 0 L 15 H VIB	626AM	BES
1	Door Closer	HD80 16 AF80P PC	689	BES
1	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 2" LDW CSK	630	TRI
1	Mop Plate	KM050 6" X 1" LDW CSK	630	TRI
3	Silencer	1229A	Gray	TRI
1	Wall Stop	1270 CV	630	TRI

Set #21

Doors: 112A, 113A

6	Hinge	CB179 45X45	26D	BES
2	Cylindrical Lock	9K DT 0 1DT 15 D	626	BES
2	Overhead Stop	91 2 S	626	DK
2	Silencer	1229A	Gray	TRI
1	Magnetic Catch	810	603	TRI

Set #22

Doors: 200

6	Hinge	CB179 45X45	26D	BES
1	Flush Bolt	3915	626	TRI
1	Cylindrical Lock	9K 3 0 N 15 D	626	BES
2	Overhead Stop	91 2 H	626	DK
2	Silencer	1229A	Gray	TRI

END OF SECTION 087100

## SECTION 088000 - GLAZING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Glass products.
2. Insulating glass.
3. Glazing sealants.
4. Miscellaneous glazing materials.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Glass Manufacturers: Firms that produce primary glass, fabricated glass, or both, as defined in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Glass Thicknesses: Indicated by thickness designations in millimeters in accordance with ASTM C1036.
- C. IBC: International Building Code.
- D. Interspace: Space between lites of an insulating-glass unit.

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate glazing channel dimensions to provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances to achieve proper safety margins for glazing retention under each design load case, load case combination, and service condition.

#### 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
1. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
  2. Review temporary protection requirements for glazing during and after installation.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- B. Glass Samples: For each type of glass product other than clear monolithic vision glass; 12 inches (300 mm) square.
  - 1. Insulating glass.
- C. Glazing Accessory Samples: For sealants, in 12-inch (300-mm) lengths. Install sealant Samples between two strips of material representative in color of adjoining framing system.
- D. Glazing Schedule: List glass types and thicknesses for each size opening and location. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
- E. Delegated Design Submittal: For glass indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

#### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer manufacturers of fabricated glass units.
- B. Product Certificates: For glass.
- C. Product Test Reports: For fabricated glass and glazing sealants, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
  - 1. For glazing sealants, provide test reports based on testing current sealant formulations within previous 36-month period.
- D. Preconstruction adhesion and compatibility test report.
- E. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricated-Glass Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer of fabricated glass units who is approved and certified by primary glass manufacturer.
- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified glazing contractor for this Project who is certified under the North American Contractor Certification Program (NACC) for Architectural Glass & Metal (AG&M) contractors and who employs glazing technicians certified under the Architectural Glass and Metal Technician (AGMT) certification program.
- C. Glass Testing Agency Qualifications: A qualified independent testing agency accredited according to the NFRC CAP 1 Certification Agency Program.
- D. Sealant Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM C1021 to conduct the testing indicated.

## 1.8 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Adhesion and Compatibility Testing: Test each glass product, tape sealant, gasket, glazing accessory, and glass-framing member for adhesion to and compatibility with elastomeric glazing sealants.
  - 1. Testing is not required if data are submitted based on previous testing of current sealant products and glazing materials matching those submitted.
  - 2. Use ASTM C1087 to determine whether priming and other specific joint-preparation techniques are required to obtain rapid, optimum adhesion of glazing sealants to glass, tape sealants, gaskets, and glazing channel substrates.
  - 3. Test no fewer than eight Samples of each type of material, including joint substrates, shims, sealant backings, secondary seals, and miscellaneous materials.
  - 4. Schedule enough time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
  - 5. For materials failing tests, submit sealant manufacturer's written instructions for corrective measures including use of specially formulated primers.

## 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect glazing materials in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent damage to glass and glazing materials from condensation, temperature changes, direct exposure to sun, or other causes.
- B. Comply with insulating-glass manufacturer's written instructions for venting and sealing units to avoid hermetic seal ruptures due to altitude change.

## 1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not proceed with glazing when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by glazing material manufacturers and when glazing channel substrates are wet from rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
  - 1. Do not install glazing sealants when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F (4.4 deg C).

## 1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Insulating Glass: Manufacturer agrees to replace insulating-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of insulating glass is defined as failure of hermetic seal under normal use that is not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning insulating glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Evidence of failure is obstruction of vision by dust, moisture, or film on interior surfaces of glass.
  - 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Heat-Soaked Tempered Glass: Manufacturer agrees to replace heat-soaked tempered glass units that spontaneously break due to nickel sulfide (NiS)

inclusions at a rate exceeding 0.3 percent (3/1000) within specified warranty period. Coverage for any other cause is excluded.

1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations for Glass: Obtain glass from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Source Limitations for Glazing Accessories: For each product and installation method, obtain from single source from single manufacturer.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Installed glazing systems shall withstand normal thermal movement and wind and impact loads (where applicable) without failure, including loss or glass breakage attributable to defective manufacture, fabrication, or installation; failure of sealants or gaskets to remain watertight and airtight; deterioration of glazing materials; or other defects in construction.
- B. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design glazing.
- C. Structural Performance: Glazing shall withstand the following design loads within limits and under conditions indicated determined in accordance with the IBC and ASTM E1300:
  1. Design Wind Pressures: As indicated on Drawings.
    - a. Wind Design Data: As indicated on Drawings.
    - b. Importance Factor: 1.0.
    - c. Exposure Category: B.
  2. Maximum Lateral Deflection: For glass supported on all four edges, limit center-of-glass deflection at design wind pressure to not more than 1/50 times the short-side length or 1 inch (25 mm), whichever is less.
  3. Thermal Loads: Design glazing to resist thermal stress breakage induced by differential temperature conditions and limited air circulation within individual glass lites and insulated glazing units.
- D. Windborne-Debris-Impact Resistance: Exterior glazing shall pass ASTM E1886 missile-impact and cyclic-pressure tests in accordance with ASTM E1996 for Wind Zone 4 for enhanced protection.
- E. Safety Glazing: Where safety glazing is indicated, provide glazing that complies with 16 CFR 1201, Category II.
- F. Thermal and Optical Performance Properties: Provide glass with performance properties specified, as indicated in manufacturer's published test data, based on procedures indicated below:



1. For monolithic-glass lites, properties are based on units with lites 6 mm thick.
2. For insulating-glass units, properties are based on units of thickness indicated for overall unit and for each lite.
3. U-Factors: Center-of-glazing values, in accordance with NFRC 100 and based on most current non-beta version of LBL's WINDOW computer program, expressed as Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F (W/sq. m x K).
4. SHGC and Visible Transmittance: Center-of-glazing values, in accordance with NFRC 200 and based on most current non-beta version of LBL's WINDOW computer program.
5. Visible Reflectance: Center-of-glazing values, in accordance with NFRC 300.

## 2.3 GLASS PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organizations below unless more stringent requirements are indicated. See these publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
1. NGA Publications: "Glazing Manual."
  2. AAMA Publications: AAMA GDSG-1, "Glass Design for Sloped Glazing," and AAMA TIR A7, "Sloped Glazing Guidelines."
  3. IGMA Publication for Insulating Glass: SIGMA TM-3000, "North American Glazing Guidelines for Sealed Insulating Glass Units for Commercial and Residential Use."
- B. Safety Glazing Labeling: Where safety glazing is indicated, permanently mark glazing with certification label of the SGCC. Label shall indicate manufacturer's name, type of glass, thickness, and safety glazing standard with which glass complies.
- C. Insulating-Glass Certification Program: Permanently marked either on spacers or on at least one component lite of units with appropriate certification label of the IGCC.
- D. Thickness: Where glass thickness is indicated, it is a minimum. Provide glass that complies with performance requirements and is not less than thickness indicated.
1. Minimum Glass Thickness for Exterior Lites: 6 mm.
- E. Strength: Where annealed float glass is indicated, provide annealed float glass, heat-strengthened float glass, or fully tempered float glass as needed to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article. Where heat-strengthened float glass is indicated, provide heat-strengthened float glass or fully tempered float glass as needed to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article. Where fully tempered float glass is indicated, provide fully tempered float glass.

## 2.4 GLASS PRODUCTS

- A. Clear Annealed Float Glass: ASTM C1036, Type I, Class 1 (clear), Quality-Q3.
- B. Fully Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C1048, Kind FT (fully tempered), Condition A (uncoated) unless otherwise indicated, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3.

- C. Heat-Strengthened Float Glass: ASTM C1048, Kind HS (heat strengthened), Type I, Condition A (uncoated) unless otherwise indicated, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3.
- D. Reflective- and Low-E-Coated Vision Glass: ASTM C1376.

## 2.5 INSULATING GLASS

- A. Insulating-Glass Units: Factory-assembled units consisting of sealed lites of glass separated by a dehydrated interspace, qualified in accordance with ASTM E2190.
  - 1. Sealing System: Dual seal, with manufacturer's standard primary and secondary sealants.
  - 2. Perimeter Spacer: Manufacturer's standard spacer material and construction.
  - 3. Desiccant: Molecular sieve or silica gel, or a blend of both.

## 2.6 GLAZING SEALANTS

- A. General:
  - 1. Compatibility: Compatible with one another and with other materials they contact, including glass products, seals of insulating-glass units, and glazing channel substrates, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
  - 2. Suitability: Comply with sealant and glass manufacturers' written instructions for selecting glazing sealants suitable for applications indicated and for conditions existing at time of installation.
  - 3. Colors of Exposed Glazing Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of industry colors.

## 2.7 MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide products of material, size, and shape complying with referenced glazing standard, recommended in writing by manufacturers of glass and other glazing materials for application indicated, and with a proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted in installation.
- B. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Types recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.
- C. Setting Blocks:
  - 1. EPDM with Shore A durometer hardness of 85, plus or minus 5.
  - 2. Type recommended in writing by sealant or glass manufacturer.
- D. Spacers:
  - 1. Neoprene blocks or continuous extrusions of hardness required by glass manufacturer to maintain glass lites in place for installation indicated.
  - 2. Type recommended in writing by sealant or glass manufacturer.

E. Edge Blocks:

1. EPDM with Shore A durometer hardness per manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Type recommended in writing by sealant or glass manufacturer.

## 2.8 FABRICATION OF GLAZING UNITS

- A. Fabricate glazing units in sizes required to fit openings indicated for Project, with edge and face clearances, edge and surface conditions, and bite complying with written instructions of product manufacturer and referenced glazing publications, to comply with system performance requirements.
1. Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on glass framing members and glazing components.
    - a. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.
- B. Clean-cut or flat-grind vertical edges of butt-glazed monolithic lites to produce square edges with slight chamfers at junctions of edges and faces.
- C. Grind smooth and polish exposed glass edges and corners.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine framing, glazing channels, and stops, with Installer present, for compliance with the following:
1. Manufacturing and installation tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners.
  2. Presence and functioning of weep systems.
  3. Minimum required face and edge clearances.
  4. Effective sealing between joints of glass-framing members.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean glazing channels and other framing members receiving glass immediately before glazing. Remove coatings not firmly bonded to substrates.
- B. Examine glazing units to locate exterior and interior surfaces. Label or mark units as needed so that exterior and interior surfaces are readily identifiable. Do not use materials that leave visible marks in the completed Work.

### 3.3 GLAZING, GENERAL

- A. Comply with combined written instructions of manufacturers of glass, sealants, gaskets, and other glazing materials, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass includes glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass, impair performance, or impair appearance.
- C. Apply primers to joint surfaces where required for adhesion of sealants, as determined by preconstruction testing.
- D. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.
- E. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.
- F. Provide spacers for glass lites where length plus width is larger than 50 inches (1270 mm).
  - 1. Locate spacers directly opposite each other on both inside and outside faces of glass. Install correct size and spacing to preserve required face clearances, unless gaskets and glazing tapes are used that have demonstrated ability to maintain required face clearances and to comply with system performance requirements.
  - 2. Provide 1/8-inch- (3-mm-) minimum bite of spacers on glass and use thickness equal to sealant width. With glazing tape, use thickness slightly less than final compressed thickness of tape.
- G. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and in accordance with requirements in referenced glazing publications.
- H. Set glass lites in each series with uniform pattern, draw, bow, and similar characteristics.
- I. Set glass lites with proper orientation so that coatings face exterior or interior as specified.
- J. Where wedge-shaped gaskets are driven into one side of channel to pressurize sealant or gasket on opposite side, provide adequate anchorage so gasket cannot walk out when installation is subjected to movement.
- K. Square cut wedge-shaped gaskets at corners and install gaskets in a manner recommended by gasket manufacturer to prevent corners from pulling away; seal corner joints and butt joints with sealant recommended in writing by gasket manufacturer.

### 3.4 GASKET GLAZING (DRY)

- A. Cut compression gaskets to lengths recommended by gasket manufacturer to fit openings exactly, with allowance for stretch during installation.

- B. Insert soft compression gasket between glass and frame or fixed stop so it is securely in place with joints miter cut and bonded together at corners.
- C. Installation with Drive-in Wedge Gaskets: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against soft compression gasket by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended in writing by gasket manufacturer.
- D. Installation with Pressure-Glazing Stops: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against soft compression gasket. Install dense compression gaskets and pressure-glazing stops, applying pressure uniformly to compression gaskets. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended in writing by gasket manufacturer.
- E. Install gaskets so they protrude past face of glazing stops.

### 3.5 SEALANT GLAZING (WET)

- A. Install continuous spacers, or spacers combined with cylindrical sealant backing, between glass lites and glazing stops to maintain glass face clearances and to prevent sealant from extruding into glass channel and blocking weep systems until sealants cure. Secure spacers or spacers and backings in place and in position to control depth of installed sealant relative to edge clearance for optimum sealant performance.
- B. Force sealants into glazing channels to eliminate voids and to ensure complete wetting or bond of sealant to glass and channel surfaces.
- C. Tool exposed surfaces of sealants to provide a substantial wash away from glass.

### 3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Immediately after installation, remove nonpermanent labels and clean surfaces.
- B. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. Examine glass surfaces adjacent to or below exterior concrete and other masonry surfaces at frequent intervals during construction, but not less than once a month, for buildup of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, or stains.
  - 1. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do contact with glass, remove substances immediately as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer. Remove and replace glass that cannot be cleaned without damage to coatings.
- C. Remove and replace glass that is damaged during construction period.
- D. Wash glass on both exposed surfaces not more than four days before date scheduled for inspections that establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash glass as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.

### 3.7 MONOLITHIC GLASS SCHEDULE

#### A. Clear Glass Type : Annealed float glass.

1. Minimum Thickness: 6 mm.
2. Safety glazing required.

### 3.8 INSULATING GLASS SCHEDULE

#### A. Low-E-Coated, Clear Insulating Glass Type. **At all exterior glazing.:**

1. Overall Unit Thickness: 1 inch (25 mm).
2. Minimum Thickness of Each Glass Lite: 6 mm.
3. Outdoor Lite: Heat-strengthened float glass.
4. Interspace Content: Argon.
5. Indoor Lite: Heat-strengthened float glass.
6. Low-E Coating: Pyrolytic or sputtered on second or third surface.
7. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: 0.29 maximum.
8. Summer Daytime U-Factor: .27 maximum.
9. Visible Light Transmittance: 44 percent minimum.
10. SGHC: 0.25 maximum.
11. Safety glazing required.

END OF SECTION 088000

## SECTION 089119 - FIXED LOUVERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Fixed extruded-aluminum louvers.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Louver Terminology: Definitions of terms for metal louvers contained in AMCA 501 apply to this Section unless otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
- B. Horizontal Louver: Louver with horizontal blades (i.e., the axis of the blades are horizontal).
- C. Wind-Driven-Rain-Resistant Louver: Louver that provides specified wind-driven-rain performance, as determined by testing in accordance with AMCA 500-L.
- D. Windborne-Debris-Impact-Resistant Louver: Louver that provides specified windborne-debris-impact resistance, as determined by testing in accordance with AMCA 540.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
1. For louvers specified to bear AMCA seal, include printed catalog pages showing specified models with appropriate AMCA Certified Ratings Seals.
- B. Shop Drawings: For louvers and accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work. Show frame profiles and blade profiles, angles, and spacing.
1. Show weep paths, gaskets, flashings, sealants, and other means of preventing water intrusion.
  2. Show mullion profiles and locations.
- C. Samples: For each type of metal finish required.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed in accordance with AMCA 500-L by a qualified testing agency or by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for each type of louver and showing compliance with performance requirements specified.

- B. Windborne-debris-impact-resistance test reports.
- C. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's special warranties.

#### 1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of openings by field measurements before fabrication.

#### 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Finish Warranty, Factory-Applied Finishes: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace aluminum that shows evidence of deterioration of baked enamel, powder coat, or organic finishes within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
    - a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested in accordance with ASTM D2244.
    - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested in accordance with ASTM D4214.
  - 2. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

#### 1.7 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain fixed louvers from single source from a single manufacturer where indicated to be of same type, design, or factory-applied color finish.

#### 1.8 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Louvers withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated without permanent deformation of louver components, noise or metal fatigue caused by louver-blade rattle or flutter, or permanent damage to fasteners and anchors. Wind pressures are considered to act normal to the face of the building.
  - 1. Wind Loads:
    - a. Determine loads based on pressures as indicated on Drawings.
- B. Louver Performance Ratings: Provide louvers complying with requirements specified, as demonstrated by testing manufacturer's stock units identical to those provided, except for length and width in accordance with AMCA 500-L.
- C. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.



1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.
- D. SMACNA Standard: Comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" for fabrication, construction details, and installation procedures.

#### 1.9 FIXED EXTRUDED-ALUMINUM LOUVERS

- A. Horizontal, Wind-Driven-Rain-Resistant Louver, Extruded Aluminum:
  1. Louver Depth: 4 inches (100 mm).
  2. Frame and Blade Nominal Thickness: Not less than 0.080 inch (2.03 mm).
  3. Louver Performance Ratings:
    - a. Free Area: Not less than 6.0 sq. ft. (0.56 sq. m) for 48-inch- (1220-mm-) wide by 48-inch- (1220-mm-) high louver.
    - b. Air Performance: Not more than 0.25 inch static pressure drop at 1,300 fpm free-area exhaust and intake velocity.
    - c. Wind-Driven Rain Performance: Not less than 99 percent effectiveness when subjected to a rainfall rate of 8 inches (200 mm) per hour and a wind speed of 50 mph (22.4 m/s) at a core-area intake velocity of 600 fpm.
4. AMCA Seal: Mark units with AMCA Certified Ratings Seal.

#### 1.10 LOUVER SCREENS

- A. General: Provide screen at each exterior louver.
  1. Screen Location for Fixed Louvers: Interior face.
  2. Screening Type: Insect screening.
- B. Secure screen frames to louver frames with stainless steel machine screws, spaced a maximum of 6 inches (150 mm) from each corner and at 12 inches (300 mm) o.c.
- C. Louver Screen Frames: Fabricate with mitered corners to louver sizes indicated.
  1. Metal: Same type and form of metal as indicated for louver to which screens are attached. Reinforce extruded-aluminum screen frames at corners with clips.
  2. Finish: Same finish as louver frames to which louver screens are attached.
  3. Type: Rewirable frames with a driven spline or insert.
- D. Louver Screening for Aluminum Louvers:
  1. Bird Screening, Aluminum: 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) square mesh, 0.063-inch (1.60-mm) wire.
  2. Insect Screening, Aluminum: 18-by-16 (1.4-by-1.6-mm) mesh, 0.012-inch (0.30-mm) wire.

#### 1.11 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B221 (ASTM B221M), Alloy 6063-T5, T-52, or T6.

- B. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B209 (ASTM B209M), Alloy 3003 or 5005, with temper as required for forming, or as otherwise recommended by metal producer for required finish.
- C. Fasteners: Use types and sizes to suit unit installation conditions.
  - 1. Use hex-head or Phillips pan-head screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. For fastening aluminum, use aluminum or 300 series stainless steel fasteners.
  - 3. For color-finished louvers, use fasteners with heads that match color of louvers.
- D. Postinstalled Fasteners for Concrete and Masonry: Torque-controlled expansion anchors, fabricated from stainless steel components, with allowable load or strength design capacities calculated in accordance with ICC-ES AC193 and ACI 318 greater than or equal to the design load, as determined by testing in accordance with ASTM E488/E488M conducted by a qualified testing agency.
- E. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D1187/D1187M.

#### 1.12 FABRICATION

- A. Factory assemble louvers to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- B. Maintain equal louver blade spacing to produce uniform appearance.
- C. Fabricate frames, including integral sills, to fit in openings of sizes indicated, with allowances made for fabrication and installation tolerances, adjoining material tolerances, and perimeter sealant joints.
  - 1. Frame Type: Channel unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Include supports, anchorages, and accessories required for complete assembly.
- E. Provide vertical mullions of type and at spacings indicated, but not more than is recommended by manufacturer, or 72 inches (1830 mm) o.c., whichever is less.
  - 1. Semirecessed Mullions: Where indicated, provide mullions partly recessed behind louver blades, so louver blades appear continuous. Where length of louver exceeds fabrication and handling limitations, fabricate with interlocking split mullions and close-fitting blade splices designed to permit expansion and contraction.
  - 2. Exterior Corners: Prefabricated corner units with mitered and welded blades and with semirecessed mullions at corners.
- F. Join frame members to each other and to fixed louver blades with fillet welds , threaded fasteners, or both, as standard with louver manufacturer unless otherwise indicated or size of louver assembly makes bolted connections between frame members necessary.

#### 1.13 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Finish louvers after assembly.

- B. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A42/A44, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.
  - 1. Color: Dark bronze.

## PART 2 - EXECUTION

### 2.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and openings, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 2.2 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate setting drawings, diagrams, templates, instructions, and directions for installation of anchorages that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry construction. Coordinate delivery of such items to Project site.

### 2.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Locate and place louvers level, plumb, and at indicated alignment with adjacent work.
- B. Use concealed anchorages where possible. Provide brass or lead washers fitted to screws where required to protect metal surfaces and to make a weathertight connection.
- C. Form closely fitted joints with exposed connections accurately located and secured.
- D. Provide perimeter reveals and openings of uniform width for sealants and joint fillers, as indicated.
- E. Protect unpainted galvanized- and nonferrous-metal surfaces that are in contact with concrete, masonry, or dissimilar metals from corrosion and galvanic action by applying a heavy coating of bituminous paint or by separating surfaces with waterproof gaskets or nonmetallic flashing.
- F. Install concealed gaskets, flashings, joint fillers, and insulation as louver installation progresses, where weathertight louver joints are required. Comply with Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for sealants applied during louver installation.

### 2.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed louver surfaces that are not protected by temporary covering, to remove fingerprints and soil during construction period. Do not let soil accumulate during construction period.
- B. Before final inspection, clean exposed surfaces with water and a mild soap or detergent not harmful to finishes. Thoroughly rinse surfaces and dry.

- C. Restore louvers damaged during installation and construction, so no evidence remains of corrective work. If results of restoration are unsuccessful, as determined by Architect, remove damaged units and replace with new units.
  - 1. Touch up minor abrasions in finishes with air-dried coating that matches color and gloss of, and is compatible with, factory-applied finish coating.

END OF SECTION 089119

## SECTION 092216 - NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Framing systems.
2. Suspension systems.
3. Grid suspension systems.

#### 1.2 Section 133419 – Metal Building Systems for framing as part of the pre-engineered metal building system. ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Framing systems.
2. Suspension systems.
3. Grid suspension systems.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Code-Compliance Certification of Studs and Tracks: Provide documentation that framing members are certified according to the product-certification program of the Certified Steel Stud Association or the Steel Framing Industry Association.

#### 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Notify manufacturer of damaged materials received prior to installation.
- B. Deliver materials in manufacturer's original, unopened, undamaged containers with identification labels intact.
- C. Protect cold-formed metal framing from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling as required by AISI S202, "Code of Standard Practice for Cold-Formed Steel Structural Framing."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies that incorporate non-load-bearing steel framing, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated, in accordance with ASTM E119 by an independent testing agency.
- B. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated on Drawings, in accordance with ASTM E90 and classified in accordance with ASTM E413 by an independent testing agency.
- C. Horizontal Deflection: For non-composite wall assemblies, limited to 1/360 of the wall height based on horizontal loading of 5 lbf/sq. ft. (239 Pa).

### 2.2 FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. Framing Members, General: Comply with ASTM C645 for conditions indicated.
  - 1. Steel Sheet Components: Comply with ASTM C645 requirements for metal unless otherwise indicated
  - 2. Protective Coating: Comply with ASTM C645; ASTM A653/A653M, G40 (Z120); or coating with equivalent corrosion resistance. Galvannealed products are unacceptable.
    - a. Coating demonstrates equivalent corrosion resistance with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Studs and Track: ASTM C645. Manufacturers:
  - 1. CEMCO; California Expanded Metal Products Co.
  - 2. ClarkDietrich.
  - 3. Custom Stud.
  - 4. MarinoWARE.
  - 5. Minimum Base-Steel Thickness: 0.0296 inch (0.752 mm).
  - 6. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
- C. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where indicated, provide one of the following:
  - 1. Deflection Track: Steel sheet top track manufactured to prevent cracking of finishes applied to interior partition framing resulting from deflection of structure above; in thickness not less than indicated for studs and in width to accommodate depth of studs.
- D. Firestop Tracks: Top track manufactured to allow partition heads to expand and contract with movement of structure while maintaining continuity of fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated; in thickness not less than indicated for studs and in width to accommodate depth of studs.
  - 1. Same manufacturers as interior metal studs  $\geq$
- E. Flat Strap and Backing Plate: Steel sheet for blocking and bracing in length and width indicated.
  - 1. Same manufacturers as interior metal studs

2. Minimum Base-Steel Thickness: 0.0179 inch (0.455 mm).
- F. Cold-Rolled Channel Bridging: Steel, 0.0538-inch (1.367-mm) minimum base-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) wide flanges.
1. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
  2. Clip Angle: Not less than 1-1/2 by 1-1/2 inches (38 by 38 mm), 0.068-inch- (1.72-mm-) thick, galvanized steel.
- G. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels:
1. Same manufacturers as interior metal studs\
  2. Minimum Base-Steel Thickness: 0.0296 inch (0.752 mm).
  3. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
- H. Resilient Furring Channels: 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) deep, steel sheet members designed to reduce sound transmission.
1. Configuration: Asymmetrical or hat shaped.
- I. Cold-Rolled Furring Channels: 0.053-inch (1.34-mm) uncoated-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) wide flanges.
1. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
  2. Furring Brackets: Adjustable, corrugated-edge-type steel sheet with minimum uncoated-steel thickness of 0.0329 inch (0.8 mm).
  3. Tie Wire: ASTM A641/A641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062-inch- (1.59-mm-) diameter wire, or double strand of 0.048-inch- (1.21-mm-) diameter wire.

## 2.3 SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

- A. Tie Wire: ASTM A641/A641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062-inch- (1.59-mm-) diameter wire, or double strand of 0.048-inch- (1.21-mm-) diameter wire.
- B. Hanger Attachments to Concrete:
1. Post-Installed Anchors: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC01 as appropriate for the substrate.
    - a. Uses: Securing hangers to structure.
    - b. Type: Torque-controlled, expansion anchor.
    - c. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B633 or ASTM F1941 (ASTM F1941M), Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
    - d. Material for Exterior or Interior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 (A1) stainless steel bolts, ASTM F593 (ASTM F738M), and nuts, ASTM F594 (ASTM F836M).
  2. Power-Actuated Anchors: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.

- C. Wire Hangers: ASTM A641/A641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.16 inch (4.12 mm) in diameter.
- D. Flat Hangers: Steel sheet, 1 by 3/16 inch (25 by 5 mm) by length indicated.
- E. Carrying Channels (Main Runners): Cold-rolled, commercial-steel sheet with a base-steel thickness of 0.0538 inch (1.367 mm) and minimum 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) wide flanges.
  - 1. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
- F. Furring Channels (Furring Members):
  - 1. Cold-Rolled Channels: 0.0538-inch (1.367-mm) uncoated-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) wide flanges, 3/4 inch (19 mm) deep.
  - 2. Steel Studs and Tracks:
    - a. Minimum Base-Steel Thickness: 0.0269 inch (0.683 mm).
    - b. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 3. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: 7/8 inch (22 mm) deep.
    - a. Minimum Base-Steel Thickness: 0.0296 inch (0.752 mm).
  - 4. Resilient Furring Channels: 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) deep members designed to reduce sound transmission.
    - a. Configuration: hat shaped.

## 2.4 GRID SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

- A. Grid Suspension Systems for Gypsum Board Ceilings: ASTM C645, direct-hung system composed of main beams and cross-furring members that interlock.

## 2.5 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards.
  - 1. Fasteners for Steel Framing: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten steel members to substrates.
- B. Isolation Strip at Exterior Walls: Provide one of the following:
  - 1. Asphalt-Saturated Organic Felt: ASTM D226/D226M, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt), nonperforated.
  - 2. Foam Gasket: Adhesive-backed, closed-cell vinyl foam strips that allow fastener penetration without foam displacement, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, in width to suit steel stud size.



## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and substrates, with Installer present, and including welded hollow-metal frames, cast-in anchors, and structural framing, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Suspended Assemblies: Coordinate installation of suspension systems with installation of overhead structure to ensure that inserts and other provisions for anchorages to building structure have been installed to receive hangers at spacing required to support the Work and that hangers will develop their full strength.
  - 1. Furnish concrete inserts and other devices indicated to other trades for installation in advance of time needed for coordination and construction.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Installation Standard: ASTM C754.
  - 1. Gypsum Board Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C840 that apply to framing installation.
- B. Install framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, with connections securely fastened.
- C. Install supplementary framing, and blocking to support fixtures, equipment services, heavy trim, grab bars, toilet accessories, furnishings, or similar construction.
- D. Install bracing at terminations in assemblies.
- E. Do not bridge building control and expansion joints with non-load-bearing steel framing members. Frame both sides of joints independently.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. Install framing system components according to spacings indicated, but not greater than spacings required by referenced installation standards for assembly types.
  - 1. Single-Layer Application: 16 inches (406 mm) o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Multilayer Application: 16 inches (406 mm) o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Tile Backing Panels: 16 inches (406 mm) o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Where studs are installed directly against exterior masonry walls or dissimilar metals at exterior walls, install isolation strip between studs and exterior wall.

- C. Install studs so flanges within framing system point in same direction.
- D. Install tracks at floors and overhead supports. Extend framing full height to structural supports or substrates above suspended ceilings except where partitions are indicated to terminate at suspended ceilings. Continue framing around ducts that penetrate partitions above ceiling.
  - 1. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where framing extends to overhead structural supports, install to produce joints at tops of framing systems that prevent axial loading of finished assemblies.
  - 2. Door Openings: Screw vertical studs at jambs to jamb anchor clips on door frames; install track section (for cripple studs) at head and secure to jamb studs.
    - a. Install two studs at each jamb unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Install cripple studs at head adjacent to each jamb stud, with a minimum 1/2-inch (13-mm) clearance from jamb stud to allow for installation of control joint in finished assembly.
    - c. Extend jamb studs through suspended ceilings and attach to underside of overhead structure.
  - 3. Other Framed Openings: Frame openings other than door openings the same as required for door openings unless otherwise indicated. Install framing below sills of openings to match framing required above door heads.
  - 4. Fire-Resistance-Rated Partitions: Install framing to comply with fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated and support closures and to make partitions continuous from floor to underside of solid structure.
    - a. Firestop Track: Where indicated, install to maintain continuity of fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated.
  - 5. Sound-Rated Partitions: Install framing to comply with sound-rated assembly indicated.
- E. Direct Furring:
  - 1. Attach to concrete or masonry with stub nails, screws designed for masonry attachment, or powder-driven fasteners spaced 24 inches (610 mm) o.c.
- F. Installation Tolerance: Install each framing member so fastening surfaces vary not more than 1/8 inch (3 mm) from the plane formed by faces of adjacent framing.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

- A. Install suspension system components according to spacings indicated, but not greater than spacings required by referenced installation standards for assembly types.
  - 1. Hangers: 48 inches (1219 mm) o.c.
  - 2. Carrying Channels (Main Runners): 48 inches (1219 mm) o.c.
  - 3. Furring Channels (Furring Members): 16 inches (406 mm) o.c.
- B. Isolate suspension systems from building structure where they abut or are penetrated by building structure to prevent transfer of loading imposed by structural movement.
- C. Suspend hangers from building structure as follows:

1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structural or suspension system.
    - a. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions and offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
  2. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with locations of hangers required to support standard suspension system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in the form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
    - a. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced installation standards.
  3. Wire Hangers: Secure by looping and wire tying, either directly to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for substrate, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
  4. Flat Hangers: Secure to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for structure and hanger, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
  5. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck.
  6. Do not attach hangers to permanent metal forms. Furnish cast-in-place hanger inserts that extend through forms.
  7. Do not attach hangers to rolled-in hanger tabs of composite steel floor deck.
  8. Do not connect or suspend steel framing from ducts, pipes, or conduit.
- D. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Wire tie furring channels to supports.
- E. Seismic Bracing: Sway-brace suspension systems with hangers used for support.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF GRID SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

- A. Grid Suspension Systems: Attach perimeter wall track or angle where grid suspension systems meet vertical surfaces. Mechanically join main beam and cross-furring members to each other and butt-cut to fit into wall track.

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Installation Tolerances: Install suspension systems that are level to within 1/8 inch in 12 feet (3 mm in 3.6 m) measured lengthwise on each member that will receive finishes and transversely between parallel members that will receive finishes.

END OF SECTION 092216

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 092900 - GYPSUM BOARD

### 1.1 SUMMARY

#### A. Section Includes:

1. Interior gypsum board.
2. Tile backing panels.
3. Texture finishes.
4. Acoustical joint sealants

#### B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 061600 "Sheathing" for gypsum sheathing for exterior walls.
2. Section 092216 "Non-Structural Metal Framing" for non-structural steel framing and suspension systems that support gypsum board panels.
3. Section 093013 "Tiling" for coordination of cementitious backer units installed as substrates for tile.

### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

#### A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Gypsum board, Type X.
2. Gypsum ceiling board.
3. Abuse-resistant gypsum board.
4. Mold-resistant gypsum board.
5. Cementitious backer units.
6. Aluminum trim.
7. Joint treatment materials.
8. Sound-attenuation blankets.
9. Acoustical sealant.
10. Textured finishes.

#### B. Shop Drawings: Show locations and installation of control and expansion joints, including plans, elevations, sections, details of components, and attachments to other work.

#### C. Samples: For the following products:

1. Trim Accessories: Full-size Sample in 12-inch- (300-mm-) long length for each trim accessory indicated.
2. Textured Finishes: Manufacturer's standard size for each textured finish indicated and on same backing indicated for Work.

#### D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of trim accessory and textured finish indicated.

### 1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction traffic, and other potential causes of damage. Stack panels flat and supported on risers on a flat platform to prevent sagging.
- B. Acoustical sealants: Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained between 40 and 95 deg F (4 and 35 deg C).

### 1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with ASTM C840 requirements or gypsum board manufacturer's written instructions, whichever are more stringent.
- B. Do not install paper-faced gypsum panels until installation areas are enclosed and conditioned.
- C. Do not install panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
  - 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
  - 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.
- D. Acoustical sealants: Apply coatings only when temperature of surfaces to be coated and ambient air temperatures are between 35 and 100 deg F (2 and 38 deg C).

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain each type of gypsum panel and joint finishing material from single source with resources to provide products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated in accordance with ASTM E119 by an independent testing agency.
- B. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated in accordance with ASTM E90 and classified in accordance with ASTM E413 by an independent testing agency.

## 2.3 GYPSUM BOARD, GENERAL

- A. Size: Provide maximum lengths and widths available that will minimize joints in each area and that correspond with support system indicated.

## 2.4 INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Gypsum Board, Type X: ASTM C1396/C1396M.
- a. American Gypsum Company.
  - b. CertainTeed Gypsum, Inc.
  - c. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
  - d. National Gypsum Co.
  - e. United States Gypsum Company (USG).
2. Thickness: 5/8 inch (15.9 mm).
  3. Long Edges: Tapered.
- B. Gypsum Ceiling Board: ASTM C1396/C1396M.
- a. American Gypsum Company.
  - b. CertainTeed Gypsum, Inc.
  - c. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
  - d. National Gypsum Co.
  - e. United States Gypsum Company (USG).
2. Thickness: 1/2 inch (12.7 mm), unless otherwise noted in Drawings.
  3. Long Edges: Tapered.
- C. Abuse-Resistant Gypsum Board: ASTM C1396/C1396M gypsum board, tested in accordance with ASTM C1629/C1629M.
1. Core: 5/8 inch (15.9 mm), Type X.
  2. Surface Abrasion: ASTM C1629/C1629M, meets or exceeds Level 2 requirements.
  3. Indentation: ASTM C1629/C1629M, meets or exceeds Level 2 requirements.
  4. Soft-Body Impact: ASTM C1629/C1629M, meets or exceeds Level 2 requirements.
  5. Long Edges: Tapered.
  6. Mold Resistance: ASTM D3273, score of 10 as rated in accordance with ASTM D3274.
- D. Mold-Resistant Gypsum Board: ASTM C1396/C1396M. With moisture- and mold-resistant core and paper surfaces.
1. Same manufacturers as Gypsum Board, Type X
  2. Core: 5/8 inch (15.9 mm), Type X.
  3. Long Edges: Tapered.
  4. Mold Resistance: ASTM D3273, score of 10 as rated in accordance with ASTM D3274.

## 2.5 TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Cementitious Backer Units: ANSI A118.9 and ASTM C1288 or ASTM C1325, with manufacturer's standard edges.
1. Durock

2. James Hardie
3. United States Gypsum (USG)
4. Thickness: 1/2 inch (12.7 mm).
5. Mold Resistance: ASTM D3273, score of 10 as rated in accordance with ASTM D3274.

## 2.6 TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. Interior Trim: ASTM C1047.
1. Material: Galvanized or aluminum-coated steel sheet, rolled zinc, plastic, or paper-faced galvanized-steel sheet.
  2. Shapes:
    - a. Cornerbead.
    - b. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
    - c. L-Bead: L-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
    - d. Base-of-Wall Galvanized Moisture Barrier Trim: Galvanized-steel sheet, 2 inches (50 mm) high.

## 2.7 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C475/C475M.
- B. Joint Tape:
1. Interior Gypsum Board: Paper.
  2. Tile Backing Panels: As recommended by panel manufacturer.
- C. Joint Compound for Interior Gypsum Board: For each coat, use formulation that is compatible with other compounds applied on previous or for successive coats.
1. Prefilling: At open joints, rounded or beveled panel edges, and damaged surface areas, use setting-type taping compound.
  2. Embedding and First Coat: For embedding tape and first coat on joints, fasteners, and trim flanges, use setting-type taping compound.
    - a. Use setting-type compound for installing paper-faced metal trim accessories.
  3. Fill Coat: For second coat, use setting-type, sandable topping compound.
  4. Finish Coat: For third coat, use setting-type, sandable topping compound.
  5. Skim Coat: For final coat of Level 5 finish, use setting-type, sandable topping compound.
- D. Joint Compound for Tile Backing Panels:
1. Cementitious Backer Units: As recommended by backer unit manufacturer.



## 2.8 ACOUSTICAL JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Acoustical joint-sealant products that effectively reduce airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction, as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies in accordance with ASTM E90.
- B. Acoustical Sealant for Exposed and Concealed Joints: Manufacturer's standard nonsag, paintable, nonstaining latex acoustical sealant complying with ASTM C834.
  - 1. Accumetric LLC.
  - 2. Pecora Corporation.
  - 3. Tremco Incorporated.
  - 4. USG Corporation.
  - 5. Colors of Exposed Acoustical Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.

## 2.9 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C1002 unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Use screws complying with ASTM C954 for fastening panels to steel members from 0.033 to 0.112 inch (0.84 to 2.84 mm) thick.
  - 2. For fastening cementitious backer units, use screws of type and size recommended by panel manufacturer.
- C. Sound-Attenuation Blankets: ASTM C665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing) produced by combining thermosetting resins with mineral fibers manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool.
  - 1. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Comply with mineral-fiber requirements of assembly.
  - 2. Blanket to match nominal stud depth
- D. Thermal Insulation: As specified in Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation."
- E. Acoustical sealant primer: Material recommended by acoustical joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates.
- F. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way, and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants to joint substrates.
- G. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and substrates including welded hollow-metal frames and support framing, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- D. Examine joints indicated to receive acoustical joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION AND FINISHING OF PANELS, GENERAL

- A. Comply with ASTM C840.
- B. Install ceiling panels across framing to minimize the number of abutting end joints and to avoid abutting end joints in central area of each ceiling. Stagger abutting end joints of adjacent panels not less than one framing member.
- C. Install panels with face side out. Butt panels together for a light contact at edges and ends with not more than 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) of open space between panels. Do not force into place.
- D. Locate edge and end joints over supports, except in ceiling applications where intermediate supports or gypsum board back-blocking is provided behind end joints. Do not place tapered edges against cut edges or ends. Stagger vertical joints on opposite sides of partitions. Do not make joints other than control joints at corners of framed openings.
- E. Form control and expansion joints with space between edges of adjoining gypsum panels.
- F. Cover both faces of support framing with gypsum panels in concealed spaces (above ceilings, etc.), except in chases braced internally.
  - 1. Unless concealed application is indicated or required for sound, fire, air, or smoke ratings, coverage may be accomplished with scraps of not less than 8 sq. ft. (0.7 sq. m) in area.
  - 2. Fit gypsum panels around ducts, pipes, and conduits.
  - 3. Where partitions intersect structural members projecting below underside of floor/roof slabs and decks, cut gypsum panels to fit profile formed by structural members; allow 1/4- to 3/8-inch- (6.4- to 9.5-mm-) wide joints to install sealant.
- G. Isolate perimeter of gypsum board applied to non-load-bearing partitions at structural abutments. Provide 1/4- to 1/2-inch- (6.4- to 12.7-mm-) wide spaces at these locations and trim edges with edge trim where edges of panels are exposed. Seal joints between edges and abutting structural surfaces with acoustical sealant.

- H. Attachment to Steel Framing: Attach panels so leading edge or end of each panel is attached to open (unsupported) edges of stud flanges first.
- I. STC-Rated Assemblies: Seal construction at perimeters, behind control joints, and at openings and penetrations with a continuous bead of acoustical sealant. Install acoustical sealant at both faces of partitions at perimeters and through penetrations. Comply with ASTM C919 and with manufacturer's written instructions for locating edge trim and closing off sound-flanking paths around or through assemblies, including sealing partitions above acoustical ceilings.
- J. Install sound attenuation blankets before installing gypsum panels unless blankets are readily installed after panels have been installed on one side.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Install interior gypsum board in the following locations:
  - 1. Type X: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Ceiling Type: Ceiling surfaces.
  - 3. Abuse-Resistant Type: At all corridor walls, Training 107, Storage 107A.
  - 4. Mold-Resistant Type: within 4 feet of any plumbing fixture, except where tile backer applies.
- B. Single-Layer Application:
  - 1. On ceilings, apply gypsum panels before wall/partition board application to greatest extent possible and at right angles to framing unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) or horizontally (perpendicular to framing) unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly, and minimize end joints.
    - a. Stagger abutting end joints not less than one framing member in alternate courses of panels.
    - b. At stairwells and other high walls, install panels horizontally unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
  - 3. On Z-shaped furring members, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) with no end joints. Locate edge joints over furring members.
  - 4. Fastening Methods: Apply gypsum panels to supports with steel drill screws.
- C. Multilayer Application:
  - 1. On ceilings, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers before applying base layers on walls/partitions; apply face layers in same sequence. Apply base layers at right angles to framing members and offset face-layer joints one framing member, 16 inches (400 mm) minimum, from parallel base-layer joints, unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
  - 2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers and face layers vertically (parallel to framing) with joints of base layers located over stud or furring member and face-layer joints offset at least one stud or furring member with base-layer joints unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly. Stagger joints on opposite sides of partitions.

3. On Z-shaped furring members, apply base layer vertically (parallel to framing) and face layer either vertically (parallel to framing) or horizontally (perpendicular to framing) with vertical joints offset at least one furring member. Locate edge joints of base layer over furring members.
4. Fastening Methods: Fasten base layers with screws; fasten face layers with adhesive and supplementary fasteners.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Panels: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and install at locations indicated to receive tile. Install with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) gap where panels abut other construction or penetrations.
- B. Cementitious Backer Units: ANSI A108.11, at locations indicated to receive tile.
- C. Where tile backing panels abut other types of panels in same plane, shim surfaces to produce a uniform plane across panel surfaces.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. General: For trim with back flanges intended for fasteners, attach to framing with same fasteners used for panels. Otherwise, attach trim according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Control Joints: Install control joints in accordance with ASTM C840 and in specific locations approved by Architect for visual effect or crack control.
- C. Interior Trim: Install in the following locations:
  1. Cornerbead: Use at outside corners.
  2. LC-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges without return surface.
  3. L-Bead: Use where indicated on Drawings.
- D. Aluminum Trim: Install in locations indicated on Drawings.

### 3.6 SEALANT PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing acoustical joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by acoustical joint-sealant manufacturer. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

### 3.7 INSTALLATION OF ACOUSTICAL JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Comply with acoustical joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. STC-Rated Assemblies: Seal construction at perimeters, behind control joints, and at openings and penetrations with a continuous bead of acoustical joint sealant. Install acoustical joint sealants at both faces of partitions, at perimeters, and through penetrations. Comply with ASTM C919, ASTM C1193, and manufacturer's written instructions for closing off sound-flanking paths around or through assemblies, including sealing partitions to underside of floor slabs above acoustical ceilings.
- C. Acoustical Ceiling Areas: Apply acoustical joint sealant at perimeter edge moldings of acoustical ceiling areas in a continuous ribbon concealed on back of vertical legs of moldings before they are installed.

### 3.8 CLEANING AND PROTECTION OF SEALANTS

- A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of acoustical joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.
- B. Protect acoustical joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out, remove, and repair damaged or deteriorated acoustical joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

### 3.9 FINISHING OF GYPSUM BOARD

- A. General: Treat gypsum board joints, interior angles, edge trim, control joints, penetrations, fastener heads, surface defects, and elsewhere as required to prepare gypsum board surfaces for decoration. Promptly remove residual joint compound from adjacent surfaces.
- B. Prefill open joints, rounded or beveled edges, and damaged surface areas.
- C. Apply joint tape over gypsum board joints, except for trim products specifically indicated as not intended to receive tape.
- D. Gypsum Board Finish Levels: Finish panels to levels indicated below and in accordance with ASTM C840:
  - 1. Level 1: Ceiling plenum areas, concealed areas, and where indicated.
  - 2. Level 2: Where indicated on Drawings.
  - 3. Level 3: Where indicated on Drawings.
  - 4. Level 4: At panel surfaces that will be exposed to view unless otherwise indicated.
  - 5. Level 5: Where indicated on Drawings.

- E. Cementitious Backer Units: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.10 APPLICATION OF TEXTURE FINISHES

- A. Surface Preparation and Primer: Prepare and apply primer to gypsum panels and other surfaces receiving texture finishes. Apply primer to surfaces that are clean, dry, and smooth.
- B. Texture Finish Application: Mix and apply finish using powered spray equipment, to produce a uniform texture free of starved spots or other evidence of thin application or of application patterns.
- C. Prevent texture finishes from coming into contact with surfaces not indicated to receive texture finish by covering them with masking agents, polyethylene film, or other means. If, despite these precautions, texture finishes contact these surfaces, immediately remove droppings and overspray to prevent damage according to texture-finish manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.11 PROTECTION

- A. Protect adjacent surfaces from drywall compound and promptly remove from floors and other non-drywall surfaces. Repair surfaces stained, marred, or otherwise damaged during drywall application.
- B. Protect installed products from damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction, and other causes during remainder of the construction period.
- C. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
  - 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
  - 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

END OF SECTION 092900

## SECTION 093013 - TILING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Tile systems
  - 2. Thresholds.
  - 3. Waterproof membranes.
  - 4. Crack isolation membranes.
  - 5. Setting material.
  - 6. Grout materials.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for sealing of movement joints in tile surfaces.
  - 2. Section 092900 "Gypsum Board" for tile backing panels.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. General: Definitions in ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards and in ANSI A137.1 apply to Work of this Section unless otherwise specified.
- B. Face Size: Actual tile size, excluding spacer lugs.
- C. Large Format Tile: Tile with at least one edge 15 inches (381 mm) or longer.
- D. Module Size: Actual tile size plus joint width indicated.

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Review requirements in ANSI A108.01 for substrates and for preparation by other trades.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show locations, plans, and elevations, of each type of tile and tile pattern. Show widths, details, and locations of movement joints in tile substrates and finished tile surfaces. Show thresholds.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For tile, grout, and accessories involving color selection or shade variation.

D. Samples for Verification:

1. Full-size units of each type and composition of tile and for each color and finish required.
2. Full-size units of each type of trim and accessory for each color and finish required.
3. Stone thresholds in 6-inch (152-mm) lengths.
4. Metal flooring transitions 6-inch (152-mm) lengths.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

B. Master Grade Certificates: For each shipment, type, and composition of tile, signed by tile manufacturer and Installer.

C. Product Certificates: For each type of product, including product use classification.

D. Product Test Reports:

1. Tile-setting and -grouting products.
2. Certified porcelain tile.
3. Slip-resistance test reports from qualified independent testing agency.

E. Field Quality-Control Reports: Water test reports of membrane in wet areas.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Extra Stock Material: Furnish extra materials, from the same production run, to Owner that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Tile and Trim Units: Furnish quantity of full-size units equal to 3 percent of amount installed for each type, composition, color, pattern, and size indicated.
2. Grout: Furnish quantity of grout equal to 3 percent of amount installed for each type, composition, and color indicated.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications:

1. Installer is a Five-Star member of the National Tile Contractors Association.
2. Installer's supervisor for Project holds the International Masonry Institute's Supervisor Certification.

1.8 MOCKUPS

A. Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for materials and execution.



1. Build mockup of each type of floor tile installation, in place, minimum of 20 square feet, including floor drain.
2. Build mockup of each type of wall tile installation, in place, minimum of 20 square feet, including tile base and corner/edge conditions.
3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

#### 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store packaged materials in original containers with seals unbroken and labels intact until time of use. Comply with requirements in ANSI A137.1 for labeling tile packages.
- B. Store tile and cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location.
- C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination can be avoided.
- D. Store liquid materials in unopened containers and protected from freezing.

#### 1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install tile until construction in spaces is complete and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated in referenced standards and manufacturer's written instructions.

#### 1.11 WARRANTY

- A. System Warranty: Manufacturer's non-prorated comprehensive warranty that agrees to repair and replace defective installation areas, material, and labor that fail under normal usage within specified warranty period.
  1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Product Purchase.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Tile: Obtain tile of each type and color or finish from single source or producer.
  1. Obtain tile of each type and color or finish from same production run and of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties for each contiguous area.
- B. Tiling System: Obtain system products from single manufacturer and each aggregate from single source or producer.
  1. Obtain setting and grouting materials, except for unmodified portland cement and aggregate, from single manufacturer.

2. Obtain underlayment from manufacturer of setting and grouting materials.
  3. Obtain waterproof membrane, crack isolation, and other required membranes from manufacturer of setting and grouting materials.
  4. Obtain joint sealants from manufacturer of setting and grouting materials.
- C. Accessory Products: Obtain each of the following products specified in this Section from a single manufacturer:
1. Stone thresholds.
  2. Backer units.

## 2.2 PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. ANSI Ceramic Tile Standard: Provide tile that complies with ANSI A137.1 for types, compositions, and other characteristics indicated.
1. Provide tile complying with Standard Grade requirements unless otherwise indicated.
- B. ANSI Standards for Tile Installation Materials: Provide materials complying with ANSI A108.02, ANSI standards referenced in other Part 2 articles, ANSI standards referenced by TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules, and other requirements specified.
- C. Factory Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations within ranges, blend tile in factory and package so tile units taken from one package show same range in colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples.
- D. Mounting: For factory-mounted tile, provide back- or edge-mounted tile assemblies as standard with manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.3 TILE PRODUCTS

- A. As indicated in Drawings

## 2.4 THRESHOLDS

- A. General: Fabricate to sizes and profiles indicated or required to provide transition between adjacent floor finishes.
1. Bevel edges at 1:2 slope, with lower edge of bevel aligned with or up to 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) above adjacent floor surface. Finish bevel to match top surface of threshold. Limit height of threshold to 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) or less above adjacent floor surface.
- B. Marble Thresholds: ASTM C503/C503M, with a minimum abrasion resistance of 10 in accordance with ASTM C1353/C1353M or ASTM C241/C241M and with honed finish.
1. Description:
    - a. Uniform, fine- to medium-grained white stone with gray veining.

- b. Match Architect's sample.

## 2.5 WATERPROOF MEMBRANES

- A. General: Manufacturer's standard product, selected from the following, that complies with ANSI A118.10 and is recommended by manufacturer for application indicated. Include reinforcement and accessories recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Waterproof Membrane, Fluid Applied: Liquid-latex rubber or elastomeric polymer with continuous fabric reinforcement.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. RegGard
    - b. USG Corporation
    - c. Mapei
    - d. Laticrete

## 2.6 CRACK ISOLATION MEMBRANES

- A. General: Manufacturer's standard product that complies with ANSI A118.12 for high performance and is recommended by manufacturer for application indicated. Include reinforcement and accessories recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Crack Isolation Membrane, Fluid Applied: Liquid-latex rubber or elastomeric polymer with continuous fabric reinforcement.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. RedGard
    - b. USG Corporation
    - c. Mapei
    - d. Laticrete

## 2.7 SETTING MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement Mortar (Thickset) Installation Materials: ANSI A108.02.
  - 1. Cleavage Membrane: Installer's option of material that complies with ANSI A108.02, paragraph 3.8.
  - 2. Reinforcing Wire Fabric: Galvanized, welded-wire fabric, 2 by 2 inches (50.8 by 50.8 mm) by 0.062-inch (1.57-mm) diameter; comply with ASTM A1064/A1064M except for minimum wire size.
  - 3. Expanded Metal Lath: Diamond-mesh lath complying with ASTM C847.
    - a. Base Metal and Finish for Interior Applications: Uncoated or zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, with uncoated steel sheet painted after fabrication into lath.
    - b. Base Metal and Finish for Exterior Applications: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet.
    - c. Configuration over Studs and Furring: Flat.

- d. Configuration over Solid Surfaces: Self-furring.
    - e. Weight: **[2.5 lb/sq. yd. (1.4 kg/sq. m)] [3.4 lb/sq. yd. (1.8 kg/sq. m)]**.
  - 4. Latex Additive: Manufacturer's standard water emulsion, serving as replacement for part or all of gaging water, of type specifically recommended by latex-additive manufacturer for use with field-mixed portland cement and aggregate mortar bed.
- B. Modified Dry-Set Mortar (Thinset): ANSI A118.4.
- 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Laticrete
    - b. Mapei
    - c. Custom Building Products
  - 2. Provide prepackaged, dry-mortar mix containing dry, redispersible, vinyl acetate or acrylic additive to which only water must be added at Project site.
  - 3. Provide prepackaged, dry-mortar mix combined with acrylic resin or styrene-butadiene-rubber liquid-latex additive at Project site.
  - 4. For wall applications, provide mortar that complies with requirements for nonsagging mortar in addition to other requirements in ANSI A118.4.

## 2.8 GROUT MATERIALS

- A. Sand-Portland Cement Grout: ANSI A108.10, consisting of white or gray cement and white or colored aggregate as required to produce color indicated.
- B. High-Performance Tile Grout: ANSI A118.7.
- 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Laticrete
    - b. Mapei
    - c. Custom Building Products
  - 2. Polymer Type:
    - a. Dry, redispersible form, prepackaged with other dry ingredients.
    - b. Liquid-latex form for addition to prepackaged dry-grout mix.
- C. Water-Cleanable Epoxy Grout: ANSI A118.3, with a VOC content of 65 g/L or less.
- 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Laticrete
    - b. Mapei
    - c. Custom Building Products
  - 2. Provide product capable of withstanding continuous and intermittent exposure to temperatures of up to 140 and 212 deg F (60 and 100 deg C), respectively, and certified by manufacturer for intended use.

## 2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Underlayments and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement-based formulation provided or approved by manufacturer of tile-setting and adhesive materials for installations indicated.
- B. Metal Flooring Transitions: Profile designed specifically for flooring applications; height to match tile and setting-bed thickness.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Schluter
    - b. Custom Building Products
    - c. Koffler
  - 2. Description: L-shaped, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
  - 3. Material and Finish: Metallic or combination of metal and PVC or neoprene base; polished nickel anodized aluminum exposed-edge material.
- C. Metal Edge Trim: Profile designed for wall terminations and edge protection.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Schluter
    - b. Custom Building Products
    - c. Koffler
  - 2. Description: L-shaped, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
  - 3. Material and Finish: Polished nickel anodized aluminum exposed-edge material.
- D. Temporary Protective Coating: Formulated to protect exposed surfaces of tile against adherence of mortar and grout; compatible with tile, mortar, and grout products and easily removable after grouting is completed without damaging grout or tile.
- E. Tile Cleaner: A neutral cleaner capable of removing soil and residue without harming tile and grout surfaces, specifically approved for materials and installations indicated by tile and grout manufacturers.
- F. Grout Sealer: Grout manufacturer's standard product for sealing grout joints that does not change color or appearance of grout.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions where tile will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Verify that substrates for setting tile are firm; dry; clean; free of coatings that are incompatible with tile-setting materials, including curing compounds and other substances

- that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone; and comply with flatness tolerances required by ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.
  - 2. Verify that concrete substrates for tile floors installed with bonded mortar bed or thinset mortar comply with surface finish requirements in ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.
    - a. Verify that surfaces that received a steel trowel finish have been mechanically scarified.
    - b. Verify that protrusions, bumps, and ridges have been removed by sanding or grinding.
  - 3. Verify that installation of grounds, anchors, recessed frames, electrical and mechanical units of work, and similar items located in or behind tile has been completed.
  - 4. Verify that joints and cracks in tile substrates are coordinated with tile joint locations; if not coordinated, adjust joint locations in consultation with Architect.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Remove coatings, including curing compounds or other coatings, that are incompatible with tile-setting materials.
- B. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in concrete substrates for tile floors installed with thinset mortar with trowelable leveling and patching compound specifically recommended by tile-setting material manufacturer.
- C. Where indicated, prepare substrates to receive waterproof membrane by applying a reinforced mortar bed that complies with ANSI A108.1 and is sloped 1/4 inch per foot (1:50) toward drains.
- D. Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations, verify that tile has been factory blended and packaged so tile units taken from one package show same range of colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples. If not factory blended, either return to manufacturer or blend tiles at Project site before installing.
- E. Substrate Flatness:
  - 1. For tile shorter than 15 inches (381 mm), confirm that structure or substrate is limited to variation of 1/4 inch in 10 ft. (6.4 mm in 3 m) from the required plane, and no more than 1/16 inch in 12 inches (1.5 mm in 300 mm) when measured from tile surface high points.
  - 2. For large format tile, tile with at least one edge 15 inches (381 mm) or longer, confirm that structure or substrate is limited to 1/8 inch in 10 ft. (3 mm in 3 m) from the required plane, and no more than 1/16 inch in 24 inches (1.5 mm in 609 mm) when measured from tile surface high points.
- F. Field-Applied Temporary Protective Coating: If indicated under tile type or needed to prevent grout from staining or adhering to exposed tile surfaces, precoat them with continuous film of temporary protective coating, taking care not to coat unexposed tile surfaces.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF TILE SYSTEMS

- A. Install tile backing panels and treat joints in accordance with ANSI A108.11 and manufacturer's written instructions for type of application indicated.
- B. Install waterproof membrane to comply with ANSI A108.13 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce waterproof membrane of uniform thickness that is bonded securely to substrate.
  - 1. Allow waterproof membrane to cure and verify by testing that it is watertight before installing tile or setting materials over it.
- C. Install crack isolation membrane to comply with ANSI A108.17 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce membrane of uniform thickness that is bonded securely to substrate.
  - 1. Allow crack isolation membrane to cure before installing tile or setting materials over it.
- D. Mix mortars and grouts to comply with referenced standards and mortar and grout manufacturers' written instructions.
  - 1. Add materials, water, and additives in accurate proportions.
  - 2. Obtain and use type of mixing equipment, mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other procedures to produce mortars and grouts of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for installations indicated.
- E. Install tile in accordance with TCNA's "Handbook for Ceramic, Glass, and Stone Tile Installation" for TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules. Comply with parts of ANSI A108 series that are referenced in TCNA installation methods and specified in tile installation schedules, and apply to types of setting and grouting materials used.
  - 1. For the following installations, follow procedures in ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards for providing 95 percent mortar coverage:
    - a. Tile floors in wet areas.
    - b. Tile floors in laundries.
    - c. Tile floors consisting of tiles 8 by 8 inches (200 by 200 mm) or larger.
    - d. Tile floors consisting of rib-backed tiles.
  - 2. Extend tile work into recesses and under or behind equipment and fixtures to form complete covering without interruptions unless otherwise indicated. Terminate work neatly at obstructions, edges, and corners without disrupting pattern or joint alignments.
  - 3. Accurately form intersections and returns. Perform cutting and drilling of tile without marring visible surfaces. Carefully grind cut edges of tile abutting trim, finish, or built-in items for straight aligned joints. Fit tile closely to electrical outlets, piping, fixtures, and other penetrations so plates, collars, or covers overlap tile.
  - 4. Provide manufacturer's standard trim shapes where necessary to eliminate exposed tile edges.
  - 5. Where accent tile differs in thickness from field tile, vary setting-bed thickness so that tiles are flush.
  - 6. Jointing Pattern: Lay tile in grid pattern unless otherwise indicated. Lay out tile work and center tile fields in both directions in each space or on each wall area. Lay out tile work to

minimize use of pieces that are less than half of a tile. Provide uniform joint widths unless otherwise indicated.

- a. For tile mounted in sheets, make joints between tile sheets same width as joints within tile sheets, so joints between sheets are not apparent in finished Work.
  - b. Where adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, or trim are specified or indicated to be same size, align joints.
  - c. Where tiles are specified or indicated to be whole integer multiples of adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, or trim, align joints unless otherwise indicated.
7. Lay out tile wainscots to dimensions indicated or to next full tile beyond dimensions indicated.
- F. Movement Joints: Provide movement joints and other sealant-filled joints, including control, contraction, and isolation joints, where indicated on Drawings. Form joints during installation of setting materials, mortar beds, and tile. Keep joints free of dirt, debris, and setting materials prior to filling with sealants. Do not saw-cut joints after installing tiles.
  1. Where joints occur in concrete substrates, locate joints in tile surfaces directly above them.
- G. Thresholds: Install stone thresholds in same type of setting bed as adjacent floor unless otherwise indicated.
  1. At locations where mortar bed (thickset) would otherwise be exposed above adjacent floor finishes, set thresholds in improved modified dry-set mortar (thinset).
  2. Do not extend waterproof membrane or crack isolation membrane under thresholds set in modified dry-set or improved modified dry-set mortar. Fill joints between such thresholds and adjoining tile set on waterproof membrane or crack isolation membrane with elastomeric sealant.
- H. Metal Flooring Transitions: Install where exposed edge of tile flooring meets carpet, wood, or other flooring that finishes flush with or below top of tile and no threshold is indicated.
- I. Metal Wall Trim: Install at locations indicated on Drawings and where exposed edge of wall tile will be visible without metal trim.
- J. Grout Sealer: Apply grout sealer to grout joints in tile floors in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. As soon as sealer has penetrated grout joints, remove excess sealer and sealer from tile faces by wiping with soft cloth.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Water Test:
  1. Test of waterproofing membrane in showers and similar areas to be performed by Installation Contractor before setting tile.
    - a. Perform test after 24 hours of waterproof membrane installation.
    - b. Insert test plug in drain or waste line.



- c. Fill shower base with water, high enough that the membrane-to-drain connection and floor-to-wall transition can be evaluated, and mark wall.
    - d. Check for leaks after 24 hours.
  2. Test to be witnessed by Architect.
- B. Nonconforming Work:
  1. Waterproof membrane will be considered defective if water level has dropped.
  2. Remove and replace defective components and retest.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace tile that is damaged or that does not match adjoining tile. Provide new matching units, installed as specified and in a manner to eliminate evidence of replacement.
- B. Cleaning: On completion of placement and grouting, clean all ceramic tile surfaces so they are free of foreign matter.
  1. Remove grout residue from tile as soon as possible.
  2. Clean grout smears and haze from tile in accordance with tile and grout manufacturer's written instructions. Use only cleaners recommended by tile and grout manufacturers and only after determining that cleaners are safe to use by testing on samples of tile and other surfaces to be cleaned. Protect metal surfaces and plumbing fixtures from effects of cleaning. Flush surfaces with clean water before and after cleaning.

### 3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed tile work with kraft paper or other heavy covering during construction period to prevent staining, damage, and wear. If recommended by tile manufacturer, apply coat of neutral protective cleaner to completed tile walls and floors.
- B. Prohibit foot and wheel traffic from tiled floors for at least seven days after grouting is completed.
- C. Before final inspection, remove protective coverings and rinse neutral protective cleaner from tile surfaces.

### 3.7 INTERIOR CERAMIC TILE INSTALLATION SCHEDULE

- A. Interior Floor Installations, Concrete Subfloor:
  1. TCNA F111 Method ANSI A108.1A. Cement mortar bed (thickset) installed over waterproofing and crack isolation membrane. Applies where tile is sloped, where slab is recessed, and/or where indicated on Drawings.
    - a. Bond Coat for Cured-Bed Method: Modified dry-set mortar.
    - b. Grout: High-performance sanded cement grout.
    - c. Joint Width: 1/8 inch (3.2 mm).
    - d. Grout color: Latricrete 42 Platinum

2. TCNA F125-Full : Thinset mortar on crack isolation membrane. Applies to all typical conditions where thickset is not required.
  - a. Thinset Mortar: Modified dry-set mortar.
  - b. Grout: High-performance sanded cement grout.
  - c. Joint Width: 1/8 inch (3.2 mm).
  - d. Grout color: Laticrete 42 Platinum
- B. Interior Wall Installations, Masonry or Concrete:
  1. TCNA W202I : Thinset mortar over waterproof membrane.
    - a. Thinset Mortar: Modified dry-set mortar.
    - b. Grout: Water-cleanable epoxy grout.
    - c. Joint Width: 1/8 inch (3.2 mm).
    - d. Grout color: Laticrete 78 Sterling Silver
- C. Interior Wall Installations, Metal Studs or Furring:
  1. TCNA W245 : Thinset mortar on backer board over waterproof membrane.
    - a. Thinset Mortar: Modified dry-set mortar.
    - b. Grout: Water-cleanable epoxy grout.
    - c. Joint Width: 1/8 inch (3.2 mm).
    - d. Grout color: Laticrete 78 Sterling Silver

END OF SECTION 093013

## SECTION 095113 - ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Acoustical panels.
2. Metal suspension system.
3. Metal edge moldings and trim.

B. Products furnished, but not installed under this Section, include anchors, clips, and other ceiling attachment devices to be cast in concrete.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Acoustical panels.
2. Metal suspension system.
3. Metal edge moldings and trim.

B. Samples for Verification: For each component indicated and for each exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of sizes indicated below:

1. Acoustical Panels: Set of 6-inch- (150-mm-) square Samples of each type, color, pattern, and texture.
2. Exposed Suspension-System Members, Moldings, and Trim: Set of 6-inch- (150-mm-) long Samples of each type, finish, and color.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Ceiling suspension-system members.
2. Structural members to which suspension systems will be attached.
3. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
  - a. Furnish layouts for cast-in-place anchors, clips, and other ceiling attachment devices whose installation is specified in other Sections.
4. Carrying channels or other supplemental support for hanger-wire attachment where conditions do not permit installation of hanger wires at required spacing.
5. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical panels.
6. Items penetrating finished ceiling and ceiling-mounted items including the following:

- a. Lighting fixtures.
  - b. Diffusers.
  - c. Grilles.
  - d. Speakers.
  - e. Sprinklers.
  - f. Access panels.
  - g. Perimeter moldings.
7. Minimum Drawing Scale: 1/8 inch = 1 foot (1:96).

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For finishes to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Acoustical Ceiling Units: Full-size panels equal to 2 percent of quantity installed.
  2. Suspension-System Components: Quantity of each exposed component equal to 2 percent of quantity installed.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver acoustical panels, suspension-system components, and accessories to Project site and store them in a fully enclosed, conditioned space where they will be protected against damage from moisture, humidity, temperature extremes, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and other causes.
- B. Before installing acoustical panels, permit them to reach room temperature and a stabilized moisture content.

#### 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install acoustical panel ceilings until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
1. Pressurized Plenums: Operate ventilation system for not less than 48 hours before beginning acoustical panel ceiling installation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Source Limitations for Ceiling System: Obtain each type of acoustical ceiling panel and its supporting suspension system from single source from single manufacturer.

### 2.2 ACOUSTICAL PANELS

- A. Acceptable Manufacturers
  - 1. Armstrong
  - 2. USG Corporation
  - 3. CertainTeed
- B. Acoustical Panel Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard panels in accordance with ASTM E1264 and designated by type, form, pattern, acoustical rating, and light reflectance unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Classification: Provide panels as follows:
  - 1. Type and Form, Type III: Mineral base with painted finish; Form 2, water felted, typical.
  - 2. Type and Form, Type IV Form 2: Mineral base with membrane-faced overlay; Form 2, water felted; with vinyl overlay on face, food service areas and where indicated on Drawings.
  - 3. Pattern: as indicated by manufacturer's designation.
- D. Color: White.
- E. Light Reflectance (LR): Not less than 0.80.
- F. Ceiling Attenuation Class (CAC): Not less than 35.
- G. Noise Reduction Coefficient (NRC): Not less than 0.70.
- H. Articulation Class (AC): Not less than 170.
- I. Edge/Joint Detail: Tegular
- J. Thickness:
  - 1. 3/4 inch (19 mm).
- K. Modular Size: As indicated on Drawings.
- L. Antimicrobial Treatment: Manufacturer's standard broad spectrum, antimicrobial formulation that inhibits fungus, mold, mildew, and gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria and showing no mold, mildew, or bacterial growth when tested in accordance with ASTM D3273, ASTM D3274, or ASTM G21 and evaluated in accordance with ASTM D3274 or ASTM G21.

## 2.3 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEM

- A. Same manufacturer as panels
- B. Metal Suspension-System Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard, direct-hung, metal suspension system and accessories in accordance with ASTM C635/C635M and designated by type, structural classification, and finish indicated.
  - 1. High-Humidity Finish: Where indicated, provide coating tested and classified for "severe environment performance" in accordance with ASTM C635/C635M.
- C. Wide-Face, Capped, Double-Web, Steel Suspension System: Main and cross runners roll formed from cold-rolled steel sheet; prepainted, electrolytically zinc coated, or hot-dip galvanized, G30 (Z90) coating designation; with prefinished 15/16-inch- (24-mm-) wide metal caps on flanges. Applies to typical Type III panels.
  - 1. Structural Classification: Heavy-duty system.
  - 2. Face Design: Flat, flush.
  - 3. Cap Material: Cold-rolled steel.
  - 4. Cap Finish: Painted white.
- D. Wide-Face, Aluminum-Capped, Double-Web, Hot-Dip Galvanized, G60 (Z180), Steel Suspension System: Main and cross runners roll formed from cold-rolled steel sheet; hot-dip galvanized, G60 (Z180) coating designation; with prefinished, 15/16-inch- (24-mm-) wide aluminum caps on flanges. Applies to food service Type IV panels.
  - 1. Structural Classification: Heavy-duty system.
  - 2. Face Design: Flat, flush.
  - 3. Cap Finish: Painted white.

## 2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Attachment Devices: Size for five times the design load indicated in ASTM C635/C635M, Table 1, "Direct Hung," unless otherwise indicated. Comply with seismic design requirements.
  - 1. Anchors in Concrete: Anchors of type and material indicated below, with holes or loops for attaching hangers of type indicated and with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to five times that imposed by ceiling construction, as determined by testing in accordance with ASTM E488/E488M or ASTM E1512 as applicable, conducted by a qualified testing and inspecting agency.
    - a. Type: Cast-in-place anchors.
    - b. Corrosion Protection, Carbon Steel: Components zinc plated in accordance with ASTM B633, Class SC 1 (mild) service condition.
    - c. Corrosion Protection, Stainless Steel: Components complying with ASTM F593 and ASTM F594, Group 1 Alloy 304 or 316.
    - d. Corrosion Protection, Nickel-Copper Alloy: Components fabricated from nickel-copper-alloy rods complying with ASTM B164 for UNS No. N04400 alloy.
  - 2. Power-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hangers of type indicated and with capability to sustain, without

failure, a load equal to 10 times that imposed by ceiling construction, as determined by testing in accordance with ASTM E1190, conducted by a qualified testing and inspecting agency.

- B. Wire Hangers, Braces, and Ties: Provide wires as follows:
  - 1. Zinc-Coated, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A641/A641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper.
  - 2. Stainless Steel Wire: ASTM A580/A580M, Type 304, nonmagnetic.
  - 3. Nickel-Copper-Alloy Wire: ASTM B164, nickel-copper-alloy UNS No. N04400.
  - 4. Size: Wire diameter sufficient for its stress at three times hanger design load (ASTM C635/C635M, Table 1, "Direct Hung") will be less than yield stress of wire, but not less than 0.106-inch- (2.69-mm-) diameter wire.
- C. Hanger Rods: Mild steel, zinc coated or protected with rust-inhibitive paint.
- D. Flat Hangers: Mild steel, zinc coated or protected with rust-inhibitive paint.
- E. Angle Hangers: Angles with legs not less than 7/8 inch (22 mm) wide; formed with 0.04-inch- (1-mm-) thick, galvanized-steel sheet complying with ASTM A653/A653M, G90 (Z275) coating designation; with bolted connections and 5/16-inch- (8-mm-) diameter bolts.

## 2.5 METAL EDGE MOLDINGS AND TRIM

- A. Roll-Formed, Sheet-Metal Edge Moldings and Trim: Type and profile indicated or, if not indicated, manufacturer's standard moldings for edges and penetrations that comply with seismic design requirements; formed from sheet metal of same material, finish, and color as that used for exposed flanges of suspension-system runners.
  - 1. Edge moldings to fit acoustical panel edge details and suspension systems indicated and match width and configuration of exposed runners unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. For lay-in panels with reveal edge details, provide stepped edge molding that forms reveal of same depth and width as that formed between edge of panel and flange at exposed suspension member.
  - 3. For circular penetrations of ceiling, provide edge moldings fabricated to diameter required to fit penetration exactly.
- B. Extruded-Aluminum Edge Moldings and Trim: Where indicated, provide manufacturer's extruded-aluminum edge moldings and trim of profile indicated or referenced by manufacturer's designations, including splice plates, corner pieces, and attachment and other clips, complying with seismic design requirements.
  - 1. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A31, Class II, 0.010 mm or thicker.
  - 2. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: Minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils (0.04 mm). Comply with ASTM C635/C635M and coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, including structural framing to which acoustical panel ceilings attach or abut, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements specified in this and other Sections that affect ceiling installation and anchorage and with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of acoustical panel ceilings.
- B. Examine acoustical panels before installation. Reject acoustical panels that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical panels to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid using less-than-half-width panels at borders unless otherwise indicated, and comply with layout shown on reflected ceiling plans.
- B. Layout openings for penetrations centered on the penetrating items.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS

- A. Install acoustical panel ceilings in accordance with ASTM C636/C636M and manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Fire-Rated Assembly: Install fire-rated ceiling systems in accordance with tested fire-rated design.
- B. Suspend ceiling hangers from building's structural members and as follows:
  - 1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structure or of ceiling suspension system.
  - 2. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions; offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
  - 3. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with location of hangers at spacings required to support standard suspension-system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
  - 4. Secure wire hangers to ceiling-suspension members and to supports above with a minimum of three tight turns. Connect hangers directly to structure or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for substrate and that will not deteriorate or otherwise fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
  - 5. Secure flat, angle, channel, and rod hangers to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for both the structure to which hangers are attached and the type of hanger



- involved. Install hangers in a manner that will not cause them to deteriorate or fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
6. Do not support ceilings directly from permanent metal forms or floor deck. Fasten hangers to cast-in-place hanger inserts, postinstalled mechanical or adhesive anchors, or power-actuated fasteners that extend through forms into concrete.
  7. When steel framing does not permit installation of hanger wires at spacing required, install carrying channels or other supplemental support for attachment of hanger wires.
  8. Do not attach hangers to steel deck tabs.
  9. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck. Attach hangers to structural members.
  10. Space hangers not more than 48 inches (1200 mm) o.c. along each member supported directly from hangers unless otherwise indicated; provide hangers not more than 8 inches (200 mm) from ends of each member.
  11. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced standards.
- C. Secure bracing wires to ceiling suspension members and to supports with a minimum of four tight turns. Suspend bracing from building's structural members as required for hangers, without attaching to permanent metal forms, steel deck, or steel deck tabs. Fasten bracing wires into concrete with cast-in-place or postinstalled anchors.
- D. Install edge moldings and trim of type indicated at perimeter of acoustical ceiling area and where necessary to conceal edges of acoustical panels.
1. Screw attach moldings to substrate at intervals not more than 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. and not more than 3 inches (75 mm) from ends. Miter corners accurately and connect securely.
  2. Do not use exposed fasteners, including pop rivets, on moldings and trim.
- E. Install suspension-system runners so they are square and securely interlocked with one another. Remove and replace dented, bent, or kinked members.
- F. Install acoustical panels with undamaged edges and fit accurately into suspension-system runners and edge moldings. Scribe and cut panels at borders and penetrations to provide precise fit.
1. Arrange directionally patterned acoustical panels as follows:
    - a. As indicated on reflected ceiling plans.
  2. For square-edged panels, install panels with edges fully hidden from view by flanges of suspension-system runners and moldings.
  3. For reveal-edged panels on suspension-system runners, install panels with bottom of reveal in firm contact with top surface of runner flanges.
  4. For reveal-edged panels on suspension-system members with box-shaped flanges, install panels with reveal surfaces in firm contact with suspension-system surfaces and panel faces flush with bottom face of runners.
  5. Paint cut edges of panel remaining exposed after installation; match color of exposed panel surfaces using coating recommended in writing for this purpose by acoustical panel manufacturer.
  6. Protect lighting fixtures and air ducts in accordance with requirements indicated for fire-resistance-rated assembly.

### 3.4 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Suspended Ceilings: Install main and cross runners level to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet (3 mm in 3.6 m), non-cumulative.
- B. Moldings and Trim: Install moldings and trim to substrate and level with ceiling suspension system to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet (3 mm in 3.6 m), non-cumulative.

### 3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed surfaces of acoustical panel ceilings, including trim, edge moldings, and suspension-system members. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and touchup of minor finish damage.
- B. Remove and replace ceiling components that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

END OF SECTION 095113

## SECTION 096513 - RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Thermoset-rubber base.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each type of product indicated and for each color, texture, and pattern required in manufacturer's standard-size Samples, but not less than 12 inches (300 mm) long.
- C. Product Schedule: For resilient base and accessory products. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

#### 1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Furnish not less than 10 linear feet (3 linear m) for every 500 linear feet (150 linear m) or fraction thereof, of each type, color, pattern, and size of resilient product installed.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store resilient products and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 deg F (10 deg C) or more than 90 deg F (32 deg C).

## 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F (21 deg C) or more than 95 deg F (35 deg C), in spaces to receive resilient products during the following periods:
  - 1. 48 hours before installation.
  - 2. During installation.
  - 3. 48 hours after installation.
- B. After installation and until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 60 deg F (13 deg C) or more than 90 deg F (35 deg C).
- C. Install resilient products after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 THERMOSET-RUBBER BASE

- 1. Manufacturers:Burke
- 2. Flexco
- 3. Johnsonsite
- 4. Roppe
- B. Product Standard: ASTM F1861, Type TS (rubber, vulcanized thermoset), Group I (solid, homogeneous).
  - 1. Style and Location:
    - a. Style A, Straight: Provide in areas with carpet.
    - b. Style B, Cove: Provide in areas with resilient floor coverings.
- C. Thickness: 0.125 inch (3.2 mm).
- D. Height: 4 inches (102 mm).
- E. Lengths: Coils in manufacturer's standard length.
- F. Outside Corners: Preformed.
- G. Inside Corners: Job formed or preformed.
- H. Colors: as indicated on Drawings \

### 2.2 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland-cement-based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by resilient-product manufacturer for applications indicated.

- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by resilient-product manufacturer for resilient products and substrate conditions indicated.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  - 1. Installation of resilient products indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound; remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
- C. Do not install resilient products until materials are the same temperature as space where they are to be installed.
  - 1. At least 48 hours in advance of installation, move resilient products and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed.
- D. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient products.

#### 3.3 RESILIENT BASE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient base.
- B. Apply resilient base to walls, columns, pilasters, casework and cabinets in toe spaces, and other permanent fixtures in rooms and areas where base is required.
- C. Install resilient base in lengths as long as practical without gaps at seams and with tops of adjacent pieces aligned.
- D. Tightly adhere resilient base to substrate throughout length of each piece, with base in continuous contact with horizontal and vertical substrates.

- E. Do not stretch resilient base during installation.
- F. On masonry surfaces or other similar irregular substrates, fill voids along top edge of resilient base with manufacturer's recommended adhesive filler material.
- G. Preformed Corners: Install preformed corners before installing straight pieces.

### 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protecting resilient products.
- B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing resilient-product installation:
  - 1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from surfaces.
  - 2. Sweep and vacuum horizontal surfaces thoroughly.
  - 3. Damp-mop horizontal surfaces to remove marks and soil.
- C. Protect resilient products from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.
- D. Cover resilient products subject to wear and foot traffic until Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 096513

## SECTION 096519 - RESILIENT TILE FLOORING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Vinyl composition floor tile.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each type of resilient floor tile.
  - 1. Include floor tile layouts, edges, columns, doorways, enclosing partitions, built-in furniture, cabinets, and cutouts.
  - 2. Show details of special patterns.
- C. Samples: Full-size units of each color, texture, and pattern of floor tile required.
- D. Product Schedule: For floor tile. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For each type of floor tile to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Floor Tile: Furnish one box of each type, color, and pattern of floor tile installed.
  - 2. .

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are competent in techniques required by manufacturer for floor tile installation and seaming method indicated.
  - 1. Engage an installer who employs workers for this Project who are trained or certified by floor tile manufacturer for installation techniques required.

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store floor tile and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 deg F (10 deg C) or more than 90 deg F (32 deg C). Store floor tiles on flat surfaces.

## 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F (21 deg C) or more than 95 deg F (35 deg C), in spaces to receive floor tile during the following periods:
  - 1. 48 hours before installation.
  - 2. During installation.
  - 3. 48 hours after installation.
- B. After installation and until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F (13 deg C) or more than 95 deg F (35 deg C).
- C. Close spaces to traffic during floor tile installation.
- D. Close spaces to traffic for 48 hours after floor tile installation.
- E. Install floor tile after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For resilient floor tile, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E648 or NFPA 253 by a qualified testing agency.
  - 1. Critical Radiant Flux Classification: Class I, not less than 0.45 W/sq. cm.

### 2.2 VINYL COMPOSITION FLOOR TILE

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Armstrong



2. Amtico
  3. AvaFlor
- B. Tile Standard: ASTM F1066, Class 3, surface pattern.
  - C. Wearing Surface: Smooth.
  - D. Thickness: 0.125 inch (3.2 mm).
  - E. Size: 12 by 12 inches (305 by 305 mm).
  - F. Colors and Patterns: as indicated on Drawings >.

### 2.3 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland-cement-based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by floor tile manufacturer for applications indicated.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by floor tile and adhesive manufacturers to suit floor tile and substrate conditions indicated.
- C. Floor Polish: Provide protective, liquid floor-polish products recommended by floor tile manufacturer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  1. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of floor tile.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to floor tile manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Concrete Substrates: Prepare according to ASTM F710.
  1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.

2. Remove substrate coatings and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by floor tile manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
3. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Perform tests recommended by floor tile manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrate alkalinity falls within range on pH scale recommended by manufacturer in writing, but not less than 5 or more than 10 pH.
4. Moisture Testing: Perform tests so that each test area does not exceed 200 sq. ft. (18.6 sq. m), and perform no fewer than three tests in each installation area and with test areas evenly spaced in installation areas.
  - a. Anhydrous Calcium Chloride Test: ASTM F1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. (1.36 kg of water/92.9 sq. m) in 24 hours.
  - b. Relative Humidity Test: Using in-situ probes, ASTM F2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 75 percent relative humidity level measurement.
- C. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound; remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
- D. Do not install floor tiles until materials are the same temperature as space where they are to be installed.
  1. At least 48 hours in advance of installation, move resilient floor tile and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed.
- E. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient floor tile.

### 3.3 FLOOR TILE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing floor tile.
- B. Lay out floor tiles from center marks established with principal walls, discounting minor offsets, so tiles at opposite edges of room are of equal width. Adjust as necessary to avoid using cut widths that equal less than one-half tile at perimeter.
  1. Lay tiles square with room axis.
- C. Match floor tiles for color and pattern by selecting tiles from cartons in the same sequence as manufactured and packaged, if so numbered. Discard broken, cracked, chipped, or deformed tiles.
  1. Lay tiles in pattern of colors and sizes indicated.
- D. Scribe, cut, and fit floor tiles to butt neatly and tightly to vertical surfaces and permanent fixtures including built-in furniture, cabinets, pipes, outlets, and door frames.
- E. Extend floor tiles into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, and similar openings. Extend floor tiles to center of door openings.

- F. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on floor tiles as marked on substrates. Use chalk or other nonpermanent marking device.
- G. Install floor tiles on covers for telephone and electrical ducts, building expansion-joint covers, and similar items in installation areas. Maintain overall continuity of color and pattern between pieces of tile installed on covers and adjoining tiles. Tightly adhere tile edges to substrates that abut covers and to cover perimeters.
- H. Adhere floor tiles to substrates using a full spread of adhesive applied to substrate to produce a completed installation without open cracks, voids, raising and puckering at joints, telegraphing of adhesive spreader marks, and other surface imperfections.
- I. Seamless Installation:
  - 1. Heat-Welded Seams: Comply with ASTM F1516. Rout joints and heat weld with welding bead to fuse sections permanently into a seamless flooring installation. Prepare, weld, and finish seams to produce surfaces flush with adjoining flooring surfaces.
  - 2. Chemically Bonded Seams: Bond seams with chemical-bonding compound to fuse sections permanently into a seamless flooring installation. Prepare seams and apply compound to produce tightly fitted seams without gaps, overlays, or excess bonding compound on flooring surfaces.
- J. Resilient Terrazzo Accessories: Install according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protecting floor tile.
- B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing floor tile installation:
  - 1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from surfaces.
  - 2. Sweep and vacuum surfaces thoroughly.
  - 3. Damp-mop surfaces to remove marks and soil.
- C. Protect floor tile from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.
- D. Floor Polish: Remove soil, adhesive, and blemishes from floor tile surfaces before applying liquid floor polish.
  - 1. Apply two coat(s).
- E. Joint Sealant: Apply sealant to resilient terrazzo floor tile perimeter and around columns, at door frames, and at other joints and penetrations.
- F. Cover floor tile until Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 096519

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION - 096723 - RESINOUS FLOORING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Industrial resinous flooring systems.

- B. Related Sections:

- 1. Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for sealants installed at joints in resinous flooring systems.

#### 1.3 Section 071800 "Traffic Coatings" for vehicular-traffic-bearing, elastomeric flooring systems. ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include manufacturer's technical data, application instructions, and recommendations for each resinous flooring component required.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of exposed finish required.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each resinous flooring system required, 6 inches (150 mm) square, applied to a rigid backing by Installer for this Project.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Installer Certificates: Signed by manufacturer certifying that installers comply with specified requirements.
- B. Material Certificates: For each resinous flooring component, from manufacturer.
- C. Material Test Reports: For each resinous flooring system.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For resinous flooring to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of flooring systems required for this Project.

1. Engage an installer who is certified in writing by resinous flooring manufacturer as qualified to apply resinous flooring systems indicated.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain primary resinous flooring materials, including primers, resins, hardening agents, grouting coats, and topcoats, from single source from single manufacturer. Provide secondary materials, including patching and fill material, joint sealant, and repair materials, of type and from source recommended by manufacturer of primary materials.
- C. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials in original packages and containers, with seals unbroken, bearing manufacturer's labels indicating brand name and directions for storage and mixing with other components.
- B. Store materials to prevent deterioration from moisture, heat, cold, direct sunlight, or other detrimental effects.

#### 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with resinous flooring manufacturer's written instructions for substrate temperature, ambient temperature, moisture, ventilation, and other conditions affecting resinous flooring application.
  1. Maintain material and substrate temperature between 65 and 85 deg F (18 and 30 deg C) during resinous flooring application and for not less than 24 hours after application.
- B. Lighting: Provide permanent lighting or, if permanent lighting is not in place, simulate permanent lighting conditions during resinous flooring application.
- C. Close spaces to traffic during resinous flooring application and for not less than 24 hours after application unless manufacturer recommends a longer period.
- D. Do not install resinous flooring over concrete slabs until slabs have cured and are sufficiently dry to bond with resinous flooring and concrete slabs have pH range recommended by resinous flooring manufacturer.

#### 1.9 Warranty

- A. Manufacturer shall furnish a single, written warranty covering both material and workmanship for a period of (1) full years from date of installation, or provide a joint and several warranty signed on a single document by material manufacturer and applicator jointly and severally warranting the materials and workmanship for a period of (1) full year from date of installation. A sample warranty letter must be included with bid package or bid may be disqualified.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Resinous Flooring – CON2

1. Basis of Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Duraflex Hybri-Flex EB or a comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1) Cornerstone Flooring
  - 2) Key Resin Company
  - 3) Tennant Coatings, Inc.
  - 4) Stonhard

## 2.2 INDUSTRIAL RESINOUS FLOORING

- A. Resinous Flooring: Abrasion-, impact- and chemical-resistant, industrial-aggregate-filled, resin-based, monolithic floor surfacing designed to produce a seamless floor and integral cove base.
- B. System Characteristics:
  1. Color and Pattern: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  2. Wearing Surface: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  3. Integral Cove Base: 6"
- C. Primer Coats:
  1. Resin: Epoxy.
  2. Formulation Description: 100 percent solids.
  3. Application Method: Squeegee and roller
    - a. Number of Coats: Two.
  4. Aggregates: Natural silica.
- D. Body Coats:
  1. Resin: Urethane.
  2. Formulation Description: 100 percent solids elastomeric.
  3. Application Method: Troweled or screeded.
    - a. Number of Coats: One.
- E. Topcoat: Sealing or finish coats.
  1. Resin: Epoxy.
  2. Formulation Description: 100 percent solids.
  3. Type: Pigmented.
  4. Finish: Matte.

5. Number of Coats: One.

F. System Physical Properties: Provide resinous flooring system with the following minimum physical property requirements when tested according to test methods indicated:

1. Compressive Strength: 10,000 psi after 7 days per ASTM C 579.
2. Tensile Strength: 1,750 psi per ASTM C 307.
3. Flexural Strength: 4,000 psi per ASTM C 580.
4. Water Absorption: < 1% per ASTM C 413.
5. Impact Resistance: > 160 in. lbs. per ASTM D 2794.
6. Flammability: Class 1 per ASTM E-648.
7. Hardness: .85 to .90, Shore D per ASTM D 2240.
8. Flexural Modulus of Elasticity:  $2.0 \times 10^6$  psi per ASTM C-580
9. Thermal Coefficient of Linear Expansion:  $1.4 \times 10^{-5}$  in./in. °F per ASTM C-531

## 2.3 ACCESSORIES

A. Primer: Type recommended by manufacturer for substrate and body coats indicated.

1. Formulation Description: 100 percent solids.

B. Waterproofing Membrane: Type recommended by manufacturer for substrate and primer and body coats indicated.

1. Formulation Description: 100 percent solids.

C. Patching and Fill Material: Resinous product of or approved by resinous flooring manufacturer and recommended by manufacturer for application indicated.

D. Joint Sealant: Type recommended or produced by resinous flooring manufacturer for type of service and joint condition indicated, including but not limited to, joint fill material and concrete crack treatment.

E. Bonding agent: A two component, solvent based, epoxy polyamide coating. It cures to a hard, impact resistant film characterized by exceptional adhesion to metals, wood, concrete, masonry and other construction materials.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

A. General: Prepare and clean substrates according to resinous flooring manufacturer's written instructions for substrate indicated. Provide clean, dry substrate for resinous flooring application.

B. Concrete Substrates: Provide sound concrete surfaces free of laitance, glaze, efflorescence, curing compounds, form-release agents, dust, dirt, grease, oil, and other contaminants incompatible with resinous flooring.

1. Roughen concrete substrates as follows:



- a. Shot-blast surfaces with an apparatus that abrades the concrete surface, contains the dispensed shot within the apparatus, and recirculates the shot by vacuum pickup.
  - b. Comply with ASTM C 811 requirements unless manufacturer's written instructions are more stringent.
2. Repair damaged and deteriorated concrete according to resinous flooring manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Verify that concrete substrates are dry and moisture-vapor emissions are within acceptable levels according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. Perform anhydrous calcium chloride test, ASTM F 1869. Proceed with application of resinous flooring only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 7 lbs of water/1000 square feet of slab area in 24 hours.
  - b. Perform plastic sheet test, ASTM D 4263. Proceed with application only after testing indicates absence of moisture in substrates.
  - c. Perform relative humidity test using in situ probes, ASTM F 2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 75 percent relative humidity level measurement.
  - d. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Verify that concrete substrates have pH within acceptable range. Perform tests recommended by manufacturer. Proceed with application only after substrates pass testing.
  - e. Perform additional moisture tests recommended by manufacturer. Proceed with application only after substrates pass testing.
- C. Resinous Materials: Mix components and prepare materials according to resinous flooring manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Use patching and fill material to fill holes and depressions in substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Treat control joints and other nonmoving substrate cracks to prevent cracks from reflecting through resinous flooring according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.2 APPLICATION

- A. General: Apply components of resinous flooring system according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a uniform, monolithic wearing surface of thickness indicated.
  1. Coordinate application of components to provide optimum adhesion of resinous flooring system to substrate, and optimum intercoat adhesion.
  2. Cure resinous flooring components according to manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent contamination during application and curing processes.
  3. At substrate expansion and isolation joints, comply with resinous flooring manufacturer's written instructions.

- a. Apply joint sealant to comply with manufacturer's written recommendations.
- B. Apply primer over prepared substrate at manufacturer's recommended spreading rate.
- C. Apply waterproofing membrane, where indicated, in manufacturer's recommended thickness.
  - 1. Apply waterproofing membrane to integral cove base substrates.
- D. Integral Cove Base: Apply cove base mix to wall surfaces before applying flooring. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions and details including those for taping, mixing, priming, troweling, sanding, and topcoating of cove base. Round internal and external corners.
  - 1. Integral Cove Base: 6 inches (100 mm) high.
- E. Apply troweled or screeded body coats in thickness indicated for flooring system. Hand or power trowel and grout to fill voids. When cured, remove trowel marks and roughness using method recommended by manufacturer.
- F. Apply grout coat, of type recommended by resinous flooring manufacturer, to fill voids in surface of final body coat and to produce wearing surface indicated.
- G. Apply topcoats in number indicated for flooring system and at spreading rates recommended in writing by manufacturer.

### 3.3 TERMINATIONS

- A. Chase edges to "lock" the coating system into the concrete substrate along lines of termination.
- B. Penetration Treatment: Lap and seal coating onto the perimeter of the penetrating item by bridging over compatible elastomer at the interface to compensate for possible movement.
- C. Treat floor drains by chasing the coating to lock in place at point of termination.

### 3.4 JOINTS AND CRACKS

- A. Treat control joints to bridge potential cracks and to maintain monolithic protection.
- B. Treat cold joints and construction joints to bridge potential cracks and to maintain monolithic protection on horizontal and vertical surfaces as well as horizontal and vertical interfaces.
- C. Discontinue floor coating system at vertical and horizontal contraction and expansion joints by installing backer rod and compatible sealant after coating installation is completed. Provide sealant type recommended by manufacturer for traffic conditions and chemical exposures to be encountered.

### 3.5 CLEANING, PROTECTING, AND CURING

- A. Cure resinous flooring materials in compliance with manufacturer's directions, taking care to prevent contamination during stages of application and prior to completion of curing process. Close area of application for a minimum of 18 hours.
- B. Protect resinous flooring materials from damage and wear during construction operation. Where temporary covering is required for this purpose, comply with manufacturer's recommendations for protective materials and method of application. General Contractor is responsible for protection and cleaning of surfaces after final coats.
- C. Cleaning: Remove temporary covering and clean resinous flooring just prior to final inspection. Use cleaning materials and procedures recommended by resinous flooring manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 096723

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 099123 - INTERIOR PAINTING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Primers.
- 2. Water-based finish coatings.
- 3. Floor sealers and paints.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 051200 "Structural Steel Framing" for shop priming structural steel.
- 2. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for shop priming metal fabrications.
- 3. Section 055213 "Pipe and Tube Railings" for shop priming pipe and tube railings.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MPI Gloss Level 1: Not more than five units at 60 degrees and 10 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523
- B. MPI Gloss Level 2: Not more than 10 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523
- C. MPI Gloss Level 3: 10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523
- D. MPI Gloss Level 4: 20 to 35 units at 60 degrees and not less than 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523
- E. MPI Gloss Level 5: 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523
- F. MPI Gloss Level 6: 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523
- G. MPI Gloss Level 7: More than 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
  - 1. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
  - 2. Indicate VOC content.
  - 3.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each type of paint system and each color and gloss of topcoat.
  - 1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, 8 inches (200 mm) square.
  - 2. Apply coats on Samples in steps to show each coat required for system.
  - 3. Label each coat of each Sample.
  - 4. Label each Sample for location and application area.
- C. Product Schedule: Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in the Interior Painting Schedule to cross-reference paint systems specified in this Section. Include color designations.

#### 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Paint Products: 1 gal. (3.8 L) of each material and color applied.
  - 2. Paint color chart with swatches and color names for matching of paint colors

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F (7 deg C).
  - 1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
  - 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

#### 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F (10 and 35 deg C).
- B. Do not apply paints when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures of less than 5 deg F (3 deg C) above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers
  - 1. Sherwin Williams Company
  - 2. Benjamin Moore
  - 3. PPG
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each paint product from single source from single manufacturer.

### 2.2 PAINT PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Material Compatibility:
  - 1. Materials for use within each paint system shall be compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
  - 2. For each coat in a paint system, products shall be recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturers for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
- B. Colors: As indicated in a color schedule.

### 2.3 FLOOR SEALERS AND PAINTS

- A. Water-Based Concrete Floor Sealer: Clear, water-based, acrylic-copolymer-emulsion sealer formulated for oil, gasoline, alkali, and water resistance and for use on concrete traffic surfaces.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
  - 1. Concrete: 12 percent.
  - 2. Masonry (Clay and CMUs): 12 percent.
  - 3. Wood: 15 percent.
  - 4. Gypsum Board: 12 percent.
- C. Gypsum Board Substrates: Verify that finishing compound is sanded smooth.
- D. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility, with existing finishes and primers.

- E. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

- 1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.
- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
  - 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
  - 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.
- D. Concrete Substrates: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Masonry Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces or mortar joints exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and shop primer, if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer but not less than the following:
  - 1. SSPC-SP 2.
  - 2. SSPC-SP 3.
  - 3. SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4.
  - 4. SSPC-SP 11.
- G. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and areas where shop paint is abraded. Paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.
- H. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied paints.
- I. Wood Substrates:
  - 1. Scrape and clean knots, and apply coat of knot sealer before applying primer.
  - 2. Sand surfaces that will be exposed to view, and dust off.
  - 3. Prime edges, ends, faces, undersides, and backsides of wood.



4. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in the finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler. Sand smooth when dried.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
  2. Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
  3. Paint front and backsides of access panels, removable or hinged covers, and similar hinged items to match exposed surfaces.
  4. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
  5. Primers specified in painting schedules may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if acceptable to topcoat manufacturers.
- B. Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match color of topcoat, but provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.
- D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Dry-Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test paint for dry-film thickness.
  1. Contractor shall touch up and restore painted surfaces damaged by testing.
  2. If test results show that dry-film thickness of applied paint does not comply with paint manufacturer's written recommendations, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry-film thickness that complies with paint manufacturer's written recommendations.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
  1. Do not clean equipment with free-draining water and prevent solvents, thinners, cleaners, and other contaminants from entering into waterways, sanitary and storm drain systems, and ground.

2. Dispose of contaminants in accordance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  3. Allow empty paint cans to dry before disposal.
  4. Collect waste paint by type and deliver to recycling or collection facility.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

### 3.6 INTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

A. Concrete Substrates:

1. Water-Based Concrete Floor Sealer System
  - a. First Coat: Matching topcoat.
  - b. Topcoat: Water-based concrete floor sealer, MPI #99. VOC not more than 100 g/L.

B. CMU Substrates:

1. Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Latex System MPI INT 4.2E
  - a. Block Filler: Interior/exterior latex block filler, MPI #4.
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Matching topcoat.
  - c. Topcoat: Interior, latex, institutional low odor/VOC, MPI Gloss level 5, MPI #147
2. Epoxy-Modified Latex System (Toilet rooms and Janitor areas)
  - a. Block Filler: Block filler, latex, interior/exterior, MPI #4
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Epoxy-modified latex, interior, gloss (Gloss Level 6), MPI #115
  - c. Topcoat: Epoxy-modified latex, interior, gloss (Gloss Level 6), MPI #115

C. Galvanized-Metal and Steel Substrates:

1. Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Latex System MPI INT 5.1S>:
  - a. Prime Coat: Water-based galvanized primer, MPI #107.
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Matching topcoat.
  - c. Topcoat: Interior, latex, institutional low odor/VOC, MPI gloss level 5, MPI #147

D. Finish Carpentry, where painting is required on Drawings:

1. Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Latex System
  - a. Prime Coat: Interior latex primer for wood, MPI #39.

- b. Intermediate Coat: Matching topcoat.
- c. Topcoat: Interior, latex, institutional low odor/VOC, MPI gloss level 5, MPI #147

E. Gypsum Board Substrates:

- 1. Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Latex System MPI INT 9.2M
  - a. Prime Coat: Interior, institutional low-odor/VOC primer sealer, MPI #149.
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Matching topcoat.
  - c. Topcoat: Interior, latex, institutional low odor/VOC, MPI Gloss Level 3, MPI #145
- 2. Epoxy-Modified Latex System (Toilet Rooms and Janitor Rooms):
  - a. Prime Coat: Primer sealer, latex, interior, MPI #50.
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Epoxy-modified latex, interior, gloss (Gloss Level 6), MPI #115.
  - c. Epoxy-modified latex, interior, gloss (Gloss Level 6), MPI #115.

END OF SECTION 099123

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 099600 - HIGH-PERFORMANCE COATINGS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for galvanizing repair paint.
- C. Division 09 Section "Interior Painting" for interior painting.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of high-performance coating systems on the following substrates:
  - 1. Exterior Substrates:
    - a. Steel.
  - 2. Interior Substrates:
    - a. Concrete masonry units (CMUs).
    - b. Steel.
    - c. Galvanized Metal (Ductwork)
    - d. Steel Conduit
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 099123 "Interior Painting" for general field painting.
  - 2. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for shop priming of Metal Railings and Miscellaneous Steel with coatings specified in this section.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MPI Gloss Level 5: 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- B. MPI Gloss Level 6: 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- C. MPI Gloss Level 7: More than 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.

1. Include printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified, with the proposed product highlighted.
2. Indicate VOC content.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. Product Data: For paints and coatings, indicating VOC content.
2. Laboratory Test Reports: For paints and coatings, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
3. Manufacturer Inventory: For each product, provide manufacturer's manifest of ingredients.
4. Health Product Declaration: For each product.
5. Environmental Product Declaration: For each product.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of topcoat product indicated.

D. Samples for Verification: For each type of coating system and each color and gloss of topcoat indicated.

1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, 8 inches square.
2. Apply coats on Samples in steps to show each coat required for system.
3. Label each coat of each Sample.
4. Label each Sample for location and application area.

E. Product List: Cross-reference to coating system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules. Include color designations.

## 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Coatings: 5% percent, but not less than 1 gal. of each material and color applied.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Mockups: Apply mockups of each coating system indicated to verify preliminary selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.

1. Architect will select one surface to represent surfaces and conditions for application of each coating system.
  - a. Wall and Ceiling Surfaces: Provide samples of at least 100 sq. ft..
  - b. Other Items: Architect will designate items or areas required.
2. Final approval of color selections will be based on mockups.
  - a. If preliminary color selections are not approved, apply additional mockups of additional colors selected by Architect at no added cost to Owner.

3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.
  1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
  2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

#### 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply coatings only when temperature of surfaces to be coated and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.
- B. Do not apply coatings when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.
- C. Do not apply exterior coatings in snow, rain, fog, or mist.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  1. Benjamin Moore & Co.
  2. PPG Paints.
  3. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).

#### 2.2 HIGH-PERFORMANCE COATINGS, GENERAL

- A. MPI Standards: Products shall comply with MPI standards indicated and shall be listed in its "MPI Approved Products Lists."
- B. Material Compatibility:
  1. Materials for use within each paint system shall be compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
  2. For each coat in a paint system, products shall be recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturers for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.

3. Products shall be of same manufacturer for each coat in a coating system.
- C. VOC Content: For field applications that are inside the weatherproofing system, verify paints and coatings comply with VOC content limits of authorities having jurisdiction and the following VOC content limits:
  1. Flat Paints and Coatings: 50 g/L.
  2. Nonflat Paints and Coatings: 50 g/L.
  3. Primers, Sealers, and Undercoaters: 100 g/L.
  4. Rust-Preventive Coatings: 100 g/L.
  5. Shellacs, Pigmented: 550 g/L.
  6. Shellacs, Clear: 730 g/L.
  7. Floor Coatings: 50 g/L.
  8. Pretreatment Wash Primers: 420 g/L.
  9. Zinc-Rich Industrial Maintenance Primers: 100 g/L.
- D. Low-Emitting Materials: For field applications that are inside the weatherproofing system, verify 90 percent of paints and coatings comply with the requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- E. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range .

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
  1. Concrete: 12 percent.
  2. Masonry (Clay and CMUs): 12 percent.
  3. Wood: 15 percent.
- C. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility, with existing finishes and primers.
- D. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates and coating systems indicated.



- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
  - 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of coatings, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
  - 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce coating systems indicated.
- D. Concrete Substrates: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not coat surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be coated exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Clean surfaces with pressurized water. Use pressure range of 1500 to 4000 psi at 6 to 12 inches.
- E. Masonry Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not coat surfaces if moisture content, alkalinity of surfaces, or alkalinity of mortar joints exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Clean surfaces with pressurized water. Use pressure range of 100 to 600 psi at 6 to 12 inches.
- F. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and shop primer if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer [.] but not less than the following:
  - 1. SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4.
  - 2. SSPC-SP 11.
  - 3. SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3.
  - 4. SSPC-SP 10/NACE No. 2.
  - 5. SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1.
- G. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and areas where shop paint is abraded. Paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.
- H. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied coatings.

### 3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply high-performance coatings according to manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual."
  - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for coating and substrate indicated.

2. Coat surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, coat surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
  3. Coat backsides of access panels, removable or hinged covers, and similar hinged items to match exposed surfaces.
  4. Do not apply coatings over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
- B. Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of the same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match color of finish coat, but provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through final coat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform coating finish, color, and appearance.
- D. Apply coatings to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Produce sharp glass lines and color breaks.

### 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing coating application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered coatings by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from coating operation. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and recoating, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced coated surfaces.

### 3.5 EXTERIOR HIGH-PERFORMANCE COATING SCHEDULE

- A. Steel Substrates:
1. Pigmented Polyurethane over Epoxy Zinc-Rich Primer System MPI EXT 5.1P:
    - a. Prime Coat: Primer, zinc rich, epoxy , MPI #20.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Epoxy, gloss , MPI #77.
    - c. Topcoat: Polyurethane, two component, pigmented, gloss (MPI Gloss Level 6) , MPI #72.

### 3.6 INTERIOR HIGH-PERFORMANCE COATING SCHEDULE

- A. CMU Substrates
1. Epoxy System MPI INT 4.2F

- a. Block Filler: Block filler, latex, interior/exterior, MPI #4.
- b. Block Filler: Block filler, epoxy, MPI #116.
- c. Intermediate Coat: Epoxy, matching topcoat.
- d. Topcoat: Epoxy, gloss, MPI #77

B. Steel Substrates:

- 1. Epoxy System [MPI INT 5.1L]:
  - a. Prime Coat: Primer, epoxy, anti-corrosive, for metal, MPI #101.
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Epoxy, matching topcoat.
  - c. Topcoat: Epoxy, gloss, MPI #77

END OF SECTION 099600

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 101419 - DIMENSIONAL LETTER SIGNAGE

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Dimensional characters.
  - a. Cast dimensional characters.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: For signs.

1. Include fabrication and installation details and attachments to other work.
2. Show sign mounting heights, locations of supplementary supports to be provided by other installers, and accessories.
3. Show message list, typestyles, graphic elements, and layout for each sign at least quarter size.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of sign assembly, exposed component, and exposed finish.

1. Include representative Samples of available typestyles and graphic symbols.

D. Samples for Verification: For each type of sign assembly showing all components and with the required finish(es), in manufacturer's standard size unless otherwise indicated and as follows:

1. Dimensional Characters: Full-size Sample of dimensional character.
2. Full-size Samples, if approved, will be returned to Contractor for use in the Project.

E. Product Schedule: For dimensional letter signs. Use same designations indicated on Drawings or specified.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer.

B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For signs to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.

#### 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify locations of electrical service embedded in permanent construction by other installers by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

#### 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of signs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Deterioration of finishes beyond normal weathering.
    - b. Separation or delamination of sheet materials and components.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 DIMENSIONAL CHARACTERS

- A. Cast Characters: Characters with uniform faces, sharp corners, and precisely formed lines and profiles, and as follows:
  - 1. Character Material: Cast aluminum.
  - 2. Character Height: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 3. Thickness: Manufacturer's standard for size of character.
  - 4. Finishes:
    - a. Integral Aluminum Finish: Anodized color as selected by Architect from full range of industry colors and color densities.
  - 5. Mounting: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 6. Typeface: Helvetica.

## 2.2 DIMENSIONAL CHARACTER MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B26/B26M, alloy and temper recommended by sign manufacturer for casting process used and for type of use and finish indicated.
- B. Aluminum Sheet and Plate: ASTM B209 (ASTM B209M), alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated.
- C. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B221 (ASTM B221M), alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated.

## 2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners and Anchors: Manufacturer's standard as required for secure anchorage of signs, noncorrosive and compatible with each material joined, and complying with the following:
  - 1. Use concealed fasteners and anchors unless indicated to be exposed.
  - 2. For exterior exposure, furnish stainless steel devices unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Exposed Metal-Fastener Components, General:
    - a. Fabricated from same basic metal and finish of fastened metal unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Sign Mounting Fasteners:
    - a. Concealed Studs: Concealed (blind), threaded studs welded or brazed to back of sign material, screwed into back of sign assembly, or screwed into tapped lugs cast integrally into back of cast sign material, unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Projecting Studs: Threaded studs with sleeve spacer, welded or brazed to back of sign material, screwed into back of sign assembly, or screwed into tapped lugs cast integrally into back of cast sign material, unless otherwise indicated.
    - c. Through Fasteners: Exposed metal fasteners matching sign finish, with type of head indicated, installed in predrilled holes.

## 2.4 FABRICATION

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard sign assemblies according to requirements indicated.
  - 1. Preassemble signs and assemblies in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble signs and assemblies only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and installation; apply markings in locations concealed from view after final assembly.
  - 2. Mill joints to a tight, hairline fit. Form assemblies and joints exposed to weather to resist water penetration and retention.
  - 3. Comply with AWS for recommended practices in welding and brazing. Provide welds and brazes behind finished surfaces without distorting or discoloring exposed side. Clean exposed welded and brazed connections of flux, and dress exposed and contact surfaces.
  - 4. Conceal connections if possible; otherwise, locate connections where they are inconspicuous.

5. Internally brace dimensional characters for stability, to meet structural performance loading without oil-canning or other surface deformation, and for securing fasteners.
6. Provide rabbets, lugs, and tabs necessary to assemble components and to attach to existing work. Drill and tap for required fasteners. Use concealed fasteners where possible; use exposed fasteners that match sign finish.
7. Castings: Fabricate castings free of warp, cracks, blowholes, pits, scale, sand holes, and other defects that impair appearance or strength. Grind, wire brush, sandblast, and buff castings to remove seams, gate marks, casting flash, and other casting marks before finishing.

## 2.5 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- C. Directional Finishes: Run grain with long dimension of each piece and perpendicular to long dimension of finished trim or border surface unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Organic, Anodic, and Chemically Produced Finishes: Apply to formed metal after fabrication but before applying contrasting polished finishes on raised features unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.6 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Verify that sign-support surfaces are within tolerances to accommodate signs without gaps or irregularities between backs of signs and support surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF DIMENSIONAL CHARACTERS

- A. General: Install signs using mounting methods indicated and according to manufacturer's written instructions.



1. Install signs level, plumb, true to line, and at locations and heights indicated, with sign surfaces free of distortion and other defects in appearance.
2. Before installation, verify that sign surfaces are clean and free of materials or debris that would impair installation.
3. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of exterior aluminum in contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals, with a heavy coat of bituminous paint.

B. Mounting Methods:

1. Concealed Studs: Using a template, drill holes in substrate aligning with studs on back of sign. Remove loose debris from hole and substrate surface.
  - a. Masonry Substrates: Fill holes with adhesive. Leave recess space in hole for displaced adhesive. Place sign in position and push until flush to surface, embedding studs in holes. Temporarily support sign in position until adhesive fully sets.
  - b. Thin or Hollow Surfaces: Place sign in position and flush to surface, install washers and nuts on studs projecting through opposite side of surface, and tighten.

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace damaged or deformed characters and signs that do not comply with specified requirements. Replace characters with damaged or deteriorated finishes or components that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.
- B. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as signs are installed.
- C. On completion of installation, clean exposed surfaces of signs according to manufacturer's written instructions, and touch up minor nicks and abrasions in finish. Maintain signs in a clean condition during construction and protect from damage until acceptance by Owner.

END OF SECTION 101419

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 101423 - PANEL SIGNAGE

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Panel signs.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Accessible: In accordance with the accessibility standard.

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

A. Furnish templates for placement of sign-anchorage devices embedded in permanent construction by other installers.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Panel signs.

B. Shop Drawings: For panel signs.

1. Include fabrication and installation details and attachments to other work.
2. Show sign mounting heights, locations of supplementary supports to be provided by other installers, and accessories.
3. Show message list, typestyles, graphic elements, including raised characters and Braille, and layout for each sign at least half size.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of sign assembly, exposed component, and exposed finish.

1. Include representative Samples of available typestyles and graphic symbols.

D. Samples for Verification: For each type of sign assembly showing all components and with the required finish(es), in manufacturer's standard size unless otherwise indicated and as follows:

1. Panel Signs: Full-size Sample.

E. Product Schedule: For panel signs. Use same designations indicated on Drawings or specified.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For signs to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.

## 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify locations of anchorage devices embedded in permanent construction by other installers by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

## 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of signs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Deterioration of finishes beyond normal weathering.
    - b. Deterioration of embedded graphic image.
    - c. Separation or delamination of sheet materials and components.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Accessibility Standard: Comply with applicable provisions in the USDOJ's "2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design" and ICC A117.1.

### 2.2 PANEL SIGNS

- A. Panel Sign: Sign with smooth, uniform surfaces; with message and characters having uniform faces, sharp corners, and precisely formed lines and profiles; and as follows:

1. Laminated-Sheet Sign: Acrylic face sheet with raised graphics laminated to acrylic backing sheet to produce composite sheet.
  - a. Composite-Sheet Thickness: 0.125 inch (3.18 mm).
  - b. Surface-Applied, Raised Graphics: Applied polymer characters and Braille.
2. Sign-Panel Perimeter: Finish edges smooth.
  - a. Edge Condition:
    - 1) Vertical Edges: Square cut.
    - 2) Horizontal Edges: Square cut.
  - b. Corner Condition in Elevation: Rounded to radius indicated.
3. Mounting: Surface mounted to wall with concealed anchors.
4. Surface Finish and Applied Graphics:
  - a. Integral Sheet Color: Acrylic sheet with color as selected by Architect from full range of industry colors.
5. Text and Typeface: Accessible raised characters and Braille typeface as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
6. Flatness Tolerance: Sign is to remain flat or uniformly curved under installed conditions as indicated on Drawings and within a tolerance of plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) measured diagonally from corner to corner.

## 2.3 PANEL-SIGN MATERIALS

- A. Acrylic Sheet: ASTM D4802, category as standard with manufacturer for each sign, Type UVF (UV filtering).

## 2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners and Anchors: Manufacturer's standard as required for secure anchorage of signs, noncorrosive and compatible with each material joined, and complying with the following unless otherwise indicated:
  1. Use concealed fasteners and anchors unless indicated to be exposed.
  2. Sign Mounting Fasteners:
    - a. Concealed Studs: Concealed (blind), threaded studs welded or brazed to back of sign material or screwed into back of sign assembly unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard sign assemblies according to requirements indicated.

1. Preassemble signs in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble signs and assemblies only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and installation; apply markings in locations concealed from view after final assembly.
  2. Mill joints to a tight, hairline fit. Form assemblies and joints exposed to weather to resist water penetration and retention.
  3. Comply with AWS for recommended practices in welding and brazing. Provide welds and brazes behind finished surfaces without distorting or discoloring exposed side. Clean exposed welded and brazed connections of flux, and dress exposed and contact surfaces.
  4. Conceal connections if possible; otherwise, locate connections where they are inconspicuous.
  5. Internally brace signs for stability, to meet structural performance loading without oil-canning or other surface deformation, and for securing fasteners.
  6. Provide rabbets, lugs, and tabs necessary to assemble components and to attach to existing work. Drill and tap for required fasteners. Use concealed fasteners where possible; use exposed fasteners that match sign finish.
- B. Surface-Engraved Graphics: Machine engrave characters and other graphic devices into indicated sign surface to produce precisely formed copy, incised to uniform depth.
1. Engraved Opaque Acrylic Sheet: Fill engraved graphics with manufacturer's standard enamel.
  2. Face-Engraved Clear Acrylic Sheet: Fill engraved copy with manufacturer's standard enamel. Apply manufacturer's standard opaque background color coating to back face of acrylic sheet.

## 2.6 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- C. Directional Finishes: Run grain with long dimension of each piece and perpendicular to long dimension of finished trim or border surface unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Organic, Anodic, and Chemically Produced Finishes: Apply to formed metal after fabrication but before applying contrasting polished finishes on raised features unless otherwise indicated.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Verify that sign-support surfaces are within tolerances to accommodate signs without gaps or irregularities between backs of signs and support surfaces unless otherwise indicated.

- C. Verify that anchorage devices embedded in permanent construction are correctly sized and located to accommodate signs.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install signs using mounting methods indicated and according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Install signs level, plumb, true to line, and at locations and heights indicated, with sign surfaces free of distortion and other defects in appearance.
  - 2. Install signs so they do not protrude or obstruct according to the accessibility standard.
  - 3. Before installation, verify that sign surfaces are clean and free of materials or debris that would impair installation.
  - 4. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of exterior aluminum in contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals, with a heavy coat of bituminous paint.
- B. Accessible Signage: Install in locations on walls as indicated on Drawings and according to the accessibility standard.
- C. Mounting Methods:
  - 1. Concealed Studs: Using a template, drill holes in substrate aligning with studs on back of sign. Remove loose debris from hole and substrate surface.
    - a. Masonry Substrates: Fill holes with adhesive. Leave recess space in hole for displaced adhesive. Place sign in position and push until flush to surface, embedding studs in holes. Temporarily support sign in position until adhesive fully sets.
    - b. Thin or Hollow Surfaces: Place sign in position and flush to surface, install washers and nuts on studs projecting through opposite side of surface, and tighten.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace damaged or deformed signs and signs that do not comply with specified requirements. Replace signs with damaged or deteriorated finishes or components that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.
- B. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as signs are installed.
- C. On completion of installation, clean exposed surfaces of signs according to manufacturer's written instructions, and touch up minor nicks and abrasions in finish. Maintain signs in a clean condition during construction and protect from damage until acceptance by Owner.

END OF SECTION 101423

This page intentionally left blank.



## SECTION 102600 - WALL AND DOOR PROTECTION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Corner guards.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, impact strength, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each type of wall and door protection showing locations and extent.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of impact-resistant wall-protection unit indicated, in each color and texture specified.
  - 1. Include Samples of accent strips and accessories to verify color selection.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of handrail.
- B. Material Certificates: For each type of exposed plastic material.
- C. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For each type of wall and door protection product to include in maintenance manuals.
  - 1. Include recommended methods and frequency of maintenance for maintaining best condition of plastic covers under anticipated traffic and use conditions. Include precautions

against using cleaning materials and methods that may be detrimental to finishes and performance.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store wall and door protection in original undamaged packages and containers inside well-ventilated area protected from weather, moisture, soiling, extreme temperatures, and humidity.
  - 1. Maintain room temperature within storage area at not less than 70 deg F (21 deg C) during the period plastic materials are stored.
  - 2. Keep plastic materials out of direct sunlight.
  - 3. Store plastic wall- and door-protection components for a minimum of 72 hours, or until plastic material attains a minimum room temperature of 70 deg F (21 deg C).
    - a. Store corner-guard covers in a vertical position.

#### 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of wall- and door-protection units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures including detachment of components from each other or from the substrates, delamination, and permanent deformation beyond normal use.
    - b. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, plastics, and other materials beyond normal use.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain wall- and door-protection products of each type from single source from single manufacturer.

#### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84 or UL 723; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
  - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.

- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities.

## 2.3 CORNER GUARDS

- A. Flush-Mounted, Plastic-Cover Corner Guards: Manufacturer's standard, PVC-free assembly consisting of snap-on, resilient plastic cover that is flush with adjacent wall surface, installed over retainer; including mounting hardware; fabricated with 90- or 135-degree turn to match wall condition; full wall height.
  - 1. Cover: Extruded rigid plastic, minimum 0.078-inch (2.0-mm) wall thickness; as follows:
    - a. Profile: Nominal 3-inch- (75-mm-) long leg and 1-1/4-inch (32-mm) corner radius.
    - b. Height: 8 feet (2.4 m).
    - c. Color and Texture: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  - 2. Continuous Retainer: Minimum 0.060-inch- (1.5-mm-) thick, one-piece, extruded aluminum.
  - 3. Retainer Clips: Manufacturer's standard impact-absorbing clips.

## 2.4 MATERIALS

- A. Plastic Materials: Chemical- and stain-resistant, high-impact-resistant plastic with integral color throughout; extruded and sheet material as required, thickness as indicated.
- B. Polycarbonate Plastic Sheet: ASTM D6098, S-PC01, Class 1 or Class 2, abrasion resistant; with a minimum impact-resistance rating of 15 ft.-lbf/in. (800 J/m) of notch when tested according to ASTM D256, Test Method A.
- C. Fasteners: Aluminum, nonmagnetic stainless-steel, or other noncorrosive metal screws, bolts, and other fasteners compatible with items being fastened. Use security-type fasteners where exposed to view.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate wall and door protection according to requirements indicated for design, performance, dimensions, and member sizes, including thicknesses of components.
- B. Factory Assembly: Assemble components in factory to greatest extent possible to minimize field assembly. Disassemble only as necessary for shipping and handling.
- C. Quality: Fabricate components with uniformly tight seams and joints and with exposed edges rolled. Provide surfaces free of wrinkles, chips, dents, uneven coloration, and other imperfections. Fabricate members and fittings to produce flush, smooth, and rigid hairline joints.

## 2.6 FINISHES

- A. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and wall areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine walls to which wall and door protection will be attached for blocking, grounds, and other solid backing that have been installed in the locations required for secure attachment of support fasteners.
  - 1. For wall and door protection attached with adhesive, verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Complete finishing operations, including painting, before installing wall and door protection.
- B. Before installation, clean substrate to remove dust, debris, and loose particles.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Installation Quality: Install wall and door protection according to manufacturer's written instructions, level, plumb, and true to line without distortions. Do not use materials with chips, cracks, voids, stains, or other defects that might be visible in the finished Work.
- B. Accessories: Provide splices, mounting hardware, anchors, trim, joint moldings, and other accessories required for a complete installation.
  - 1. Provide anchoring devices and suitable locations to withstand imposed loads.
  - 2. Where splices occur in horizontal runs of more than 20 feet (6.1 m), splice aluminum retainers and plastic covers at different locations along the run, but no closer than 12 inches (305 mm) apart.
  - 3. Adjust end and top caps as required to ensure tight seams.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. Immediately after completion of installation, clean plastic covers and accessories using a standard ammonia-based household cleaning agent.
- B. Remove excess adhesive using methods and materials recommended in writing by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 102600

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 102800 - TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Public-use washroom accessories.
2. Public-use shower room accessories.
3. Private-use bathroom accessories.
4. Underlavatory guards.
5. Custodial accessories.

#### 1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate accessory locations with other work to prevent interference with clearances required for access by people with disabilities, and for proper installation, adjustment, operation, cleaning, and servicing of accessories.
- B. Deliver inserts and anchoring devices set into concrete or masonry as required to prevent delaying the Work.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data Submittals: For each product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
2. Include anchoring and mounting requirements, including requirements for cutouts in other work and substrate preparation.
3. Include electrical characteristics.

B. Product Schedule: Indicating types, quantities, sizes, and installation locations by room of each accessory required.

1. Identify locations using room designations indicated.
2. Identify accessories using designations indicated.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranties.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For accessories to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Mirrors: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace mirrors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, visible silver spoilage defects.
  - 2. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 OWNER-FURNISHED MATERIALS

- A. Owner-Furnished Materials: As indicated on Drawings

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Structural Performance: Design accessories and fasteners to comply with the following requirements:
  - 1. Grab Bars: Installed units are able to resist 250 lbf (1112 N) concentrated load applied in any direction and at any point.
  - 2. Shower Seats: Installed units are able to resist 250 lbf (1112 N) concentrated load applied in any direction and at any point.

### 2.3 PUBLIC-USE WASHROOM ACCESSORIES

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of public-use washroom accessory from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Acceptable manufacturers for all accessories, except where noted otherwise:
  - 1. Bobrick Washroom Equipment
  - 2. Bradley Corporation
  - 3. A&J Washroom Accessories
  - 4. American Specialties Inc
- C. Toilet Tissue (Roll) Dispenser: owner provided; contractor installed
- D. Paper Towel Dispenser : owner provided; contractor installed
- E. Waste Receptacle owner provided



- F. Soap Dispenser : owner provided; contractor installed
- G. Grab Bar
  - 1. Mounting: Flanges with concealed fasteners.
  - 2. Material: Stainless steel, 0.05 inch (1.3 mm) thick.
    - a. Finish: Smooth, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin) on ends and slip-resistant texture in grip area.
  - 3. OD: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).
  - 4. Configuration and Length: As indicated on Drawings.
- H. Mirror Unit – Above Lavatory
  - 1. Basis of Design: ASI 0600-C1830 or equal
  - 2. 18 inches x 30 inches Stainless Steel type 304 with #8 Finish
- I. Hook refer to Shower Accessories Section

## 2.4 PUBLIC-USE SHOWER ROOM ACCESSORIES

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of public-use shower room accessory from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Shower Curtain Rod
  - 1. Basis of Design : 1-1/4-inch- (32-mm-) OD, straight rod, ASI 1214-2 or equal.
  - 2. Configuration: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 3. Mounting Flanges: Exposed fasteners; in material and finish matching rod.
  - 4. Rod Material and Finish: Stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin).
- C. Shower Curtain
  - 1. Basis of Design: ASI 1200-V or equal
  - 2. Size: Minimum 6 inches (152 mm) wider than opening by 72 inches (1829 mm) high.
  - 3. Material: Vinyl, minimum 0.006 inch (0.15 mm) thick, opaque, matte.
  - 4. Color: White.
  - 5. Grommets: Corrosion resistant at minimum 6 inches (152 mm) o.c. through top hem.
  - 6. Shower Curtain Hooks: Chrome-plated or stainless steel, spring wire curtain hooks with snap fasteners, sized to accommodate specified curtain rod. Provide one hook per curtain grommet.
- D. Folding Shower Seat
  - 1. Basis of Design: ASI 8206 or equal
  - 2. Configuration: L-shaped seat, designed for wheelchair access.
  - 3. Seat: Phenolic or polymeric composite of slat-type or one-piece construction in color as selected by Architect.
  - 4. Mounting Mechanism: Stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin).

- E. Robe / Coat / Towel Hook
  - 1. Description: Double -prong unit.
  - 2. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin).
- F. Shower Shelf
  - 1. Basis of Design Product: Provide ALFI brand or equal by one of the following:
    - a. Bernkot
    - b. Grainger
    - c. American Specialties
  - 2. Side: 12" x 12", 4" deep.
  - 3. Finish: Stainless steel.

## 2.5 UNDERLAVATORY GUARDS

- A. Underlavatory Guard
  - 1. Basis of Design: IPS Corporation TrueBro Lab Guard 102EZ or equal.
  - 2. Material and Finish: Antimicrobial, molded plastic, white.

## 2.6 CUSTODIAL ACCESSORIES

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of custodial accessory from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Custodial Mop and Broom Holder
  - 1. Basis of Design: ASI 1315-4 or equal.
  - 2. Length: 36 inches (914 mm).
  - 3. Hooks: Three.
  - 4. Mop/Broom Holders: Four spring-loaded, rubber hat, cam type.
  - 5. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin).
    - a. Shelf: Not less than nominal 0.05-inch- (1.3-mm-) thick stainless steel.
    - b. Rod: Approximately 3/8-inch- (6-mm-) diameter stainless steel.

## 2.7 MATERIALS

- A. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304, 0.031-inch- (0.8-mm-) minimum nominal thickness unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Brass: ASTM B19, flat products; ASTM B16/B16M, rods, shapes, forgings, and flat products with finished edges; or ASTM B30, castings.
- C. Steel Sheet: ASTM A1008/A1008M, Designation CS (cold rolled, commercial steel), 0.036-inch- (0.9-mm-) minimum nominal thickness.
- D. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, with G60 (Z180) hot-dip zinc coating.
- E. Galvanized-Steel Mounting Devices: ASTM A153/A153M, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.

- F. Fasteners: Screws, bolts, and other devices of same material as accessory unit, unless otherwise recommended by manufacturer or specified in this Section, and tamper and theft resistant where exposed, and of stainless or galvanized steel where concealed.
- G. Chrome Plating: ASTM B456, Service Condition Number SC 2 (moderate service).
- H. Mirrors: ASTM C1503, Mirror Glazing Quality, clear-glass mirrors, nominal 6.0 mm thick.

## 2.8 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate units with tight seams and joints, and exposed edges rolled. Hang doors and access panels with full-length, continuous hinges. Equip units for concealed anchorage and with corrosion-resistant backing plates.
- B. Keys: Provide universal keys for internal access to accessories for servicing and resupplying. Provide minimum of six keys to Owner's representative.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install accessories in accordance with manufacturers' written instructions, using fasteners appropriate to substrate indicated and recommended by unit manufacturer. Install units level, plumb, and firmly anchored in locations and at heights indicated.
  - 1. Remove temporary labels and protective coatings.
- B. Grab Bars: Install to comply with specified structural-performance requirements.
- C. Shower Seats: Install to comply with specified structural-performance requirements.

### 3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Adjust accessories for unencumbered, smooth operation. Replace damaged or defective items.
- B. Clean and polish exposed surfaces in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 102800

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 104413 - FIRE PROTECTION CABINETS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Fire-protection cabinets for the following:
  - a. Portable fire extinguisher.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 104416 "Fire Extinguishers" for portable, hand-carried fire extinguishers accommodated by fire-protection cabinets.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Show door hardware, cabinet type, trim style, and panel style. Include roughing-in dimensions and details showing recessed-, semirecessed-, or surface-mounting method and relationships of box and trim to surrounding construction.
2. Show location of knockouts for hose valves.

B. Shop Drawings: For fire-protection cabinets.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

C. Samples: For each type of exposed finish required.

D. Product Schedule: For fire-protection cabinets. Indicate whether recessed, semirecessed, or surface mounted. Coordinate final fire-protection cabinet schedule with fire-extinguisher schedule to ensure proper fit and function.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For fire-protection cabinets to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.4 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size of fire-protection cabinets to ensure that type and capacity of fire extinguishers indicated are accommodated.

B. Coordinate sizes and locations of fire-protection cabinets with wall depths.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain fire-protection cabinets, accessories, and fire extinguishers from single source from single manufacturer.

### 2.2 FIRE-PROTECTION CABINET

- A. Manufacturers
  - 1. JL Industries
  - 2. Larsens Manufacturing
  - 3. Nystrom
  - 4. Williams Brothers
- B. Fire-Protection Cabinet Type: Suitable for fire extinguisher.
- C. Cabinet Construction: Nonrated.
- D. Cabinet Material: Stainless steel sheet.
  - 1. Shelf: Same metal and finish as cabinet.
- E. Semirecessed Cabinet: One-piece combination trim and perimeter door frame overlapping surrounding wall surface, with exposed trim face and wall return at outer edge (backbend).
  - 1. Rolled-Edge Trim: 4-inch (102-mm) backbend depth.
- F. Cabinet Trim Material: Stainless steel sheet.
- G. Door Material: Stainless steel sheet.
- H. Door Style: Vertical duo panel with frame.
- I. Door Glazing: Acrylic sheet.
- J. Door Hardware: Manufacturer's standard door-operating hardware of proper type for cabinet type, trim style, and door material and style indicated.
  - 1. Provide manufacturer's standard.
  - 2. Provide continuous hinge, of same material and finish as trim,, permitting door to open 180 degrees.
- K. Accessories:
  - 1. Mounting Bracket: Manufacturer's standard steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to fire-protection cabinet, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or baked-enamel finish.
  - 2. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as directed by Architect.

- a. Identify fire extinguisher in fire-protection cabinet with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER."
  - 1) Location: Applied to cabinet door.
  - 2) Application Process: Silk-screened.
  - 3) Lettering Color: Red.
  - 4) Orientation: Vertical.

L. Materials:

1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304.
  - a. Finish: ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 directional satin finish,.
2. Transparent Acrylic Sheet: ASTM D4802, Category A-1 (cell-cast sheet), 3 mm thick, with Finish 1 (smooth or polished).

## 2.3 FABRICATION

- A. Fire-Protection Cabinets: Provide manufacturer's standard box (tub) with trim, frame, door, and hardware to suit cabinet type, trim style, and door style indicated.
  1. Weld joints and grind smooth.
  2. Miter corners and grind smooth.
  3. Provide factory-drilled mounting holes.
  4. Prepare doors and frames to receive locks.
  5. Install door locks at factory.
- B. Cabinet Doors: Fabricate doors according to manufacturer's standards, from materials indicated and coordinated with cabinet types and trim styles.
  1. Fabricate door frames with tubular stiles and rails and hollow-metal design, minimum 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.
  2. Fabricate door frames of one-piece construction with edges flanged.
  3. Miter and weld perimeter door frames and grind smooth.
- C. Cabinet Trim: Fabricate cabinet trim in one piece with corners mitered, welded, and ground smooth.

## 2.4 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's AMP 500, "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products," for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces of fire-protection cabinets from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Finish fire-protection cabinets after assembly.

- D. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine walls and partitions for suitable framing depth and blocking where recessed and semirecessed cabinets will be installed.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare recesses for semirecessed fire-protection cabinets as required by type and size of cabinet and trim style.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF FIRE-PROTECTION CABINETS

- A. General: Install fire-protection cabinets in locations and at mounting heights indicated on Drawings
- B. Fire-Protection Cabinets: Fasten cabinets to structure, square and plumb.
  - 1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide recessed fire-protection cabinets. If wall thickness is inadequate for recessed cabinets, provide semirecessed fire-protection cabinets.
  - 2. Provide inside latch and lock for break-glass panels.
  - 3. Fasten mounting brackets to inside surface of fire-protection cabinets, square and plumb.

#### 3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as fire-protection cabinets are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Adjust fire-protection cabinet doors to operate easily without binding. Verify that integral locking devices operate properly.
- C. On completion of fire-protection cabinet installation, clean interior and exterior surfaces as recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Touch up marred finishes, or replace fire-protection cabinets that cannot be restored to factory-finished appearance. Use only materials and procedures recommended or furnished by fire-protection cabinet and mounting bracket manufacturers.
- E. Replace fire-protection cabinets that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.



END OF SECTION 104413

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 104416 - FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes portable, hand-carried fire extinguishers and mounting brackets for fire extinguishers.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 104413 "Fire Protection Cabinets."

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include rating and classification, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for fire extinguisher and mounting brackets.
- B. Product Schedule: For fire extinguishers. Coordinate final fire-extinguisher schedule with fire-protection cabinet schedule to ensure proper fit and function.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire extinguishers to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate type and capacity of fire extinguishers with fire-protection cabinets to ensure fit and function.

#### 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fire extinguishers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Failure of hydrostatic test according to NFPA 10 when testing interval required by NFPA 10 is within the warranty period.

- b. Faulty operation of valves or release levers.
- 2. Warranty Period: Six years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. NFPA Compliance: Fabricate and label fire extinguishers to comply with NFPA 10, "Portable Fire Extinguishers."
- B. Fire Extinguishers: Listed and labeled for type, rating, and classification by an independent testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

### 2.2 PORTABLE, HAND-CARRIED FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Type, size, and capacity for each fire-protection cabinet and mounting bracket indicated.
  - 1. JL Industries
  - 2. Larsens Manufacturing
  - 3. Williams Brothers
  - 4. Kidde Commercial Division
  - 5. Guardrian Fire Equipment
  - 6. Source Limitations: Obtain fire extinguishers, fire-protection cabinets, and accessories, from single source from single manufacturer.
  - 7. Valves: Manufacturer's standard.
  - 8. Handles and Levers: Manufacturer's standard.
  - 9. Instruction Labels: Include pictorial marking system complying with NFPA 10, Appendix B.
- B. Multipurpose Dry-Chemical Type in Steel Container UL-rated 4-A:60-B:C, 10-lb (4.5-kg) nominal capacity, with monoammonium phosphate-based dry chemical in enameled-steel container.

### 2.3 MOUNTING BRACKETS

- A. Mounting Brackets: Manufacturer's standard galvanized steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to wall or structure, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or black baked-enamel finish.
  - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain mounting brackets and fire extinguishers from single source from single manufacturer.

- B. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as indicated by Architect.
  - 1. Identify bracket-mounted fire extinguishers with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER" in red letter decals applied to mounting surface.
    - a. Orientation: Vertical.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine fire extinguishers for proper charging and tagging.
  - 1. Remove and replace damaged, defective, or undercharged fire extinguishers.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install fire extinguishers and mounting brackets in locations indicated and in compliance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Mounting Brackets: Fasten mounting brackets to surfaces, square and plumb, at locations indicated on Drawings.

END OF SECTION 104416

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 105126 – PLASTIC LOCKERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. HDPE lockers.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 061000 – Rough Carpentry: Wood blocking and nailers.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate locker plan and elevation layout including minimum required dimensions for installation.

- C. Samples: Two, 3 by 3 inches in size, indicating finish of locker material.

- D. QUALITY ASSURANCE

- 1. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Accessibility: Comply with 2010 ADA Standards, Accessibility Guidelines.

#### 2.2 HDPE LOCKERS

- A. Manufacturer's

1. Basis of Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Bradley Corporation Lenox Z-Locker 12"W x 24"D x 72"H or comparable product by one of the following:
  - a. ASI
  - b. Scranton Products
- B. HDPE Z-Lockers
  1. Locker Configuration: Two-person Z style.
  2. Accessible Units: Lockers constructed to comply with referenced accessibility standards.
  3. Width: 12 inches.
  4. Depth: 12 inches.
  5. Enclosed Locker Height: 72 inches.
  6. Interior Color: Manufacturer's standard, homogeneous, natural color throughout.
  7. Exterior Color: As selected by Architect from Manufacturer's full range.
  8. Ventilation Type: Horizontal slotted door.
- C. Attributes:
  1. Locker Body Components: Made of solid plastic panels of the following type and minimum thicknesses:
    - a. Solid, High-Density Polyethylene (HDPE): Tested in accordance with ASTM E84, Class B; homogenous color throughout.
    - b. Smoke Developed Index: Not to exceed 450.
    - c. Flame Spread Index: Not to exceed 75.
  2. HDPE Component Thickness:
    - a. Body: 3/8 inch.
    - b. Door and Door Frame: 1/2 inch.
  3. Door Frame: Manufactured from single sheet of HDPE. Separate horizontal and vertical frame members will not be approved.
  4. Door Latching: Multipoint with a full height, spring loaded latch bar securely mounted on interior face of locker door. Latch bar engages door frame at a minimum of two locations per door.
  5. Hinges: Full height, continuous type, 16 gauge, A-coated steel, black finish.



6. Handle: One piece, recessed cup formed from black HDPE and securely mounted to interior of each door for smooth operation with integral latch bar. Capable of accepting various locking mechanisms.
7. Latching Type: Positive, automatic-type locking device allowing locker door to be locked when open, then closed without unlocking.
8. Locking Type: Hasps for combination type provided by owner.
9. Number Plates: Polished aluminum number plate with black numerals 3/8 inch high. Attached to door with rivets.
10. Accessories:
  - a. Base 4 inch high, 1 inch thick, HDPE base.
  - b. Top: Integral, natural flat top only.
  - c. Trim: Manufacturer's standard, color to match lockers.
  - d. Coat hook.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify existing conditions and field dimensions meet manufacturer's requirements before starting work.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Place and secure on prepared base.
- C. Install lockers plumb and square.
- D. Secure lockers with anchor devices to suit substrate materials.
- E. Bolt adjoining locker units together to provide rigid installation.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust moving parts for smooth operation.
  1. Adjust doors and latches to operate without binding.
  2. Verify latches are operating properly.

### 3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior and exterior surfaces of lockers.

### 3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect finishes until completion of project.

END OF SECTION 105126

## SECTION 105143 - WIRE MESH STORAGE LOCKERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Wire mesh storage lockers.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For each type of product.
  - a. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's standard color sheets, showing full range of available colors for each type of wire mesh storage locker with factory-applied color finishes.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of products.

#### 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver wire mesh storage lockers with cardboard protectors on perimeters of panels and doors and with posts wrapped to provide protection during transit and Project-site storage. Use vented plastic.

#### 1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of construction contiguous with wire mesh storage lockers by field measurements and coordinate before fabrication.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Geargrid Turnout Gear Lockers Wall-Mounted and Caster-Mounted or comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. Gear Master
  - 2. Ready Rack

### 2.2 WIRE MESH STORAGE LOCKERS

- A. Unit Sizes:
  - 1. Width: 24 inches .
  - 2. Depth: 20 inches .
  - 3. Height: 74 1/2 inches .
  - 4. Construction: Units shall be welded at all applicable joints. Forming of metal shall be completed by standard cold-forming operations. Use of fasteners will only be required to allow for knock-down shipping, securing units to mounting surface and on applicable accessories.
- B. Backs: Grid 25" diameter ASTM 510 cold drawn steel wire resistance welded to a 3" square pattern.
- C. Shelves: (1) Top, (1) Bottom. .25" diameter ASTM 510 cold drawn steel wire resistance welded and cold formed. Top shelf includes a 20 gauge steel bracket to accept a 2" x 16" name placard.
- D. Base Assembly: Base frame shall be manufactured from 1.25" x 11 gauge wall thickness ASTM A513 square steel tubing. Each unit to be supplied with four (4) casters per unit. Casters to have a 250 lbs. capacity per each caster. Each caster is a swivel model with brake. Lockers to have casters when not able to be mounted to wall.
- E. Apparel Hooks: (3) per opening. .25" diameter ASTM 510 cold drawn steel wire resistance welded and cold formed.
- F. Finish for Uncoated Ferrous Steel: Powder-coated finish unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range .

### 2.3 MATERIALS

- A. Steel Wire: ASTM A510/A510M.
- B. Steel Plates, Channels, Angles, and Bars: ASTM A36/A36M.
- C. Steel Sheet: Cold-rolled steel sheet, ASTM A1008/A1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.
- D. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B, with G60 (Z180) zinc (galvanized) or A60 (ZF180) zinc-iron-alloy (galvannealed) coating designation.

- E. Panel-to-Panel Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard steel bolts, nuts, and washers.
- F. Post-Installed Anchors: Capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing in accordance with ASTM E488/E488M, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
  - 1. Material: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B633 or ASTM F1941/F1941M, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Power-Driven Fasteners: ICC-ES AC70.

## 2.4 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate wire mesh storage lockers from components of sizes not less than those indicated. Use larger size components as recommended by wire mesh manufacturer. Furnish bolts, hardware, and accessories required for complete installation with manufacturer's standard finishes.
  - 1. Fabricate wire mesh storage lockers to be readily disassembled.
- B. Wire Mesh Storage Lockers: Fabricate initial storage locker with front and two sides. Fabricate additional storage lockers as add-on units designed to share one side with initial storage locker.
  - 1. Fabricate wall panel and door framing with slotted holes for connecting adjacent panels.
  - 2. Prehang doors in factory.

## 2.5 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

- A. Powder-Coat Finish: Complying with AAMA 2603.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine floors for suitable conditions where wire mesh storage lockers will be installed.
- C. Examine walls to which wire mesh storage lockers will be attached for properly located blocking, grounds, and other solid backing for attachment of support fasteners.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Anchor wire mesh storage lockers to floor with 3/8-inch- (9.5-mm-) diameter expansion anchors at 12 inches (305 mm) o.c. through bottom panel framing. Shim panel framing as required to achieve level and plumb installation.
  - 1. Floor anchors may be set with power-actuated fasteners instead of postinstalled expansion anchors if indicated on Shop Drawings.
- B. Anchor wire mesh storage lockers to walls at 12 inches (305 mm) o.c. through back corner panel framing and as follows:
  - 1. For concrete and solid masonry anchorage, use expansion anchors.
- C. Attach adjacent wire mesh storage lockers to each other through side panel framing.
- D. Install dividers/shelving/floor panels/ceiling panels as required.
- E. Install doors complete with door hardware.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Adjust doors to operate smoothly and easily without binding or warping. Adjust hardware to function smoothly. Confirm that hasps engage accurately and securely without forcing or binding.
- B. Remove and replace defective work, including doors and framing that are warped, bowed, or otherwise unacceptable.
- C. Touchup Painting:
  - 1. Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas. Paint uncoated and abraded areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.

END OF SECTION 105143

## SECTION 113300 - RETRACTABLE STAIRS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Manual retractable stairs.

#### 1.2 REFERENCES

- A. ANSI A14.9: Safety Requirements for Ceiling Mounted Disappearing Climbing Systems.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:
  - 1. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
  - 2. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
  - 3. Installation methods.
- B. Shop Drawings for Stairs:
  - 1. Plan and section of stair installation.
  - 2. Indicate rough opening dimensions for ceiling.

#### 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store stairway until installation inside under cover in manufacturer's unopened packaging. If stored outside, under a tarp or suitable cover.

#### 1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Limited Warranty: One year against defective material and workmanship, covering parts only. Defective parts, as deemed by the manufacturer, will be replaced at no charge, freight excluded, upon inspection at manufacturer's plant.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUAL DISAPPEARING STAIRWAY.

- A. Provide Super Simplex Disappearing Stairway Model 1000 as manufactured by Precision Ladders LLC or comparable product by one of the following but not limited to:
  - 1. CAI Safety Systems
  - 2. Industrial Ladder and Supply Co
- B. Performance Standard: Unit shall comply with ANSI A14.9, Commercial Type, for rough openings between 27 inches to 39 inches. Stairway capacity shall be rated at 500 lbs.
- C. Accessories:
  - 1. Steel pole to aid opening and closing stairways.
  - 2. Stairs shall be equipped with an aid in folding and unfolding of sections.
- D. Components:
  - 1. Stairway Stringer: 6005-T5 Extruded aluminum channel 5" x 1" x 1/8"; tri-fold design; steel blade type hinges; adjustable feet with plastic Mar-guard. Pitch shall be 60-75 degrees.
  - 2. Stairway Tread: 6005-T5 extruded aluminum channel 5 3/16 inches by 1 1/4 inches by 1/8 inch. Depth is 5 3/16 inches. Deeply serrated top surface. Riser Height: 9-1/2 inches.

Clear Tread Width for Standard Width: 18 inches.

3. Railing: Aluminum bar handrail riveted to stringers, upper section only.

4. Frame:

a. Frame shall be 1/8" steel formed channel, box.

5. Door Panel

a. Standard door shall be constructed of 1/8 inch (3 mm) aluminum sheet attached to stairway frame with a steel piano hinge. Door overlaps bottom flange of frame. Eye bolt accommodates pole for opening and closing door.

6. Hardware:

a. Steel blade type hinge connecting stringer sections. Zinc plated and chromate sealed.

b. Steel operating arms, both sides. Zinc coat with clear trivalent chromate.

c. Double acting steel springs and cable, both sides.

d. Rivets rated at 1100 lb (499 kg) shear strength each.

e. Steel section alignment clips at stringer section joints.

f. Molded rubber guards at corners of aluminum door panel.

7. Finishes: Mill finish on aluminum stairway components. Prime coat on frame.

## 2.2 FABRICATION

A. Completely fabricate ladder ready for installation before shipment to the site.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Do not begin installation until rough opening and structural support have been properly prepared.

B. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

C. Examine materials upon arrival at site. Notify the carrier and manufacturer of any damage.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

### 3.3 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed products until completion of project.

B. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 113300



## SECTION 122113 - HORIZONTAL LOUVER BLINDS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Horizontal louver blinds, aluminum slats.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood blocking and grounds for mounting horizontal louver blinds and accessories.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Horizontal louver blinds, aluminum slats.

B. Product Data Submittals: For each product.

1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

C. Shop Drawings: For horizontal louver blinds.

1. Fabrication and installation details.

D. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's standard color sheets, showing full range of available colors for each type and color of horizontal louver blind.

1. Include Samples of accessories involving color selection.

E. Samples for Verification: Actual sample of finished products for each type and color of horizontal louver blind.

1. Size: Manufacturers' standard size.

F. Product Schedule: For horizontal louver blinds. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For horizontal louver blinds.

#### 1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Extra Stock Material: Furnish extra materials, from the same production run, to Owner that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Horizontal Louver Blinds: Full-size units equal to 5 percent of quantity installed for each size, color, texture, pattern, and gloss indicated, but no fewer than two units. Include brackets.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver horizontal louver blinds in factory packages, marked with manufacturer, product name, and location of installation, using same designations indicated on Drawings.

#### 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install horizontal louver blinds until construction and wet-work and finish work in spaces, including painting, is complete and dry and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
- B. Field Measurements: Where horizontal louver blinds are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Allow clearances for operating hardware of operable glazed units through entire operating range. Notify Architect of installation conditions that vary from Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain horizontal louver blinds from single source from single manufacturer.

#### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

#### 2.3 HORIZONTAL LOUVER BLINDS, ALUMINUM SLATS

- A. Manufacturers
  - 1. Hunter-Douglas
  - 2. Levolor
  - 3. SWFContract
- B. Slats: Aluminum; alloy and temper recommended by producer for type of use and finish indicated; with crowned profile and radius corners.

1. Width: 1 inch (25 mm).
  2. Thickness: Manufacturer's standard.
  3. Spacing: Manufacturer's standard.
  4. Finish: Ionized antistatic, dust-repellent, baked polyester finish.
  5. Features:
    - a. Privacy Slats: Manufacturer's standard privacy slats with no inner lift-cord route holes or with minimum size inner lift-cord route holes located near back (outside) edge of slat to maximize slat overlap and minimize light gaps between slats.
- C. Ladders: Evenly spaced across headrail at spacing that prevents long-term slat sag.
1. Type: Braided cord.
- D. Headrail: Formed steel or extruded aluminum; long edges returned or rolled. Headrails fully enclose control mechanisms on three sides.
1. Capacity: One blind(s) per headrail unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Ends: Manufacturer's standard.
- E. Manual Cordless Operation:
1. Lift Mechanism: Manufacturer's standard lift- or tension-control mechanism that allows blinds to be raised or lowered into position by manually pushing the bottom rail up or pulling it down.
  2. Lift Operator: Plastic lip on bottom rail for manually raising/lowering blinds.
  3. Tilt Mechanism: Enclosed worm-gear mechanism and linkage rod that adjusts ladders.
  4. Tilt Position:
    - a. Full.
    - b. Two-direction, positive stop or lockout limited at an angle of 80 degrees from horizontal, both directions.
  5. Tilt Operator: Clear-plastic wand.
  6. Tilt Over-Rotation Protection: Manufacturer's detachable operator or slip clutch to prevent over-rotation of gear.
  7. Tilt-Operator Length: 36 inches (914 mm).
  8. Tilt-Operator Location: Manufacturer's standard unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Bottom Rail: Formed-steel or extruded-aluminum tube that secures and protects ends of ladders and inner lift cords and has plastic- or metal-capped ends.
1. Type: Manufacturer's standard.
- G. Integrated Headrail/Valance: Curved face.
- H. Valance: Manufacturer's standard.
- I. Mounting Brackets: With spacers and shims required for blind placement and alignment indicated.

1. Type: As indicated based on installation location.
  2. Intermediate Support: Provide intermediate support brackets to produce support spacing recommended by horizontal louver blind manufacturer for weight and size of blind.
- J. Hold-Down Brackets and Hooks or Pins: Manufacturer's standard.
- K. Side Channels and Perimeter Light Gap Seals: Manufacturer's standard.
- L. Colors, Textures, Patterns, and Gloss:
1. Slats: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  2. Components: Provide rails, ladders, and materials exposed to view matching or coordinating with slat color unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.4 FABRICATION OF HORIZONTAL LOUVER BLINDS

- A. Unit Sizes: Fabricate units in sizes to fill window and other openings as follows, measured at 74 deg F (23 deg C):
1. Between (Inside) Jamb Installation: Width equal to jamb-to-jamb dimension of opening in which blind is installed less 1/4 inch (6 mm) per side or 1/2 inch (13 mm) total, plus or minus 1/8 inch (3.1 mm). Length equal to head-to-sill dimension of opening in which blind is installed less 1/4 inch (6 mm), plus or minus 1/8 inch (3.1 mm).
- B. Concealed Components: Noncorrodible or corrosion-resistant-coated materials.
1. Lift-and-Tilt Mechanisms: With permanently lubricated moving parts.
- C. Mounting Brackets: Designed for removal and reinstallation of blind without damaging blind and adjacent surfaces, for supporting blind components, and for bracket positions and blind mounting method indicated.
- D. Installation Fasteners: No fewer than two fasteners per bracket, fabricated from metal noncorrosive to brackets and adjoining construction; type designed for securing to supporting substrate; and supporting blinds and accessories under conditions of normal use.
- E. Color-Coated Finish:
1. Metal: For components exposed to view, unless anodized or plated finish is indicated, apply manufacturer's standard baked finish complying with manufacturer's written instructions for surface preparation including pretreatment, application, baking, and minimum dry film thickness.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, operational clearances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF HORIZONTAL LOUVER BLINDS

- A. Install horizontal louver blinds level and plumb, aligned and centered on openings, and aligned with adjacent units in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Locate so exterior slat edges are not closer than 1 inch (25 mm) from interior faces of glass and not closer than 1/2 inch (13 mm) from interior faces of glazing frames through full operating ranges of blinds.
  - 2. Install mounting brackets to prevent deflection of headrails.
  - 3. Install with clearances that prevent interference with adjacent blinds, adjacent construction, and operating hardware of glazed openings, other window treatments, and similar building components and furnishings.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust horizontal louver blinds to operate free of binding or malfunction through full operating ranges.

### 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean horizontal louver blind surfaces after installation in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer that ensures that horizontal louver blinds are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- C. Replace damaged horizontal louver blinds that cannot be repaired in a manner approved by Architect before time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 122113

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 122413 - ROLLER WINDOW SHADES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Manually operated, single-roller shades.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, features, finishes, and operating instructions for roller shades.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for roller shades, including shadeband materials, their orientation to rollers, and their seam and batten locations.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of roller shade.
  - 1. Shadeband Material: Not less than 3 inches (76 mm) square. Mark interior face of material if applicable.
- D. Product Schedule: For roller shades. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of shadeband material.
- C. Product Test Reports: For each type of shadeband material, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For roller shades to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver roller shades in factory packages, marked with manufacturer, product name, and location of installation using same designations indicated on Drawings.

## 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install roller shades until construction and finish work in spaces, including painting, is complete and dry and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
- B. Field Measurements: Where roller shades are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Allow clearances for operating hardware of operable glazed units through entire operating range. Notify Architect of installation conditions that vary from Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain roller shades from single source from single manufacturer.

### 2.2 MANUALLY OPERATED, SINGLE-ROLLER SHADES

- A. Chain-and-Clutch Operating Mechanisms: With continuous-loop bead chain and clutch that stops shade movement when bead chain is released; permanently adjusted and lubricated.
  - 1. Bead Chains: Stainless steel.
    - a. Loop Length: Full length of roller shade.
    - b. Limit Stops: Provide upper and lower ball stops.
    - c. Chain-Retainer Type: Verify type and mounting location with architect.
- B. Rollers: Corrosion-resistant steel or extruded-aluminum tubes of diameters and wall thicknesses required to accommodate operating mechanisms and weights and widths of shadebands indicated without deflection. Provide with permanently lubricated drive-end assemblies and idle-end assemblies designed to facilitate removal of shadebands for service.
  - 1. Direction of Shadeband Roll: Regular, from back (exterior face) of roller.
  - 2. Shadeband-to-Roller Attachment: Manufacturer's standard method.
- C. Mounting Hardware: Brackets or endcaps, corrosion resistant and compatible with roller assembly, operating mechanism, installation accessories, and mounting location and conditions indicated.
- D. Shadebands:
  - 1. Shadeband Material: Light-blocking fabric.
  - 2. Shadeband Bottom (Hem) Bar: Steel or extruded aluminum.
    - a. Type: Enclosed in sealed pocket of shadeband material.
    - b. Color and Finish: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.



E. Installation Accessories:

1. Front Fascia: Aluminum extrusion that conceals front and underside of roller and operating mechanism and attaches to roller endcaps without exposed fasteners.
  - a. Shape: L-shaped.
  - b. Height: Manufacturer's standard height required to conceal roller and shadeband assembly when shade is fully open, but not less than 4 inches (102 mm).
2. Endcap Covers: To cover exposed endcaps.
3. Side Channels: With light seals and designed to eliminate light gaps at sides of shades as shades are drawn down. Provide side channels with shadeband guides or other means of aligning shadebands with channels at tops.
4. Bottom (Sill) Channel or Angle: With light seals and designed to eliminate light gaps at bottoms of shades when shades are closed.
5. Installation Accessories Color and Finish: As selected from manufacturer's full range.

2.3 SHADEBAND MATERIALS

- A. Shadeband Material Flame-Resistance Rating: Comply with NFPA 701. Testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
- B. Light-Blocking Fabric: Opaque fabric, stain and fade resistant.
  1. Source: Roller shade manufacturer.
  2. Type: PVC-coated fiberglass with bonded PVC film.
  3. Thickness: .026-.030 in.
  4. Weight: 13.86-16.07 oz/sq yd
  5. Roll Width: See Storefront Schedule.
  6. Orientation on Shadeband: Up the bolt.
  7. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.4 ROLLER SHADE FABRICATION

- A. Product Safety Standard: Fabricate roller shades to comply with WCMA A 100.1, including requirements for flexible, chain-loop devices; lead content of components; and warning labels.
- B. Unit Sizes: Fabricate units in sizes to fill window and other openings as follows, measured at 74 deg F (23 deg C):
  1. Outside of Jamb Installation: Width and length as indicated, with terminations between shades of end-to-end installations at centerlines of mullion or other defined vertical separations between openings.
- C. Shadeband Fabrication: Fabricate shadebands without battens or seams to extent possible, except as follows:
  1. Vertical Shades: Where width-to-length ratio of shadeband is equal to or greater than 1:4, provide battens and seams at uniform spacings along shadeband length to ensure

shadeband tracking and alignment through its full range of movement without distortion of the material.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, operational clearances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 ROLLER SHADE INSTALLATION

- A. Install roller shades level, plumb, and aligned with adjacent units according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Opaque Shadebands: Located so shadeband is not closer than 2 inches (51 mm) to interior face of glass. Allow clearances for window operation hardware.
- B. Roller Shade Locations: As indicated on Drawings.

#### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust and balance roller shades to operate smoothly, easily, safely, and free from binding or malfunction throughout entire operational range.

#### 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean roller shade surfaces, after installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensure that roller shades are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- C. Replace damaged roller shades that cannot be repaired, in a manner approved by Architect, before time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 122413

## SECTION 123530 - RESIDENTIAL CASEWORK

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes solid wood cabinets.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood blocking for anchoring casework.
  - 2. Section 092216 "Non-Structural Metal Framing" for reinforcements in metal-framed partitions for anchoring casework.
  - 3. Section 123661.16 "Solid Surfacing Countertops."
  - 4. Section 123661.19 "Quartz Agglomerate Countertops."

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Concealed Surfaces of Casework: Surfaces not usually visible after installation, including sleepers, web frames, dust panels, bottoms of drawers, and ends of casework installed directly against and completely concealed by walls or other casework, and tops of wall cabinets and utility cabinets.
- B. Exposed Surfaces of Casework: Surfaces visible when doors and drawers are closed, including visible surfaces in open cabinets or behind glass doors.
- C. Semiexposed Surfaces of Casework: Surfaces behind opaque doors or drawer fronts, including interior faces of doors, interiors and sides of drawers, and bottoms of wall cabinets.

#### 1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of blocking and reinforcement in partitions for support of casework.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components, and profiles and finishes for casework.

2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, profiles, and finishes for hardware.
- B. Shop Drawings: For residential casework.
  1. Include plans, elevations, details, and attachments to other work.
  2. Show materials, finishes, filler panels, and hardware.
  3. Indicate manufacturer's catalog numbers for casework.
- C. Samples: For casework and hardware finishes.
- D. Samples for Initial Selection: For casework and hardware finishes.
- E. Samples for Verification: For the following:
  1. Casework Finishes: 8-by-10-inch Samples for each type of casework finish.
  2. Hardware: One full-size Sample of each type of exposed hardware in each finish required.
  3. Base Cabinet: One full-size, 16-inch- wide, finished base cabinet complete with hardware, doors, and drawers but without countertop.
  4. Wall Cabinet: One full-size, 12-inch- wide, finished wall cabinet complete with hardware, doors, and adjustable shelves.
  5. Full-Size Samples: Maintain at Project site during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work. Unless otherwise indicated, approved sample units may become part of the completed Work if in undisturbed condition at time of Substantial Completion. Notify Architect of their exact locations.

#### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer.
- B. Product Certificates: For casework.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Certified Wood: Provide an invoice including vendor's chain-of-custody number, product cost, and entity being invoiced.
- B. Vendor Qualifications: A vendor that is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.

#### 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install casework until building is enclosed, wet-work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at levels planned for building occupants during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Established Dimensions: Where casework is indicated to fit to other construction, establish dimensions for areas where casework is to fit. Coordinate construction to ensure that actual

dimensions correspond to established dimensions. Provide fillers and scribes to allow for trimming and fitting.

- C. Field Measurements: Where casework is indicated to fit to existing construction, verify dimensions of existing construction by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Provide fillers and scribes to allow for trimming and fitting.
- D. Locate concealed framing, blocking, and reinforcements that support casework by field measurements before enclosing them, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 CABINETS

- A. Quality Standard: Provide cabinets that comply with KCMA A161.1.
  - 1. KCMA Certification: Provide cabinets with KCMA's "Certified Cabinet" seal affixed in a semiexposed location of each unit and showing compliance with KCMA A161.1.
- B. Regional Materials: Manufacture wood products within 100 miles of Project site from materials that have been extracted, harvested, or recovered, as well as manufactured, within 100 miles of Project site.
- C. Certified Wood: Certify wood products as "FSC Pure" or "FSC Mixed Credit" in accordance with FSC STD-01-001 and FSC STD-40-004.
- D. Door and Drawer Face Style: Flush overlay; faces cover cabinet fronts .
  - 1. Door and Drawer Fronts: Solid-wood stiles and rails, 5/8 inch thick, with 3/4-inch- thick, solid-wood center panels.
- E. Cabinet Style: Frameless.
- F. Exposed Cabinet End Finish: Wood veneer .
- G. Cabinet End Construction: 5/8-inch- thick particleboard or 1/2-inch- thick plywood .
- H. Cabinet Tops and Bottoms: 5/8-inch- thick particleboard or 1/2-inch- thick plywood .
  - 1. Fully support in rabbets in and secure to end panels , front frame, and back rail.
- I. Back, Top, and Bottom Rails: 3/4-by-2-1/2-inch solid wood, interlocking with end panels and rabbeted to receive top and bottom panels. Back rails secured under pressure with glue and with mechanical fasteners.
- J. Wall-Hung-Unit Back Panels: 3/16-inch- thick plywood fastened to rear edge of end panels and to top and bottom rails.
- K. Base-Unit Back Panels: 3/16-inch- thick plywood fastened to rear edge of end panels and to top and bottom rails.

- L. Front Frame Drawer Rails: 3/4-by-1-1/4-inch solid wood mortised and fastened into face frame.
- M. Drawers: Fabricate with exposed fronts fastened to subfront with mounting screws from interior of body.
  - 1. Join subfronts, backs, and sides with glued dovetail joints.
  - 2. Subfronts, Backs, and Sides: 3/4-inch- thick solid wood .
  - 3. Bottoms: 1/4-inch- thick plywood .
- N. Shelves: 3/4-inch- thick particleboard or 5/8-inch- thick plywood .
- O. Joinery: Rabbet backs flush into end panels and secure with concealed mechanical fasteners. Connect tops and bottoms of wall cabinets and bottoms and stretchers of base cabinets to ends and dividers with mechanical fasteners. Rabbet tops, bottoms, and backs into end panels.
- P. Factory Finishing: Finish cabinets at factory.

## 2.2 CABINET MATERIALS

- A. Hardwood Lumber: Kiln dried to 7 percent moisture content.
- B. Softwood Lumber: Kiln dried to 10 percent moisture content.
- C. Composite Wood Products: Verify products are made using ultra-low-emitting formaldehyde resins, as defined in the California Air Resources Board's "Airborne Toxic Control Measure to Reduce Formaldehyde Emissions from Composite Wood Products," or are made with no added formaldehyde.
- D. Hardwood Plywood: HPVA HP-1.
- E. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2.
  - 1. Recycled Content: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 50 percent.
- F. Particleboard: Straw-based particleboard complying with requirements in ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2, except for density.
- G. MDF: Medium-density fiberboard, ANSI A208.2, Grade MD.
  - 1. Recycled Content: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 50 percent.
- H. Hardboard: ANSI A135.4, Class 1 tempered.
  - 1. Recycled Content: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 50 percent.
- I. Adhesives: Use adhesives that meet the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

J. Exposed Materials:

1. Exposed Wood Species: Maple .
  - a. Select materials for compatible color and grain. Do not use two adjacent exposed surfaces that are noticeably dissimilar in color, grain, figure, or natural character markings.
  - b. Staining and Finish: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
2. Solid Wood: Clear hardwood lumber of species indicated, free of defects.

K. Semiexposed Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, provide the following:

1. Solid Wood: Sound hardwood lumber, selected to eliminate appearance defects. Same species as exposed surfaces or stained to be compatible with exposed surfaces.

L. Concealed Materials: Solid wood or plywood, of any hardwood or softwood species, with no defects affecting strength or utility; particleboard; MDF; or hardboard.

## 2.3 CABINET HARDWARE

- A. General: Manufacturer's standard units complying with BHMA A156.9, of type, size, style, material, and finish .
- B. Pulls: Back-mounted decorative pulls .
  1. Back mounted, "European bar-style" pull with brushed nickel finish. Provide Atlas Homewares Skinny Linea Pull 5", or approved equal.
- C. Hinges: Concealed European-style, self-closing hinges .
- D. Drawer Guides: Epoxy-coated-metal, self-closing drawer guides; designed to prevent rebound when drawers are closed; with nylon-tired, ball-bearing rollers; and complying with BHMA A156.9, Type B05011 or Type B05091.
- E. Door and Drawer Bumpers: Self-adhering, clear silicone rubber.
  1. Doors: Provide one bumper at top and bottom of closing edge of each swinging door.
  2. Drawers: Provide one bumper on back side of drawer front at each corner.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, location of framing and reinforcements, and other conditions affecting performance of casework.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install casework with no variations in adjoining surfaces; use concealed shims. Where casework abuts other finished work, scribe and cut for accurate fit. Provide filler strips, scribe strips, and moldings in finish to match casework.
- B. Install casework without distortion so doors and drawers fit the openings, are aligned, and are uniformly spaced. Complete installation of hardware and accessories as indicated.
- C. Install casework level and plumb to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 8 feet.
- D. Fasten casework to adjacent units and to backing.
  - 1. Fasten wall cabinets through back, near top and bottom, and at ends not more than 16 inches o.c.
    - a. Fasteners: No. 10 wafer-head screws sized for not less than 1-1/2-inch penetration into wood framing, blocking, or hanging strips .

### 3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Adjust hardware so doors and drawers are centered in openings and operate smoothly without warp or bind. Lubricate operating hardware as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Clean casework on exposed and semiexposed surfaces. Touch up as required to restore damaged or soiled areas to match original factory finish, as approved by Architect.

END OF SECTION 123530



## SECTION 123661.16 - SOLID SURFACING COUNTERTOPS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Solid surface material countertops.
2. Solid surface material backsplashes.
3. Solid surface material end splashes.
4. Solid surface material apron fronts.
5. Solid surface window sills

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For countertop materials.

B. Shop Drawings: For countertops. Show materials, finishes, edge and backsplash profiles, methods of joining, and cutouts for plumbing fixtures.

1. Show locations and details of joints.
2. Show direction of directional pattern, if any.

C. Samples for Verification: For the following products:

1. Each solid surface material, 6 inches (150 mm) square.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For fabricator.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For solid surface material countertops to include in maintenance manuals. Include Product Data for care products used or recommended by Installer and names, addresses, and telephone numbers of local sources for products.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom-fabricate countertops similar to that required for this Project, and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.

B. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of countertops.

## 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify dimensions of countertops by field measurements before countertop fabrication is complete.

## 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate locations of utilities that will penetrate countertops or backsplashes.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SOLID SURFACE COUNTERTOP MATERIALS

- A. Solid Surface Material: Homogeneous-filled plastic resin complying with ISFA 2-01.
  - 1. Manufacturers
    - a. DuPont / Corian
    - b. 3Form
    - c. Durant
    - d. Lumicor
  - 2. Type: Provide Standard type unless Special Purpose type is indicated.
  - 3. Colors and Patterns: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- B. Plywood: Exterior softwood plywood complying with DOC PS 1, Grade C-C Plugged, touch sanded.

### 2.2 FABRICATION

- A. Countertop Configuration:
  - 1. Front: Straight, slightly eased at top.
  - 2. Backsplash: Straight, slightly eased at corner.
  - 3. End Splash: Matching backsplash.
- B. Countertops:
  - 1. 1/2-inch- (12.7-mm-) thick, solid surface material with front edge built up with same material.
- C. Backsplashes: 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) thick, solid surface material.
- D. Fabricate tops with shop-applied edges and backsplashes unless otherwise indicated. Comply with solid surface material manufacturer's written instructions for adhesives, sealers, fabrication, and finishing.
  - 1. Fabricate with loose backsplashes for field assembly.
  - 2. Install integral sink bowls in countertops in the shop.

E. Joints:

1. Fabricate countertops without joints.
2. Fabricate countertops in sections for joining in field.
  - a. Joint Locations: Not within 18 inches (450 mm) of a sink or cooktop and not where a countertop section less than 36 inches (900 mm) long would result, unless unavoidable.

F. Cutouts and Holes:

1. Undercounter Plumbing Fixtures: Make cutouts for fixtures in shop using template or pattern furnished by fixture manufacturer. Form cutouts to smooth, even curves.
  - a. Provide vertical edges, slightly eased at juncture of cutout edges with top and bottom surfaces of countertop and projecting 3/16 inch (5 mm) into fixture opening.
  - b. Provide vertical edges, rounded to 3/8-inch (10-mm) radius at juncture of cutout edges with top surface of countertop, slightly eased at bottom, and projecting 3/16 inch (5 mm) into fixture opening.
  - c. Provide 3/4-inch (20-mm) full bullnose edges projecting 3/8 inch (10 mm) into fixture opening.
2. Counter-Mounted Plumbing Fixtures: Prepare countertops in shop for field cutting openings for counter-mounted fixtures. Mark tops for cutouts and drill holes at corners of cutout locations. Make corner holes of largest radius practical.
3. Fittings: Drill countertops in shop for plumbing fittings, undercounter soap dispensers, and similar items.

2.3 WINDOW SILLS FABRICATION

- A. Window sills: 1/2-inch- (12.7-mm-) thick, solid surface material with bullnosed edge to be twice the thickness of the window sill.
- B. Fabrication: Fabricate sills in one piece unless otherwise indicated. Comply with solid-surface-material manufacturer's written instructions for adhesives, sealers, fabrication, and finishing.

2.4

2.5 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Adhesive: Product recommended by solid surface material manufacturer.
- B. Sealant for Countertops: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates to receive solid surface material countertops and conditions under which countertops will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of countertops.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install countertops level to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 8 feet (3 mm in 2.4 m), 1/4 inch (6 mm) maximum. Do not exceed 1/64-inch (0.4-mm) difference between planes of adjacent units.
- B. Fasten countertops by screwing through corner blocks of base units into underside of countertop. Predrill holes for screws as recommended by manufacturer. Align adjacent surfaces and, using adhesive in color to match countertop, form seams to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Carefully dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface.
- C. Fasten subtops to cabinets by screwing through subtops into cornerblocks of base cabinets. Shim as needed to align subtops in a level plane.
- D. Secure countertops to subtops with adhesive according to solid surface material manufacturer's written instructions. Align adjacent surfaces and, using adhesive in color to match countertop, form seams to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Carefully dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface.
- E. Bond joints with adhesive and draw tight as countertops are set. Mask areas of countertops adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears.
  - 1. Install metal splines in kerfs in countertop edges at joints where indicated. Fill kerfs with adhesive before inserting splines and remove excess immediately after adjoining units are drawn into position.
  - 2. Clamp units to temporary bracing, supports, or each other to ensure that countertops are properly aligned and joints are of specified width.
- F. Install backsplashes and end splashes by adhering to wall and countertops with adhesive. Mask areas of countertops and splashes adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears.
- G. Install aprons to backing and countertops with adhesive. Mask areas of countertops and splashes adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears. Fasten by screwing through backing. Predrill holes for screws as recommended by manufacturer.
- H. Complete cutouts not finished in shop. Mask areas of countertops adjacent to cutouts to prevent damage while cutting. Make cutouts to accurately fit items to be installed, and at right angles to finished surfaces unless beveling is required for clearance. Ease edges slightly to prevent snipping.
  - 1. Seal edges of cutouts in particleboard subtops by saturating with varnish.

- I. Apply sealant to gaps at walls; comply with Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

END OF SECTION 123661.16

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 123661.19 - QUARTZ AGGLOMERATE COUNTERTOPS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Quartz agglomerate countertops.
2. Quartz agglomerate backsplashes.
3. Quartz agglomerate end splashes.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For countertop materials.

B. Shop Drawings: For countertops. Show materials, finishes, edge and backsplash profiles, methods of joining, and cutouts for plumbing fixtures.

1. Show locations and details of joints.
2. Show direction of directional pattern, if any.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of material exposed to view.

D. Samples for Verification: For the following products:

1. Countertop material, 6 inches (150 mm) square.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For fabricator.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For quartz agglomerate countertops to include in maintenance manuals. Include Product Data for care products used or recommended by Installer and names, addresses, and telephone numbers of local sources for products.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom-fabricate countertops similar to that required for this Project, and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.

B. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of countertops.

## 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify dimensions of countertops by field measurements after base cabinets are installed but before countertop fabrication is complete.

## 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate locations of utilities that will penetrate countertops or backsplashes.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 QUARTZ AGGLOMERATE COUNTERTOP MATERIALS

- A. Quartz Agglomerate: Solid sheets consisting of quartz aggregates bound together with a matrix of polymers, resins, and pigment and complying with ISFA 3-01.
  - 1. Colors and Patterns: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- B. Plywood: Exterior softwood plywood complying with DOC PS 1, Grade C-C Plugged, touch sanded.

### 2.2 FABRICATION

- A. Configuration:
  - 1. Front: Straight, slightly eased at top.
  - 2. Backsplash: Straight, slightly eased at corner.
  - 3. End Splash: Matching backsplash.
- B. Countertops: 1/2-inch- (12.7-mm-) thick, quartz agglomerate with front edge built up with same material.
- C. Backsplashes: 1/2-inch- (12.7-mm-) thick, quartz agglomerate.
- D. Fabricate tops with shop-applied edges and backsplashes unless otherwise indicated. Comply with quartz agglomerate manufacturer's written instructions for adhesives, sealers, fabrication, and finishing.
- E. Joints:
  - 1. Fabricate countertops without joints.
  - 2. Fabricate countertops in sections for joining in field, with joints at locations indicated.
    - a. Joint Locations: Not within 18 inches (450 mm) of a sink or cooktop and not where a countertop section less than 36 inches (900 mm) long would result, unless unavoidable.
    - b. Joint Type, Bonded: 1/32 inch (0.8 mm) or less in width.
- F. Cutouts and Holes:



1. Undercounter Plumbing Fixtures: Make cutouts for fixtures in shop using template or pattern furnished by fixture manufacturer. Form cutouts to smooth, even curves.
  - a. Provide vertical edges, slightly eased at juncture of cutout edges with top and bottom surfaces of countertop and projecting 3/16 inch (5 mm) into fixture opening.
  - b. Provide vertical edges, rounded to 3/8-inch (10-mm) radius at juncture of cutout edges with top surface of countertop, slightly eased at bottom, and projecting 3/16 inch (5 mm) into fixture opening.
  - c. Provide 3/4-inch (20-mm) full bullnose edges projecting 3/8 inch (10 mm) into fixture opening.
2. Counter-Mounted Plumbing Fixtures: Prepare countertops in shop for field cutting openings for counter-mounted fixtures. Mark tops for cutouts and drill holes at corners of cutout locations. Make corner holes of largest radius practical.
3. Fittings: Drill countertops in shop for plumbing fittings, undercounter soap dispensers, and similar items.

## 2.3 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Adhesive: Product recommended by quartz agglomerate manufacturer.
- B. Sealant for Countertops: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates to receive quartz agglomerate countertops and conditions under which countertops will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of countertops.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install countertops level to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 8 feet (3 mm in 2.4 m), 1/4 inch (6 mm) maximum. Do not exceed 1/64-inch (0.4-mm) difference between planes of adjacent units.
- B. Fasten countertops by screwing through corner blocks of base units into underside of countertop. Predrill holes for screws as recommended by manufacturer. Align adjacent surfaces and, using adhesive in color to match countertop, form seams to comply with quartz agglomerate manufacturer's written instructions. Carefully dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface.
- C. Fasten subtops to cabinets by screwing through subtops into cornerblocks of base cabinets. Shim as needed to align subtops in a level plane.

- D. Secure countertops to subtops with adhesive according to quartz agglomerate manufacturer's written instructions. Align adjacent surfaces and, using adhesive in color to match countertop, form seams to comply with quartz agglomerate manufacturer's written instructions. Carefully dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface.
- E. Bond joints with adhesive and draw tight as countertops are set. Mask areas of countertops adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears.
  - 1. Install metal splines in kerfs in countertop edges at joints[ **where indicated**]. Fill kerfs with adhesive before inserting splines and remove excess immediately after adjoining units are drawn into position.
  - 2. Clamp units to temporary bracing, supports, or each other to ensure that countertops are properly aligned and joints are of specified width.
- F. Install backsplashes and end splashes by adhering to wall and countertops with adhesive. Mask areas of countertops and splashes adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears.
- G. Install aprons to backing and countertops with adhesive. Mask areas of countertops and splashes adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears. Fasten by screwing through backing. Predrill holes for screws as recommended by manufacturer.
- H. Complete cutouts not finished in shop. Mask areas of countertops adjacent to cutouts to prevent damage while cutting. Make cutouts to accurately fit items to be installed, and at right angles to finished surfaces unless beveling is required for clearance. Ease edges slightly to prevent snipping.
  - 1. Seal edges of cutouts in particleboard subtops by saturating with varnish.
- I. Apply sealant to gaps at walls; comply with Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

END OF SECTION 123661.19

## SECTION 133419 - METAL BUILDING SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Structural-steel framing.
2. Metal roof panels.
3. Metal wall panels.
4. Metal soffit panels.
5. Thermal insulation.
6. Accessories.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 077253 "Snow Guards" for prefabricated devices designed to hold snow on the roof surface.
2. Section 083613 "Sectional Doors" for sectional vehicular doors in metal building systems.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Terminology Standard: See MBMA's "Metal Building Systems Manual" for definitions of terms for metal building system construction not otherwise defined in this Section or in standards referenced by this Section.

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete foundations and casting of anchor-rod inserts into foundation walls and footings. Anchor rod installation, concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- B. Coordinate metal panel assemblies with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, and construction of supports and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

#### 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Review methods and procedures related to metal building systems including, but not limited to, the following:
  - a. Condition of foundations and other preparatory work performed by other trades.
  - b. Structural load limitations.

- c. Construction schedule. Verify availability of materials and erector's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
  - d. Required tests, inspections, and certifications.
  - e. Unfavorable weather and forecasted weather conditions and impact on construction schedule.
- 2. Review methods and procedures related to metal roof panel assemblies including, but not limited to, the following:
  - a. Compliance with requirements for purlin and rafter conditions, including flatness and attachment to structural members.
  - b. Structural limitations of purlins and rafters during and after roofing.
  - c. Flashings, special roof details, roof drainage, roof penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that will affect metal roof panels.
  - d. Temporary protection requirements for metal roof panel assembly during and after installation.
  - e. Roof observation and repair after metal roof panel installation.
- 3. Review methods and procedures related to metal wall panel assemblies including, but not limited to, the following:
  - a. Compliance with requirements for support conditions, including alignment between and attachment to structural members.
  - b. Structural limitations of girts and columns during and after wall panel installation.
  - c. Flashings, special siding details, wall penetrations, openings, and condition of other construction that will affect metal wall panels.
  - d. Temporary protection requirements for metal wall panel assembly during and after installation.
  - e. Wall observation and repair after metal wall panel installation.

## 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of metal building system component.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for the following:
    - a. Metal roof panels.
    - b. Metal wall panels.
    - c. Metal soffit panels.
    - d. Thermal insulation and vapor-retarder facings.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate components by others. Include full building plan, elevations, sections, details and the following:
  - 1. Anchor-Rod Plans: Submit anchor-rod plans and templates before foundation work begins. Include location, diameter, and minimum required projection of anchor rods required to attach metal building to foundation. Indicate column reactions at each location.

2. Structural-Framing Drawings: Show complete fabrication of primary and secondary framing; include provisions for openings. Indicate welds and bolted connections, distinguishing between shop and field applications. Include transverse cross-sections.
  3. Metal Roof and Wall Panel Layout Drawings: Show layouts of panels including methods of support. Include details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, clip spacing, trim, flashings, closures, and special details. Distinguish between factory- and field-assembled work; show locations of exposed fasteners.
    - a. Show roof-mounted items including equipment supports, pipe supports and penetrations, and lighting fixtures.
    - b. Show wall-mounted items including personnel doors, vehicular doors, windows, louvers, and lighting fixtures.
  4. Accessory Drawings: Include details of the following items, at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches (1:8):
    - a. Flashing and trim.
    - b. Gutters.
    - c. Downspouts.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied finishes.
- D. Samples for Verification: For the following products:
1. Panels: Nominal 12 inches (300 mm) long by actual panel width. Include fasteners, closures, and other exposed panel accessories.
  2. Flashing and Trim: Nominal 12 inches (300 mm) long. Include fasteners and other exposed accessories.
  3. Vapor-Retarder Facings: Nominal 6-inch- (150-mm-) square Samples.
  4. Accessories: Nominal 12-inch- (300-mm-) long Samples for each type of accessory.
- E. Delegated Design Submittals: For metal building systems.
1. Include analysis data indicating compliance with performance requirements and design data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
- 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
- A. Qualification Data: For erector and manufacturer.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Letter of Design Certification: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Include the following:
1. Name and location of Project.
  2. Order number.
  3. Name of manufacturer.

4. Name of Contractor.
5. Building dimensions including width, length, height, and roof slope.
6. Indicate compliance with AISC standards for hot-rolled steel and AISI standards for cold-rolled steel, including edition dates of each standard.
7. Governing building code and year of edition.
8. Design Loads: Include dead load, roof live load, collateral loads, roof snow load, deflection, wind loads/speeds and exposure, seismic design category or effective peak velocity-related acceleration/peak acceleration, and auxiliary loads (cranes).
9. Load Combinations: Indicate that loads were applied acting simultaneously with concentrated loads, according to governing building code.
10. Building-Use Category: Indicate category of building use and its effect on load importance factors.

D. Erector Certificates: For qualified erector, from manufacturer.

E. Material Test Reports: For each of the following products:

1. Structural steel including chemical and physical properties.
2. Bolts, nuts, and washers including mechanical properties and chemical analysis.
3. Tension-control, high-strength, bolt-nut-washer assemblies.
4. Shop primers.
5. Nonshrink grout.

F. Source quality-control reports.

G. Field quality-control reports.

H. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

## 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For metal panel finishes to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer.

1. Accreditation: Manufacturer's facility accredited according to IAS AC472, "Accreditation Criteria for Inspection Programs for Manufacturers of Metal Building Systems."
2. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of comprehensive engineering analysis and Shop Drawings by a professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located.

B. Erector Qualifications: An experienced erector who specializes in erecting and installing work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and who is acceptable to manufacturer.

C. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

2. AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver components, sheets, panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal panels for protection during transportation and handling.
- B. Unload, store, and erect metal panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
- C. Stack metal panels horizontally on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store metal panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.
- D. Protect foam-plastic insulation as follows:
  - 1. Do not expose to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
  - 2. Protect against ignition at all times. Do not deliver foam-plastic insulation materials to Project site before installation time.
  - 3. Complete installation and concealment of foam-plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with panel installation only when weather conditions permit metal panels to be installed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty on Metal Panel Finishes: Manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
    - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D2244.
    - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D4214.
    - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
  - 2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Weathertightness Warranty for Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panels: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace standing-seam metal roof panel assemblies that leak or otherwise fail to remain weathertight within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain metal building system components, including primary and secondary framing and metal panel assemblies, from single source from single manufacturer.

### 2.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Provide a complete, integrated set of mutually dependent components and assemblies that form a metal building system capable of withstanding structural and other loads, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure or infiltration of water into building interior.
- B. Primary-Frame Type:

Retain one or more subparagraphs below or revise to suit Project. Coordinate with design information indicated on Drawings.

- 1. Rigid Clear Span: Solid-member, structural-framing system without interior columns.

- C. End-Wall Framing:

Retain one of two subparagraphs below. Load-bearing end walls (columns and rafters) in first subparagraph are generally more economical than frames. Second subparagraph allows future expansion of building without replacing end frame.

- 1. Manufacturer's standard, for buildings not required to be expandable, consisting of.

Retain one of three options in "Secondary-Frame Type" Paragraph below. Girts are attached to primary framing in one of three relationships: flush framed, with the exterior face of the girt at the exterior face of the column; partially inset framed, with the girt partially extending past the exterior face of the column; and exterior framed (bypass), with the girt attached to the exterior flange of column. See the Evaluations for diagram illustrating three relationships.

- D. Secondary-Frame Type: Manufacturer's standard purlins and joists and exterior-framed (bypass) girts.
- E. Eave Height: Manufacturer's standard height, as indicated by nominal height on Drawings.
- F. Bay Spacing: As indicated on Drawings.
- G. Roof Slope: As indicated on Drawings.
- H. Roof System: Manufacturer's standard standing-seam, vertical-rib, metal roof panels.
  - 1. Liner Panels: Tapered rib.



Many types of wall panels are available from manufacturers. Options in "Exterior Wall System" Paragraph below match panels listed in Part 2 but are examples only. Revise if wall system uses other metal panels.

- I. Exterior Wall System: Manufacturer's standard concealed-fastener, flush-profile, metal wall panels.

- 1. Liner Panels: [**Tapered rib**] [**Flush profile**].

## 2.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design metal building system.
- B. Structural Performance: Metal building systems to withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to procedures in MBMA's "Metal Building Systems Manual."

- 1. Design Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Deflection and Drift Limits:
    - a. Design metal building system assemblies to withstand serviceability design loads without exceeding deflections and drift limits recommended in AISC Steel Design Guide No. 3 "Serviceability Design Considerations for Steel Buildings."
    - b. No greater than the following:

Deflections in first four subparagraphs below are examples only. Masonry walls may require deflection limits of 1/600 or 1/720. Verify limits with authorities having jurisdiction; manufacturers' standards are typically less stringent.

- 1) Purlins and Rafters: Vertical deflection of 1/360 of the span.
    - 2) Girts: Horizontal deflection of 1/240 of the span.
    - 3) Metal Roof Panels: Vertical deflection of 1/240 of the span.
    - 4) Metal Wall Panels: Horizontal deflection of 1/240 of the span.

Retain first subparagraph below with one or more of last four subparagraphs above.

- 5) Design secondary-framing system to accommodate deflection of primary framing and construction tolerances, and to maintain clearances at openings.

Options in "Lateral Drift" Subparagraph below are examples only.

- 6) Lateral Drift: Maximum of 1/400 of the building height.

- C. Seismic Performance: Metal building system to withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
- D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.

1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

Retain "Fire-Resistance Ratings" Paragraph below if fire-resistance-rated assemblies are included in Project. Indicate rating, testing agency, and testing agency's design designation on Drawings.

- E. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where assemblies are indicated to have a fire-resistance rating, provide metal panel assemblies identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E119 or ASTM E108 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory," FM Global's "Approval Guide," or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.

Retain "Fire Propagation Characteristics" Subparagraph below if required for wall assemblies containing foam-plastic insulation or foamed-insulation-core panels. Tested products are not available from all manufacturers.

- F. Fire Propagation Characteristics: Exterior wall assemblies containing foam plastics pass NFPA 285 fire test.
- G. Structural Performance for Metal Roof and Wall Panels: Provide metal panel systems capable of withstanding the effects of the following loads, based on testing according to ASTM E1592:
  1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
- H. Air Infiltration for Metal Roof Panels: Air leakage of not more than 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. (0.3 L/s per sq. m) when tested according to ASTM E1680 at the following test-pressure difference:
  1. Test-Pressure Difference: 1.57 lbf/sq. ft. (75 Pa).
- I. Air Infiltration for Metal Wall Panels: Air leakage of not more than 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. (0.3 L/s per sq. m) when tested according to ASTM E283 at the following test-pressure difference:
  1. Test-Pressure Difference: 1.57 lbf/sq. ft. (75 Pa).
- J. Water Penetration for Metal Roof Panels: No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E1646 at the following test-pressure difference:
  1. Test-Pressure Difference: 2.86 lbf/sq. ft. (137 Pa).
- K. Water Penetration for Metal Wall Panels: No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E331 at the following test-pressure difference:
  1. Test-Pressure Difference: 2.86 lbf/sq. ft. (137 Pa).
- L. Wind-Uplift Resistance: Provide metal roof panel assemblies that comply with UL 580 for wind-uplift-resistance class indicated.
  1. Uplift Rating: UL 90.

- M. Energy Performance: Provide roof panels according to one of the following when tested according to CRRC-1:
  - 1. Three-year, aged, solar reflectance of not less than 0.55 and emissivity of not less than 0.75.
  - 2. Three-year, aged, Solar Reflectance Index of not less than 64 when calculated according to ASTM E1980.
- N. Thermal Performance for Opaque Elements: Provide the following maximum U-factors and minimum R-values when tested according to ASTM C1363 or ASTM C518:
  - 1. Roof:
    - a. U-Factor: U-0.041.
    - b. R-Value: R-10 + R-19FC.
  - 2. Walls:
    - a. U-Factor: U-0.064.
    - b. R-Value: R-0 + R-13ci.

#### 2.4 STRUCTURAL-STEEL FRAMING

- A. Structural Steel: Comply with AISC 360, "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings."
- B. Bolted Connections: Comply with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts."
- C. Cold-Formed Steel: Comply with AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members" for design requirements and allowable stresses.
- D. Primary Framing: Manufacturer's standard primary-framing system, designed to withstand required loads and specified requirements. Primary framing includes transverse and lean-to frames; rafters, rake, and canopy beams; sidewall, intermediate, end-wall, and corner columns; and wind bracing.
  - 1. General: Provide frames with attachment plates, bearing plates, and splice members. Factory drill for field-bolted assembly. Provide frame span and spacing indicated.

Retain one of first five frames subparagraphs below.

- 2. Rigid Clear-Span Frames: I-shaped frame sections fabricated from shop-welded, built-up steel plates or structural-steel shapes. Interior columns are not permitted.
  - 3. Exterior Column: Tapered.
  - 4. Rafter: Tapered.
- E. End-Wall Framing: Manufacturer's standard primary end-wall framing fabricated for field-bolted assembly to comply with the following:

Retain "End-Wall and Corner Columns" Subparagraph below and delete "End-Wall Rafters" Subparagraph below if using full-load frames.

1. End-Wall and Corner Columns: I-shaped sections fabricated from structural-steel shapes; shop-welded, built-up steel plates; or C-shaped, cold-formed, structural-steel sheet.
- F. Secondary Framing: Manufacturer's standard secondary framing, including purlins, girts, eave struts, flange bracing, base members, gable angles, clips, headers, jambs, and other miscellaneous structural members. Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate framing from either cold-formed, structural-steel sheet or roll-formed, metallic-coated steel sheet, prepainted with coil coating, to comply with the following:
1. Purlins:

Retain one of first two subparagraphs below.

- a. C- or Z-shaped sections; fabricated from built-up steel plates, steel sheet, or structural-steel shapes; minimum 2-1/2-inch- (64-mm-) wide flanges.
- b. Steel joists of depths indicated on Drawings.

Retain depths in "Depth" Subparagraph below if manufacturer does not determine depths. Insert manufacturer's proprietary size if required.

- 1) Depth: **[As indicated on Drawings] [As needed to comply with system performance requirements] <Insert dimension>**.
2. Girts: C- or Z-shaped sections; fabricated from built-up steel plates, steel sheet, or structural-steel shapes. Form ends of Z-sections with stiffening lips angled 40 to 50 degrees from flange, with minimum 2-1/2-inch- (64-mm-) wide flanges.

Retain depths in "Depth" Subparagraph below if manufacturer does not determine depths. Insert manufacturer's proprietary size if required.

- a. Depth: As required to comply with system performance requirements.
3. Eave Struts: Unequal-flange, C-shaped sections; fabricated from built-up steel plates, steel sheet, or structural-steel shapes; to provide adequate backup for metal panels.
  4. Flange Bracing: Minimum 2-by-2-by-1/8-inch (51-by-51-by-3-mm) structural-steel angles or 1-inch- (25-mm-) diameter, cold-formed structural tubing to stiffen primary-frame flanges.
  5. Sag Bracing: Minimum 1-by-1-by-1/8-inch (25-by-25-by-3-mm) structural-steel angles.

Revise "Base or Sill Angles" Subparagraph below if channel shape is required instead of base angles.

6. Base or Sill Angles: Manufacturer's standard base angle, minimum 3-by-2-inch (76-by-51-mm), fabricated from zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet.
7. Purlin and Girt Clips: Manufacturer's standard clips fabricated from steel sheet. Provide galvanized clips where clips are connected to galvanized framing members.
8. Framing for Openings: Channel shapes; fabricated from cold-formed, structural-steel sheet or structural-steel shapes. Frame head and jamb of door openings and head, jamb, and sill of other openings.
9. Miscellaneous Structural Members: Manufacturer's standard sections fabricated from cold-formed, structural-steel sheet; built-up steel plates; or zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet; designed to withstand required loads.

- G. Canopy Framing: Manufacturer's standard structural-framing system, designed to withstand required loads; fabricated from shop-welded, built-up steel plates or structural-steel shapes. Provide frames with attachment plates and splice members, factory drilled for field-bolted assembly.

Retain one of four options in "Type" Subparagraph below. First option is a continuation of roof at eave; second is a continuation of roof over end wall; third is attached at sidewall or end wall, at or below eave.

1. Type: Straight-beam, eave type.

- H. Bracing: Provide adjustable wind bracing as follows:

1. Rigid Portal Frames: Fabricated from shop-welded, built-up steel plates or structural-steel shapes to match primary framing; of size required to withstand design loads.
2. Fixed-Base Columns: Fabricated from shop-welded, built-up steel plates or structural-steel shapes to match primary framing; of size required to withstand design loads.
3. Diaphragm Action of Metal Panels: Design metal building to resist wind forces through diaphragm action of metal panels.

Anchor rods in "Anchor Rods" Paragraph below are not supplied by metal building system manufacturers.

- I. Anchor Rods: Headed anchor rods as indicated in Anchor Rod Plan for attachment of metal building to foundation.

Retain and revise "Materials" Paragraph below to suit Project.

- J. Materials:

1. W-Shapes: ASTM A992/A992M; ASTM A572/A572M, Grade 50 or 55 (345 or 380); or ASTM A529/A529M, Grade 50 or 55 (345 or 380).
2. Channels, Angles, M-Shapes, and S-Shapes: ASTM A36/A36M; ASTM A572/A572M, Grade 50 or 55 (345 or 380); or ASTM A529/A529M, Grade 50 or 55 (345 or 380).
3. Plate and Bar: ASTM A36/A36M; ASTM A572/A572M, Grade 50 or 55 (345 or 380); or ASTM A529/A529M, Grade 50 or 55 (345 or 380).

Generally, retain "Steel Pipe" and "Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections" subparagraphs below only for interior columns.

4. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, Type E or S, Grade B.
5. Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: ASTM A500, Grade B or C, structural tubing.
6. Structural-Steel Sheet: Hot-rolled, ASTM A1011/A1011M, Structural Steel (SS), Grades 30 through 55 (205 through 380), or High-Strength Low-Alloy Steel (HSLAS) or High-Strength Low-Alloy Steel with Improved Formability (HSLAS-F), Grades 45 through 70 (310 through 480); or cold-rolled, ASTM A1008/A1008M, Structural Steel (SS), Grades 25 through 80 (170 through 550), or HSLAS, Grades 45 through 70 (310 through 480).
7. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, SS, Grades 33 through 80 (230 through 550), or HSLAS or HSLAS-F, Grades 50 through 80 (340 through 550); with G60 (Z180) coating designation; mill phosphatized.
8. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet Prepainted with Coil Coating: Steel sheet, metallic coated by the hot-dip process and prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A755/A755M.

- a. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, SS, Grades 33 through 80 (230 through 550), or HSLAS or HSLAS-F, Grades 50 through 80 (340 through 550); with G90 (Z275) coating designation.
  - b. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A792/A792M, SS, Grade 50 or 80 (340 or 550); with Class AZ50 (AZM150) coating.
9. Non-High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A307, Grade A, carbon-steel, hex-head bolts; ASTM A563 (ASTM A563M) carbon-steel hex nuts; and ASTM F844 plain (flat) steel washers.
  - a. Finish: Plain.

Retain "High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers, Grade A325 (Grade A325M)" or "High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers, Grade A490 (Grade A490M)" Subparagraph below.

10. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers, Grade A325 (Grade A325M): ASTM F3125/F3125M, Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A563, Grade DH, (ASTM A563M, Class 10S) heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F436/F436M, Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers.
  - a. Finish: Plain.

Retain appropriate materials in "Headed Anchor Rods" Subparagraph below or revise if other materials are required. AISC uses the generic term "anchor rods" to include unheaded rods and headed bolts. Plate washers are used with oversized baseplate holes to resist nut pull-through and to transfer shear from baseplate to anchor rod.

11. Headed Anchor Rods: ASTM F1554, Grade 36.
  - a. Configuration: Straight.
  - b. Nuts: ASTM A563 (ASTM A563M) [**heavy**]-hex carbon steel.
  - c. Plate Washers: ASTM A36/A36M carbon steel.
  - d. Washers: ASTM F436 (ASTM F436M) hardened carbon steel.
  - e. Finish: Plain.

K. Finish: Factory primed. Apply specified primer immediately after cleaning and pretreating.

1. Clean and prepare in accordance with SSPC-SP2.
2. Coat with manufacturer's standard primer. Apply primer to primary and secondary framing to a minimum dry film thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm).
  - a. Prime secondary framing formed from uncoated steel sheet to a minimum dry film thickness of 0.5 mil (0.013 mm) on each side.

## 2.5 METAL ROOF PANELS

- A. Standing-Seam, Vertical-Rib, Metal Roof Panels: Formed with vertical ribs at panel edges and intermediate stiffening ribs symmetrically spaced between ribs; designed for sequential installation by mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips located under one side of panels and engaging opposite edge of adjacent panels.

1. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.024-inch (0.61-mm) nominal uncoated steel thickness. Prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A755/A755M.
  - a. Exterior Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.
  - b. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
2. Clips: Two-piece floating to accommodate thermal movement.
3. Joint Type: Mechanically seamed.
4. Panel Coverage: 16 inches (406 mm).
5. Panel Height: 2 inches (51 mm).

B. Finishes:

1. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:
  - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

## 2.6 METAL WALL PANELS

- A. Concealed-Fastener, Flush-Profile, Metal Wall Panels: Formed with vertical panel edges and a single wide recess, centered between panel edges; with flush joint between panels; with 1-inch-(25-mm-) wide flange for attaching interior finish; designed to be installed by lapping and interconnecting side edges of adjacent panels and mechanically attaching through panel to supports using concealed fasteners[ **and factory-applied sealant**] in side laps.

1. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.024-inch (0.61-mm) nominal uncoated steel thickness. Prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A755/A755M.
  - a. Exterior Finish: Fluoropolymer.
  - b. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
2. Panel Coverage: 16 inches (406 mm).
3. Panel Height: 2 inches (76 mm).

B. Finishes:

1. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:
  - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

## 2.7 METAL SOFFIT PANELS

- A. General: Provide factory-formed metal soffit panels designed to be installed by lapping and interconnecting side edges of adjacent panels and mechanically attaching through panel to supports using concealed fasteners and factory-applied sealant in side laps. Include accessories required for weathertight installation.
- B. Metal Soffit Panels: Match profile and material of metal wall panels.
  - 1. Finish: As selected by Architect from Manufacturer's full range.

## 2.8 THERMAL INSULATION

- A. <Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>
- B. Unfaced Metal Building Insulation: ASTM C991, Type I, or NAIMA 202, glass-fiber-blanket insulation; 0.5-lb/cu. ft. (8-kg/cu. m) density; 2-inch- (51-mm-) wide, continuous, vapor-tight edge tabs; with a flame-spread index of 25 or less.

Retain "Retainer Strips" Paragraph below with insulation that is to be left exposed to the interior. Retainer strips hold insulation in place between supports.

- C. Retainer Strips: For securing insulation between supports, 0.025-inch (0.64-mm) nominal-thickness, formed, metallic-coated steel or PVC retainer clips colored to match insulation facing.

Vapor-retarder facing in "Vapor-Retarder Facing" Paragraph below for blanket insulation is often provided separately and may be laminated to insulation before arriving at Project site, or it may be installed concurrently with insulation. NAIMA recommends that metal building insulation have a vapor-retarder facing with a permeance not greater than 0.10 perm (5.75 ng/Pa x s x sq. m). Facing selection may also be affected by light reflectivity and cold-weather workability.

- D. Vapor-Retarder Facing: ASTM C1136, with permeance not greater than 0.02 perm (1.15 ng/Pa x s x sq. m) when tested according to ASTM E96/E96M, Desiccant Method.
  - 1. Composition:
    - a. White polypropylene film facing, fiberglass scrim reinforcement, and metallized-polyester film backing.
- E. Vapor-Retarder Tape: Pressure-sensitive tape of type recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in vapor retarder.

## 2.9 ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Provide accessories as standard with metal building system manufacturer and as specified. Fabricate and finish accessories at the factory to greatest extent possible, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.



1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil-canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
- B. Roof Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete metal roof panel assembly including copings, fasciae, corner units, ridge closures, clips, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal roof panels unless otherwise indicated.
1. Closures: Provide closures at eaves and ridges, fabricated of same material as metal roof panels.
  2. Clips: Manufacturer's standard, formed from steel or stainless steel sheet, designed to withstand negative-load requirements.
  3. Cleats: Manufacturer's standard, mechanically seamed cleats formed from steel or stainless steel sheet.
  4. Backing Plates: Provide metal backing plates at panel end splices, fabricated from material recommended by manufacturer.
  5. Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or crosslinked, polyolefin-foam or closed-cell laminated polyethylene; minimum 1-inch- (25-mm-) thick, flexible closure strips; cut or premolded to match metal roof panel profile. Provide closure strips where indicated or necessary to ensure weathertight construction.
  6. Thermal Spacer Blocks: Where metal panels attach directly to purlins, provide thermal spacer blocks of thickness required to provide 1-inch (25-mm) standoff; fabricated from extruded polystyrene.
- C. Wall Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete metal wall panel assembly including copings, fasciae, mullions, sills, corner units, clips, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal wall panels unless otherwise indicated.
1. Closures: Provide closures at eaves and rakes, fabricated of same material as metal wall panels.
  2. Backing Plates: Provide metal backing plates at panel end splices, fabricated from material recommended by manufacturer.
  3. Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or crosslinked, polyolefin-foam or closed-cell laminated polyethylene; minimum 1-inch- (25-mm-) thick, flexible closure strips; cut or premolded to match metal wall panel profile. Provide closure strips where indicated or necessary to ensure weathertight construction.
- D. Flashing and Trim: Zinc-coated (galvanized) or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.018-inch (0.46-mm) nominal uncoated steel thickness, prepainted with coil coating; finished to match adjacent metal panels.
1. Provide flashing and trim as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, eaves, rakes, corners, bases, framed openings, ridges, fasciae, and fillers.
  2. Opening Trim: Zinc-coated (galvanized) or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.030-inch (0.76-mm) nominal uncoated steel thickness, prepainted with coil coating. Trim head and jamb of door openings, and head, jamb, and sill of other openings.

- E. Gutters: Zinc-coated (galvanized) or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.018-inch (0.46-mm) nominal uncoated steel thickness, prepainted with coil coating; finished to match roof fascia and rake trim. Match profile of gable trim, complete with end pieces, outlet tubes, and other special pieces as required. Fabricate in minimum 96-inch- (2438-mm-) long sections, sized according to SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual."
  - 1. Gutter Supports: Fabricated from same material and finish as gutters.
  - 2. Strainers: Bronze, copper, or aluminum wire ball type at outlets.
- F. Downspouts: Zinc-coated (galvanized) or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.018-inch (0.46-mm) nominal uncoated steel thickness, prepainted with coil coating; finished to match metal wall panels. Fabricate in minimum 10-foot- (3-m-) long sections, complete with formed elbows and offsets.
  - 1. Mounting Straps: Fabricated from same material and finish as gutters.
- G. Materials:
  - 1. Fasteners: Self-tapping screws, bolts, nuts, self-locking rivets and bolts, end-welded studs, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads. Provide fasteners with heads matching color of materials being fastened by means of plastic caps or factory-applied coating.
  - 2. Fasteners for Metal Roof Panels:
    - a. Self-drilling, Type 410 stainless steel or self-tapping, Type 304 stainless steel or zinc-alloy-steel hex washer head, with EPDM washer under heads of fasteners bearing on weather side of metal panels.
  - 3. Fasteners for Metal Wall Panels:
    - a. Self-drilling, Type 410 stainless steel or self-tapping, Type 304 stainless steel or zinc-alloy-steel hex washer head, with EPDM sealing washers bearing on weather side of metal panels.
  - 4. Fasteners for Flashing and Trim: Blind fasteners or self-drilling screws with hex washer head.
  - 5. Blind Fasteners: High-strength aluminum or stainless steel rivets.
  - 6. Corrosion-Resistant Coating: Cold-applied asphalt mastic, compounded for 15-mil (0.4-mm) dry film thickness per coat. Provide inert-type noncorrosive compound free of asbestos fibers, sulfur components, and other deleterious impurities.
  - 7. Metal Panel Sealants:
    - a. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, gray polyisobutylene-compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape of manufacturer's standard size.
    - b. Joint Sealant: ASTM C920; one part elastomeric polyurethane or polysulfide; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended by metal building system manufacturer.

## 2.10 FABRICATION

- A. General: Design components and field connections required for erection to permit easy assembly.
  - 1. Mark each piece and part of the assembly to correspond with previously prepared erection drawings, diagrams, and instruction manuals.
  - 2. Fabricate structural framing to produce clean, smooth cuts and bends. Punch holes of proper size, shape, and location. Members to be free of cracks, tears, and ruptures.
- B. Tolerances: Comply with MBMA's "Metal Building Systems Manual" for fabrication and erection tolerances.
- C. Primary Framing: Shop fabricate framing components to indicated size and section, with baseplates, bearing plates, stiffeners, and other items required for erection welded into place. Cut, form, punch, drill, and weld framing for bolted field assembly.
  - 1. Make shop connections by welding or by using high-strength bolts.
  - 2. Join flanges to webs of built-up members by a continuous, submerged arc-welding process.
  - 3. Brace compression flange of primary framing with steel angles or cold-formed structural tubing between frame web and purlin web or girt web, so flange compressive strength is within allowable limits for any combination of loadings.
  - 4. Weld clips to frames for attaching secondary framing if applicable, or punch for bolts.
  - 5. Shop Priming: Prepare surfaces for shop priming according to SSPC-SP 2. Shop prime primary framing with specified primer after fabrication.
- D. Secondary Framing: Shop fabricate framing components to indicated size and section by roll forming or break forming, with baseplates, bearing plates, stiffeners, and other plates required for erection welded into place. Cut, form, punch, drill, and weld secondary framing for bolted field connections to primary framing.
  - 1. Make shop connections by welding or by using non-high-strength bolts.
  - 2. Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated surfaces for shop priming according to SSPC-SP 2. Shop prime uncoated secondary framing with specified primer after fabrication.
- E. Metal Panels: Fabricate and finish metal panels at the factory to greatest extent possible, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
  - 1. Provide panel profile, including major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs, if any, for full length of metal panel.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with erector present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

- B. Before erection proceeds, survey elevations and locations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments to receive structural framing, with erector present, for compliance with requirements and metal building system manufacturer's tolerances.
  - 1. Engage land surveyor to perform surveying.
- C. Proceed with erection only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- D. Verify metal building system is completed prior to installing insulation system.
- E. Proceed with insulation system installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean and prepare surfaces to be painted according to manufacturer's written instructions for each particular substrate condition.
- B. Provide temporary shores, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep structural framing secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loads and loads equal in intensity to design loads. Remove temporary supports when permanent structural framing, connections, and bracing are in place unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.3 ERECTION OF STRUCTURAL FRAMING

- A. Erect metal building system according to manufacturer's written instructions and drawings.
- B. Do not field cut, drill, or alter structural members without written approval from metal building system manufacturer's professional engineer.
- C. Set structural framing accurately in locations and to elevations indicated, according to AISC specifications referenced in this Section. Maintain structural stability of frame during erection.
- D. Base and Bearing Plates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting plates. Clean bottom surface of plates.
  - 1. Set plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.
  - 2. Tighten anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of plate before packing with grout.
  - 3. Promptly pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for shrinkage-resistant grouts.
- E. Align and adjust structural framing before permanently fastening. Before assembly, clean bearing surfaces and other surfaces that will be in permanent contact with framing. Perform necessary adjustments to compensate for discrepancies in elevations and alignment.
  - 1. Level and plumb individual members of structure.

2. Make allowances for difference between temperature at time of erection and mean temperature when structure will be completed and in service.
- F. Primary Framing and End Walls: Erect framing level, plumb, rigid, secure, and true to line. Level baseplates to a true even plane with full bearing to supporting structures, set with double-nutted anchor bolts. Use grout to obtain uniform bearing and to maintain a level base-line elevation. Moist-cure grout for not less than seven days after placement.
1. Make field connections using high-strength bolts installed according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts" for bolt type and joint type specified.
    - a. Joint Type: Snug tightened or pretensioned as required by manufacturer.
- G. Secondary Framing: Erect framing level, plumb, rigid, secure, and true to line. Field bolt secondary framing to clips attached to primary framing.
1. Provide rake or gable purlins with tight-fitting closure channels and fasciae.
  2. Locate and space wall girts to suit openings such as doors and windows.
  3. Provide supplemental framing at entire perimeter of openings, including doors, windows, louvers, ventilators, and other penetrations of roof and walls.

Retain "Steel Joists ( and Joist Girders)" Paragraph below if steel joist purlins or joist girders are required; otherwise, delete.

- H. Steel Joists[ **and Joist Girders**]: Install joists, girders, and accessories plumb, square, and true to line; securely fasten to supporting construction according to SJI's "Standard Specifications and Load Tables for Steel Joists and Joist Girders," joist manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.
1. Before installation, splice joists delivered to Project site in more than one piece.
  2. Space, adjust, and align joists accurately in location before permanently fastening.
  3. Install temporary bracing and erection bridging, connections, and anchors to ensure that joists are stabilized during construction.
  4. Joint Installation:

Retain one of first three subparagraphs below.

- a. Bolt joists to supporting steel framework using carbon-steel bolts unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Bolt joists to supporting steel framework using high-strength structural bolts unless otherwise indicated. Comply with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts" for high-strength structural bolt installation and tightening requirements.
  - c. Weld joist seats to supporting steel framework.
5. Install and connect bridging concurrently with joist erection, before construction loads are applied. Anchor ends of bridging lines at top and bottom chords if terminating at walls or beams.
- I. Bracing: Install bracing in roof and sidewalls where indicated on erection drawings.

1. Tighten rod and cable bracing to avoid sag.
  2. Locate interior end-bay bracing only where indicated.
- J. Framing for Openings: Provide shapes of proper design and size to reinforce openings and to carry loads and vibrations imposed, including equipment furnished under mechanical and electrical work. Securely attach to structural framing.
- K. Erection Tolerances: Maintain erection tolerances of structural framing within AISC 303.

### 3.4 METAL PANEL INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Fabricate and finish metal panels and accessories at the factory, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
- B. On-Site Fabrication: Subject to compliance with requirements of this Section, metal panels may be fabricated on-site using UL-certified, portable roll-forming equipment if panels are of same profile and warranted by manufacturer to be equal to factory-formed panels. Fabricate according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and to comply with details shown.
- C. Examination: Examine primary and secondary framing to verify that structural-panel support members and anchorages have been installed within alignment tolerances required by manufacturer.
1. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal panels, to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seams before metal panel installation.
- D. General: Anchor metal panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
1. Field cut metal panels as required for doors, windows, and other openings. Cut openings as small as possible, neatly to size required, and without damage to adjacent metal panel finishes.
    - a. Field cutting of metal panels by torch is not permitted unless approved in writing by manufacturer.
  2. Install metal panels perpendicular to structural supports unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Flash and seal metal panels with weather closures at perimeter of openings and similar elements. Fasten with self-tapping screws.
  4. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
  5. Locate metal panel splices over structural supports with end laps in alignment.
  6. Lap metal flashing over metal panels to allow moisture to run over and off the material.
- E. Lap-Seam Metal Panels: Install screw fasteners using power tools with controlled torque adjusted to compress EPDM washers tightly without damage to washers, screw threads, or metal panels. Install screws in predrilled holes.

1. Arrange and nest side-lap joints so prevailing winds blow over, not into, lapped joints. Lap ribbed or fluted sheets one full rib corrugation. Apply metal panels and associated items for neat and weathertight enclosure. Avoid "panel creep" or application not true to line.
- F. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with corrosion-resistant coating, by applying rubberized-asphalt underlayment to each contact surface, or by other permanent separation as recommended by metal roof panel manufacturer.
- G. Joint Sealers: Install gaskets, joint fillers, and sealants where indicated and where required for weatherproof performance of metal panel assemblies. Provide types of gaskets, fillers, and sealants indicated; or, if not indicated, provide types recommended by metal panel manufacturer.
1. Seal metal panel end laps with double beads of tape or sealant the full width of panel. Seal side joints where recommended by metal panel manufacturer.
  2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

### 3.5 METAL ROOF PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. General: Provide metal roof panels of full length from eave to ridge unless otherwise indicated or restricted by shipping limitations.
1. Install ridge and hip caps as metal roof panel work proceeds.
  2. Flash and seal metal roof panels with weather closures at eaves and rakes. Fasten with self-tapping screws.
- B. Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panels: Fasten metal roof panels to supports with concealed clips at each standing-seam joint, at location and spacing and with fasteners recommended by manufacturer.
1. Install clips to supports with self-drilling or self-tapping fasteners.
  2. Install pressure plates at locations indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
  3. Seamed Joint: Crimp standing seams with manufacturer-approved motorized seamer tool so that clip, metal roof panel, and factory-applied sealant are completely engaged.
  4. Rigidly fasten eave end of metal roof panels and allow ridge end free movement for thermal expansion and contraction. Predrill panels for fasteners.
  5. Provide metal closures at peaks rake edges rake walls and each side of ridge and hip caps.
- C. Metal Roof Panel Installation Tolerances: Shim and align metal roof panels within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m) on slope and location lines and within 1/8-inch (3-mm) offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

### 3.6 METAL WALL PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install metal wall panels in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated on Drawings. Install panels perpendicular to girts, extending full height of building, unless otherwise indicated. Anchor metal wall panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
  - 1. Unless otherwise indicated, begin metal panel installation at corners with center of rib lined up with line of framing.
  - 2. Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving metal wall panels.
  - 3. When two rows of metal panels are required, lap panels 4 inches (102 mm) minimum.
  - 4. When building height requires two rows of metal panels at gable ends, align lap of gable panels over metal wall panels at eave height.
  - 5. Rigidly fasten base end of metal wall panels and allow eave end free movement for thermal expansion and contraction. Predrill panels.
  - 6. Flash and seal metal wall panels with weather closures at eaves and rakes, and at perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws.
  - 7. Install screw fasteners in predrilled holes.
  - 8. Install flashing and trim as metal wall panel work proceeds.
  - 9. Apply elastomeric sealant continuously between metal base channel (sill angle) and concrete, and elsewhere as indicated on Drawings; if not indicated, as necessary for waterproofing.
  - 10. Align bottom of metal wall panels and fasten with blind rivets, bolts, or self-drilling or self-tapping screws.
  - 11. Provide weatherproof escutcheons for pipe and conduit penetrating exterior walls.
- B. Metal Wall Panels: Install metal wall panels on exterior side of girts. Attach metal wall panels to supports with fasteners as recommended by manufacturer.
- C. Insulated Metal Wall Panels: Install insulated metal wall panels on exterior side of girts. Attach panels to supports at each panel joint using concealed clip and fasteners at maximum 42 inches (1067 mm) o.c., spaced not more than manufacturer's recommendation. Fully engage tongue and groove of adjacent insulated metal wall panels.
  - 1. Install clips to supports with self-tapping fasteners.
  - 2. Apply continuous ribbon of sealant to panel joint on concealed side of insulated metal wall panels as vapor seal; apply sealant to panel joint on exposed side of panels as weather seal.
- D. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align metal wall panels within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m), noncumulative; level, plumb, and on location lines; and within 1/8-inch (3-mm) offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

### 3.7 METAL SOFFIT PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. Provide metal soffit panels the full width of soffits. Install panels perpendicular to support framing.
- B. Flash and seal metal soffit panels with weather closures where panels meet walls and at perimeter of all openings.



### 3.8 THERMAL INSULATION INSTALLATION

Retain this article if insulation is required; delete if using only factory-assembled, insulated metal panels.

- A. General: Install insulation concurrently with metal panel installation, in thickness indicated to cover entire surface, according to manufacturer's written instructions.

Retain first two subparagraphs below if units are furnished with vapor-retarder faces.

1. Set vapor-retarder-faced units with vapor retarder toward warm side of construction unless otherwise indicated. Do not obstruct ventilation spaces except for firestopping.
2. Tape joints and ruptures in vapor retarder, and seal each continuous area of insulation to the surrounding construction to ensure airtight installation.

Retain one of two subparagraphs below. First is for insulation with factory-installed facings; second is for field-installed facings.

3. Install factory-laminated, vapor-retarder-faced blankets straight and true in one-piece lengths, with both sets of facing tabs sealed, to provide a complete vapor retarder.
4. Install blankets straight and true in one-piece lengths. Install vapor retarder over insulation, with both sets of facing tabs sealed, to provide a complete vapor retarder.

- B. Blanket Roof Insulation: Comply with the following installation method:

"Two-Layers-between-Purlin-with-Spacer-Block Installation" Subparagraph below accommodates thicker insulation with no compression.

1. Two-Layers-between-Purlin-with-Spacer-Block Installation: Extend insulation and vapor retarder between purlins. Carry vapor-retarder-facing tabs up and over purlin, overlapping adjoining facing of next insulation course and maintaining continuity of retarder. Install layer of filler insulation over first layer to fill space between purlins formed by thermal spacer blocks. Hold in place with bands and crossbands below insulation.
  - a. Thermal Spacer Blocks: Where metal roof panels attach directly to purlins, install thermal spacer blocks.
2. Retainer Strips: Install retainer strips at each longitudinal insulation joint, straight and taut, nesting with secondary framing to hold insulation in place.

Retain "Blanket Wall Insulation" or "Board Wall Insulation" Paragraph below for walls.

- C. Blanket Wall Insulation: Extend insulation and vapor retarder over and perpendicular to top flange of secondary framing. Hold in place by metal wall panels fastened to secondary framing.
1. Retainer Strips: Install retainer strips at each longitudinal insulation joint, straight and taut, nesting with secondary framing to hold insulation in place.

### 3.9 ACCESSORY INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting, and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.

1. Install components required for a complete metal roof panel assembly, including trim, copings, ridge closures, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items.
  2. Install components for a complete metal wall panel assembly, including trim, copings, corners, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items.
  3. Where dissimilar metals contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with corrosion-resistant coating, by applying rubberized-asphalt underlayment to each contact surface, or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight and weather resistant.
1. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without excessive oil-canning, buckling, and tool marks and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in waterproof and weather-resistant performance.
  2. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet (3 m) with no joints allowed within 24 inches (600 mm) of corner or intersection. Where lapped or bayonet-type expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently weather resistant and waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch (25 mm) deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).
- C. Gutters: Join sections with riveted-and-soldered or lapped-and-sealed joints. Attach gutters to eave with gutter hangers spaced as required for gutter size, but not more than 36 inches (914 mm) o.c. using manufacturer's standard fasteners. Provide end closures and seal watertight with sealant. Provide for thermal expansion.
- D. Downspouts: Join sections with 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) telescoping joints. Provide fasteners designed to hold downspouts securely 1 inch (25 mm) away from walls; locate fasteners at top and bottom and at approximately 60 inches (1524 mm) o.c. in between.
1. Tie downspouts to underground drainage system indicated.
- 3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified special inspector to perform field quality control special inspections and to submit reports.
  - B. Product will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
  - C. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- 3.11 CLEANING AND PROTECTION
- A. Repair damaged galvanized coatings on galvanized items with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A780/A780M and manufacturer's written instructions.

- B. Remove and replace glass that has been broken, chipped, cracked, abraded, or damaged during construction period.
- C. Touchup Painting:
  - 1. After erection, promptly clean, prepare, and prime or reprime field connections, rust spots, and abraded surfaces of prime-painted structural framing, bearing plates, and accessories.
    - a. Clean and prepare surfaces by SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning," or by SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
    - b. Apply a compatible primer of same type as shop primer used on adjacent surfaces.
  - 2. Cleaning and touchup painting are specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
- D. Metal Panels: Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal panels are installed. On completion of metal panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
  - 1. Replace metal panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 133419

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 210000 – FIRE PROTECTION

### 210001 GENERAL

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this section.
- B. Contractor shall provide coordination drawings per Division 1.
- C. Fire Protection work shall be performed as outlined in “Information for Bidders”.
- D. These specifications and the accompanying fire protection drawings are intended to provide for all labor, materials and equipment necessary for the installation of a complete
  - 1. Wet-pipe sprinkler systemand accessories including necessary apparatus, valves and fittings hereinafter described or called for on the fire protection drawings accompanying these specifications.
- E. All fire protection work shall be installed in accordance with the following Codes and all Local Ordinances. Codes shall be latest editions approved by the NC Building Code Council with North Carolina amendments. Materials, equipment and workmanship shall be as hereinafter specified.
  - 1. North Carolina State Building Code
  - 2. North Carolina State Fire Prevention Code
  - 3. NFPA 70
  - 4. NFPA 13
- F. All products used as part of the installation of the fire sprinkler system shall be Underwriter’s Laboratories (UL) or Factory Mutual (F.M.) approved as required by NFPA 13.
- G. This contractor shall secure all required permits and inspection fees necessary for this work. Permits may be secured from the Building Inspections Department.
- H. The accompanying drawings are schematic only and are not intended to show all fittings, couplings, hangers, offsets, etc., unless specifically dimensioned. The layout shown on the drawings is a conceptual layout only. This contractor shall provide complete installation drawings for the sprinkler systems defined herein, per the Contract Drawings and these specifications. Provide all adjustments as necessary to conform to the structural conditions, machinery, equipment, work of other contractors and the intent of the drawings, without additional cost to the Owner. Fire protection consultant drawings should not be scaled. Secure dimensions from Architectural drawings. Refer to drawings of other trades and coordinate with other contractors. All equipment shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s published installation instructions and diagrams.
- I. The Contractor shall coordinate the exact location of incoming sprinkler riser rough-in with Division 33, and all other trades.

## 210002 SCOPE OF WORK

- A. The Contractor shall be required to perform all the following work, in general and provide a complete fire sprinkler system(s) as shown on the plans. This Contractor's scope of work begins at the sprinkler riser rough-in(s) provided by others, approximately one foot above the finished floor. The items in general are to be as follows:
1. Furnish and install complete wet-pipe sprinkler system as shown on the fire protection drawings and here-in specified.
  2. Sprinkler Contractor is responsible for acquiring flow test data, less than one year old, from the local Fire Department, local Water Department, or by performing a flow test. Contractor shall coordinate with and get approval of date, time, and location of flow test from the local Fire Department.

## 210003 LIST OF MATERIALS, FIXTURES AND EQUIPMENT

- A. Sprinkler system design submittal, including shop drawings, hydraulic calculations, and materials, shall be performed by a Professional Engineer registered in the State of North Carolina, or an individual who has Level III or IV certification from the National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies (NICET) in Fire Protection Engineering Technology: Water-Based Systems Layout in accordance with NICET 1014.
- B. The Sprinkler Contractor shall obtain written approval from the Engineer/Architect for the use of substitute materials claimed as equal to those specified. Such approvals must be obtained as soon after contract awards as possible and before any materials are ordered. Applications for approvals shall be made by the Sprinkler Contractor and not by subcontractors or manufacturer's representative. The Sprinkler Contractor shall submit within ten days following award of contract and written notice to begin the work a complete list of materials proposed for the job. All like items shall be by the same manufacturer. When this list is approved, no further substitutions will be permitted except in unusual or extenuating circumstances. If no list is submitted, the Sprinkler Contractor shall supply materials specified. The Sprinkler Contractor shall review and stamp the submittals as being in accordance with his or her bid and these specifications.
- C. The Sprinkler Contractor shall submit a set of installation plan drawings to the Architect before any materials, and equipment to be incorporated in the work has been ordered. **FAXED COPIES WILL NOT BE ACCEPTABLE.** Installation plan drawings shall include:
1. Hydraulic design data, including remote area designation(s), and locations of nodes.
  2. Flow test data.
  3. All piping, included mains, cross mains, branches, and armovers with sizes indicated.
  4. Locations of couplings on grooved piping.
  5. Location of Riser(s).
  6. Riser Details.
  7. Hanger Details.
  8. Locations of sprinkler heads.
  9. Sprinkler head legend, indicating the manufacturer and model number of each type of sprinkler head.
  10. Location of backflow preventer.
  11. Location of fire department connection and associated check valve.
  12. Location of backflow preventer test header.

13. Location of inspector's test connection(s).
  14. Location of auxiliary drains.
  15. Locations of seismic bracing, as well as seismic bracing details, as applicable.
  16. Site diagram indicating water supply piping location, sizes, and hydraulic calculation nodes.
  17. Preparer's NICET Certification ID or Professional Engineer Seal.
  18. Coordination Drawings per Division 1.
- D. The Sprinkler Contractor shall submit seismic bracing calculations.
- E. The Sprinkler Contractor shall submit a set of hydraulic calculations to the Architect before any materials, and equipment to be incorporated in the work has been ordered. Hydraulic Calculations shall be performed using computer-based software, such as HydraCALC or HASS. **FAXED COPIES WILL NOT BE ACCEPTABLE.** Hydraulic Calculations shall include:
1. Required water density and size of remote area(s), in accordance with NFPA and the Authority Having Jurisdiction.
  2. Pressure and flow required for the system(s) to operate properly (after hose allowance has been added).
  3. Flow test data. Sprinkler Contractor shall reduce the static pressure, residual pressure, and flow by 10% when performing hydraulic calculations, per the AHJ.
  4. Node by node analysis of required pressure, required flow, friction losses, and elevation.
  5. Flow vs. pressure curves, indicating that sprinkler system demand curve(s) are sufficiently below flow test curve.
- F. The Sprinkler Contractor shall submit a set of manufacturer's submittal data to the Architect before any materials, and equipment to be incorporated in the work has been ordered. **All sprinkler system components shall be UL listed and/or FM approved as required by NFPA 13.** Shop drawings shall include the name and address of the manufacturer and their catalog numbers and trade names clearly marked. All items shall be referenced to the specifications by **specification paragraph number on an index tab**. One complete set of submittal data shall be manufacturer's original published material. **FAXED COPIES WILL NOT BE ACCEPTABLE.** Approval of materials will be based upon the manufacturer's published ratings. Submit shop drawings and/or catalog data for the following material and equipment:
1. Sprinkler Heads
  2. Piping, Fittings, and Couplings
  3. Valves
  4. Gauges
  5. Hangers
  6. Seismic Bracing
  7. Riser Check Valve
  8. Flow Switch
  9. Backflow Preventer Test Header
- G. Approval of shop drawings and/or submittal data shall not relieve the Sprinkler Contractor of the responsibility to comply with the requirements and intent of the plans and specifications with regard to dimensions, capacities, quality, quantity, performance characteristics, etc. If data submitted deviates from the contract documents, the Sprinkler Contractor shall point out such deviations in writing and also state reasons for same. All similar items shall insofar as possible

be one make and manufacturer. **MANUFACTURER'S MODEL NUMBERS LISTED WITHIN DIVISION 21 SPECIFICATIONS ARE PROVIDED FOR GENERAL INFORMATION ONLY.** Description of product shall take precedence over model numbers.

- H. Prior to submitting equipment information, the Contractor shall field verify all necessary dimensions to ensure that all equipment will fit within designated rooms and/or spaces with proper clearances.
- I. Failure to submit materials, equipment, etc., the Architect shall assume that all items shall be installed as specified.

#### 210004 WORKMANSHIP

A. Layout:

- 1. Furnish and install all necessary sleeves, inserts, etc., for walls and partitions. Failure to install such items in time to avoid delaying the general contractor shall result in the Contractor doing all cutting and repairing at his or her own expense.
- 2. Conceal piping above ceilings. Where piping is installed in areas without ceilings, coordinate with all other exposed items.
- 3. Provide sprinkler protection below all obstructions 4'-0" and wider per NFPA 13.
- 4. The General Contractor shall paint exposed piping per Division 9 to match surroundings. Sprinkler heads shall not be painted. Any sprinkler head that is painted shall be removed and replaced.
- 5. All equipment shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's installation written instructions.
- 6. All equipment shall be installed such that components do not provide a safety hazard to occupants who come within a close proximity.

B. All equipment and components located on site shall be protected from the weather and damage from construction equipment.

C. Wet-pipe sprinkler system piping:

- 1. Piping shall be installed level, without slope, unless otherwise indicated on Contract Drawings.
  - a. Exception: Piping installed immediately below sloped roofs shall match the slope of the roof.
  - b. If sloped piping causes water to be trapped from draining in quantities exceeding 5 gallons, an auxiliary drain shall be provided in an accessible location.
- 2. Run all piping as directly as possible, avoiding unnecessary bends and turns so as not to interfere with proper installation of work of other contractors.
- 3. All piping shall be routed with a minimum clearance of ten (10) feet from any electrical switchboards, panels, panel boards, telephone backboards, or any other energized components.
- 4. Piping shall be concealed in walls, or above ceilings, unless otherwise indicated on Contract Drawings.



- a. No sprinkler piping shall be covered or concealed until inspected by the Authority Having Jurisdiction, and tested and approved by the Architect.
5. Piping shall not be installed underground.
6. Sprinkler heads shall be installed in the center of ceiling tiles.
7. Sprinkler heads shall be installed on armovers to allow their locations to be adjusted to the center of ceiling tiles.
8. Support horizontal black steel pipe with hangers located every 12 feet for piping 1-1/4" or smaller and every 15 feet for all piping 1-1/2" or larger.
9. Armovers longer than 24" shall be supported by hangers per NFPA 13.

#### 210005 CUTTING, PATCHING AND CHASING

- A. All cutting and patching shall be in accordance with the "General Conditions" of these specifications.

#### 210006 SEISMIC RESTRAINTS

- A. The Contractor shall be responsible for providing restraints to resist the earthquake effects on the sprinkler system(s), per NFPA, local codes, and the Authority Having Jurisdiction. Restraints shall be per Seismic Design Category C.
- B. The Contractor shall retain the services of a Professional Engineer registered in the State of North Carolina, or an individual who has Level III or IV certification from the National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies (NICET), to design seismic restraint elements required for this project. The engineer's (or NICET-certified individual's) computations, bearing his or her professional seal or NICET Certification Number, shall accompany shop drawings that show Code compliance. Computations and shop drawings shall be submitted for review prior to the purchasing of materials, equipment, systems and assemblies.
- C. The Professional Engineer (or NICET-certified individual) retained by the Contractor for seismic restraint calculations, shall visit the job site upon completion of the seismic restraint installation. This engineer (or NICET-certified individual) shall provide in writing verification of compliance with the approved seismic submittal. This verification shall bear the Engineer's (or NICET-certified individual's) professional seal or NICET Certification Number. Job site inspections by other than this engineer (or NICET-certified individual) is not acceptable.
- D. Review of the seismic design and shop drawings by the Engineer/Architect or their agent shall not relieve the Contractor of his or her responsibility to comply with the seismic or any other requirements of the North Carolina State Building Code.

#### 210007 WET-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

- A. Piping:
  1. Sprinkler piping 2" and smaller (minimum 1") shall be Schedule 40 threaded black steel, conforming to ASTM A 795 and ANSI/ASTM A 53.

2. Sprinkler piping 2-1/2" and larger shall be Schedule 10 roll grooved black steel, conforming to ASTM A 795 and ASTM A 135.

B. Fittings:

1. Fittings for threaded black steel piping shall be cast iron threaded fittings.
2. Fittings for grooved black steel piping shall be ductile iron grooved fittings conforming to ASTM A 536. Fittings shall be joined with rigid ductile iron couplings.

C. Riser:

1. Riser check valve shall have grooved connections and be rated for 250 psi, with upstream and downstream pressure gauges, and main drain valve piped to exterior of the building.
2. Electric vane-type water flow alarm switch shall consist of a U bolt and saddle with non-corrosive insert for mounting to the pipe, a non-corrosive vane and trip stem assembly for detecting waterflow and a retard time delayed switch to prevent false alarms from water surges. Waterflow switch enclosures shall be NEMA 4 rated and shall be held captive by tamper resistant screws. It shall be possible to install an optional cover tamper switch to detect removal of the enclosure. The device shall be listed for pressures up to 450 psi, maximum water surges of 18 fps and alarm activation by 10gpm. Activation shall be accomplished by the continuous flow of water against a non-corrosive paddle attached to a non-corrosive stem operating a field replaceable instantly recycling adjustable retard with a 0-90 second range and visual indication of activation. Expiration of the retard time shall result in the simultaneous operation of two sets of single pole double throw (SPDT) switch contacts rated at 10A, 125VAC and 2A, 30VDC. Each switch contact shall have a separate wiring chamber and separate conduit entrance to comply with the separation of power limited and non-power limited conductors without the need for special wire or wire methods.
3. Control Valves shall be ductile iron butterfly valves with grooved ends.
4. Alarm bell shall have under dome strikers and operating mechanisms. Gong shall have an operating voltage of 24VDC. Bell shall be surface mounted on exterior of building and have weatherproofed electrical box.

210008 HANGERS

- A. Hangers for vertical piping shall be the Riser Clamp design.
- B. Hangers for horizontal piping shall be hanger rings attached to top beam clamps using 3/8" threaded rod. Top beam clamps shall only be attached to the top portion of structural members. All hangers shall permit adequate adjustment after erection while still supporting the load.
- C. Trapeze hangers are allowed only where it is necessary due to the required piping layout and structure.
- D. Trapeze hangers shall attach to the structure using top beam clamps located on both sides of trapeze hanger. Top beam clamps shall only be attached to the top portion of structural members.
- E. Hangers shall not attach to floor slabs using "drop-in" anchors.

- F. Hangers **SHALL NOT** be fastened to joist bridging or roof deck.

210009 VALVES

- A. Valves not specified elsewhere in Division 21 shall be UL listed and/or FM approved as required by NFPA 13, and shall be listed specifically for fire protection service.

210010 PIPE SLEEVES, PLATES, ESCUTCHEONS, ETC.

- A. Pipe sleeves shall be standard weight schedule 40 black steel. All sleeves shall be equal to construction thickness except that pipe sleeves passing through floors above grade, shall extend 3/4" above the finished floor. Pipe sleeve sizes shall be sized two pipe sizes larger than piping passing thru the sleeve.
- B. Piping thru non-fire rated walls, floors above slab on grade or ceilings shall have sleeves installed concentric and centered on pipe. Ream all sleeves to prevent cutting of piping. The Contractor shall furnish shop drawings to the general contractor and the Architect showing location, dimensions, and sizes of holes required.
- C. Install escutcheons snug against room finish on all exposed pipe passing through walls, floors above slab on grade or ceilings. Use cup type escutcheons at floors where sleeves extend above finished floors. Escutcheons shall be chrome plated steel with spring clip as by Keeny, Connecticut Stamping and Bending Company of Dearborne.
- D. Core drill openings for all floor openings may be utilized in lieu of sleeved openings. All openings shall be sized two pipe sizes larger than pipe passing thru the opening. All cored openings shall be fireproofed as required and shall be made water tight.
- E. All penetrations in rated floors, firewalls and any other rated separations shall be protected using a through-penetration firestopping method with an "F" rating equivalent to the rating of the membrane being penetrated for particular piping materials used and membrane construction type. Floor penetrations shall additionally have a "T" rating equivalent to the rating of the floor being penetrated. Through-penetration firestop systems shall be installed and tested in accordance with ASTM E814 or UL 1479 with a minimum positive pressure differential 0.01 inch w.g. All openings through horizontal fire separations shall be protected by Metacaulk U.L. Systems or approved U.L. listed system by other manufacturers.
- F. All openings through floors and vertical fire separations shall be protected by combination water seal and fire stops as manufactured by Presealed Systems or approved equal by Proset, or approved equal by Metacaulk or 3M.

210011 SPRINKLER SYSTEM IDENTIFICATION:

- A. Each individual riser shall be marked with a metal hydraulic placard containing the following data:
1. Location of area protected by riser.
  2. Total number of sprinkler heads connected to riser.

3. Design density and design area, as approved.
  4. Required flow rate and pressure at the base of the riser, as approved.
- B. Each Fire Department Connection, Inspector's Test, and Auxiliary Drain shall be clearly labeled with corrosion-resistant metal signage. Signs shall be white with red letters.

#### 210012 SPRINKLER HEADS

- A. Sprinkler head types shall be as indicated on the Contract Drawings, and shall be listed for the proposed application.
- B. All sprinkler heads shall be quick response type, unless otherwise indicated on the Contract Drawings.
- C. All sprinkler heads shall be glass bulb type.
- D. Sprinkler heads shall have ordinary temperature classification, unless otherwise indicated on the Contract Drawings, or required by NFPA 13.
- E. K-Factor of sprinkler heads shall be 5.6 or 8.0.
- F. Provide spare sprinkler head cabinet with a spare sprinkler heads of each type installed within the building, as required by NFPA 13. Provide at least one wrench of each type required.

#### 210013 PROTECTION OF WORK AND EQUIPMENT

- A. The Contractor shall be responsible for all work damaged by him or her. Any fire sprinkler system work damaged by any other contractor shall be replaced by the Contractor and placed in perfect working condition without extra cost to the Owner. All sprinkler heads, valves, pipe, fittings, and equipment shall be adequately protected before, during and after installation.
- B. The Contractor shall be responsible for all sprinkler heads, valves, pipe, fittings, and equipment at time of final inspection. Any broken items will be replaced by the Contractor at no cost to the owner regardless of by whom the item was broken.

#### 210014 TESTING

- A. The Contractor shall notify the Engineer forty-eight (48) hours in advance of all tests. The Contractor shall make all necessary preliminary tests to ensure a functional system, which shall include flushing, testing, and inspection of sprinkler systems according to NFPA 13, "Systems Acceptance" Chapter.
- B. All tests shall be applied before any work is concealed or covered in any manner.
- C. All tests shall be conducted with regard to safety of all personnel on site.
- D. The Authority Having Jurisdiction shall be alerted to and invited to witness all Division 21 tests.

E. Preliminary Tests:

1. All sprinkler piping shall be made tight under a hydrostatic test pressure of 50 psi greater than the required design pressure, or 200 psi, whichever is greater. Hydrostatic test pressure shall be maintained without pressure loss for a minimum of two (2) hours. No caulking of joints will be permitted. Test pressure shall be read from a gauge located at the low elevation point of the system that is under test pressure. Any joint found to leak under this test shall be broken, remade and a new test applied.
2. Waterflow detecting devices, including associated alarm circuits, shall be flow tested using the inspector's test connection. Alarm bell must be audible on premises within five (5) minutes of fully opening inspector's test connection. Each water-operated alarm device shall be tested to verify proper operation.
3. Each tamper switch shall be tested by operating the associated valve.
4. Following flushing of the underground piping, a main drain test shall be made to verify the adequacy of the water supply. Static and residual pressures shall be recorded and submitted. In addition, a main drain test shall be conducted each time after a main control valve is shut and opened.
5. Energize circuits to electrical equipment and devices.
6. Verify that equipment hose threads are same as local fire department equipment.
7. Main drain valves shall be opened until the system pressure stabilizes.
8. All control valves shall be fully opened and closed under system water pressure to ensure proper operation.
9. All alarms, supervisory signals, and trouble signals that are related to the sprinkler system shall be activated and verified.

F. A final acceptance test shall be conducted, only after all above tests have been successfully conducted and reports have been submitted and approved, in which a technician employed by the installing Sprinkler Contractor shall provide a complete demonstration of the operation of the system. This demonstration shall include operation of control valves and flowing of inspector's test connections to verify operation of associated waterflow alarm switches, as well as a subsequent main drain test to verify that the control valves are in the open position. The technician shall have a copy of all "as-built" drawings, as well as certificates of previously conducted tests listed above. The sprinkler system installation shall not be considered accepted until as identified problems have been corrected, and the system is successfully retested. It is also required that the test documentation is properly completed and received prior to system acceptance.

G. Prior to making a request of Beneficial Occupancy the Sprinkler Contractor shall submit written test reports and certificates as required by NFPA 13. Submittals shall include system acceptance forms copyrighted by NFPA which shall bear the NFPA copyright symbol. No other forms shall be considered.

H. Sprinkler piping system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment, and retest as necessary.

I. The Contractor shall furnish all necessary equipment, materials and labor to perform the above-specified tests. All equipment and materials shall be in excellent condition.

210015 PLACING IN SERVICE

- A. The Contractor shall furnish Owner's representative with Contractor's Material and Test Certificate, per NFPA.
- B. The Contractor shall place the entire system in a satisfactory operating condition and shall furnish all assistance and instructions required by the Owner's representative during initial operating period.

210016 ELECTRICAL WIRING

- A. Equipment connections to alarm systems shall be provided by Fire Alarm Contractor.
- B. The Electrical Contractor will provide electrical service and make final connections to all electrical equipment furnished under this contract.

210017 OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL

- A. Four (4) complete sets of all operation and maintenance manuals **shall** be delivered by the Contractor to the Owner thru the Architect. The manuals **shall** be installed in 3-ring hard cover heavy duty notebooks with the name of the project and the words "**Operation and Maintenance Manual**" permanently affixed to the cover and spine. All items for the project shall be separated by identification tabs correlated to the index. The manuals **shall** contain the following items as a minimum:
  - 1. Index and page number.
  - 2. Certificate of final acceptance.
  - 3. A summary sheet of warranties with dates noted and a copy of all warranties.
  - 4. List of subcontractors and suppliers with names, addresses, and phone numbers.
  - 5. All documented results of preliminary and system acceptance testing.
  - 6. Complete start-up, operation, and shutdown procedures for each system including sequence of events, locations of switches, emergency procedures, and any other critical items
  - 7. Lubrication schedules and types of lubricants.
  - 8. Complete set of Sprinkler Contractor's record drawings and hydraulic calculations.
  - 9. Equipment summary showing all capacities and ratings (HP, KW, etc.).
  - 10. Operation manuals, installation manuals, and parts list for all installed equipment.
  - 11. All submittal data indexed with tabs.
  - 12. Copy of NFPA 25, edition to match that which is currently enforced by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.
- B. One copy shall be manufacturers original published literature with manufacturers name on all items. **FAXED COPIES WILL NOT BE ACCEPTABLE.**
- C. Contractor shall provide training for the Owner's maintenance personnel covering the operation and maintenance of the sprinkler system.

210018 AS BUILT DRAWINGS

- A. The General Contractor and Sprinkler Contractor shall maintain a set of shop drawings marked up to show the work as installed. Both Contractors shall initial and date all changes to the contract drawings. The Architectural Observer may check this set of documents monthly for compliance. Upon completion of the work, Sprinkler Contractor shall use these as-built drawings to create a set of record drawings which shall be delivered to the Architect. Coordination drawings shall not be considered acceptable as built drawings or record drawings.
- B. A printed set of record drawings, along with hydraulic calculations updated as necessary due to field changes, shall be placed within a white PVC tube marked "Fire Sprinkler Shop Drawings" and securely fixed in the first sprinkler riser room.
- C. A second set of printed record drawings shall be provided to the Owner, as well as electronic copies of the record drawings and updated hydraulic calculations in PDF form.

210019 GUARANTEE

- A. Guarantee: The Contractor shall guarantee the entire fire sprinkler system subject to the General Conditions of these specifications.

210020 BIDDING PROCEDURE

- A. The Contractor shall provide bidding for Alternate Bids in accordance with Division 1. Contractor shall refer to Division 1 for any required unit prices and allowances.

END OF SECTION 210000

This page intentionally left blank.



## SECTION 220000 – PLUMBING

### 220001 GENERAL

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this section.
- B. Contractor shall provide coordination drawings per Division 1.
- C. Plumbing work shall be performed as outlined in “Information for Bidders”.
- D. These specifications and the accompanying plumbing drawings are intended to provide for all labor, materials and equipment necessary for the installation complete of all
  - 1. Plumbing Fixtures
  - 2. Equipment
  - 3. Rough-Ins
  - 4. Waste And Vent System
  - 5. Oil Separator
  - 6. Condensate Drainage System
  - 7. Cold Water System
  - 8. Hot Water System
  - 9. Compressed Air Systemand accessories including necessary apparatus, valves and fittings hereinafter described or called for on the plumbing drawings accompanying these specifications.
- E. All plumbing work shall be installed in accordance with the following Codes and all Local Ordinances. Materials, equipment and workmanship shall be as hereinafter specified.
  - 1. North Carolina State Plumbing Code
  - 2. ICC A117.1
  - 3. NSF Standard # 61
- F. This contractor shall secure all required permits and inspection fees necessary for this work. Permits may be secured from the Building Inspections Department.
- G. The accompanying drawings are schematic only and are not intended to show all fittings, bolts, connections, offsets, etc., unless specifically dimensioned. Follow drawings as closely as possible, provide all adjustments as necessary to conform to the structural conditions, machinery, equipment, work of other contractors and the intent of the drawings, without additional cost to the Owner. Plumbing drawings should not be scaled. Secure dimensions from Architectural drawings. Refer to drawings of other trades and coordinate with other contractors. All items of equipment shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s published installation instructions and diagrams.
- H. The Contractor shall coordinate water and sewer taps and pay all fees in conjunction to provide services as required, for this project.

## 220002 SCOPE OF WORK

- A. The Contractor shall be required to perform all the following work, in general and provide a complete plumbing system as shown on the plans. The items in general are to be as follows:
1. Furnish and install complete waste and vent system with connections to services as shown on the plumbing drawings and here-in specified.
  2. Furnish and install cold water system complete with connections to point as shown on the plumbing drawings and here-in specified.
  3. Furnish and install hot water system complete with connections to equipment as shown on the plumbing drawings and here-in specified.
  4. Furnish and install compressed air piping system as shown on the plumbing drawings and here-in specified.
  5. Furnish and install condensate drainage system as shown on the plumbing drawings and here-in specified.
  6. Provide plumbing fixtures and connections to plumbing systems as shown on the plumbing drawings and here-in specified.
  7. Provide connections to equipment furnished and installed by General Contractor or Owner as shown on the plumbing drawings and here-in specified.

## 220003 LIST OF MATERIALS, FIXTURES AND EQUIPMENT

- A. The Plumbing Contractor shall obtain written approval from the Engineer/Architect for the use of substitute materials claimed as equal to those specified. Such approvals must be obtained as soon after contract awards as possible and before any materials are ordered. Applications for approvals shall be made by the Plumbing Contractor and not by subcontractors or manufacturer's representative. The Plumbing Contractor shall submit within ten days following award of contract and written notice to begin the work a complete list of materials proposed for the job. All like items shall be by the same manufacturer. When this list is approved, no further substitutions will be permitted except in unusual or extenuating circumstances. If no list is submitted, the Contractor shall supply materials specified. *Contractor should note that all items specified in section 220000 shall be submitted independently of other 220000 series sections.* The Plumbing Contractor shall review and stamp the submittals as being in accordance with his bid and these specifications. **Private labeled materials are not acceptable.**
- B. The Plumbing Contractor shall submit shop drawings to the Architect after award of the contract, and before any materials, fixtures, and equipment to be incorporated in the work has been ordered. Shop drawings shall include the name and address of the manufacturer and their catalog numbers and trade names clearly marked. All items shall be referenced to the plans and specifications by **fixture designation or specification paragraph number on an index tab**. One complete set of submittal data shall be manufacturer's original published material. **FAXED COPIES WILL NOT BE ACCEPTABLE.** Approval of materials will be based upon the manufacturer's published ratings. Submit shop drawings and/or catalog data for the following material and equipment:
1. Waste Piping, Fittings and Couplings
  2. Condensate Piping, Fittings and Couplings
  3. Water Piping, Fittings and Equipment
  4. Compressed air piping, Fittings and Equipment
  5. Circulator Pumps

6. Cleanouts and Access Doors
  7. Valves
  8. Insulation
  9. Hangers
  10. U. L. penetration systems
  11. Pipe Markers
  12. Fixtures
  13. Air Admittance Valves
  14. Coordination Drawings per Division 1.
- C. Approval of shop drawings and/or submittal data shall not relieve the Plumbing Contractor of the responsibility to comply with the requirements and intent of the plans and specifications with regard to dimensions, capacities, quality, quantity, performance characteristics, etc. If data submitted deviates from the contract documents, the Plumbing Contractor shall point out such deviations in writing and also state reasons for same. All similar items shall insofar as possible be one make and manufacturer.
- D. Where any special make, fixture or materials are specified by plate number, trademark or name, deliver to the building with original labels or other identification marks placed thereon by the manufacturer and do not remove until inspected and approved by the Architect. Similar and equal materials and equipment by other manufacturers will be acceptable, subject to approval.
- E. Failure to submit materials, equipment, fixtures, etc., in the time period specified above, the Architect shall assume that all items shall be installed as specified.

#### 220004 WORKMANSHIP

- A. Layout:
1. Drawings indicate general locations of fixtures. Secure exact location from Architectural plans before proceeding with work.
  2. Furnish and install all necessary sleeves, inserts, bolts, etc., for concrete floor slabs, roof, walls, and partitions. Failure to install such items in time to avoid delaying the general contractor shall result in the Contractor doing all cutting and repairing at his own expense.
  3. Sleeves as here-in-after specified shall be installed on all through the floor piping above slab on grade except water closet rough-ins. Water closet rough-ins shall be cast in place. Core drilling of slabs shall be sealed with approved fire retardant caulking and sealed watertight.
  4. All equipment shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Drainage, Waste and Vent Piping:
1. Grade all sanitary waste lines 2" and smaller 1/4" per foot.
  2. Grade all sanitary waste lines 3" and larger 1/4" per foot, where possible, 1/8" per foot minimum.
  3. Grade all condensate drain lines 1/8" per foot.
  4. All underground piping shall be graded by the use of a laser beam alignment system.
  5. All floor drains shall be set 1/2 inch below the room finished floor perimeter and the entire floor sloped to the floor drain.

6. Run all piping as directly as possible, avoiding unnecessary bends and turns so as not to interfere with proper installation of work of other contractors.
7. All PVC-DWV piping shall be protected by a cast iron sleeve under the following condition with a sleeve as follows:
  - a. Piping passing thru foundation walls: Sleeve shall extend 6 inches beyond wall footing on both sides.
  - b. Piping passing below a footing: Per Contract Drawings.
8. Provide removable caps for cleanouts with at least six threads engaged. Provide cleanouts at foot of waste and drainage stacks, all changes in direction of horizontal lines more than 135 degrees, in straight lines at intervals not exceeding 100-feet and anywhere additionally noted on the drawings.
9. Run all horizontal and vertical piping true and plumb to building structure and connect all piping with 'Y' branches and 1/8 or 1/16 bends.
10. Tapped tees and crosses will not be permitted. Tapped sanitary tees and crosses shall be used.
11. No soil, waste, or vent piping shall be covered or concealed, until tested and approved by the Architect.
12. Conceal all soil and vent piping. Vents shall be tied together as shown with minimum number of vents extending through roof. All vents extended through the roof shall be a minimum of 12" above roof level.
13. All PVC-DWV and PVC drainage lines shall be bedded per the manufacturer's recommendations and shall be maintained under a continuous head of 10-feet until after all concrete slabs are poured and/or all heavy equipment has been removed from the site. Contractor shall be responsible for the protection of the piping system at all times including freezing weather.

C. Water System:

1. Conceal water supply piping in walls, below floor or above ceiling except where exposed for connections to fixtures. Install and secure all piping as walls are built. Wedging of piping will not be permitted. All piping shall be isolated from mortar.
2. All water piping shall be routed with a minimum clearance of ten (10) feet from any electrical switchboards, electrical panels, panel boards, telephone backboards, or any other energized equipment.
3. Arrange all pipes to freely drain through a ball valve when water is cut off. All branch valves shall be installed adjacent to the water piping main.
4. All supplies to fixtures shall have individual stop valves.
5. Provide water hammer shock arrestors as required to prevent water hammer. Arresters shall be A.S.S.E. Standards Number 1010 certified. Arresters shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's published recommendations. Air chambers are not acceptable. Water hammer shock arrestors shall be as manufactured by Precision Plumbing Products, Inc. or approved equal by Zurn, Josam, J.R. Smith, or Sioux Chief.
6. All exposed piping to fixtures shall be chrome plated installed true and plumb.
7. Insulate all water piping inside the building as hereinafter specified.
8. All tees shall be installed such that the flow shall be straight thru the tee and/or out the side. Tees **shall not** be installed where the flow is into the side and out of both ends of the tee (bullhead tee). Bullhead tees installations are not acceptable and shall not be used.
9. Terminate cold water line 5-feet outside building. Connection at this point will be by the General Contractor.

D. Compressed Air Piping:

1. Compressed air piping shall be graded 1/4" per 10 foot toward drip legs in direction of airflow.
2. Compressed air piping shall be installed true and plumb to the building structure.
3. Support for compressed air piping shall be at a maximum of 12-foot centers.

E. Insulation:

1. Pipe insulation joints shall be sealed to maintain integrity of the vapor jacket and shall pass thru all sleeves unbroken except for fire stops.
2. Pipe insulation at all fire separations shall be butted tightly to the firewall or to the floor after fire stop material has been installed.

220005 CUTTING, PATCHING AND CHASING

- A. All cutting and patching shall be in accordance with the "General Conditions" of these specifications.

220006 EXCAVATION, TRENCHING AND BACKFILLING

- A. All excavation, trenching and backfilling shall be in accordance with Division 31 of these specifications.

220007 SEISMIC RESTRAINTS

- A. The Contractor shall be responsible for providing restraints to resist the earthquake effects on the plumbing system. The requirements for these restraints are found in Section 1613 of the North Carolina Building Code. All tables and references shall conform to the building's location. Restraints shall be per Seismic Design Category C.
- B. The Contractor shall refer to the latest edition of the "Seismic Restraints Manual Guidelines for Mechanical Systems" published by SMACNA for guidelines to determine the correct restraints for piping and conduit, etc. This manual refers to Seismic Hazard Level (SHL).
- C. The anchorage of the equipment and machinery for this project shall be an integral part of the design and specification of such equipment and machinery. Manufacturers of all equipment including pumps, hot water heaters, tanks, etc. shall provide anchorage details, isolators, seismic mounts and restraints, etc. necessary to comply with Section 1613 to the Contractor for installation. It shall be the Contractor's responsibility to provide and install the equipment, machinery, systems, and assemblies, etc. For this project that satisfies these requirements.
- D. Where seismic restraints are required, the Contractor shall provide restraints per details and instructions included in SMACNA's Seismic Restraints Manual. Contractor shall include shop drawings of the specific methods of seismic restraint to be used for this project before installation of piping and equipment.
- E. The Contractor shall retain the services of a Professional Engineer registered in the State of North Carolina to design seismic restraint elements required for this project. The engineer's

computations, bearing his professional seal, shall accompany shop drawings that show Code compliance. Computations and shop drawings shall be submitted for review prior to the purchasing of materials, equipment, systems and assemblies.

- F. Internal seismic restraint elements of manufactured equipment shall be certified by a Professional Engineer retained by the manufacturer. Such certificate applies only to internal elements of the equipment. All equipment anchorage requirements shall be coordinated with the building structure and shall be compatible thereto. All such anchorage shall be reviewed by the project's structural engineer.
- G. The Professional Engineer retained by the Contractor for seismic restraint calculations, shall visit the job site upon completion of the seismic restraint installation. This engineer shall provide in writing verification of compliance with the approved seismic submittal. This verification shall bear the Engineer's professional seal. Job site inspections by other than this engineer are not acceptable.
- H. Review of the seismic design and shop drawings by the Engineer/Architect or his agent shall not relieve the Contractor of his responsibility to comply with the seismic or any other requirements of the North Carolina State Building Code.

#### 220008 WASTE & VENT SYSTEMS

- A. Piping:
  - 1. Waste and vent piping shall be schedule 40 PVC-DWV solid wall, conforming to ASTM D-2665 and C.S. 272 with NSF seal.
- B. Fittings:
  - 1. Fittings for PVC-DWV piping shall be PVC-DWV fittings conforming to piping specifications.
- C. Joints:
  - 1. Joints for PVC-DWV piping shall be made using the piping manufacturer's approved solvent cement.
  - 2. Threaded piping shall be made up using pipe joint compound or Teflon Tape applied to the male thread of the pipe.
  - 3. Flashing of plumbing vents will be provided by the General Contractor.

#### 220009 CONDENSATE DRAINAGE

- A. Piping:
  - 1. Condensate piping shall be Schedule 40 PVC-DWV solid wall, conforming to ASTM D-2665 and C.S. 272.

B. Fittings:

1. Fittings for PVC-DWV piping shall be PVC-DWV fittings conforming to piping specifications.

C. Joints:

1. Joints for PVC-DWV piping shall be made using manufacturer's approved solvent cement.

220010 WASTE OIL & WASTE OIL VENT SYSTEMS

A. Piping:

1. Waste oil and waste oil vent piping shall be schedule 40 PVC-DWV solid wall, conforming to ASTM D-2665 and C.S. 272 with NSF seal.

B. Fittings:

1. Fittings for PVC-DWV piping shall be PVC-DWV fittings conforming to piping specifications.

C. Joints:

1. Joints for PVC-DWV piping shall be made using the piping manufacturer's approved solvent cement.
2. Threaded piping shall be made up using pipe joint compound or Teflon Tape applied to the male thread of the pipe.
3. Flashing of plumbing vents will be provided by the General Contractor.

D. Oil Separator:

1. Oil Separator shall be high density polypropylene constructed, furnished for below grade installation, three way access, with compartment baffles, field adjustable riser system, minimum capacity as noted on the Contract Drawings, suitable for H2O loading, with lifetime guarantee. Provide relieving slab and high water anti-float kit. Oil Separator shall be Striem OT-750 or approved equal by Zurn. Provide hard-wired oil level sensor in inlet side of Oil Separator, complete with alarm panel, by same manufacturer as Oil Separator.

220011 HOT AND COLD WATER SYSTEMS

A. Water Piping:

1. Water piping 2-1/2" and smaller, below grade, shall be type 'K' soft copper conforming to ASTM B-88.
2. Water piping 3" and larger, below grade, shall be type 'K' hard copper conforming to ASTM B-88.
3. Water piping 4" and smaller above grade inside the building shall be Type 'L' hard copper conforming to ASTM B-88.

B. Fittings:

1. Fittings for copper piping shall be wrought copper, solder joint fittings conforming to ANSI B 16.22.
2. Fittings for copper piping 2" and smaller may be press fittings conforming to ASME B16.51 and performance criteria of IAPMO PS 117.

C. Joints:

1. All copper piping joints, 1-1/4" and smaller shall be made using lead free solder with a minimum melting point of 410 degrees Fahrenheit.
2. All copper piping joints, 1-1/2" and larger shall be made using Phos-copper silver alloy material with a minimum melting point of 1000 degrees Fahrenheit.
3. Press fitting joints shall be made using the press fitting manufacturer's tools and per manufacturer's instructions.

D. Backflow Preventer:

1. Backflow preventer shall be lead-free double check valve design, non-health hazard, with strainer, test valves, gate valve on inlet and discharge, inlet and outlet pressure gauges, designed to meet AWWA C-510, ASSE 1015. Unit shall be size as shown on the drawings and be manufactured by Watts LF007S or approved equal by Wilkins, Febco, or Conbraco.

E. Expansion Tank:

1. Expansion tank shall be diaphragm design constructed of welded steel and shall bear the ASME and National Board Stamp for 150 pounds working pressure and 200° F. operating temperature. Fittings shall include test cocks, hose bibb drain and air control fitting. Tank and fittings shall be as manufactured by Amtrol, Bell and Gossett, Thrush or Taco.

F. Thermometers and Gauges:

1. Thermometers shall be metallic element type with 3" dial, Type 304 stainless steel case, accuracy range of 1%, black markings on white face, and designed for variable angle mounting. Thermometers range shall be such that the operating temperature shall be in the middle range for the dial. Thermometers shall be installed in a thermometer well and shall be Weiss Model 3VBM Series or approved equal by Omega or Tel-Tru Mfg. Co.
2. Pressure gauges shall be non-filled with 4" face, 1/4" NPT lower connection with operating range in middle portion of the dial, accuracy range of 1%, and black markings on white face. Pressure gauges shall be installed with lever handle gauge cocks. Pressure gauges shall be Weiss Model 4PG-1 or approved equal by Omega or Tel-Tru Mfg. Co.

## 220012 COMPRESSED AIR SYSTEM

A. Piping:

1. All compressed air piping shall be schedule 40 black steel conforming to ASTM A-53.



B. Fittings:

1. Fittings for black steel piping shall be malleable iron threaded fittings conforming to ASME B16.3 with threads conforming to ASME B1.20.1.

C. Joints:

1. Joints for threaded piping shall be made using pipe dope applied sparingly to the male thread of pipe.

D. Compressor:

1. Air compressor shall be two-stage cylinder air cooled, tank mounted, belt driven complete with tank pressure gauge, outlet valve, automatic tank drain, intake muffler, intake silencer, unloaders, automatic pressure switch, lubrication oil pressure switch, ASME stamped receiver, disconnect switch, magnetic starter with auxiliary contacts and overload running current protection on all three phases, and belt guard. Compressor shall have a tank size and capacity as indicated on the contract drawings. Ingersoll Rand 45465234 or approved equal by Champion or FS Curtis.

E. Hose Reel:

1. Hose reel shall be heavy duty designed, galvanized industrial steel retractable air compressor hose reel, dual arm, powder coated, full flow solid swivel joint, uninterrupted flow, fully enclosed multi-position release ratchet, adjustable hose stop, four non-sag guide rollers, with 50' length ½" styrene-butadiene polymer hose, Goodyear L820154G or approved equal.

220013 HOT WATER CIRCULATOR

- A. Circulator shall have capacity as shown on drawings and shall be specifically designed for domestic hot water service.
- B. Circulator shall have lead-free bronze body and flanges with lead-free impeller; circulator motor shall be rubber mounted and shall be equipped with overload protection. Circulator shall be direct connected to motor. Circulator shall be Taco, B&G, or Grundfos with capacity as noted on the drawings.
- C. Circulator shall be supported by appropriate hangers to avoid piping strain. Circulators shall be mounted horizontally.

220014 CLEANOUTS AND ACCESS DOORS

- A. Cleanouts shall be the same diameter as the pipe they are connected to. If the pipe is greater than 4" in diameter, the cleanout shall be 4".
- B. Cleanouts installed in walls or pipe chases shall be installed using PVC-DWV cleanout tee with slotted plug, stainless steel cover with vandalproof securing screw. Cleanouts shall be Zurn ZS-1468, Josam 58600-PLG, or J. R. Smith 4472.

- C. Cleanouts installed in floors and walks shall have adjustable cast iron body with cast brass plug, lead seal and round nickel bronze top with watertight gasketed cover. Cleanouts shall be Zurn ZN-1400, or approved equal by Josam or J. R. Smith.
- D. Cleanouts installed in Apparatus Bay floor, or indicated elsewhere on the Contract Drawings as "HDFCO", shall have adjustable cast iron body with cast brass plug, lead seal and heavy-duty veneer nickel bronze top with watertight gasketed cover. Cleanouts shall be installed flush with finished floor. Cleanouts shall be Zurn ZN-1400-HD, or approved equal by Josam or J. R. Smith.
- E. Cleanouts installed outside the building and flush with grade shall be installed flush with 24" x 24" x 6" thick concrete pad. Cleanouts plugs shall be ABS with recessed head. Cleanouts shall be Josam 57000-X-LT, Zurn Z-1403-BP-NL, or J. R. Smith 4293 Series.
- F. Access doors shall be provided for all valves and shock arrestors located behind hard ceilings and in walls to provide access. Ceiling access doors shall be a minimum of 24" x 24".
- G. Provide owner with tool(s) to allow for cleanout caps to be removed.

#### 220015 VALVES

- A. Valves shall be installed at all points noted on the plans by standard symbols or as required by best general practice for proper control and operation of the system. All valves shall be identified with 1" diameter, 19 gauge, polished brass identification tags with a number and valve service indicated. Provide a valve chart listing all valves with size and service framed and mounted under glass in the main mechanical room. Provide a self-sticking 1/2" diameter dot on lay-in ceiling grid at all valve locations. Red dot for domestic hot water supply and return, Blue for cold water.
- B. Check valves 2 inch and small shall be Class 125, lead free design cast bronze body with threaded ends.
- C. Domestic cold and hot water system valves 1-1/4 inch and smaller shall be lead free design cast bronze body, full ported, soldered end ball valves rated for Class 150, 200 WOG service.
- D. Domestic cold and hot water system valves 1-1/2 inch and 2 inch shall be lead free design cast bronze body, full ported, threaded end ball valves rated for Class 150, 200 WOG service. Valves shall be provided with stem extensions for insulation thickness specified.
- E. Domestic cold and hot water system valves 2-1/2 inch and larger shall be flanged end, iron body ball valves rated for Class 150, 200 WOG service. Valves shall be provided with stem extensions for insulation thickness specified.
- F. Compressed air system valves shall be two-piece, full ported, bronze body valves with threaded ends rated for 400 WOG.

#### 220016 PIPE INSULATION

- A. All plumbing pipe insulation systems shall be installed as a subcontract to the Plumbing contract. All plumbing pipe insulation systems, including jacketing, coverings, adhesives when used, shall have a flame spread rating not exceeding twenty-five (25) and a smoke development rating not

exceeding fifty (50) when the insulation assembly is tested as a composite. Fibrous glass pipe insulation shall be pre-molded with a thermal conductivity of 0.24BTU/in/hr/ft<sup>2</sup> at 100°F.

1. Insulate all cold water piping above grade with 1" thick pre-molded fibrous glass pipe insulation with self-sealing fire retardant vapor barrier jacket.
  2. Insulate all hot water piping, 1-1/2" and smaller, above grade with 1" thick pre-molded fibrous glass pipe insulation with self-sealing fire retardant jacket.
  3. Insulate all hot water piping, 2" and larger, above grade with 1-1/2" thick pre-molded fibrous glass pipe insulation with self-sealing fire retardant jacket.
  4. Insulate all copper water piping below grade or slab on grade with 1/2" thick pre-molded closed cellular plastic foam pipe insulation.
  5. Insulate all hot water return piping with 1" thick fibrous pre-molded glass pipe insulation with self-sealing fire retardant jacket.
  6. Rigid pipe insulation inserts shall be provided for all insulated piping 2" and larger.
  7. All condensate drainage piping, horizontal and vertical, above slab on grade serving air conditioning condensate shall be insulated with 1" thick pre-molded fibrous glass pipe insulation with self-sealing fire retardant vapor barrier. Condensate P-traps shall be insulated with 1" thick insulating cement insulation.
- B. Exposed pre-molded pipe insulation in finished areas and mechanical rooms shall be finished with factory jacket neatly pasted in place and left ready for painting as specified hereinafter.
- C. All pipe insulation for pipe fittings shall be pre-molded to fit fittings and shall be enclosed under pre-molded PVC fitting jacket.
- D. All insulated piping exposed to the weather shall be protected with color coded 30 mil PVC jacket cemented in place with PVC fitting covers. Color coding shall be in accordance with ANSI standards.
- E. Plumbing piping located in CMU walls shall be insulated with closed cellular foam insulation with thicknesses as specified above. Foam insulation thermal properties shall match or exceed the specified thermal insulation properties for the intended usage. Insulation shall be secured with insulation manufacturer's approved tape. All copper piping penetrating CMU walls, shall have continuous insulation through penetration. Copper piping shall not come into direct contact with CMU or mortar.
- F. Contractor **may request** that closed cellular foam insulation be used on insulated piping when the building structure is not "dried in" to protect fibrous glass insulation from getting wet. Foam insulation thermal properties shall match or exceed the specified thermal insulation properties for the intended usage. Insulation shall be secured with 16 gauge copper wire at 16 inch centers.

## 220017 HANGERS

- A. Hangers for vertical piping shall be the Riser Clamp design and shall conform to MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58.
- B. Hangers for horizontal piping shall be the Clevis type and shall conform to MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58.

- C. **Hangers for insulated piping shall extend around the insulation.** Provide 16 gage galvanized steel insulation protection saddles 12" long at each hanger on all insulated lines. At the contractor's option, hangers for insulated piping may be Michigan Hangers Model 4031 or 4041. Insulation Shields shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe in the case of clevis hangers, and entire circumference of pipe in the case of trapeze hangers or clamps.
- D. Hangers shall be spaced per the NC State Plumbing Code in accordance with the piping material.
- E. A hanger shall be provided within one (1) foot of each bend in horizontal piping. Vertical piping shall be supported at each floor or at intervals not exceeding ten (10) feet. Support cast iron soil pipe to each joint.
- F. For piping 4" in diameter and larger, rigid support sway bracing shall be provided at changes in direction greater than 45 degrees.
- G. Hangers shall be fastened by means of threaded rods to steel beam clamps, center of bar joist, center of trusses, etc. All hangers shall permit adequate adjustment after erection while still supporting the load. All hanger rods attached to bar joist and trusses shall be install between bottom or top cords of the structural member. Structural members to span from building structure to structure shall be provided by the Contractor.
- H. Hangers SHALL NOT be fastened to joist bridging or roof deck.
- I. Hangers shall only be hung with drilling into the slab with "drop-in" hangers with the approval of the Structural Engineer of record and the Mechanical Engineer of record with complete dead and operating load information provided for each location. Loading information shall be provided by the Plumbing Contractor.
- J. Piping supported on a trapeze hanger shall be secured to the trapeze hanger by means of a pipe clamp around the pipe insulation and insulation saddle. Bare piping shall be secured by a pipe clamp and isolated by an isolation cushion.
- K. Piping supported from the floor shall be supported using a base plate securely anchored to the floor and be equipped with a pipe riser. Riser shall be a minimum size of one inch. Horizontal piping above the floor shall be anchored and rest on a manufactured saddle. Piping shall be secured to each saddle as approved by the Engineer.

220018 PIPE SLEEVES, PLATES, ESCUTCHEONS, ETC.

- A. Pipe sleeves shall be standard weight schedule 40 black steel above slab on grade or cast iron below slab on grade. All sleeves shall be equal to construction thickness except that pipe sleeves passing through floors, other than slab on grade, shall extend 3/4" above the finished floor. Pipe sleeve sizes shall be sized two pipe sizes larger than piping passing thru the sleeve.
- B. Piping thru non-fire rated walls, floors above slab on grade or ceilings, piping passing through foundation walls, and piping installed below structural footings shall have sleeves installed concentric and centered on pipe. Ream all sleeves to prevent cutting of piping. The Contractor shall furnish shop drawings to the general contractor and the Architect showing location, dimensions, and sizes of holes required. Sleeves on piping passing through foundation walls shall extend 6" beyond wall footing on both sides. Sleeves on piping installed below structural footings shall extend beyond footing as indicated on contract drawings.

- C. Install escutcheons snug against room finish on all exposed pipe passing through walls, floors above slab on grade or ceilings. Use cup type escutcheons at floors where sleeves extend above finished floors. Escutcheons shall be chrome plated steel with spring clip.
- D. Sleeves for insulated piping shall be large enough to allow the insulation to pass thru sleeve unbroken.
- E. Core drill openings for all floor openings may be utilized in lieu of sleeved openings. All openings shall be sized two pipe sizes larger than pipe passing thru the opening. All cored openings shall be fireproofed as required and shall be made water tight.
- F. All penetrations in rated floors, firewalls and any other rated separations shall be protected using a through-penetration firestopping method with an "F" rating equivalent to the rating of the membrane being penetrated for particular piping materials used and membrane construction type. Floor penetrations shall additionally have a "T" rating equivalent to the rating of the floor being penetrated. Through-penetration firestop systems shall be installed and tested in accordance with ASTM E814 or UL 1479 with a minimum positive pressure differential 0.01 inch w.g. All openings through horizontal fire separations shall be protected by Metacaulk U.L. Systems or approved U.L. listed system by other manufacturers.
- G. All openings through floors and vertical fire separations shall be protected by combination water seal and fire stops as manufactured by HoldRite, or approved equal by Proset, Metacaulk, or 3M.

#### 220019 PLUMBING SYSTEM IDENTIFICATION

- A. All piping in the building shall be identified by snap-on pipe markers or secured with two zip ties. Markers shall have ANSI colored letters at ANSI height on ANSI colored background with flow arrows and shall be located at 10' on center along pipeline, at each tee branch and at each floor/wall penetration, both sides. A pipe marker shall be located adjacent to each valve. Pipe identification markers shall comply with ANSI A13.1 and be Custom MS-790 as manufactured by Marketing Service Incorporated or approved equal Steton, Emed or DuraLabel. Stenciling of piping and/or insulation is not acceptable. Wording on markers shall be as follows where more stringent than ANSI Standards:
  - 1. Cold Water
  - 2. Hot Water
  - 3. Hot Water Return
  - 4. Waste
  - 5. Vent
  - 6. Compressed Air
  - 7. Condensate
- B. Engraved plastic laminate signs for listed plumbing equipment shall be 1/16 inch thick and be secured with self-tapping stainless steel screws. Plastic laminate face color shall be red for all emergency applications and black for all other uses. Letter color shall be white. Signage for all equipment, etc., shall show equipment or service identification, capacity, final date of acceptance for equipment item and warranty information. Signage shall be provided for the following items:
  - 1. Water heaters
  - 2. Circulator pumps

3. Air compressor

220020 PROTECTION OF WORK AND EQUIPMENT

- A. It is imperative that waste and vent lines not be filled with concrete, concrete grindings, sand, gravel, or other foreign matter. Under no circumstances shall any line be left open while the Contractor's workers are not on the job site.
- B. Plug each opening of waste and vent lines the same day it is installed with test plug securely held in place.
- C. All floor drains and hub drains shall be covered immediately after installation.
- D. The Contractor shall be responsible for all work damaged by him/her. Any plumbing work damaged by any other contractor shall be replaced by the Contractor and placed in perfect working condition without extra cost to the Owner. All fixtures and fittings shall be adequately protected before, during and after installation.
- E. The Contractor shall be responsible for all plumbing fixtures at time of final inspection. Any broken fixtures will be replaced by the Contractor at no cost to the owner regardless of by whom the fixture was broken.

220021 TESTING

- A. The Contractor shall notify the Engineer forty-eight (48) hours in advance of all tests. The Contractor shall make all necessary preliminary tests to insure a tight system. Any joint found to leak under test shall be broken, cleaned and remade.
- B. All tests shall be applied before any work is concealed or covered in any manner.
- C. All sanitary waste, vent and condensate drainage piping shall be tested in the following manner: Plug all openings and fill entire waste and vent system to overflow with water and sustain a constant level for a minimum period of three hours. All portions of the each floor system shall be tested under a minimum of a 10-foot head including roof vent terminal. Air admittance valves shall be installed after testing is complete.
- D. All water piping, hot and cold shall be made tight under a hydrostatic test pressure of 150-lbs. per square inch and maintained without pressure loss for a minimum of four (4) hours. No caulking of joints will be permitted. Any joint found to leak under this test shall be broken, remade and a new test applied.
- E. All backflow preventers shall be tested and certified by an approved and licensed backflow prevention company.
- F. All compressed air piping shall be tested by applying an air pressure of 200-lbs. per square inch and checking all joints with a soap and water solution. System shall maintain pressure for minimum of three (3) hours.
- G. The Contractor shall furnish all necessary equipment, materials and labor to perform the above-specified tests.

220022 STERILIZATION

- A. All new water piping shall be charged with a chlorine solution containing not less than 50-ppm available chlorine. The solution shall remain in the piping for a minimum period of 6 hours, during which time valves shall be opened and closed to permit a small flow of the solution. At the end of the six (6) hours, the solution shall be tested and must contain a residual of at least 5 to 10 ppm chlorine. The system shall then be drained and flushed to provide satisfactory potable water before final connection is made to the existing distribution system.
- B. The Contractor shall contract with an independent Testing Laboratory for a certification letter that the system sterilization meets or exceeds standards for potable water.

220023 PLACING IN SERVICE

- A. Upon completion of the entire system installation, the entire system and all equipment shall be tested by actual operation to provide that it will function as intended.
- B. The Contractor shall flush all waste piping prior to final connection to existing system, to ensure that no foreign materials are in these lines, and that a continuous flow of water and waste can be affected.
- C. The Contractor shall flush all water piping prior to the connection of flush valves, mixing valves, and faucet aerators to provide a clean and operational water system.
- D. The Contractor shall place the entire system in a satisfactory operating condition and shall furnish all assistance and instructions required by the Owner's representative during initial operating period. The Contractor shall acquaint the Owner's representative with the special parts required for the operation of the flush valves furnished and installed on the project.
- E. It is the Contractor's responsibility to turn over to the owner all fixtures and floor drains in a clean condition.

220024 PAINTING

- A. The Contractor should note that plumbing piping may be exposed in various areas. The contractor should specifically note that all exposed cast iron piping be uncoated.
- B. All exposed plumbing pipe and plumbing pipe insulation in areas other than mechanical rooms shall be left clean and free from oil ready for painting by the General Contractor. All finished painting will be by the General Contractor with colors to match the surrounding areas.
- C. All plumbing equipment pads shall be painted yellow.

220025 ELECTRICAL WIRING

- A. The Electrical Contractor shall furnish and install all disconnects and motor starters and circuitry. Plumbing Contractor shall make all final electrical connections to equipment provided under Division 22. See Electrical Drawings.

1. EXCEPTION: Plumbing Contractor shall provide Aquastat(s) as indicated on Contract Drawings and in "CONTROLS" section of Division 22 specifications. The Plumbing Contractor shall be responsible for Aquastat wiring connections.

## 220026 CONTROLS

### A. General:

1. Furnish and install an electric control system to fulfill the intent of the drawings and specifications. The system shall include all necessary labor, materials, electrical wiring and devices for a complete installed control system.
2. The Plumbing Contractor shall provide a 120-volt, 24-hour, 7-day programmable time clock, and wire the time clock to the hot water circulation pump. Time clock shall be located in the same room as the circulation pump.
3. All electric wiring in connection with the temperature controls and all interlock wiring shall be furnished under this section of the specifications. The wiring shall be installed by licensed electricians employed by Contractor in strict accordance with all local, State, and National Codes. All control and interlock wiring whether line or low voltage shall be run in EMT conduit or as specified under the electrical section of these specifications. Installation of all concealed conduit shall be coordinated with contractor for general construction so it may be installed before slabs are poured or walls are erected.
4. The control diagrams indicated on the drawings and specified herein show the intended sequences of operation of the various control systems and shall be followed as closely as practicable.

### B. Temperature Sensing Devices:

1. Strap-on Aquastat shall have an adjustable range and be mounted directly on the building hot water recirculating line. Aquastat shall be set to 135°F.
2. Each water heater shall be equipped with an integral adjustable thermostat.

### C. Sequence of Operation:

1. The aquastat shall energize the circulator pump when temperature reaches set point.

### D. Instructions and Diagrams:

1. The Contractor shall provide to the owner a complete instruction manual covering the function and operation of all control components. The manual shall also contain a schematic drawing of each control system properly marked and keyed with the equipment list to identify each item of control equipment.
2. The Contractor shall also provide a complete schematic control diagram framed under glass and mounted on the wall in the equipment room.

## 220027 OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL

- A. All operation and maintenance manuals **shall** be delivered by the Contractor to the Owner thru the Architect. The manuals **shall** be installed in 3-ring hard cover heavy duty notebooks with the name of the project and the words "**Operation and Maintenance Manual**" permanently affixed



to the cover and spine. All items for the project shall be separated by identification tabs correlated to the index. The manuals **shall** contain the following items as a minimum:

1. Index and page number.
  2. Certificate of final acceptance.
  3. A summary sheet of warranties with dates noted and a copy of all warranties.
  4. List of subcontractors and suppliers with names, addresses, and phone numbers.
  5. Water Line test data for sterilization.
  6. Backflow preventer certificate of operation.
  7. Complete start-up, operation, and shutdown procedures for each system including sequence of events, locations of switches, emergency procedures, and any other critical items
  8. Lubrication schedules and types of lubricants.
  9. Complete set of current shop drawings and equipment description showing all capacities and other operation conditions.
  10. Equipment summary showing all capacities and ratings (HP, KW, etc.).
  11. Operation manuals, installation manuals, and parts list for all installed equipment.
  12. All submittal data indexed with tabs and shop drawings.
- B. One copy shall be manufacturer's original published literature with manufacturer's name on all items. **FAXED COPIES WILL NOT BE ACCEPTABLE.**

#### 220028 AS BUILT DRAWINGS

- A. The General Contractor and Plumbing Contractor, shall maintain a set of drawings marked up to show the work as installed, including dimensions to and elevations of buried work. Both Contractors shall initial and date all changes to the contract drawings. The Architectural Observer may check this set of documents monthly for compliance. Upon completion of the work, return this set of drawings to the Architect.

#### 220029 FIXTURES

- A. All exposed piping and metal parts shall be chrome plated. Slip joints will not be permitted except on fixture side of trap. Connections for water closets shall be made by use of flanges compatible to waste piping materials and verminproofed wax gaskets.
- B. **MANUFACTURER'S MODEL NUMBERS ARE PROVIDED FOR GENERAL INFORMATION ONLY.** Description of product shall take precedence over model numbers.
- C. All water closets shall flush properly when flushing with 25 PSIG at the flush valve.
- D. All floors drains, floor sinks, shower drains, and mop receptors shall have a deep seal cast iron P-trap installed below floor as a separate item. Joint connection shall be compatible to piping system.
- E. All floor-mounted water closets shall be set and grouted with white grout between floor and closet base.

- F. All wall-hung lavatories shall be sealed between wall and fixture with white or clear “G.E. Silicone Seal” caulking.
- G. All electric water coolers shall be sealed between wall and fixture with clear “G.E. Silicone Seal” caulking.
- H. All mop receptor basins shall be sealed between wall and fixture with clear “G.E. Silicone Seal” caulking.
- I. All counter mounted fixture rims shall be sealed with clear “G.E. Silicone Seal” caulking.

WC-1 WATER CLOSET: (Adult ADA) 17" high, floor mounted, vitreous china, elongated siphon jet water saver 1.28 GPF bowl with 1-1/2" top spud, china caps, paired with manual flush valve with 1" screwdriver angle check stop, vandal resistant stop cap, ADA flush handle, vacuum breaker, 1" chrome plated wall supply cover pipe, chrome plated cast brass escutcheon with set screw, 1-1/2" chrome plated flush pipe, Sloan WETS-2020.1001 or approved equal by Zurn or American Standard. White moltex open front seat with concealed stainless steel check hinge, less cover, American Standard 5901.100, Church No. 9500CT, Centoco 1500CCSS Bemis 1955SSCT, or Benekee 527. Contractor should note flush valve rough-in height as shown on the drawings. Flush valve handle shall be roughed in and mounted to the wide side of the toilet stall.

WC-2 WATER CLOSET: (Adult Standard) Floor mounted, 15" high vitreous china, elongated siphon jet water saver 1.28 GPF bowl with 1-1/2" top spud, china caps paired with manual flush valve with 1" screwdriver angle check stop, vandal resistant stop cap, ADA flush handle, vacuum breaker, 1" chrome plated wall supply cover pipe, chrome plated cast brass escutcheon with set screw, 1-1/2" chrome plated flush pipe, Sloan WETS-2000.1001 or approved equal by Zurn or American Standard. White moltex open front seat with concealed stainless steel check hinge, less cover, American Standard 5901.100, Church No. 9500CT, Centoco 1500CCSS, Bemis 1955SSCT, or Benekee 527. Contractor should note flush valve rough-in height as shown on the drawings.

L-1 COUNTERTOP LAVATORY: Nominal 19" by 16" vitreous china undermount bowl with front overflow and unglazed rim with mounting hardware shall be American Standard No. 0497.221, or approved equal by Kohler or Kallista. Single lever, chrome plated cast brass, lead free supply faucet with ceramic cartridges, 0.5 GPM vandal resistant aerator and braided stainless steel flex connectors shall be Zurn Z82200-XL-3M, Chicago 2200-E2805ABCP, or T&S Brass B-2701-VF05. Thermostatic lead free mixing valve with locking set point, 3/8" inlet check stops, 3/8" outlet, shall be installed under the lavatory to supply 110 F tempered water to the faucet. Mixing valve shall conform to ASSE 1070 or CSA B125.3 and shall be Watts Model LFUSG-B or approved equal by Combraco or Heatguard. Chrome plated lead free angle stops with loose key handle and 1/2" chrome plated nipple to wall and escutcheon with set screw shall be McGuire or approved equal by Zurn or Brasscraft. Stainless steel braided flexible supplies shall be as manufactured by McGuire or approved equal by Brass Craft, Watts. Chrome plated cast brass strainer with open grid, overflow openings, cast brass locknut and 1-1/4" 17 gauge tailpiece shall be McGuire, Zurn, or Engineered Brass Company. 1-1/4" by 1-1/2" chrome plated adjustable cast brass P-trap with 1-1/4" slip in inlet, cleanout, ground joint, 1-1/2" I.P.S. outlet, shall be McGuire, Zurn, or Engineered Brass Company. 1-1/2" chrome plated nipple to wall with escutcheon and setscrew shall be McGuire, Zurn, or Engineered Brass Company. Lavatory supplies and trap shall be

protected by A.D.A. approved premolded insulation assembly as manufactured by Truebro, McGuire or Mainline.

- SK-1 KITCHEN SINK: (Standard) 30-3/4" x 18-1/2" x 10" deep double compartment (13-1/2" x 16" x 10" deep bowl dimensions), 18-gauge, type 304 (18-8) nickel bearing stainless steel undermount sink with sound deadening applied to side and under side shall be Elkay ELUHAD311810 customized with front overflow or approved equal by Just or Advance Tabco. Stainless steel crumbcup strainer with 1-1/2" tailpiece shall be Elkay LK99 or approved equal by Just or Advance Tabco. Center Waste Continuous Outlet: McGuire 113C16G17, or approved equal by Elkay, or Zurn. Lead-free hot and cold water supply spring faucet with pull down wand and faucet mount, multi-function wand, single ADA-compliant side handle, metal construction, renewable ceramic cartridge, minimum 8" swing spout, 1.75 GPM soft flow aerator, shall be Symmons SPR-3510-PD-1.75 or approved equal by Moen or Elkay. Thermostatic lead free mixing valve with locking set point, 1/2" inlet check stops, 1/2" outlet, shall be installed under the sink to supply 110 F tempered water to the faucet. Mixing valve shall be ASSE 1070 approved and shall be Watts Model LFMMV or approved equal by Combraco or Heatguard. Chrome plated lead free angle stops with loose key handle and 1/2" chrome plated nipple to wall and escutcheon with set screw shall be McGuire or approved equal by Zurn or Brasscraft. Stainless steel braided flexible supplies shall be supplied with faucet or be manufactured by McGuire, Brass Craft, or Watts. 1-1/2" x 1-1/2" chrome plated adjustable cast brass P-trap with 1-1/2" slip joint inlet, cleanout, and 1-1/2" 17-gauge tube outlet shall be McGuire, Zurn, or Kohler. Install cast brass escutcheons with setscrew on all piping entering base cabinet.
- SK-2 KITCHEN SINK-ADA: (Adult ADA) 30-3/4" x 18-1/2" x 4-3/8" deep double bowl compartment (13-1/2" x 16" x 4-3/8" deep bowl dimensions), 18-gauge, type 304 (18-8) nickel bearing stainless steel undermount sink with sound deadening applied to under side shall be Elkay ELUHAD311845 customized with front overflow or approved equal by Just or Advance Tabco. Stainless steel crumbcup strainer with 1-1/2" offset tailpiece shall be Elkay LKAD35 or Just J-ADA-35 GR or approved equal by Advance Tabco. Center Waste Continuous Outlet: McGuire 113C16G17, or approved equal by Elkay, or Zurn. Lead free hot and cold water supply faucet, single hole, with replaceable ceramic disk cartridges, 8" tubular brass swing spout, 1.5 GPM vandal resistant pressure compensating laminar flow outlet, single lever, lead content equal to 0.25% by weighted average, Chicago No. 430-ABCP, or approved equal by Symmons or Zurn. Thermostatic lead free mixing valve with locking set point, 1/2" inlet check stops, 1/2" outlet, shall be installed under the sink to supply 110 F tempered water to the faucet. Mixing valve shall be ASSE 1070 approved and shall be Watts Model LFMMV or approved equal by Combraco or Heatguard. Chrome plated lead free angle stops with loose key handle and 1/2" chrome plated nipple to wall and escutcheon with set screw shall be McGuire or approved equal by Zurn or Brasscraft. Stainless steel braided flexible supplies shall be manufactured by McGuire, Brass Craft, or Watts. 1-1/2" x 1-1/2" chrome plated adjustable cast brass P-trap with 1-1/2" slip joint inlet, cleanout, and 1-1/2" 17-gauge tube outlet shall be McGuire, Zurn, or Kohler. Install cast brass escutcheons with setscrew on all piping entering base cabinet. Supplies and trap shall be protected by A.D.A. approved premolded insulation assembly as manufactured by Truebro, McGuire or Mainline.
- SK-3 DECON SINK: Free standing, double compartment, 16 gauge stainless steel sink with 18" by 24" by 14" deep compartments, left and right 18" drain boards, coved corners,

sloping top rim, 9" high backsplash, center drain outlets, stainless steel legs, adjustable bullet shaped feet, 8" center faucet openings, Elkay 14-2C18X24-2-18X or approved equal by Just or Amtekco. Sink compartments shall be equipped with roto-handle waste fitting with overflow, 1-1/2" outlet, stainless steel strainer, Elkay LK86RT. Sink faucet with renewable seats, lever handles, 12" swing spout, 2.2 gpm aerator, back mounted, Chicago No. 540-LDL12ABCP. Thermostatic lead free mixing valve with locking set point, 3/4" inlet check stops, 3/4" outlet, shall be installed under the sink to supply 120 F tempered water to the faucet. Mixing valve shall be ASSE 1070 approved and shall be Watts Model LFMMV or approved equal by Conbraco or Heatguard. 1-1/2" x 1-1/2" chrome plated adjustable cast brass P-trap with 1-1/2" slip joint inlet, cleanout, ground joint, 1-1/2" I.P.S. outlet shall be McGuire No. 8089C, Zurn Z8712-PC-B, or K-8996. Sink supplies shall be installed using 1/2" type 'L' hard copper equipped with ball valve stops. Install chrome plated cast brass escutcheons on all piping leaving the wall.

SK-4 SERVICE SINK: One piece, single compartment, 20" by 24" by 14" deep molded white structural thermal plastic free standing sink with steel legs, filler panels, molded-in 1-1/2" drain, overflow tube, Fiat SF-1-F, Mustee model 19F, or approved equal by Tehila. 1-1/2" x 2" chrome plated adjustable cast brass P-trap with 1-1/2" slip joint inlet, cleanout, ground joint, 2" I.P.S. outlet, McGuire No. 1207 or approved equal by Zurn or Engineered Brass Company. Polished chrome plated supply faucet with 4" center set, swing spout, Chicago No. 1891-CP or approved equal by Delta or Zurn. Sink supplies shall be installed using 1/2" type 'L' hard copper equipped with ball valve stops.

SH-1 SHOWER-ADA: (Adult ADA) ADA shower stall will be constructed by the General Contractor. Shower drain with cast iron body, 2" hub outlet, 5" square nickel bronze heelproof top, Zurn ZN-415S-Y, or approved equal by Josam or J. R. Smith. Complete shower valve and shower head package shall include single-handle, pressure balanced, chrome-plated bronze shower valve with hot and cold water indicators and check stops on both the hot and the cold, set point of 110 F max with anti-scald feature, chrome-plated bronze diverter valve, chrome-plated ABS, 1.5 gpm, heavy chrome plated ABS construction brass arm, stainless steel wall flange and adjustable spray pattern shower head, and 1.5 gpm fixed spray pattern hand spray with non-positive push button shut-off, vacuum breaker, 60" braided stainless steel flexible hose, 24" glide rail, supply elbow and flange. Package shall be Bradley 1C-HD-ST-SF-B24-DV, or approved equal by Leonard or Symmons. Showerheads and controls shall be mounted as shown on the drawings.

SH-2 SHOWER: (Adult Standard) Shower unit shall be constructed by General Contractor. Shower drain with cast iron body, 2" hub outlet, 5" square nickel bronze heelproof top, Zurn ZN-415S-Y, or approved equal by Josam or J. R. Smith. Complete shower valve and shower head package shall include single-handle, pressure-balance, chrome-plated bronze shower valve with hot and cold water indicators and check stops, set point of 110 F max with anti-scald feature and heavy chrome plated ABS construction brass arm, stainless steel wall flange and 1.5 gpm adjustable spray pattern shower head. Package shall be Bradley 1C-HD-ST-SF or approved equal by Leonard or Symmons. Showerheads and controls shall be mounted as shown on the drawings.

EWC-1 ELECTRIC WATER COOLER: (Dual Height) Wall mounted, dual height, vandal resistant, air cooled type cooler with stainless steel anti-splash receptor, stainless steel cabinet, in line 'Y' strainer, anti-squirt dual stream bubbler, automatic stream regulator, push controls on front, hands free water bottle filler, wall hanger, sealed hermetic

compressor with capacity of 8-GPH of 50°F drinking water at 90°F room temperature and 80° F inlet water temperature, Elkay LVRGRNTL8WSK, or approved equal by Halsey Taylor or Oasis, factory wired for 115 volt, single phase electrical service. Chair carrier with steel upright support legs, backing plates shall be Zurn Z-1225-BL, or approved equal by J.R. Smith or Watts. The Plumbing Contractor shall furnish the electrical receptacle rough-in dimensions to the Electrical Contractor to provide for a concealed electrical service to the unit. Plumbing Contractor shall provide PVC P-trap the same size as the electric water cooler drain. Wheel handle lead free stop valve shall be McGuire LF175 or approved equal. Plumbing Contractor should note that spout should be set at height as shown on the drawings.

- MR-1 MOP RECEPTOR: Mop receptor basin will be constructed by the General Contractor. Basin drain with cast iron body, 3" hub outlet, 5" square nickel bronze heelproof top, Zurn ZN-415S-Y, or approved equal by Josam or J. R. Smith.. Wall mounted, polished chrome plated supply faucet with top brace, vacuum breaker, integral screwdriver shank check stops, 3/4" hose end, Chicago 540-LD897SWXFXKCAB, T&S B-0665-BSTP or approved equal by Moen. Heavy duty, cloth reinforced rubber hose and hose hook, Fiat Model 832-AA, Williams Model T-35, or Mustee Model 65.700. Wall mounted, 24" long, 3 mop spring clip hanger, Fiat Model 889-CC, Williams Model T-40, or Mustee Model 65.600.. Supply faucet outlet shall be mounted a minimum of 24" above receptor floor. Contractor should note that joint between receptor, wall and floor should be sealed with clear silicone sealant.
  
- FD-1 FLOOR DRAIN: Cast iron body drain with 2" outlet to match piping system, 6" square nickel bronze heelproof top, with flashing device, Zurn ZN415S, or approved equal by Josam, J. R. Smith, Wade, or Watts.
  
- FD-2 FLOOR DRAIN: Cast iron body drain with 4" outlet to match piping system, 6" square nickel bronze heelproof top, with flashing device, Zurn ZN415S, or approved equal by Josam, J. R. Smith, Wade, or Watts.
  
- TD-1 TRENCH DRAIN: 6" wide pre-sloped trench drain, length as needed. Ductile iron frame and channels, 4" no-hub end outlet, reinforced galvanized slotted grate shall be DIN 19580/EN 1433 load classification E and H-20 compliant. Watts Dead Level D or approved equal by Zurn or J. R. Smith. Contractor shall install deep seal P-trap below floor as a separate item.
  
- TD-2 TROUGH DRAIN: Trough shall be constructed of 3/4" polyethylene, with removable corrosion-resistant primary filter screen and secondary filter basket, furnished with nested cover, internally sloped floor, internal supports, removable access lid, rebar anchor gussets, and suitable for below-grade installation, 4" outlet, field fabricated inlet connections with a load rating of 450 lbs. Trough shall be Striem TT-4
  
- FS-1 FLOOR SINK: 12" x 12" x 8" deep cast iron body floor sink with 3" outlet to match piping system, anchor flange, white acid resistant enameled interior, white acid resistant dome strainer, half nickel bronze grate, Zurn Z-1901-K-2-33, or approved equal by Josam or J. R. Smith.
  
- FS-2 FLOOR SINK: 12" x 12" x 8" deep cast iron body floor sink with 4" outlet to match piping system, anchor flange, white acid resistant enameled interior, white acid resistant

dome strainer, half nickel bronze grate, Zurn Z-1901-K-2-33, or approved equal by Josam or J. R. Smith.

- HD-1 HUB DRAIN: Provide minimum 3" I.D. hub drain for condensate collection from HVAC equipment. Hub drain shall extend to 1" above finished floor. Pipe material shall be per condensate drainage section of these specifications. Support shall be per hangers section of these specifications.
  
- HB-1 HOSE BIBB: Wall mounted, polished chrome plated brass with 3/4" vacuum breaker hose end, locking shield, tee handle, 1/2" inlet wall flange, Woodford Model 26P-1/2, Mifab MHY-9240, T & S Brass B-0702/B-972 or Preir C-257CP.50.
  
- HB-2 WALL HYDRANT: Non-freeze type with 3/4" copper inlet, 3/4" double check backflow preventer hose end, removable key handle, self draining, for wall thickness as required, Woodford Model 67, Zurn Model Z-1310 or Josam Model 71050-12.
  
- CB-1 ICE MAKER CONNECTION BOX: Fully recessed unit with lead free cold water shut-off valve, compression nut and ferrule as shall be LSP Products Group model OB-801-LL, IPS Corporation model AB9700 or approved equal Oatey Company.
  
- CB-2 WASHER CONNECTION BOX: Fully recessed washing machine outlet box with hot and cold water hose connections, 2" drain outlet and overflow guard. Unit shall be Guy Gray Model FB-200 or approved equal by Oatey or LSP.
  
- ESH-1 EMERGENCY SHOWER/EYE WASH: Floor mounted, galvanized steel, free standing emergency shower-eyewash unit with stay-open shower valve, pull down rod, handle, 3.1" diameter drench ABS shower head, soft-flow angle eye wash heads with covers, spray ring, stainless steel bowl, push to open stay-open valve, 6" high drain, capable of 20 gpm tepid water flow at 30 psi, Bradley Model S19314, or approved equal by Guardian, or Speakman. Anchor vertical column to wall with standoff brackets at 45° angle. Plumbing Contractor shall install 1-1/4" schedule 40 PVC drain pipe to drain outlet with (2) 90-degree bends, to direct drainage to front of unit. Plumbing Contractor shall furnish and install thermostatic mixing valve with inlet screwdriver check stops, outlet thermometer and low temperature adjustment range. Valve shall be designed to provide a minimum of 15 minutes of cold-water flow should hot water supply fail. Valve shall be Bradley Model S19-2100-RS EFX25 or approved equal by Guardian or Speakman, surface mounted in stainless steel cabinet. Plumbing Contractor shall furnish the Owner one drench shower tester for testing of Emergency Shower. Floor drain with cast iron body with 4" outlet to match piping system, 8" square nickel bronze heelproof top, vandal resistant securing screws less flashing device, Zurn ZN-415S-VP, or approved equal by Josam or J. R. Smith. Contractor shall pipe drain outlet at base with two 90 degree elbows to direct discharge to floor drain.
  
- DW-1 DISHWASHER: Unit provided by others. Plumbing Contractor shall provide dishwasher sink drain tailpiece (to match drainage system) and connect 3/4" drain to adjacent sink tailpiece using 3/4" fiber reinforced hose and hose clamps. Hot water supply shall be installed using 1/2" type 'L' soft copper equipped with lead free ball valve stop. Provide sufficient coil of piping to facilitate removal of unit for servicing
  
- WH-1 WATER HEATER: Factory assembled electric 80-gallon storage type heaters shall be equipped with glass lined steel tanks, ASME pressure temperature relief valve,

magnesium anode rod, tank drain with hose connection, ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 insulated factory applied baked enamel finish jacket, three bolt-in, 4,500-watt immersion elements set to run simultaneously (13.5 kw total) and control box. Heater shall be controlled by immersed bulb thermostat and be equipped with high limit temperature control, control box, transformer, contactors and junction box. Control circuits shall be a maximum of 120-volts. Heaters shall be ASME constructed and labeled. Heaters shall be U.L. listed and shall carry 3-year factory warranty. Heater shall be factory wired for 208-volt, three-phase electrical service as shown on the plans and shall be A.O. Smith DRE-80-13.5, or approved equal by State, Bradford White, or Rheem. Water heater shall be started by the manufacturer's factory representative.

220030 GUARANTEE

- A. Guarantee: The Contractor shall guarantee the entire plumbing system subject to the General Conditions of these specifications.

220031 BIDDING PROCEDURE

- A. The Contractor shall provide bidding for Alternate Bids in accordance with Division 1. Contractor shall refer to Division 1 for any required unit prices and allowances.

END OF SECTION 220000

This page intentionally left blank.



## SECTION 230500 - HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING SPECIFICATIONS

### 230501 GENERAL

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. The Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor shall co-operate with the contractors of other trades and shall install his work as fast as the progress of the balance of the work will permit.
- C. The Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor shall install all work in accordance with the requirements of the latest edition of the North Carolina State Building Code. Codes to be a part of these specifications include the North Carolina State Building Code, National Fire Protection Association Codes Section 70, 90A, 91, and other applicable sections.
- D. Inspection by local authorities will be required.
- E. The drawings accompanying these specifications indicate diagrammatically the general location of the ducts, piping, and equipment and do not show all offsets, fittings, bolts, connections, supports, etc., required for a complete system. While the drawings are to be followed as closely as possible, if it is found necessary to change the location of same to accommodate the conditions at the building, such changes shall be made without additional cost to the Owner, and as directed by the Engineer. Any detail which is omitted, and which is necessary for the proper operation of any system included under the contract, shall be supplied and installed by the Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor without extra cost to the Owner. All pipes and ducts shall be run as high as possible to maintain ceiling and head clearance. All equipment shall be installed in such a manner as to allow proper maintenance access.
- F. Equipment and Materials shall be delivered to the site and stored in original containers, suitably sheltered from the elements, but readily accessible for inspection by the Engineer until installed. All items subject to moisture damage shall be stored in dry spaces.
- G. Conditions shall be checked at the building before fabricating or placing orders for apparatus and such apparatus shall be of such dimensions as to fit the spaces allotted. The Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor shall not scale mechanical plans, but rather refer to architectural plans for dimensions.
- H. All debris resulting from heating and air conditioning work shall be removed from the premises daily or as directed by the Architect/Engineer. Trash and rubbish shall not be allowed to accumulate either within or outside the building. Materials and debris that in the opinion of the Engineer cannot practicably be removed from the site the same day may be temporarily stacked or stored in a designated location on the site as directed by the Architect/Engineer.
- I. Guards shall be provided for all moving equipment, motor couplings, pump shafts, belt drives and similar exposed reciprocating or rotating components.
- J. All new HVAC and refrigeration equipment shall be labeled in accordance with Section 301 of the North Carolina State Building Code and as required by the Authority having jurisdiction. Labeling shall be a permanent factory-applied nameplate affixed to the equipment on which

shall appear in legible lettering, the manufacturer's name or trademark, the model, serial number, and the seal or mark of the testing agency.

#### 230502 SCOPE

- A. The Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor shall provide labor and materials required for a complete system ready for operation as shown on the drawings and hereinafter specified. This includes all equipment, ductwork, piping and all other services necessary whether they are specifically mentioned herein or not. The entire installation shall be installed in a first-class, neat, professional manner to the satisfaction of the Engineer and shall conform to all applicable codes and laws.

#### 230503 SHOP DRAWINGS AND SUBMITTAL DATA

- A. The Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor shall submit within 10 days after award of the contract a list of materials and the manufacturer to be used on this project. They shall submit within thirty days after award of the contract at least five copies of submittal data in written form for the Engineers' use in approving materials and equipment. One copy will be returned. If the Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor desires the return of more than one copy, additional copies shall be provided to the Engineer at the time of the original submission. It is requested that all submittal data be sent to the Architect at one time. Unless special consideration is given, none of the submittal data will be checked until it has all been received by the Architect. Where called for, the Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor shall submit five sets of shop drawings showing the detailed arrangement or connections that are shown schematically on the drawings. Data certified for the specified project and indicated manufacturer, type, or size, capacity, etc., shall be submitted for the following equipment items:

1. Split System Heat Pumps
2. Split System Ductless Heat Pumps
3. Energy Recovery Ventilators
4. Air Scrubbers
5. Power Ventilators and Gravity Ventilators
6. Diffusers, Grilles, and Registers
7. Heaters
8. Controls with Complete Diagram
9. Fire, Manual, and Motor operated Dampers
10. Access Doors
11. Dryer Vent Box Shop Drawing
12. Insulation
13. Seismic Restraints
14. Testing and Balancing

#### 230504 APPROVED EQUAL EQUIPMENT, ETC.

- A. Manufacturers listed are to establish a standard of quality and not intended to limit the selection to these manufacturers. All materials and equipment which are essential and have not been specified or shown shall be new and of the highest grade and quality, free from defect or other imperfections. It should be understood that where the word provide is used, it is intended that

the Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor shall purchase and install all materials required. Approval of equipment will not relieve the Contractor of compliance with the specifications even if such approval is made in writing, unless the attention of the Engineer is called to the non-complying features by letter accompanying the submittal data. Approval of submittal data by the Engineer shall not be construed as a complete check or approval of detailed dimensions, weights, gauges, and similar details with the proposed articles. The conformance with the necessary coordination between the various other contractors and suppliers shall be solely the responsibility of the Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor.

#### 230505 SPLIT SYSTEM HEAT PUMPS

- A. Air handling unit section shall be UL or ETL labeled draw-thru design complete with centrifugal fans, condensate drain pan, refrigerant coil, insulated cabinet, electric resistance auxiliary heaters, and filters. Coil shall be dual circuit where indicated with non-ferrous tubes mechanically bonded to plate fins. The fan section shall have direct driven forward-curved fans with variable speed adjustment. The cabinets shall be internally insulated and shall be constructed of 16-gauge galvanized steel with baked enamel finish with bushings or plugs at cabinet penetrations or connections for electrical and piping. Drain pans shall be double sloped, removable, cleanable, and composite material. Auxiliary electric strip heaters shall be by the heat pump manufacturer and shall be UL or ETL approved to be installed in the unit in the reheat position or at the unit's discharge. Unit shall rest on pad-type vibration isolators.
- B. Filters shall be 2" thick UL Class 1 pleated panels with Minimum Efficiency Reporting Value/MERV 8 per ASHRAE Standard 52.2-2012. Contractor shall supply complete sets of filters to protect the equipment during construction, another change of filters at completion, and leave one additional complete set of filters at the building for the next change. Provide factory supplied fixed filter blockoffs to prevent air bypass around filters.
- C. Outdoor section shall be UL labeled and AHRI rated and certified with its air handling unit and bear the AHRI seal. The fans shall be permanently lubricated, direct drive, propeller type. The compressors shall be hermetic using refrigerant with suction and discharge stop valves, crankcase heaters, automatically reversible oil pump, oil filter, internal thermostat, and controls for low ambient temperature operation. The unit controls shall include compressor staging, a high and low pressurestat of the automatic reset type, a positive acting five minute timer to prevent short cycling and a motor starting and protecting equipment. Units shall be furnished with coil guards.
- D. Systems using A2L refrigerant shall be listed to UL Standard 60335-2-40, current edition.
- E. Per EPA SNAP 23, systems using A2L refrigerant shall have permanently affixed markings and labeling to indicate refrigerant installed in the system and Notice of leak detection system installed, and shall have service ports, pipes, hoses and other devices through which refrigerant flows to be marked in red.
- F. Systems using A2L with refrigerant charge > 4.0 lbs in largest independent circuit shall have integral factory installed refrigerant leak detection system mounted in the air handling unit section downstream of the evaporator coil with internal controls to automatically upon refrigerant detected, unit commands compressors and electric heat (if present) off, and commands air handling unit's fan to maximum airflow for air circulation. Once refrigerant has not been detected for a minimum of 5 minutes, unit shall return to normal operation.

- G. For systems using A2L refrigerant, if releasable refrigerant charge in the system exceeds the levels allowed in ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 15 – 2022 or newer for the effective dispersal volume, provide safety isolation valves in both refrigerant lines as release mitigation controls. Valves shall automatically close upon signal from the unit integral refrigerant leak detector. Valve locations shall be as such for releasable refrigerant charge to be less than the levels allowed in ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 15 – 2022 or newer for the effective dispersal volume.
- H. As part of submittals, provide calculated releasable refrigerant charge in largest independent circuit for each system, including connecting piping.
- I. Refrigerant piping systems shall be sized, pitched, and furnished with all specialties as recommended by the unit manufacturer to accommodate refrigerant piping lengths. Specialties shall include suction line accumulators, liquid line solenoid valves, thermal expansion valves, refrigerant sight glass, removable core filter drier, and any other item deemed necessary or recommended by the unit manufacturer.
- J. See GUARANTEE 230534 for description of unit and compressor warranty requirements.
- K. Indoor and outdoor sections shall be by the same manufacturer and shall be Trane, Carrier, Daikin, JCI/York, or approved equal.

#### 230506 SPLIT SYSTEM DUCTLESS HEAT PUMPS

- A. Indoor section shall be vertical wall mounted ductless type split heat pump unit. Unit cabinet shall be 20 gauge galvanized steel with rounded corners and finished with an undercoat and topcoat of hard finish polyurethane paint. Unit shall be internally insulated and be furnished with auxiliary heater and 1" thick pre-cut washable polyester filter media. Unit fan shall be dual tangential blower type. Unit shall have hardwired wall mounted thermostat with high-medium-low fan control and remote mounted condensate pump.
- B. Outdoor section shall be by the same manufacturer as the indoor section. Units shall be compact low profile type with inverter driven compressor, refrigerant, crankcase heaters, and controls for low ambient temperature operation in cooling mode down to 0°F. The fans shall be permanently lubricated, direct drive type with horizontal air discharge. Safety controls shall include loss of charge and low and high-pressure switch.
- C. Systems using A2L refrigerant shall be listed to UL Standard 60335-2-40, current edition.
- D. Per EPA SNAP 23, systems using A2L refrigerant shall have permanently affixed markings and labeling to indicate refrigerant installed in the system and Notice of leak detection system installed, and shall have service ports, pipes, hoses and other devices through which refrigerant flows to be marked in red.
- E. Systems using A2L with refrigerant charge > 4.0 lbs in largest independent circuit shall have integral factory installed refrigerant leak detection system mounted in the air handling unit section downstream of the evaporator coil with internal controls to automatically upon refrigerant detected, unit commands compressors and electric heat (if present) off, and commands air handling unit's fan to maximum airflow for air circulation. Once refrigerant has not been detected for a minimum of 5 minutes, unit shall return to normal operation.

- F. For systems using A2L refrigerant, if releasable refrigerant charge in the system exceeds the levels allowed in ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 15 – 2022 or newer for the effective dispersal volume, provide safety isolation valves in both refrigerant lines as release mitigation controls. Valves shall automatically close upon signal from the unit integral refrigerant leak detector. Valve locations shall be as such for releasable refrigerant charge to be less than the levels allowed in ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 15 – 2022 or newer for the effective dispersal volume.
- G. As part of submittals, provide calculated releasable refrigerant charge in largest independent circuit for each system, including connecting piping.
- H. Refrigerant piping systems shall be sized, pitched, and furnished with all specialties as recommended by the unit manufacturer to accommodate refrigerant piping lengths. Specialties shall include suction line accumulators, liquid line solenoid valves, thermal expansion valves, refrigerant sight glass, removable core filter drier, and any other item deemed necessary or recommended by the unit manufacturer.
- I. See GUARANTEE 230534 for description of unit and compressor warranty requirements.
- J. Units shall be UL or ETL labeled and shall be commercial type by Trane, Daikin, LG, Mitsubishi, Samsung, or approved equal.

#### 230507 ENERGY RECOVERY VENTILATORS

- A. Energy Recovery Ventilator (ERV) shall include intake and exhaust fans, filters, and energy recovery core heat exchanger all in a single cabinet. ERV shall be UL 1812 listed and labeled.
- B. The energy recovery device shall be a static core heat exchanger rated in accordance with AHRI Standard 1060-2000 with ratings certified by AHRI. Core shall be built into an aluminum frame. Core shall be coated with a polymer membrane without the use of binders or adhesives which may plug the desiccant aperture. Desiccant shall not dissolve or deliquesce in the presence of water or high humidity. The core shall be easily cleanable with a standard cleaning solution or mild soap and water solution. The core shall have a crossover exhaust air transfer ratio < 0.5% and shall accommodate a low-pressure drop of 0.35 in w.g @ 100% rated CFM. The air transfer shall happen without virus transfer and shall be compliant with ASTM F-1671 for zero penetration. The core also shall be mold and bacteria resistant (ISO 846 – Rating 0).
- C. ERV cabinet shall be fully insulated 20 gauge galvanized steel construction with a powder coat paint finish electrostatically bonded to the metal. Cabinet shall have top access doors and movable duct flanges for intake air and exhaust air duct connections. All airstreams shall be horizontal. Knockouts shall be provided for power connections. Hanging or pad mount installation capability shall be standard. Test ports shall be provided so airflow can be measured across the energy recovery device.
- D. Intake and exhaust air fans shall be centrifugal forward curved blowers with ball bearings and three-speed direct drive permanent split capacitor motors. Provide speed controller for each fan motor.
- E. Filters shall be 2" thick UL Class 1 pleated panels with Minimum Efficiency Reporting Value/MERV 8 per ASHRAE Standard 52.2-2012. Contractor shall supply complete sets of filters to protect the equipment during construction, another change of filters at completion, and

leave one additional complete set of filters at the building for the next change. Provide factory supplied fixed filter blockoffs to prevent air bypass around filters.

- F. ERV's shall be complete with low ambient kit for frost control, controller for economizer mode, rotation sensor utilizing dry contact switch that closes upon failure, differential pressure sensors for airflow status monitoring, dirty filter sensors, and contacts for connection to controls.
- G. Units shall be UL or ETL labeled and shall be Ruskin MCV series, Greenheck ECV, or approved equal.

#### 230508 AIR SCRUBBERS

- A. Air scrubbers shall be self-contained, fully automatic, recirculating, hoseless system with vertical intake and 360 degree horizontal clean air output; designed to remove hazardous gases and particulate from indoor vehicle parking bays and eliminate exhaust backwash in accordance with ANSI/ASHRAE 52.2, UL 508A, UL 900, ULC/CAN S111 and NFPA 1500.
- B. Cabinet body shall be 16 or 18 gauge steel with gray powder coat finish with (4) pre-drilled mounting holes and mounting angles for threaded-rod hanger support from roof structure above, (4) adjustable output airflow grilles, (2) hinged access panels with one panel on top for access to motor blower unit and one panel on bottom for access to filter compartment, and electrical connection box.
- C. Motor-Blower unit shall be dual voltage, ball bearing, resilient mounted, capacitor start, thermally protected, UL approved electric motor with plastic chemical resistant, back curved centrifugal impeller and airflow funnel cone.
- D. Power connection shall be via 8-feet long 3-prong, 14 gauge, pre-molded electrical cord.
- E. Accessories shall include cabinet mounted automated filter replacement gauge.
- F. Filters:
  - 1. Stage 1 Pre-Filter shall be 24 inch × 24 inch × 1 inch 3-ply polyester construction, self-sealing, meeting requirements for Class 2 in accordance with UL 900 and ULC/CAN S111 with certified efficiency of 30 to 35 percent based on ASHRAE 52.2 test method.
  - 2. Stage 2 Main Media Filter shall be 24 inch × 24 inch × 6 inch HEPA MAX 3000 high efficiency particulate air filter, with ultra-fine pleated fiberglass media pack constructed with 24 gauge galvanized metal frame and corrugated aluminum dividers between pleats meeting requirements for Class 2 in accordance with UL 900 and MERV 16 with certified efficiency of 95 to 99.97 percent based on dioctyl phthalate (DOP) testing with 0.3 micrometer particles.
  - 3. Stage 3 and 4 Gas-Phase Extractor shall be 24 inch × 24 inch × 4 inch deep 2-part gas phase extractor with activated carbon filter for removal of heavy weight gases and potassium permanganate filter for removal of light weight gases. Heavy and light weight filters shall be each constructed with 24 gauge galvanized metal frame and honeycomb containment structure.
  - 4. Contractor shall supply complete sets of filters for all stages to protect the equipment during construction, another change of filters at completion, and leave one additional complete set of filters at the building for the next change.

- G. Controls shall be multi-circuit automatic reset timer control system of 120 V electrical controller in NEMA 4 cabinet to operate and sequentially activate air scrubber units in groups of two, after 15 second delays, until all units are activated, including adjustable low voltage time delay relay, LED “System Activated” indication light, ON-OFF-AUTO selector switch, “System Test” switch to activate system for a timed cycle, 120 V to 24 V, 2A low voltage transformer to power system activation devices, and meeting UL 508 for industrial enclosed control panels. Once activated, elapsed time for scrubber operation shall be user-determined with timing range of 1 minute to 120 minutes.

Air scrubber activation shall be via the following, all in parallel:

1. Magnetic door switch (one per vehicle door) as part of air scrubber system.
  2. Photoelectric eyes (to detect vehicle movement) as part of air scrubber system.
  3. Manual ON-OFF-AUTO selector switch with label.
  4. Input signal from Carbon Monoxide (CO)/Nitrogen Dioxide (NO<sub>2</sub>) Sensing System in space, sensing system as specified in Section 230900 by Control Contractor.
- H. Air scrubbers shall be Air Vacuum Corporation AIRVAC 911 series or approved equal.

#### 230509 POWER VENTILATORS AND GRAVITY VENTILATORS

- A. Power ventilators shall be tested and rated in accordance with the standards of AMCA 210 and shall carry the AMCA seal. All fans shall be UL labeled. Fans shall be Cook, Greenheck, Carnes, Twin City, PennBarry, or approved equal.
- B. Ceiling exhaust fans shall have plug disconnect switch, interior fiberglass insulation, forward curved centrifugal blower wheel, back draft dampers, permanently lubricated motor, and white steel grille. Units shall have solid-state motor speed controller with an “OFF” position. Furnish wall cap with birdscreen where shown on drawings. Caps shall have baked enamel finish of color selected by the Architect.
- C. Inline fans shall be centrifugal in-line ventilator with variable speed belt drive or direct drive as indicated on the drawings. Housing shall be constructed of steel with removable drive door and access panel. Wheel shall be dynamically and statically balanced. Motor base shall be adjustable and have locking screws and guides to provide positive belt tension and correct alignment. Ball bearings shall be heavy-duty self-aligning, relubricable flange type with locking collars. Bearings must be selected for 125,000 hours average service life at maximum cataloged operating speed. Drives shall be cast iron and have a minimum of 1.25 service factor. Drives shall be isolated from the airstream. Motors shall be EISA 2007 NEMA premium efficiency with efficiency rating stamped on motor nameplate. All units shall be provided with backdraft dampers, hanging vibration isolators, motor/drive guards, and disconnect switches. Direct drive units shall have solid-state motor speed controllers with an “OFF” position.
- D. Wall mounted fan shall be heavy duty belt driven with steel propeller, exhaust or supply as indicated on the drawings. Fan shall be manufactured at an ISO 9001 certified facility, shall be UL listed and bear the AMCA certified rating for sound and air performance. The fan shall be bolted and welded construction with the motor, bearings and drive mounted on a tubular steel power assembly. All steel components shall have an electrostatically applied baked polyester powder coating. Propeller shall be steel and shall be balanced in accordance with AMCA Standard 204-96. Motor shall be heavy duty permanently lubricated sealed ball bearings in a

cast iron pillowblock housing for a minimum L 50 life in excess of 200,000 hours. Drives shall be variable pitch and sized for 150% of installed motor horse power. Fan shall be complete with OSHA wire guard, heavy duty galvanized motor operated shutter in a wall collar ready for connection to the wall louver.

- E. High Volume Low Speed (HVLS) Air Movement Fans shall be four blade minimum of diameter indicated on the drawings. Formed aluminum blades and hub shall have polished finish with powder coated finish of color selected by Architect on motor frame and gear reducer cover. Each fan shall have three-way motor-to-hub safety connection. Entire assembly shall be rotationally balanced. Fan's sound shall be less than 50 dBA measured 20 feet below and 20 feet from fan's center. Full CFM performance shall be tested to ANSI/AMCA 230. Fan shall include factory structure mounting kit and fan variable speed, on/off, forward/reverse remote mounted controller. Fan's factory warranty shall be 3-year parts, 1-year labor, 10-year structural, and lifetime on blades and hub workmanship. Fans shall be installed by manufacturer trained technician. Basis of design fans are Rite Hite Revolution.
- F. Gravity ventilators shall be heavy gauge aluminum. Mounting base shall be prepunched and include an integral spun venturi. The internal structure shall be constructed of galvanized steel for rigid support and includes a windband and birdscreen. Bird screen shall be 1/2" x 1/2" PVC coated wire.
- G. Roof curbs for roof-mounted equipment shall be provided by the Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor. It shall be the responsibility of the Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor to give the proper locations and sizes required for all roof openings. Opening will be framed and cut by not the Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor. Roof curbs shall be insulated. Equipment shall be attached to roof curbs with a minimum of two stainless steel fasteners and EPDM washers on each side of roof curb.
- H. Gravity ventilators and roof curbs shall be finished with factory applied finish of color selected by the Architect.

#### 230510 DIFFUSERS, GRILLES, AND REGISTERS

- A. Diffusers, Grilles and Registers shall be as manufactured by Carnes, Metal Aire, Titus, Price, Krueger, or approved equal unless otherwise noted.
- B. All diffusers, grilles, and registers shall be painted off-white unless otherwise noted. Where indicated on drawings to be field painted, white factory finish shall be as necessary to receive field finish painting.
- C. All diffusers, grilles, and registers shall have a maximum NC level of 25 in the space for the specified airflow.
- D. Lay-in Supply Air Diffusers: Shall be aluminum construction, fixed square louvered face, 4-way blow, panel type to drop in 24" x 24" "T" bar ceiling grid, with individual adjustable vertical pattern and opposed blade dampers. Vertical air adjustment shall be made by adjusting four perimeter blades to force air down in the vertical position.
- E. Regular Ceiling Supply Air Diffusers: Shall be aluminum construction square, fixed square louvered face, 4-way blow, panel border, adjustable vertical pattern, and opposed blade damper.



- F. Sidewall Supply Air Registers: Shall be aluminum with adjustable front vertical and back horizontal airfoil vanes on 2/3" centers and opposed blade dampers
- G. Lay-in Ceiling Return Air Grilles: Shall be aluminum 1/2" x 1/2" egg crate with aluminum frame and designed to lay in an inverted "T" bar ceiling grid. Grilles shall be full flow across the entire face of grille and tapered up to neck size.
- H. Ceiling Return Air Registers: Shall be aluminum 1/2" x 1/2" egg crate with aluminum frame and opposed blade dampers. Registers shall be full flow across the entire face of register and tapered up to neck size.
- I. Ceiling/Sidewall Exhaust Registers and Sidewall Return Air/Transfer Air Registers and Grilles: Shall be aluminum construction with fixed blades on 1/2" centers set at 35-degree angles. Registers shall include opposed blade dampers.

#### 230511 HEATERS

- A. Electric baseboard heaters shall be commercial-grade furnished and installed complete with all necessary heating elements, brackets, and closures, splice plates, interior and exterior corners, and accessible wiring compartment. Maximum leaving air temperature at the outlet and enclosure surface temperature, under continuous operation, shall not exceed 200°F. Heaters shall be Markel Series 2900C, Q-Mark, Raywall, Indeeco, or approved equal complete with UL label.

Heating elements shall consist of stainless steel element rod with aluminum fins. Maximum watt density per linear foot of element shall not exceed 250 watts. Enclosures shall be steel with thicknesses not less than 18 gauge front and 22 gauge back and shall be rigidly reinforced. Enclosures shall be wall hung with bottom at elevation above the finished floor as shown on the drawings, and shall be suitable for the space available. End plates and corner pieces shall be die formed with round edges, fit flush with enclosure surface, and be neat in appearance. No direct contact between enclosure and heating element will be permitted. Enclosure shall be painted with rust-inhibiting paint at the factory and shall have baked enamel finish of color selected by Architect. Connection box shall be designed to permit power supply and control wiring from bottom, rear, right or left side as required. Thermostat shall be built-in double pole double throw adjustable with extra sensitive bulb and capillary. Thermostat shall have positive off position and be within unit enclosure or junction box. Limit controls shall be continuous end-to-end automatic reset thermal overload; line voltage protection shall be provided with each individual baseboard heater to protect from overheating due to any cause. Baseboard unit shall be furnished complete, factory prewired and ready to receive branch circuit and connections. Each heater shall be provided with a factory-installed safety disconnect switch or circuit breaker installed in the housing or in an auxiliary matching control section or have thermostat with positive off position.

- B. Electric unit heaters shall be listed by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., and shall bear the appropriate UL label. Heaters shall be furnished and installed in accordance with the manufacturers' published recommendations. The elements shall be metal sheath fin tube type. Heaters shall be complete with adjustable discharge louvers, ceiling or wall mounting bracket, built-in contactors with 24 volt control circuit, built-in fuses, 18 gauge steel cabinet, built-in thermal overload protection, combination fan guard and motor mount, continuous duty motor,

wall mounted thermostat, and separate field installed-unit mounted power disconnect switch. Unit heaters shall be Markel Series 5100, Raywall, Indeeco, or approved equal.

230512 CONTROLS – See Section 230900 Instrumentation and Control for HVAC.

230513 ELECTRICAL

- A. Electrical circuit sizes are based on capacities of the drawings and it shall be the responsibility of Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor to change any and all electrical work in order to fit mechanical equipment. Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor shall coordinate with Electrical Contractor to assure that all units are properly connected and shall check wiring prior to starting units. Any damage to units resulting from improper wiring or connections shall be the responsibility of Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor. Flexible electrical conduits shall be 18 inches in length maximum.
- B. All electrical work shall be installed in accordance with codes having jurisdiction and the Electrical Division, Division 26, of these specifications.
- C. Starters shall have integral 120V Control power transformer. Starters shall have holding coil for 120V control with hand-off-auto switch. The starters shall be inoperative if the thermal unit is removed. All magnetic starters shall be NEMA sized with applicable melting alloy overload relays and applicable enclosure.
- D. All three phase motors shall be provided with phase loss protection.
- E. Fused disconnect switches shall be heavy duty industrial type, NEMA 3R where on exterior. Switches shall be fusible type mounted so handle is approximately 4 feet 0 inches above floor or grade. Switches shall have a factory applied standard finish. Labeling shall be as indicated in the Electrical Division, Division 26, of these specifications. Each switch for motor circuits shall have a complete set of time delay fuses.
- F. Motor Starters and Fused Disconnect Switches shall be neatly arranged, and securely fastened to walls with expansion bolts, lead shields, etc. Each starter or switch shall have its usage or letter designation indicated on its cover per the Electrical Division, Division 26, of these specifications.

230514 FIRE, MANUAL, AND MOTOR OPERATED DAMPERS

- A. Fire dampers shall be provided in the duct systems in accordance with NFPA Standard No. 90A and shall conform to NFPA Standard No. 90A for materials and workmanship. The dampers shall be spring loaded dynamic rated multi-leaf type UL approved and labeled for installation into the rated assembly (a 1-1/2 hour damper for a 2 hour rated assembly and two 3 hour dampers for a 4 hour rated assembly) and shall be installed according to the manufacturer's recommendations. Dampers shall be Ruskin, Pottorff, Prefco, Air Balance, United Enertech, or approved equal.
- B. Manual and Motor operated dampers including Zone and Bypass dampers shall be low leakage type provided in the duct systems as indicated on the drawings in accordance with NFPA

Standard No. 90A and shall conform to NFPA Standard No. 90A for materials and workmanship. Blades shall have extruded vinyl double edge seals. Jambs shall have flexible metal compression type seals. To facilitate service access and insulation installation, manual damper handles shall be on 2" stand-off brackets. Handles shall be spray painted red. Dampers shall be installed according to the manufacturer's recommendations. Dampers shall be Ruskin, Pottorff, Prefco, Air Balance, United Enertech, or approved equal.

1. Maximum damper leakage at 1.0 in w.g. shall be 10 cfm/sf of damper area for motor operated dampers.
  2. For manual dampers, maximum damper leakage at 1.0 in w.g. shall be 40 cfm/sf of damper area for dampers smaller than 24 inches in either dimension or shall be 20 cfm/sf for larger manual dampers.
  3. Leakage ratings shall be when tested in accordance with AMCA Standard 500.
  4. When damper face velocity exceeds 1500 FPM or system pressure exceeds 2.5" WC, but no more than 4000 FPM or 6" WC, dampers shall be airfoil blade type of double skin construction with linkage out of the air stream.
  5. Motor operated dampers including zone and bypass dampers shall have electric actuators and shall be normally closed. See Section 230900 Instrumentation and Control for HVAC for actuators. Wiring to actuators shall be by the Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor.
- C. Manufacturer's installation instructions for all dampers shall be furnished at time of final inspection. Installation instructions shall be affixed to damper access doors.

#### 230515 ACCESS DOORS

- A. Access doors shall be provided for access to all fire and motor operated dampers and duct smoke detectors.
- B. Duct mounted access doors shall be constructed of No. 22 US gauge zinc-coated sheet steel and shall be gasketed, air tight and provided with not less than two (2) cam-type latches. Doors shall be square and shall be 12" x 12" or two inches less than the height of the duct. Doors shall be two-piece with 1" rigid insulation between the metal sides. Doors shall have engraved plastic laminated labels with 1/2" tall letters indicating item accessed through door.
- C. Wall and ceiling access doors shall be provided as specified in Division 08.
- D. Provide 3/4" diameter red dot on ceiling grid below all duct access doors.

#### 230516 DUCTWORK

- A. Mechanical drawings are schematic only and do not show all offsets, supports, etc. required. Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor shall familiarize himself with the complete contract documents and site conditions before fabricating ductwork. Any changes to ductwork found necessary to accommodate the conditions at the building shall be made without additional cost to the Owner, and as directed by the Engineer.
- B. During construction, interior of ductwork, fans, etc. shall be protected. All openings and open ends of ductwork shall be covered with self-adhesive 3 mil polyethylene film.

- C. All dimensions on the drawings are free inside dimensions.
- D. All duct joints shall be sealed in accordance with SMACNA Seal Class A before insulation is applied. All sealants shall meet the provisions of UL181.
- E. Ductwork shall be of galvanized steel with standard gauges and construction in accordance with the recommendations of SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards, Metal and Flexible, Third Addition, 2005 for appropriate pressure class. Airfoil turning vanes with 1-1/8" spacing and rail support system shall be installed in all 90° elbows. Ductwork shall be cross broken on all sides and shall be supported at both ends of each joint and at 10'-0" intervals maximum with galvanized angles supported by galvanized threaded rods of sizes and spacing in accordance with SMACNA. Ductwork to be exposed shall be constructed in a first class, neat, professional manner and exposed ductwork with excessive hammer marks shall be replaced. Round supply takeoffs from trunk ducts shall be made with factory 45° entry branch rectangular to round type fittings. Provide dampers in takeoff fittings where indicated on drawings. Damper handles shall be on 2" stand-off brackets. Handles shall be spray painted red. Splitter dampers shall be provided where indicated with adjustment quadrant locking device and shall be constructed of two thicknesses of 24-gauge-galvanized steel. All components of the air distribution system shall be mechanically fastened with at least three equally spaced sheet metal screws with screws not more than on 12" centers.
- F. Final 8'-0" of the runout to the air outlet may be factory fabricated flexible ducts complying with NFPA Standard No. 90A, UL 181, and shall be UL Class 1 R-6 insulated type with foil vapor barrier. The flexible duct shall be air tight for factory test when bent to full recommended radius and under not less than 10" water gauge internal pressure and shall be limited to 8'-0" maximum length. Flexible ducts shall be supported by galvanized steel straps in accordance with SMACNA at intervals not exceeding 4'-0" and at each change of direction. Flexible ducts shall have a minimum of one support.
- G. Dryer Vent Box shall be fully recessed unit with 4" duct connection, flexible duct and frame as detailed on drawings. Unit shall be modified as necessary for installation in a masonry or stud wall. Dryer ductwork shall be round 30 gauge galvanized steel with substantially airtight joints and shall connect to box outlet. Sheetmetal screws shall not be used at joint connections. Joints shall run in direction of airflow. Outlet shall be non-screened aluminum with backdraft damper.

#### 230517 PIPING

- A. The Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor shall furnish all piping and supports necessary to provide a complete system as shown or intended by the plans and specifications. All piping shall be inspected, tested, and approved before being insulated or concealed. Pipe shall be clean, run generously parallel to the building and have all open ends closed with iron caps at all times. Eccentric reducers shall be used in horizontal runs and concentric reducers in vertical runs. All piping and fittings shall have manufacturer's identification and ASTM designation incorporated thereon.
- B. Drain pan and pumped condensate piping shall be Type "L" copper with all joints soldered with 95-5 solder. Piping shall have dielectric union at connection to ferrous pipe. Drain pan condensate piping shall have a minimum slope of 1/4" per linear foot and shall be at least as large as unit condensate connection.

- C. Refrigerant piping shall be capped and dehydrated Type "L" hard drawn copper with wrought fittings. All joints shall be brazed with silver brazing alloys according to manufacturer's published recommendations.
- D. Welding material and labor shall be in accordance with welding procedures of the American Standards Code for Pressure Piping ASA B31.9. Welders shall be fully qualified in above specified procedure, tested, and so certified by an approved Welding Bureau of Locally Recognized Testing Authority. Welding shall be electric arc or oxyacetylene welding method as approved using electrodes and rods that comply with ASTM specifications.
- E. Swing joints or loops shall be provided wherever necessary to allow for expansion of piping. Broken piping or fittings shall be removed and replaced at the Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor's expense.

#### 230518 PIPE HANGERS

- A. All piping shall be neatly and securely supported by hangers from fire resistance rated structural elements of the building spaced in the following manner:
  - 1. Copper Piping 1-1/4" and smaller - 6'-0" O.C.
  - 2. Copper Piping 1-1/2" and larger - 10'-0" O.C.
  - 3. Provide 2 hangers at each change in direction.
- B. Hangers shall be the Clevis type as manufactured by Modern Fig. 590, B-Line Fig. B 3100, or Grinnell Fig. 260 complete with hanger rods of size to conform to the type of hanger and pipe supported. Hangers shall be attached to the building by beam clamps or bolted to bar joist. At hangers provide 16" long 16 gauge galvanized sheet metal protection saddle three times the nominal pipe diameter. Under no condition shall hangers be connected directly to insulated pipe. Saddles shall be Modern Type A, B-Line Fig. B 3151, or Grinnell Fig. 167.
- C. Hangers for vertical piping shall be riser clamp design as manufactured by Modern Fig. 500, B-Line Fig. B3373 or Grinnell Fig. 261. Riser clamps shall be installed on top of each floor penetration.

#### 230519 INSULATION

- A. All piping and ductwork shall be inspected and tested before insulation is applied. All insulation shall meet UL 723 and ASTM-E84 flame spread and smoke developed requirements of 25/50 and shall comply with NFPA 90A and the latest edition of the NC Building Code. Insulation shall be Certainteed, Owen Corning, Knauf, and Johns-Manville.
- B. All air conditioning supply, return, ERV relief, and outside air ducts and the back of all diffusers and grilles shall be externally insulated with 2" thick 1 lb. density foil scrim kraft jacketed insulation. Adhere insulation to duct with fire retardant adhesive in sufficient quantities to prevent sagging. Ducts with a width over 30" shall be further secured on all sides with mechanical fasteners on 18" maximum centers. Insulation shall be butted with facing overlapping all joints at least 2" and sealed with fire retardant vapor barrier adhesive. Tape all joints, breaks, punctures, and any penetrations with SMACNA foil faced kraft duct tape.

- C. Where externally insulated ductwork is supported by angles, provide 6" long x duct width x 1-1/2" thick 6.0 pound density board insulation on bottom of duct at hanger support. External duct insulation shall be continuous around ductwork and board insulation at duct hanger. On round ducts, duct hanger shall be outside duct insulation.
- D. Refrigerant piping shall be insulated with tubular closed cell elastomeric insulation with all joints butted and cemented tight. Insulation shall be 1-1/2" thick for the entire length of gas line. Liquid line shall be minimum insulated 1" thick inside the thermal envelope and 1-1/2" where outside the thermal envelope or on exterior of the building. Insulation on refrigerant piping exposed on the building's exterior shall have aluminum jacket as hereinafter specified.
- E. Air handling unit drain pan condensate piping on interior and pumped condensate piping shall be insulated with tubular closed cell elastomeric insulation with all joints butted and cemented tight. Insulation on interior condensate piping shall be 1" thick.
- F. All refrigerant piping within 8'-0" of the floor or exposed on the exterior shall be provided with a protective aluminum jacket with a factory-applied poly backing moisture barrier over piping insulation. Aluminum jackets shall be cross-crimped (longitudinally corrugated) for strength. Aluminum jackets shall be not less than 0.016" thick and shall be secured with aluminum or stainless-steel screw; not more than 8" apart. Each jacket shall be applied by turning a 1" hem inward on one longitudinal edge and then lapping the hemmed edge over the unhemmed edge. The jacket may be machine cut to produce a straight smooth edge and the hem omitted. The longitudinal and circumferential seams shall be lapped not less than 2". Jackets on horizontal lines shall be so installed that the longitudinal seams are on the bottom half of the pipe with the seam of each jacket slightly offset from the seam of the adjacent jackets; top edge shall overlap bottom edge. The jackets on vertical lines and lines pitched from the horizontal shall be installed from low point to high point so that the lower circumferential edge of each jacket overlaps the jacket below it. Special fitting jackets conforming to the above with the exception of longitudinal lapping dimensions and location of seams shall be used for fittings, valves, and flanges. Jackets for fittings, valves, and flanges shall be properly overlapped and secured. Equivalent aluminum jacketing system, when approved, will be acceptable.

#### 230520 SPECIALTIES

- A. Floor, wall and ceiling plates or escutcheons of size to fit pipe covering shall be installed where pipes pass thru finished areas and shall be chromium plated spring type as manufactured by Kenney, Connecticut Stamping and Bending Company, Dearborne or approved equal.
- B. Unions or flanges shall be provided throughout the piping system to facilitate the removal and servicing of all valves, equipment, items, etc.

#### 230521 FOUNDATIONS

- A. All concrete and reinforcing steel for foundation slabs under equipment shall be provided by the Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor. Foundations shall extend beyond all equipment by 4" in all directions and shall be made from 3,000 PSI concrete reinforced with 10/10 x 6/6 wire mesh. Foundation surfaces shall be troweled smooth and edges shall be tooled. Interior equipment pads shall be painted OSHA approved yellow.

#### 230522 VIBRATION ISOLATION

- A. Pad type isolators shall be 3/4" thick bridge bearing quality neoprene ribbed or waffled on both sides. Pads shall be selected for a maximum durometer of 50 and designed for 15% deflection. Where required, steel load-spreading plates shall be incorporated between the equipment and the neoprene pad.
- B. Flexible duct connections, both at inlet and discharge of furnaces shall be made of 30 oz working glass fiber coated with neoprene, sewn together at edges and joints. These flexible connections shall withstand the operating air-pressure, shall not permit air leakage, and shall not transmit vibration.

#### 230523 PAINTING

- A. All exposed mechanical equipment in finished areas including ductwork, pipe hangers, etc., shall be painted the same color as the adjacent ceiling and walls by the General Contractor. Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor shall treat and prepare all items as necessary to receive paint.

#### 230524 PIPE MARKERS

- A. Markers shall have wording, wording colors, and wording background in accordance with ANSI A13.1. Markers shall have letters approximately 1" high on appropriate background, flow arrows, and shall be located on the pipe at intervals not exceeding 10'-0" where in mechanical spaces and 25'-0" intervals where above ceilings. Markers shall be plastic with markers on piping completely encircling the pipe with overlap and permanent tension in the marker to grip the pipe firmly with the need of adhesives. Provide markers on all piping in the building. Wording of markers shall be as follows:
  - 1. Refrigerant Piping
  - 2. Condensate Piping

#### 230525 NAMEPLATES

- A. All packaged units, split systems, ERVs, air scrubbers, heaters, and power ventilators shall be furnished with engraved plastic laminated labels permanently attached to the equipment. Lettering shall be 3/8" tall. Label shall include equipment number, area served, substantial completion date, number and size of filters, number and size of belts, and capacities. Substantial completion date shall be on a separate label so as to allow equipment nameplates to be installed prior to final acceptance.

#### 230526 OPENINGS

- A. The Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor shall furnish all blockouts, sleeves and openings required for their work. Pipe sleeves, where firestop penetration system allows, shall be schedule 40 black steel pipe and shall be provided where pipes pass through walls and floor. Sleeves through walls shall butt flush with the wall finish and shall be of sufficient size to

permit passage of pipe covering through the area where pipe is installed. Sleeves through floors shall extend 3/4" above the finished floor. Specifically inform the General Contractor as to the correct size and location of openings and sleeves to ensure that they shall be cast in their proper location. Sleeves and duct opening frames shall be furnished and installed by the Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor. Failure to indicate such openings in time to avoid delaying the General Contractor shall result in the Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor providing all cutting and repairing at his own expense. Repairing shall include sealing tight around pipe sleeves and duct frames in a neat and professional manner and in accordance with the "Cutting and Patching" section of this specification.

- B. All penetrations in rated floors, firewalls and any other rated separations shall be protected using a through-penetration firestopping method with an "F" rating equivalent to the rating of the membrane being penetrated for particular piping materials used and membrane construction type. Floor penetrations shall additionally have a "T" rating equivalent to the rating of the floor being penetrated. Through-penetration firestop systems shall be installed and tested in accordance with ASTM E814 or UL 1479.

#### 230527 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. The Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor shall do all cutting and patching necessary to install all equipment as required under his contract, and shall re-establish all finishes to their original condition where cutting and patching occur. All cutting of the structure, where unavoidable, must be approved by the Engineer and be done by the General Contractor, but shall be paid for by the Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor.

#### 230528 PIPING PRESSURE TESTING

- A. The Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor shall make the following tests before the systems are insulated or covered by construction. The systems shall have no decrease in pressure during the test periods. All system components shall be protected from test pressures that exceed manufacturer's design limits.
- B. Notify Architect and Engineer 48 hours in advance of all tests.
- C. Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor shall provide written report of each test.
- D. Refrigerant piping shall be tested in accordance with Chapter 11 of the North Carolina Mechanical Code and unit manufacturer's recommendations.
- E. Condensate piping shall be tested by applying a hydrostatic pressure of 100-psig for a period of two hours.
- F. No caulking of joints shall be permitted. Any joint found to leak under this test shall be broken, remade, and a new test applied. Welded joint pinhole leaks shall be repaired by welding; however, welds that show numerous pinholes shall be replaced.



## 230529 SEISMIC RESTRAINTS

- A. The Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor shall be responsible for providing restraints to resist the earthquake effects on all mechanical system components within the building. The requirements for these restraints are found in Section 1613 of the North Carolina Building Code. All tables and references shall conform to building's location. Restraints shall be per Seismic Design Category C for an Occupancy Category IV building.
- B. The Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor shall refer to the latest edition of the "Seismic Restraints Manual Guidelines for Mechanical Systems" published by SMACNA for guidelines to determine the correct restraints for sheet metal ducts, piping and conduit, etc. This manual refers to Seismic Hazard Level (SHL).
- C. The anchorage of the equipment and machinery for this project shall be an integral part of the design and specification of such equipment and machinery. Manufacturers of all equipment including unit ventilators, chiller, air handling units, pumps, boilers, tanks, compressors, etc. shall provide anchorage details, isolators, seismic mounts and restraints, etc. necessary to comply with Section 1613 to the Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor for installation. It shall be the Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor's responsibility to provide and install the equipment, machinery, systems, and assemblies, etc. for this project that satisfy these requirements. Where seismic restraints are required, the Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor shall provide restraints per details and instructions included in SMACNA's Seismic Restraints Manual. The Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor shall include shop drawings of the specific methods of seismic restraint to be used for this project before installation of piping, ductwork, and equipment.
- D. The Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor shall retain the services of a Professional Engineer registered in the State of North Carolina to design seismic restraint elements required for this project. The Engineer's computations, bearing his professional seal, shall accompany shop drawings that show Code compliance including certification that the seismic system components comply with the testing requirements of Section 1707. Computations and shop drawings shall be submitted for review prior to the purchasing of materials, equipment, systems, and assemblies.
- E. Internal seismic restraint elements of manufactured equipment shall be certified by a professional engineer retained by the manufacturer. Such certificate applies only to internal elements of the equipment. All equipment anchorage requirements shall be coordinated with the building structure and shall be compatible thereto. All such anchorage shall be reviewed by the project's structural engineer.
- F. The Professional Engineer retained by the Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor for seismic restraint calculations shall visit the job site as necessary to comply with the Special Inspections requirement of the Code. This engineer shall provide in writing verification of compliance of the installation with the approved seismic submittal. This verification shall be submitted as a Special Inspections Report and shall bear the Engineer's professional seal. Job site inspections by other than this engineer are not acceptable.
- G. Review of the seismic design and shop drawings by the Engineer/Architect or his agent shall not relieve the Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor of his responsibility to comply with the seismic or any other requirements of the North Carolina Building Code.

## 230530 TESTING AND BALANCING

- A. Testing and balancing of heating, ventilating, and air conditioning systems shall be performed and certified by an AABC or NEBB certified Test and Balance Contractor as a subcontractor to the Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor. All instruments used shall be accurately calibrated and in good working order. The Test and Balance Contractor shall test in strict accordance to the Standards of AABC or NEBB.
- B. Air balance and testing shall not begin until the systems have been installed in full working order and shown to be operating satisfactory on both heating and cooling. The Contractor shall place all heating, ventilating, and air conditioning systems into full operation and shall continue the operation until balancing is completed. All operational cost shall be borne by the Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor. The Architect and Engineer shall be given one week advance notice of when tests are to be made.
- C. Upon completion of the heating, ventilating, and air conditioning systems, the Test and Balance Contractor shall compile the test data and submit three copies of the completed test data to the Engineer for evaluation and approval. At final inspection, the Test and Balance Contractor and Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor shall have a copy of test and balance report and all necessary personnel and equipment to facilitate spot-checking of test and balance data. Final payment to the Contractor shall be withheld until the test and balance data has been approved.
- D. Testing Procedure (AIR):
  - 1. Test and adjust air handling unit fan's RPM and CFM to design requirements. Record all data.
  - 2. Test and record motor full load amperes on all motors.
  - 3. Check and record coil leaving air temperatures from coils when in full cooling, full heating, and from full hot gas reheat coil.
  - 4. Adjust all main supply, exhaust, return, relief, and outside air ducts to proper design CFM when air handling systems are in normal operating mode and in outside air economizer mode. Record supply, return, exhaust, relief, and outside air data.
  - 5. Test and adjust each diffuser, grille and register for supply, exhaust, or return systems to within 10% of design requirements. Record all data.
  - 6. All adjustments to air diffusing devices where possible shall be made in trunk or run out dampers, not at diffuser volume control.
  - 7. Exhaust fans shall be tested and balanced for the requirement as shown on the plans. Record all data.
  - 8. The Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor shall make any changes in the pulleys, belts, filters, dampers, or valves necessary or as recommended by the Engineer for correct balance at no additional cost to the Owner.

## 230531 INSTRUCTIONS

- A. The Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor shall give an instruction and training period in the operation of the apparatus to the persons who will be in charge of the system. See Division 1 specifications for listing and training requirements.

#### 230532 MAINTENANCE DATA

- A. For all items requiring maintenance, the Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor shall furnish two weeks prior to Final Acceptance and deliver to the Owner's representative on the job multiple copies of complete data as prepared by the manufacturer covering the details of operation and maintenance and complete parts list for all equipment specified. Each copy of the maintenance data shall be assembled into a 3-ring hardback binder with indexing and label on cover and spine. Data shall include:
1. Index with page numbers.
  2. List of all subcontractors and suppliers with names, addresses, and phone numbers.
  3. Contractor's certificate of Final Acceptance.
  4. Copy of all warranties.
  5. Equipment model numbers, etc. indicated and referenced with the same mark as shown on equipment on the drawings.
  6. Filter schedules of sizes and quantities for all equipment requiring filters referenced by mark on the drawings.
  7. Equipment summary showing all capacities and ratings.
  8. Certified test and balance report.
  9. Start-up and test reports for equipment.
  10. Complete start-up, operation, and shut-down procedures for each system.
  11. Lubrication schedules and types of lubricates.
  12. All submittal data and shop drawings, unless included in a separate manual.
  13. See Division 1 specifications for additional requirements.

#### 230533 AS BUILT DRAWINGS

- A. The Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor shall maintain "during the course of the work" a set of specifications and drawings marked up to show the work as installed, including a minimum of two dimensions to indicate locations and elevations of buried work. Upon completion of the work, return this set of drawings to the Architect.

#### 230534 GUARANTEE

- A. The Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor shall guarantee the entire heating and air conditioning system subject to the General Conditions of these specifications, except:
1. Refrigeration compressors for split system heat pump units shall have a four-year extended warranty for the compressors only. Refrigerant, labor, freight, and other required parts shall be provided or paid for by the Owner.

END OF SECTION 230500

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 230900 - INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC

### PART 1 -GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Furnish and install an electric control system to fulfill the intent of the drawings and specifications. The systems shall include all necessary labor, electrical wiring, controllers, programmable sensors for temperature and relative humidity, zone and bypass dampers, devices, and materials for a complete installed control system. The control system shall be erected, assembled, and installed by factory-trained mechanics regularly employed by the control manufacturer or manufacturer's authorized distributor as a subcontractor to the Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor. All equipment, unless specified to the contrary, shall be fully proportional and shall be the product of the control manufacturer.
- B. The control diagrams indicated on the drawings or specified herein show the intended sequences of operation of the various control systems and shall be followed as closely as practicable. All required devices and control schemes may not be shown on the drawings. It is the Contractor's responsibility to provide all devices and control schemes whether shown or not.
- C. Additional General Requirements for Controls:
  - 1. All wiring, conduit, and panels for all temperature controls.
  - 2. Power required for controls shall be provided by the Controls Contractor from points coordinated with the Electrical Contractor.
  - 3. Perform all wiring in accordance with all local and national codes and Division 26 of these specifications.
  - 4. Surge transient protection shall be incorporated in the design of the system to protect electrical components in all system components as described below under "General Product Description."
  - 5. System modifications necessary to fine-tune sequences during commissioning of systems at no additional cost to the Owner.
  - 6. Mount control devices inside of a UL-listed steel enclosure panel, with hinged locking cover and key locking latch.
- D. Wiring and Controls:
  - 1. Control Contractor shall be responsible for the installation and wiring of temperature controls, control interlock wiring, electrical controls and devices in the temperature control system.

### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE AND STANDARDS

- A. Materials and equipment shall be the cataloged products of manufacturers regularly engaged in production and installation of integrated control systems and shall be manufacturer's latest standard design that complies with the specification requirements.
- B. All products used in this project installation shall be new and currently being manufactured. This installation shall not be used as a test site for any new products. Spare parts shall be available for at least five years after completion of this contract.
- C. Install system using competent workmen who are fully trained in the installation of integrated control systems.
- D. Single source responsibility of Contractor shall be the complete installation and proper operation of the control system and shall include debugging and proper calibration of each component in the entire system.
- E. Contractor shall have an in-place support facility within 100 miles of the site with technical staff, spare parts inventory and all necessary test and diagnostic equipment.
- F. The Contractor and manufacturer representative shall support the installed system for a minimum of 1 year. The support shall provide full material warranty of controllers and 8 hours of on-site training.
- G. All electronic equipment shall conform to the requirements of FCC Regulation, Part 15, Section 15, governing Radio Frequency Electromagnetic Interference and be so labeled.
- H. Design and build all system components to be fault-tolerant.
  - 1. Satisfactory operation without damage at 110% and 85% of rated voltage and at plus 3-Hertz variation in line frequency.
  - 2. Static, transient and short-circuit protection on all inputs and outputs.
  - 3. Protect communication lines against incorrect wiring, static transients and induced magnetic interference.
  - 4. Network-connected devices to be A.C. coupled or equivalent or that any single device failure will not disrupt or halt network communication.
  - 5. All real time clocks and data file RAM to be battery-backed for a minimum 72 hours and include local and system low battery indication.
  - 6. All programs shall retain their memory for a minimum of 7 days upon loss of power.
- I. Comply with NFPA 90A, Standard for Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems.
- J. Provide wiring in accordance with NEC requirements and Division 26 of these Specifications.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit copies of manufacturer's technical product data for each control device furnished. Indicate dimensions, capacities, performance, electrical characteristics, material finishes; also include installation and start-up instructions.

- B. Shop Drawings: Submit copies of shop drawings for each control system, containing at least the following information:
  - 1. Schematic flow diagram of system showing fans, pumps, coils, dampers, valves, control devices and all interconnections between devices.
  - 2. Indicate all required electrical wiring. Clearly differentiate between portions of wiring that are factory-installed and portions to be field-installed.
  - 3. Written description of sequence of operation.
- C. Number of copies of Product Data and Shop Drawings shall be per Division 1 of these Specifications.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Provide equipment and control devices in factory shipping carton. Maintain in cartons while shipping, storing and handling as required to prevent equipment damage and to keep dirt and moisture from equipment. Store equipment and materials inside and protect from weather.

## PART 2 -PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PRODUCTS

- A. Building controls, controllers, and communications between devices shall be provided as necessary to achieve specified sequences of operation.
- B. Room sensors shall be combination heating, cooling and relative humidity sensors and shall be programmable, digital, low voltage, automatic changeover, dual setpoint type with the configuration/programming be stored in non-volatile memory or by battery backup, key pad lockout, temporary program override, temperature warmer/cooler adjustment, and night temperature setback control.
  - 1. Temperature control shall have heat anticipation, fan on-off switch, multi-stage cooling control and multi-stage heating control to match units controlled.
  - 2. Humidity control sensors shall be thin-film capacitive type sensor with on-board nonvolatile memory, accuracy to plus or minus two percent (2%) at 0 to 90% RH, 12 - 30 VDC input voltage, analog output (0 - 10 VDC or 4 - 20mA output). Operating range shall be 0 to 100% RH and 32 to 140 degree F.
  - 3. Space mounted sensors shall have LCD display.
  - 4. Sensors shall have all capabilities to satisfy the sequences of operation as specified.
- C. Motor operated control dampers for control of outside air and/or return air that will not be integral to the equipment and Zone and Bypass dampers shall be furnished by the Control System Contractor. See Section 230500 for specification of motor operated control dampers.
- D. Control damper actuators shall be furnished by the Control System Contractor. Two-position or proportional electric actuators shall be direct-mount type sized to provide a minimum of 5 in-lb torque per square foot of damper area. Damper actuators shall be spring return type. Operators shall be heavy-duty electronic type for positioning automatic dampers in response to a control

signal. Motor shall be of sufficient size to operate damper positively and smoothly to obtain correct sequence as indicated. All applications requiring proportional operation shall utilize truly proportional electric actuators.

- E. Duct-Mounted Temperature Sensors: 20,000-ohm thermistor temperature sensors with an accuracy of  $\pm 0.2^{\circ}\text{C}$ . Outside air sensors shall include an integral sun shield. Duct-mounted sensors shall have an insertion measuring probe of a length appropriate for the duct size, with a temperature range of -40 to 160 degrees F. The sensor shall include a utility box and a gasket to prevent air leakage and vibration noise. For all mixed air and preheat air applications, install bendable averaging duct sensors with a minimum 8 - foot long sensor element. These devices shall have accuracy of 0.5 degrees, F., over the entire range.
- F. Duct-Mounted Air Pressure Transmitters: Pressure transmitters shall be constructed to withstand 100% pressure over-range without damage in NEMA 1 housing minimum, to hold calibrated accuracy when subject to a momentary 40% over-range input, maintain accuracy up to 20/1 ratio turndown, and to have reference accuracy of +0.25%, or 0.5% of full span.
- G. Current Sensitive Switches: Solid state, split core current switch that operates when the current level (sensed by the internal current transformer) exceeds the adjustable trip point. Current switch to include an integral LED for indication of trip condition and a current level below trip set point. Manufacturer: Veris, or approved equivalent.
- H. Relays: Start/stop relay model shall provide either momentary or maintained switching action as appropriate for the motor being started. All relays shall be plugged in, interchangeable, mounted on a subbase and wired to numbered terminals strips. Relays installed in panels shall all be DPDT with indicating lamp. Relays installed outside of controlled devices shall be enclosed in a NEMA enclosure suitable for the location. Relays shall be labeled with UR symbol. RIB-style relays are acceptable for remote enable/disable.
- I. Control Power Transformers: Provide step-down transformers for all DDC controllers and devices as required. Transformers shall be sized for the load, but shall be sized for 50 watts, minimum. Transformers shall be UL listed Class 2 type, for 120VAC/24VAC operation.
- J. Line voltage protection: All control system panels that are powered by 120 VAC circuits shall be provided with surge protection. This protection is in addition to any internal protection provided by the manufacturer. The protection shall meet UL, ULC 1449, IEEE C62.41B. A grounding conductor, (minimum 12 AWG), shall be brought to each control panel.
- K. Carbon Monoxide (CO)/Nitrogen Dioxide (NO<sub>2</sub>) Sensing System: System shall consist of control panel with integral and/or remote CO sensors and NO<sub>2</sub> sensors and interface to the control system. Quantity of each type sensor shall be a function of sensor coverage capability. Sensors shall have LED status indicators, electrochemical element sensors for CO, and electromechanical element sensors for NO<sub>2</sub>. All sensing elements shall be capable of field calibration or field replacement with factory calibrated sensing elements. Control panel shall have LED status indicators, visual alarm, minimum 80 dB audible alarm, microprocessor based control, programmable time delays, and 4-20mA analog output or RS-485 digital signal.
  - 1. CO sensors shall be measure 0-25- ppm full scale, with accuracy of  $\pm 3\%$  of full scale and  $< 5\%$  annual drift. Sensors shall be mounted 3-7 feet from floor.



2. NO<sub>2</sub> sensors shall measure 0-10 ppm full scale, with accuracy of +6.5% full scale and <+2% monthly drift. NO<sub>2</sub> sensors shall be mounted half the ceiling height and above the vehicle exhaust outlet.
3. Setpoints shall be:

<b>Toxic Gas</b>	<b>First Alarm Setpoint (TLV-TWA)</b>	<b>Second Alarm Setpoint (TLV-STEL)</b>	<b>Area of Coverage</b>
Carbon Monoxide (CO)	35 ppm	75 ppm	5000 SF/50 FT Max
Nitrogen Dioxide (NO <sub>2</sub> )	1 ppm	2 ppm	5000 SF/50 FT Max

- L. Condensate Level Sensor shall be plenum-rated water level detection device, conforming to UL 508, consisting of one or more moisture sensors and a NO dry contact to serve as a binary input point connected to the unit's controls to disable mechanical cooling in the event the condensate drain is blocked. Device shall be mounted in the unit's auxiliary drain pan located at the lowest possible level in the auxiliary drain pan. Sensor shall be retained by clips and adhesive tape.

### PART 3 -EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION - GENERAL

- A. Install systems and materials in accordance with manufacturer's instructions in a neat workmanlike manner.
- B. Coordinate with other trades on the project as the work progresses so that each will be aware of the extent of all work. Carefully plan all work and check for interferences before installation. No extras will be allowed for changes caused by failure to check for interferences.
- C. Provide structural supports as required for panels and control devices.
- D. Supervise installation of all control dampers.
- E. Install metering devices away from bends and elbows with minimum upstream and downstream straight distances per manufacturer's recommendations and as shown on Drawings.

#### 3.2 CONTROL WIRING

- A. Install color-coded control wiring without splices between terminal points in accordance with National Electrical Code in accordance with the Electrical Division, Division 26, of these specifications.
- B. Install circuits over 25 volts with color-coded No. 12 or 14.
- C. Install circuits under 25 volts with color-coded cable as recommended and approved by the manufacturer.
- D. All wiring and cable used shall be plenum rated.

- E. Wiring above hard ceilings, in walls, or where exposed including in mechanical rooms shall be in 3/4" minimum EMT conduit with steel-plated hexagonal compression connectors. Wiring above lay-in ceilings may be installed as properly supported cable. Flexible metallic conduit shall be 1/2" minimum in size and not exceed 3'-0" in length.
- F. All wiring in floor slabs or on exterior shall be run in rigid conduit.

### 3.3 TESTING

- A. When installation of the control system is complete, calibrate equipment and verify transmission media operation before the system is placed on-line.
- B. Provide a cross check of each control point within the control system by making a comparison between the control command and the field-controlled device.
- C. Replace any work found defective. After replacement, repeat test.

### 3.4 START-UP AND DEMONSTRATION

- A. After completion and testing of the installation, regulate, adjust and service as necessary all control devices in the systems, placing each item in complete and proper operation.
- B. Demonstrate all systems to Owner, Architect and Engineer, and that all are operable from local controls in the specified failure mode upon electronic control system failure or loss of power.
- C. Complete all commissioning requirements as necessary to this scope of work.

### 3.5 INSTRUCTION

- A. Provide the services of manufacturer's technical personnel for 8 hours of instruction to Owner's personnel in the operation, maintenance and programming of the control system. Orient the training specifically to the system installed rather than a general training course.
- B. Provide training manuals, equipment and material required for classroom training.
- C. Training to include the following items:
  - 1. Operation of equipment
  - 2. Programming
  - 3. Diagnostics
  - 4. Failure recovery procedures
  - 5. Alarm formats (where applicable)
  - 6. Maintenance and calibration
  - 7. Trouble shooting, diagnostics, and repair instructions

## PART 4 -POINTS LISTS AND SEQUENCES OF OPERATION

### 4.1 SUMMARY

- A. The drawings indicate the individual types of systems and the points required in each system.
- B. System sequences of operation shall be as indicated on the drawings and as specified herein.

END OF SECTION 230900

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 260000 – ELECTRICAL, BASICS

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 GENERAL

- A. Applicable requirements of any Instructions to Bidders, General Conditions of the Contract, and/or Supplemental Conditions shall be a part of the Electrical Specifications. The electrical contractor shall examine all contract documents before submitting a proposal.
- B. The electrical work shall be performed by an electrical contractor, suitably licensed for the scope of work of this specific project.
- C. The electrical contractor shall assume total responsibility for any portion of the work provided by his subcontractors.

### 1.3 CODES AND STANDARDS

- A. Building Codes:

- 1. National Fire Protection Association No. 70, National Electrical Code (NEC)
  - 2. National Fire Protection Association No. 72, National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code
  - 3. North Carolina State Building Code, Latest Edition and Revisions (NCSBC)
  - 4. North Carolina State Fire Code, Latest Edition and Revisions
  - 5. National Electrical Safety Code (NESC)
  - 6. National Bureau of Standards (NBS)
  - 7. Local Codes where applicable

- B. Industry Standards:

- 1. Underwriter's Laboratories, Inc. Standards and approved listings (UL)
  - 2. Electrical Testing Laboratories Standards (ETL)
  - 3. National Electrical Manufacturers Association Standards (NEMA)
  - 4. Insulated Power Cable Engineers Association Standards (IPCEA)
  - 5. American National Standards Institute (ANSI)
  - 6. American Society for Testing Materials Standards (ASTM)
  - 7. Canadian Standards Association (CSA)

### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. These materials shall be third party listed or labeled in accordance with the General Statutes of the State (example: UL, ETL, CSA, etc.). This paragraph applies to all electrical specification sections under specification divisions 26, 27, and 28.

## 1.5 SCOPE OF WORK

- A. It is the intent and meaning of the drawings and specifications to call for finished work that has been tested and is ready for operation. The electrical contractor shall take this into consideration and include in his proposal allowance for contingencies that will allow him to provide minor pieces of materials and labor not specifically indicated but required for the job to operate properly. This paragraph is intended to insure that a complete job will be provided without requests for minor extras.
- B. It shall be understood that where the words “furnish,” “provide,” and/or “install” are used, it is intended that this CONTRACTOR shall purchase and install completely all material necessary and required for this particular item, system, equipment, etc.

## 1.6 ELECTRICAL SERVICE

- A. The electrical contractor shall be totally responsible for coordination with the Utility Company and assistance to the OWNER to obtain a permanent electrical service for the structure. He shall act as coordinator between the Utility Company and the OWNER and shall supply the Utility Company with equipment characteristics, load data, etc. Any installation, connection, underground service or special fees charged by the Utility Company for the new service shall be paid by the OWNER. Construction and testing power shall be paid for as described in the General Conditions of the project manual.
- B. Electrical service to the structure shall be 120/208 volts, 3 phase, 4 wire.
- C. The electrical contractor shall coordinate the electrical service, metering and metering equipment with the local utility company for arrangements, locations, connections, etc.
- D. Utility transformer pads shall be installed by the electrical contractor. Coordinate equipment pad requirements with the local utility company.
- E. Current transformer cabinets and self-contained meter cabinets shall be installed by the electrical contractor, unless directed otherwise by the Utility Company. Coordinate metering requirements with the Utility Company before rough-in of service raceways.
- F. The electrical service entrance raceways shall be installed by the electrical contractor and sized as shown on the contract drawings, or as required by the Utility Company. Service entrance conductors will be provided and installed by the Utility Company to the line side of the metering equipment. Service entrance conductors from the metering equipment to the service equipment shall be provided by the electrical contractor. Load side connections shall be made by the electrical contractor.

## 1.7 RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. A set of drawings covering the electrical contract will be provided to the electrical contractor to mark in color all changes, modifications, or revisions effected during construction. These field mark-up drawings are to be turned over to the electrical designer.

- B. The electrical contractor shall provide final installed photographs of switchboards and panelboards. Photographs shall clearly show equipment designations, manufacturer nameplates, breaker positions, breaker ratings, and directory descriptions.

#### 1.8 APPROVAL OF MATERIALS

- A. See project manual contract documents for pre-proposal substitution requirements.
- B. Construction phase: The CONTRACTOR shall submit his proposal on the specified materials and equipment, or their equivalent, provided the words "or equal" or "or approved equal" follow the named manufacturers. If the above phrases do not appear, the specified manufacturers shall be furnished without substitution. Equivalent shall be interpreted to mean an item of material or equipment, similar to that named and which is suitable for the same use and capable of performing the same functions as that named, with the Design Team being the judge of equality.
- C. Where no specific material or equipment type is mentioned, any first-class product of a reputable manufacturer may be used provided it conforms to the requirements of the specifications.

#### 1.9 SHOP DRAWINGS AND SUBMITTAL DATA PROCEDURES

- A. The CONTRACTOR shall submit PDF files of shop drawings, certified prints, literature, and product data sheets to the Design Team for all major items of equipment and materials for review and approval. It is preferred that all electrical submittals for the project shall be submitted at one and the same time.
- B. Product data sheets with multiple components, part numbers, etc. shall be clearly marked or highlighted to identify what specific product/model/part number/component is proposed for this project. All instances of the proposed part number components in the product data shall be marked or highlighted throughout product data sheets submitted.
- C. The CONTRACTOR shall analyze all shop drawings and submittal data and certify that they meet requirements of Contract Drawings and Specifications, prior to delivery to the Design Team. CONTRACTOR Certification shall be in the form of suitable approval stamp placed on each shop drawing/submittal submitted.
  - 1. If the shop drawings or submittal data deviate from the Contract Documents, the CONTRACTOR shall advise the Design Team of deviations in writing, accompanying the shop drawings and submittal data, including the reason for deviations.
- D. If the Design Team deems submittal data is either incomplete or incorrect, a resubmittal will be required. Where a resubmittal is not necessary but confirmation of receipt of review comments is requested, confirmation shall be submitted in writing.
- E. At least one set of all final submittal data, shop drawings, certified prints, etc., shall be maintained at the job site and available to representatives of the Design Team.
- F. Approval by the Design Team of shop drawings and submittal data is for general conformance with the contract documents and design concept.

1. Such approval does not relieve the CONTRACTOR of responsibility for compliance with the project drawings and specifications.
  2. Such approval for any materials, apparatus, devices, and layouts shall not relieve the CONTRACTOR from the responsibility of furnishing same of proper dimensions, size, quantity, quality and all performance characteristics to efficiently complete the requirements and intent of the contract documents.
  3. Such approval shall not relieve the CONTRACTOR from responsibility for errors of any sort on the shop drawings.
- G. Physical sizes of equipment used in the design layout are those of reputable equipment manufacturers. The CONTRACTOR is responsible for providing equipment that will fit the space available. If the CONTRACTOR elects to use equipment that results in conflicts with space clearance or codes, it shall be the responsibility of the CONTRACTOR to correct at his expense. The CONTRACTOR shall be responsible for providing code clearances. Where equipment is designated for existing space, the CONTRACTOR shall make necessary field measurements to ascertain space requirements, including those for connections; and shall furnish and install such sizes and shapes of equipment that the final installation shall suit the intent and meaning of the drawings and specifications.
- H. Catalog Data for OWNER:
1. The CONTRACTOR shall provide compilations of catalog data, bound in suitable loose-leaf binders, for each manufactured item of equipment used in the electrical work. These shall be presented to the Design Team for transmittal to the OWNER before the final inspection is made. Data shall include printed installation, operation, and maintenance instructions for each item, indexed by product with heavy sheet dividers and tabs. All warranties shall be included with each item. Each manufacturer's name, address, and telephone number shall be clearly indicated. Generally, shop drawings and submittal data alone are not adequate for catalog data.
- I. Record Documents for OWNER:
1. Conductor and cable megger test results.
  2. Field mark-up as-built drawings.
  3. Grounding electrode system test results.
  4. Seismic controls Special Inspection Report.
  5. Circuit breaker trip settings.
  6. Generator start-up test results.
  7. Automatic transfer switch settings.
  8. Communications horizontal cable:
    - a. Test results.
    - b. Cable schedule.
    - c. Cable administration drawings.
  9. Fire alarm system:
    - a. NFPA 72 Fire Alarm System Record of Completion.
    - b. System Status and Programming Report.
    - c. System operational matrix.
    - d. Digital copy of system software on USB flash drive.



10. Emergency responder radio coverage system:

- a. Documentation of system acceptance by the local Fire Marshal / AHJ.
- b. RF Survey / Shop Drawings: Final installed measurement drawings of each floor of the building which indicate relative RF field strength for each frequency and band of interest.

11. Warranty documents.

1.10 DRAWINGS AND SPECIFICATIONS

- A. The Electrical drawings and specifications are complementary each to the other, and what may be called for by one shall be as binding as if called for by both. The drawings are diagrammatic and indicate generally the location of outlets, devices, equipment wiring, etc and show the general arrangement of raceways, fixtures, and equipment. Drawings shall be followed as closely as actual building construction and the work of other trades will permit; however, all work shall suit the finished surroundings and/or trim.
- B. Any omission from either the drawings or the specifications are unintentional, and it shall be the responsibility of the CONTRACTOR to call to the attention of the Design Team any pertinent omissions before submitting a proposal. Complete and working systems are required, whether every small item of material is shown and specified or not.
- C. The electrical work shall conform to the requirements shown on all of the drawings. General and Structural drawings shall take precedence over Electrical Drawings. Because of small scale of the electrical drawings, it is not practical to indicate offsets, fittings and accessories that may be required. The CONTRACTOR shall investigate the structural and finish conditions affecting the work and shall arrange his work accordingly, providing such fittings and accessories as may be required to meet such conditions, without additional cost to the OWNER and as directed by the Design Team.
- D. Load circuits shall be installed as indicated on the drawings. Circuit number revisions will not be accepted unless approved in writing by the Engineer.

1.11 COORDINATION OF WORK

- A. It is understood and agreed that by submitting a proposal, the CONTRACTOR has, by careful examination, satisfied himself as to the nature and location of the work, the conformation of the ground, the character, quality and quantity of the materials to be encountered, the general and local conditions and all other matters which can and may affect the work under this contract. The CONTRACTOR shall be held responsible for visiting the site and thoroughly familiarizing himself with the existing conditions and also any contractual requirements as may be set forth in other divisions of the specifications and in other contract documents. No extras will be considered because of additional work necessitated by obvious job conditions that are not indicated on the drawings.
- B. The CONTRACTOR shall compare the electrical drawings and specifications with the drawings and specifications for other trades and shall report any discrepancies between them to the Design Team. If needed, request from the Design Team written instructions for changes

necessary in the electrical work. The electrical work shall be installed in cooperation with other trades installing interrelated work. Before installation, the CONTRACTOR shall make proper provisions to avoid interferences in a manner approved by the Design Team. All changes required in the work of the CONTRACTOR caused by his neglect to do so shall be made by him at his expense.

- C. Location of electrical raceways, switches, panels, equipment, fixtures, etc., shall be adjusted to accommodate the work to interferences anticipated and encountered. The CONTRACTOR shall determine the exact route and location of each electrical raceway prior to make up and assembly.
- D. Right-of-Way: Lines which pitch shall have the right-of-way over those which do not pitch. For example; steam, condensate and plumbing drains shall normally have right of way. Lines whose elevations cannot be changed shall have the right of way over lines whose elevations can be changed.
- E. Offsets and changes in direction of electrical raceways shall be made as required to maintain proper headroom and to clear pitched lines whether or not indicated on the drawings. The CONTRACTOR shall furnish and install elbows, pull boxes, etc., as required to affect these offsets, transitions, and changes in directions. Conflicts between electrical raceways, fixtures, etc., and ductwork which cannot be resolved otherwise, will be resolved by the Design Team.
- F. The CONTRACTOR shall install all electrical work to permit removal (without damage to other parts) of any equipment requiring periodic replacement or maintenance. The CONTRACTOR shall arrange electrical raceways and equipment to permit ready access to valves, cocks, traps, starters, motors, control components, etc., and to clear the opening of swinging and overhead doors and of access panels.
- G. Equipment and Materials (General):
  - 1. Materials shall be new and shall bear the manufacturer's name, trade name, and listing label in every case where a standard has been established for the particular material. The equipment to be furnished under this specification shall be essentially the standard product of manufacturers regularly engaged in the production of the required type of equipment and shall be the manufacturer's latest approved design.
  - 2. Electrical motors shall meet the minimum efficiency requirements identified in the Code of Federal Regulations 10 CFR Part 431.
  - 3. Delivery and Storage:
    - a. Store products to allow for inspection and measurement of quantity or counting of units.
    - b. Store products that are subject to damage by the elements, under cover in a weathertight enclosure above ground, with ventilation adequate to prevent condensation.

inhibitor for every 8 cubic feet of enclosure volume. Replace inhibitors every 90 days and at final inspection in the Design Team's presence. Rusty and/or corroded materials and equipment will be replaced at the direction of the Design Team.

- 2) Rusty and/or corroded materials and equipment will be replaced at the direction of the Design Team.
- c. Comply with product manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, humidity, ventilation, and weather-protection requirements for storage.
- d. Protect stored products from damage.
4. Equipment and materials of the same general type shall be of the same make throughout the work to provide uniform appearance, operation and maintenance.
5. At the completion of work; fixtures, equipment, and materials shall be cleaned and polished thoroughly and turned over to the OWNER in a condition satisfactory to the Design Team. Damage or defects, developing before acceptance of the work shall be corrected at the CONTRACTOR's expense.
6. Manufacturer's directions shall be followed completely in the delivery, storage, protection, and installation of all equipment and materials. The CONTRACTOR shall promptly notify the Design Team, in writing, of any conflicts between requirements of the Contract Documents and the manufacturer's directions and shall obtain the Design Team's written instructions before proceeding with the work. Should the CONTRACTOR perform any work that does not comply with the manufacturer's instructions, recommendations, or requirements; it shall be corrected at his expense as directed by the Design Team.

H. Sleeves, Inserts, Openings, Etc.:

1. Anchor bolts, sleeves, inserts, supports, etc., that may be required for electrical work shall be furnished, located, and installed by the electrical contractor. Where working under a subcontract for a General Contractor, the electrical contractor shall give sufficient information (marked and located) to the General Contractor in time for proper placement in the construction schedule. Should the electrical contractor delay or fail to provide sufficient information in time, the electrical contractor shall cut and patch construction as necessary and required to install electrical work, with finishes completed to the satisfaction of the Owner and the Design Team.

I. Cutting and Patching:

1. Cut, channel, chase, and drill floors, walls, partitions, ceilings, and other surfaces required to permit electrical installations. The electrical contractor shall be responsible for cutting and patching as required for the proper installation of electrical work for this project. Cutting shall be kept to a minimum. Repair and refinish disturbed finish materials and other surfaces to match adjacent undisturbed surfaces. Install new fireproofing where existing firestopping has been disturbed. Finishes shall be restored to the satisfaction of the Owner and the Design Team.

J. Locations and Measurements:

1. Outlets, equipment, fixtures, etc. are shown and located on the drawings as intended based on the Design Team's understood project scope. All measurements for installation

shall be verified on the project and coordinated with the drawings of other disciplines. In all cases, work shall suit the surrounding trim and/or decoration and construction. The locations of outlets for appliances shall be installed so that when connected they permit the proper installation of appliances. Slight relocations of outlets, devices, and equipment shall be made by the electrical contractor as required or as directed by the Design Team at no additional cost to the OWNER.

K. Workmanship:

1. Work shall be executed as required by the drawings and specifications, shall be done in a workmanlike manner by skilled mechanics, and shall present a neat, trim, and mechanical appearance when completed. All work shall be performed as required by the progress of the job.

L. Final Inspections and Equipment Demonstrations:

1. The CONTRACTOR shall acquire permits for construction & coordinate all required inspections with the office of the local electrical inspector and/or local authority having jurisdiction, if required. The CONTRACTOR shall provide the Owner two (2) copies of Electrical Inspectors' written reports.
2. The CONTRACTOR shall furnish ladders, required tools, and personnel to open equipment, fixtures, boxes, panels, etc. to enable the Design Team representatives to observe any parts of the installation they may request.
3. The CONTRACTOR shall furnish meters for observation of readings as directed by the Design Team representative. Meters to be furnished include: clamp-on type ammeter, voltmeter, insulation resistance tester (i.e., often called a megger), and clamp-on type ground resistance tester.

M. Operating Instructions:

1. At the completion of the entire installation, the CONTRACTOR shall arrange to operate each component of systems and then systems as a whole. When all the requirements of the plans and specifications have been met, the CONTRACTOR shall then arrange to instruct the OWNER's operating and maintenance personnel in the correct and proper procedures for the operation and maintenance of the systems

END OF SECTION 260000

## SECTION 260500 - BASIC ELECTRICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Supporting devices for electrical components.
  - 2. Cutting and patching for electrical construction.
  - 3. Touchup painting.
  - 4. Firestopping.
  - 5. Concrete equipment bases.
  - 6. Electricity-metering components.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
  - 1. Support channels and hardware.
  - 2. For materials to firestop cable and raceway penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies.
- B. Shop Drawings: UL details for firestopping cable and raceway penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with NFPA 70.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SUPPORTING DEVICES

- A. Metal Items for Use Indoors: Plain Steel.
- B. Metal Items for Use Outdoors or in Damp Locations: Hot-dip galvanized steel .

- C. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Preformed steel channels and angles with minimum 13/32 inch diameter holes at a maximum of 8 inch on center in at least one surface.
- D. Aluminum Slotted Support Systems: Preformed aluminum channels and angles with minimum 13/32 inch diameter holes at a maximum of 8 inch on center in at least one surface.
- E. Slotted Support Systems Fittings and Accessories: Products of the same manufacturer as channels.
- F. Raceway and Cable Supports: Manufactured clevis hangers, riser clamps, straps, threaded C-clamps with retainers, ceiling trapeze hangers, wall brackets, and spring-steel clamps or click-type hangers.
- G. Expansion Anchors:
  - 1. Inside: Carbon-steel wedge or sleeve type.
  - 2. Outside: Hot-dip galvanized steel wedge or sleeve type.
- H. Toggle Bolts:
  - 1. Inside: All steel springhead type.
  - 2. Outside: Hot-dip galvanized steel springhead type.

## 2.2 TOUCHUP PAINT

- A. For Equipment: Equipment manufacturer's paint selected to match installed equipment finish.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Zinc-rich paint recommended by item manufacturer.

## 2.3 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Penetration Firestopping Systems: Systems that resist spread of fire, passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of construction penetrated. Penetration firestopping systems shall be compatible with one another, with the substrates forming openings, and with penetrating items if any.

## 2.4 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Concrete: Unless detailed otherwise; 3000-psi, 28-day compressive strength with welded wire fabric reinforcement.

## 2.5 EQUIPMENT FOR UTILITY COMPANY'S ELECTRICITY METERING

- A. Current-Transformer Cabinets: Comply with requirements of electrical power utility company.
- B. Meter Sockets: Comply with requirements of electrical power utility company.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate chases, slots, inserts, sleeves, and openings with general construction work and arrange during progress of construction to facilitate the electrical installations that follow.
  - 1. Set inserts, sleeves, raceways, boxes, etc. in poured-in-place concrete, masonry work, and other structural components as they are constructed.
- B. Sequence, coordinate, and integrate installing electrical materials and equipment for efficient flow of the Work. Coordinate installing large equipment requiring positioning before closing in the building.
- C. Coordinate location of access panels and doors for electrical items that are concealed by finished surfaces.
- D. Coordinate electrical service connections to components furnished by utility companies.
  - 1. Coordinate installation and connection of exterior underground and overhead utilities and services, including provision for electricity-metering components.
  - 2. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and of utility company providing electrical power and other services.

### 3.2 ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Headroom Maintenance: If mounting heights or other location criteria are not indicated, arrange and install components and equipment to provide the maximum possible headroom.
- B. Materials and Components: Install level, plumb, and parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Equipment: Install to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference with other installations.

### 3.3 ELECTRICAL SUPPORTING DEVICE APPLICATION

- A. Selection of Supports: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Strength of Supports: Adequate to carry present and future loads, times a safety factor of at least four; minimum of 200-lb (90-kg) design load.

### 3.4 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Install support devices to securely and permanently fasten and support electrical components.

- B. Install individual and multiple raceway hangers and riser clamps to support raceways. Provide U-bolts, clamps, attachments, and other hardware necessary for hanger assemblies and for securing hanger rods and conduits.
- C. Support parallel runs of horizontal raceways together on trapeze- or bracket-type hangers.
- D. Size supports for multiple raceway installations so capacity can be increased by a 25 percent minimum in the future.
- E. Support individual horizontal raceways with separate pipe hangers or clamps.
- F. Install 1/4-inch- diameter or larger threaded hanger rods, unless otherwise detailed.
- G. Spring-steel fasteners specifically designed for supporting single conduits or tubing may be used instead of hangers for 1-1/2-inch and smaller raceways serving lighting and receptacle branch circuits above suspended ceilings and for fastening raceways to slotted channel and angle supports.
- H. Separately support cast boxes that are threaded to raceways and used for fixture support. Support sheet-metal boxes directly from the building structure or by bar hangers. If bar hangers are used, attach bar to raceways on opposite sides of the box and support the raceway with an approved fastener not more than 24 inches from the box.
- I. Install metal channel racks for mounting cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices unless components are mounted directly to structural elements of adequate strength.
- J. Install sleeves for cable and raceway penetrations of concrete slabs and walls unless core-drilled holes are used. Install sleeves for cable and raceway penetrations of masonry and fire-rated gypsum walls and of all other fire-rated floor and wall assemblies. Install sleeves during erection of concrete and masonry walls.
- K. Securely fasten electrical items and their supports to the building structure, unless otherwise indicated. Perform fastening according to the following unless other fastening methods are indicated:
  - 1. Wood: Fasten with wood screws or screw-type nails.
  - 2. Masonry: Toggle bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion bolts on solid masonry units.
  - 3. New Concrete: Concrete inserts with machine screws and bolts.
  - 4. Existing Concrete: Expansion bolts.
  - 5. Steel: Spring-tension clamps on steel.
  - 6. Light Steel: Sheet-metal screws.
  - 7. Fasteners: Select so the load applied to each fastener does not exceed 25 percent of its proof-test load.



### 3.5 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to cable and raceway penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to achieve fire-resistance rating of the assembly.

### 3.6 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches larger, in both directions, than supported unit. Follow supported equipment manufacturer's anchorage recommendations and setting templates for anchor-bolt and tie locations, unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.7 UTILITY COMPANY ELECTRICITY-METERING EQUIPMENT

- A. Install equipment according to utility company's written requirements. Provide grounding and empty conduits as required by utility company.

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect installed components for damage and faulty work.

### 3.9 REFINISHING AND TOUCHUP PAINTING

- A. Refinish and touch up paint.
  - 1. Clean damaged and disturbed areas and apply primer, intermediate, and finish coats to suit the degree of damage at each location.
  - 2. Follow paint manufacturer's written instructions for surface preparation and for timing and application of successive coats.
  - 3. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
  - 4. Repair damage to PVC or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

### 3.10 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. On completion of installation, including outlets, fittings, and devices, inspect exposed finish. Remove burrs, dirt, paint spots, and construction debris.
- B. Protect equipment and installations and maintain conditions to ensure that coatings, finishes, and cabinets are without damage or deterioration at time of Final Acceptance.

END OF SECTION 260500

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 260519 - CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes building wires and cables and associated connectors, splices, and terminations for wiring systems rated 600 V and less.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Field Quality-Control Test Reports: From Contractor.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified.

#### 2.2 POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. AFC Cable Systems.
  - 2. Cerro Wire LLC.
  - 3. Colonial Wire and Cable.
  - 4. Encore Wire Corporation.
  - 5. General Cable Corporation.
  - 6. Okonite.
  - 7. Priority Wire and Cable.
  - 8. Prysmian Group.
  - 9. Republic Wire, Inc.
  - 10. Service Wire.
  - 11. Southwire.
  - 12. Or approved equal.

- B. Refer to Part 3 "Conductor and Insulation Applications" Article for insulation type, cable construction, and ratings.
- C. Conductor Material:
  - 1. Copper complying with NEMA WC70 / ICEA S-95-658 solid conductor for No. 10 AWG and smaller, stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
  - 2. Power and lighting circuitry: Minimum conductor size shall be #12, and maximum conductor size shall be #500 kcmil.
- D. Conductor Insulation Types: Type THHN/THWN-2 complying with NEMA WC70 / ICEA S-95-658.

## 2.3 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. AFC Cable Systems.
  - 2. AMP Incorporated/Tyco International.
  - 3. FCI.
  - 4. Greaves Polaris.
  - 5. Hubbell/Anderson.
  - 6. ILSCO.
  - 7. NSI.
  - 8. O-Z/Gedney; EGS Electrical Group LLC.
  - 9. Penn Union.
  - 10. 3M Company; Electrical Products Division.
  - 11. Or approved equal.
- B. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors and splices of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated.
  - 1. For conductors #8 & smaller, use wire-nut type twist connectors.
  - 2. For conductors #6 & larger, use pre-insulated solderless connectors with one spare port(s) for future cable connection.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 CONDUCTOR AND INSULATION APPLICATIONS

- A. Service Entrance, Feeders, Branch Circuits: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- B. Branch Circuits:
  - 1. Concealed in Ceilings: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
  - 2. Concealed in Walls and Partitions: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
  - 3. Exposed: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.

4. Branch Circuits Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- C. Discrete Control Circuits: Type THHN/THWN-2, in raceway.
- D. Cord Drops: Type SOW, hard service cord.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.
- B. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables, conductors, or raceway.
- C. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Section "Electrical Identification".
- D. Shared neutral conductors shall not be used unless specifically indicated so on homerun circuitry designations on the drawings.

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect equipment, outlet, device, and component connections to wiring systems and to ground. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.
- B. Make splices and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.
- C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 12 inches (300 mm) of slack.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing: Perform the following field quality-control testing:
  1. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
  2. Inspect for physical damage. test conductors and cable for continuity and shorts.
  3. Insulation Resistance (Megger) testing for building wire and cable:
    - a. All current carrying phase conductors and neutrals shall be tested as installed, and before connections are made, for insulation resistance and accidental grounds. This shall be done with a 500-Volt insulation resistance tester. Insulation resistance testers shall not be electronic type. Insulation resistance testers shall be hand crank or power-driven crank type. Minimum readings between conductors and between conductor and the grounded metal raceway shall be: 25 mega-ohms for #6 wire and smaller; 50 mega-ohms for #4 wire or larger.

- b. The CONTRACTOR shall correct malfunctioning conductors and cables, including replacement if necessary, and retest to demonstrate compliance.
    - c. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  - 4. Control / Signal Transmission Media Tests:
    - a. Test cable segments for faulty connectors, splices, terminations, and the integrity of the cable and its component parts.
    - b. Correct malfunctioning conductors and cables at Project site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, remove and replace with new units and retest.
- B. Test Reports: Prepare a written report to record the following:
  - 1. Test procedures used.
  - 2. Test results that comply with requirements.
  - 3. Test results that do not comply with requirements and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.
  - 4. Provide tabulated insulation resistance readings for each panel circuit.
- C. Witness Tests:
  - 1. The CONTRACTOR shall furnish an insulation resistance tester and show Design Team representative and/or Owner that the conductors comply with the specified requirements.

END OF SECTION 260519

## SECTION 260526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes grounding of electrical systems and equipment. Grounding requirements specified in this Section may be supplemented by special requirements of systems described in other Sections.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Ground rods.
  - 2. Connection / test / inspection wells.
- B. Field Test Reports: Submit written test reports to include the following:
  - 1. Test procedures used.
  - 2. Test results that comply with requirements.
  - 3. Results of failed tests and corrective action taken to achieve test results that comply with requirements.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with UL 467.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Grounding Conductors, Cables, Connectors, and Rods:
    - a. Chance/Hubbell.
    - b. Copperweld.

- c. Erico Inc.; Electrical Products Group.
- d. Framatome Connectors/Burndy Electrical.
- e. Galvan Industries.
- f. Harger.
- g. Heary Brothers Lightning Protection Co.
- h. Ideal Industries.
- i. ILSCO.
- j. Kearney/Cooper Power Systems.
- k. Lyncole XIT Grounding.
- l. O-Z/Gedney Co..
- m. Raco, Inc.
- n. Salisbury: W. H. Salisbury & Co.
- o. Southern Grounding / South Atlantic LLC.
- p. Thomas & Betts.
- q. Thompson Lightning Protection.
- r. Or approved equal.

2. Connection Test / Inspection Wells:

- a. ALT Fabrication.
- b. Charles Industries.
- c. Harger Lightning Protection, Inc.
- d. Heary Brothers Lightning Protection Co.
- e. Quazite / Strongewell.
- f. PVC piping manufacturers.
- g. Or approved equal.

2.2 GROUNDING CONDUCTORS

- A. For insulated conductors, comply with Section "Conductors and Cables."
- B. Grounding Electrode Conductors: Stranded cable.
- C. Bare Copper Conductors: Comply with the following:
  - 1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
  - 2. Assembly of Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
  - 3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
- D. Grounding Bus:
  - 1. Bare, annealed copper bars of rectangular cross section.
  - 2. ¼" thick, 4" wide, length as required or minimum length as detailed.
  - 3. Stand-off insulator mounting brackets.

2.3 CONNECTOR PRODUCTS

- A. Comply with IEEE 837 and UL 467; listed for use for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and connected items.



- B. Bolted Connectors: Bolted-pressure-type connectors, or compression type.
- C. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welded type, in kit form, and selected per manufacturer's written instructions.

## 2.4 GROUNDING ELECTRODES

- A. Ground Rods: Sectional type; copper-clad steel,  $\frac{3}{4}$ " diameter by 120 inches in length.
- B. Connection / Test / Inspection Wells: Provide handholes as specified below:
  - 1. Cylinder, minimum dimensions of 10" diameter x 10" deep, PVC, with cover.
  - 2. Box, minimum dimensions of 12" x 12" x 12" deep with cover, green PVC or polyethylene.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLICATION

- A. In raceways, use insulated equipment grounding conductors.
- B. Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Use bolted pressure clamps.
- C. Grounding Bus: Install in electrical and telephone equipment rooms, in rooms housing service equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
  - 1. Use insulated spacers; space 1 inch minimum from wall and support 12 inches above finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Underground Grounding Conductors: Use bare, tinned, stranded-copper conductors. Bury a minimum of 24 inches below grade or bury 12 inches above duct bank when installed as part of a duct bank.

### 3.2 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING CONDUCTORS

- A. Comply with NFPA 70, Article 250, for types, sizes, and quantities of equipment grounding conductors, unless specific types, larger sizes, or more conductors than required by NFPA 70 are indicated.
- B. Install equipment grounding conductors in all feeders and circuits.
- C. Signal and Communication Systems: For telephone, alarm, voice and data, and other communication systems, provide No. 4 AWG minimum insulated grounding conductor in raceway from power grounding electrode system to each communications service location, terminal cabinet, wiring closet, and central equipment location.
  - 1. Service and Central Equipment Locations and Wiring Closets: Terminate grounding conductor on a 1/4-by-2-by-12-inch (6.4-by-50-by-300-mm) grounding bus.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

#### A. Ground Rods:

1. For service entrance, install a minimum of two rods spaced at least twenty-two feet from each other and located at least the same distance from other grounding electrodes.
2. Drive ground rods until tops are 2 inches below finished floor or final grade, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductors. Use exothermic welds for connections to ground rods. Make connections without exposing the ground rod steel.

#### B. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible, unless otherwise indicated. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.

#### C. Building Steel: Provide insulated copper grounding conductor, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to building steel. Connect grounding conductors to building steel by bolted compression lug.

#### D. Metal Water Service Pipe: Provide insulated copper grounding conductor, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes by grounding clamp connectors. Connection shall be made within the first five feet of where the water service line enters the building. Where a dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect grounding conductor to street side of fitting.

#### E. Where grounding electrode conductors are installed in metal conduit, bond metal conduit to conductor at each end with a grounding bushing.

#### F. Ufer Ground (Concrete-Encased Grounding Electrode): Fabricate according to NFPA 70, Paragraph 250.52(A)(3), using a minimum of 20 feet of bare copper conductor not smaller than No. 4 AWG. If using structure concrete foundation, and it is less than 20 feet long, coil excess conductor within the base of the foundation. Bond conductor to reinforcing steel. Extend grounding conductor below grade and connect to building grounding ring or to a grounding electrode external to concrete.

### 3.4 CONNECTIONS

#### A. General: Make connections so galvanic action or electrolysis possibility is minimized. Select connectors, connection hardware, conductors, and connection methods so metals in direct contact will be galvanically compatible.

1. Use electroplated or hot-tin-coated materials to ensure high conductivity and to make contact points closer to order of galvanic series.
2. Make connections with clean, bare metal at points of contact.
3. Coat and seal connections having dissimilar metals with inert material to prevent future penetration of moisture to contact surfaces.

#### B. Exothermic-Welded Connections: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Welds that are puffed up or that show convex surfaces indicating improper cleaning are not acceptable.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing: Perform the following field quality-control testing:

1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
2. Test completed grounding system at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal or main ground bar, at ground test wells, and at any other location where a maximum ground-resistance level is specified. Measure ground resistance not less than two full days after the last trace of precipitation, and without the soil being moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance.
  - a. Perform tests by the fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81; or
  - b. Perform tests with a clamp-on ground tester.
3. Maximum grounding electrode system resistance values:
  - a. Equipment Rated 500 kVA and Less: 10 ohms.
4. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Engineer promptly and take corrective action to reduce ground resistance to comply with specified values. Demonstrate compliance by retesting.

END OF SECTION 260526

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 260533 - RACEWAYS AND BOXES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes raceways, fittings, boxes, enclosures, and cabinets for electrical wiring.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Section "Basic Electrical Materials and Methods" for supports, anchors, and identification products.
  - 2. Section "Wiring Devices" for devices installed in boxes.

- 1.3 Section "Seismic Controls for Electrical Work" for seismic restraints and bracing of raceways, boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.
- B. FMC: Flexible metal conduit.
- C. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.
- D. LFMC: Liquidtight flexible metal conduit.
- E. RNC: Rigid nonmetallic conduit.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For raceways, fittings, wireways, floor boxes, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.
- B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
  - 1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting seismic restraints.
  - 2. Detail assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

- C. **Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification:** Submit certification that enclosures, cabinets, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Section "Seismic Controls for Electrical Work." Include the following:
1. **Basis for Certification:** Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
    - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
  2. **Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit:** Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  3. **Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.**

## 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of raceways, boxes, enclosures, cabinets, and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

## 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. **Ground Water:** Assume ground-water level is at grade level unless a lower water table is noted on Drawings.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified.

### 2.2 METAL CONDUIT AND TUBING

- A. **Manufacturers:**
1. Alflex Inc.
  2. Allied Tube and Conduit.
  3. Anamet Electrical, Inc.; Anaconda Metal Hose.
  4. Atkore International / Calbrite.
  5. Conduit Pipe Products Company.
  6. Electri-Flex Co.
  7. Gibson Stainless.
  8. Grinnell Co./Tyco International; Allied Tube and Conduit Div.
  9. Manhattan/CDT/Cole-Flex.

10. Maverick Tube.
11. O-Z Gedney; Unit of General Signal.
12. Patriot Industries.
13. Republic Conduit.
14. Shaw Stainless and Alloy.
15. Wheatland Tube Co.
16. Or approved equal.

- B. Rigid Aluminum Conduit: Produced to ANSI C80.5; listed to UL 6A.
- C. Rigid Steel Conduit: Produced to ANSI C80.1; listed to UL 6.
- D. IMC: Produced to ANSI C80.6; listed to UL 1242.
- E. EMT and Fittings: Produced to ANSI C80.3; listed to UL 797.
1. Fittings: Plated-steel, hexagonal, compression type.
- F. FMC: Listed to UL 1.
- G. LFMC: Listed to UL 360.
- H. Fittings: NEMA FB 1; compatible with conduit and tubing materials.

## 2.3 NONMETALLIC CONDUIT AND TUBING

- A. Manufacturers:
1. Allied Tube & Conduit.
  2. American International.
  3. Anamet Electrical, Inc.; Anaconda Metal Hose.
  4. Arnco.
  5. Blue Diamond Industries.
  6. Cantex.
  7. Certainteed.
  8. Condux International.
  9. ElecSYS.
  10. Electri-Flex.
  11. Heritage Plastics / Atkore International.
  12. Kraloy
  13. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.
  14. Manhattan/CDT/Cole-Flex.
  15. Queen City Plastics.
  16. RACO.
  17. Southern Pipe, Inc.
  18. Spiraldut, Inc./AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
  19. Thomas & Betts.
  20. Or approved equal.
- B. RNC: Produced to NEMA TC 2; listed to UL 651.

1. Schedule 40 and Schedule 80 PVC.

- C. RNC Fittings: Produced to NEMA TC 3; listed to UL 514B; match to conduit or tubing type and material.

## 2.4 METAL WIREWAYS

- A. Listed to UL 870.

- B. Manufacturers:

1. Austin.
2. B-Line.
3. Hammond/
4. Hoffman.
5. Milbank.
6. Square D.
7. Thomas & Betts.
8. Unity Manufacturing.
9. Or approved equal.

- C. Material and Construction: Sheet metal sized and shaped as indicated.

1. Indoors: NEMA 1.
2. Outdoors: NEMA 3R.

- D. Fittings and Accessories: Include couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.

- E. Select features as required to complete wiring system and to comply with NFPA 70.

- F. Wireway Covers:

1. Indoors: Hinged type.
2. Outdoors: Flanged-and-gasketed type.

- G. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

## 2.5 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

- A. Manufacturers:

1. Arlington.
2. Austin.
3. B-Line.
4. Cooper Crouse-Hinds.
5. Emerson/General Signal; Appleton Electric Company.
6. Erickson.
7. FSR.



8. Hammond.
  9. Hoffman.
  10. Hubbell.
  11. Milbank.
  12. O-Z/Gedney.
  13. Peerless.
  14. RACO.
  15. Robroy Industries.
  16. Rose + Bopla.
  17. Scott Fetzer Co.; Adalet-PLM Division.
  18. Spring City Electrical.
  19. Strong.
  20. Thomas & Betts.
  21. Vynckier.
  22. Walker Systems.
  23. Woodhead Industries.
  24. Or approved equal.
- B. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- C. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: NEMA FB 1, Type FD, with gasketed cover.
- D. Floor Box, Metallic Recessed Access and Recessed Floor Box Covers:
1. Floor box with provisions for mounting wiring devices below floor surface.
  2. Floor box cover shall have provisions for passage of cords to recessed wiring devices mounted within floor box.
  3. Recessed configuration shall accommodate device cords plugged in with plugs being completely concealed with the box cover closed.
- E. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- F. Cast-Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA FB 1, cast aluminum with gasketed cover.
- G. Metal Hinged-Cover Enclosures:
1. Interior Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1 with continuous hinged cover, concealed hinge, and flush latch. Finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
  2. Exterior Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R galvanized steel with continuous hinged cover and 3-point latch.
  3. Removable interior panel.
  4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltages.
  5. Accessory feet where required or freestanding applications.
- H. Recessed Steel TV Box:
1. Power and low voltage applications for flat screen TV's.
  2. Recessed space to keep plugs, connectors, and cords inside the box.
  3. Non-metallic, paintable white trim plate.
  4. Design Basis: Arlington #TVBS Series.

I. Handholes and Boxes for Exterior Underground Wiring:

1. General Requirements For Handholes And Boxes:

- a. Boxes and handholes for use in underground systems shall be designed and identified as defined in NFPA 70, for intended location and application.

2. Polymer-Concrete Handholes and Boxes with Polymer-Concrete Cover: Molded of sand and aggregate, bound together with polymer resin, and reinforced with steel, fiberglass, or a combination of the two.

a. Manufacturers:

- 1) Armorcast.
- 2) Oldcastle Infrastructure.
- 3) Quazite.
- 4) Preapproved equal.

- b. Configuration: Designed for flush burial with open bottom unless otherwise indicated.

c. Cover:

- 1) Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices.
- 2) Structural load rating consistent with enclosure and handhole location. See drawing details for additional requirements.
- 3) Nonskid finish.
- 4) Cover legend text as detailed.

- d. Conduit Entrance Provisions: Conduit-terminating fittings shall mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

A. Outdoors:

- 1. Exposed: Rigid metal or IMC.
- 2. Concealed: Rigid metal or IMC.
- 3. Underground, Single Run: RNC.
- 4. Underground, Grouped: RNC.
- 5. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.
- 6. For grounding electrode conductors: RNC Schedule 80.
- 7. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 3R.

B. Indoors:

- 1. Exposed, Higher than 10' AFF: EMT.
- 2. Exposed, Lower than 10' AFF:

- a. In Electrical Rooms: EMT.
  - b. Elsewhere: Rigid metal or IMC.
- 3. Concealed: EMT.
- 4. Underground feeders and branch circuits: RNC.
- 5. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC; except use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
- 6. Damp or Wet Locations: Rigid metal conduit.
- 7. For grounding electrode conductors: RNC Schedule 80.
- 8. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except as follows:
  - a. Damp or Wet Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
- C. Minimum Raceway Size: 3/4-inch trade size.
- D. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.
  - 1. Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid metal conduit fittings, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Do not install aluminum conduits embedded in or in contact with earth or concrete. For direct burial or concrete encasement or penetrations, coat conduit with asphaltum or bituminous type coating.
- F. EMT shall not be installed where raceway or fittings would be in direct contact with the earth, underground, in/below concrete, exposed to the elements, exposed to severe physical damage, or exposed to severe corrosive influence.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Keep raceways a minimum of 6 inches away from runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.
- B. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.
- C. Support raceways as specified in Section "Basic Electrical Materials and Methods."
- D. Install temporary closures to prevent foreign matter from entering raceways.
- E. Protect stub-ups from damage where conduits rise through floor slabs. Arrange so curved portions of bends are not visible above the finished slab.
- F. Make bends and offsets so ID is not reduced. Keep legs of bends in the same plane and keep straight legs of offsets parallel, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Conceal raceways within finished walls, ceilings, and floors, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Install concealed raceways with a minimum of bends in the shortest practical distance, considering type of building construction and obstructions, unless otherwise indicated.

- H. Conduits installed on the inside face of exterior building walls shall be spaced off the wall surface a minimum of 1/4" using strut-type channel or "clamp-backs".
- I. Install exposed raceways parallel or at right angles to nearby surfaces or structural members and follow surface contours as much as possible.
  - 1. Run parallel or banked raceways together on common supports.
  - 2. Make parallel bends in parallel or banked runs. Use factory elbows only where elbows can be installed parallel; otherwise, provide field bends for parallel raceways.
- J. Join raceways with fittings designed and approved for that purpose and make joints tight.
- K. Raceway connectors shall be insulated throat type. If uninsulated throat connectors are installed, use insulating bushings to protect conductors.
- L. Expansion Fittings:
  - 1. Where raceways of any type pass a building or structure expansion joint, a standard expansion fitting shall be provided and installed. Review architectural and structural drawings for locations of expansion joints.
  - 2. Where raceways installed are subject to temperature swings, install expansion fittings spaced in accordance with manufacturer instructions and NFPA 70 requirements.
  - 3. Expansion fittings shall be compatible with the type of raceway being used.
- M. Terminations:
  - 1. Where raceways are terminated with locknuts and bushings, align raceways to enter squarely and install locknuts with dished part against box. Use two locknuts, one inside and one outside box.
  - 2. Where raceways are terminated with threaded hubs, screw raceways or fittings tightly into hub so end bears against wire protection shoulder. Where chase nipples are used, align raceways so coupling is square to box; tighten chase nipple so no threads are exposed.
  - 3. Where using boxes with concentric, eccentric, or over-sized knockouts; provide bonding bushings and jumpers. Size bonding jumpers in accordance with NEC Table 250-122, connecting to the box with ground lugs.
- N. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches of slack at each end of pull wire. Label each end of pull wires with location of opposite end.
- O. Telephone and Signal System Raceways, 2-Inch Trade Size and Smaller: In addition to above requirements, install raceways in maximum lengths of 150 feet and with a maximum of two 90-degree bends or equivalent. Separate lengths with pull or junction boxes where necessary to comply with these requirements.
- P. Flexible Connections:
  - 1. Use maximum of 72 inches of flexible conduit for recessed and semi-recessed lighting fixtures.

2. Use maximum of 24 inches of flexible conduit for equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for all motors.
3. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations.

Q. Install hinged-cover enclosures and cabinets plumb. Support at each corner.

R. Set floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.

### 3.3 PROTECTION

A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure coatings and finishes are without damage or deterioration at time of Final Acceptance.

1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
2. Repair damage to PVC or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

### 3.4 CLEANING

A. After completing installation of exposed, factory-finished raceways and boxes, inspect exposed finishes and repair damaged finishes.

1. Exposed threads on galvanized conduits and fittings, installed outdoors, shall be coated with galvanizing paint or equivalent protective coating.

END OF SECTION 260533

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 260548 - SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Restraint channel bracings.
  - 2. Restraint cables.
  - 3. Seismic-restraint accessories.
  - 4. Mechanical anchor bolts.
  - 5. Adhesive anchor bolts.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of seismic-restraint component used.
    - a. Tabulate types and sizes of seismic restraints, complete with report numbers and rated strength in tension and shear as evaluated by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
    - b. Annotate to indicate application of each product submitted and compliance with requirements.
- B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each seismic-restraint device.
  - 1. Include design calculations and details for selecting seismic restraints complying with performance requirements, design criteria, and analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  - 2. Design Calculations: Calculate static and dynamic loading caused by equipment weight, operation, and seismic and wind forces required to select seismic and wind restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.
    - a. Coordinate design calculations with wind load calculations required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.
  - 3. Seismic- and Wind-Restraint Details:

- a. Design Analysis: To support selection and arrangement of seismic and wind restraints. Include calculations of combined tensile and shear loads.
- b. Details: Indicate fabrication and arrangement. Detail attachments of restraints to the restrained items and to the structure. Show attachment locations, methods, and spacings. Identify components, list their strengths, and indicate directions and values of forces transmitted to the structure during seismic events. Indicate association with vibration isolation devices.
- c. Coordinate seismic-restraint and vibration isolation details with wind-restraint details required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.
- d. Preapproval and Evaluation Documentation: By an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum ratings of restraint items and the basis for approval (tests or calculations).

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTAL

- A. Special Inspections Report prepared, sealed, and signed by the Professional Engineer that performed delegated design services.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with seismic restraint requirements in the current North Carolina Building Code, unless requirements in this Section are more stringent.
- B. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing seismic engineering services, including the design of seismic restraints, that are similar to those indicated for this Project.
- C. Seismic-restraint devices shall have horizontal and vertical load testing and analysis. They shall bear anchorage preapproval from OSHPD in addition to preapproval, showing maximum seismic-restraint ratings, by ICC-ES or another agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Ratings based on independent testing are preferred to ratings based on calculations. If preapproved ratings are not available, submittals based on independent testing are preferred. Calculations (including combining shear and tensile loads) that support seismic-restraint designs must be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.

#### 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Seismic Design Category: See the project Code Summary drawing and structural drawings.



- B. See the project Code Summary drawing and structural drawings for additional building construction criteria.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Wind-Restraint Loading:
  - 1. Basic Wind Speed: Obtain value from Wind Speed Map Figures, in the current North Carolina Building Code.
  - 2. Building Classification Category: See the project Code Summary drawing and structural drawings.
  - 3. Minimum 10 lb/sq. ft. (48.8 kg/sq. m) multiplied by maximum area of equipment component projected on vertical plane normal to wind direction and 45 degrees either side of normal.
- B. Seismic-Restraint Loading:
  - 1. Seismic Design Category: See the project Code Summary drawing and structural drawings.

### 2.2 RESTRAINT CHANNEL BRACINGS

- A. Description: MFMA-4, shop- or field-fabricated bracing assembly made of slotted steel channels with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end, with other matching components, and with corrosion-resistant coating; rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces.

### 2.3 RESTRAINT CABLES

- A. Restraint Cables: ASTM A 603 galvanized-steel cables. End connections made of steel assemblies with thimbles, brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for restraining cable service; with a minimum of two clamping bolts for cable engagement.

### 2.4 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT ACCESSORIES

- A. Hanger-Rod Stiffener: Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections or reinforcing steel angle clamped to hanger rod.
- B. Hinged and Swivel Brace Attachments: Multifunctional steel connectors for attaching hangers to rigid channel bracings and restraint cables.
- C. Bushings for Floor-Mounted Equipment Anchor Bolts: Neoprene bushings designed for rigid equipment mountings and matched to type and size of anchor bolts and studs.

- D. Bushing Assemblies for Wall-Mounted Equipment Anchorage: Assemblies of neoprene elements and steel sleeves designed for rigid equipment mountings and matched to type and size of attachment devices used.
- E. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: One-piece, molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene, with a flat washer face.

## 2.5 MECHANICAL ANCHOR BOLTS

- A. Mechanical Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type in zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488. Note: Expansion-type anchor bolts are not permitted by ASCE/SEI 7 for non-isolated equipment in excess of 10 hp (7.46 kW).

## 2.6 ADHESIVE ANCHOR BOLTS

- A. Adhesive Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and capsule anchor system containing PVC or urethane methacrylate-based resin and accelerator, or injected polymer or hybrid mortar adhesive. Provide anchor bolts and hardware with zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation and seismic-control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of seismic bracing with building structural system and architectural features, and with mechanical, fire-protection, electrical, and other building features in the vicinity.
- B. Coordinate concrete bases with building structural system.

### 3.3 APPLICATIONS

- A. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Secure raceways and cables to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Hanger-Rod Stiffeners: Install hanger-rod stiffeners where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods caused by seismic forces.
- C. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads within specified loading limits.

### 3.4 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork.
- B. Equipment and Hanger Restraints:
  - 1. Install resilient, bolt-isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125 inch.
  - 2. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction providing required submittals for component.
- C. Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.
- D. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.
- E. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.
- F. Drilled-in Anchors:
  - 1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify the structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
  - 2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
  - 3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
  - 4. Adhesive Anchors: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.
  - 5. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque using a torque wrench.

6. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless-steel anchors for exterior applications.

### 3.5 ACCOMMODATION OF DIFFERENTIAL SEISMIC MOTION

- A. Install flexible connections in runs of raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, and busways where they cross seismic joints, where adjacent sections or branches are supported by different structural elements, and where connection is terminated to equipment that is anchored to a different structural element from the one supporting them as they approach equipment.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. The Professional Engineer retained for seismic restraint calculations and delegated design shall visit the job site as necessary to comply with the Special Inspections requirement of the North Carolina Building Code. This engineer shall provide in writing verification of compliance of the installation with the approved seismic submittal. This verification shall be submitted as a Special Inspections Report and shall bear the Engineer's professional seal. Job site inspections by anyone other than this engineer are not acceptable.
- B. Perform tests as requested by the Professional Engineer retained for seismic restraint calculations and delegated design.

### 3.7 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust restraints to permit free movement of equipment within normal mode of operation.

END OF SECTION 260548

## SECTION 260553 - ELECTRICAL IDENTIFICATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes electrical identification materials and devices intended to comply with NFPA 70, OSHA standards, and authorities having jurisdiction.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
  - 1. For each electrical identification product indicated.
  - 2. For double coated, adhesive tape product indicated.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with NFPA 70 for color-coding.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 CABLE LABELS

- A. Colored Adhesive Tape: Self-adhesive vinyl tape not less than 3 mils thick by 1 to 2 inches.
- B. Underground-Line Warning Tape: Permanent, bright-colored, continuous-printed, vinyl tape.
  - 1. Not less than 6 inches wide by 4 mils thick.
  - 2. Compounded for permanent direct-burial service.
  - 3. Embedded continuous metallic strip or core.
  - 4. Printed legend indicating type of underground line.

#### 2.2 NAMEPLATES AND SIGNS

- A. Engraved Plastic Nameplates and Signs: Engraving stock, plastic laminate, minimum 1/16" thick for signs up to 20 sq. in. and 1/8" thick for larger sizes.

B. Fasteners for Nameplates and Signs:

1. High performance, double coated tape with adhesive. Design Basis: 3M #06383, or approved equivalent.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Identification Materials and Devices: Install at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment.
- B. Lettering, Colors, and Graphics: Coordinate names, abbreviations, colors, and other designations with corresponding designations in the Contract Documents or with those required by codes and standards. Use consistent designations throughout Project.
- C. Sequence of Work: If identification is applied to surfaces that require finish, install identification after completing finish work.
- D. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Clean surfaces before applying.
- E. Circuit Identification Labels on Boxes: Panel and circuit number.
  1. Interior Boxes:
    - a. Exposed: Pressure-sensitive, self-adhesive plastic label on cover.
    - b. Concealed:
      - 1) Pressure-sensitive, self-adhesive plastic label on cover; or
      - 2) Permanent marker on cover, legible in a standing position by Design Team and Owner.
  2. Exterior Boxes:
    - a. Engraved plastic label on cover; and
    - b. Pressure-sensitive, self-adhesive plastic label inside cover.
- F. Paths of Underground Electrical Lines: During trench backfilling, for exterior underground power, control, signal, and communication lines; install continuous underground-line warning tape located directly above line at 6 to 8 inches below finished grade. Where width of multiple lines installed in a common trench or concrete envelope does not exceed 16 inches overall, use a single line marker. Install line marker for underground wiring, both direct-buried cables and cables in raceway.
- G. Color-Coding of Phase, Neutral, and Ground Conductors: Use the following colors for service, feeder, and branch-circuit phase conductors:

1. Configuration	Phase A	Phase B	Phase C	Neutral	Ground
120/240-V, 1 Ph, 3W	Black	Red	N/A	White	Green
120/240-V, 3 Ph, 4W	Black	Orange	Blue	White	Green

120/208-V, 3 Ph, 4W	Black	Red	Blue	White	Green
277/480-V, 3 Ph, 4W	Brown	Orange	Yellow	Gray	Green

2. For conductors #6 AWG and smaller, factory apply color the entire length of conductors.
3. For conductors #4 AWG and larger, field apply colored, pressure-sensitive plastic tape in half-lapped turns for a distance of 6 inches from terminal points and in boxes where splices or taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding. Use 1-inch-wide tape in colors specified. Adjust tape bands to avoid obscuring cable identification markings.
4. At each panelboard, a color code legend shall be permanently posted corresponding to the conductors and voltage in that panelboard.

H. Apply identification to conductors as follows:

1. Conductors to Be Extended in the Future: Indicate source and circuit numbers.
2. Multiple Power or Lighting Circuits in the Same Enclosure: Identify each conductor with source, voltage, circuit number, and phase. Use color-coding to identify circuits' voltage and phase.
3. Multiple Control and Communication Circuits in the Same Enclosure: Identify each conductor by its system and circuit designation. Use a consistent system of tags, color-coding, or cable marking tape.

I. Equipment Identification Labels: Engraved plastic laminate. Install on each unit of equipment. Attached engraved labels with high performance double coated adhesive tape. Apply labels for each unit of the following categories of equipment:

1. Switchgear, switchboards, panelboards, electrical cabinets, and enclosures.
2. Access doors and panels for concealed electrical items.
3. Disconnect switches and enclosed circuit breakers.
4. Inverters.
5. Contactors.
6. Remote-controlled switches.
7. Control devices and push-button stations.
8. Transfer switches.
9. Fire alarm control panels, master stations, control panels, local operator consoles, and power supplies.
10. Emergency responder radio coverage system.

Nameplate colors shall be: White surface with black core.

END OF SECTION 260553

This page intentionally left blank.



## SECTION 260923 - LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following lighting control devices:
  - 1. Time switches.
  - 2. Outdoor photoelectric switches
  - 3. Switchbox-mounted occupancy and vacancy sensors.
  - 4. Indoor occupancy and vacancy sensors.
  - 5. Multipole contactors.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. PIR: Passive infrared.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show installation details for occupancy and light-level sensors.
  - 1. Plan indicating typical coverage area of each sensor.
  - 2. Interconnection diagrams showing field-installed wiring.
- C. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of product to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of ceiling-mounted devices with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

### 2.2 GENERAL LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Line-Voltage Surge Protection: An integral part of the devices for 120- and 277-V solid-state equipment. For devices without integral line-voltage surge protection, field-mounting surge protection shall comply with IEEE C62.41 and with UL 1449.

### 2.3 TIME SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Area Lighting Research, Inc.
  - 2. Fisher Pierce.
  - 3. Grasslin Controls Corporation.
  - 4. Intermatic, Inc.
  - 5. Paragon Electric Co.
  - 6. Sensor Worx.
  - 7. TORK.
  - 8. Watt Stopper (The).
- B. Digital Time Switches: Electronic, solid-state programmable units with alphanumeric display complying with UL 917.
  - 1. Contact Configuration: DPST.
  - 2. Contact Rating: 30-A inductive or resistive, 240-V ac.
  - 3. Program: Four channel minimum, 8 on-off set points on a 24-hour schedule and an annual holiday schedule that overrides the weekly operation on holidays.
  - 4. Circuitry: Allow connection of a photoelectric relay as substitute for on and off function of a program.
  - 5. Astronomical Time: All channels.
  - 6. Battery Backup: For schedules and time clock.

### 2.4 OUTDOOR PHOTOELECTRIC SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Area Lighting Research, Inc.
  - 2. Fisher Pierce.
  - 3. Grasslin Controls Corporation.
  - 4. Intermatic, Inc.
  - 5. Paragon Electric Co.
  - 6. TORK.

7. Touchplate Technologies, Inc.
8. Watt Stopper (The).

B. Description: Solid state, with DPST dry contacts rated for 1800-VA tungsten or 1000-VA inductive, to operate connected relay, contactor coils, microprocessor input, and complying with UL 773A.

1. Light-Level Monitoring Range: 1.5 to 10 fc (16 to 108 lx), with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range, and a directional lens in front of photocell to prevent fixed light sources from causing turn-off.
2. Time Delay: 15-second minimum, to prevent false operation.
3. Surge Protection: Metal-oxide varistor type, complying with IEEE C62.41 for Category A1 locations.
4. Mounting: Twist lock complying with IEEE C136.10, with base-and-stem mounting or stem-and-swivel mounting accessories as required to direct sensor to the North sky exposure.

## 2.5 SWITCHBOX-MOUNTED OCCUPANCY AND VACANCY SENSORS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Cooper Controls.
2. Hubbell Lighting Inc.
3. Leviton Mfg. Company Inc.
4. Watt Stopper (The).

B. Description: Dual technology, ultrasonic and PIR type, with integral power-switching contacts rated for 800 W at 120-V ac, minimum; suitable for electronic ballasts, LED drivers, or 1/6-hp motors.

1. Field configurable occupancy sensing or vacancy sensing operating modes. Operation:
  - a. Occupancy Sensor: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and turn them off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
  - b. Vacancy Sensor: Unless otherwise indicated, lights are manually turned on and sensor turns lights off when the room is unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
2. Include ground wire.

C. Single Relay Unit: Device contains one relay for controlling load circuit.

1. Design Basis: Hubbell # LHMTS1.
2. One On-Off button for manual control.

D. Dual Relay Unit: Device contains two relays for controlling independent lighting loads or circuits.

1. Design Basis: Hubbell # LHMTD2.

2. Two On-Off buttons for manual control.

E. Dimmer Unit:

1. Design Basis: Legrand / WattStopper #DW-311.
2. Dimming Control Signal: 0-10 VDC.
3. Suitable for multi-way control from up to four locations.

## 2.6 INDOOR OCCUPANCY AND VACANCY SENSORS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Cooper Controls.
2. Hubbell Lighting Inc.
3. Leviton Mfg. Company Inc.
4. Watt Stopper (The).

B. General Description: Wall- or ceiling-mounting, as indicated on the drawings; low-voltage solid-state units with separate line-voltage relay units.

1. Configurable occupancy sensing or vacancy sensing operating modes. Operation:
  - a. Occupancy Sensor: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and turn them off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
  - b. Vacancy Sensor: Unless otherwise indicated, lights are manually turned on and sensor turns lights off when the room is unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
2. Sensor Output: Contacts rated to operate the connected relay, complying with UL 773A. Sensor shall be powered from the relay unit.
3. Relay Units: Dry contacts rated for 20-A ballast load at 120- and 277-V ac, for 13-A tungsten at 120-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Power supply to sensor shall be 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source as defined by NFPA 70.
  - a. Where indicated for 277-V ac lighting systems, provide additional relay units where required for simultaneous control of 120-V ac exhaust fans.
4. Mounting:
  - a. Sensor: Suitable for mounting in any position on a standard outlet box.
  - b. Relay: Externally mounted through a 1/2-inch (13-mm) knockout in a standard electrical enclosure.
  - c. Time-Delay and Sensitivity Adjustments: Recessed and concealed behind hinged door.
5. Indicator: LED, to show when motion is being detected during testing and normal operation of the sensor.
6. Bypass Switch: Override the on function in case of sensor failure.

- C. Dual-Technology Type: Ceiling mounting; detect occupancy by using a combination of PIR and ultrasonic detection methods in area of coverage. Particular technology or combination of technologies that controls on and off functions shall be selectable in the field by operating controls on unit.
  - 1. Sensitivity Adjustment: Separate for each sensing technology.
  - 2. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6-inch minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of at least 36 sq. in., and detect a person of average size and weight moving at least 12 inches in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of 12 inches/second.
  - 3. Detection Coverage (Standard Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 2000 sq. ft. when mounted on a 96-inch-high ceiling.
- D. Design Basis: Hubbell # OMNIDT2000. If room size is significantly smaller than 2000 sq. ft., evaluate the use of a unit with applicably sized reduced range.

## 2.7 MULTIPOLE CONTACTORS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Allen-Bradley/Rockwell Automation.
  - 2. Cutler-Hammer; Eaton Corporation.
  - 3. GE Industrial Systems.
  - 4. Siemens.
  - 5. Square D.
- B. Description: Electrically operated and mechanically held, complying with NEMA ICS 2 and UL 508.
  - 1. Current Rating for Switching: 30A, unless noted otherwise.
  - 2. Control-Coil Voltage: Match control power source.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 SENSOR INSTALLATION

- A. Install and aim sensors in locations to achieve at least 90 percent coverage of areas indicated. Do not exceed coverage limits specified in manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.2 WIRING INSTALLATION

- A. Wiring Method: Comply with Section "Conductors and Cables."
- B. Size conductors according to lighting control device manufacturer's written instructions, unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify components and power and control wiring according to Section "Electrical Identification."
- B. Label time switches and contactors with a unique designation.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
  - 1. After installing time switches and sensors, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, adjust and test for compliance with requirements.
  - 2. Operational Test: Verify actuation of each sensor and adjust time delays.
- B. Remove and replace lighting control devices where test results indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements and control intent.
- C. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 6 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting lighting control devices to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.
  - 1. For occupancy and motion sensors, verify operation at outer limits of detector range. Set time delay to suit Owner's operations.

END OF SECTION 260923

## SECTION 262416 - PANELBOARDS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Distribution panelboards.
  - 2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- B. GFEP: Ground-fault equipment protection.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of panelboard, overcurrent protective device, accessory, and component indicated. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.
  - 1. Dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details. Show tabulations of installed devices, equipment features, and ratings. Include the following:
    - a. Enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
    - b. Trim types and details.
    - c. Bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
    - d. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
    - e. Features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
- C. Panelboard Schedules: For installation in panelboards.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For panelboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain panelboards, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories through one source from a single manufacturer.
- B. Comply with NEMA PB 1.

## 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of panelboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, and encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements.

## 1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Keys: Six spares for each type of panelboard cabinet lock.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Panelboards, Overcurrent Protective Devices, and Accessories:
    - a. ABB / G.E.
    - b. Eaton Corporation; Cutler-Hammer Products.
    - c. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
    - d. Square D.

## 2.2 MANUFACTURED UNITS

- A. Enclosures: Flush- and surface-mounted cabinets, as scheduled in the drawings.
  - 1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.
    - a. Typical Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
      - 1) Front Hinged Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box with full-length piano hinge, and with standard door within hinged trim cover.
      - 2) Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish over corrosion-resistant treatment or primer coat.



2. Front Cover: Doors with concealed hinges; secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
3. Directory Card: With transparent protective cover, mounted in metal frame, inside panelboard door.

B. Phase Buses:

1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.

C. Ground and Neutral Bars:

1. Material: Copper.
2. Equipment Ground Bar: Adequate for feeder and branch-circuit equipment ground conductors; bonded to box.
3. Neutral Bar: Adequate for feeder and branch-circuit neutral conductors.

D. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material.

1. Main and Neutral Lugs: Mechanical type.
2. Ground Lugs and Bus Configured Terminators: Mechanical or compression type.

E. Service Equipment Label: UL labeled for use as service equipment for panelboards with main service disconnect switches.

F. Future Devices: Mounting brackets, bus connections, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices. These locations will be indicated as SPACE on the panel schedules in the drawings.

## 2.3 PANELBOARD SHORT-CIRCUIT RATING

- A. Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals.

## 2.4 OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. Main Overcurrent Protective Devices: Circuit breaker, where scheduled.

- B. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.

- C. Molded-Case Circuit Breaker: UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.

1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads, and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
2. GFCI Circuit Breakers: 5-mA trip sensitivity for personnel protection; single- and two-pole configurations.
3. GFEP Circuit Breakers: 30-mA trip sensitivity for equipment protection; single- and two-pole configurations.

- D. Molded-Case Circuit-Breaker Features and Accessories: Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
  - 1. Lugs: Mechanical style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
  - 2. Multipole units enclosed in a single housing or factory-assembled to operate as a single unit.
  - 3. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
  - 4. Shunt Trip: Where required or indicated, 120-V trip coil energized from separate circuit.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install panelboards and accessories according to NEMA PB 1.1.
- B. Mount top of trim 74 inches above finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Mount plumb and rigid without distortion of box. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish.
- D. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges. Prepare documentation of circuit breaker trip settings for Owner record documents.
- E. Panel breaker configurations shall be installed as indicated on the panel schedules or as noted. Breaker position revisions will not be accepted unless approved in writing by the Engineer.
- F. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties.
- G. Install filler plates in unused spaces.

#### 3.2 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads. Use a computer or typewriter to create directory; handwritten directories are not acceptable.
- B. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with laminated-plastic nameplate mounted as specified in Section "Electrical Identification".

#### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Ground equipment according to Section "Grounding and Bonding."
- B. Connect wiring according to Section "Conductors and Cables."

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Prepare for acceptance tests as follows:

1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
2. Test continuity of each circuit.
3. Neutral-ground bond testing: After all fixtures, devices and equipment are installed and all connections completed to each panel, the CONTRACTOR shall disconnect the neutral feeder conductor from the neutral bar and take a megger reading between the neutral bar and grounded enclosure. If this reading is less than 25 mega-ohms, the CONTRACTOR shall disconnect the branch circuit neutral wires from the neutral bar. The CONTRACTOR shall then test each one separately to the panel until the low reading ones are found. The CONTRACTOR shall correct troubles, re-connect, and re-test until at least 25 mega-ohms from the neutral bar to the grounded panel can be achieved with only the neutral feeder disconnected.

B. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:

1. Perform each electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection stated in manufacturer's installation instructions for molded-case circuit breakers.
2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.

### 3.5 CLEANING

- A. On completion of installation, inspect interior and exterior of panelboards. Remove paint splatters and other spots. Vacuum dirt and debris; do not use compressed air to assist in cleaning. Repair exposed surfaces to match original finish.

END OF SECTION 262416

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 262726 - WIRING DEVICES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Single and duplex receptacles and ground-fault circuit interrupter receptacles.
  - 2. Single- and double-pole snap switches and dimmer switches.
  - 3. Device wall plates.
  - 4. Floor service outlets.
  - 5. Cord reels.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of wiring device through one source from a single manufacturer.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Wiring Devices:
    - a. Bryant Electric, Inc./Hubbell Subsidiary.
    - b. Eagle Electric Manufacturing Co., Inc.

- c. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
- d. Leviton Mfg. Company Inc.
- e. Lutron.
- f. Pass & Seymour/Legrand; Wiring Devices Div.

2. Floor Service Outlets:

- a. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
- b. Pass & Seymour/Legrand; Wiring Devices Div.
- c. Square D/Groupe Schneider NA.
- d. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
- e. Wiremold Company (The).

## 2.2 RECEPTACLES

- A. Straight-Blade-Type Receptacles: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6, DSCC W-C-596G, and UL 498.
- B. Straight-Blade and Locking Receptacles:
  - 1. Heavy-Duty grade.
  - 2. Arranged for back and side wiring with brass screws.
  - 3. Grounding type with hex head ground screw terminal.
  - 4. 15-amp and 20-amp, 125-Volt and 250-Volt receptacles in damp or wet locations shall be listed weather-resistant type.
  - 5. Receptacles shall accommodate back and side wiring and shall be grounding type with separate single or double grounding screw terminals.
- C. Tamper-Resistant Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 15 & 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, UL 498 Supplement sd, and FS W-C-596.
- D. GFCI Receptacles:
  - 1. Straight blade, feed-through type, Heavy-Duty grade, with integral NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R duplex receptacle.
  - 2. Comply with UL 498 and UL 943.
  - 3. Design units for installation in a 2-3/4-inch-deep outlet box without an adapter.

## 2.3 SWITCHES

- A. Toggle Switches: Comply with UL 20.
  - 1. Heavy-Duty grade, quiet type without the use of mercury switches.
  - 2. Arranged for back and side wiring with brass screws.
  - 3. Grounding type with hex head ground screw terminal.
  - 4. Types:
    - a. Single-pole.
    - b. Two-pole.

- c. Three-way.
  - d. Four-way.
- B. Dimmer Switches: Modular, full-wave, solid-state units with integral, quiet on/off switches and audible frequency and EMI/RFI filters.
  - 1. Control: Continuously adjustable slider; with single-pole or three-way switching to suit connections.
- C. Timer Switches, Mechanical Spring-Wound:
  - 1. Description: Switchbox-mounted, molded knob with spiral time scale, 4 hours maximum duration.
  - 2. UL listed.
  - 3. Ratings: 120V, 20A, 1 HP.

## 2.4 WALL PLATES

- A. Single and combination types to match corresponding wiring devices.
  - 1. Size: All plates shall be oversized / jumbo with matching vertical dimension.
  - 2. Plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match plate finish.
  - 3. Material for Finished Spaces: 0.035-inch- (1-mm-) thick, satin-finished stainless steel.
  - 4. Material for Unfinished Spaces: Galvanized steel.
  - 5. Material for Wet Locations: Cast aluminum, weatherproof, extra-duty rated, "in-use" type. Receptacle box covers shall be weatherproof whether or not a cord & plug are inserted or not.
  - 6. Toggle Switch Serving as a Disconnect: Wallplate shall be configured with brackets on both sides of the switch to accommodate a padlock to secure the switch in the Off position.

## 2.5 FLOOR SERVICE FITTINGS

- A. Type: Modular, flush-type, dual-service units suitable for wiring method used.
- B. Compartments: Barrier separates power from voice and data communication cabling.
- C. Service Plate: Rectangular, die-cast aluminum with satin finish.
- D. Power Receptacle: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Voice and Data Communication Outlet: Modular, keyed, color-coded, RJ-45 jacks for data cable, unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.6 CORD REELS

- A. Description: Ceiling mounted cord reel assembly with #12/3 Type SO cord & NEMA 5-20R GFCI receptacle outlet.

1. UL Listed.
2. Spring retractable cable with latch.
3. Adjustable cord stop.

B. Design Basis: Reelcraft #L 4545 123 7A.

1. Other Manufacturers: Hannay, KH Industries, Woodhead.

## 2.7 FINISHES

A. Color:

1. Wiring Devices Connected to Normal Power System: White, unless otherwise indicated or required by NFPA 70.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install devices and assemblies level, plumb, and square with building lines.

1. Installation height shall be as detailed in the drawings.

B. Install tamper-resistant receptacles at locations as required by the NEC and/or the local authority having jurisdiction.

C. Install unshared neutral conductors online and load side of dimmers according to manufacturers' written instructions.

D. Arrangement of Devices: Mount flush unless noted otherwise:

1. Receptacles over counters, backsplashes, etc. shall be mounted with long dimension horizontal.
2. Otherwise, unless noted differently, mount with long dimension vertical, and with grounding terminal of receptacles on top.
3. Group adjacent switches under single, multigang wall plates.

E. Remove wall plates and protect devices and assemblies during painting.

F. Adjust locations of floor service outlets to suit arrangement of partitions and furnishings. Coordinate final placement with Architect and Owner.

### 3.2 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with Section "Electrical Identification."



1. Receptacles and Switches: Identify panelboard and circuit number from which served. Use hot, stamped / thermal printing with black-filled lettering on face of plate, and durable wire markers inside outlet boxes.

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Ground equipment according to Section "Grounding and Bonding."
- B. Connect wiring according to Section "Conductors and Cables."

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following field tests and inspections:
  1. After installing wiring devices and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for proper polarity, ground continuity, and compliance with requirements.
  2. Test GFCI operation with both local and remote fault simulations according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest as specified above.

END OF SECTION 262726

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 262816 - ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Fusible switches.
2. Nonfusible switches.
3. Molded-case circuit breakers (MCCBs).
4. Enclosures.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated. Include nameplate ratings, dimensioned elevations, sections, weights, and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.
2. Enclosure types and details for types other than UL 50E, Type 1.
3. Current and voltage ratings.
4. Short-circuit current ratings (interrupting and withstand, as appropriate).
5. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and auxiliary components.

B. Shop Drawings: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

C. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that enclosed switches and circuit breakers, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Section "Seismic Controls for Electrical System." Include the following:

1. Basis of Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
  - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
  - b. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Warranty documentation.
- B. Operation and Maintenance Data: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. If Section “Operation and Maintenance Data” is included in the project manual, in addition to items there, include the following:
  - 1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting enclosed switches and circuit breakers.
  - 2. Time-current curves, including selectable ranges for each type of circuit breaker.
  - 3. Circuit breaker trip settings.

### 1.4 WARRANTY

- A. Special Installer Extended Warranty: Installer warrants that fabricated and installed enclosed switches and circuit breakers perform in accordance with specified requirements and agrees to repair or replace components or products that fail to perform as specified within warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion; full coverage for labor, materials, and equipment.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain products from single manufacturer.
- B. Manufacturers:
  - 1. ABB / G.E.
  - 2. Eaton Corporation; Cutler-Hammer Products.
  - 3. ESL Power Systems.
  - 4. Hubbell.
  - 5. Legrand.
  - 6. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
  - 7. Square D/Group Schneider.
- C. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Where drawings indicate maximum dimensions for enclosed switches and circuit breakers, including clearances between enclosures, and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended location and application.

## 2.2 FUSIBLE and NON-FUSIBLE SWITCHES

### A. Type HD, Heavy Duty:

1. Single throw.
2. Pole quantity, voltage, and Amperage as required for circuit controlled.
3. UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated. Where fused, clips or bolt pads shall accommodate fuses rated for the nameplate rating of equipment controlled.
4. Lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks and interlocked with cover in closed position.

### B. Accessories:

1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
3. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.
4. Lugs: Suitable for number, size, and conductor material as indicated in the drawings.

## 2.3 MOLDED-CASE CIRCUIT BREAKERS

### A. Standard: Comply with UL 489 with required interrupting capacity for available fault currents.

### B. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current thermal element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.

### C. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers: Field-replaceable rating plug, RMS sensing, with the following field-adjustable settings:

1. Instantaneous trip.
2. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
3. Long- and short-time time adjustments.

### D. Features and Accessories:

1. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
2. Shunt Trip: Where indicated in the drawings, trip coil energized from separate circuit, with coil-clearing contact.
3. Lugs: Suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.

## 2.4 ENCLOSURES

### A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: UL 489, NEMA KS 1, UL 50E, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.

### B. Enclosure Finish:

1. Indoor Locations: UL 50E Type 1.
2. Outdoor Locations: UL 50E Type 3R.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine elements and surfaces to receive enclosed switches and circuit breakers for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Commencement of work will indicate Installer's acceptance of areas and conditions as satisfactory.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's published instructions.
- B. Coordinate layout and installation of switches, circuit breakers, and components with equipment served and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
- C. Install individual wall-mounted switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Section 260548 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
  - 2. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting of eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.
  - 3. Install fuses in fusible devices.

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Electrical Identification."
  - 1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
  - 2. Label each enclosure with engraved-plastic nameplate.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
    - a. Verify that equipment nameplate data are as described in the Specifications and shown on Drawings.
    - b. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
    - c. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
    - d. Verify that unit is clean. Clean interior with vacuum, not compressed air.
    - e. Inspect exposed surfaces and repair damaged finishes.

- f. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance. Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of lowest value.
  - g. Switches:
    - 1) Verify blade alignment, blade penetration, travel stops, and mechanical operation.
    - 2) Verify that fuse sizes and types match the Specifications, Drawings, and equipment nameplate rating requirements.
    - 3) Verify that each fuse has adequate mechanical support and contact integrity.
  - h. Circuit Breakers:
    - 1) Operate circuit breaker to ensure smooth operation.
    - 2) Inspect operating mechanism, contacts, and chutes in unsealed units.
- 2. Electrical Tests:
  - a. Perform resistance measurements through bolted connections with low-resistance ohmmeter. Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of lowest value.
  - b. Circuit Breakers:
    - 1) Perform minimum pickup voltage tests on shunt trip and close coils in accordance with manufacturer's published data. Minimum pickup voltage of shunt trip and close coils must be as indicated by manufacturer.

B. Nonconforming Work:

- 1. Enclosed switches and circuit breakers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- 2. Remove and replace defective units and retest.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. After installation, protect enclosed switches and circuit breakers from construction activities. Remove and replace items that are contaminated, defaced, damaged, or otherwise caused to be unfit for use prior to acceptance by Owner.

END OF SECTION 262816

This page intentionally left blank.



## SECTION 263213 - ENGINE GENERATORS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes packaged engine-generator sets for optional standby power supply. Include the following features:
  - 1. Diesel engine.
  - 2. Unit-mounted cooling system.
  - 3. Unit-mounted control and monitoring.
  - 4. Performance requirements for sensitive loads.
  - 5. Outdoor enclosure.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section "Transfer Switches" for transfer switches including sensors and relays to initiate automatic-starting and -stopping signals for engine-generator sets.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. AHJ: Authority Having Jurisdiction.
- B. ECM: Engine Control Module.
- C. Optional Standby Power Supply: NEC 702, Optional Standby Systems.
- D. Operational Bandwidth: The total variation from the lowest to highest value of a parameter over the range of conditions indicated, expressed as a percentage of the nominal value of the parameter.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. PDF files of submittal data shall be provided. Two sets of Closeout Submittals are acceptable.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product, standard accessories, and optional accessories.

1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
2. Include motor starting performance curve(s) indicating voltage drop for motor starting conditions.
3. Include thermal damage curve for generator.
4. Include time-current characteristic curves for generator protective devices.
5. Include fuel consumption in gallons per hour at 0.8 power factor at 0.5, 0.75 and 1.0 times generator capacity.
6. Include generator efficiency at 0.8 power factor at 0.5, 0.75 and 1.0 times generator capacity.
7. Include generator characteristics, including, but not limited to kw rating, efficiency, reactances, and short-circuit current capability.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans and elevations for engine-generator set, subbase fuel tank, enclosure, and other components specified and/or provided. Indicate recommended equipment pad dimensions. Indicate access requirements affected by height of subbase fuel tank.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, center of gravity of full assembly, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Identify fluid drain ports and clearance requirements for proper fluid drain.
4. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include base weights.
5. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring. Complete schematic, wiring, and interconnection diagrams showing terminal markings for EPS equipment, automatic transfer switch, and functional relationship between all electrical components.

C. Paint Chart: For enclosure finish selection.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Specification Compliance Markup: Submit a mark-up copy of this specification with notations and explanations comprehensively showing all deviations and / or exceptions to these Specifications.
- B. Qualification Data: For supplier / installer.
  1. Statement from supplier / installer detailing local service capability, factory-trained service personnel, and details of service response required in accordance with this specification. Reference section 1.9A.31.9A.3 for service response guarantee.
- C. Field quality-control reports.
- D. Warranty: For special warranty.

## 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Initial Manual Submittal for Review: Submit draft copy of each manual at least 30 days before commencing demonstration and training. Owner and/or Engineer will comment on whether scope and content of manual are acceptable.
  - 1. Correct or revise each manual to comply with Owner and/or Engineer comments. Submit copies of each corrected manual as the Final Manual Submittal.
- B. Final Manual Submittal: Submit each manual in final form prior to requesting inspection for Substantial Completion and at least 15 days before commencing demonstration and training.
  - 1. Format: Submit operations and maintenance manuals in the following formats.
    - a. PDF electronic file. Submit electronic file via email and USB drive.
    - b. Two paper copies in heavy-duty, three-ring, loose-leaf binders. Include a complete operation and maintenance directory. Enclose title pages and directories in clear plastic sleeves.
- C. Operation and Maintenance Data: For packaged engine generators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Data shall be provided and identified that is specific to the site where equipment is installed.
  - 1. Emergency Manual: Assemble a complete set of emergency information indicating procedures for use by emergency personnel and by Owner's operating personnel for types of emergencies indicated.
  - 2. Product Maintenance Manual: Assemble a complete set of maintenance data indicating care and maintenance of each product, material, and finish incorporated into the Work.
    - a. Source Information: List each product included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents.
    - b. Product information.
    - c. Maintenance procedures.
    - d. Maintenance and service schedules.
    - e. Spare Parts List and Source Information: Include lists of replacement and repair parts, with parts identified and cross-referenced to manufacturers' maintenance documentation and local sources of maintenance materials and related services.
    - f. Maintenance Service Contracts: Include copies of maintenance agreements with name and telephone number of service agent.
    - g. Repair Materials and Sources: Include lists of materials and local sources of materials and related services.
    - h. Warranties: Include copies of warranties and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.
  - 3. Operation Manuals: Assemble a complete set of operation data indicating operation of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
    - a. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions.
    - b. Operating procedures.
    - c. Wiring diagrams.
    - d. Control diagrams.

- e. Piped system diagrams.
- 4. Manufacturers' Data: Where manuals contain manufacturers' standard printed data, include only sheets pertinent to product or component installed. Mark each sheet to identify each product or component incorporated into the Work. If data include more than one item in a tabular format, identify each item using appropriate references from the Contract Documents. Identify data applicable to the Work and delete references to information not applicable.
- 5. Additionally, include the following:
  - a. List of tools and replacement items recommended to be stored at Project for ready access. Include part and drawing numbers, current unit prices, and source of supply.
  - b. Operating instructions laminated and mounted adjacent to generator location.
  - c. Training plan.
  - d. Software for unit controller with diagnostic, troubleshooting, and maintenance functionality.

## 1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Fuses: One for every 10 of each type and rating but no fewer than one of each.
  - 2. Indicator Lamps: Two for every six of each type used, but no fewer than two of each.
  - 3. Filters: One set each of lubricating oil, fuel, and combustion-air filters.
  - 4. Paint: Two spray cans of each color.
  - 5. Keys: Four keys for enclosure access doors.
  - 6. Special Tools: Tools unique to the product for standard maintenance, listed by part number in operations and maintenance manual.

## 1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Supplier / Installer Qualifications:
  - 1. Manufacturer and factory authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.
  - 2. Maintain, within 125 miles or two hours of Hubert, North Carolina; a factory certified service center capable of providing training, parts, and emergency maintenance repairs.
  - 3. Response for emergency repairs shall be guaranteed to be four hours or less upon receipt of service call notification.
  - 4. Manufacturer's authorized representative shall employ factory-trained and certified service personnel and shall carry single-source responsibility for warranty, parts, and service.

#### 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of packaged engine generators and associated auxiliary components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period at no additional cost to the Owner.
  - 1. Warranty Period: 1 year or 2500 hours, whichever occurs first, from date of start-up and Substantial Completion.

#### 1.11 SERVICE CONTRACT

- A. Manufacturer's service representative shall provide a service contract at no additional cost to the Owner for a period of 1 year from date of start-up and Substantial Completion of the generator set installation.
- B. At the Owner's option, the service agreement shall be renewable on a year-to-year basis, thereafter, with costs being paid by the Owner.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Caterpillar.
  - 2. Cummins.
  - 3. MTU.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain packaged generator sets and auxiliary components through one source from a single manufacturer. Generator set shall be standard offering from manufacturer.

#### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. NFPA Compliance:
  - 1. Comply with NFPA 30.
  - 2. Comply with NFPA 37.
  - 3. Comply with NFPA 70.
  - 4. Comply with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 1 emergency power supply system.
- B. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 2200/CSA.
- C. Engine Exhaust Emissions: Comply with applicable EPA, state, and local government requirements.
- D. Noise Emission:

1. At a minimum, sound level measured at a distance of 23 feet from the unit after installation is complete shall be 75 dBA or less.
- E. Environmental Conditions: Engine-generator system shall withstand the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of performance capability:
  1. Ambient Temperature: Minus 15 to plus 50 deg C.
  2. Altitude: Sea level to 100 feet.

## 2.3 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Factory-assembled and -tested, water-cooled engine, with brushless generator and accessories.
- B. EPSS Class: Engine-generator set shall be classified as a Class 72 in accordance with NFPA 110.
- C. Governor: Adjustable isochronous, with speed sensing.
- D. Mounting Frame: Structural steel framework to maintain alignment of mounted components without depending on concrete foundation. Provide lifting attachments sized and spaced to prevent deflection of base during lifting and moving.
  1. Rigging Diagram: Inscribed on metal plate permanently attached to mounting frame to indicate location and lifting capacity of each lifting attachment and generator-set center of gravity.
- E. Capacities and Characteristics:
  1. Power Output Ratings: Nominal ratings as indicated on the drawings at 0.8 power factor excluding power required for the continued and repeated operation of the unit and auxiliaries.
  2. Output Connections: As indicated on the drawings.
  3. Voltage: As indicated on the drawings.
  4. Nameplates: For each major system component to identify manufacturer's name and address, and model and serial number of component. Nameplate shall be in accordance with NFPA70.
- F. Generator-Set Performance:
  1. Steady-State Voltage Operational Bandwidth: 2 percent of rated output voltage from no load to full load.
  2. Transient Voltage Performance:
    - a. Not more than 20 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Voltage shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within 3 seconds.
  3. Steady-State Frequency Operational Bandwidth: Plus or minus 0.25 percent of rated frequency from no load to full load.

4. Steady-State Frequency Stability: When system is operating at any constant load within the rated load, there shall be no random speed variations outside the steady-state operational band and no hunting or surging of speed.
5. Transient Frequency Performance: Less than 5 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Frequency shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within 5 seconds.
6. Sustained Short-Circuit Current: For a three-phase, bolted short circuit at system output terminals, system shall supply a minimum of 250 percent of rated full-load current for not less than 10 seconds and then clear the fault automatically, without damage to winding insulation or other generator system components.
7. Block Load Performance: per NFPA110, the unit shall be able to fully recover from a 100% block load.
8. Excitation System: Performance shall be unaffected by 10% total voltage distortion (THD) caused by nonlinear load.
  - a. Provide permanent magnet excitation (PMG) for power source to voltage regulator.
9. Start Time: Comply with NFPA 110, Type 10, system requirements.

## 2.4 ENGINE

- A. Fuel: Diesel Fuel oil, Grade DF-2.
- B. Engine Rating: Prime mover shall have adequate horsepower to meet the specified kW at the specified site altitude and temperatures. Products that de-rate below specified kW for temperature or altitude shall not be accepted.
- C. Rated Engine Speed: 1800 rpm.
- D. Cylinders: For units 300 kW and larger, cylinders shall be cast iron, sleeved.
- E. Lubrication System: The following items shall be mounted on engine or skid:
  1. Positive displacement, full pressure lubrication oil pump.
  2. Filter and Strainer: Per manufacturer recommendations.
  3. Dipstick to check oil level.
  4. Crankcase Drain: Arranged for complete gravity drainage to an easily removable container with no disassembly and without use of pumps, siphons, special tools, or appliances.
- F. Jacket Coolant Heater:
  1. Electric-immersion type, factory installed in coolant jacket system. Comply with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 1 equipment for heater capacity. Heater(s) shall be 3<sup>rd</sup> party listed.
  2. 1500-watts, 120 volt minimum. Provide higher capacity heater as required based on manufacturer requirements for engine size.
  3. Thermostatically controlled to maintain engine coolant at not less than 90 deg F in 32 deg F ambient.
  4. Shut-off valve to simplify replacement of the heater.

- G. Cooling System: Closed loop, liquid cooled, with radiator factory mounted on engine-generator-set mounting frame and integral engine-driven coolant pump.
  - 1. Coolant: Solution of 50 percent ethylene-glycol-based antifreeze and 50 percent water, with anticorrosion additives as recommended by engine manufacturer.
  - 2. Cooling System Sizing: Sized to adequately cool the generator set, including aftercooler, without de-rate to an ambient temperature of 122 deg F (50 deg C) for diesel. Maximum external restriction shall be no greater than 0.5 inch of water column.
  - 3. Size of Radiator: Adequate to contain expansion of total system coolant from cold start to 110 percent load condition.
  - 4. Temperature Control: Self-contained, thermostatic-control valve modulates coolant flow automatically to maintain optimum constant coolant temperature as recommended by engine manufacturer.
  - 5. Blower fan, water pump, thermostat, and radiator duct flange shall properly cool the engines in 105 deg F ambient with up to 0.5 inches H2O static pressure on the fan. Radiator shall include a duct flange adapter for connection to the discharge air vent.
  - 6. Coolant Hose: Flexible assembly with inside surface of nonporous rubber and outer covering of aging-, ultraviolet-, and abrasion-resistant fabric.
    - a. Rating: 50-psig maximum working pressure with coolant at 180 deg F (82 deg C), and non-collapsible under vacuum.
    - b. End Fittings: Flanges or steel pipe nipples with clamps to suit piping and equipment connections.
- H. Air-Intake Filter: Heavy-duty, engine-mounted air cleaner with replaceable dry-filter element and "blocked filter" indicator.
- I. Starting System: 12 or 24-V electric, with negative ground.
  - 1. Components: Sized so they are not damaged during a full engine-cranking cycle with ambient temperature at maximum specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
  - 2. Cranking / Starting Motor: Heavy-duty unit that automatically engages and releases from engine flywheel without binding.
    - a. Speed sensing and a second independent starter motor disengagement systems shall protect against starter engagement with a moving flywheel.
  - 3. Cranking Cycle: As required by NFPA 110 for system level specified.
    - a. Cranking cycle with 15 second ON and OFF cranking periods.
    - b. Overcrank protection designed to open the cranking circuit after 75 seconds if the engine fails to start.
    - c. The starting system shall be designed for restarting in the event of a false engine start, by permitting the engine to completely stop and then re-engage the starter.
  - 4. The starting system shall be designed for restarting in the event of a false engine start, by permitting the engine to completely stop and then re-engage the starter.
  - 5. Battery: Lead acid, certified to meet NFPA 110, with capacity within ambient temperature range specified in "Performance Requirements" Article to provide specified cranking cycle at least three times without recharging.
  - 6. Battery Cable: Size as recommended by engine manufacturer for cable length indicated. Include required interconnecting conductors and connection accessories.



7. Battery Stand: Factory-fabricated, two-tier metal with acid-resistant finish designed to hold the quantity of battery cells required and to maintain the arrangement to minimize lengths of battery interconnections.
8. Battery-Charging Alternator: Factory mounted on engine with solid-state voltage regulation and continuous rating adequate for batteries provided, 35-A minimum.
9. Battery Charger: Current-limiting, automatic-equalizing and float-charging type designed for lead-acid batteries. Unit shall comply with and be listed to UL 1236 and include the following features:
  - a. Operation: Equalizing-charging rate of 10 A shall be initiated automatically after battery has lost charge until an adjustable equalizing voltage is achieved at battery terminals. Unit shall then be automatically switched to a lower float-charging mode and shall continue to operate in that mode until battery is discharged again.
  - b. Automatic Temperature Compensation: Adjust float and equalize voltages for variations in ambient temperature from minus 40 deg C to 60 deg C to prevent overcharging at high temperatures and undercharging at low temperatures.
  - c. Automatic Voltage Regulation: Maintain +/- 1% constant output voltage regardless of input voltage variations up to plus or minus 10 percent.
  - d. Ammeter and Voltmeter: Flush mounted in door. Meters shall indicate charging rates. Fuse protection. Reverse polarity and transient protected.
  - e. Safety Functions: Sense abnormally low battery voltage and close contacts providing low battery voltage indication on control and monitoring panel. Sense high battery voltage and loss of ac input or dc output of battery charger. Either condition shall close contacts that provide a battery-charger malfunction indication at system control and monitoring panel.
  - f. Enclosure and Mounting: NEMA 250, Type 1, wall-mounted cabinet with adequate vibration isolation if mounted within the generator set.

## 2.5 DIESEL FUEL-OIL SYSTEM

- A. Comply with NFPA 30.
- B. Flexible fuel lines rated 300 deg F and 100 psi ending in pipe thread.
- C. Main Fuel Pump: Mounted on engine to provide primary fuel flow under starting and load conditions. Engine-driven or electric fuel transfer pump capable of lifting fuel 4.7 feet minimum.
- D. Fuel Filtering: Primary fuel filter to remove water and contaminants larger than 10 micron. Secondary filter to remove contaminants larger than 2 micron.
- E. Relief-Bypass Valve: Automatically regulates pressure in fuel line and returns excess fuel to source.
- F. Subbase-Mounted, Double-Wall, Fuel-Oil Tank: Factory installed and piped, complying with UL 142 fuel-oil tank. Features include the following:
  1. Fuel-Tank Capacity: Fuel for 72 hours' continuous operation at 100 percent rated power output. Tanks larger than the minimum capacity specified are acceptable.
  2. Tank level indicator gauge.

3. Low Fuel Sensing Switch: shall be provided, in accordance with NFPA110, to indicate when less than the minimum fuel necessary for full load running, as required by the specified EPSS class.
4. Leak detection in interstitial space.
5. Vandal-resistant fill cap.
6. Spill containment box for filling location.
7. Normal vent shall extend to 12' above grade. Adequately brace extended vent so that attachment of the vent to the tank is not the sole means of support.
8. Containment Provisions: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
9. Tank shall be production tested to 2 psi.
10. Tank shall be equipped with overfill protection, fuel line check valve, fuel level gauge, low fuel level alarm contact, low fuel level shutdown contact, and fittings for fuel supply, return, fill and vent.
11. The tank shall feature all welded construction and have the structural integrity to support the genset, accessories, and the weather-protective enclosure.

## 2.6 CONTROL AND MONITORING

- A. Automatic Starting System Sequence of Operation: When mode-selector switch on the control and monitoring panel is in the automatic position, remote-control contacts in one or more separate automatic transfer switches initiate starting and stopping of generator set. When mode-selector switch is switched to the on position, generator set starts. The off position of same switch initiates generator-set shutdown with a programmed 5-minute cooldown period. When generator set is running, specified system or equipment failures or derangements automatically shut down generator set and initiate alarms. Activation of a remote emergency-stop switch also shuts down generator set. When mode-selector switch is in the OFF position, the engine shall not start even though the remote start contacts close. This position shall also provide for immediate shutdown in case of an emergency. Reset of any fault shall also be accomplished by putting the switch to the OFF position.
- B. Provide minimum run time control set for 15 minutes with override only by switching the model-selector switch to Off or by operation of a remote emergency-stop switch. Provide engine cooldown timer, factory set at 5 minutes, to permit unloaded running of the standby set after transfer of the load to normal.
- C. Comply with UL 508A.
- D. Configuration: Operating and safety indications, protective devices, basic system controls, and engine gages shall be grouped in a common control and monitoring panel mounted on the generator set. Mounting method shall isolate the control panel from generator-set vibration. Panel shall be powered from the engine-generator set battery.
  1. Engine and generator control wiring shall be multi-stranded annealed copper conductors encased by cross-linked polyethylene insulation resistant to heat, abrasion, oil, water, and antifreeze. Wiring shall be suitable for continuous use at 250 deg F (121 deg C) with insulation not brittle at minus 60 deg F (minus 51 deg C). Cables shall be enclosed in nylon flexible conduit, which is slotted to allow easy access and moisture to escape.
    - a. Engines that are equipped with an electronic engine control module (ECM) shall monitor and control engine functionality and seamlessly integrate with the generator set controller through digital communications. ECM monitored

parameters shall be integrated into the genset controllers NFPA 110 alarm and warning requirements.

2. Construction: All circuitry within the control panel shall be individually environmentally sealed to prevent corrosion. Encapsulated circuit boards with surface mounted components and sealed, automotive-style connectors for sensors and circuit board connectors.
- E. Indicating Devices: As required by NFPA 110 for Level 1 system. All ECM fault codes shall be displayed at the generator set controller in standard language; fault code numbers are not acceptable. Utilizing a digital display, including the following:
1. AC voltage: True three-phase sensing.
  2. AC current.
  3. Frequency.
  4. EPS supplying load indicator.
  5. DC voltage (alternator battery charging).
  6. Engine-coolant temperature.
  7. Engine lubricating-oil pressure.
  8. Running-time meter.
  9. Current and Potential Transformers: Instrument accuracy class.
- F. Protective Devices and Controls in Local Control Panel: Shutdown devices and common visual alarm indication as required by NFPA 110 for Level 1 system, including the following:
1. Start-stop switch.
  2. Overcrank shutdown device.
  3. Overspeed shutdown device.
  4. Coolant high-temperature shutdown device.
  5. Coolant low-level shutdown device.
  6. Low lube oil pressure shutdown device.
  7. Overcrank alarm.
  8. Overspeed alarm.
  9. Coolant high-temperature alarm.
  10. Coolant low-temperature alarm.
  11. Coolant low-level alarm.
  12. Low lube oil pressure alarm.
  13. Lamp test.
  14. Contacts for local and remote common alarm.
  15. Coolant high-temperature prealarm.
  16. Generator-voltage; digitally adjustable via controller, password protected.
  17. Fuel tank low-level alarm.
  18. Run-Off-Auto switch.
  19. Control switch not in automatic position alarm.
  20. Low cranking voltage alarm.
  21. Battery-charger malfunction alarm.
  22. Battery low-voltage alarm.
  23. Battery high-voltage alarm.
- G. Supporting Items: Include sensors, transducers, terminals, relays, and other devices and include wiring required to support specified items. Locate sensors and other supporting items on engine or generator, unless otherwise indicated.

- H. Data Connection: Provide an RS-485 ModBus port.
- I. The control system shall provide pre-wired customer use dry contact outputs (4 minimum). Customer I/O shall be software configurable providing full access to all alarm, event, data logging, and shutdown functionality.
- J. Programmable Cycle Timer: To start and run the generator for a predetermined time. The timer shall use 14 user-programmable sequences that are repeated in a 7-day cycle. Each sequence shall have the following programmable set points:
  - 1. Day of the week.
  - 2. Time of the day start.
  - 3. Duration of cycle.
  - 4. Option to exercise at reduced speed for quiet test mode.
- K. Remote Alarm Annunciator:
  - 1. Comply with NFPA 99.
  - 2. Storage battery powered.
  - 3. Hardwired connections between generator controller and remote annunciator.
  - 4. Common audible signal shall sound for each alarm condition.
  - 5. Silencing switch in face of panel shall silence signal without altering visual indication.
  - 6. Configure so that after an alarm is silenced, clearing of initiating condition will reactivate alarm until silencing switch is reset.
  - 7. Cabinet and faceplate shall be surface- or flush-mounting type to suit mounting conditions indicated.
  - 8. Lamp test pushbutton/switch to test all indicator lamps.
  - 9. Individual LEDs labeled to identify each alarm condition and/or event. LED indicators shall include but not be limited to:
    - a. Generator RUNNING indication.
    - b. Battery charger malfunction alarm.
    - c. Overcrank (failed to start) alarm.
    - d. Coolant low-temperature alarm.
    - e. High engine temperature prealarm.
    - f. High engine temperature alarm.
    - g. Low lubrication oil pressure alarm.
    - h. Overspeed alarm.
    - i. Low fuel, main tank alarm.
    - j. Low coolant level alarm.

## 2.7 GENERATOR OVERCURRENT AND FAULT PROTECTION

- A. Overcurrent protective devices for the entire EPSS shall be coordinated to optimize selective tripping when a short circuit occurs. Coordination of protective devices shall consider both utility and EPSS as the voltage source.
  - 1. Overcurrent protective devices for the EPSS shall be accessible only to authorized personnel.

- B. Generator Circuit Breaker: Molded-case, thermal-magnetic type; 100 percent rated; complying with UL 489.
  - 1. Tripping Characteristic: Designed specifically for generator protection.
  - 2. Trip Rating: Matched to generator output rating.
  - 3. Trip Settings:
    - a. Selected to coordinate with generator thermal damage curve.
    - b. Selected to coordinate with magnetic only, motor circuit protector breaker at a fire pump controller, as applicable.
    - c. The instantaneous trip setting shall not exceed the calculated short circuit fault current available from the generator.
  - 4. Shunt Trip: Connected to trip breaker when generator set is shut down by other protective devices.

## 2.8 GENERATOR, EXCITER, AND VOLTAGE REGULATOR

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 and UL2200, sized for 248 deg F (120 deg C) temperature rise above ambient at rated load.
- B. Drive: Generator shaft shall be directly connected to engine shaft. Exciter shall be rotated integrally with generator rotor.
- C. Electrical Insulation: Class H, vacuum impregnated with epoxy varnish in accordance with MILSPEC 1-24092 for improved fungus and salt spray resistance.
- D. Stator-Winding Leads: Brought out to terminal box to permit future reconnection for other voltages if required. Provide twelve lead alternator.
- E. Range: Provide broad range of output voltage by adjusting the excitation level.
- F. Construction shall prevent mechanical, electrical, and thermal damage due to vibration, overspeed up to 125 percent of rated speed, and heat during operation at 110 percent of rated capacity.
- G. Enclosure: Drip-proof.
- H. Instrument Transformers: Mounted within generator enclosure.
- I. Voltage Regulator: Solid-state type on a sealed circuit board, separate from exciter, providing performance as specified and as required by NFPA 110. Must be 3-phase sensing.
  - 1. Voltage Adjustment on Control and Monitoring Panel: Provide plus or minus 10 percent adjustment of output-voltage operating band.
  - 2. Provide anti-hunt provision to stabilize voltage.
  - 3. Isolated to prevent tracking when connected to SCR loads.
- J. Windings: Two-thirds pitch stator winding and fully linked amortisseur winding.

- K. Subtransient Reactance: 12 percent, maximum for sites with motor load supplied from VFDs or solid state soft starters.
- L. Excitation: Permanent magnet (PMG) type providing 300 percent current output for up to 10 seconds to a downstream breaker for selective coordination and improved motor starting.

## 2.9 OUTDOOR GENERATOR-SET ENCLOSURE

- A. Description: Vandal-resistant, sound-attenuating, weatherproof housing, wind resistant up to 130 mph. Roof shall be peaked or sloped for water runoff. Access doors shall be positioned to provide adequate access to components requiring maintenance. Instruments and controls shall be mounted within enclosure.
  - 1. Structural Design and Anchorage: Comply with North Carolina Building Code for wind loads up to 130 mph.
  - 2. Aluminum alloy, 0.063" thick minimum (14 gauge equivalent).
  - 3. Enclosure exterior shall be primed and finish coated with powder baked manufacturer standard paint. Color shall be as selected by the Architect.
  - 4. Hinged Doors:
    - a. Provide a minimum of two doors per side for operator and service access. A rear door or removable access panel shall provide access to generator end of unit.
    - b. Door Panels: With integral stiffeners, and capable of being removed by one person without tools. In lieu of being removed, hardware that retains doors in fully open position are acceptable.
    - c. Slip-pin hinges and latches stainless steel with nylon spacers.
    - d. Gasketed for weather and rodent protection.
    - e. Handles to have padlocking provisions.
    - f. Door locks, hardware, and fasteners shall be stainless steel. Locks shall be keyed alike.
  - 5. Silencer:
    - a. Located within enclosure.
    - b. Super-critical type, sized as recommended by engine manufacturer and selected with exhaust piping system to not exceed engine manufacturer's engine backpressure requirements. At a minimum, sound level measured at a distance of 23 feet from exhaust discharge after installation is complete shall be 75 dBA or less. Reference 2.2.D for sound emission requirements..
    - c. Coated to be temperature and rust resistant.
    - d. Integral condensate drain.
    - e. Gas proof, stainless steel, flexible exhaust bellows with threaded NPT or flanged connections.
    - f. All exhaust piping shall be wrapped for personnel protection and to eliminate excessive heat build-up during generator operation.
  - 6. Assembly Hardware (Nuts and Bolts): Use stainless steel hardware and nylon washers to prevent paint deterioration.
- B. Sound Attenuation: Factory or third party enclosure, designed to meet the following design criteria:

1. Sound attenuated enclosure designed to match the criteria for the silencer. Reference section 2.2.D. Enclosure shall have intake and discharge hoods, as needed, to reduce the mechanical and exhaust noise to an acceptable level.
  2. Sound attenuation materials shall be securely supported, attached, and mechanically held in place; preferably with aluminum perforated metal sheeting.
- C. Engine Cooling Airflow through Enclosure: Maintain temperature rise of system components within required limits when unit operates at 110 percent of rated load for 2 hours with ambient temperature at top of range specified in system service conditions.
1. Louvers: Fixed-engine, cooling-air inlet and discharge. Storm-proof and drainable louvers to prevent entry of rain and snow. Screened openings to prevent rodent entry.
- D. Convenience Outlets: Factory wired, GFCI. Arrange for external electrical connection.

## 2.10 VIBRATION ISOLATION DEVICES

- A. Elastomeric Isolator Pads: Oil- and water-resistant elastomer or natural rubber, arranged in single or multiple layers, molded with a nonslip pattern and galvanized-steel baseplates of sufficient stiffness for uniform loading over pad area, and factory cut to sizes that match requirements of supported equipment.

## 2.11 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Prototype Testing: Factory test engine-generator set using same engine model, constructed of identical or equivalent components and equipped with identical or equivalent accessories.
1. Tests: Comply with NFPA 110, Level 1 Energy Converters and with IEEE 115.
  2. Additionally, test and document the following:
    - a. Maximum power (kW).
    - b. Maximum motor starting (kVA) at 35% instantaneous voltage dip.
    - c. Alternator temperature rise by embedded thermocouple and by resistance method per NEMA MG1 -22.40.
    - d. Governor speed regulation under steady-state and transient conditions.
    - e. Voltage regulation and generator transient response.
    - f. Fuel consumption at 1/4, 1/2, 3/4, and full load.
    - g. Harmonic analysis, voltage waveform deviation, and telephone influence factor.
    - h. Three-phase short circuit tests.
    - i. Alternator cooling air flow.
    - j. Torsional analysis testing to verify that the generator set is free of harmful torsional stresses.
    - k. Endurance testing.
- B. Project-Specific Equipment Tests: Before shipment, factory test engine-generator set and other system components and accessories manufactured specifically for this Project. Perform tests at rated load and power factor. Include the following tests:
1. Test components and accessories furnished with installed unit that are not identical to those on tested prototype to demonstrate compatibility and reliability.

2. Test generator, exciter, and voltage regulator as a unit.
3. Full load run.
4. Maximum power.
5. Voltage regulation.
6. Transient and steady-state governing.
7. Single-step load pickup.
8. Safety shutdown.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, equipment bases, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation and other conditions affecting packaged engine-generator performance.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems and electrical connections. Verify actual locations of connections before packaged engine-generator installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 DELIVERY

- A. Generator equipment shall be shipped to the site as a “single-source” item for which responsibility for overall installation, maintenance, spare parts, and service is through the local factory representative.
- B. Delivery of the generator shall include off-loading and setting the generator in place on a concrete slab. Installation shall include mounting of all accessories specified elsewhere in this specification along with external power and control connections of the unit.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with packaged engine-generator manufacturers' written installation and alignment instructions and with NFPA 110.
- B. Equipment Mounting:
  1. Install packaged engine generators on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified and/or as detailed in the drawings.
  2. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases for packaged engine generators. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases.
- C. Install packaged engine-generator to provide access, without removing connections or accessories, for periodic maintenance.



- D. Install engine-generator in enclosure with elastomeric isolator pads on concrete base. Secure set as required by the manufacturer.
- E. Electrical Wiring: Install electrical devices furnished by equipment manufacturers but not specified to be factory mounted.
- F. Provide fuel as required for startup, testing, and demonstration.

### 3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect fuel, cooling-system, and exhaust-system piping adjacent to packaged engine-generator to allow service and maintenance.
- B. Connect engine exhaust pipe to engine with flexible connector.
- C. Ground equipment according to Section "Grounding and Bonding."
- D. Connect wiring according to Section "Conductors and Cable." Provide a minimum of one 90 degree bend in flexible conduit routed to the generator set from a stationary element.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. NFPA 30 Fuel Tank Tightness Testing:
    - a. After installation on site and before being placed into service, the fuel tank and connections shall be tested in accordance with NFPA 30 requirements.
    - b. Notify the Design Team and local AHJ and Fire Marshal two weeks prior to scheduled test date to allow observation of the testing.
    - c. Obtain written acceptance of testing from the local AHJ and Fire Marshal.
    - d. Submit two copies of local AHJ and Fire Marshal written acceptance of testing.
  - 2. Perform tests recommended by manufacturer and each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical and mechanical test listed in the first two subparagraphs as specified in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
    - a. Visual and Mechanical Inspection
      - 1) Compare equipment nameplate data with drawings and specifications.
      - 2) Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
      - 3) Inspect anchorage, alignment, and grounding.
      - 4) Verify the unit is clean.
      - 5) Provide fluids and check levels of fuel, lubricating oil, and antifreeze for conformity to the manufacturer's recommendations, under the environmental conditions present and expected.

- 6) Accessories that normally function while each set is standing by shall be checked prior to cranking the engines. These shall include: block heaters, battery chargers, etc.
- b. Electrical and Mechanical Tests
  - 1) Test protective relay devices per manufacturer recommendations.
  - 2) Verify phase rotation, phasing, and synchronized operation as required by the application.
  - 3) Start-up test mode to check for exhaust leaks, path of exhaust gases outside buildings, cooling air flow, movement during starting and stopping, vibration during running, normal and emergency line-to-line voltage, and phase rotation.
  - 4) Functionally test engine shutdown for low oil pressure, overtemperature, overspeed, and other protection features as applicable.
  - 5) Conduct performance test in accordance with NFPA 110.
  - 6) Verify correct functioning of the governor and regulator.
  - 7) Four hour load bank test with an external load bank as follows: 1 hour @ 50% load, 3 hours @ 100% load. Monitor and record the following data in 15 minute intervals: engine coolant temperature, oil pressure, battery charge level, generator output voltage, amperes, and frequency.
3. Battery Tests: Equalize charging of battery cells according to manufacturer's written instructions. Record individual cell voltages.
  - a. Measure charging voltage and voltages between available battery terminals for full-charging and float-charging conditions. Check electrolyte level and specific gravity under both conditions.
  - b. Test for contact integrity of all connectors. Perform an integrity load test and a capacity load test for the battery.
  - c. Verify acceptance of charge for each element of the battery after discharge.
  - d. Verify that measurements are within manufacturer's specifications.
4. Battery-Charger Tests: Verify specified rates of charge for both equalizing and float-charging conditions.
5. System Integrity Tests: Methodically verify proper installation, connection, and integrity of each element of engine-generator system before and during system operation. Check for air, exhaust, and fluid leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
6. Voltage and Frequency Transient Stability Tests:
  - a. Use data capture from manufacturer control panel and software for measurements.
  - b. Measure voltage and frequency transients for 50 and 100 percent step-load increases and decreases, and verify that performance is as specified.
  - c. Measure voltage and frequency transients for actual site loads, similar to the steps indicated for voltage drop calculation requirements.
- C. Coordinate tests with tests for transfer switches and run them concurrently. Perform automatic start-up by means of simulated power outage to test remote-automatic starting, transfer of the load, and automatic shutdown.
- D. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation for generator and associated equipment.

- E. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- F. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified.
- G. Retest: Correct deficiencies identified by tests and observations and retest until specified requirements are met.
- H. Report results of tests and inspections in writing. Record adjustable relay settings and measured insulation resistances, time delays, and other values and observations. Attach a label or tag to each tested component indicating satisfactory completion of tests.

### 3.6 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. After the four hour load bank test has been completed:
  - 1. Change the lubrication oil, lubrication oil filters, and fuel filters.
- B. Fill fuel tank for diesel fueled units. Under the service contract, provide full service and maintenance by certified employees of manufacturer's designated service organization.
  - 1. Quarterly: Include inspection, testing, exercising, and adjustments to check for proper starting, load transfer, and running under load. Include routine preventive maintenance as recommended by manufacturer and adjusting as required for proper operation.
  - 2. Yearly: Along with quarterly activities, include a load bank test for a minimum of 3 hours at 100% load.
  - 3. Provide parts and supplies same as those used in the manufacture and installation of original equipment.
  - 4. Include certification in the Owner's maintenance log of repairs made and proper functioning of all engine and auxiliary systems.

### 3.7 TRAINING

- A. The equipment supplier shall provide training for the facility operating personnel covering operation, maintenance, and repair of the equipment provided. The training program shall be not less than 4 hours in duration and the class size shall be limited to 5 persons. Training date shall be coordinated with the facility owner. Time permitting, training will be tentatively scheduled after start-up.

END OF SECTION 263213

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 263600 - TRANSFER SWITCHES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes transfer switches rated 600 V and less, including the following:
  - 1. Automatic transfer switches (ATS), closed transition type.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, weights, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details showing minimum clearances, conductor entry provisions, gutter space, installed features and devices, and material lists for each switch specified.
  - 2. Wiring diagrams.
- C. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that transfer switches accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems." Include the following:
  - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
    - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
  - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- D. Field quality-control test reports.

- E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of product to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified elsewhere for operation and maintenance Data, include the following:
  - 1. Features and operating sequences, both automatic and manual.
  - 2. List of all factory settings of relays; provide relay-setting and calibration instructions, including software, where applicable.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Maintain a service center capable of providing training, parts, and emergency maintenance repairs within a response period of less than four hours from time of notification.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain automatic transfer switches through one source from a single manufacturer.
- C. Comply with NEMA ICS 1.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.
- E. Comply with NFPA 110.
- F. Comply with UL 1008 unless requirements of these Specifications are stricter.

#### 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases.

#### 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of transfer switch or transfer switch components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Final Acceptance.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Contactor Transfer Switches:
    - a. Emerson; ASCO Power Technologies, LP.

- b. ABB / GE / Zenith Controls.
- c. Russelectric, Inc.

## 2.2 GENERAL TRANSFER-SWITCH PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

- A. Indicated Current Ratings: Apply as defined in UL 1008 for continuous loading and total system transfer, including tungsten filament lamp loads not exceeding 30 percent of switch ampere rating, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Tested Fault-Current Closing and Withstand Ratings: Adequate for duty imposed by protective devices at installation locations in Project under the fault conditions indicated, based on testing according to UL 1008.
  - 1. Rating: 18,000 AIC.
- C. Solid-State Controls: Repetitive accuracy of all settings shall be plus or minus 2 percent or better over an operating temperature range of minus 20 to plus 70 deg C.
- D. Resistance to Damage by Voltage Transients: Components shall meet or exceed voltage-surge withstand capability requirements when tested according to IEEE C62.41. Components shall meet or exceed voltage-impulse withstand test of NEMA ICS 1.
- E. Electrical Operation: Accomplish by a nonfused, momentarily energized solenoid or electric-motor-operated mechanism, mechanically and electrically interlocked in both directions.
- F. Switch Characteristics: Designed for continuous-duty repetitive transfer of full-rated current between active power sources.
  - 1. Switch Action: Double throw; mechanically held in both directions.
  - 2. Contacts: Silver composition or silver alloy for load-current switching. Conventional automatic transfer-switch units, rated 225 A and higher, shall have separate arcing contacts.
- G. Neutral Switching. Where four-pole switches are indicated for 3-phase distribution systems and three-pole switches are indicated for single phase distribution system, provide neutral pole switched simultaneously with phase poles.
- H. Factory Wiring: Train and bundle factory wiring and label, consistent with Shop Drawings, either by color-code or by numbered or lettered wire and cable tape markers at terminations. Color-coding and wire and cable tape markers are specified in Section "Electrical Identification."
  - 1. Designated Terminals: Pressure type, suitable for types and sizes of field wiring indicated.
  - 2. Power-Terminal Arrangement and Field-Wiring Space: Suitable for top, side, or bottom entrance of feeder conductors as indicated.
  - 3. Control Wiring: Equipped with lugs suitable for connection to terminal strips.
- I. Enclosures: General-purpose NEMA 250, Type 1, complying with NEMA ICS 6 and UL 508, unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.3 AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES

- A. Comply with Level 2 equipment according to NFPA 110.
- B. Switching Arrangement: Double-throw type, incapable of pauses or intermediate position stops during normal functioning, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Manual Switch Operation: Under load, with door closed and with either or both sources energized. Transfer time is same as for electrical operation. Control circuit automatically disconnects from electrical operator during manual operation.
- D. Signal-Before-Transfer Contacts: A set of normally open/normally closed dry contacts operates in advance of retransfer to normal source. Interval is adjustable from 1 to 30 seconds.
- E. Automatic Closed-Transition Transfer Switches: Include the following functions and characteristics:
  - 1. Fully automatic make-before-break operation.
  - 2. Load transfer without interruption, through momentary interconnection of both power sources not exceeding 100 ms.
  - 3. Initiation of No-Interruption Transfer: Controlled by in-phase monitor and sensors confirming both sources are present and acceptable.
    - a. Initiation occurs without active control of generator.
    - b. Controls ensure that closed-transition load transfer closure occurs only when the 2 sources are within plus or minus 5 electrical degrees maximum, and plus or minus 5 percent maximum voltage difference.
  - 4. Failure of power source serving load initiates automatic break-before-make transfer.
  - 5. If utility service is provided by Duke Energy, comply with Duke Energy interconnection requirements:
    - a. Include synchronization check function (25 relay).
    - b. Include a separate timer that initiates separation of the backup supply source from the utility if the paralleling time exceeds 100 ms.
    - c. See attached Figures 73A and 74 from Duke Energy document Requirements for Electric Service and Meter Installations, North Carolina and South Carolina.
- F. Automatic Transfer-Switch Features:
  - 1. Undervoltage Sensing for Each Phase of Normal Source: Sense low phase-to-ground voltage on each phase. Pickup voltage shall be adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal, and dropout voltage is adjustable from 75 to 98 percent of pickup value. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent and dropout at 85 percent.
  - 2. Adjustable Time Delay: For override of normal-source voltage sensing to delay transfer and engine start signals. Adjustable from zero to six seconds, and factory set for one second.
  - 3. Voltage/Frequency Lockout Relay: Prevent premature transfer to generator. Pickup voltage shall be adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent. Pickup frequency shall be adjustable from 90 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 95 percent.



4. Time Delay for Retransfer to Normal Source: Adjustable from 0 to 30 minutes, and factory set for 10 minutes to automatically defeat delay on loss of voltage or sustained undervoltage of emergency source, provided normal supply has been restored.
5. Test Switch: Simulate normal-source failure.
6. Switch-Position Pilot Lights: Indicate source to which load is connected.
7. Source-Available Indicating Lights: Supervise sources via transfer-switch normal- and emergency-source sensing circuits.
  - a. Normal Power Supervision: Green light with nameplate engraved "Normal Source Available."
  - b. Emergency Power Supervision: Red light with nameplate engraved "Emergency Source Available."
8. Unassigned Auxiliary Contacts: Two normally open, single-pole, double-throw contacts for each switch position, rated 10 A at 240-V ac.
9. Transfer Override Switch: Overrides automatic retransfer control so automatic transfer switch will remain connected to emergency power source regardless of condition of normal source. Pilot light indicates override status.
10. Engine Starting Contacts: One isolated and normally closed, and one isolated and normally open; rated 10 A at 32-V dc minimum.
11. Engine Shutdown Contacts: Time delay adjustable from zero to five minutes, and factory set for five minutes. Contacts shall initiate shutdown at remote engine-generator controls after retransfer of load to normal source.
12. Engine-Generator Exerciser: Solid-state, programmable-time switch starts engine generator and transfers load to it from normal source for a preset time, then retransfers and shuts down engine after a preset cool-down period. Initiates exercise cycle at preset intervals adjustable from 7 to 30 days. Running periods are adjustable from 10 to 30 minutes. Factory settings are for 7-day exercise cycle, 20-minute running period, and 5-minute cool-down period. Exerciser features include the following:
  - a. Exerciser Transfer Selector Switch: Permits selection of exercise with and without load transfer.
  - b. Push-button programming control with digital display of settings.
  - c. Integral battery operation of time switch when normal control power is not available.

## 2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory test and inspect components, assembled switches, and associated equipment. Ensure proper operation. Check transfer time and voltage, frequency, and time-delay settings for compliance with specified requirements. Perform dielectric strength test complying with NEMA ICS 1.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Design each fastener and support to carry load indicated by seismic requirements and according to seismic-restraint details. See Section "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- B. Floor-Mounting Switch: Anchor to floor by bolting.
  - 1. Concrete Bases: 4 inches (100 mm) high, reinforced, with chamfered edges. Extend base no more than 4 inches (100 mm) in all directions beyond the maximum dimensions of switch, unless otherwise indicated or unless required for seismic support.
- C. Annunciator and Control Panel Mounting: Flush in wall, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Identify components according to Section "Electrical Identification."
- E. Set field-adjustable intervals and delays, relays, and engine exerciser clock.
- F. Label transfer switch with short circuit current rating information as required by NEC 702.5.

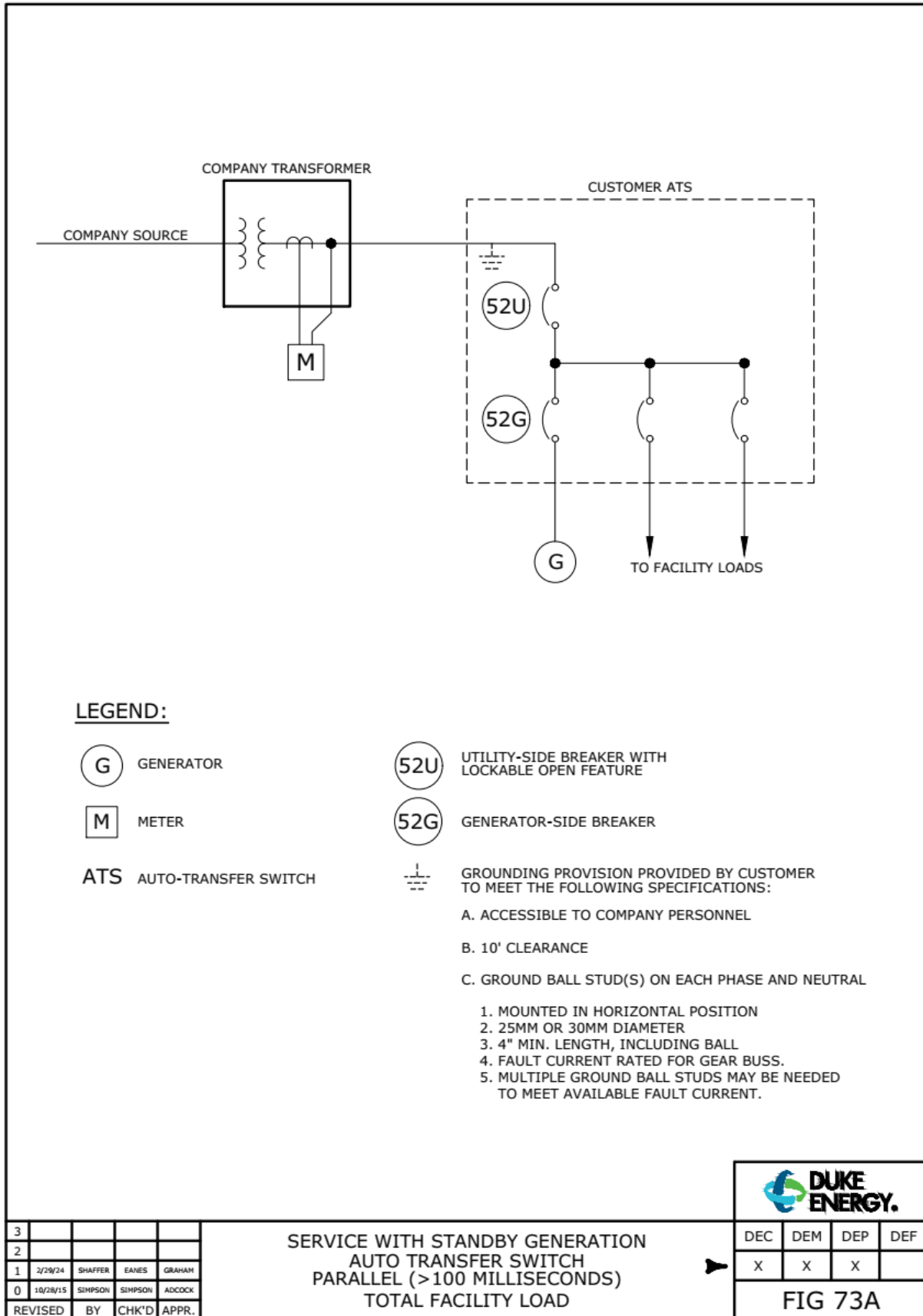
### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Wiring to Remote Components: Match type and number of cables and conductors to control and communication requirements of transfer switches as recommended by manufacturer. Increase raceway sizes at no additional cost to Owner, if necessary to accommodate required wiring.
- B. Ground equipment according to Section "Grounding and Bonding."
- C. Connect wiring according to Section "Conductors and Cables."

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections. Report results in writing.
- B. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
  - 1. After installing equipment and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
  - 2. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  - 3. Measure insulation resistance phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with insulation-resistance tester. Include external annunciation and control circuits. Use test voltages and procedure recommended by manufacturer. Comply with manufacturer's specified minimum resistance.

- a. Check for electrical continuity of circuits and for short circuits.
    - b. Inspect for physical damage, proper installation and connection, and integrity of barriers, covers, and safety features.
    - c. Verify that manual transfer warnings are properly placed.
    - d. Perform manual transfer operation.
  4. After energizing circuits, demonstrate interlocking sequence and operational function for each switch at least three times.
    - a. Simulate power failures of normal source to automatic transfer switches and of emergency source with normal source available.
    - b. Simulate loss of phase-to-ground voltage for each phase of normal source.
    - c. Verify time-delay settings.
    - d. Verify pickup and dropout voltages by data readout or inspection of control settings.
    - e. Test bypass/isolation unit functional modes and related automatic transfer-switch operations.
    - f. Verify proper sequence and correct timing of automatic engine starting, transfer time delay, retransfer time delay on restoration of normal power, and engine cool-down and shutdown.
  5. Ground-Fault Tests: Coordinate with testing of ground-fault protective devices for power delivery from both sources.
    - a. Verify grounding connections and locations and ratings of sensors.
  - C. Coordinate tests with tests of generator and run them concurrently.
  - D. Report results of tests and inspections in writing. Record adjustable relay settings and measured insulation and contact resistances and time delays. Attach a label or tag to each tested component indicating satisfactory completion of tests.
  - E. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- 3.4 DEMONSTRATION
- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain transfer switches and related equipment as specified below.
  - B. Coordinate this training with that for generator equipment.



### **INTERCONNECTION EVALUATION**

SYSTEMS IN THIS CATEGORY REQUIRE APPROVAL IN WRITING FROM DUKE ENERGY BEFORE BEING CONNECTED. SPECIFICALLY, INTERCONNECTION OF GENERATING FACILITIES IN THIS CATEGORY MUST BE EVALUATED AND APPROVED BY THE DISTRIBUTION PROTECTION AUTOMATION AND CONTROL GROUP WITHIN DUKE ENERGY.

### **INTERCONNECTION PROTECTION (RELAYING) REQUIREMENTS**

FOR INTERCONNECTION PROTECTION, THE GENERATING FACILITY'S INTERCONNECTION EQUIPMENT MUST EITHER BE LISTED AS FULLY COMPLIANT WITH UL1741 (FOR INVERTER-BASED EQUIPMENT) OR MUST BE COMPLIANT WITH IEEE 1547 SECTION 4 (INTERCONNECTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS AND REQUIREMENTS); VOLTAGE AND FREQUENCY SET-POINTS MUST BE SAME AS "DEFAULT" UNLESS OTHERWISE APPROVED BY DUKE ENERGY. ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS ARE LISTED BELOW:

1. THE DER UNIT SHALL PARALLEL WITH THE COMPANY DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM WITHOUT CAUSING A VOLTAGE FLUCTUATION AT THE POD GREATER THAN +/-5% OF THE PREVAILING VOLTAGE LEVEL OF THE COMPANY DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM AT THE POD. (IEEE 1547-2003 SECTION 4.1.3 SYNCHRONIZATION)
2. THE DER UNIT SHALL NOT ENERGIZE THE COMPANY DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM WHEN THE COMPANY DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM IS DE-ENERGIZED. (IEEE 1547-2003 SECTION 4.1.5 INADVERTENT ENERGIZATION OF THE COMPANY DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM)
3. SERVICE ENTRANCE DISCONNECTING EQUIPMENT WITH VISIBLE OPEN CAPABILITY AND GROUNDING PROVISIONS. THIS INCLUDES THE ABILITY TO LOCK OPEN OR "RACK-OUT" THEIR UTILITY BREAKER OR SERVICE ENTRANCE DISCONNECT.
4. THE INTERCONNECTION EQUIPMENT MUST HAVE A SYNCHRONIZATION CHECK FUNCTION (25 RELAY).
5. THE INTERCONNECTION EQUIPMENT MUST HAVE A SEPARATE TIMER THAT WILL INITIATE THE SEPARATION OF THE GENERATOR AND THE UTILITY IF THE PARALLELING TIME EXCEEDS 100MS.
6. THE DER UNIT SHALL NOT BACK FEED (INTENDED OR NON-INTENDED) THE UTILITY SYSTEM.
7. CUSTOMER MUST PROVIDE A DOCUMENT STAMPED BY A LICENSED PROFESSIONAL ENGINEER (LICENSED IN THE STATE WHERE THE GENERATING FACILITY IS TO BE LOCATED) SHOWING APPROVAL OF CUSTOMER'S DESIGN AND TESTING OF SYSTEM OPERATION MEETS DUKE ENERGY REQUIREMENTS FOR MOMENTARY PARALLEL OPERATION.
8. CUSTOMER MUST SIGN AN INTERCONNECTION AGREEMENT BEFORE MOMENTARY PARALLEL OPERATION IS ALLOWED.

3					STANDBY GENERATION - PROTECTION REQUIREMENTS MOMENTARY PARALLEL GENERATION ➡ (FAST TRANSITION ≤100 MILLISECONDS PARALLEL TIME)	DEC	DEM	DEP	DEF
2						X	X	X	
1	2/29/24	SHAFFER	EANES	GRAHAM					
0	7/2/15	VALENTIN	SIMPSON	ADCOCK					
	REVISED	BY	CHK'D	APPR.					
						FIG 74			

END OF SECTION 263600

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 264313 - SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes UL 1449 Type 2 surge protective devices for low-voltage power.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities; shipping, installed, and operating weights; furnished specialties; and accessories.
- B. Product Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of surge protective devices, certifying that products furnished comply with the following testing and labeling requirements:
  - 1. UL 1283 certification.
  - 2. UL 1449 listing and classification.
- C. Maintenance Data: For surge protection devices to include in maintenance manuals.
- D. Warranties: Special warranties specified in this Section.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain suppression devices and accessories through one source from a single manufacturer.
- B. IEEE Compliance: Comply with:
  - 1. IEEE C62.41.1, "Guide on the Surge Environment in Low-Voltage (1000V and less) AC Power Circuits".
  - 2. IEEE C62.41.2, "Recommended Practice on Characterization of Surges in Low-Voltage (1000V and less) AC Power Circuits".
  - 3. IEEE C62.45, "Recommended Practice on Surge Testing for Equipment Connected to Low-Voltage (1000V and less) AC Power Circuits".
  - 4. IEEE C62.72, "Guide for the Application of Surge Protective Devices for Low-Voltage (1000V and less) AC Power Circuits".
  - 5. IEEE C62.45, "Standard Test Specifications for Surge Protective Devices for Low-Voltage (1000V and less) AC Power Circuits".

- C. NEC Compliance: Comply with NEC 285, "Surge Protective Devices".
- D. UL Compliance: Comply with:
  - 1. UL 1283, "Electromagnetic Interference Filters".
  - 2. UL 1449, "Transient Voltage Surge Suppressors": latest edition.

## 1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Placing into Service: Do not energize or connect service entrance equipment and panelboards to their sources until the surge protective devices are installed and connected.

## 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Verify voltage rating of system to be protected by surge protective device.
- B. Coordinate location of field-mounted surge suppressors to allow adequate clearances for maintenance.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. General Warranty: Special warranties specified in this Article shall not deprive Owner of other rights Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.
- B. Special Warranty: Written warranty, executed by manufacturer agreeing to repair or replace components of surge suppressors that fail in materials or workmanship within five years from date of Final Acceptance.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. ABB / Current Technology, Inc.
  - 2. Eaton Corporation; Cutler-Hammer Products.
  - 3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
  - 4. Thor Systems, Inc.

### 2.2 SERVICE ENTRANCE SUPPRESSORS

- A. Manufacturer Series:



1. ABB / Current Technology #TG3 Series.
2. Eaton SMP Series.
3. Siemens TPS4\_12 Series.
4. Thor Systems #TSri Series.

B. Include the following features and accessories:

1. LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
2. Surge Rating: 100kA per mode / 200KA per phase.
3. ANSI / UL 1449 VPR:
  - a. 120/208V: 800V maximum (L-N, L-G, N-G), 1200V maximum (L-L).
  - b. 277/480V: 1200V maximum (L-N, L-G, N-G), 2000V maximum (L-L).
4. Enclosures: NEMA 1.
5. Surge-event operations counter.

C. Connection Means: Permanently wired.

D. Protection modes:

1. Line to Neutral.
2. Line to Ground.
3. Neutral to Ground.

## 2.3 PANELBOARD SUPPRESSORS

A. Manufacturer Series:

1. ABB / Current Technology #CGP Series.
2. Eaton SMP Series.
3. Siemens TPS4\_12 Series.
4. Thor Systems #TSni Series.

B. Include the following features and accessories:

1. LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
2. Surge Rating: 50kA per mode.
3. ANSI / UL 1449 VPR:
  - a. 120/208V: 800V maximum (L-N, L-G, N-G), 1200V maximum (L-L).
  - b. 277/480V: 1200V maximum (L-N, L-G, N-G), 2000V maximum (L-L).
4. Enclosures: NEMA 1.
5. Surge-event operations counter.

C. Connection Means: Permanently wired.

D. Protection modes:

1. Line to Neutral.

2. Line to Ground.
3. Neutral to Ground.

## 2.4 ENCLOSURES

- A. NEMA 250, with type matching the enclosure of panel or device being protected.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION OF SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. Install devices at service entrance on load side, with ground lead bonded to service entrance ground. Use conductors between suppressor and points of attachment as short and straight as possible. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended lead length.
  1. Provide multipole, 60-A circuit breaker as a dedicated disconnect for the suppressor, unless otherwise indicated
- B. Install devices for panelboards with conductors between suppressor and points of attachment as short and straight as possible. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended lead length. Do not bond neutral and ground.
  1. Provide multipole, 30-A circuit breaker as a dedicated disconnect for the suppressor, unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing: Perform the following field quality-control testing:
  1. After installing surge protective devices, but before electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
  2. Complete startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Repair or replace malfunctioning units. Retest after repairs or replacements are made.

END OF SECTION 264313

## SECTION 265119 – LED INTERIOR LIGHTING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes LED luminaires, materials, finishes, supports.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section "Lighting Control Devices" for automatic control of lighting, including time switches, photoelectric relays, occupancy sensors, and multipole lighting contactors.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- B. CRI: Color Rendering Index.
- C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."
- D. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating.
- E. LED: Light-emitting diode.
- F. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
- G. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Arrange in order of luminaire callout designation.
  - 2. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
  - 3. Include physical description and dimensions of luminaires.
  - 4. Include life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy efficiency data.
  - 5. Include emergency lighting units, including batteries, chargers, photometric performance data.

- B. Proposed Substitutes: Provide photometric data of proposed substitute comparing product to luminaire that is specified, as well as adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IES Lighting Measurements Testing and Calculation Guides, of each luminaire type. The adjustment factors shall be for lamps and accessories identical to those indicated for the luminaire as applied in this Project, IES LM-79, and IES LM-80.
  - 1. Manufacturers' Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products, or
  - 2. Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated luminaires, photometric data certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining luminaires shall be certified by manufacturer.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Sample warranty.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and lighting systems to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. LED Arrays: Three for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
  - 2. LED Drivers: Three for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
  - 3. Diffusers and Lenses: One for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
  - 4. Globes and Guards: One for every 50 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.

#### 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Provide luminaires from a single manufacturer for each luminaire type.
- B. Each luminaire type shall be binned within a three-step MacAdam Ellipse to ensure color consistency among luminaires.

#### 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

## 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
- B. Warranty Period: 5 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Standards:
  - 1. Design Lights Consortium (DLC) qualified products list or ENERGY STAR certified.
  - 2. UL 1598, Standard for Luminaires.
  - 3. Recessed luminaires shall comply with NEMA LE 4.
  - 4. UL Listing: Listed for damp or wet location as applicable.
- B. CRI minimum of 80 CCT.
- C. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours minimum to L70.
- D. Lamps dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
- E. Internal driver.
- F. Input Voltage Tolerance: +/- 10% of nominal rated voltage.

### 2.2 RECESSED CAN DOWNLIGHT

- A. Universal mounting bracket.
- B. Integral junction box with conduit fittings.
- C. Fixtures installed in the building thermal envelope shall be:
  - 1. IC rated.
  - 2. Labeled as having an air leakage rate of not more than 2.0 cfm when tested in accordance with ASTM E283 at a 1.57 psf pressure differential.
  - 3. Sealed with a gasket or caulk between the housing and interior wall or ceiling covering.

### 2.3 EMERGENCY LIGHTING UNITS

- A. General: Self-contained units complying with UL 924.
  - 1. LED lamp heads.

2. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium or nickel metal hydride type with minimum 10-year nominal life and special warranty. Battery sized to provide emergency illumination for not less than 90 minutes.
3. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state type with sealed transfer relay.
4. Operation: Relay automatically turns lamp on when power supply circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. Lamp automatically disconnects from battery when voltage approaches deep-discharge level. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
5. Integral Time-Delay Relay: Holds unit on for fixed interval when power is restored after an outage; time delay permits high-intensity-discharge lamps to restrike and develop adequate output.

## 2.4 EXIT SIGNS

- A. General: Comply with UL 924; for sign colors and lettering size, comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Lamps for AC Operation: Light-emitting diodes, 70,000 hours minimum of rated lamp life.
- C. Self-Powered Exit Signs (Battery Type): Integral automatic charger in a self-contained power pack.
  1. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium or nickel metal hydride type with special warranty. Battery sized to provide emergency illumination for not less than 90 minutes.
  2. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state type with sealed transfer relay.
  3. Operation: Relay automatically energizes lamp from battery when circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.

## 2.5 MATERIALS

- A. Metal Parts:
  1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
  2. Sheet metal components shall be steel unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
- B. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit re-lamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during re-lamping and when secured in operating position.

## 2.6 METAL FINISHES

- A. Variations in finishes are unacceptable in the same piece. Variations in finishes of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and if they can be and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## 2.7 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT

- A. Comply with requirements in Section "Basic Materials and Methods" for channel and angle iron supports.
- B. Twin-Stem Hangers: Two, 1/2-inch steel tubes with single canopy designed to mount a single fixture. Finish same as luminaire.
- C. Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641 M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 12 gauge.
- D. Wires for Humid Spaces: ASTM A 580/A 580M, Composition 302 or 304, annealed stainless steel, 12 gauge.
- E. Rod Hangers: 3/16-inch minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.
- F. Aircraft Cable Support: Use cable, anchorages, and intermediate supports recommended by fixture manufacturer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before luminaire installation. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- D. Supports:
  - 1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
  - 2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
  - 3. Provide support for luminaire without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.

4. Luminaire mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.

E. Flush-Mounted Luminaire Support:

1. Secured to outlet box.
2. Attached to ceiling structural members at four points equally spaced around circumference of luminaire.
3. Trim ring flush with finished surface.

F. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:

1. Attached to structural members in walls or a minimum 20 gauge backing plate attached to structure.

G. Suspended Luminaire Support:

1. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches, brace to limit swinging.
2. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Luminaires: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with approved outlet box and accessories that hold stem and provide damping of luminaire oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.
3. Continuous Rows of Luminaires: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and tubing for suspension for each unit length of luminaire chassis, including one at each end.
4. Do not use ceiling grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.

H. Ceiling-Grid-Mounted Luminaires:

1. Fixture is to be supported at two (2) opposite ends to the steel frame of the building using the same type of wire as used to support the lay-in ceiling track.
2. Support Clips:
  - a. Fasten fixtures to ceiling grid main runner members with manufacturer clips.
3. Fixtures of Sizes Less Than Ceiling Grid Pattern:
  - a. Install as indicated on reflected ceiling plans or center in acoustical panel.
  - b. Support fixtures independently with at least two 3/4-inch (metal channels spanning and secured to ceiling tees.
  - c. Fixture is to be supported at two (2) opposite ends to the steel frame of the building using the same type of wire as used to support the lay-in ceiling track.
4. Luminaire support wires shall be color coded and tagged to be distinguishable from the grid support wires.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories; and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.



2. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify normal transfer to battery power source and retransfer to normal. Perform a test on each unit after it is permanently installed and charged for a minimum of 24 hours. Battery shall be tested for 90 minutes. The battery test shall demonstrate compliance with the requirements of NEC 700.12(F). Repair and/or replace any units that fail the test, then retest.
- B. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.
- C. Corroded Fixtures: During warranty period, replace fixtures that show any signs of corrosion.

END OF SECTION 265119

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 271100 - COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT ROOM FITTINGS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Telecommunications mounting elements.
  - 2. Backboards.
  - 3. Telecommunications equipment racks and cabinets.
  - 4. Telecommunications service entrance pathways.
  - 5. Grounding.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section "Communications Horizontal Cabling"
- C. BICSI: Building Industry Consulting Service International.
- D. LAN: Local area network.
- E. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.

#### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Floor-mounted cabinets and cable pathways shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE 7.
  - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for equipment racks and cabinets. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Qualification Data: For installer, qualified layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer shall have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.
  - 1. Layout Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings shall be under the direct supervision of RCDD.
  - 2. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of Registered Technician, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
- B. Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces: Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A.
- C. Grounding: Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A.

## 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install equipment frames and cable trays until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and work above ceilings is complete.

## 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of communications equipment with Owner's telecommunications and LAN equipment and service suppliers. Coordinate service entrance arrangement with local exchange carrier.
  - 1. Meet jointly with telecommunications and LAN equipment suppliers, local exchange carrier representatives, and Owner to exchange information and agree on details of equipment arrangements and installation interfaces.
  - 2. Record agreements reached in meetings and distribute them to other participants.
  - 3. Adjust arrangements and locations of equipment frames, cross-connects, and patch panels in equipment rooms to accommodate and optimize arrangement and space requirements of telephone switch and LAN equipment.
  - 4. Adjust arrangements and locations of equipment with equipment frames, cross-connects, and patch panels of cabling systems of other communications, electronic safety and security, and related systems that share space in the equipment room.
- B. Coordinate location of power raceways and receptacles with locations of communications equipment requiring electrical power to operate.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PATHWAYS

- A. General Requirements: Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A.

- B. Cable Support: NRTL labeled. Cable support brackets shall be designed to prevent degradation of cable performance and pinch points that could damage cable. Cable tie slots fasten cable ties to brackets.
  - 1. Comply with NFPA 70 and UL 2043 for fire-resistant and low-smoke-producing characteristics.
  - 2. Support brackets with cable tie slots for fastening cable ties to brackets.
  - 3. Lacing bars, spools, J-hooks, and D-rings.
  - 4. Straps and other devices.
- C. Conduit and Boxes: Comply with requirements in Section "Raceway and Boxes".
  - 1. Outlet boxes shall be no smaller than 2 inches wide, 3 inches high, and 2-1/2 inches deep. Refer to drawing legends where larger boxes may be intended.

## 2.2 BACKBOARDS

- A. Backboards: Plywood, fire-retardant treated, 3/4 by 48 by 96 inches.

## 2.3 EQUIPMENT FRAMES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. ADC.
  - 2. Aim Electronics; a brand of Emerson Electric Co.
  - 3. AMP; a Tyco International Ltd. company.
  - 4. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
  - 5. Hubbell Premise Wiring.
  - 6. KRONE Incorporated.
  - 7. Leviton Voice & Data Division.
  - 8. Middle Atlantic Products, Inc.
  - 9. Nordex/CDT; a subsidiary of Cable Design Technologies.
  - 10. Ortronics, Inc.
  - 11. Panduit Corp.
  - 12. Siemon Co. (The).
- B. General Frame Requirements:
  - 1. Equipment Frames: Freestanding and wall-mounting, modular units designed for telecommunications terminal support and coordinated with dimensions of units to be supported.
  - 2. Module Dimension: Width compatible with EIA 310 standard, 19-inch panel mounting.
  - 3. Finish: Manufacturer's standard, baked-polyester powder coat.
- C. Modular Wall Cabinets:
  - 1. Wall mounting.
  - 2. Steel or aluminum construction.

3. Treated to resist corrosion.
4. Lockable front and rear doors.
5. Louvered side panels.
6. Cable access provisions top and bottom.
7. Grounding lug.
8. All cabinets keyed alike.

D. Cable Management for Equipment Frames:

1. Metal, with integral wire retaining fingers.
2. Baked-polyester powder coat finish.
3. Vertical cable management panels shall have front and rear channels, with covers.
4. Provide horizontal crossover cable manager at the top of each relay rack, with a minimum height of two rack units each.

## 2.4 POWER STRIPS

A. Power Strips: Comply with UL 1363.

1. Rack mounting.
2. Six, 20-A, 120-V ac, NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R receptacles.
3. LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
4. LED indicator lights for reverse polarity and open outlet ground.
5. Circuit Breaker and Thermal Fusing: Unit continues to supply power if protection is lost.
6. Cord connected with 10-foot line cord.
7. Rocker-type on-off switch, illuminated when in on position.
8. Peak Single-Impulse Surge Current Rating: 26 kA per phase.
  - a. Protection modes shall be line to neutral, line to ground, and neutral to ground. UL 1449 clamping voltage for all 3 modes shall be not more than 330 V.

## 2.5 GROUNDING

A. Comply with requirements in Section "Grounding and Bonding" for grounding conductors and connectors.

B. Telecommunications Main Bus Bar:

1. Connectors: Mechanical type, cast silicon bronze, solderless compression-type wire terminals, and long-barrel, two-bolt connection to ground bus bar.
2. Ground Bus Bar: Copper, minimum 1/4 inch thick by 4 inches wide with 9/32-inch holes spaced 1-1/8 inches apart.
3. Stand-Off Insulators: Comply with UL 891 for use in switchboards, 600 V. Lexan or PVC, impulse tested at 5000 V.

C. Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A.

## 2.6 LABELING

- A. Comply with TIA/EIA-606-A and UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 ENTRANCE FACILITIES

- A. Contact telecommunications service provider and arrange for installation of demarcation point, protected entrance terminals, and a housing when so directed by service provider.
- B. Install underground pathways complying with recommendations in TIA/EIA-569-A, "Entrance Facilities" Article.
- C. Install underground entrance pathway complying with Section "Raceway and Boxes."

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Comply with BICSI TDMM for layout and installation of communications equipment rooms.
- C. Bundle, lace, and train conductors and cables to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
- D. Paint plywood backboards white unless noted otherwise. For fire-resistant plywood, leave one manufacturer's label at the bottom unpainted and visible.

### 3.3 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A, Annex A, "Firestopping."
- B. Comply with BICSI TDMM, "Firestopping Systems" Article.

### 3.4 GROUNDING

- A. Install grounding according to BICSI TDMM, "Grounding, Bonding, and Electrical Protection" Chapter.
- B. Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A.
- C. Locate grounding bus bar to minimize the length of bonding conductors. Fasten to wall allowing at least 2-inch clearance behind the grounding bus bar. Connect grounding bus bar with a minimum No. 4 AWG grounding electrode conductor from grounding bus bar to suitable electrical building ground.

- D. Bond metallic equipment to the grounding bus bar, using not smaller than No. 6 AWG equipment grounding conductor.
  - 1. Bond the shield of shielded cable to the grounding bus bar in communications rooms and spaces.

### 3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling complying with TIA/EIA-606-A. Comply with requirements in Section "Electrical Identification."
- B. See Section "Communications Horizontal Cabling" for additional identification requirements. See Evaluations for discussion of TIA/EIA standard as it applies to this Section.
- C. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type.

END OF SECTION 271100



## SECTION 271500 - COMMUNICATIONS HORIZONTAL CABLING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Pathways.
  - 2. UTP cabling.
  - 3. Multiuser telecommunications outlet assemblies.
  - 4. Cable connecting hardware and patch panels.
  - 5. Telecommunications outlet/connectors.
  - 6. Cabling system identification products.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. BICSI: Building Industry Consulting Service International.
- B. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- C. IDC: Insulation displacement connector.
- D. LAN: Local area network.
- E. Outlet/Connectors: A connecting device in the work area on which horizontal cable or outlet cable terminates.
- F. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.
- G. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair.

#### 1.4 HORIZONTAL CABLING DESCRIPTION

- A. Horizontal cable and its connecting hardware provide the means of transporting signals between the telecommunications outlet/connector and the patch panel located in the communications equipment room. This cabling and its connecting hardware are called "permanent link," a term that is used in the testing protocols.
  - 1. TIA/EIA-568-B.1 requires that a minimum of two telecommunications outlet/connectors be installed for each work area.
  - 2. Bridged taps and splices shall not be installed in the horizontal cabling.

- B. The maximum allowable horizontal cable length is 295 feet (90 m). This maximum allowable length does not include an allowance for the length of 16 feet (4.9 m) to the workstation equipment. The maximum allowable length does not include an allowance for the length of 16 feet (4.9 m) in the horizontal cross-connect.

## 1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Horizontal cabling system shall comply with transmission standards in TIA/EIA-568-B.1, when tested according to test procedures of this standard.

## 1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Qualification Data: For Installer, qualified layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.
- C. Field quality-control reports.
- D. Maintenance Data: For splices and connectors to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.
  - 1. Layout Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings, Cabling Administration Drawings, and field testing program development by an RCDD.
  - 2. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of Registered Technician, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces: Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A.
- D. Grounding: Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A.

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Test cables upon receipt at Project site.
  - 1. Test each pair of UTP cable for open and short circuits.

## 1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install cables and connecting materials until wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining

ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

#### 1.10 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate telecommunications outlet/connector locations with location of power receptacles at each work area.

#### 1.11 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Patch-Panel Units: One of each type.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PATHWAYS

- A. General Requirements: Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A.
- B. Cable Support: NRTL labeled for support of Category 6 cabling, designed to prevent degradation of cable performance and pinch points that could damage cable.
  - 1. Support brackets with cable tie slots for fastening cable ties to brackets.
  - 2. Lacing bars, spools, J-hooks, and D-rings.
  - 3. Straps and other devices.

#### 2.2 UTP CABLE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Belden CDT Inc.; Electronics Division.
  - 2. Berk-Tek; a Nexans company.
  - 3. CommScope, Inc.
  - 4. Draka USA.
  - 5. Genesis Cable Products; Honeywell International, Inc.
  - 6. KRONE Incorporated.
  - 7. Mohawk; a division of Belden CDT.
  - 8. Molex Premise Networks; a division of Molex, Inc.
  - 9. Nordex/CDT; a subsidiary of Cable Design Technologies.
  - 10. Superior Essex Inc.
  - 11. SYSTIMAX Solutions; a CommScope, Inc. brand.
  - 12. 3M.
  - 13. Tyco Electronics/AMP Netconnect; Tyco International Ltd.
- B. Description: 100-ohm, 4-pair UTP, covered with a blue thermoplastic jacket.

1. Comply with ICEA S-90-661 for mechanical properties.
2. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1 for performance specifications.
3. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2, Category 6.
4. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444 and NFPA 70 for the following types:
  - a. Communications, General Purpose: Type CM or CMG.
  - b. Communications, Plenum Rated: Type CMP, complying with NFPA 262.
  - c. Communications, Riser Rated: Type CMR, complying with UL 1666.
  - d. Communications, Limited Purpose: Type CMX.
  - e. Multipurpose: Type MP or MPG.
  - f. Multipurpose, Plenum Rated: Type MPP, complying with NFPA 262.
  - g. Multipurpose, Riser Rated: Type MPR, complying with UL 1666.

## 2.3 UTP CABLE HARDWARE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. American Technology Systems Industries, Inc.
  2. Dynacom Corporation.
  3. Hubbell Premise Wiring.
  4. KRONE Incorporated.
  5. Leviton Voice & Data Division.
  6. Molex Premise Networks; a division of Molex, Inc.
  7. Nordex/CDT; a subsidiary of Cable Design Technologies.
  8. Panduit Corp.
  9. Siemon Co. (The).
  10. Tyco Electronics/AMP Netconnect; Tyco International Ltd.
- B. General Requirements for Cable Connecting Hardware: Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2, IDC type, with modules designed for punch-down caps or tools. Cables shall be terminated with connecting hardware of same category or higher.
- C. Jacks and Jack Assemblies: Modular, color-coded, eight-position modular receptacle units with integral IDC-type terminals.
- D. Patch Cords: Factory-made, four-pair cables in 48-inch (1200-mm) lengths; terminated with eight-position modular plug at each end.
  1. Patch cords shall have bend-relief-compliant boots and color-coded icons to ensure Category 6 performance. Patch cords shall have latch guards to protect against snagging.

## 2.4 TELECOMMUNICATIONS OUTLET/CONNECTORS

- A. Jacks: 100-ohm, balanced, twisted-pair connector; four-pair, eight-position modular. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
- B. Workstation Outlets:
  1. Two-port-connector assemblies mounted in single faceplate.

2. Four-port-connector assemblies mounted in multigang faceplate.
3. See drawings for other outlet quantities for number of ports. Mount assemblies in multigang faceplate.
4. Metal Faceplate: Stainless steel, complying with requirements in Section "Wiring Devices."
5. For use with snap-in jacks accommodating any combination of UTP work area cords.
  - a. Flush mounting jacks.
6. Legend:
  - a. Machine printed, in the field, using adhesive-tape label.
  - b. Snap-in, clear-label covers and machine-printed paper inserts.

## 2.5 GROUNDING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section "Grounding and Bonding" for grounding conductors and connectors.
- B. Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A.

## 2.6 IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Comply with TIA/EIA-606-A and UL 969 for labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section "Electrical Identification."

## 2.7 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory test UTP cables on reels according to TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
- B. Factory test UTP cables according to TIA/EIA-568-B.2.
- C. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 WIRING METHODS

- A. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters and except in accessible ceiling spaces and attics, where unenclosed wiring method may be used. Conceal raceway except in unfinished spaces.
  1. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.

- B. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train cables to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF PATHWAYS

- A. Comply with requirements for demarcation point, pathways, cabinets, and racks specified in Section "Communications Equipment Room Fittings." Drawings indicate general arrangement of pathways and fittings.
- B. Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A for pull-box sizing and length of conduit and number of bends between pull points.
- C. Comply with requirements in Section "Raceway and Boxes" for installation of conduits and wireways.
- D. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows whenever possible.
- E. Pathway Installation in Communications Equipment Rooms:
  - 1. Position conduit ends adjacent to a corner on backboard where a single piece of plywood is installed, or in the corner of room where multiple sheets of plywood are installed around perimeter walls of room.
  - 2. Install cable trays to route cables if conduits cannot be located in these positions.
  - 3. Secure conduits to backboard when entering room from overhead.
  - 4. Extend conduits 6 inches (152 mm) above finished floor.
  - 5. Install metal conduits with grounding bushings and connect with grounding conductor to grounding system.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF CABLES

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. General Requirements for Cabling:
  - 1. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
  - 2. Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 6, "Cable Termination Practices."
  - 3. Terminate conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, cross-connects, and patch panels.
  - 4. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches (760 mm) and not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
  - 5. Install lacing bars to restrain cables, to prevent straining connections, and to prevent bending cables to smaller radii than minimums recommended by manufacturer.
  - 6. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIM, "Cabling Termination Practices" Chapter. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
  - 7. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.

8. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used for heating.
9. In the communications equipment room, install a 10-foot- (3-m-) long service loop on each end of cable.
10. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 4, "Pulling Cable." Monitor cable pull tensions.

C. UTP Cable Installation:

1. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2.
2. Do not untwist UTP cables more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) from the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.

D. Open-Cable Installation:

1. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
2. Suspend UTP cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm) above ceilings by cable supports not more than 60 inches (1524 mm) apart.
3. Cable shall not be run through structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.

E. Group connecting hardware for cables into separate logical fields.

F. Separation from EMI Sources:

1. Comply with BICSI TDMM and TIA/EIA-569-A for separating unshielded copper voice and data communication cable from potential EMI sources, including electrical power lines and equipment.
2. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and power lines and electrical equipment located in grounded metallic conduits or enclosures shall be as follows:
  - a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: No requirement.
  - b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 3 inches (76 mm).
  - c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
3. Separation between Communications Cables and Electrical Motors and Transformers, 5 kVA or HP and Larger: A minimum of 48 inches (1200 mm).
4. Separation between Communications Cables and Fluorescent Fixtures: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).

### 3.4 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A, Annex A, "Firestopping."
- B. Comply with BICSI TDMM, "Firestopping Systems" Article.

### 3.5 GROUNDING

- A. Install grounding according to BICSI TDMM, "Grounding, Bonding, and Electrical Protection" Chapter.
- B. Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A.
- C. Locate grounding bus bar to minimize the length of bonding conductors. Fasten to wall allowing at least 2-inch (50-mm) clearance behind the grounding bus bar. Connect grounding bus bar with a minimum No. 4 AWG grounding electrode conductor from grounding bus bar to suitable electrical building ground.
- D. Bond metallic equipment to the grounding bus bar, using not smaller than No. 6 AWG equipment grounding conductor.

### 3.6 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling complying with TIA/EIA-606-A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section " Electrical Identification ."
- B. Cable Schedule: Post in prominent location in each equipment room and wiring closet. List incoming and outgoing cables and their designations, origins, and destinations. Protect with rigid frame and clear plastic cover. Furnish an electronic copy of final comprehensive schedules for Project.
- C. Cabling Administration Drawings: Show building floor plans with cabling administration-point labeling. Identify labeling convention and show labels for telecommunications closets, backbone pathways and cables, entrance pathways and cables, terminal hardware and positions, horizontal cables, work areas and workstation terminal positions, grounding buses and pathways, and equipment grounding conductors. Follow convention of TIA/EIA-606-A. Furnish electronic record of all drawings, in software and format selected by Owner.
- D. Cable and Wire Identification:
  - 1. Label each cable within 4 inches (100 mm) of each termination, where it is accessible in a cabinet or junction or outlet box, and elsewhere as indicated.
  - 2. Each wire connected to building-mounted devices is not required to be numbered at device if color of wire is consistent with associated wire connected and numbered within panel or cabinet.
  - 3. Exposed Cables and Cables in Cable Trays and Wire Troughs: Label each cable at intervals not exceeding 30 feet (9 m).
  - 4. Label each terminal strip and screw terminal in each cabinet, rack, or panel.
    - a. Individually number wiring conductors connected to terminal strips, and identify each cable or wiring group being extended from a panel or cabinet to a building-mounted device shall be identified with name and number of particular device as shown.
    - b. Label each unit and field within distribution racks and frames.
  - 5. Identification within Connector Fields in Equipment Rooms and Wiring Closets: Label each connector and each discrete unit of cable-terminating and connecting hardware.



Where similar jacks and plugs are used for both voice and data communication cabling, use a different color for jacks and plugs of each service.

- E. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type with printing area and font color that contrasts with cable jacket color but still complies with requirements in TIA/EIA-606-A.

- 1. Cables use flexible vinyl or polyester that flex as cables are bent.

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.

- B. Tests and Inspections:

- 1. Visually inspect UTP cable jacket materials for NRTL certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations in communications equipment rooms for compliance with color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections for compliance with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
  - 2. Visually confirm Category 6, marking of outlets, cover plates, outlet/connectors, and patch panels.
  - 3. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
  - 4. UTP Performance Tests:

- a. Test for each outlet and MUTOA. Perform the following tests according to TIA/EIA-568-B.1 and TIA/EIA-568-B.2:

- 1) Wire map.
      - 2) Length (physical vs. electrical, and length requirements).
      - 3) Insertion loss.
      - 4) Near-end crosstalk (NEXT) loss.
      - 5) Power sum near-end crosstalk (PSNEXT) loss.
      - 6) Equal-level far-end crosstalk (ELFEXT).
      - 7) Power sum equal-level far-end crosstalk (PSELFEXT).
      - 8) Return loss.
      - 9) Propagation delay.
      - 10) Delay skew.

- C. Document data for each measurement. Data for submittals shall be printed in a summary report that is formatted similar to Table 10.1 in BICSI TDM, or transferred from the instrument to the computer, saved as text files, and printed and submitted.

- D. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 271500

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 283111 - DIGITAL, ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEM

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Microprocessor controlled, intelligent reporting fire detection and alarm system.

#### 1.3 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Fire-alarm control unit / fire alarm panel.
  - 2. System smoke detectors.
  - 3. Remote annunciators.
  - 4. Addressable interface device.
  - 5. Power supplies.
  - 6. Digital alarm communicator transmitter.

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- AHJ Authority Having Jurisdiction.
- AHU Air Handler Unit.
- LED Light-emitting diode.
- NICET National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies.
- NRTL Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory.

#### 1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with applicable provisions of the North Carolina State Building Code.
- B. Comply with applicable provisions of NFPA 72, National Fire Alarm Code.
- C. Equipment supplied shall be specifically listed for its intended use and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
- D. Seismic Performance: Fire-alarm control unit and raceways shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7.

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

### A. Manufacturer's Qualifications:

1. Firms shall be regularly engaged in the manufacture of fire alarm systems of the types, sizes, and electrical characteristics required for this project.
2. The system shall comply with provisions of UL safety standards pertaining to fire detection and alarm systems. Products and components shall be Listed and Labeled.
3. Firms shall maintain factory authorized service organization. Firms shall maintain spare parts stock.

### B. Designer for Preparation of Shop Drawings and Calculations Qualifications:

1. Personnel shall be trained and certified by manufacturer for system design required for this Project.
2. Personnel shall be certified by NICET as fire-alarm Level III (minimum) technician.

### C. Installer Qualifications:

1. Personnel shall be trained and certified by manufacturer for installation of units required for this Project.
2. Supervisor of installation shall be certified by NICET as fire-alarm Level II (minimum) technician.
3. Supervisor of installation shall be certified as an authorized representative of the equipment manufacturer.
4. Minimum of 5 years of experience installing fire detection and alarm systems similar in size and scope to this project.

### D. Manufacturer's Field Service Technician Qualifications:

1. Personnel shall be certified by NICET as fire-alarm Level II (minimum) technician.
2. Personnel shall be trained and certified by manufacturer for installation of units specifically required for this Project within the most recent 36 months.
3. If not trained by the manufacturer within 36 months (as noted in 2 above), but within 48 months, NICET fire alarm Level III (minimum) technician certification is required.

### E. Source Limitations for Fire-Alarm System and Components:

1. Obtain fire-alarm system equipment and components from a single source.
2. For facilities with existing functional systems in place, new components shall be compatible and listed for use with, and operate as, an extension of existing system.

### F. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

## 1.7 SUBMITTALS

### A. Qualification Data:

1. Designer:
  - a. Manufacturer training certification.
  - b. NICET certification
2. Installer:
  - a. Manufacturer training certification.
  - b. NICET certification.
  - c. Authorized representative of equipment manufacturer certification.
  - d. Experience documentation; 5 years of similar size & scope projects.
3. Manufacturer Field Service Technician:
  - a. Manufacturer training certification.
  - b. NICET certification.

### B. Product Data:

1. Manufacturer data for each type of product, equipment, device, etc. proposed.
2. For devices, include milliamp (mA) draw and listed minimum voltage required to operate for each type of device.
3. For panels and power supplies, include voltage drop allowed for the panel and power supplies.
4. For panels and power supplies, include voltage drop for individual Notification Appliance Circuits (NAC).

### C. Shop Drawings: For fire-alarm system to demonstrate compliance with project drawings and specifications. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Comply with recommendations in the "Documentation" Section of the "Fundamentals of Fire Alarm Systems" Chapter in NFPA 72.
2. Provide floor plans with:
  - a. Final equipment and device locations, including address of each addressable device and notification appliance.
3. Provide battery calculations.
4. System Response Matrix: Indicate fire alarm system's actions (outputs) required for each type of alarm, supervisory, and trouble signal.

### D. Installation Instructions: Manufacturer's detailed installation instructions for Fire Alarm Control Unit, flow switches, tamper switches, supervisory switches, and similar items which require mechanical installation.

### E. Sample Warranty Statement.

### F. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire-alarm systems and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. Comply with the "Records" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter in NFPA 72.
2. Provide "System Record of Completion" document with "Completion Documents" Article in "Documentation" chapter in NFPA 72.
3. System Status and Programming Report.
4. Record copy of site-specific software on USB flash drive (thumb drive).
5. As-built documents.
  - a. Provide duplicates of the shop drawing plans, wiring diagrams, and riser diagrams showing comprehensive and clear field revisions. Include loop numbers, device addresses, terminal numbers where connected to equipment, and wire color codes.
  - b. Provide a drawing with submitted battery and voltage drop calculations. Include a field for entering actual metered values during system testing.
6. Technical literature for all control equipment, devices, isolation modules, relays, power supplies, alarm/supervisory signal initiating devices, etc. Include maintenance data and parts lists. Include circuit diagrams of all control panels, modules, annunciators, communications panels, etc.
7. Provide "Maintenance, Inspection and Testing Records" according to NFPA 72 article of the same name and include the following:
  - a. Frequency of testing of installed components.
  - b. Frequency of inspection of installed components.
  - c. Requirements and recommendations related to results of maintenance.
  - d. Manufacturer's user training manuals.
8. Manufacturer's required maintenance related to system warranty requirements.
9. Abbreviated operating instructions, framed and mounted at fire-alarm control unit.

1.8 Copy of NFPA 25. SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

- A. Comply with UL 864.
- B. Technical Support: Beginning with Final Acceptance, provide software support for one year.
- C. Upgrade Service:
  1. Update software to latest version at Project completion.
  2. The manufacturer and authorized distributor of the system installed shall maintain software records on the system installed.
  3. At no charge, install and program software upgrades that become available within one year from date of Final Acceptance and for the life of the warranty period. Upgrading software shall include operating system. Upgrade shall include new or revised licenses for use of software.
  4. For new software versions that correct operating problems or bugs, free upgrades shall be provided during the life of the system.
  5. Provide 30 days notice to Owner to allow scheduling and access to system and to allow Owner to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

## 1.9 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Addressable Control Relays: 1 unit of each type.
  - 2. Monitor Modules (Addressable Interface): 1 unit of each type.
  - 3. Keys and Tools: One extra set for access to locked and tamper-proofed components.
  - 4. Fuses: Two of each type and rating installed in the system.
  - 5. Interconnection cable, where required, for connecting the FACU to a personal computer.

## 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fire-alarm system equipment and components that fail because of defects in materials or workmanship within one year from the date of final inspection and acceptance by the Owner.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Fire Lite Alarms.
  - 2. Gamewell-FCI
  - 3. Edwards.
  - 4. Notifier.
  - 5. Siemens Building Technologies, Inc.; Fire Safety Division.
  - 6. Silent Knight.

### 2.2 SYSTEMS OPERATIONAL DESCRIPTION

- A. Fire-alarm signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and systems:
  - 1. Smoke detectors.
  - 2. Sprinkler system water flow.
  - 3. Automatic sprinkler system water flow.
- B. Fire-alarm signal shall initiate the following actions:
  - 1. Record events in the system memory.
  - 2. Continuously operate alarm notification appliances until initiating device and control unit have been reset.
  - 3. Identify alarm at fire-alarm control unit and remote annunciators with flashing LED, audible piezo-electric signal, and LCD display of alarm point and location.
  - 4. Transmit alarm signal to the remote alarm receiving station.
  - 5. Switch heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning equipment controls to fire-alarm mode. Typically, shutdown of all HVAC equipment will be initiated.

C. Supervisory signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:

1. Fire alarm control unit has lost communication with network.
2. Emergency Responder Radio Communications System monitored points. Valve supervisory switch.
3. High or low-air-pressure switch of a dry-pipe or preaction sprinkler system.

D. System trouble signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:

1. Open circuits, shorts, and grounds in designated circuits.
2. Opening, tampering with, or removing alarm-initiating and supervisory signal-initiating devices.
3. Loss of communication with addressable sensor, input module, relay, control module, remote annunciator.
4. Ground or a single break in fire-alarm control unit internal circuits.
5. Break in standby battery circuitry.
6. Failure of battery charging.
7. Abnormal position of any switch at fire-alarm control unit or annunciator.
8. Loss of primary power or abnormal ac voltage at fire-alarm control unit.
9. HVAC bypass defeat switch in bypass position.

E. System Trouble and Supervisory Signal Actions:

1. Identify specific device initiating event at fire-alarm control unit and remote annunciators.
2. Provide adjustable time delay capability of 0 to 60 minutes to delay transmission of the trouble and supervisory signals. The delay for loss of primary power or abnormal ac voltage shall be 1 to 3 hours.

## 2.3 FIRE-ALARM CONTROL UNIT

A. General Requirements for Fire-Alarm Control Unit (FACU):

1. Field-programmable, microprocessor-based, modular, power-limited design with electronic modules, complying with UL 864 and listed and labeled by an NRTL.
  - a. System software and programs shall be held in flash electrically erasable programmable read-only memory (EEPROM), retaining the information through failure of primary and secondary power supplies.
  - b. Include a real-time clock for time annotation of events on the event recorder. Time of day and date shall be retained upon loss of system primary and secondary power.
  - c. The system shall have multiple access levels for Owner authorized personnel to disable individual alarm inputs or normal system responses for alarms, without changing the system's programming.
  - d. Programming and editing of the existing program shall be possible without special equipment and without interrupting alarm monitoring functions.
2. Enclosure:
  - a. 3rd party listed cabinet suitable for surface, flush, or semi-flush mounting.



- b. Finish: Rust resistant primer and manufacturer standard finish.
    - c. Door hinged on either right or left side (field selectable).
    - d. Door with key lock and glass opening for viewing all indicators.
    - e. Manufacturer's trim kit for flush or semi-flush mounting.
  3. Addressable initiation devices that communicate device identity and status (normal, trouble, and alarm conditions).
    - a. Smoke sensors shall additionally communicate sensitivity setting and allow for adjustment of sensitivity at fire-alarm control unit.
    - b. Temperature sensors shall additionally test for and communicate the sensitivity range of the device.
    - c. Alarm Verification: The system shall provide, as a feature, an alternate signal processing algorithm to verify the presence of smoke. The algorithm shall be selectable when programming. The total effective delay created by the algorithm shall not exceed 60 seconds.
  4. Addressable control circuits for shutdown of mechanical equipment.
  5. Signaling Line Circuits (SLC) Interface Boards:
    - a. Integral microprocessor with capability of operating locally in the event of FACU main microprocessor.
    - b. Provides power and communication with devices on SLC circuit loop.
    - c. Receives and processes analog information from all detectors with software to automatically maintain detectors' desired sensitivity levels
    - d. Automatic detector testing and determination of detector maintenance requirements.
  6. The system shall retain historical data and device parameters including device sensitivity measurement testing results. The system shall have the capability to display and print device data, parameters, and sensitivity test results. Trouble indication shall be initiated when any smoke detector approaches 80% of its alarm threshold due to gradual contamination.
- B. Alphanumeric Display and System Controls: Arranged for interface between human operator at fire-alarm control unit and addressable system components including annunciation and supervision. Display alarm, supervisory, and component status messages and the programming and control menu.
  1. Annunciator and Display: Liquid-crystal type, backlit, 80 characters, minimum.
  2. Individual, color-coded system status LEDs for AC POWER, SYSTEM ALARM, SYSTEM TROUBLE, and SIGNAL SILENCE.
  3. Keypad: Alphanumeric; arranged to permit entry and execution of field programming, display, and control commands.
  4. Operator interface functions:
    - a. Acknowledge Switch.
    - b. Alarm Silence Switch with a Subsequent Alarm resound feature.
    - c. System Reset Switch.
    - d. System Test Switch.
    - e. Lamp Test Switch.

C. Circuits:

1. Signaling Line Circuits (SLC): NFPA 72 Class A, no "T" taps.
2. Initiating Device Circuits (IDC): NFPA 72 Class B.
3. Digital electronic signals shall utilize check digits or multiple polling to prevent a single ground or open on any SLC from causing system malfunction, loss of operating power, or the ability to report an alarm.
4. Wiring Methods:
  - a. All fire alarm circuitry shall be in ¾" minimum metal conduit. Use surface metal raceway where exposed. Junction boxes and covers not in finished areas shall be painted red. PVC conduit may be used underground, in concrete, or in locations subject to severe corrosion.
  - b. SLC addressable loop circuits shall be wired with type FPL/FLLR/FPLP fire alarm cable, 18 AWG minimum, low capacitance, copper, twisted pair. Cable jacket shall have a red jacket with red and black conductor insulation. For underground circuits, use type TC or PLTC cable (PE insulated).
  - c. All other circuits shall be wired with 14 AWG minimum, stranded copper, type THHN/THWN conductors. Color codes follow:
    - 1) Initiating Circuits, General: Red(+) / White(-).
    - 2) Initiating Circuits, Smoke Only: Violet(+) / Gray(-).
    - 3) Notification Appliance / alarm initiating circuits: Blue(+) / Black(-).
    - 4) AHU Shutdown Circuits: Yellow(+) / Brown(-).
    - 5) Door Control Circuits (magnet power): Orange(+) / Orange(-).
    - 6) Elevator Capture Circuits: Brown.
    - 7) Separate 24 VDC operating power (for equipment): Yellow(+) / Brown(-).
    - 8) Circuits from zone adapter modules (ZAMs) to monitored devices: Violet(+) / Gray(-).
  - d. Conduits that penetrate exterior walls shall be sealed with non-hardening electrical putty to prevent condensation infiltration.
  - e. Splices are allowed only at device terminals or on terminal blocks in cabinets.
  - f. For multistory buildings, circuits shall be routed through terminal cabinets at each floor. Cabinets shall be hinged cover enclosures with terminal blocks for circuitry connections. Cabinets shall typically be accessible at floor level. If the building layout prevents installation for floor level access; with approval of the Owner and Engineer, a terminal cabinet may be located above a suspended ceiling. Its location shall be clearly and permanently identified with a placard legible from the floor.
  - g. Terminal block screws shall have pressure wire connectors of the self-lifting or box lug type.
  - h. Permanent wire markers shall be used to label connections at the FACU, other control equipment, power supplies, and in terminal cabinets.
  - i. Branch circuit breakers supplying 120 VAC to system equipment shall be physically protected with a breaker handle lock and identified with a ¼" permanent red dot applied to the breaker handle or exposed body area. The red identification shall not damage the overcurrent protective devices or obscure the manufacturer's markings.

- D. AHU Shutdown Defeat Toggle Switch: A supervised toggle switch shall be provided in/adjacent to the Fire Alarm Control Unit, or as a key operated function in a Remote Annunciator. If installed at the Remote Annunciator, provide an engraved label at the FACU

with AHU Shutdown Defeat Switch location. When placed in the Shutdown Defeat position, a system "trouble" signal shall be initiated.

- E. Transmission to Remote Alarm Receiving Station: Automatically transmit alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals to a remote alarm station.
- F. Primary Power: 24-V dc obtained from 120-V ac service and a power-supply module. Initiating devices, notification appliances, signaling lines, trouble signals, supervisory signals supervisory and digital alarm communicator transmitters shall be powered by 24-V dc source.
  - 1. Alarm current draw of entire fire-alarm system shall not exceed 80 percent of the power-supply module rating.
  - 2. 120V power supply entry point to the FACU enclosure shall be where designated by the manufacturer.
  - 3. 120V branch breaker shall be physically protected with a handle lock and identified with a ¼" diameter permanent red dot applied to the breaker handle or exposed body area.
- G. Secondary Power: 24-V dc supply system with batteries, automatic battery charger, and automatic transfer switch.
  - 1. Batteries:
    - a. Gel-cell, sealed, plate nickel cadmium, maintenance free.
    - b. Minimum of 24 hours standby capacity plus:
      - 1) 5 minutes of horn/strobe full alarm load.
  - 2. Charger: Dual-rate charging techniques for fast battery recharge.
- H. Instructions: Computer printout or typewritten instruction card mounted behind a plastic or glass cover in a stainless-steel or aluminum frame. Include interpretation and describe appropriate response for displays and signals. Briefly describe the functional operation of the system under normal, alarm, and trouble conditions.

## 2.4 SMOKE DETECTORS

- A. General Requirements for System Smoke Detectors:
  - 1. Comply with UL 268; operating at 24-V dc, nominal.
  - 2. Detectors shall typically be two-wire type for connection to an SLC. Four-wire type detectors may be required if connecting to an existing four-wire system.
  - 3. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit. Detector address shall be accessible from fire-alarm control unit and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.
  - 4. Integral Visual-Indicating Lights: Provide both alarm and power LEDs, flashing under normal conditions. LEDs shall burn steady, controlled by the FACU, to indicate an alarm condition.
  - 5. Base Mounting: Detector and associated electronic components shall be mounted in a twist-lock module that connects to a fixed base. Provide terminals in the fixed base for connection to building wiring. Provide terminals in the fixed base for connection of a remote alarm LED.

6. Self-Restoring: Detectors shall not require resetting or readjustment after actuation to restore them to normal operation.
7. Remote Control: Unless otherwise indicated, detectors shall be analog-addressable type, individually monitored at fire-alarm control unit for calibration, sensitivity, and alarm condition and individually adjustable for sensitivity by fire-alarm control unit.
8. Test Means: Provide a means to simulate an alarm condition and report to the FACU. Test shall be initiated at the detector (activation of a magnetic switch) or initiated remotely on command from the FACU when in "test" condition.

B. Photoelectric Smoke Detectors:

1. Use photoelectric / light scattering principal to measure smoke density and send data to the FACU representing analog level of smoke density.
2. An operator at fire-alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:
  - a. Primary status.
  - b. Device type.
  - c. Present average value.
  - d. Present sensitivity selected.
  - e. Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).

## 2.5 NOTIFICATION APPLIANCES

- A. Bells: 10" diameter vibrating type, 24V dc nominal. Bells located outdoors shall be listed for use in wet locations.

## 2.6 ADDRESSABLE INTERFACE DEVICES

A. Monitor Modules:

1. For use in providing a system address for alarm-initiating devices for wired applications with normally open dry contacts.
2. Provide an LED that flashes under normal conditions, indicating that the monitor module is operational and in regular communication with the FACU.
3. Modules installed in non-conditioned spaces shall be tested, listed, and marked for continuous duty across the range of temperatures and humidity expected at their installed locations.

B. Control Modules:

1. For use in auxiliary control functions, operating as a dry contact relay.
2. Typical equipment control functions would include direct signals to: an elevator controller to initiate elevator recall, to a circuit-breaker shunt trip for power shutdown, or to a lighting control system for lighting control scenario under fire alarm conditions.
3. For use in supervising and controlling the operation of one NAC.
4. Provide an LED that flashes under normal conditions, indicating that the monitor module is operational and in regular communication with the FACU.

## 2.7 ALARM COMMUNICATOR TRANSMITTER

- A. Alarm communicator transmitter shall be compatible with and acceptable to the remote central station and shall comply with UL 632 and be listed and labeled by an NRTL.
- B. Functional Performance:
  - 1. Unit shall receive an alarm, supervisory, or trouble signal from fire-alarm control unit and automatically transmit signals to a remote supervising station.
  - 2. If communications is interrupted for longer than 45 seconds, transmitter shall initiate a local trouble signal and transmit the signal indicating loss of telephone line to the remote supervising station over the alternate communications path.
  - 3. Transmitter shall automatically report communications to the remote supervising station. If service is lost on communications paths, transmitter shall initiate the local trouble signal.
  - 4. Precedence of signals transmitted to the remote supervising station shall be: (1) Fire Alarm, (2) Supervisory Signal, (3) Trouble Signal, (4) Security Alarm.
- C. Digital data transmission shall include the following:
  - 1. Address of the alarm-initiating device.
  - 2. Address of the supervisory signal.
  - 3. Address of the trouble-initiating device.
  - 4. Loss of ac supply or loss of power.
  - 5. Low battery.
  - 6. Abnormal test signal.
  - 7. Communication bus failure.
- D. Secondary Power: Integral rechargeable battery and automatic charger.
- E. Self-Test: Conducted automatically every 24 hours with report transmitted to remote supervising station.

## 2.8 SURGE PROTECTION

- A. AC Input:
  - 1. Mount in listed enclosure adjacent to branch circuit panelboard. Wind small coil (5 to 10 turns) in branch circuit conductor just downstream of the suppressor connection.
  - 2. Install feed through branch circuit transient suppressor (Ditek #DTK-120SRD, Leviton #51020-WM/DIN, or approved equivalent that is UL 1449 2nd Edition Listed).
- B. DC Circuits Extending Outside Building:
  - 1. Mount inside the building, near the point of entry to or exit from each building in a labeled enclosure.
  - 2. Provide "pi"-type filter on each conductor, consisting of primary arrestor, series impedance, and fast-acting secondary arrestor that clamps at 30-40V.
  - 3. A minimum of 36" of conductor length shall be provided between the "pi"-type filter and the first system device in the building.
  - 4. Acceptable models: Citel America #B280-24VD3, Ditek #DTK-2MHLP24BWB, Simplex #2081-9027/9028.

## 2.9 SNAP EDGE FRAMES

### A. Description: Mountable Front Load Easy Open Snap Frame

1. Outside edges flip open for quick document changes.
2. Non-glare plastic cover.
3. Design Basis: U-Line #S-2132 Series.
4. For use with operator's instructions and device map.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

#### A. Comply with NFPA 72 for installation of fire-alarm equipment.

#### B. Equipment and Device Mounting:

1. Install fire-alarm control unit with tops of cabinets not more than 72 inches above the finished floor.
2. Install equipment and devices securely attached to walls, ceilings, floors, building structure. Hardware and supports shall be suitable for the load supported. Ceiling mounted devices shall not be supported solely by suspended ceilings.

#### C. Detector Protection:

1. Unless suitably protected from dust, paint, etc.; detectors shall not be installed until final construction clean-up is complete. If contaminated, detectors shall be replaced.
2. Where accidental damage or deliberate abuse is anticipated, provide a protective guard that is listed for use with the detector and is acceptable to the AHJ.

#### D. Audible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Unless ceiling mounted, install not less than 6 inches below the ceiling. Install horns on flush-mounted back boxes with the device-operating mechanism concealed behind a grille.

#### E. Visible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install adjacent to each alarm bell or alarm horn; and unless ceiling mounted, install at least 6 inches below the ceiling.

#### F. Device Location-Indicating Lights: Locate in public space near the device they monitor.

#### G. Annunciator: Install with top of panel not more than 72 inches above the finished floor.

#### H. Control Selector Switches:

1. Toggle switches with LED status indicator lights.
2. Hand in "up" position with amber LED. Auto in "center" position with green LED. Off in "down" position with red LED.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Make addressable connections with a supervised interface device to the devices and systems indicated on the drawings. Install the interface device less than 3 feet from the device controlled. Make an addressable confirmation connection when such feedback is available at the device or system being controlled.
- B. Sprinkler system supervisory circuits for monitoring flow, valve position, air pressure, water temperature, pump status, etc. shall initiate distinct audible and visual indications at the FACU. The audible signal shall either be a 4" diameter bell or a pulsing piezo-electric alarm. Provide an engraved label adjacent to the bell/alarm indicating "SPRINKLER STATUS ABNORMAL". If only sprinkler valve position is supervised, engraved label shall indicate "SPRINKLER VALVE CLOSED".

### 3.3 REMOTE ALARM TRANSMISSION

- A. The Contractor shall program the alarm communicator transmitter, connect communication lines, coordinate signal transmission with the supervising station, and verify proper signal receipt by the supervising station.

### 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section " Electrical Identification."
- B. Detectors, appliances, and modules shall be labeled with unique numbers that are indicated on as-built drawings and permanently mounted on device bases. Labels shall be legible from floor level. Detectors shall be labeled uniquely and sequentially starting at the FACU with both SLC and device designations. Labels shall be printed black lettering on clear background and attached to the device base.
- C. Junction and pull box covers shall be labeled to indicate the circuits or function of the conductors contained in the boxes. Labels shall be neatly applied with black lettering on clear background.
- D. Conductors shall be labeled with permanent wire markers at connections at the FACU, other control equipment, power supplies, and terminal cabinets.
- E. Install framed basic operating instructions in a location visible from fire-alarm control unit. Optionally, with Owner concurrence, the instructions may be affixed to the inside of the FACU door.
- F. Floor plans of the fire alarm system installation shall be provided at the FACU.
- G. Install a lockable document cabinet adjacent to the FACU. Key shall match the FACU lock. Label Fire Alarm System Record Documents. Store the following:
  - 1. As-built record drawings with floor plans of the fire alarm system installation.
    - a. Floor plans shall include device locations and addresses. Indicate equipment, module, and EOL locations.

- b. Provide a legend for symbols used.
    - c. A separate page shall be provided for each floor. Laminate individual pages and bind all pages in a book form.
  - 2. NFPA 72 Record of Completion documentation.
  - 3. Records of system inspections, testing, and maintenance documentation.
  - 4. System calculations.
  - 5. System operational matrix.
- H. At all equipment with a 120 VAC power source, provide an engraved label indicating panelboard ID, branch circuit number, and panelboard location. At the FACU, provide an additional engraved label inside the FACU.

### 3.5 GROUNDING

- A. Ground fire-alarm control unit and associated circuits; comply with IEEE 1100. Install a ground wire from main service ground to fire-alarm control unit.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Programming revisions shall be made only by the Installer.
- B. The Installer shall be present for 100% test, Designer's pre-final review, and Owner inspections.
- C. Final field tests shall be witnessed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service technician to make connections to the FACU; to program the system; to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- E. Tests and Inspections:
- 1. Visual Inspection: Conduct visual inspection prior to testing.
    - a. Inspection shall be based on completed Record Drawings and system documentation that is required by NFPA 72 in its "Completion Documents, Preparation" Table in the "Documentation" Section of the "Fundamentals of Fire Alarm Systems" Chapter.
    - b. Comply with "Visual Inspection Frequencies" Table in the "Inspection" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter in NFPA 72; retain the "Initial/Reacceptance" column and list only the installed components.
  - 2. Conductor Testing: All conductors shall be tested for grounds, opens and shorts prior to termination at panels and installation of detector heads. Conductors shall be megger tested for a minimum of 10 megohms from conductor to ground and conductor to conductor. Provide record of test results to Engineer in advance of acceptance inspection.
  - 3. System Testing: Comply with "Test Methods" Table in the "Testing" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter in NFPA 72.
  - 4. Test 100% of alarm initiating devices, all software functions, all other system functions including alarm communicator transmitter communication, and verify system operational



- matrix. Notify Owner and Engineer 2 weeks in advance of this test to permit witness observation.
  - 5. Print a System Status and Programming Report with settings for each alarm device, the current sensitivity of each analog addressable smoke detector, and detailed system operational matrix.
  - 6. Factory-authorized service representative shall prepare the NFPA 72 "Fire Alarm System Record of Completion" form and submit as part of close-out documentation.
  - 7. After 100% system test, request an AHJ acceptance inspection, a minimum of 2 days after completion of system testing.
  - 8. For AHJ acceptance inspection, perform sampling testing as directed by AHJ for detectors and functional tests. Provide 2-way radios, ladders, smoke source, and other materials needed for testing the system.
- F. Reacceptance Testing: Perform reacceptance testing to verify the proper operation of added or replaced devices and appliances.
- G. Fire-alarm system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- H. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.7 TRAINING / DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel for a minimum of 4 hours to adjust, operate, and maintain fire-alarm system. Training schedule must be coordinated to meet the Owner's schedule. Training location will be provided by the Owner.
- B. As a minimum, training shall cover:
- 1. System software multiple access levels via password protection to give Owner capability for disabling individual alarm inputs or normal outputs for alarms without modifying the system programming or affecting operation of the remainder of the system.
  - 2. Overall system concepts, capabilities, and functions. Training shall be of sufficient detail so that the Owner shall be able to remove any device from service and return to service without the need for the Manufacturer's approval or assistance.
  - 3. Methods and means of troubleshooting and replacement of all field wiring devices.
  - 4. Methods and means of troubleshooting the main FACU and field devices for programming, bussing systems, internal panel and unit wiring, circuitry, and interconnections.
  - 5. Preventative maintenance service techniques and schedules, including historical data trending of alarm and trouble records.
  - 6. Training documentation and actual system software used for training shall be provided in digital form and left with the Owner at the completion of training.
- C. Provide two bound copies of training information.

END OF SECTION 283111

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 285000 – EMERGENCY RESPONDER COMMUNICATION COVERAGE SYSTEM

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. In-building radio signal amplification system.
2. A system shall be provided to cover new building.

- B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Section "Basic Electrical Materials and Methods" for supports, anchors, and identification products.
2. Section "Conductors and Cables" for power supply circuitry.
3. Section "Grounding and Bonding".
4. Section "Raceways and Boxes".
5. Section "Seismic Controls for Electrical Work" for seismic restraints and bracing of raceways, boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. AHJ: Authority Having Jurisdiction
- B. BDA: Bi-Directional Amplifier: Device used to amplify band-selective or multi-band RF signals in the uplink, to the base station and in the downlink from the base station to subscriber devices for enhanced signals and improved coverage
- C. DAS: Distributed Antenna System
- D. FCC: Federal Communications Commission
- E. RF: Radio Frequency

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. RF Surveys / Shop Drawings: Measurement drawings of each floor of the building which indicate relative RF field strength for each frequency and band of interest. Submit to both the AHJ and the Engineer.

1. Initial signal strength mapping.
2. Pre-final signal strength mapping.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans and details for code compliant, UL Listed, DAS system design for emergency responder radio coverage.

C. Product Data:

1. Include bill of materials for all BDA / DAS equipment and components.
2. Manufacturer product data sheets and cut sheets for all equipment and components.

D. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that poles, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Section "Seismic Controls for Electrical Work." Include the following:

1. Basis of Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
  - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified after the seismic event."
2. Dimensioned Drawings: Identify, locate, and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Sample Warranty: Manufacturer's standard warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. RF Survey / Shop Drawings: Final installed measurement drawings of each floor of the building which indicate relative RF field strength for each frequency and band of interest.
- B. Operation and Maintenance Data: For all system equipment and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components that fail in materials or workmanship within a specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide an in-building radio signal amplification system to provide complete coverage in the building for the public safety agencies. System shall meet the requirements of:

1. The local AHJ.
2. FCC.
3. The North Carolina Fire Code.
4. NFPA 72, National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code.

- a. In accordance with NFPA 72, emergency responder radio coverage systems must be designed, installed, and maintained in accordance with NFPA 1221, Standard for the Installation, Maintenance, and Use of Emergency Services Communications Systems.

5. UL 2524, Standard for In-building 2-Way Emergency Radio Communication Enhancement Systems.

- B. All system coaxial cables shall be plenum rated.

- C. Donor antenna cable and riser coaxial cables shall be rated as riser cables and routed through 2-hour-rated enclosures.

- D. Connections between riser coaxial cables and horizontal coax cables to system antennas shall be made within 2-hour-rated enclosures.

1. The design intent is for all cable taps for antenna cables to be made in the equipment room where the communications equipment is located. All antenna cables will be home runs to the equipment room. No t-taps outside of the equipment rooms are allowed.

- E. Seismic Performance: System equipment and components shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 RF FIELD SURVEYS

- A. Perform initial signal strength mapping on-site field surveys to determine if a system is required due to inadequate radio signal coverage.

- B. Perform pre-final signal strength mapping on-site field surveys for a final determination of whether or not a system is required. If a system is required, signal strength mapping performed should serve to provide data suitable to prepare system designs.

### 3.2 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install system equipment and components.
- B. Coordinate infrastructure needs for system installation.
- C. Grounding:
  - 1. Ground and bond coax cable shield and associated metallic conduits.
  - 2. Ground and bond coax cable surge suppressor and associated metallic conduits.

### 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify and mark equipment and components with engraved labels as specified in Section “Electrical Identification”.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer’s Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to:
  - 1. Test and adjust equipment and components.
  - 2. Perform startup and commissioning of system.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Perform final testing for the local inspection authority, including final signal strength mapping.
  - 2. Perform final testing and demonstration with the AHJ.
  - 3. Submit final signal strength mapping results shop drawings.

END OF SECTION 285000

## SECTION 31 10 00 - SITE PREPARATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Standards set forth by the North Carolina Department of Environmental Quality (NCDEQ) Division of Energy, Mineral and Land Resources.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Removal of trees and other vegetation.
  - 2. Clearing and grubbing.
  - 3. Removing above-grade improvements.
  - 4. Removing below-grade improvements.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".
  - 2. Division 31 Section "Erosion Controls".

#### 1.3 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Traffic: Conduct site-clearing operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other occupied or used facilities without permission from authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Protection of Existing Improvements: Provide protections necessary to prevent damage to existing improvements indicated to remain in place.
  - 1. Protect improvements on adjoining properties and on Owner's property.
  - 2. Restore damaged improvements to their original condition, as acceptable to property owners.
  - 3. All erosion control measures shall be in place prior to commencement of clearing operations.
- C. Protection of Existing Trees and Vegetation: Protect existing trees and other vegetation indicated to remain in place against unnecessary cutting, breaking or skinning of roots, skinning or bruising of bark, smothering of trees by stockpiling construction materials or excavated materials within drip line, excess foot or vehicular traffic, or parking of vehicles within drip line. Provide temporary guards to protect trees and vegetation to be left standing.
  - 1. Water trees and other vegetation to remain within limits of contract work as required to maintain their health during course of construction operations.
  - 2. Provide protection for roots over 1-1/2 inch (38 mm) in diameter that are cut during construction operations. Coat cut faces with an emulsified asphalt or other acceptable coating formulated to use on damaged plant tissues. Temporarily cover exposed roots with wet burlap to prevent roots from drying out; cover with earth as soon as possible.
  - 3. Repair or replace trees and vegetation indicated to remain that are damaged by construction operations in a manner acceptable to Engineer. Employ a licensed arborist to repair damage to trees and shrubs.
  - 4. Replace trees that cannot be repaired and restored to full-growth status, as determined by arborist.

- D. Salvageable Improvements: Carefully remove items indicated to be salvaged and store on Owner's premises where indicated or directed.

#### 1.4 EXISTING SERVICES

- A. General: Indicated locations are approximate; determine exact locations before commencing Work.
- B. Arrange and pay for disconnecting, removing, capping, and plugging utility services. Notify affected utility companies in advance and obtain approval before starting this Work.
- C. Place markers to indicate location of disconnected services. Identify service lines and capping locations on Project Record Documents.

#### 1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning demolition. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Standards: Comply with ANSI/ASSP A10.6 and NFPA 241.

#### PART 2 – PRODUCTS

None Used.

#### PART 3 – EXECUTION

##### 3.1 SITE CLEARING

- A. General: Remove trees, shrubs, grass, and other vegetation, improvements, or obstructions, as required, to permit installation of new construction. Remove similar items elsewhere on site or premises as specifically indicated. Removal includes digging out and off-site removal of stumps and roots.
  - 1. Cut minor roots and branches of trees indicated to remain in a clean and careful manner where such roots and branches obstruct installation of new construction.
  - 2. Existing trees within clearing limits may be chipped and stockpiled on-site but shall NOT be used as landscaping mulch or fill.
- B. Clearing and Grubbing: Clear site of trees, shrubs, and other vegetation, except for those indicated to be left standing.
  - 1. Completely remove stumps, roots, and other debris protruding through ground surface.
  - 2. Use only hand methods for grubbing inside drip line of trees indicated to remain.
  - 3. Fill depressions caused by clearing and grubbing operations with satisfactory soil material, unless further excavation or earthwork is indicated.
    - a. Place fill material in horizontal layers not exceeding 6 inches (150 mm) loose depth, and thoroughly compact each layer to a density equal to adjacent original ground.
- C. Topsoil Stripping: Strip and stockpile existing topsoil within construction limits for re-spreading. Should the Contractor elect to remove topsoil from the site, suitable topsoil from off-site sources shall be provided for re-spreading at no cost to the Owner.
  - 1. Remove sod and grass before stripping topsoil.
  - 2. Strip topsoil to whatever depths are encountered in a manner to prevent intermingling with underlying subsoil or other waste materials. All surface topsoil, regardless of thickness encountered, shall not be considered Unsuitable Soil.



3. Remove subsoil and non-soil materials from topsoil, including trash, debris, weeds, roots, and other waste materials.
4. Stockpile topsoil materials within construction limits and away from edge of excavations without intermixing with subsoil. Grade and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.
5. Do not stockpile topsoil within tree protection zones.
6. Dispose of excess topsoil off-site.

D. Removal of Improvements: Remove existing above-grade and below-grade improvements as indicated and as necessary to facilitate new construction.

1. Abandonment or removal of certain underground pipe or conduits may be indicated on mechanical or electrical drawings and is included under work of related Division 22 Sections. Removing abandoned underground piping or conduits interfering with construction is included under this section.

### 3.2 DEMOLITION PREPARATION

A. Conduct demolition operations and remove debris to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.

1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by governing regulations or as shown on the drawings.

B. Conduct demolition operations to prevent injury to people and damage to adjacent buildings and facilities to remain. Ensure safe passage of people around selective site demolition area.

1. Erect temporary protection, such as walks, fences, railings, canopies, and covered passageways, where required by authorities having jurisdiction or as shown on the plans.
2. Protect existing site improvements, appurtenances, and landscaping to remain.
3. Erect a plainly visible fence around drip line of individual trees or around perimeter drip line of groups of trees to remain.
4. Provide temporary weather protection, during interval between demolition and removal of existing construction, on exterior surfaces and new construction to ensure that no water leakage or damage occurs to structure or interior areas.

C. Provide and maintain exterior shoring, bracing, or structural support to preserve stability and prevent movement, settlement, or collapse of building to be selectively demolished.

1. Strengthen or add new supports when required during progress of selective demolition.

D. Protect trees, fences, poles, mailboxes, and all other property unless their removal is authorized. Any property damaged, that is not authorized for removal, shall be restored or replaced to the Owner's satisfaction.

### 3.3 UTILITY SERVICES

A. Maintain existing utilities indicated to remain in service and protect them against damage during selective site demolition operations.

1. Do not interrupt existing utilities serving occupied or operating facilities, except when authorized in writing by Owner and authorities having jurisdiction. Provide temporary services during interruptions to existing utilities, as acceptable to Owner and to governing authorities.

- a. Provide not less than 72 hours' notice to Owner if shutdown of service is required during changeover.

- B. Utility Requirements: Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off indicated utility services serving building to be selectively demolished.
  - 1. Arrange to shut off indicated utilities with utility companies.
  - 2. Where utility services are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, provide bypass connections to maintain continuity of service to other parts of the building before proceeding with selective demolition.
- C. Utility Requirements: Refer also to Division 21, 22, 23 and 26 Sections for additional requirements for shutting off, disconnecting, removing, and sealing or capping utility services. Do not start selective site demolition work until utility disconnecting and sealing have been completed and verified in writing.
- D. Utility Adjustments and Relocations: Adjust locations, elevations and routes of existing utility lines, poles, guys, vaults, handholes, boxes, and other related appurtenances as required to facilitate new construction. Coordinate adjustments and relocations with utility companies.

### 3.4 POLLUTION CONTROLS

- A. Use water mist, temporary enclosures, and other suitable methods to limit the spread of dust and dirt. Comply with governing environmental protection regulations.
  - 1. Do not use water when it may damage existing construction or create hazardous or objectionable conditions, such as ice, flooding, and pollution.
- B. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
- C. Clean adjacent structures and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by selective site demolition operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing before start of selective demolition.

### 3.5 SELECTIVE SITE DEMOLITION

- A. Demolish and remove existing construction only to the extent required by new construction and as indicated on the drawings. Completely demolish and remove existing improvements; including footings, utilities and other below-grade elements; as indicated on the drawings. Use methods required to complete Work within limitations of governing regulations.
  - 1. Dispose of demolished items and materials promptly. On-site storage or sale of removed items is prohibited.
  - 2. Return elements of construction and surfaces to remain to condition existing before start of selective demolition operations.
  - 3. Comply with all applicable regulations during demolition, handling and disposal of all items indicated to be removed or necessary to be removed to allow construction of new work.
- B. Demolish asphalt, concrete and masonry in small sections. Cut concrete and masonry at junctures with construction to remain, using power-driven masonry saw or hand tools; do not use power-driven impact tools.
- C. Remove sawcut concrete and asphalt, including aggregate base, to a depth of 12-inches below existing, adjacent grade, or as indicated. Provide neat sawcut at limits of pavement removal as indicated.

### 3.6 PATCHING AND REPAIRS

- A. Promptly patch and repair holes and damaged surfaces caused to adjacent construction by selective site demolition operations.
- B. Where repairs to existing surfaces are required, match previous work as closely as possible.

1. Completely fill holes and depressions in existing masonry walls to remain with an approved masonry patching material, applied according to manufacturer's printed recommendations.
- C. Restore exposed finishes of patched areas and extend finish restoration into adjoining construction to remain in a manner that eliminates evidence of patching and refinishing.

### 3.7 CLEANING

- A. Keep the site free from debris and hazards and inspect the site at the end of each day for trash. All adjacent roads and drives outside of the construction fencing shall remain in operation during construction and shall remain free of all construction materials and debris.

### 3.8 DISPOSAL OF WASTE MATERIALS

- A. General: Promptly dispose of demolished materials. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.
- B. Burning on Owner's Property: Burning is not permitted on Owner's property.
- C. Removal from Owner's Property: Remove waste materials and unsuitable or excess soils and mulch from Owner's property. Transport demolished materials off Owner's property and legally dispose of them.
- D. Recycling: Contractor shall not dispose of excess soil and land clearing debris in landfills. 100% of soil and land clearing debris shall be recycled. Provide documentation verifying 100% recycling of cleared trees and stumps and excess soil materials. Refer to Division 01 section – Construction Waste Management for additional requirements.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 31 20 00 – EARTH MOVING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Report of Subsurface Investigation.
  - 1. The geotechnical report is available to bidders as general information with regard to project and site conditions. However, the geotechnical report is not a part of the contract documents and is not a warranty or guarantee of subsurface conditions. Variations in subsurface conditions should be anticipated. Bidders should carefully inspect the site prior to bidding and will be provided reasonable access to perform independent explorations of subsurface conditions, if requested.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Preparing and grading subgrades for walks, lawn areas, and landscaping.
  - 2. Excavating, filling and backfilling for structures.
  - 3. Base course for walks and pavements.
  - 4. Subsurface drainage backfill for trenches.
  - 5. Excavating and backfilling trenches.
- B. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section.
  - 1. Division 01 Sections for allowances, definitions and procedures.
  - 2. Division 31 Section "Site Clearing" for site stripping, grubbing, topsoil removal, and tree protection.
  - 3. Division 33 Section "Storm Drainage Utilities" for storm drainage.
  - 4. Division 32 Section "Planting" for finish grading, including placing and preparing topsoil for permanent and temporary grass seeding.
  - 5. Division 31 "Erosion and Sediment Controls", for all areas of the site that are graded or disturbed by any construction operations

#### 1.3 UNIT PRICES

- A. Rock Measurement: Volume of rock actually removed, measured in original position, but not to exceed the following:
  - 1. 24 inches outside of concrete forms other than at footings.
  - 2. 12 inches outside of concrete forms at footings.
  - 3. 6 inches outside of minimum required dimensions of concrete cast against grade.
  - 4. 6 inches beneath bottom of concrete slabs on grade.
  - 5. 6 inches beneath invert elevation of pipe in trenches and 12 inches wider than pipe outside diameter.
  - 6. Additional rock removed beyond the limits outlined above to accommodate trench boxes, other removal methods, compaction equipment or other reasons shall not be included in the payment volume.
  - 7. Any materials paid by Unit Prices to replace excavated rock shall utilize these same measurement limits.
- B. Unsuitable Soil Measurement: Volume of soil actually removed, measured in original position, but not to exceed the limits directed by the Owner's Independent Testing Agency.

1. Additional soil excavated beyond the limits directed by the Owner's Independent Testing Agency; including lay-back of excavation walls, excavation to accommodate trench boxes or other shoring, etc.; shall not be considered Unsuitable Soil.

C. Replacement Material Measurement: Volume exactly equal to that of the unsuitable soil or rock that was removed, measured in original position.

D. Unit prices for unsuitable soil and rock removal shall include all work and materials as defined in Division 01 sections.

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

A. Excavation consists of the removal of material encountered to subgrade elevations and the reuse or disposal of materials removed. Refer to the following section for additional definitions of classified excavations.

B. Subgrade: The uppermost surface of an excavation or the top surface of a fill or backfill immediately below base course, drainage fill, or topsoil materials.

C. Borrow: Soil material obtained off-site when sufficient approved soil material is not available from excavations.

D. Surface Course: The top layer of the pavement structure placed on base course or subgrade.

E. Base Course: Layer placed between the subgrade elevation and asphalt paving courses.

F. Bedding Course: Layer placed over excavated subgrade in a trench before laying pipe.

G. Unauthorized excavation consists of removing materials beyond indicated subgrade elevations or dimensions without direction by the Architect. Unauthorized excavation, as well as remedial work directed by the Architect, shall be at the Contractor's expense.

H. Structures: Buildings, footings, foundations, retaining walls, slabs, tanks, curbs, mechanical and electrical appurtenances, or other man-made stationary features constructed above or below ground surface.

I. Structural Areas: Areas containing Structures and pavement and extending 10-ft beyond the limits of structures and pavements. Structural Areas in fill shall also include the area supporting the fill slope along a 1:1 slope to existing grade. Pavement areas include but are not limited to roads, driveways, parking lots, curbs, sidewalks, dumpster pads, equipment pads, concrete pads, tracks, tennis courts, and other similar above grade improvements.

J. Utilities include on-site underground pipes, conduits, ducts, and cables, as well as underground services within building lines.

#### 1.5 EXCAVATION CLASSIFICATIONS

A. Excavation Classifications: All excavation is classified as General Excavation except for Mass Rock, Trench Rock and Unsuitable Soil Materials as defined in this section.

1. General Excavation: Excavation, removal and/or disposal of pavements and other obstructions visible on surface; underground structures, utilities, and other items indicated to be demolished and/or removed; together with soil, boulders, and other materials encountered that are not classified as rock, unsuitable soil, loose soil reconditioning, or unauthorized excavation.

- a. Intermittent drilling, blasting, or ripping to increase production and not necessary to permit excavation of material encountered will be considered general excavation.
  - b. Soil (regardless of nature) or other debris encountered above proposed subgrade elevations shall be considered general excavation unless determined by the Architect to meet the definition of rock.
  - c. In-place densification by vibratory rolling of existing soils at exposed subgrades, as described herein, shall be considered General Excavation.
2. Unsuitable Soil Excavation: Removal and disposal of soil materials or other debris encountered below proposed subgrade elevations which is deemed unsuitable to remain in place by the Architect or Owner's Independent Testing Agency.
  - a. Soil and/or other debris encountered above proposed subgrade elevations shall be considered general excavation.
  - b. Soil material which, in the opinion of the Architect or Owner's independent testing agency, can be repaired by scarifying, drying and recompacting or material which is made unsuitable by delay of work, lack of protection or other actions of the Contractor or his Sub-Contractors shall not be considered as unsuitable soil and shall be repaired or replaced by the Contractor at no additional cost to the Owner. Moisture content alone shall not be the determining factor as to the presence of unsuitable soil.
  - c. Any material moved or removed without the measurement by the Owner's independent testing agency and approval by the Architect will be considered as general excavation.
  - d. Surface topsoil, regardless of thickness encountered, shall not be considered unsuitable soil.
  - e. Stones, rocks and boulders not meeting classifications of rock shall not be considered unsuitable soil. Stones, rocks and boulders shall be removed from soil as necessary if soil is to be used as fill or backfill. Removed stones, rocks and boulders shall be removed from the site.
  - f. The unsuitable soil allowances shall be for unsuitable soils only and not for repair of weather related deterioration of subgrade. These Allowances are not for required on-site cut and off-site fill necessary to bring subgrades and grades to elevations shown on drawings. Contractor shall be responsible for proper drying and dewatering procedures, as necessary, as part of his normal operations.
3. Rock Excavation: Removal of rock material in beds, ledges, unstratified masses, conglomerate deposits, and boulders of rock material that exceed 1.0-cu.yd. that cannot be removed by rock excavating equipment equivalent to the following in size and performance ratings, without systematic drilling, ram hammering, ripping, or blasting, when permitted. In the event rock (as defined above) is encountered, the Contractor shall immediately notify the Architect.
  - a. Rock excavation equipment: Late-model, track mounted CAT 330 or equivalent hydraulic excavator equipped with a narrow (36" max) bucket with new rock teeth and operating at the highest normal operating RPM. The Contractor shall provide equipment specification and test data verifying that the equipment to be used for demonstration purposes complies with the minimum requirements. The equipment shall be in good repair and in proper working condition. The Owner reserves the right to inspect and approve the equipment to be used for demonstration purposes. Trench rock is defined as material which, after 1 hour of continuous digging using the equipment described above, removes less than 10 cubic yards of material.
4. Classified excavation requirements:
  - a. Contractor shall expose and clean the rock material for inspection and measurement by the Architect.
  - b. Do not excavate rock or unsuitable soil until it has been classified and cross-sectioned by the Owner's independent testing agency or Architect. Any material moved or removed

without the measurement by the Owner's independent testing agency and approval by the Architect will be considered as General Excavation.

- c. The Architect shall be the final judge on what is classified as unsuitable or rock excavation.
- d. The contractor may be required to provide equipment specification data verifying that the above minimum-rated equipment will be used for demonstration purposes. The equipment shall be in good repair and in proper working condition.
- e. Rippable rock, weathered rock or overburden which is not classified as rock according to the above definitions shall be considered General Excavation.

#### 1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit the following according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.
- B. Test Reports: In addition to test reports required under field quality control, submit the following:
  - 1. Laboratory analysis of each soil material proposed for fill and backfill from on-site and borrow sources.
  - 2. One optimum moisture-maximum density curve for each soil material.
  - 3. Reports of all laboratory and field tests including evaluations of subgrades and foundation bearing conditions.
  - 4. Reports of Special Inspections.
- C. Blasting plan approved by authorities having jurisdiction if applicable due to on-site rock.
- D. Report of rock or unsuitable soil removal with quantities confirmed in writing by the Architect or Owner's independent testing agency.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Codes and Standards: Perform earthwork complying with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Any earthwork required for preparation of parking areas and drives shall comply with current NCDOT Standard Specifications as per the North Carolina Construction Manual.
- B. Comply with applicable requirements of NFPA 495--Explosive Materials Code.
- C. Testing and Inspection Service: Owner will employ a qualified independent geotechnical engineering testing agency to classify proposed on-site and borrow soils to verify that soils comply with specified requirements and to perform required field and laboratory testing.
- D. Special Inspections: Owner will employ a qualified Special Inspector or Special Inspection Agency to perform verification and inspection of earthwork construction in accordance with NC State Building Code.
- E. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements of Division 1
  - 1. Before commencing earthwork, meet with representatives of the governing authorities, Owner, Architect, consultants, Geotechnical Engineer, independent testing agency, and other concerned entities. Review earthwork procedures and responsibilities including testing and inspection procedures and requirements. Notify participants at least 3 working days prior to convening conference. Record discussions and agreements and furnish a copy to each participant.

#### 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt existing utilities serving facilities occupied by the Owner or others except when permitted in writing by the Architect and then only after acceptable temporary utility services have been provided.



1. Provide a minimum 48-hours' notice to the Architect and receive written notice to proceed before interrupting any utility.
  - B. Demolish and completely remove from site existing underground utilities indicated to be removed. Coordinate with utility companies to shutoff services if lines are active.
- 1.9 PAYMENT
- A. General Excavation: All general excavation to the lines and grades indicated on the drawings including all necessary off-site disposal of excess materials and/or off-site borrow of fill materials shall be included in the base bid.
    1. No statement is made or implied that the on-site grading and earthwork indicated on the drawings is balanced.
  - B. Unsuitable Soil Material Excavation: Unsuitable soil material excavation will be paid by unit prices included in the Contract Documents.
    1. Unused amounts of monies included under allowances shall be credited to the Owner by deduct change order.
  - C. Rock Excavation: Rock excavation will be paid by unit prices included in the Contract Documents.
    1. Unused amounts of monies included under allowances shall be credited to the Owner by deduct change order.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SOIL MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide approved borrow soil materials from off-site when sufficient approved soil materials are not available from excavations.
- B. Satisfactory Soil Materials: ASTM D 2487 soil classification groups GW, GC, GP, GM, ML, CL, SW, SP, SC, and SM; free of rock or gravel larger than 2 inches (50 mm) in any dimension, debris, waste, frozen materials, vegetation and other deleterious matter. Additionally, satisfactory soil for use in structural fill areas shall meet the following:
  1. Have a Plasticity Index of 20 or less and a Liquid Limit of 40 or less.
  2. Shall have a Standard Proctor Maximum Dry Density of 100-lb/cf or greater.
  3. Satisfactory soil materials obtained from off-site borrow sources shall meet all requirements listed above and possess a Standard Proctor Maximum Dry Density of 100-lb/cf or greater, shall contain a maximum of 20% fines, have a Plasticity Index of less than 20 and contain less than 5% of organic material by weight.
  4. Soils having a Plasticity Index greater than 20 and a Liquid Limit greater than 40 may be used as fill in approved non-structural areas.
- C. Unsatisfactory Soil Materials: ASTM D 2487 soil classification groups MH, CH, OL, OH, and PT. Soils having a Plasticity Index greater than 20 and a Liquid Limit greater than 40 are also unsatisfactory within structural (pavement and building) areas except if placed as specified above.
- D. Unsuitable Soil: Refer to paragraph 1.5 of this Section.
- E. Backfill and Fill Materials: Satisfactory soil materials.

- F. Impervious Fill & Clay Liner: Clayey or silty soil mixtures capable of compacting to a dense state with a maximum permeability of 0.01-in/hr and compacted to at least 95% of the maximum dry density per ASTM D-698. ASTM D 2487 soil classification groups CH, CL, SC, MH, and ML; free of rock, brush, roots, and other organic material subject to decomposition.

## 2.2 PROCESSED AGGREGATE MATERIALS

- A. Base Course Material: Type A aggregate base course meeting the requirements of Section 520 of NCDOT "Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures."
- B. Engineered Fill: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; with at least 90 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and not more than 12 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.
- C. Bedding Material: #57 washed stone.
- D. Drainage Fill: #57 washed stone.
- E. Filtering Material: #57 washed stone.
- F. Coarse Sand: Grain Size Distribution (ASTM C136-95A):

<u>Sieve Size</u>	<u>Percent Passing</u>
3/8"	100
#4	95-100
#8	85-97
#16	60-80
#30	10-20
#50	5-15
#100	0-5

## 2.3 FLOWABLE FILL

- A. Flowable fill shall consist of a lean concrete mixture of portland cement, aggregate and water. Water reducing and air-entraining admixtures may be added at the option of the Contractor.
  - 1. Material shall comply with the requirements of Division 03 Section, Cast-in-Place Concrete.
  - 2. The proportions of the mix shall be determined by the Contractor to obtain a compressive strength of 100-300-psi at 28-days.

## 2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Drainage (Filter) Fabric: Nonwoven geotextile, specifically manufactured as a drainage geotextile; made from polyolefins, polyesters, or polyamides; and with the following minimum properties determined according to ASTM D 4759 and referenced standard test methods:
  - 1. Grab Tensile Strength: 110 lbf (490 N); ASTM D 4632.
  - 2. Tear Strength: 40 lbf (178 N); ASTM D 4533.
  - 3. Puncture Resistance: 50 lbf (222 N); ASTM D 4833.
  - 4. Water Flow Rate: 150 gpm per sq. ft. (100 L/s per sq. m); ASTM D 4491.
  - 5. Apparent Opening Size: No. 50 (0.3 mm); ASTM D 4751.
- B. Separation/Stabilization Fabric: Woven geotextile, specifically manufactured for use as a separation and or stabilization geotextile; made from polyolefins, polyesters, or polyamides; and with the following minimum properties determined according to ASTM D 4759 and referenced standard test methods:
  - 1. Grab Tensile Strength: 200 lbf (890 N); ASTM D 4632.

2. Tear Strength: 75 lbf (333 N); ASTM D 4533.
  3. Puncture Resistance: 90 lbf (400 N); ASTM D 4833.
  4. Water Flow Rate: 4 gpm per sq. ft. (2.7 L/s per sq. m); ASTM D 4491.
  5. Apparent Opening Size: No. 30 (0.6 mm); ASTM D 4751.
- C. Biaxial Geogrid: Integrally formed biaxial geogrid, specifically manufactured for use as a base reinforcement for subgrade improvement. Tensar BX1100, Mirafi BXG-110, or approved equal with the following minimum properties determined according to ASTM D 4759 and referenced standard test methods:
1. Aperture Dimensions: 1-in (25-mm) nominal.
  2. Minimum Rib Thickness: 0.03-in (0.76-mm) nominal.
  3. Tensile Strength @ 2% Strain: 280-lb/ft (4.1 kN/m); ASTM D-6637.
  4. Tensile Strength @ 5% Strain: 580-lb/ft (8.5 kN/m); ASTM D-6637.
  5. Ultimate Tensile Strength: 850-lb/ft (12.4 kN/m); ASTM D-6637.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by earthwork operations.
- B. Protect subgrades and foundation soils against freezing temperatures or frost. Provide protective insulating materials as necessary.
- C. Provide erosion control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of soils and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways.
- D. Site Maintenance: The Contractor shall be responsible to take whatever measures are necessary to ensure reasonable accessibility to and on the construction site so that undue delays are avoided under normal weather conditions. These measures shall include, but not be limited to, the following:
1. Maintaining the surface of the soils in a manner to promote drainage runoff and avoid ponding of water, especially prior to predicted rain events.
  2. Avoiding operation of temporary water sources or hoses in a manner which will cause unnecessary and repeated wetting of the site.
  3. Fill in severely rutted areas which are ponding water during the construction activities or after rain events with drainage fill material to assist drying and allow construction activities to continue.
  4. Provide drying of surface soils and soils intended for filling or backfilling as required to promote accelerated drying of those materials.
  5. After successful drying efforts or prior to predicted rain events, grade the areas back to a smooth condition to promote drainage runoff.
  6. Controlling vehicular traffic, both construction and personal on the site in a manner to prevent undue damage to soils whenever possible and practical.
  7. Providing temporary staging areas of crushed stone or other materials around the construction site which will better withstand the weather and traffic and keep the site accessible immediately or shortly after rain events.
  8. Provide de-watering equipment for any areas collecting water which may affect construction or soil densities under built areas.
  9. Any claims for weather related delays considered shall be considered with particular attention paid to the Contractor's efforts in regard to the above requirements

#### 3.2 DEWATERING

- A. Prevent surface water and subsurface or ground water from entering excavations, from ponding on prepared subgrades, and from flooding Project site and surrounding area.

- B. Protect subgrades and foundation soils from softening and damage by rain or water accumulation.
  - 1. Reroute surface water runoff away from excavated areas. Do not allow water to accumulate in excavations. Do not use excavated trenches as temporary drainage ditches.
  - 2. Install a dewatering system to keep subgrades dry and convey groundwater away from excavations. Maintain until dewatering is no longer required.
- C. Design, furnish, install, test, operate, monitor, and maintain temporary dewatering systems of sufficient scope, size, and capacity to control hydrostatic pressures and to lower, control, remove, and dispose of ground water and permit excavation and construction to proceed on dry, stable subgrades.
  - 1. Install dewatering system utilizing wells, well points, or similar methods complete with pump equipment, standby power and pumps, filter material gradation, valves, appurtenances, water disposal, and surface-water controls as needed.
  - 2. Use filters or other means to prevent pumping of fine sands or silts from the subsurface.
  - 3. Continuously monitor and maintain dewatering operations to ensure erosion control, stability of excavations and constructed slopes, prevention of flooding in excavation, and prevention of damage to subgrades and permanent structures.
  - 4. Prevent surface water from entering excavations by grading, dikes, or other means.
  - 5. Accomplish dewatering without damaging existing buildings, structures, and site improvements adjacent to excavation.
  - 6. Remove dewatering system when no longer required for construction.
- D. Soft wet soils, if present at the surface, shall be dried and compacted in place by the Contractor and be stable under proofrolling prior to placing fill. Drying shall be accomplished by discing, plowing or other means necessary and shall be included in the Contractor's bid. Site soils are typical of the area and susceptible to loss of strength if they become wet, resulting in softening and rutting during construction. Site soils are extremely moisture sensitive, therefore, the Contractor shall take active and aggressive steps to dry soil materials wet of optimum to maintain construction progress through the work and to maintain access to and around the construction. The Contractor, at his option and cost may remove unstable, wet materials and replace with available fill materials in lieu of accomplishing soil drying procedures.

### 3.3 EXPLOSIVES

- A. Explosives: Do not use explosives without written permission of local authorities. Contractor shall provide all consultation, engineering, supervision, expertise, experience, and test blasting as required to protect surrounding structures and to meet the performance requirements of the local authorities.
  - 1. Apply for the appropriate blasting permit with the authorities having jurisdiction and follow the permit requirements.
  - 2. Contractor shall be responsible for any permit fees.
  - 3. The requirements associated with the blasting permit are the responsibility of the contractor and no additional payment will be made for additional work related to the blasting operations.
  - 4. Contractor shall engage the services of a qualified blasting engineer to develop blasting procedures and assist in monitoring blasting operations.
  - 5. Contractor shall perform pre-blast and post-blast surveys of all utilities, structures, and other facilities adjacent to the blast site and shall perform blast monitoring to ensure no damage is caused to existing structures and other facilities.

### 3.4 STABILITY OF EXCAVATIONS

- A. Comply with local codes, ordinances, and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction to maintain stable excavations. Contractor is responsible for ensuring all excavation operations and other construction comply with applicable OSHA requirements. Contractor shall provide temporary shoring and bracing as needed to construct the proposed improvements and comply with the above requirements.

### 3.5 EXCAVATION FOR STRUCTURES

- A. Excavate to indicated elevations and dimensions within a tolerance of plus or minus 1 inch. Extend excavations a sufficient distance from structures for placing and removing concrete formwork, for installing services and other construction, and for inspections.
- B. Excavations for Footings and Foundations: Do not disturb bottom of excavation. Excavate by hand to final grade just before placing concrete reinforcement. Trim bottoms to required lines and grades to leave solid base to receive other work.

### 3.6 EXCAVATION FOR WALKS AND PAVEMENTS

- A. Excavate surfaces under walks and pavements to indicated cross sections, elevations, and grades.

### 3.7 EXCAVATION FOR UTILITY TRENCHES

- A. Excavate trenches to indicated slopes, lines, depths, and invert elevations.
  - 1. Beyond building perimeter, excavate trenches to allow installation of top of pipe below frost line.
- B. Excavate trenches to uniform widths to provide a working clearance on each side of pipe or conduit. Excavate trench walls vertically from trench bottom to 12 inches (300 mm) higher than top of pipe or conduit, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Clearance: As indicated
- C. Trench Bottoms: Excavate and shape trench bottoms to provide uniform bearing and support of pipes and conduit. Shape subgrade to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits. Remove stones and sharp objects to avoid point loading.
  - 1. For pipes or conduit less than 6 inches (150 mm) in nominal diameter and flat-bottomed, multiple-duct conduit units, hand-excavate trench bottoms and support pipe and conduit on an undisturbed subgrade.
  - 2. For pipes and conduit 6 inches (150 mm) or larger in nominal diameter, shape bottom of trench to support bottom 90 degrees of pipe circumference. Fill depressions with tamped sand backfill.
  - 3. Where encountering rock or another unyielding bearing surface, carry trench excavation 6 inches (150 mm) below invert elevation to receive bedding course.
- D. Soil excavated from trenches that is to be used as backfill or fill shall be moisture conditioned as needed prior to placement and compaction as backfill or fill.

### 3.8 APPROVAL OF SUBGRADE PRIOR TO PLACING FILL OR OTHER IMPROVEMENTS

- A. Notify Architect or Owner's independent testing agency when excavations have reached required subgrade.
- B. After stripping is complete the exposed subgrade shall be proofrolled with a fully loaded dual wheel tandem axle dump truck or similar construction equipment. Four passes shall be made in each orthogonal direction. The proofrolling operation shall be observed by the Architect or Owner's independent testing agency. Should any area fail to tighten up after proofrolling and continue to rut and/or pump, the soil shall be scarified and moistened or aerated and recompacted and/or densified in-place with a vibratory roller. Repeat proofrolling operations.
  - 1. Proofrolling in confined areas inaccessible to dump trucks shall be performed by other means as determined appropriate by the Owner's independent testing agency.

- C. When Architect or Owner's independent testing agency determines that unforeseen unsuitable soil is present, continue excavation and replace with compacted backfill or fill material as directed.
  - 1. Unforeseen additional excavation and replacement with suitable material approved by the Architect will be considered unsuitable material and will be paid by unit prices included in the Contract Documents. Refer to Division 1 Sections.
- D. Reconstruct subgrades damaged by freezing temperatures, frost, rain, accumulated water, or construction activities, as directed by Architect. Install french drains at design subgrade if directed by the Owner's independent testing agency and approved by the Architect.

### 3.9 IN-PLACE DENSIFICATION OF EXISTING SOILS

- A. After removing the existing buildings, vegetation and pavements, proposed paved areas shall be densified in-place with a medium weight vibratory roller to improve the support of the exposed subgrade soils. Three to six passes shall be made in each orthogonal direction. Vibratory rolling shall be performed during dry weather. If water is brought to the surface during vibratory rolling, discontinue rolling until the water subsides. The vibratory rolling operations shall be observed by the Owner's independent testing agency.
- B. Allow pore pressures to dissipate for at least 12 hours following completion of vibratory rolling. After waiting period, re-perform proofrolling of the densified area.

### 3.10 UNAUTHORIZED EXCAVATION

- A. Fill unauthorized excavation under foundations or wall footings by extending indicated bottom elevation of concrete foundation or footing to excavation bottom, without altering required top elevation. Lean concrete fill may be used to bring elevations to proper position when acceptable to the Architect.
  - 1. Fill unauthorized excavations under other construction as directed by the Architect or the Owner's independent testing agency.
- B. Where indicated widths of utility trenches are exceeded, provide stronger pipe, or special installation procedures, as required by the Architect.

### 3.11 STORAGE OF SOIL MATERIALS

- A. Stockpile excavated materials acceptable for backfill and fill soil materials, including acceptable borrow materials. Stockpile soil materials without intermixing. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent wind-blown dust.
  - 1. Stockpile soil materials away from edge of excavations. Do not store within drip line of remaining trees.

### 3.12 BACKFILL

- A. Backfill excavations promptly, but not before completing the following:
  - 1. Acceptance of construction below finish grade including, where applicable, damp-proofing, waterproofing, and perimeter insulation.
  - 2. Surveying locations of underground utilities for record documents.
  - 3. Testing, inspecting, and approval of underground utilities.
  - 4. Concrete formwork removal.
  - 5. Removal of trash and debris from excavation.
  - 6. Removal of temporary shoring and bracing, and sheeting.
  - 7. Installing permanent or temporary horizontal bracing on horizontally supported walls.

8. Removal of objectionable materials, including rocks larger than acceptable size, from backfill soils.

### 3.13 UTILITY TRENCH BACKFILL

- A. Place and compact bedding course on rock and other unyielding bearing surfaces and to fill unauthorized excavations. Shape bedding course to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits.
- B. Pipe sleeves and concrete backfill trenches that carry below or pass under footings and that are excavated within 18 inches (450 mm) of footings. Place concrete to level of bottom of footings. Contact the Architect or the Owner's independent testing agency to coordinate details, procedures and possible alternatives.
- C. Provide 4 inch (100 mm) thick concrete base slab support for piping or conduit less than 30 inches (750 mm) below surface of roadways. After installation and testing, completely encase piping or conduit in a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) of concrete before backfilling or placing roadway base course.
- D. Place and compact initial backfill of satisfactory soil material or base course material, free of particles larger than 1 inch (25 mm), to a height of 12 inches (300 mm) over the utility pipe or conduit.
  1. Carefully compact material under pipe haunches and bring backfill evenly up on both sides and along the full length of utility piping or conduit to avoid damage or displacement of utility system.
  2. Moisture condition soil materials as needed prior to placement as backfill.
- E. Coordinate backfilling with utilities testing.
- F. Fill voids with approved backfill materials as shoring and bracing, and sheeting is removed.
- G. Place and compact final backfill of satisfactory soil material to final subgrade.
  1. Moisture condition soil materials as needed prior to placement as backfill.
- H. Install detectable warning tape directly above utilities, 12 inches (300 mm) below finished grade, except 6 inches (150 mm) below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

### 3.14 FILL

- A. Preparation: Remove vegetation, topsoil, debris, wet, frozen, and unsatisfactory soil materials, obstructions, and deleterious materials from ground surface prior to placing fills.
  1. Plow, strip or break up sloped surfaces steeper than 1 vertical to 4 horizontal so fill material will bond with existing surface.
- B. Obtain approval of subgrade as specified prior to placing fill.
- C. Obtain approval of fill materials. Remove all objectionable materials, including stones larger than acceptable size, from fill materials. Large stones may be placed in approved non-structural areas if they are spread evenly, individually and surrounded with properly compacted soil fill to ensure the absence of voids in the fill. Large stone placement in fill shall be monitored by the Owner's Independent Testing Agency.
- D. Place fill material in layers to required subgrade elevations for each location listed below.
  1. Under grass, use satisfactory excavated or borrow soil material.
  2. Under walks, pavements, buildings and other structural areas use base course material, or satisfactory excavated or borrow soil material.

3. In pond embankments, use impervious fill for core/cut-off trench and suitable soil for remainder of embankment.

E. Following placement of fill the subgrade of building and pavement areas shall be proofrolled as described in the Field Quality Control section. The proofrolling operation shall be observed by the Owner's testing agency. Should any area fail to tighten up after proofrolling and continue to rut and/or pump, the soil shall be scarified and moistened or aerated and recompacted. Repeat proofrolling operations.

### 3.14 MOISTURE CONTROL

A. Uniformly moisten or aerate subgrade and each subsequent fill or backfill layer before compaction to within 2 percent of optimum moisture content.

1. Do not place backfill or fill material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost or ice.
2. Remove and replace or scarify and air-dry satisfactory soil material that is too wet to compact to specified density.
  - a. Stockpile or spread and dry removed wet satisfactory soil material.

### 3.15 COMPACTION

A. Place backfill and fill materials in layers not more than 8 inches in loose depth for material compacted by heavy compaction equipment, and not more than 4 inches (100 mm) in loose depth for material compacted by hand-operated tampers.

B. Place backfill and fill materials evenly on all sides of structures to required elevations. Place backfill and fill uniformly along the full length of each structure.

C. Percentage of Maximum Dry Density Requirements: Compact soil to not less than the following percentages of maximum dry density according to ASTM D698 Standard Proctor:

1. Under structures, steps, walks, and pavements:
  - a. Compact each layer of backfill or fill material at 95% of the standard Proctor Density (ASTM D-698).
  - b. Compact each layer of the final 12-in of backfill material in building and pavement areas at 98% of the standard Proctor Density (ASTM D-698).
  - c. Moisture content of the fill during placement shall be kept within +/-2% of optimum.
  - d. Under pavements within NCDOT rights-of-way or new pavement to be constructed to NCDOT standards compact the top 8 inches below pavement subgrade to at least 100% density in accordance with AASHTO T-99 as modified by NCDOT.
2. Under lawn or unpaved areas, compact the top 6 inches below subgrade and each layer of backfill or fill material at 90 percent maximum dry density.
3. In pond embankments, compact each layer of backfill or fill material at 95% of the standard Proctor Density (ASTM D-698). Moisture content of the fill during placement shall be kept within 0% to +3% of optimum.
4. Compact each layer of aggregate base material under pavement to 100% density in accordance with AASHTO T-180 as modified by NCDOT or to at least 98% of the nuclear target density as specified in section 520 of the NCDOT Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

### 3.16 GRADING

A. General: Uniformly grade areas to a smooth surface, free from irregular surface changes. Comply with compaction requirements and grade to cross sections, lines, and elevations indicated.

1. Provide a smooth transition between existing adjacent grades and new grades.
2. Cut out soft spots, fill low spots, and trim high spots to conform to required surface tolerances.



- B. Site Grading: Slope grades to direct water away from buildings and to prevent ponding. Finish subgrades to required elevations within the following tolerances:
  - 1. Lawn or Unpaved Areas: Plus or minus 1.2 inches (0.10 foot).
  - 2. Walks: Plus or minus 1.2 inches (0.10 foot).
  - 3. Pavements: Plus or minus 1/2 inch (0.05 foot).
  - 4. Pond Embankments: Construct embankment to an elevation 10% higher than the design height to allow for settling.
- C. Lawn Fine Grading: Finish grade lawn and field areas to a smooth, even surface with loose, uniformly fine texture. Roll and rake, remove ridges, and fill depressions to meet finish grades. Limit fine grading to areas that can be planted in the immediate future. Remove trash, debris, stones larger than 1/2 inch in any dimension, and other objects that may interfere with planting or maintenance operations. Remove all glass, wire or other objects of any size which may cause injury. Surfaces shall be top dressed with sterile sand following establishment of grass as necessary to obtain smooth, consistent surface.

### 3.17 SUBSURFACE / FOUNDATION DRAINAGE

- A. Drainage Piping: Drainage pipe is specified in Division 33 Section "Site Storm Drainage Utilities."
- B. Subsurface Drain: Place a layer of drainage fabric around perimeter of drainage trench as indicated. Place a course of drainage fill material on drainage fabric to support drainage pipe. Encase drainage pipe in drainage fill material and wrap in drainage fabric, overlapping sides and ends at least 6 inches.
  - 1. Compact each course of drainage fill material.
  - 2. Place satisfactory excavated or borrow soil material or topsoil fill material (as appropriate) over drain to final grade.

### 3.18 BASE COURSES

- A. Under pavements, walks, courts and tracks, place base course material on prepared subgrades.
  - 1. Where indicated, place biaxial geogrid directly on prepared subgrade under all asphalt and concrete pavement without wrinkles or folds. Seams shall be overlapped a minimum of 12-in. Geogrid placement shall be observed by the Owner's Independent Testing Agency prior to covering. Place compacted base course over geogrid and control traffic and operation of equipment over geogrid and base course in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
  - 2. Compact base courses at optimum moisture content to required grades, lines, cross sections and thickness to not less than 100 percent density in accordance with AASHTO T-180 as modified by NCDOT or to at least 98% of the nuclear target density as specified in section 520 of the NCDOT Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.
  - 3. Shape base course to required crown elevations and cross-slope grades.
  - 4. When thickness of compacted base course is 6 inches or less, place materials in a single layer.
  - 5. When thickness of compacted base course exceeds 6 inches, place materials in equal layers, with no layer more than 6 inches (150 mm) thick or less than 3 inches (75 mm) thick when compacted.
  - 6. Following compaction testing and within 48 hours prior to the application of asphalt or concrete pavement, the aggregate base course shall be proofrolled with a fully loaded dual wheel tandem axle dump truck or similar construction equipment. Four passes shall be made in each orthogonal direction. The proofrolling operation shall be observed by the Architect or Owner's independent testing agency. Should any area fail to tighten up after proofrolling and continue to rut and/or pump, the base course shall be scarified and moistened or aerated and recompacted. Repeat proofroll testing.
    - a. Proofrolling in confined areas inaccessible to dump trucks shall be performed by other means as determined appropriate by the Owner's independent testing agency.

- B. Pavement Shoulders: Place shoulders along edges of base course to prevent lateral movement. Construct shoulders at least 12 inches (300 mm) wide of acceptable soil materials and compact simultaneously with each base course layer.

### 3.19 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner's Independent Testing Agency Services: Allow testing agency to evaluate and test each subgrade and each fill or backfill layer. Do not proceed until test results for previously completed work verify compliance with requirements.
  - 1. Perform testing and evaluation of borrow or fill soils for compliance with material specifications of this Section.
  - 2. Perform field in-place density tests according to ASTM D 1556 (sand cone method), ASTM D6938 (nuclear gauge method) or equal as determined by the Owner's independent testing agency.
    - a. Structural Areas: At subgrade and at each compacted fill, backfill layer, and aggregate base course layer, perform at least one field in-place density test for every 2,500 sq.ft. or less of building area and every 5,000 sq.ft. or less of paved area, but in no case fewer than three tests. Observe proofrolling of finished subgrade and aggregate base course.
    - b. Trench Backfill: Perform at least one field in-place density test per 2 feet of backfill per 100 linear feet or less of trench outside of limits of buildings, but no fewer than two tests per trench per day.
    - c. Pond Embankments: At subgrade and at each compacted fill and backfill layer, perform at least one field in-place density test for every 200 linear ft. or less of embankment, but in no case fewer than ten tests. Observe use of impervious fill as embankment materials. Perform evaluation of soils to be used as embankment fill for compliance with material specifications herein.
    - d. Non-Structural Areas: Field density and moisture content tests shall be performed on the fill and backfill at a rate of at least one test per every 15,000 square feet of area being filled.
  - 3. Building Foundation Excavations: Evaluate bearing subgrades with hand augers and Dynamic Cone Penetrometer (DCP) testing.
  - 4. Observe proof-rolling as described herein.
  - 5. Refer to Special Inspections section below for testing within building limits.
- B. When testing agency reports that subgrades, fills, or backfills are below specified density, scarify and moisten or aerate, or remove and replace soil to the depth required, recompact and retest until required density is obtained. Contractor shall be responsible for all costs associated with re-testing required due to failed compaction.
- C. Proofrolling: Subgrade to receive fill, finish subgrade of building or pavement areas, and aggregate base courses shall be proofrolled with a fully loaded dual wheel tandem axle dump truck or similar construction equipment. Four passes shall be made in each orthogonal direction. The proofrolling operation shall be observed by the Owner's testing agency. Should any area fail to tighten up after proofrolling and continue to rut and/or pump, the soil shall be scarified and moistened or aerated and recompact. Repeat proofrolling operations.
  - 1. Proofrolling in confined areas inaccessible to dump trucks shall be performed by other means as determined appropriate by the Owner's independent testing agency.
- D. Pond and Wetland Infiltration / Leakage Testing: Following completion of new permanent detention ponds or constructed wetlands, perform wetland/pond infiltration / leakage testing.
  - 1. Following installation of the clay liner, perform wetland/pond infiltration / leakage testing.
  - 2. Ensure the temporary skimmer is still connected to the pond drain. Close the pond drain valve and allow the wetland/pond to fill with water to the permanent pool elevation.

3. Allow the water level in the wetland/pond to equalize through normal drainage or by briefly opening the pond drain valve to bring the water level to 1-3-inches below the permanent pool elevation. Reclose the pond drain valve.
4. Perform the remainder of the testing during a period of no precipitation.
5. Check the interior of the outlet structure for visible leakage and repair as needed.
6. Attach a vertical yardstick to the side of the riser extending above and below the water level for water level monitoring.
7. Record the water level reading on the yardstick with date and time stamped photo.
8. Record the water level reading again at 24-hrs and 48-hrs after the original reading.
9. Provide the photo records to the Engineer for analysis.
10. Await approval before proceeding with further wetland/pond construction.

### 3.20 SPECIAL INSPECTIONS

- A. Allow Special Inspections and tests to be performed by the Special Inspector or Special Inspection Agency.
- A. Verification and inspection of earthwork construction shall be in accordance with the applicable sections of the current North Carolina State Building Code, and as follows:
  1. Review laboratory test reports, certificates of compliance, or other data submitted to show compliance with specifications, and conduct field inspections and tests during earthwork operations as necessary to verify compliance with the contract documents.
  2. All site stripping and proofrolling operations shall be observed and monitored. Verify suitability of subgrade prior to installation of fill.
  3. At footing subgrades, test each soil stratum to verify design bearing capacities. Verification and approval of footing subgrades may be based on a comparison of subgrade with test data. Perform additional testing as necessary.
  4. Test compaction of soils in place according to ASTM D 1556, ASTM D 2167, ASTM D 2922, and ASTM D 2937, as applicable. Tests will be performed at the following locations and frequencies:
    - a. Building Slab Areas: At subgrade and at each compacted fill and backfill layer, at least one test for every 2000 sq. ft. or less of building slab, but in no case fewer than three tests.
    - b. Foundation Wall Backfill: At each compacted backfill layer, at least one test for every 50 feet or less of wall length, but no fewer than two tests.
    - c. Trench Backfill in Building Areas: At each compacted initial and final backfill layer, at least one test for every 50 feet or less of trench length, but no fewer than two tests.
- B. Allow Special Inspector to inspect and test subgrades and each fill or backfill layer. Proceed with subsequent earth moving only after test results for previously completed work comply with requirements
- C. When subgrades, fills, or backfills have not achieved degree of compaction specified, scarify and moisten or aerate, or remove and replace soil materials to depth required; recompact and retest until specified compaction is obtained.
- D. Correct deficiencies in Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.
- E. Additional testing performed to determine compliance of corrected work with specified requirements shall be at Contractor's expense.

### 3.21 PROTECTION

- A. Protecting Graded Areas: Protect newly graded areas from traffic, freezing, and erosion. Keep free of trash and debris.

- B. Repair and re-establish grades to specified tolerances where completed or partially completed surfaces become eroded, rutted, settled, or lose compaction due to subsequent construction operations or weather conditions.
  - 1. Scarify or remove and replace material to depth directed by the Architect or Owner's independent testing agency; reshape and recompact at optimum moisture content to the required density.
- C. Settling: Where settling occurs during the Project correction period, remove finished surfacing, backfill with additional approved material, compact, and reconstruct surfacing.
  - 1. Restore appearance, quality, and condition of finished surfacing to match adjacent work, and eliminate evidence of restoration to the greatest extent possible.

3.22 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS

- A. Disposal: Remove surplus soil and waste material, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of it off the Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 31 20 00

## SECTION 31 25 00 - EROSION & SEDIMENT CONTROLS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division-1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following: Soil erosion and sedimentation control for all areas of the site that are graded or disturbed by any construction operations and elsewhere as indicated on the Drawings or specified herein. Erosion control shall be as specified herein and as may be required by actual conditions and governing authorities.
- B. The Contractor is fully responsible for all applicable permits and approvals for off-site borrow and waste areas.
- C. The Contractor shall have full responsibility for the construction and maintenance of erosion control and sedimentation control facilities as shown on the Drawings and as specified herein. The Contractor shall at all times provide the operation and maintenance necessary to operate the permitted sediment and erosion controls at optimum efficiency.
- D. The Contractor shall provide permanent or temporary ground cover as soon as possible over disturbed areas of the site, and shall provide permanent or temporary ground cover in no more than 14 days after construction activities have permanently or temporarily ceased over the disturbed area. Temporary or permanent ground cover shall be provided on slopes within 7 days after construction activities have permanently or temporarily ceased.
- E. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:
  - 1. Division 31 Section "Site Clearing"
  - 2. Division 31 Section "Earth Moving"
  - 3. Division 32 Section "Planting"

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit the following according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 01 Specification Sections.
  - 1. Silt fence fabric, wire support and posts.
  - 2. Tree protection fence, signs and posts.
  - 3. Filter fabric.
  - 4. Channel and slope matting.
  - 5. Compost filter socks.
  - 6. Manufactured inlet sediment control devices.
  - 7. Dewatering silt bags.
  - 8. Polyacrylamide (PAM) turbidity control logs.

#### 1.4 PRODUCT HANDLING

- A. Deliver seed, fertilizer and other packaged materials in unopened original packages with labels legible and intact. Seed packages shall bear a guaranteed analysis by a recognized authority.
- B. On-site storage of materials shall be kept to a minimum. Wet or damaged seed or other material shall be removed from the project site immediately.

## 1.5 MONITORING AND RECORD KEEPING

- A. Contractor shall abide by all conditions of the General Permit to Discharge Stormwater under the National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES), Permit No. NCG010000 (obtain copy from Owner) and the general requirements listed below. NPDES General Permit No. NCG010000 can be viewed at:  
[https://files.nc.gov/ncdeq/Energy%20Mineral%20and%20Land%20Resources/Stormwater/NCG010000\\_Final\\_Permit\\_2019\\_04\\_01.pdf](https://files.nc.gov/ncdeq/Energy%20Mineral%20and%20Land%20Resources/Stormwater/NCG010000_Final_Permit_2019_04_01.pdf)
- B. All sediment and erosion control devices and facilities shall be inspected at least once every seven (7) calendar days and within 24 hours after any storm event of greater than 0.5 inches of rain per 24 hour period.
- C. Stormwater discharges shall be inspected by observation for stormwater discharge characteristics (as listed below) at the above frequency to evaluate the effectiveness of the sediment control facilities, devices or practices. Observations shall be made at all stormwater discharge outfalls and other locations where concentrated stormwater discharges from the site. Observations shall be qualitative, no analytical testing or sampling is required. If any visible off-site sedimentation is leaving the site, corrective action shall be taken to reduce the discharge of sediments.
1. Color.
  2. Odor.
  3. Clarity.
  4. Floating solids.
  5. Suspended solids.
  6. Foam.
  7. Oil sheen.
  8. Other obvious indicators of stormwater pollution.
- D. The contractor shall perform and keep records of the above inspections. Visible sedimentation found off the site shall be recorded with a brief explanation as the measures taken to prevent future releases as well as any measures taken to clean up the sediment that has left the site. This record shall be made available to the Owner, Architect and governmental authorities.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SOIL AMENDMENTS AND SEED

- A. Refer to Division 32 Section "Planting".

### 2.2 MISCELLANEOUS

- A. Gravel for Stone Filters: Washed No. 57 stone or as indicated on the drawings.
- B. Silt Fence Fabric: A synthetic filter fabric or a pervious sheet of polypropylene, nylon, polyester, or polyethylene yarn, which is certified by the manufacturer or supplier as conforming to the following requirements.
1. Tensile Strength (Grab): 90 x 90-lbs. min., ASTM D 4632.
  2. Permittivity: 0.05-sec<sup>-1</sup> min., ASTM D 4491.
  3. Apparent Opening Size: #30 US Sieve (0.60-mm) max., ASTM D 4751.
  4. UV Resistance (500-hrs): 70%, ASTM D 4355.
- C. Filter Fabric (for installation under riprap): Woven geotextile fabric, apparent opening size no larger than US Standard Sieve no. 70, min. grab strength of 120-lbs.
- D. Polyacrylamide (PAM) Turbidity Control Log: Soil specific tailored, solid form PAM product containing blends of water treatment components and polyacrylamide co-polymer for water clarification (25 NTU)

max. at outlet of sediment basin) and erosion control. Product shall be designed for site specific soil and water conditions. APS-700 Series Floc Log by Applied Polymer Systems, Inc. or approved equal.

- E. Dewatering Silt Bag: Permeable, non-woven geotextile bag manufactured to accept and filter pumped, sediment-laden water from dewatering activities. Silt bag shall be sized as appropriate for the dewatering pump discharge rate and shall be fitted with a fill spout large enough to accommodate the discharge piping of the dewatering pump. Silt bag shall be Dirtbag as manufactured by ACF Environmental, Inc. or approved equal.
- F. Compost Filter Sock: Three-dimensional tubular sediment control device comprised of an organic compost filter media contained in a tubular knitted mesh sock.
  - 1. Filter media shall be mature compost that has been certified by the US Composting Council's Seal of Testing Assurance Program and meeting the following specifications.
    - a. pH: 5.0 – 8.5.
    - b. Moisture Content: < 60%.
    - c. Organic Matter: >25%, dry weight.
    - d. Particle Size: 99% passing 2-in sieve, 30-50% passing 3/8-in sieve.
  - 2. Filter sock netting shall be 5-mm thick continuous HDPE filament, tubular knitted mesh with 3/8-in openings. Filled sock shall be a minimum of 12-in in diameter.
  - 3. Stakes shall be 2x2-in x 3-ft wooden stakes.

## 2.3 INLET PROTECTION MEASURES

- A. Manufactured Inlet Sediment Control Device: Storm drainage inlet sediment control device shall be manufactured from woven polypropylene geotextile to fit the opening of a catch basin or drop inlet to filter sediment from runoff entering the inlet. The device shall be a High Flow Siltsack as manufactured by ACF Environmental, Inc. or approved equal. Device shall be provided with an integral curb deflector if installed at a catch basin with a vertical opening adjacent to a horizontal grate.
- B. Floor Drain / Area Drain Sediment Filter Device: Small size storm drainage inlet sediment control device shall be manufactured from woven polypropylene geotextile to fit into small diameter floor drains to filter sediment from runoff entering the inlet. The device shall be a Round Drain Insert as manufactured by New Pig Corp. or approved equal.

## 2.4 CHANNEL AND SLOPE MATTING

- A. Channel Matting: Erosion Control blankets for installation in channels shall be a machine-produced mat of curled wood fiber (excelsior) or synthetic polypropylene fiber as specified below. The blanket shall be of consistent thickness with the fiber evenly distributed over the entire area of the mat. The blanket shall be covered with a photo degradable plastic netting secured to the fiber mat. Channel liners shall be excelsior mat unless otherwise indicated on the drawings.
  - 1. Excelsior Mat:
    - a. Fiber: Curled wood excelsior of 80% six inch or longer fiber length with a consistent width of fibers evenly distributed throughout the mat. Mat shall be smolder resistant with no chemical additives.
    - b. Top and Bottom Netting: Photo degradable extruded plastic netting with maximum mesh size of 3/4" x 3/4".
  - 2. Coconut Mat:
    - a. Fiber: 100% coconut fiber (0.5-lbs./sq.yd.)
    - b. Top Netting: 100% biodegradable jute (9.3-lbs/1000-sq.ft. approx. weight.)
    - c. Bottom Netting: 100% biodegradable jute (7.7-lbs/1000-sq.ft. approx. weight.)

- d. C125BN by North American Green or approved equal.
3. Synthetic Mat (Polypropylene):
  - a. Fiber: 100% UV stabilized polypropylene fiber matrix (0.5-lbs./sq.yd.)
  - b. Top and Bottom Netting: UV stabilized polypropylene (24-lbs/1000-sq.ft. approx. weight.)
  - c. Middle Netting: Corrugated UV stabilized polypropylene (24-lbs/1000-sq.ft. approx. weight.)
  - d. P550 by North American Green or approved equal.
4. Straw/Coconut Mat:
  - a. Fiber: 70% Straw fiber matrix (0.35-lbs./sq.yd.), 30% Coconut fiber matrix (0.15-lbs./sq.yd.)
  - b. Top and Bottom Netting: UV stabilized polypropylene (5-lbs/1000-sq.ft. approx. weight.)
  - c. Middle Netting: Corrugated UV stabilized polypropylene (24-lbs/1000-sq.ft. approx. weight.)
  - d. SC250 by North American Green or approved equal.
5. Wire Staples: 16 gauge steel wire, with minimum of 3" top and 6" long legs. 1.75 staples per square yard of matting minimum.
- B. Slope Matting: Erosion Control blankets for installation on slopes (not channels) shall be a machine-produced mat of crimped wood fiber and/or other degradable fibers manufactured without nets or threads. Staples or stakes used to secure the mat shall be wood or 100% biodegradable natural material. No nets or metal staples shall be used on any areas other than within channels.
  1. Excelsior Mat:
    - a. Fiber: Net-free, curled wood excelsior of 80% six inch or longer fiber length with a consistent width of fibers evenly distributed throughout the mat. Mat shall be smolder resistant with no chemical additives.
  2. Stakes or Staples: Wood or 100% biodegradable natural material with additive to cause breakdown and 100% degradation within 24-36 months after installation.

## 2.5 RIPRAP

- A. Riprap: Provide riprap of the class and quantity indicated on the Drawings. While no specific gradation is required, the various sizes of the stone shall be equally distributed within the required size range. The size of an individual stone shall be determined by measuring its long dimension. Stone shall meet the requirements of the following table for class and size distribution. No more than 5% of the material furnished can be less than the minimum size specified nor no more than 10% of the material can exceed the maximum size specified.

REQUIRED STONE SIZES - INCHES			
CLASS	MINIMUM	MIDRANGE	MAXIMUM
A	2	4	6
B	5	8	12
1	5	10	17
2	9	14	23

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 GENERAL

- A. Existing Structures and Facilities



1. Existing structures, facilities, and water courses shall be protected from sedimentation.
2. The Contractor shall be responsible for the construction of necessary measures, and all costs shall be at the expense of the Contractor.
3. Items to be protected from sedimentation deposits shall include, but are not limited to, all downstream property, natural waterways, streams, lakes and ponds, catch basins, drainage ditches, road gutters, and natural buffer zones.
4. Control measures such as the erection of silt fences, barriers, dams, or other structures shall begin prior to any land disturbing activity. Additional measures shall be constructed as required during the construction.
5. All facilities installed shall be maintained continuously during construction until the disturbed areas are stabilized. Contractor shall remove all erosion control measures at the end of the project at his expense unless otherwise directed by the Owner or his representative.
6. Perform monitoring and record keeping as specified in this section.

### 3.2 PROTECTIVE MEASURES

- A. Protective measures shall conform to all State and Local requirements.
- B. Construction and maintenance of sediment and erosion control measures shall be in accordance with all applicable laws, codes, ordinances, rules and regulations.
  1. Silt Fence: Hog wire or wire mesh fastened to posts as recommended by the Manufacturer and covered with silt fabric.
  2. Berms and Diversion Ditches: These shall be graded channels with a supporting ridge on the lower side constructed across a sloping land surface. Diversion ditches and berms shall be planted in vegetative cover as soon as completed.
  3. Mulching: Mulching shall be used to prevent erosion and to hold soil and seed in place during the establishment of vegetation.
  4. **Matting: Temporary slope and channel matting shall be used for temporary stabilization during the establishment of seeded cover in all grassed ditches, channels, long slopes, and steep banks (6:1 or steeper) and additional areas as indicated on plans.** Matting shall be installed on any area on site as needed to provide temporary stabilization whether or not matting is indicated on the plan. Install as indicated or per manufacturer's instructions. The installation of matting may be waived by the Architect if surface stabilization is obtained by other methods within the appropriate and agreed time frames. If adequate stabilization is not obtained, the Contractor shall install matting where required at no additional cost to the Owner.
  5. Build Berm, Pits and Gravel Filter as shown on Drawings. Maintain during construction to keep erosion and sedimentation to a minimum. When it is necessary to remove berm, pits, and gravel, return area to required profiles and condition.
  6. Construction Entrances: Construct all entrances in accordance with plans. Maintain all ingress/egress points to prevent tracking of soil onto the Owner's, public or private roads. Any soil that is tracked onto the roads shall be removed immediately.
  7. Riprap: Stone shall be graded so that the smaller stones are uniformly distributed throughout the mass. Stone may be placed by mechanical methods, augmented by hand placing where necessary, provided that when the riprap is completed it forms a properly graded, dense, neat layer of stone.
  8. Manufactured Inlet Sediment Control Device: Install device in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and install a curb deflector if appropriate. Inspect device after each rain event and at intervals not exceeding two weeks during construction. Remove, empty, clean, and replace the device as needed during construction. Empty collected sediment in approved, protected location. Remove and dispose of device following full and permanent stabilization of the contributing drainage area.
  9. PAM Turbidity Logs: At a minimum, install logs in drainage structures located immediately upstream of sediment basins and traps. Install additional logs in any other locations indicated on the drawings. Install per manufacturer's instructions. Check logs regularly and after every runoff producing rainfall and replace as needed throughout the duration of construction.
  10. Dewatering Silt Bag: Install silt bag on an undisturbed slope so incoming water flows downhill through the bag without causing erosion. Remove and replace silt bag when device no longer

drains efficiently due to accumulated sediment in bag. Empty bag within disturbed limits of the site protected by other sediment control measures.

11. Compost Filter Logs: Stake filter log every 10-ft. Drive stakes through the center of the log and 1-ft into the ground. If sock netting must be joined, fit beginning of the new sock over the end of the old sock, overlapping by 1-2 ft. Fill with compost and stake the joint.
12. Other Measures: Other methods of protecting existing structures and facilities, such as vegetative filter strips, diversions, rip-rap, baffle boards, and ditch checks used for reduction of sediment movement and erosion, may be used at the option of the Contractor when approved by the appropriate State or local authorities.

C. Provide the following, at a minimum, to prevent windblown dust.

1. Apply straw mulch and establish temporary or permanent ground cover on exposed soil where work is not being actively performed.
2. Cover or establish vegetative cover on stockpiles.
3. Apply water or other approved dust suppressant as needed to soil surfaces before they become excessively dry.
4. Sweep and collect soil that has been tracked onto paved surfaces.

### 3.3 STABILIZATION

- A. Permanently protect stabilized areas prior to the removal of protective devices.
- B. After the final establishment of permanent stabilization, remove temporary sediment control measures. Re-spread accumulated sediments as specified.
- C. Permanently stabilize all areas disturbed by the removal and re-spreading operations immediately.

### 3.4 TEMPORARY SEEDING

- A. In accordance with the schedule as detailed on the drawings.

### 3.5 PERMANENT SEEDING

- A. In accordance with the schedule as detailed on the drawings.

### 3.6 MULCHING AND MATTING

- A. Apply mulch or matting to retain soil and grass.
- B. Mulch areas with slope greater than 5% by spreading a light cover of mulch over seeded area at the rate of not less than 85 lbs. per 1000 sq. ft.
- C. Install temporary matting in all grassed ditches, channels, long slopes, and steep banks (6:1 or steeper) and additional areas indicated on plans or where extra protection from erosion is needed.

END OF SECTION 31 25 00

## SECTION 32 12 16 - ASPHALT PAVING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes provisions for hot-mixed asphalt paving over prepared subbase.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit the following in accordance with Conditions of Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.
- B. Material Certificates signed by material producer and Contractor, certifying that each material item complies with or exceeds specified requirements of NCDOT "Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures".
- C. Job Mix Formula: Provide Geotechnical consultant with two copies of the proposed job mix formula at least ten days prior to beginning work. This formula shall be approved by NCDOT for the type of pavement specified.
- D. Recycled Content: 15% minimum, or as approved by NCDOT except as noted below.
  - 1. No Recycled Asphalt Pavement (RAP) shall be used in the asphalt pavement mix for exterior athletic surfacing.

#### 1.4 SITE CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations for Prime and Tack Coats: Apply prime and tack coats only when the surface to be treated is dry and when the atmospheric temperature measured at the location of paving operations away from artificial heat are in compliance with current NCDOT Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures. Do not apply tack coat when weather is foggy or rainy.
- B. Weather Limitations for Asphalt Courses: Apply hot-mixed asphalt surface, intermediate and base courses when surface and air temperatures are in compliance with current NCDOT Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures and when base is dry.
- C. Grade Control: Establish and maintain required lines and elevations.
- D. Traffic Control: Provide traffic control devices, lane closures, positive protection and/or any other warning or positive protection devices necessary for the safety of road users and pedestrians during construction.
  - 1. Traffic control shall be performed in conformance with the latest NCDOT Roadway Standard Drawings and Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures and the Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways.
  - 2. Sidewalk closures shall be installed as necessary. Pedestrian traffic shall be detoured around these closures and shall be signed appropriately and in accordance with ADA guidelines.
  - 3. Two-way traffic shall be maintained at all times through use of flagmen when necessary.
  - 4. Maintain access for fire-fighting equipment and access to fire hydrants.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. All materials, construction methods and testing shall comply with the requirements of the latest editions of the North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT) "Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures" and the Asphalt Handbook Manual Series No. 4 (MS-4).
- B. All work within any NCDOT right-of-way shall conform to the provisions and conditions of the NCDOT encroachment agreement(s) and driveway permit(s) and other applicable NCDOT standards and policies. The encroachment agreement(s) and driveway permit(s) are considered part of the project specifications by reference. Copies of the agreement(s) and permit(s) will be provided upon request from the Architect.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. General: Use locally available materials and gradations that comply with the requirements of the NCDOT "Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures" and exhibit a satisfactory record of previous installations.
- B. Aggregate Base Course (ABC): Type A aggregate base course meeting the requirements of the latest version of NCDOT "Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures."
- C. Superpave Asphalt Paving Mix: Superpave base, intermediate and surface asphalt paving mix meeting the requirements of the latest version of NCDOT "Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures." Types as indicated on the drawings.
- D. Tack Coat: Asphalt material meeting the requirement of the latest version of NCDOT "Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures."
- E. Parking Lot Marking Paint: Latex, waterborne emulsion, lead and chromate free, ready mixed, complying with FS TT-P-1952, Type II, with drying time of less than 45 minutes.
  - 1. Color: White for parking lot striping.
  - 2. Color: Yellow for fire lanes and service area striping.
- F. Roadway Pavement Marking Paint: Thermoplastic Alkyd/Maleic and Hydrocarbon type, meeting the requirements of Section 1087 of NCDOT "Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures."
  - 1. Color: As indicated on the drawings.
- G. Seal Coat Surface Treatment: Sand seal shall be comprised of the application of an asphalt emulsion followed by and sand aggregate cover over existing asphalt pavement.
  - 1. Asphalt Emulsion: Grade CRS-2 or CRS-2P conforming to NCDOT Standard 1020-7 as compatible with specified aggregate.
  - 2. Aggregate: Clean sand free from clay or organic material, suitable for the purpose of sand seals. Grain Size Distribution (ASTM C136-95A):

<u>Sieve Size</u>	<u>Percent Passing</u>
3/8"	100
#4	95-100
#8	85-97
#16	60-80
#30	10-20
#50	5-15
#100	0-5

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. General: Remove loose material from compacted subbase surface immediately before applying base courses of asphalt.
- B. Proof-roll prepared subgrade surface as described in Section “Earth Moving” to check for unstable areas and areas requiring additional compaction.
- C. Do not begin paving work until deficient subbase areas have been corrected and are ready to receive paving. Ensure subgrade is graded for proper drainage. Repair as needed to avoid ponding on final pavement surfaces.
- D. Cold mill surfaces of existing pavements in locations and to depths as indicated on the drawings and as follows.
  - 1. At edges of existing pavement to be overlaid: Cold mill surfaces of existing pavements to a minimum depth of 1.5-inches at longitudinal terminus of asphalt overlays for a minimum width of 10 feet (extend terminus milling width to 100-ft on public roads) and at horizontal terminus (including along gutter line of existing curbs adjacent to asphalt overlays) for a minimum width of 6 feet to allow a smooth transition from full-depth thickness of overlay course to existing pavement or gutter surface. Thoroughly remove all loose material from milled surface before placing tack coat.
  - 2. At pavement to be wedge overlaid: Cold mill surfaces of existing pavements to required depths at edges of asphalt wedge sections on public roads for widths needed to allow minimum depth thickness of wedge course. Thoroughly remove all loose material from milled surface before placing tack coat.
  - 3. At butt joint of new asphalt to existing asphalt: Cold mill surfaces of existing pavements to a minimum depth of 1.5-inches for a minimum width of 12-inches along length of new joint to allow new asphalt surface to be keyed-in to the existing pavement. Thoroughly remove all loose material from milled surface before placing tack coat.
- E. Thoroughly remove all dust and loose material from surfaces of that which the tack coat is to be applied along with adjacent surfaces before placing tack coat.
- F. Crack Filling: Remove debris from cracks or joints to a depth of 1/4 inch.
  - 1. Clean cracks and joints in existing asphalt pavement with compressed air.
  - 2. Use emulsified-asphalt slurry to seal cracks and joints less than 1/4 inch wide. Fill flush with surface of existing pavement and remove excess.
  - 3. Use hot-applied joint sealant to seal cracks and joints more than 1/4 inch wide. Fill flush with surface of existing pavement and remove excess.
- G. Apply tack coat to all contact surfaces of milled asphalt, existing asphalt to be overlaid, and surfaces abutting or projecting into hot-mixed asphalt pavement including the vertical face of adjacent concrete gutter. Distribute evenly and thoroughly at a rate of 0.04 to 0.08 gallons per sq. yd. of surface.
  - 1. Apply only as much tack coat as can be covered during the same day’s operation.
  - 2. Take necessary precautions to limit the tracking and/or accumulation of tack coat material on either existing or newly constructed pavements. Excessive accumulation of tack may require corrective measures.
  - 3. Apply tack coat material with a distributor spray bar that can be adjusted to uniformly coat the entire surface at the directed rate. Use hand hose attachments only on irregular area and areas inaccessible to the spray bar. Cover these areas uniformly and completely.
  - 4. Apply tack coat to contact surfaces of gutters, concrete pavements, manholes, vertical faces of old pavements, and all exposed transverse and longitudinal edges of each course before mixture is placed adjacent to such surfaces.

5. Cover curbs, adjacent concrete, and all other appurtenances to protect them from tracking or splattering tack coat material.
  6. Do not place any asphalt mixture until the tack coat has sufficiently cured.
- H. Allow to dry until at proper condition to receive paving.
- I. Exercise care in applying bituminous materials to avoid smearing of adjoining concrete surfaces. Remove and clean damaged surfaces.
- J. Place aggregate base courses as specified in Section “Earth Moving”.

### 3.2 PATCHING

- A. Hot-Mix Asphalt Pavement: Saw cut perimeter of patch and excavate existing pavement section to sound base. Excavate rectangular or trapezoidal patches, extending 12 inches into adjacent sound pavement, unless otherwise indicated. Cut excavation faces vertically. Remove excavated material. Recompact existing unbound-aggregate base course to form new subgrade.
- B. Tack Coat: Apply uniformly to vertical surfaces abutting or projecting into new, hot-mix asphalt paving at a rate of 0.05 to 0.15 gal./sq. yd.
1. Allow tack coat to cure undisturbed before applying hot-mix asphalt paving.
  2. Avoid smearing or staining adjoining surfaces, appurtenances, and surroundings. Remove spillages and clean affected surfaces.
- C. Patching: Partially fill excavated pavements with hot-mix asphalt base mix and, while still hot, compact. Cover asphalt base course with compacted, hot-mix surface layer finished flush with adjacent surfaces.

### 3.3 REPAIRS

- A. Patching: Saw cut perimeter of patch and excavate existing pavement section to sound base. Excavate rectangular or trapezoidal patches, extending 12 inches into adjacent sound pavement, unless otherwise indicated. Cut excavation faces vertically. Remove excavated material. Re-compact existing unbound-aggregate base course to form new subgrade. Install hot-mix asphalt pavement per the requirements of this section.
- B. Crack Filling: Remove debris from cracks or joints to a depth of 1/4 inch.
1. Clean cracks and joints in existing hot-mix asphalt pavement.
  2. Use emulsified-asphalt slurry to seal cracks and joints less than 1/4 inch wide. Fill flush with surface of existing pavement and remove excess.
  3. Use hot-applied joint sealant to seal cracks and joints more than 1/4 inch wide. Fill flush with surface of existing pavement and remove excess.

### 3.4 PLACING MIX

- A. Limitations: Do not produce or place asphalt mixtures during rainy weather, when the subgrade or base course is frozen, or when the moisture on the surface to be paved would prevent proper bond. Comply with all NCDOT weather and temperature limitations.
- B. General: Place hot-mixed asphalt mixture on prepared surface, spread, and strike off. Spread mixture at minimum temperature of 225 deg F. Place areas inaccessible to equipment by hand. Place each course to required grade, cross-section, and compacted thickness.
- C. Paver Placing: Place in strips not less than 10 feet wide, unless otherwise acceptable to Architect. After first strip has been placed and rolled, place succeeding strips and extend rolling to overlap previous strips. Complete base course for a section before placing surface course.

- D. Immediately correct surface irregularities in finish course behind paver. Remove excess material forming high spots with shovel or lute.
- E. Joints: Make joints between old and new pavements, or between successive days' work, to ensure continuous bond between adjoining work. Construct joints to have same texture, density, and smoothness as other sections of hot-mixed asphalt course. Clean contact surfaces and apply tack coat.

### 3.5 ROLLING

- A. General: Begin rolling when mixture will bear roller weight without excessive displacement.
- B. Compact mixture with hot hand tampers or vibrating plate compactors in areas inaccessible to rollers.
- C. Breakdown Rolling: Accomplish breakdown or initial rolling immediately following rolling of joints and outside edge. Check surface after breakdown rolling and repair displaced areas by loosening and filling, if required, with hot material.
- D. Second Rolling: Follow breakdown rolling as soon as possible, while mixture is hot. Continue second rolling until mixture has been evenly compacted.
- E. Finish Rolling: Perform finish rolling while mixture is still warm enough for removal of roller marks. Continue rolling until roller marks are eliminated and course has attained required density. Compact the asphalt to at least the minimum percentage of the maximum specific gravity listed below unless otherwise allowed by NCDOT.
  - 1. SF-9.5A: 90.0% of Maximum Specific Gravity
  - 2. S-9.5B/C, I-19.0B/C, B-25.0B/C: 92.0% of Maximum Specific Gravity.
- F. Patching: Remove and replace paving areas mixed with foreign materials and defective areas. Cut out such areas and fill with fresh, hot hot-mixed asphalt. Compact by rolling to specified surface density and smoothness.
- G. Protection: After final rolling, do not permit vehicular traffic on pavement until it has cooled and hardened.
- H. Erect barricades to protect paving from traffic until mixture has cooled enough not to become marked.

### 3.6 SEALCOATING OF EXISTING ASPHALT PAVEMENT

- A. Preparation: Existing pavement surfaces shall be cleaned of all dust and dirt and any loose materials. Apply asphalt material only when the surface to be treated is dry and when the atmospheric temperature is above 60-deg F in the shade. Do not apply asphalt material in fog or rain weather conditions.
- B. Apply approximately 0.35-0.40 gal. per sq.yd. of asphalt material to the existing surface immediately followed by the application of 30-35 lbs. per sq.yd. of sand aggregate. Uniformly spread the full required amount of sand in one application and correct all non-uniform areas prior to rolling. Contractor may mix asphalt emulsion and sand aggregate prior to application of sand seal surface treatment.
- C. Immediately after the sand has been uniformly spread, perform rolling with pneumatic tired rollers until the aggregate is thoroughly keyed into the liquid asphalt. Use rollers designed to prevent picking up the material.

### 3.7 TRAFFIC MARKINGS

- A. Cleaning: Sweep and clean surface to eliminate loose material and dust.

- B. Materials: Use thermoplastic marking for permanent markings on public streets and stop bars and crosswalks on private drives and parking lots. Use marking paint for parking and fire lane striping and other markings on private drives and parking lots.
- C. Apply traffic paint with mechanical equipment to produce uniform straight edges. Apply at manufacturer's recommended rates to provide minimum 12 to 15 mils dry thickness.
- D. Apply thermoplastic markings using application equipment constructed to assure continuous uniformity in the thickness and width of the thermoplastic pavement marking. Use equipment that provides multiple width settings ranging from 4 inches to 12 inches and multiple thickness settings to achieve the pavement marking thickness ranging from 0.090 inch to 0.120 inch. Comply with all applicable NCDOT standards.
- E. Remove existing markings as indicated by water blasting.

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. General: Testing of asphalt concrete mix and in-place hot-mixed asphalt courses for compliance with requirements for thickness and surface smoothness will be done by Owner's testing laboratory in accordance with Division 1 Section "Quality Control." Repair or remove and replace unacceptable paving as directed by Architect.
  - 1. Owner's Independent Testing Agency will conduct and interpret tests and state in each report whether tested work complies with or deviates from the specified requirements.
- B. Thickness: In-place compacted thickness of each layer of asphalt shall be tested in accordance with ASTM D 3549. Results shall be considered unacceptable if the compacted thickness of any one core sample is greater than 1/2-inch below the thickness specified on the drawings or if the average thickness of all core samples is less than the thickness specified on the drawings.
- C. Surface Smoothness: Test finished surface of each hot-mixed asphalt course for smoothness, using 10 feet straightedge applied parallel with and at right angles to centerline of paved area. Surfaces will not be acceptable if exceeding the following tolerances for smoothness:
  - 1. Base Course Surface: 1/4 inch.
  - 2. Wearing Course Surface: 3/16 inch.
  - 3. Crowned Surfaces: Test with crowned template centered and at right angle to crown. Maximum allowable variance from template is 1/4 inch.
- D. In-Place Density: Testing agency will take samples of uncompacted paving mixtures and compacted pavement according to ASTM D 979 or AASHTO T 168.
  - 1. Reference maximum theoretical density will be determined by averaging results from four samples of hot-mix asphalt-paving mixture delivered daily to site, prepared according to ASTM D 2041, and compacted according to job-mix specifications.
  - 2. In-place density of compacted pavement will be determined by testing core samples according to ASTM D 1188 or ASTM D 2726.
    - a. One core sample will be taken for every 1000 sq. yd. or less of installed pavement, with no fewer than 3 cores taken.
    - b. Field density of in-place compacted pavement may also be determined by nuclear method according to ASTM D 2950 and correlated with ASTM D 1188 or ASTM D 2726.
- E. Remove and replace or install additional hot-mix asphalt where test results or measurements indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.
- F. Contractor shall repair all test core holes with full depth asphalt patch.



- G. Perform ponding water tests. Repair areas of pavement that pond water.
- H. Check surface areas at intervals as directed by Architect.

END OF SECTION 32 12 16

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 32 13 13 - CONCRETE PAVING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes exterior portland cement concrete paving for the following:
  - 1. Curbs and gutters, pavement, walkways, service court, dumpster pads.
- B. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:
  - 1. Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for subgrade preparation, grading and subbase course.
  - 2. Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for general building applications of concrete.
  - 3. Division 07 Section "Sealants and Caulking" for joint fillers and sealants within concrete paving and at joints with adjacent construction.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit the following according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 01 Specification Sections.
- B. Product data for proprietary materials and items, including reinforcement and forming accessories, admixtures, joint systems, curing compounds, dry-shake finish materials, and others if requested by Architect.
- C. Design mixes for each class of concrete. Include percentage of recycled content (20% minimum). Include revised mix proportions when characteristics of materials, project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.
- D. Scaled plan of proposed construction, expansion and control joint locations in concrete pavement and concrete sidewalk. Submittal of plans for joints in curb and gutter or longitudinal sidewalk 6-feet or less in width is not required.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Concrete Standards: Comply with provisions of the following standards, except where more stringent requirements are indicated.
  - 1. American Concrete Institute (ACI) 301, "Specifications for Structural Concrete for Buildings."
  - 2. ACI 318, "Building Code Requirements for Reinforced Concrete."
  - 3. ACI 330R, "Guide for the Design and Construction of Concrete Parking Lots."
  - 4. Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute (CRSI) "Manual of Standard Practice."
- B. Concrete Manufacturer Qualifications: Manufacturer of ready-mixed concrete products complying with ASTM C 94 requirements for production facilities and equipment.
- C. Concrete Testing Service: Engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform materials evaluation tests and to design concrete mixes.
- D. All work within any NCDOT right-of-way shall conform to the requirements of the current version of the NCDOT's Policies and Procedures for Accommodating Utilities on Highway Rights of Way, the provisions and conditions of the encroachment agreement(s), and other applicable NCDOT standards and

policies. The encroachment agreement(s) are considered part of the project specifications by reference. Copies of the agreement(s) will be provided upon request from the Architect.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products specified.
  2. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.

### 2.2 FORMS

- A. Form Materials: Plywood, metal, metal-framed plywood, or other approved panel-type materials to provide full-depth, continuous, straight, smooth exposed surfaces.
1. Use flexible or curved forms for curves with a radius 100 feet or less.
- B. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.

### 2.3 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 185, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.
- B. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60; deformed.
- C. Steel Bar Mats: ASTM A 184/A 184M; with ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed bars; assembled with clips.
- D. Plain Steel Wire: ASTM A 82, as drawn.
- E. Joint Dowel Bars: Plain steel bars, ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60. Cut bars true to length with ends square and free of burrs. Electroplated zinc, tapered steel plates, ASTM A 108, ASTM B633 with corresponding pocket former are an acceptable alternative to dowel bars.
1. Unless indicated otherwise on the drawings, dowels shall be the following diameter:
    - a. 6-in slabs: 5/8-in diameter dowels.
    - b. 7-in slabs: 1-in diameter dowels.
    - c. 8-in or thicker slabs: 1-1/4-in diameter dowels.
- F. Tie Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed.
- G. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars, welded wire reinforcement, and dowels in place. Manufacture bar supports according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete of greater compressive strength than concrete, and as follows:
1. Equip wire bar supports with sand plates or horizontal runners where base material will not support chair legs.

## 2.4 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Cementitious Material: Use one of the following cementitious materials, of the same type, brand, and source throughout the Project:
  - 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, portland cement, Type I, II, or III.
    - a. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class F. Up to 30% by weight of required cement content, with 1.0-lbs Fly Ash per 1-lb of cement replaced.
    - b. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: ASTM C 989, Grade 100 or 120 with 1-lb slag per 1-lb of cement replaced.
- B. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33, Class 3S coarse aggregate, uniformly graded. Provide aggregates from a single source with documented service record data of at least 10 years' satisfactory service in similar pavement applications and service conditions using similar aggregates and cementitious materials.
  - 1. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: 1-1/2 inches nominal.
  - 2. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
- C. Water: ASTM C 94/C 94M, potable.
- D. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.
- E. Chemical Admixtures: Provide admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and to contain not more than 0.1 percent water-soluble chloride ions by mass of cementitious material.
  - 1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
  - 2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type B.
  - 3. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
  - 4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
  - 5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
  - 6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type II.

## 2.5 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. dry.
- B. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
- C. Water: Potable.
- D. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming; manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
- E. Clear Waterborne Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B.

## 2.6 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Expansion and Isolation Joint Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber.
- B. Wheel Stops: Precast, air-entrained concrete; 2500-psi minimum compressive strength; approximately 6 inches high, 9 inches wide, and 84 inches long. Provide chamfered corners and drainage slots on underside and provide holes for dowel-anchoring to substrate.
  - 1. Dowels: Galvanized steel, diameter of 3/4 inch, minimum length 10 inches.

- C. Slip Resistive Aggregate Finish: Factory-graded, packaged, rustproof, non-glazing, abrasive aggregate of fused aluminum-oxide granules or crushed emery aggregate containing not less than 50 percent aluminum oxide and not less than 25 percent ferric oxide; unaffected by freezing, moisture, and cleaning materials.
- D. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059, Acrylic or styrene butadiene.
- E. Epoxy Adhesive: ASTM C 881, two-component material suitable for dry or damp surfaces. Provide material type, grade, and class to suit requirements.

## 2.7 CONCRETE MIXTURES

- A. Prepare design mixtures, proportioned according to ACI 301, for each type and strength of normal-weight concrete determined by either laboratory trial mixes or field experience.
  - 1. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed concrete mixture designs for the trial batch method.
- B. Proportion mixtures to provide normal-weight concrete with the following properties:
  - 1. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 4,500-psi, 4000 psi, 3500 psi, or 3000 psi as indicated on the drawings.
  - 2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio at Point of Placement: As specified by NCDOT Standard Specifications for class of concrete indicated.
  - 3. Slump Limit: Maximum 3.5 inches for non-vibrated, maximum 4 inches for vibrated.
- C. Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in normal-weight concrete at point of placement having an air content as follows:
  - 1. Air Content: 5-1/2 percent plus or minus 1.5 percent for 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) nominal maximum aggregate size.
  - 2. Air Content: 6 percent plus or minus 1.5 percent for 1-inch (25-mm) nominal maximum aggregate size.
  - 3. Air Content: 6 percent plus or minus 1.5 percent for 3/4-inch (19-mm) nominal maximum aggregate size.
- D. Chemical Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Use admixtures in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.
  - 2. Use water-reducing and retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.
- E. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement according to ACI 301 requirements as follows:
  - 1. Fly Ash: 30 percent.
  - 2. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: 50 percent.
  - 3. Combined Fly Ash, and Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: 50 percent, with fly ash not exceeding 20 percent.
- F. Color Pigment: Add color pigment to concrete mixture according to manufacturer's written instructions and to result in hardened concrete color consistent with approved mockup.

## 2.8 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M and ASTM C 1116. Furnish batch certificates for each batch discharged and used in the Work.

1. When air temperature is between 85 deg F and 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.
- B. Project-Site Mixing: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M. Mix concrete materials in appropriate drum-type batch machine mixer.
  1. For concrete mixes of 1 cu. yd. or smaller, continue mixing at least 1-1/2 minutes, but not more than 5 minutes after ingredients are in mixer, before any part of batch is released.
  2. For concrete mixes larger than 1 cu. yd., increase mixing time by 15 seconds for each additional 1 cu. yd.
  3. Provide batch ticket for each batch discharged and used in the Work, indicating Project identification name and number, date, mixture type, mixing time, quantity, and amount of water added.

## 2.9 JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Type SL Silicone Sealant for Concrete and Asphalt: Single-component, low modulus, neutral-curing, self-leveling silicone sealant complying with ASTM D 5893 for Type SL.
- B. Round Backer Rod for Cold-Applied Sealants: ASTM D 5249, Type 1, of diameter and density required to control sealant depths and pavement bottom-side adhesion of sealant.

## 2.10 PAVEMENT MARKINGS

- A. Parking Lot Marking Paint: Latex, waterborne emulsion, lead and chromate free, ready mixed, complying with FS TT-P-1952, Type II, with drying time of less than 45 minutes and formulated for concrete surfaces.
  1. Color: As indicated on the drawings.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. Proof-roll prepared subbase surface to check for unstable areas and verify need for additional compaction. Do not begin paving work until such conditions have been corrected and are ready to receive paving. Ensure subgrade is graded for proper drainage. Repair as needed to avoid ponding on final pavement surfaces.
- B. Remove loose material from compacted subbase surface immediately before placing concrete.
- C. Herbicide Treatment: Apply chemical weed control agent in strict compliance with manufacturer's recommended dosages and application instructions. Apply to compacted, dry subbase.
- D. Place aggregate base courses as specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".

### 3.2 EDGE FORMS AND SCREED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Set, brace, and secure edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed guides for paving to required lines, grades, and elevations. Install forms to allow continuous progress of work and so that forms can remain in place at least 24 hours after concrete placement. Set forms to ensure positive drainage and compliance with ADA and Building Code requirements.
- B. Check completed formwork and screeds for grade and alignment to following tolerances:
  1. Top of Forms: Not more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet.
  2. Vertical Face on Longitudinal Axis: Not more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet.

- C. Clean forms after each use and coat with form release agent as required to ensure separation from concrete without damage.

### 3.3 PLACING REINFORCEMENT

- A. General: Comply with Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute's recommended practice for "Placing Reinforcing Bars" for placing and supporting reinforcement.
- B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, or other bond-reducing materials.
- C. Arrange, space, and securely tie bars and bar supports to hold reinforcement in position during concrete placement. Maintain minimum cover to reinforcement.
- D. Install welded wire fabric in lengths as long as practicable at mid depth of concrete. Lap adjoining pieces at least one full mesh and lace splices with wire. Offset laps of adjoining widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction.

### 3.4 JOINTS

- A. General: Refer to the project plans and details for additional requirements.
  - 1. Construct contraction, construction, and isolation joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete. Construct transverse joints at right angles to the centerline, unless indicated otherwise.
  - 2. When joining existing paving, place transverse joints to align with previously placed joints, unless indicated otherwise.
- C. Contraction (Control) Joints: Provide weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated below unless shown otherwise on Drawings. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to 1/4 to 1/3 of the concrete thickness, as follows:
  - 1. Tooled Joints: Form contraction joints in fresh concrete by grooving and finishing each edge of joint with a radiused jointer tool.
  - 2. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch-wide joints into hardened concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before development of random contraction cracks.
  - 3. Inserts: Form contraction joints by inserting premolded plastic, hardboard, or fiberboard strips into fresh concrete until top surface of strip is flush with paving surface. Radius each joint edge with a jointer tool. Carefully remove strips or caps of two-piece assemblies after concrete has hardened. Clean groove of loose debris.
  - 4. Spacing:
    - a. Concrete Pavement (4-in to 4.5-in thick slabs): Locate contraction joints at 10-ft max. intervals, each way in concrete pavement.
    - b. Concrete Pavement (5-in to 5.5-in thick slabs): Locate contraction joints at 12.5-ft max. intervals, each way in concrete pavement.
    - c. Concrete Pavement (6-in and greater thick slabs): Locate contraction joints at 15-ft max. intervals, each way in concrete pavement.
    - d. Sidewalk & Patios (4-in thick slabs): Locate contraction joints at 5-ft max. intervals, each way in concrete sidewalks/patios unless shown otherwise. Locate contraction joints in sidewalks less than 8-ft in width at 5-ft intervals across the walk. Locate contraction joints in sidewalks of 8-ft and greater width at 5-ft intervals across the walk and equally section the walk lengthwise with joints at 5-ft. max. intervals (example: an 8-ft wide walk shall have contraction joints at 5-ft. spacing across the walk and one joint dividing the walk lengthwise into two, equal 4-ft sections.)
    - e. Curbs or Curb & Gutter: Locate contraction joints at 10-ft max. intervals in concrete curbs or concrete curb and gutter.



5. Dowels: Some concrete pavement applications in very heavy load locations (such as fire stations) require dowels at contraction joints. Refer to the drawings for specific details for such requirements.
- C. Construction Joints: Set construction joints at side and end terminations of paving and at locations where paving operations are stopped for more than 1/2 hour, unless paving terminates at isolation joints.
  1. Continue reinforcement across construction joints unless indicated otherwise. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip paving unless indicated.
  2. Provide tie bars at sides of paving strips where indicated.
  3. Use bonding agent on existing concrete surfaces that will be joined with fresh concrete.
- D. Isolation (expansion) Joints: Form isolation joints of preformed joint filler strips abutting concrete curbs, catch basins, manholes, inlets, structures, walks, other fixed objects, and where indicated.
  1. General spacing: Locate additional expansion joints at the following intervals unless indicated otherwise on the drawings.
    - a. Pavement (greater than 4-in thick slabs): None in addition to located specified above.
    - b. Sidewalks (4-in thick slabs): 30-ft each way.
    - c. Curbs or Curb & Gutter: 90-ft spacing.
  2. Extend joint fillers full width and depth of joint 1/2 inch below finished surface where joint sealant is indicated. Place top of joint filler flush with finished concrete surface when no joint sealant is required.
  3. Furnish joint fillers in one-piece lengths for full width being placed wherever possible. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip joint filler sections together.
  4. Protect top edge of joint filler during concrete placement with a metal, plastic, or other temporary preformed cap. Remove protective cap after concrete has been placed on both sides of joint.
- E. Dowel Joints: Install dowel sleeves and dowels or dowel bar and support assemblies at joints where indicated.
  1. Use dowel sleeves or lubricate or asphalt-coat one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.
  2. Use pocket formers, installed per manufacturer recommendations, if steel plates are used in-lieu of dowels.

### 3.5 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Inspection: Before placing concrete, inspect and complete formwork installation, reinforcing steel, and items to be embedded or cast in. Notify other trades to permit installation of their work. Ensure forms are set to ensure water will not pond on final surface.
- B. Remove snow, ice, or frost from base surface and reinforcing before placing concrete. Do not place concrete on surfaces that are frozen.
- C. Moisten base to provide a uniform dampened condition at the time concrete is placed. Do not place concrete around manholes or other structures until they are at the required finish elevation and alignment.
- D. Comply with requirements and with ACI 304R for measuring, mixing, transporting, and placing concrete.
- E. Deposit and spread concrete in a continuous operation between transverse joints. Do not push or drag concrete into place or use vibrators to move concrete into place.
- F. Form and pour concrete pavement with thickened edges along all edges that could be subject to vehicle wheel loads, do not abut a building or wall, or are not doweled to the adjacent pavement or structure.

- G. Use a bonding agent at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
- H. Consolidate concrete by mechanical vibrating equipment supplemented by hand-spading, rodding, or tamping. Use equipment and procedures to consolidate concrete complying with ACI 309R.
  - 1. Consolidate concrete along face of forms and adjacent to transverse joints with an internal vibrator. Keep vibrator away from joint assemblies, reinforcement, or side forms. Use only square-faced shovels for hand-spreading and consolidation. Consolidate with care to prevent dislocating reinforcing, dowels, and joint devices.
- I. Screed paved surfaces with a straightedge and strike off. Use bull floats or darbies to form a smooth surface plane before excess moisture or bleed water appears on the surface. Do not further disturb concrete surfaces prior to beginning finishing operations.
- J. Place concrete in two operations; strike off initial pour for entire width of placement and to the required depth below finish surface. Lay welded wire fabric or fabricated bar mats immediately in final position. Place top layer of concrete, strike off, and screed.
  - 1. Remove and replace portions of bottom layer of concrete that have been placed more than 15 minutes without being covered by top layer or use bonding agent if acceptable to Architect.
- K. Curbs and Gutters: When automatic machine placement is used for curb and gutter placement, submit revised mix design and laboratory test results that meet or exceed requirements. Produce curbs and gutters to required cross section, lines, grades, finish, and jointing as specified for formed concrete. If results are not acceptable, remove and replace with formed concrete.
  - 1. Spill Gutters: Form and install curb and gutter with gutter pans that spill at ¼" per foot slope away from the curb in the following locations. Do not install curb and gutter that will pond water.
    - a. Outside of the Public Right of Way: Provide spill gutter where curb and gutter is located adjacent to pavement surfaces that slope away from curb.
    - b. Within the Public Right of Way: Slope gutter per NCDOT Standard Drawing 846.01.
- L. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with provisions of ACI 306R and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.
  - 1. When air temperature has fallen to or is expected to fall below 40 deg F (4 deg C), uniformly heat water and aggregates before mixing to obtain a concrete mixture temperature of not less than 50 deg F (10 deg C) and not more than 80 deg F (27 deg C) at point of placement.
  - 2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow.
  - 3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise accepted in mix designs.
- M. Hot-Weather Placement: Place concrete complying with ACI 305R and as specified when hot weather conditions exist.
  - 1. Cool ingredients before mixing to maintain concrete temperature at time of placement to below 90 deg F (32 deg C). Mixing water may be chilled or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
  - 2. Cover reinforcing steel with water-soaked burlap if it becomes too hot, so that steel temperature will not exceed the ambient air temperature immediately before embedding in concrete.
  - 3. Fog spray forms, reinforcing steel, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade moisture uniform without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

### 3.6 CONCRETE FINISHING

- A. Float Finish: Begin floating when bleed water sheen has disappeared and the concrete surface has stiffened sufficiently to permit operations. Float surface with power-driven floats, or by hand-floating if area is small or inaccessible to power units. Finish surfaces to true planes within a tolerance of 1/4 inch in 10 feet as determined by a 10-foot-long straightedge placed anywhere on the surface in any direction. Cut down high spots and fill low spots to ensure positive drainage and eliminate ponding. Refloat surface immediately to a uniform granular texture.
  - 1. Medium-to-Fine-Textured Broom Finish: Draw a soft bristle broom across all site concrete sidewalk and pavement surfaces perpendicular to line of traffic to provide a uniform fine line texture finish.
- B. Final Tooling: Tool edges of paving, gutters, curbs, and joints formed in fresh concrete with a jointing tool to a radius of 1/4-inch unless indicated otherwise on the drawings. Repeat tooling of edges and joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate tool marks on concrete surfaces.
- C. Step Tread Grooves: Tool three (3) parallel grooves along entire top front edge of new concrete stair treads.

### 3.7 CONCRETE PROTECTION AND CURING

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with the recommendations of ACI 306R for cold weather protection and ACI 305R for hot weather protection during curing.
- B. Evaporation Control: In hot, dry, and windy weather, protect concrete from rapid moisture loss before and during finishing operations with an evaporation-control material. Apply according to manufacturer's instructions after screeding and bull floating, but before floating.
- C. Begin curing after finishing concrete but not before free water has disappeared from concrete surface.
- D. Curing Methods: Cure concrete by moisture curing, moisture-retaining-cover curing, curing compound, or a combination of these as follows:
  - 1. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than 7 days with the following materials:
    - a. Water.
    - b. Continuous water-fog spray.
    - c. Absorptive cover, water saturated, and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with a 12-inch lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
  - 2. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.
  - 3. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's directions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within 3 hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

### 3.8 TRAFFIC MARKINGS

- A. Cleaning: Remove all oil, dust, grease, dirt, loose rust, and other foreign material to ensure adequate adhesion.

- B. Surface Preparation: Surfaces shall be cured, clean, dry and sound. Remove all peeling paint from existing surfaces. Concrete surfaces shall cure minimum 30 days. Concrete sealers or efflorescence of new concrete should be removed by extended weathering, etching or abrasive blasting.
- C. Application Conditions: 50° min., 90° maximum (air, surface, and materials) at least 5° above dew point. Relative humidity 85% maximum.
- D. Tinting: Mix colors per manufacturer's specification. Only mix like paints (do not mix latex with acrylic or interior paints with exterior paints) to achieve required colors.
- E. Apply traffic paint with mechanical equipment to produce uniform straight edges. Apply at manufacturer's recommended rates to provide minimum 12 to 15 mils dry thickness.

### 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL TESTING

- A. The Owner shall employ an independent testing and inspection agency to sample materials, perform tests, and submit test reports during concrete placement in accordance with Division 01 Section "Quality Control" and as follows:
  - 1. When total quantity of a given class of concrete is less than 50 cu. yd., Architect may waive strength testing if adequate evidence of satisfactory strength is provided.
  - 2. When strength of field-cured cylinders is less than 85 percent of companion laboratory-cured cylinders, evaluate current operations and provide corrective procedures for protecting and curing the in-place concrete.
- B. Testing Services: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172 shall be performed according to the following requirements:
  - 1. Testing Frequency: Obtain at least one composite sample for each 100 cu. yd. or fraction thereof of each concrete mixture placed each day.
  - 2. Slump: ASTM C 143/C 143M; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
  - 3. Air Content: ASTM C 231, pressure method; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
  - 4. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064/C 1064M; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below and when it is 80 deg F and above, and one test for each composite sample.
  - 5. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M; cast and laboratory cure one set of three standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
  - 6. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39/C 39M; test one specimen at seven days and two specimens at 28 days.
    - a. A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at 28 days.
- C. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi.
- D. Test results shall be reported in writing to Architect, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within one week of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.
- E. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.

- F. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect.
- G. Concrete paving will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- H. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

3.10 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove and replace concrete paving that is broken, damaged, or defective, or does not meet the requirements of this Section.
- B. Drill test cores where directed by Architect when necessary to determine magnitude of cracks or defective areas. Fill drilled core holes in satisfactory pavement areas with portland cement concrete bonded to paving with epoxy adhesive.
- C. Protect concrete from damage. Exclude traffic from paving for at least 14 days after placement. When construction traffic is permitted, maintain paving as clean as possible by removing surface stains and spillage of materials as they occur.
- D. Maintain concrete paving free of stains, discoloration, dirt, and other foreign material. Sweep concrete paving not more than 2 days prior to date scheduled for Substantial Completion inspections.
- E. Remove and replace concrete paving or curb and gutter that ponds water.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 32 40 00 - SITE FURNISHINGS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Trash receptacles.
  - 2. Flagpoles.

#### 1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each product indicated.
- B. Samples: For each type of exposed finish and for each color and texture required.
- C. Material Certificates: For the following:
  - 1. Recycled plastic.
- D. Maintenance data.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 TRASH RECEPTACLES

- A. General: 32-gallon, powder coat finished, heavy-duty steel receptacle with rain bonnet and 32-gallon liner. Color: submit standard color options for Owner selection. Receptacles to be designed for surface mounting to concrete sidewalk.
- B. Products:
  - 1. Maglin Site Furniture (model MLWR200-32), 32 gallon receptacle with rain bonnet with chain (model MDL-32) and liner (model 73M3200); Urban Accessories (model RR-55), 32 gallon receptacle with door and rain bonnet with chain and liner; or approved equal.

#### 2.2 FLAGPOLE

- C. Products: Seamless, tapered aluminum tubing, clear anodized finish, 30-ft exposed height, manufacturer's standard butt and top diameter. Provide complete with cleats, halyards, truck and collar.
- D. Installation Method: Per manufacturer.

#### 2.3 EXTERIOR TABLES

- A. Cluster seating style table with fixed seating, powdercoated steel frame, polyethylene table and seat tops, surface mounted, Maglin Site Furniture #1-800-716-5506, Model #2800 Series FAVA Cluster Seating or approved equal.
  - 1 Colors to be determined by Architect and Owner from manufacturers full range of choices.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Complete field assembly of site and street furnishings, where required.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, install site and street furnishings after landscaping and paving have been completed.
- C. Install site and street furnishings level, plumb, true, and securely positioned at locations indicated on Drawings in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions.
- D. Pipe Sleeves: Use steel pipe sleeves preset and anchored into concrete for installing posts. After posts have been inserted into sleeves, fill annular space between post and sleeve with non-shrink, nonmetallic grout or anchoring cement, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions, with top smoothed and shaped to shed water.
- E. Install flagpoles per manufacturer's instructions.

END OF SECTION



## SECTION 32 90 00 - PLANTING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:

1. Trees.
2. Shrubs.
3. Seeded lawns, sod and “no-mow” areas.
4. Topsoil and soil amendments.
5. Planter Soil
6. Fertilizers and mulches.
7. Stakes and guys.
8. Landscape edging.
9. Maintenance, guarantees and warranties.

- B. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:

1. Division 31, Section "Site Clearing" for protection of existing trees and planting, topsoil stripping and stockpiling, and site clearing.
2. Division 31, Section "Earth Moving" for excavation, filling, rough grading, and subsurface aggregate drainage and drainage backfill.
3. Division 31 Section “Erosion Controls” soil erosion and sedimentation control.

#### 1.3 INDUSTRY STANDARDS

- A. References: Some products and execution are specified in this Section by reference to published specifications or standards of the following:

The American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)  
American Association of Nurserymen (AAN)  
US Department of Agriculture (USDA)  
NC Department of Agriculture (NCDA)  
NC Composting Council (NCCC)

- B. Landscape Contractor shall mean a registered “Landscape Contractor” as defined by the NC General Statute 89D ([www.ncclcb.com](http://www.ncclcb.com)). Unless proper credentials and evidence of experience can be supplied to prove equal capabilities, only a Landscape Contractor licensed in the State of NC shall be permitted to perform the work.

1. The Landscape Contractor’s performance shall conform to the requirements in the most current edition of the NC Landscape Contractors Manual (NCLCM) as approved by the NC Board of Landscape Contractors. In the event the Landscape Contractor feels there is discrepancy between the NCLCM and the requirements of this Contract that could affect the quality of work; it is the Contractor’s responsibility to apprise the Owner and Landscape Architect of the issue.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit each item in this Article according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 01 Specification Sections.

- B. Product certificates signed by manufacturers certifying that their products comply with specified requirements.
  - 1. Manufacturer's certified analysis for standard products.
  - 2. Label data substantiating that plants, trees, shrubs, and planting materials comply with specified requirements.
- C. Certification of grass seed from seed vendor for each grass-seed mixture stating the botanical and common name and percentage by weight of each species and variety, and percentage of purity, germination, and weed seed. Include the year of production and date of packaging.
- D. Samples of each of the following:
  - 1 Sample of imported mulch (1) 1-gal. sized bag.
  - 2 Topsoil (1) 1-gal sized bag.
- E. Qualification data for firms and persons specified in the "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, at least fifteen names and address of architects and owners, total years of experience and landscape contractor's license number. If the landscape contractor hires a sub-contractor for seeding operations, the same references shall be required from them also.
- F. Material test reports from qualified independent testing agency indicating and interpreting test results relative to compliance of the following materials with requirements indicated.
  - 1. Analysis of existing topsoil and suitability as a medium for growing specified lawn. Include recommendations of amendments required to make existing topsoil suitable as a growing medium for specified lawn, if required.
  - 2. Analysis of imported topsoil, if required due to unacceptability of existing topsoil to meet acceptable growing medium requirements for lawn.
- G. Planting schedule indicating anticipated dates and locations for each type of planting.
- H. Maintenance instructions recommending procedures to be established by Owner for maintenance of landscaping during an entire year. Submit before expiration of required maintenance periods.
- I. Landscape plant schedule, per Article 1.4, A, C, indicating quantity, botanical name, common name, specified size and vendor source for each individual plant species; including any substitutions. Include all cultivars and varieties for substitutions. Provide vendor source contact information as attachment to schedule.

CLH Design and the Owner reserve the right to reject any substitution requests and may request that the landscape contractor provide additional vendor search information and/or complete documentation to prove a hardship, to confirm reason(s) for substitution or to prove that the material is not available from local and national nurseries.

Refer to section 1.6, C for information regarding the appropriate time to dig trees. It is the Contractor's responsibility to plan ahead of time rather than waiting and checking availability at the time of installation.
- J. All sod shall be from a certified sod producer and be blue tag certified in accordance with NCCIA and AOSCA.
- K. Planting invoice from nursery or supplier indicating quantity, size and species for all plantings required for Stormwater Control Measures (SCMs); including but not limited to wetlands, bio-retention ponds, wet ponds, etc.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. **Installer Qualifications:** Engage an experienced Installer who has completed landscaping work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and with a record of successful landscape establishment.
  - 1. **Installer's Field Supervision:** Require Installer to maintain an experienced full-time supervisor on the Project site during times that landscaping is in progress.
- B. **Testing Agency Qualifications:** To qualify for acceptance, an independent testing agency must demonstrate to Architect's satisfaction, based on evaluation of agency-submitted criteria conforming to ASTM E 699, that it has the experience and capability to satisfactorily conduct the testing indicated without delaying the Work.
- C. **Provide quality, size, genus, species, and variety of trees and shrubs indicated, complying with applicable requirements of ANSI Z60.1 "American Standard for Nursery Stock."**
  - 1. Contractor shall show proof of cultivar authenticity to Landscape Architect. When cultivars are specified, standard species will not be acceptable.
- D. **Topsoil Analysis:** Furnish a soil analysis made by a qualified independent soil-testing agency stating percentages of organic matter, inorganic matter (silt, clay, and sand), deleterious material, pH, and mineral and plant-nutrient content of topsoil.
  - 1. Report suitability of on-site topsoil for growth of applicable planting material. State recommended quantities of nitrogen, phosphorus, and potash nutrients and any limestone, aluminum sulfate, or other soil amendments to be added to produce a satisfactory topsoil at no additional cost to owner.
- E. **Measurements:** Measure trees and shrubs according to ANSI Z60.1 with branches and trunks or canes in their normal position. Do not prune to obtain required sizes. Take caliper measurements 6 inches (150 mm) above ground for trees up to 4-inch (100-mm) caliper size, and 12 inches (300 mm) above ground for larger sizes. Measure main body of tree or shrub for height and spread; do not measure branches or roots tip-to-tip.

When size ranges are given, 50 % of plant material shall be at the larger size.
- F. **Preinstallation Conference:** Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements of Division 01 Section "Project Meetings."

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. **Packaged Materials:** Deliver packaged materials in containers showing weight, analysis, and name of manufacturer. Protect materials from deterioration during delivery and while stored at site.
- B. **Seed:** Deliver seed in original sealed, labeled, and undamaged containers.
- C. **Trees and Shrubs:** Deliver freshly dug trees and shrubs. Do not prune before delivery, except as approved by Landscape Architect. Protect bark, branches, and root systems from sun scald, drying, sweating, whipping, and other handling and tying damage. Do not bend or bind-tie trees or shrubs in such a manner as to destroy natural shape. Provide protective covering during delivery. Do not drop trees and shrubs during delivery. For trees which cannot be dug in the summer, Contractor shall have trees pre-dug and heeled-in at the nursery where they are grown until planting. Contractor shall be responsible for ensuring that the trees have been adequately watered and cared for at the nursery prior to delivery. No substitutions will be allowed for trees which cannot be "summer-dug".
- D. **Handle balled and burlap stock by the root ball.**

- E. Deliver trees, shrubs, and ground covers after preparations for planting have been completed and install immediately. If planting is delayed more than 6 hours after delivery, set planting materials in shade, protect from weather and mechanical damage, and keep roots moist.

PLANT MATERIAL SHALL NOT BE DELIVERED TO THE SITE MORE THAN 72 HOURS BEFORE PLANTING TAKES PLACE. THE LANDSCAPE ARCHITECT RESERVES THE RIGHT TO REJECT ALL MATERIAL NOT PLANTED WITHIN THAT TIME PERIOD UNLESS THE LANDSCAPE CONTRACTOR MAKES HEELING-IN AND IRRIGATION PROVISIONS WITHIN 24 HOURS OF PLANT DELIVERY.

- 1. Set balled stock on ground and cover ball with soil, peat moss, sawdust, or other acceptable material.
- 2. Do not remove container-grown stock from containers before time of planting.
- 3. Water root systems of trees and shrubs stored on site with a fine-mist spray. Water as often as necessary to maintain root systems in a moist condition.

#### 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Utilities: Determine location of above grade and underground utilities and perform work in a manner which will avoid damage. Hand excavate, as required. Maintain grade stakes until removal is mutually agreed upon by parties concerned.
- B. Excavation: When conditions detrimental to plant growth are encountered, such as rubble fill, adverse drainage conditions, or obstructions, notify Landscape Architect before planting.

#### 1.8 COORDINATION AND SCHEDULING

- A. Coordinate installation of planting materials during normal planting seasons for each type of plant material required.

Planting Season: The normal season for planting balled and burlap material is November 15 through March 15. The normal season for planting container grown material is September 15 through April 15. After notification to proceed, planting operations shall be conducted under favorable weather conditions during the normal planting season. The Landscape Contractor shall make provisions for watering the material on an as-needed basis and as frequently as is required to ensure that plant material thrives.

The General Contractor shall coordinate the planting schedule with the Landscape Contractor to avoid any summer digging and planting.

The Landscape Architect shall be notified and must approve of any schedule changes which may require summer planting. THE CONTRACTOR SHALL NOT BE COMPENSATED FOR ADDITIONAL WATERING COSTS FOR PLANTINGS WHICH ARE INSTALLED IN THE SUMMER.

- B. Temporary Seeding: In accordance with the schedule as detailed on the drawings.
  - 1. In the event the Landscape Contractor is required to establish a temporary seeding cover due to the construction schedule, the Landscape Contractor is not relieved from providing the specified permanent seed mixture.
  - 2. The Landscape Contractor is responsible for eradicating any temporary seed cover by means of mowing, thatching and using an herbicide approved by the Owner's representative at the manufacturer's recommended rate.

#### 1.9 GRASS ESTABLISHMENT SCHEDULE

- A. Refer to the Supplementary Conditions for Final Completion dates of grassed areas of the site.
- B. Definitions:

1. Final Complete seeded or sprigged grass: A healthy, dense, weed free stand of the specified species of grass with 95% grass coverage as evaluated on a per square yard sample basis.
  2. Final Complete sodded grass: An installed and rolled healthy sod, free of weeds and dead spots.
- D. Complete Site: A complete installation of grass sod and/or stand of grass, germinated from seed or sprigs, on the complete site shall be established by the following date:
1. Complete Site (Seed, Sprig or Sod) Final Completion: *See Final Completion Date noted in contract documents.* Due to seasonal restrictions the specified date shall not be extended. Extension to the Contract Time will not change this date.

#### 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. General Warranty: The 12-month warranty specified in this Article shall not deprive the Owner of other rights the Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by the Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.
- B. 12-Month Warranty: Contractor is responsible for general maintenance and care for trees, shrubs, ground covers and ornamental grasses during 12-month warranty period, in addition to general maintenance specified in this Article. Additional maintenance during 12-month warranty period for lawn, grass and sod is not required once areas have met 95% coverage, have met final acceptance and the Owner has assumed mowing/maintenance of these areas. Contractor agrees to repair or replace plantings and accessories that fail in materials, workmanship, or growth within specified warranty period.
1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Death and unsatisfactory growth; except for defects resulting from abuse or incidents that are beyond Contractor's control.
    - b. Structural failures including plantings falling or blowing over.
  2. Warranty Periods from Date of Final Completion:
    - a. Trees, Shrubs, Ground Covers, Ornamental Grasses, and Stormwater Control Measure Plants: 12 months.
    - b. Lawn, grass and sod (herbicide and fertilizer): 12 months
  3. Include the following remedial actions as a minimum:
    - a. Immediately remove dead plants and replace unless required to plant in the succeeding planting season.
    - b. Replace plants that are more than 25 percent dead or in an unhealthy condition at end of warranty period.
    - c. A limit of one replacement of each plant will be required except for losses or replacements due to failure to comply with requirements.
    - d. Provide extended warranty for period equal to original warranty period, for replaced plant material.
  4. Areas seeded or sodded that are bare and not established at the end of the warranty period shall be re-seeded or re-sodded at no additional cost to the Owner.
  5. Contractor is responsible for applying weed control herbicide and fertilizers during warranty period.

#### 1.11 TREE AND SHRUB MAINTENANCE

- A. Maintain trees and shrubs by pruning, cultivating, watering, weeding, fertilizing, restoring planting saucers, tightening and repairing stakes and guy supports, and resetting to proper grades or vertical

position, as required to establish healthy, viable plantings. Spray as required to keep trees and shrubs free of insects and disease. The presence of significant insects or disease at the end of the 12-month warranty period shall be grounds for rejection of material. Restore or replace damaged tree wrappings. Maintain trees and shrubs until end of the 12-month warranty period.

#### 1.12 LAWN/GRASS MAINTENANCE

- A. Begin maintenance of lawns and other grassed/sodded areas immediately after each area is planted and continue until acceptable lawn is established and accepted by the Owner, but for not less than the following periods:
  - 1. Seeded Lawns/Grass and Naturalized Seed Areas: **Final Completion.**
    - a. When full maintenance period has not elapsed before end of planting/growing season, or if lawn is not fully established at that time (95% coverage as established on a per square yard sample basis), continue maintenance during next planting season until 95% coverage is established.
  - 2. Sodded Lawns/Grass: **Final Completion.**
    - a. Sodded areas will be accepted at final inspection if –
      - 1. Sodded areas are properly established.
      - 2. Sod is free of bare and dead spots and without weeds.
      - 3. Sodded areas have been mowed a minimum of twice.
- B. Maintain and establish lawns by watering, fertilizing, weeding, mowing, trimming, replanting, and other operations. Roll, regrade, and replant bare or eroded areas and re-mulch to produce a uniformly smooth lawn.
- C. Watering: Provide and maintain temporary piping, hoses, and lawn-watering equipment to convey water from sources and to keep lawns uniformly moist to a depth of 4 inches (100 mm). Following the date of project Final Completion, water shall be provided by contractor own water source (water truck, gator bag, etc.).
  - 1. Supplement natural precipitation to provide a net rate of one inch of water per week or as required to maintain lawn in a thriving condition.
  - 2. Watering shall conform to the time, volume and frequency recommendations of applicable governmental water conservation regulations.
  - 3. Irrigate at minimum rate of once per day for two full weeks following date of seeding or sod installation.
  - 4. Irrigate at minimum of once per week for remainder of maintenance period.
- D. Mow lawns as soon as there is enough top growth to cut with mower set at specified height for principal species planted. Repeat mowing as required to maintain specified height without cutting more than 40 percent of the grass height at any mowing. Do not delay mowing until grass blades bend over and become matted. Do not mow when grass is wet.
- E. Postfertilization: Apply fertilizer to lawn after first mowing and when grass is dry. Apply only from August through October.
  - 1. Use fertilizer that will provide actual nitrogen of at least 1 lb per 1000 sq. ft. (0.5 kg per 100 sq. m) of lawn area or as required to maintain lawn in a thriving condition. A minimum of 50% of the nitrogen shall be in a slow release form.

#### 1.13 STORMWATER CONTROL MEASURE, WETLAND AND DETENTION POND MAINTENANCE

- A. Begin maintenance of stormwater control measures (stormwater wetlands, detention ponds and bioretention cells) immediately after each area is planted and continue until completion of the 12-month warranty period.
- B. The area to be maintained shall include the wet and dry surfaces of the facility and perimeter areas within 15-ft of the water quality pool elevation, along with the inlet and outlet structures, embankments, emergency spillway, turf and plants.
  - 1. Maintenance shall include all items listed in the Operation & Maintenance Plan listed on the drawings. Maintenance shall include, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Keep dry and wet areas clean of trash and debris.
    - b. Repair of erosion. Re-seed any bare areas including top and slopes of embankments.
    - c. Keep inlet and outlet pipes, weirs, orifices, under-drains, and swales clear of blockages.
    - d. Remove accumulated sediment from riprap aprons.
    - e. Remove accumulated sediment forebay of wetlands and ponds if greater than 12-in of accumulation.
    - f. Prune shelf plants.
    - g. Remove invasive plants and algae.
    - h. Replace dead plants.
    - i. Replace/replenish mulch.
    - j. Other requirements of the Operation and Maintenance Plan on the drawings.
  - 2. Perform inspections at least every two months and after every storm of greater than 1.5-in of rainfall. Perform maintenance as needed.
  - 3. Final maintenance shall be performed immediately prior to the 11-month inspection.
  - 4. Perform additional maintenance and repair resulting from the 11-month inspection.
  - 5. Records of inspections and maintenance performed shall documented and supplied to the Owner at the completion of the warranty and maintenance period.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 TREE AND SHRUB MATERIAL

- A. General: Furnish nursery-grown trees and shrubs conforming to ANSI Z60.1, with healthy root systems developed by transplanting or root pruning. Provide well-shaped, fully branched, healthy, vigorous stock free of disease, insects, eggs, larvae, and defects such as knots, sun scald, injuries, abrasions, and disfigurement, including trunks which are not straight on single stem trees.
- B. The natural stem/root collar of balled and burlap materials shall be found within two inches of the nursery maintained soil line. Trees shall not be accepted which have been grown too deeply or too high in the soil profile.
- C. Grade: Provide trees and shrubs of sizes and grades conforming to ANSI Z60.1 for type of trees and shrubs required. Trees and shrubs of a larger size may be used if acceptable to Landscape Architect, with a proportionate increase in size of roots or balls.
- D. Label one tree and shrub in each plant grouping with securely attached, waterproof tag bearing legible designation of botanical and common name. Proof of cultivar shall be required on all species for which a cultivar is designated.
- E. Label at least 1 tree and 1 shrub of each variety and caliper with a securely attached, waterproof tag bearing legible designation of botanical and common name.
- F. Imported Fire Ant Control: All plants shall be accompanied by a certificate stating: "certified under all applicable state and federal quarantine." Contact Landscape Architect for inspection of all plant materials for the presence of imported fire ants. The presence of fire ants shall be cause for rejection of plant material.

## 2.2 SHADE AND FLOWERING TREES

- A. Shade Trees: Single-stem trees with straight trunk, free of basal sprouts, well-balanced crown, and intact leader, of height and caliper indicated, conforming to ANSI Z60.1 for type of trees required. Grounds for rejection may include, but not limited to: improper branch density or distribution, “v” crotches, including bark, undesirable multiple leaders, leaders that have been topped or headed back, prevalent suckering or epicormic sprouting. Trees which have evidence of unevenly distributed, girdling or suckering roots may be rejected.
  - 1. Branching Height: 1/2 of tree height.
- B. Small Trees: Small upright or spreading type, branched or pruned naturally according to species and type, and with relationship of caliper, height, and branching recommended by ANSI Z60.1, and stem form as specified in the Plant List on the drawings. Good structure shall be especially critical for trees. Grounds for rejection may include, but not limited to: improper branch density or distribution, “v” crotches, including bark, undesirable multiple leaders, leaders that have been topped or headed back, prevalent suckering or epicormic sprouting. Trees which have evidence of unevenly distributed, girdling or suckering roots may be rejected.
- C. Provide balled and burlap trees unless noted otherwise on the drawings. Plants designated “B&B” in the plant list shall be balled and burlap. They shall be nursery grown and freshly dug. They shall be dug with firm, natural balls of earth of sufficient diameter and depth to encompass the fibrous and feeding root system necessary for full recovery of the plant. Balls shall be firmly wrapped with untreated biodegradable burlap and bound with twine, cord, or wire mesh basket. Plants shall not be accepted if the ball is dry, deformed or broken before or during the planting operations.

## 2.3 DECIDUOUS SHRUBS

- A. Form and Size: Deciduous shrubs with not less than the minimum number of canes required by and measured according to ANSI Z60.1 for type, shape, and height of shrub.
- B. Provide container grown shrubs unless noted otherwise on the drawings.

## 2.4 CONIFEROUS EVERGREENS

- A. Form and Size: Specimen-quality, exceptionally heavy, tightly knit, symmetrically shaped coniferous evergreens.
- B. Provide balled and burlap coniferous evergreens.
  - 1. Container-grown coniferous evergreens will be acceptable in lieu of balled and burlap coniferous evergreens subject to meeting ANSI Z60.1 limitations for container stock and provided they are equal in quality and size to balled and burlap material.

## 2.5 BROADLEAF EVERGREENS

- A. Form and Size: Normal-quality, well-balanced, broadleaf evergreens, of type, height, spread, and shape required, conforming to ANSI Z60.1.
- B. Provide balled and burlap broadleaf evergreens.
  - 1. Container-grown broadleaf evergreens will be acceptable in lieu of balled and burlap broadleaf evergreens subject to meeting ANSI Z60.1 limitations for container stock and provided they are equal in quality and size to balled and burlap material.

## 2.6 GRASS/LAWN MATERIALS



- A. Grass Seed: Fresh, clean, dry, new-crop seed complying with the Association of Official Seed Analysts' "Rules for Testing Seeds" for purity and germination tolerances.
  - 1. Seed Mixture: Provide seed of grass species and varieties as specified in the plans and/or specifications.
  - 2. Sod shall be as indicated on the plans and detail drawings. Provide machine cut, strongly rooted, certified turf grass sod, not less than two years old, free from weeds and undesirable native grasses and stripped not more than 24 hours before laying. Sod pad size shall be uniform thickness of 5/8", plus or minus 1/4", measured at the time of cutting and excluding top growth and thatch.

## 2.7 TOPSOIL

- A. Topsoil: ASTM D 5268, pH range of 5.5 to 7, 4 percent organic material minimum, free of stones 1 inch (25 mm) or larger in any dimension, and other extraneous materials harmful to plant growth. Sticks, roots, and clay clumps shall be removed from topsoil prior to spreading.
  - 1. Topsoil Source: Reuse surface soil stripped and stockpiled on the site if adequate quantities exist. Verify suitability of surface soil to produce topsoil meeting requirements and amend when necessary. Screen topsoil of roots, plants, sods, stones greater than 1/2" diameter in general lawn areas and planting beds, clay lumps, and other extraneous materials harmful to plant growth. Screen topsoil prior to planting. If inadequate quantities of topsoil exist on-site contractor will be required to import pre-screened topsoil. A minimum depth of 3 inches shall be required.

## 2.8 SOIL AMENDMENTS

- A. Lime: ASTM C 602, Class T, agricultural limestone containing a minimum 80 percent calcium carbonate equivalent, with a minimum 99 percent passing a No. 8 (2.36 mm) sieve and a minimum 75 percent passing a No. 60 (250 micrometer) sieve.
  - 1. Provide lime in the form of dolomitic limestone.
- B. Organic Compost: Organic compost of neutral character, decomposed, stable and weed-free meeting the US Composting Council standards.
- C. Perlite: Horticultural perlite, soil amendment grade.
- D. Peat Humus: Finely divided or granular texture, with a pH range of 6 to 7.5, composed of partially decomposed moss peat (other than sphagnum), peat humus, or reed-sedge peat.
- E. Peat Humus: For acid-tolerant trees and shrubs, provide moss peat, with a pH range of 3.2 to 4.5, coarse fibrous texture, medium-divided sphagnum moss peat or reed-sedge peat.
- F. Sawdust or Ground-Bark Humus: Decomposed, nitrogen-treated, of uniform texture, free of chips, stones, sticks, soil, or toxic materials.
  - 1. When site treated, mix with at least 0.15 lb (2.4 kg) of ammonium nitrate or 0.25 lb (4 kg) of ammonium sulfate per cu. ft. (cu. m) of loose sawdust or ground bark.
- G. Manure: Well-rotted, un-leached stable or cattle manure containing not more than 25 percent by volume of straw, sawdust, or other bedding materials; free of toxic substances, stones, sticks, soil, weed seed, and material harmful to plant growth.
- H. Herbicides: EPA registered and approved, of type recommended by manufacturer.
- I. Water: Potable.

- J. Mycorrhizae: Applied to planting hole backfill or planting bed solid. Product shall be formulated for the moisture regime of the particular planting location (low, medium, high) contain a broad spectrum of mycorrhizae species, an organic bi-stimulant (2-2-2 preferred) and a water holding gel (low moisture locations only). Apply per manufacturer's recommendations.

## 2.9 FERTILIZER

- A. Bonemeal: Commercial, raw, finely ground; minimum of 4 percent nitrogen and 20 percent phosphoric acid.
- B. Superphosphate: Commercial, phosphate mixture, soluble; minimum of 20 percent available phosphoric acid.
- C. Commercial Fertilizer: Commercial-grade complete fertilizer of neutral character, consisting of fast- and slow-release nitrogen, 50 percent derived from natural organic sources of urea-form, phosphorous, and potassium in the following composition:
  - 1. Composition: Nitrogen, phosphorous, and potassium in amounts recommended in soil reports from a qualified soil-testing agency and as needed to maintain plant material and lawns in a thriving condition.
- D. Slow-Release Fertilizer: Granular fertilizer consisting of 50 percent water-insoluble nitrogen, phosphorus, and potassium in the following composition:
  - 1. Composition: Nitrogen, phosphorous, and potassium in amounts recommended in soil reports from a qualified soil-testing agency and as needed to maintain plant material and lawns in thriving condition.

## 2.10 MULCHES

- A. Organic Mulch: Organic mulch, free from deleterious materials and suitable as a top dressing of trees and shrubs, consisting of the following:
  - 1. Triple Shredded Hardwood Mulch: At least 80% hardwoods with moisture content of 30% or less, that can pass through a maximum screen size of 1 5/8". Raw material shall contain no yard waste, construction debris, or any other extraneous material.
    - a. Depth: 3" (after compaction)
    - b. Refer to plans for location.

## 2.11 EROSION-CONTROL MATERIALS

- A. Blankets: Biodegradable wood excelsior, straw, or coconut-fiber mat enclosed in a photodegradable plastic mesh. Include manufacturer's recommended steel wire staples, 6 inches (150 mm) long.
- B. Fiber Mesh: Biodegradable twisted jute or spun-coir mesh, 0.92 lb per sq. yd. (0.5 kg per sq. m) minimum, with 50 to 65 percent open area. Include manufacturer's recommended steel wire staples, 6 inches (150 mm) long.

## 2.12 STAKES AND GUYS

- A. Upright and Guy Stakes: Rough-sawn, sound, new hardwood, redwood, or pressure-preservative-treated softwood, free of knots, holes, cross grain, and other defects, 2 by 2 inches (50 by 50 mm) by length indicated, pointed at one end.
- B. Use flexible Arbor tape or equivalent 3/4" woven belt synthetic fabric strap installed per manufacturer's specifications. Color: Green.

- C. Flags: Standard surveyor's plastic flagging tape, pink, 6 inches (150 mm) long.  
NOTE: Clearly mark all guy wires with flagging for visibility, especially near pedestrian areas.

#### 2.14 LANDSCAPE EDGINGS

- A. "V" Ditch: A 4-inch deep trench by 6 inches width around all planting beds. Except where beds are adjacent to naturally wooded areas due to the possible damage to existing tree roots. Use care around existing tree roots in and around all planting beds. Do not cut existing tree roots to form the "V" ditch, work around them wherever possible.

#### 2.15 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Anti-desiccant: Water-insoluble emulsion, permeable moisture retarder, film forming, for trees and shrubs. Deliver in original, sealed, and fully labeled containers and mix according to manufacturer's instructions. Apply as per nursery's recommendations. It should be applied prior to plant transport from the nursery where it is dug, if in full leaf.

#### 2.16 TACKIFIER

- A. Non-asphaltic Tackifier: Colloidal tackifier recommended by fiber-mulch manufacturer for slurry application; nontoxic and free of plant-growth or germination inhibitors.
- B. Asphalt Emulsion: ASTM D 977, Grade SS-1; nontoxic and free of plant-growth or germination inhibitors. (9 gals/1,000 SF).

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas to receive landscaping for compliance with requirements and for conditions affecting performance of work of this Section. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Do not seed the site until the Landscape Architect has reviewed the final grades.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Lay out individual tree and shrub locations and areas for multiple plantings. Entire areas for multiple plantings shall be chiseled to a depth of 12 inches and tilled and amended to a depth of 8 inches with the same soil mixture as is required for planting backfill material. Stake locations, outline areas, and secure Landscape Architect's acceptance before the start of planting work. Make minor adjustments as may be required.

#### 3.3 PLANTING SOIL PREPARATION

- A. Before mixing, clean topsoil of roots, plants, sods, stones, clay lumps, and other extraneous materials harmful to plant growth.
- B. Mix soil amendments and fertilizers with topsoil at rates indicated. Delay mixing fertilizer if planting does not follow placing of planting soil within a few days.
- C. For tree pit or trench backfill, mix planting soil before backfilling and stockpile at site.
- D. For planting beds, mix planting soil prior to planting.
  - 1. Mix lime with dry soil prior to mixing fertilizer. Prevent lime for lawn plantings from contacting roots of acid-tolerant plants.

- E. Do not attempt soil preparation of plant installation when soils are frozen, wet, in poor tilth or otherwise unsuitable for planting.

### 3.4 LAWN PLANTING PREPARATION

- A. Limit subgrade preparation to areas that will be planted in the immediate future.
- B. Loosen subgrade to a minimum depth of 8 inches. Remove stones larger than 1/2 inch (19 mm) in any dimension and sticks, roots, rubbish, and other extraneous materials. Remove excess gravel which will inhibit lawn establishment and survival.
- C. Spread topsoil to depth required to meet thickness, grades, and elevations shown, after light rolling and natural settlement. Do not spread if planting soil or subgrade is frozen.
  - 1. Place approximately 1/2 the thickness of topsoil required. Work into top of loosened subgrade to create a transition layer and then place remainder of the topsoil.
- D. Preparation of Unchanged Grades: Where lawns are to be planted in areas unaltered or undisturbed by excavating, grading, or surface soil stripping operations, prepare soil as follows:
  - 1. Remove and dispose of existing grass, vegetation, and turf. Do not turn over into soil being prepared for lawns.
  - 2. Till surface soil to a depth indicated on soil test report, but at a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm). Apply required soil amendments and initial fertilizers and mix thoroughly into top 4 inches (100 mm) of soil. Trim high areas and fill in depressions. Till soil to a homogenous mixture of fine texture.
  - 3. Clean surface soil of roots, plants, sods, stones, clay lumps, and other extraneous materials harmful to plant growth.
  - 4. Remove waste material, including grass, vegetation, and turf, and legally dispose of it off the Owner's property.
- E. Grade lawn and grass areas to a smooth, even surface with loose, uniformly fine texture. Roll and rake, remove ridges, and fill depressions to meet finish grades. Limit fine grading to areas that can be planted in the immediate future. Remove trash, debris, stones larger than 1 inch in any dimension, and other objects that may interfere with planting or maintenance operations. Remove all glass, wire or other objects of any size which may cause injury.
- F. Moisten prepared lawn areas before planting when soil is dry. Water thoroughly and allow surface to dry before planting. Do not create muddy soil.
- G. Restore prepared areas if eroded or otherwise disturbed after fine grading and before planting.
- H. Contact Owner and Landscape Architect for review and approval of seedbed preparation and seeding methods prior to and during seeding operations.

### 3.5 EXCAVATION FOR TREES AND SHRUBS

- A. Pits and Trenches: Excavate with vertical sides and with bottom of excavation slightly raised at center to assist drainage. Loosen hard subsoil in bottom of excavation. Refer to planting details.
  - 1. Place tree in pit by lifting and carrying the tree by its ball (never lift by branches or trunk) and then lowering it into the pit. Set the tree straight, plumb and in the center of the pit with the most desirable side of the tree facing the prominent view (sidewalk, building, street, etc.).
  - 2. Determine the elevation of the root flare and ensure that it is planted at or slightly above finished grade. This may require that the tree be set higher than the grade in the nursery. If the root flare is less than 2-inches below the soil level of the root ball, plant the tree at the appropriate level above the grade, so the flare is even with the grade. If the flare is more than 2-inches at the center of the root ball above the grade, the tree shall be rejected.

- B. Obstructions: Notify Landscape Architect if unexpected rock or obstructions detrimental to trees or shrubs are encountered in excavations.
- C. Drainage: Notify Landscape Architect if subsoil conditions evidence unexpected water seepage or retention in tree or shrub pits.
- D. Fill excavations with water and allow to percolate out, before placing setting layer and positioning trees and shrubs.

### 3.6 PLANTING TREES AND SHRUBS

- A. Set balled and burlap stock plumb and in center of pit or trench with top of ball raised above adjacent finish grades as indicated.
  - 1. Place stock on setting layer of compacted planting soil.
  - 2. Remove burlap from tops of balls and partially from sides, but do not remove from under balls. Remove the top 2/3's of the wire baskets. Remove pallets, if any, before setting. Do not use planting stock if ball is cracked or broken before or during planting operation.
  - 3. Place backfill around ball in layers, tamping to settle backfill and eliminate voids and air pockets. When pit is approximately 1/2 backfilled, water thoroughly before placing remainder of backfill. Repeat watering until no more is absorbed. Water again after placing and tamping final layer of backfill.
- B. Set container-grown stock plumb and in center of pit or trench with top of ball raised above adjacent finish grades as indicated.
  - 1. Carefully remove containers so as not to damage root balls.
  - 2. The root ball shall be loosened to alleviate matted or encircling roots. Roots shall be spread out evenly in an outward, radial fashion.
  - 3. Place stock on setting layer of compacted planting soil.
  - 4. Place backfill around ball in layers, tamping to settle backfill and eliminate voids and air pockets. When pit is approximately 1/2 backfilled, water thoroughly before placing remainder of backfill. Repeat watering until no more is absorbed. Water again after placing and tamping final layer of backfill.
- C. Dish and tamp top of backfill to form a 3-inch- (75-mm-) high mound around the rim of the pit. Do not cover top of root ball with backfill.
- D. Wrap trees of 2-inch (50-mm) caliper and larger with trunk-wrap tape if the species is susceptible to sun or wind scorch. Start at base of trunk and spiral cover trunk to height of first branches. Overlap wrap, exposing half the width, and securely attach without causing girdling. Inspect tree trunks for injury, improper pruning, and insect infestation and take corrective measures required before wrapping. Do not wrap the trees at the base to discourage insect infestation.

### 3.7 TREE AND SHRUB PRUNING

- A. Prune, thin, and shape trees and shrubs as directed by Landscape Architect.
- B. Only minimal pruning should be necessary at time of planting since plant material shall conform to the specified standards for quality. All pruning performed by the Contractor shall conform to the standards of the current ANSI A300, American National Standard for tree care operations. Under no circumstances shall the Contractor cut or prune leaders or remove more than 1/3 of the top without permission of the Landscape Architect. Prune to remove dead wood, crossovers, split or broken branches. Do not shorten, trim or clip branches solely for appearance purposes unless directed to by the Landscape Architect.

### 3.8 TREE AND SHRUB GUYING AND STAKING

- A. Upright Staking and Tying: Stake trees of 2- through 5-inch (50- through 125-mm) caliper. Stake trees of less than 2-inch (50-mm) caliper only as required to prevent wind tip-out. Use a minimum of 2 stakes of length required to penetrate at least 18 inches (450 mm) below bottom of backfilled excavation and to extend at least 72 inches (1800 mm) above grade. Set vertical stakes and space to avoid penetrating balls or root masses. Support trees with 2 strands of flexible Arbor tape or equivalent ¾" woven belt synthetic fabric strap at contact points with tree trunk. Allow enough slack to avoid rigid restraint of tree. Flag heavily in recreation areas or any places where children are likely to be.

### 3.9 MULCHING

- A. Mulch backfilled surfaces of pits, trenches, planted areas, and other areas indicated.
- B. Organic Mulch: Apply the following average thickness of organic mulch and finish level with adjacent finish grades. Do not place mulch against trunks or stems. Refer to section 2.10 for additional information.

- 1. Thickness: 4 inches (mulch depth shall be 3" after compaction and settling).

NOTE: Mulch shall NOT be from on-site chipping operations (unless specifically indicated in plans and specifications).

### 3.10 SEEDING NEW LAWNS

- A. Sow seed with a spreader or a seeding machine. Do not broadcast or drop seed when wind exceeds 5 mph (8 km/h). Evenly distribute seed by sowing equal quantities in 2 directions at right angles to each other.
  - 1. Do not use wet seed or seed that is moldy or otherwise damaged in transit or storage.
- B. Sow seed at the rates required to achieve 95% coverage prior to Final completion as determined on a per square yard basis.
- C. Rake seed lightly into top 1/8 inch (3 mm) of topsoil, roll lightly, and water with fine spray. Remove surface rocks of greater than 1" diameter.
- D. Protect seeded slopes 6:1 (H:V) and steeper against erosion with erosion-control blankets installed and stapled according to manufacturer's recommendations.
- E. Protect seeded areas with slopes flatter than 6:1 against erosion by spreading straw mulch after completion of seeding operations. Spread uniformly at a minimum rate of 2 tons per acre (45 kg per 100 sq. m) to form a continuous blanket 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) loose depth over seeded areas. Spread by hand, blower, or other suitable equipment. Tack with liquid asphalt tack (9 gals/1,000 SF) or non-asphaltic tackifier.
- F. If seeding occurs in summer months, protect seeded areas against hot, dry weather or drying winds by applying peat mulch within 24 hours after completion of seeding operations. Soak and scatter uniformly to a depth of 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) thick and roll to a smooth surface.

### 3.11 HYDROSEEDING NEW LAWNS

- A. Hydroseeding: Mix specified seed, fertilizer, and fiber mulch in water, using equipment specifically designed for hydroseed application. Continue mixing until uniformly blended into homogenous slurry suitable for hydraulic application.
  - 1. Mix slurry with non-asphaltic tackifier.
  - 2. Apply slurry uniformly to all areas to be seeded in a 2-step process. Apply first slurry application at the minimum rate of 500 lb per acre (5.5 kg per 100 sq. m) dry weight but not less than the rate

required to obtain specified seed-sowing rate. Apply slurry cover coat of fiber mulch at a rate of 1000 lb per acre (11 kg per 100 sq. m).

### 3.12 RECONDITIONING LAWNS

- A. Recondition existing lawn areas damaged by Contractor's operations, including storage of materials or equipment and movement of vehicles. Also recondition lawn areas where settlement or washouts occur or where minor regrading is required.
- B. Remove sod and vegetation from diseased or unsatisfactory lawn areas; do not bury into soil. Remove topsoil containing foreign materials resulting from Contractor's operations, including oil drippings, fuel spills, stone, gravel, and other construction materials, and replace with new topsoil.
- C. Where repairable lawn remains, as determined by the Owner, mow, dethatch, core aerate, and rake heavily and deeply. Remove weeds before seeding. Where weeds are extensive, apply selective herbicides as required. Do not use pre-emergence herbicides.
- D. Remove waste and foreign materials, including weeds, soil cores, grass, vegetation, and turf, and legally dispose of it off the Owner's property.
- E. Till stripped, bare, compacted or otherwise unrepairable areas thoroughly to a depth of 8 inches.
- F. Apply required soil amendments and initial fertilizers and mix thoroughly into top 4 inches (100 mm) of soil. Provide new planting soil as required to fill low spots and meet new finish grades.
- G. Apply seed and protect with straw mulch as required for new lawns.
- H. Water newly planted areas and keep moist until new grass is established.

### 3.13 SODDING NEW LAWNS

- A. Lay sod to form solid, uniform mass with tightly fitted joints. "Butt" ends and sides of sod strips. Do not overlap sod strips. Stagger strips to offset joints in adjacent courses. Lay sod strips across slopes and perpendicular to drainage flow. Tamp or roll lightly to ensure contact with subgrade.
- B. Secure with pegs or staples at spacing recommended by the sod grower and supplier and as approved by the Landscape Architect and Owner.
- C. Water sod with fine spray immediately after planting. Water daily during first two weeks of establishment to maintain soil to depth of 4".
- D. At no time shall sodded turf be allowed to grow over 3 inches in height. Throughout this period, the target mowing height shall be 1.5 inches. At no time shall more than 50% of the turf height be removed in any three-day period by mowing or other maintenance activity.
- E. Sodded turf shall be fertilized according to the monthly application rates recommended in Carolina Lawns for the utilized grass or at reduced rate if instructed by the Landscape Architect.
- F. Weed control shall be provided as necessary to prevent the establishment or proliferation of a weed species and to achieve acceptable turf at time of initial Acceptance.
- G. Remove all poly mesh netting prior to placement and dispose of off-site.

### 3.14 INSTALLATION OF EDGINGS

- A. “V” Ditches: Clearly delineate planting beds and sign locations with a 4-inch deep by 6-inch wide ditch. Lines shall be smooth. A minimum five-foot wide lawn strip shall be provided between planting beds and paved surfaces where shown on the drawings.

### 3.15 INSTALLATION OF MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Apply anti-desiccant using power spray to provide an adequate film over trunks, branches, stems, twigs, and foliage.
  - 1. When deciduous trees or shrubs are moved in full-leaf, spray with anti-desiccant at nursery before moving and again 2 weeks after planting.

### 3.16 INSPECTION AND ACCEPTANCE

- A. When landscape work is completed, including maintenance, Architect will, upon written request, make a final inspection to determine acceptability.
- B. At time of inspection for initial Acceptance, turf shall have been freshly mowed within the last 48 hours. Turf shall be healthy, of uniform color and exhibiting signs of good growth. A minimum of 95% of the specified seeding area shall be covered in established turf possessing both stolens (i.e. runners) and rhizomes. There shall be no bare areas greater than 4 sq. ft. or 1.5 ft. in any dimension. Seedling plants not having reached tiller stage (i.e. runner producing) shall be considered bare area. Turf shall be 100% free of noxious and perennial weeds and relatively free of annual weeds.
- C. At time of inspection for initial Acceptance, sodded and sprigged turf shall have been freshly mowed within the last 48 hours. Turf shall be healthy, of uniform color and exhibiting good growth. A minimum of 100% of the specified turf area shall be covered in sod that has been installed for a minimum six weeks. Turf shall be 100% free of all weeds.
- D. When inspected landscape work does not comply with requirements, replace rejected work and continue specified maintenance until re-inspected by Architect and found to be acceptable. Remove rejected plants and materials promptly from project site.

### 3.17 CLEANUP AND PROTECTION

- A. During landscaping, keep pavements clean and work area in an orderly condition.
- B. Protect landscaping from damage due to landscape operations, operations by other contractors and trades, and trespassers. Maintain protection during installation and maintenance periods. Treat, repair, or replace damaged landscape work as directed.

### 3.18 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS

- A. Disposal: Remove surplus soil and waste material, including excess subsoil, unsuitable soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of it off the Owner's property unless an agreement is made with the Owner otherwise.

### 3.19 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner's Independent Testing Agency Services: Allow testing agency to evaluate and test each subgrade and each fill or backfill layer. Do not proceed until test results for previously completed work verify compliance with requirements.
  - 1. Pond/Wetland Imperviousness: At surface of empty pond soil surface, perform measurement of soil infiltration rate according to ASTM D 3385 at a rate of one test per each 3,000-sf of surface area.



- B. Pond and Wetland Imperviousness: Following completion of new permanent detention ponds or constructed wetlands, fill pond or wetland with water, measure and record water level every 24-hrs for a period of three days with no precipitation with time/date stamped photos. Provide water level measurements to Architect. Do not proceed with final planting until imperviousness is confirmed by Architect.

END OF SECTION 329000

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 33 10 00 – SITE WATER UTILITIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. ONWASA's Manual of Standards, Specifications and Details, latest revision.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes water systems piping for potable water service and fire protection service outside the building.
- B. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:
  - 1. Division 15 Sections for fire protection systems inside building.
  - 2. Division 15 Sections for water distribution systems inside building.
  - 3. Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavation, trenching, and backfilling.

#### 1.3 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Minimum Working Pressure Ratings: Except where otherwise indicated, the following are minimum pressure requirements for water system piping.
  - 1. Underground Piping: 150 psi.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit the following according to Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.
- B. Product data, including pressure rating, rated capacity, and settings of selected models for the following:
  - 1. Meter boxes.
  - 2. Backflow preventers.
  - 3. Valves and boxes.
  - 4. Fire hydrants.
  - 5. Fire department connections.
  - 6. Yard hydrants.
  - 7. Identification materials and devices.
  - 8. Pipe and fittings.
  - 9. Alarm devices.
  - 10. Indicator posts.
  - 11. Meter vaults and boxes.
  - 12. Backflow prevention devices and enclosures.
  - 13. Tapping sleeves and saddles.
- C. Shop drawings for precast concrete pits. Include frames and covers. Include drains when indicated.
- D. Coordination drawings showing pipe sizes and valves, meter and specialty locations and elevations, if applicable. Include details of underground structures, connections, anchors, and reaction backing. Show other piping in same trench and clearances from water system piping. Indicate interface and spatial relationship between piping and proximate structures.

- E. Record drawings at Project closeout of installed water system piping and products according to Division 1.
- F. As-Built survey of installed water system. Perform and submit as-built survey as soon as possible following installation of water main piping and appurtenances. Survey shall be submitted at least 60-days prior to needed use of water main.
- G. Test reports specified in "Field Quality Control" Article in Part 3. Submit test reports at least 60-days prior to needed use of water main.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. All materials, construction methods and testing shall comply with the requirements of the Onslow Water and Sewer Authority (ONWASA) Manual of Standards, Specifications and Details. The Contractor is required to obtain a copy of the ONWASA Manual for reference during construction and advise the Architect if conflicts with the Contract Documents are discovered. For bidding purposes, the more stringent specification shall apply.
- B. Provide listing/approval stamp, label, or other marking on equipment made to specified standards.
- C. Listing and Labeling: Provide equipment and accessories that are listed and labeled.
  - 1. The Terms "Listed" and "Labeled": As defined in "National Electrical Code," Article 100.
  - 2. Listing and Labeling Agency Qualifications: A "Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory" (NRTL) as defined in OSHA Regulation 1910.7.
- D. Product Options: Water systems specialties and accessories are based on specific types, manufacturers, and models indicated. Components by other manufacturers but having equal performance characteristics may be considered, provided deviations in dimensions, operation, and other characteristics do not change design concept or intended performance as judged by Architect and the ONWASA. The burden of proof of equality and approval by the ONWASA of products is on the Contractor. Refer to Division 1 sections.
- E. All work within any NCDOT right-of-way shall conform to the requirements of the current version of the NCDOT's Policies and Procedures for Accommodating Utilities on Highway Rights of Way, the provisions and conditions of the encroachment agreement(s), and other applicable NCDOT standards and policies. The encroachment agreement(s) are considered part of the project specifications by reference. Copies of the agreement(s) will be provided upon request from the Architect.
- F. Perform As-Built Survey of installed water system piping and products. As-built survey shall be signed and seal by a NC Professional Land Surveyor and shall include the following:
  - 1. All fire hydrant water valve sizes and locations with no less than two primary reference dimensions from permanent above grade features.
  - 2. Locations of bacteriological sampling points.
  - 3. Pipe materials and sizes.
  - 4. Other water system components such as meters, backflow preventers, etc.
- G. No connection shall be made to the existing water system unless and until the Contractor has obtained all necessary approvals from ONWASA.
- H. Connections shall be made by approved methods and in accordance with ONWASA Manual of Standards, Specifications and Details.
- I. No pipe shall be opened until the new system is complete, tested and approved in accordance with ONWASA's Manual of Standards, Specifications and Details.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Preparation for Transport: Prepare valves, including fire hydrants, for shipping as follows:
  - 1. Ensure that valves are dry and internally protected against rust and corrosion.
  - 2. Protect valves against damage to threaded ends, flange faces, and weld ends.
  - 3. Set valves in best position for handling. Set valves closed to prevent rattling.
- B. Storage: Use the following precautions for valves, including fire hydrants, during storage:
  - 1. Do not remove end protectors unless necessary for inspection; then reinstall for storage.
  - 2. Protect valves from weather. Store valves indoors and maintain temperature higher than ambient dew point temperature. Support valves off ground or pavement in watertight enclosures when outdoor storage is necessary.
- C. Handling: Use sling to handle valves and fire hydrants whose size requires handling by crane or lift. Rig valves to avoid damage to exposed valve parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.
- D. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end-caps. Maintain end-caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe-end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- E. Protect stored pipes and tubes from moisture and dirt. Elevate above grade. Do not exceed structural capacity of floor when storing inside.
- F. Protect flanges, fittings, and piping specialties from moisture and dirt.
- G. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

#### 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Perform site survey, research public utility records, and verify existing utility locations. Contact utility-locating service for area where Project is located.
- B. Verify that water system piping may be installed in compliance with original design and referenced standards.
- C. Site Information: Reports on subsurface condition investigations made during the design of the Project are available for informational purposes only; data in reports are not intended as representations or warranties of accuracy or continuity of conditions (between soil borings). Owner assumes no responsibility for interpretations or conclusions drawn from this information.

#### 1.8 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Coordinate connection to water main with utility company. Obtain all necessary permits for pavement cuts, line taps, etc. from the authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Coordinate with pipe materials, sizes, entry locations, and pressure requirements of building fire protection and building water distribution systems piping.
- C. Coordinate with other utility work.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 GENERAL

- A. All products and materials shall be in accordance with ONWASA Specifications.

#### 2.2 PIPES AND FITTINGS

- A. Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151. All ductile-iron pipe shall be listed by ANSI/NSF Standard 61 for potable water contact.
  - 1. Pressure Class: 350 for pipe 12-in in diameter or less.
  - 2. Lining: AWWA C104, cement mortar, bituminous seal coated.
  - 3. Coating: AWWA C151, bituminous coating.
  - 4. Gaskets, Glands, and Bolts and Nuts: AWWA C111.
  - 5. Push-On-Joint-Type Pipe: AWWA C111, rubber gaskets.
  - 6. Mechanical-Joint-Type Pipe: AWWA C111, rubber gaskets, ductile- or cast-iron glands, and steel bolts and nuts. MEGALUG allowed.
  - 7. Flanged Joints: AWWA C115 for above-ground installation only.
  - 8. Boltless Restrained-Joints: Boltless, push-on type, joint restraint independent of joint seal. Conform to pipe manufacturer's specifications. Required for carrier pipe installed through steel casing.
  - 9. Tied Restrained Joints: Per section 33 05 19 of ONWASA Manual.
  - 10. Fittings: Ductile iron, AWWA C110 or compact ductile iron fittings per AWWA C-153. AWWA C-110 bituminous coating, AWWA C-104 cement mortar lining.
- B. Polyvinyl Chloride Pipe (PVC) 6-in to 12-in: AWWA C-900, DR-18, Class 150. All PVC pipe shall be listed by ANSI/NSF Standard 61 for potable water contact. Above grade pipe shall be ductile iron. Fittings shall be ductile iron.
  - 1. Pressure Rating: 235-psi minimum.
  - 2. Color: Blue.
  - 3. Coating: AWWA C151, bituminous coating.
  - 4. Fittings: Ductile iron, AWWA C110 or compact ductile iron fittings per AWWA C-153. AWWA C-110 bituminous coating, AWWA C-104 cement mortar lining.
- C. Polyvinyl Chloride Pipe (PVC) 2-in to 3-in: SDR-21, iron pipe size (IPS), ASTM D-2241, ASTM D-1784. All PVC pipe shall be listed by ANSI/NSF Standard 61 for potable water contact.
  - 1. Pressure Rating: 200-psi minimum.
  - 2. Fittings: PVC fittings conforming to pipe requirements, pressure rated to exceed pipe class.
  - 3. Joints: ASTM D-3139 PVC with ASTM F-477 flexible elastomeric seals for the pipe.
- D. PE Domestic Water Service Pipe: Polyethylene pipe, AWWA C901, SDR-9, 200-psig pressure rating, CTS equivalent OD Type III, Grade 3, Class C. Compression joints, AWWA C901 molded for fabricated fittings. Above grade pipe (at backflow preventers) shall be brass.
- E. Steel Encasement Pipe: ASTM A53 or ASTM A139, 35,000-psi minimum yield strength, minimum wall thickness of 0.375-inch, full circumference welded joints in accordance with AWS D1.1 to withstand excavation forces.
  - 1. Coatings: Inside and outside, AWWA C203, ASTM 3034-12454 B and any additional requirements of NCDOT.
  - 2. Pipe Support: 14 gauge stainless steel band, 5/16-in stainless steel flange bolts, heavy duty PVC liner, polyethylene or phenolic skids.
  - 3. Size: The inside diameter of the encasement pipe shall be 12-in for a nominal inside diameter of the carrier pipe of 6-in.
  - 4. Pipe Ends: Fill and seal grout at pipe ends. Mortar conforming to Section 1040 of NCDOT Standard Specifications proportioned as specified by ONWASA.

## 2.4 VALVES

- A. Manufacturer's: M&H Company, Mueller Company or ONWASA approved equal.

- B. Nonrising Stem Gate Valves 3 Inches and Larger: AWWA C509, resilient seated; bronze stem, cast-iron or ductile-iron body and bonnet, stem nut, open left, double O-ring seal, 200-psig working pressure, mechanical joint ends. AWWA C550 interior and exterior coating.
- B. Post Indicator Valves: NRS, UL 262, FM approved, iron body and bonnet with flange for indicator post, bronze seating material, inside screw, 200-psig working pressure, mechanical joint ends.
- C. Rising Stem Gate Valves 3 Inches and Larger for installation in vaults or other enclosure: AWWA C509, resilient seated; OS&Y, bronze stem, cast-iron or ductile-iron body and bonnet, stem nut, open left, double O-ring seal, 200-psig working pressure, flanged ends.
- D. Nonrising Stem Gate Valves, 2 Inches and Smaller: MSS SP-80; body and screw bonnet of ASTM B 62 cast bronze; with Class 125 threaded ends, solid wedge, nonrising copper-silicon alloy stem, brass packing gland, polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE)-impregnated packing, and malleable-iron handwheel.
- E. Valve Boxes: Dewey Brothers EBX-TE-100 or equal having a lid interchangeable with the VEX-TE-100. Cast-iron box having top section and cover with lettering "WATER," bottom section with base of size to fit over valve and barrel approximately 5 inches in diameter, boxes shall be of the screw or telescopic type, valve box ring adjustments will not be allowed. All valve boxes outside pavement shall have a concrete valve pad or a 2'x2'x4" concrete pad poured around the valve box.
- F. Indicator Posts: UL 789, FM-approved, vertical type, cast-iron body with operating wrench, extension rod, and adjustable cast-iron barrel of length required for depth of bury of valve. Post indicator valves (PIVs) on fire protection systems shall be equipped with a supervisory switch.
- G. Tapping Sleeve and Tapping Valve: Complete assembly, including tapping sleeve, tapping valve, and bolts and nuts. Use sleeve and valve compatible with tapping machine. M&H, Mueller, or ONWASA approved equal.
  - 1. Tapping Sleeve: Stainless steel, ductile iron or cast iron dual compression type. Outlet flange per MSS SP-60.
  - 2. Valve: AWWA C500, double disc with non-rising stem. Inlet flanges per ANSI B16.1, Class 125 and MSS SP-60. Mechanical joint outlets per AWWA C111.
- H. Ball Valve: PVC, quarter turn, true union ball valves. Rated to 200-psi., Teflon ball seats. Listed by NSF for use in potable water service.

## 2.5 SERVICE SADDLES

- A. General: Double strap type, designed to hold pressures in excess of pipe working pressure. Service saddles for PVC pipe shall have Mueller Bronze Service Clamp for OD controlled IPS pipe. Bronze, electro-galvanized forged straps for cast iron pipe.

## 2.6 FIRE HYDRANTS

- A. General: Dry-barrel, break-away type, AWWA C502, cast iron body, compression type valve. Centurion by Mueller Company in accordance with ONWASA requirements.
  - 1. Bury Depth: As indicated on drawings.
  - 2. Inlet Connection: 6-in mechanical joint shoe connection
  - 3. Valve Opening: 4-1/2-inch.
  - 4. Ends: Mechanical joint.
  - 5. Bolts and Nuts: Corrosion resistant.
  - 6. Coating: AWWA C550, interior.
  - 7. Direction of Opening: Counter-clockwise.
  - 8. Operating Nut: National Standard Pentagon (1-1/2-in point to flat).
- B. Nozzles: (2) 2-1/2-in outlets and (1) 5-in Storz outlet.

1. Threads: National Standard Threads.
  2. Chains: Attach nozzle caps by separate chains.
- C. Finish: Finish: Primer and two coats of enamel, painted fire hydrant red above ground line.

## 2.7 FIRE DEPARTMENT CONNECTIONS

- A. Exposed, Sidewalk Fire Department Connections: 5-in x 4-in with 30-deg turndown, 5-in Storz connection inlet, 4-in female NPS outlet. Include cap and chain; fixed (no swivel) connection. Connect to galvanized steel elbow and FDC pipe; and round sidewalk escutcheon plate marked "AUTO SPRKLR".
- B. Wafer Check Valve: UL Listed/FM Approved, ductile iron body, bronze clapper and seat ring, 'O' ring seals, stainless spring closure, with ½" ball drip valve below seat to allow valve to drain water from FDC. Valves shall be Empire Wafer Silent Check Valve or ITT Kennedy Wafer Check Valve.
- C. Signage: Approx. 18"x10", steel, white background with min. 6" red lettering, marked FDC, mounted on a galvanized steel pole with concrete footing. Mounting height to bottom of sign: 5-ft. min.
1. Secondary sign: Similar to primary signage in size and material, copy to be determined by code official.

## 2.8 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

- A. General: As approved by the Underwriters Laboratories and/or the Foundation for Cross-Connection Control and Hydraulic Research at the University of Southern California and the ONWASA.
- B. Reduced Pressure (RP or RPZ) Backflow Preventers – ¾" thru 2": ASSE 1013, AWWA C511, CSA B64 Certified and USC Foundation for Cross Connection Control and Hydraulic Research approved with full port, resilient seated ball valve shut-off valves and ball valve test cocks. Include 2 spring loaded, center stem guided check valves and one hydraulically dependent differential relief valve.
- C. Reduced Pressure Detector Assembly (RPDA) Backflow Preventers – 2-1/2" thru 10": ASSE 1047, USC Foundation for Cross Connection Control and Hydraulic Research approved, FM approved and UL listed, with OS&Y gate valves on inlet and outlet, and strainer on inlet. Include test cocks and pressure-differential relief valve with ASME A112.1.2 air gap fitting located between 2 positive-seating check valves and test cocks, and bypass with displacement-type water meter, valves, and reduced pressure backflow preventer, for continuous-pressure application. Wilkins Model 475DA or approved equal. Gate valves on backflow preventers on fire protection systems shall be equipped with supervisory switches.

## 2.10 ANCHORAGES

- A. Clamps, Straps, and Washers: ASTM A 506, steel.
- B. Rods: ASTM A 575, steel.
- C. Rod Couplings: ASTM A 197, malleable iron.
- D. Bolts: ASTM A 307, steel.
- E. Cast-Iron Washers: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
- F. Concrete Reaction Backing: Portland cement concrete mix, 3000 psi.
1. Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I.
  2. Fine Aggregate: ASTM C 33, sand.



3. Coarse Aggregate: ASTM C 33, crushed gravel.
4. Water: Potable.

## 2.11 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Locator Tape: Brightly colored blue continuously printed with "WATER LINE" in large letters, minimum 6-in wide by 4-mils thick, with magnetic detectable conductor manufactured for direct burial service.
- B. Tracer Wire: Continuous and uninterrupted, 10-gauge insulated wire blue in color with Rhino Tri-View Markers to provide access to tracer wire.

## 2.12 WATER METERS AND METER BOXES

- A. Meters: Compound type purchased from ONWASA by Contractor. Install per ONWASA standards with ball valve and strainer upstream of meter.
- B. Meter Boxes: Sigma Corporation, Model No. MBX-1 with Touch Reader Hole, or ONWASA approved equal.

## 2.13 PROTECTIVE ENCLOSURES

- A. General: Manufactured, ASSE 1060 certified, weather-resistant enclosure designed to protect aboveground water piping equipment or specialties. Enclosures shall be sized as required for access and service of protected unit. Enclosures for compact design backflow preventors shall be no larger than 64"(L)x60"(W)x60"(H) Enclosures shall be as manufactured by Hot Box or approved equal.
  1. Housing: Reinforced-aluminum or reinforced-fiberglass construction. Factory applied paint. Color to be selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard color choices.
  2. Drain opening: Sized to alleviate a full release by the backflow preventer.
  3. Access doors with locking device.
  4. Insulation inside housing.
  5. Thermostatically controlled electric heater (for 2-1/2" or larger backflow preventers) or plug-connected self-limiting temperature control pipe heating cable (for 2" and smaller backflow preventors) and connection to power supply. Heating equipment shall be designed and furnished by the enclosure manufacturer.
  6. Concrete base slab: 4 inch thick of dimensions required to extend at least 6 inches beyond edges of housing. Provide PVC sleeves at water pipe penetrations through slab.
  7. Anchoring devices to attach housing to base with stainless steel mounting hardware.

## 2.14 ALARM DEVICES

- A. Description: UL 753, FM approved, of type and sizes to mate and match piping and equipment.
- B. Supervisory Switches: Single pole, double throw; designed to signal valve in other than fully open position.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 GENERAL

- A. All construction shall conform to the ONWASA Manual of Standards, Specifications and Details and the NCDOT as applicable in addition to the requirements stated herein.

### 3.2 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavation, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."

### 3.3 SERVICE ENTRANCE PIPING

- A. Extend water system piping and connect to water supply source and building water distribution and fire protection systems in locations and pipe sizes indicated.
  - 1. Terminate domestic water system piping at 5-feet outside building wall until building water systems are installed. Terminate piping with caps, plugs, or other fittings as required for piping material. Make connections to building water system when those systems are installed.
  - 2. Terminate fire protection water system 12-in above finish floor elevation within building with caps, plugs, or flanges as required for piping material. Coordinate exact location with fire protection contractor. Install restrained joints for buried piping within 60 inches of building. Use restrained-joint pipe and fittings, thrust blocks, anchors, tie-rods and clamps, and other supports at vertical and horizontal offsets.

### 3.4 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ductile-Iron Piping Gasketed Joints: Construct joints according to AWWA C600.
- B. Flanged Joints: Align flanges and install gaskets. Assemble joints by sequencing bolt tightening. Use lubricant on bolt threads. Flanged joints shall be used in vaults or above grade installations only.

### 3.5 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawings indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated except where deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install piping at indicated slope.
- C. Install components having pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- D. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- E. Locate groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- G. Piping Connections: Except as otherwise indicated, make piping connections as specified below within vaults or above-ground. Do not use flanges, unions or keyed couplings at underground installations.
  - 1. Above grade: Install unions, in piping 2 inches and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment having 2-inch or smaller threaded pipe connection.
  - 2. Above grade: Install flanges, in piping 2-1/2 inches and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment having flanged pipe connection.
  - 3. Below grade: Join copper pipe with flared copper type brass fittings.
  - 4. Below grade: Join ductile iron pipe with push-on joints. Join fittings with mechanical joints.
  - 5. Install dielectric fittings to connect piping of dissimilar metals.

### 3.6 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Water Main Connection: Tap water main with size and in location as indicated according to requirements of water utility.
  - 1. Install tapping sleeve and tapping valve according to manufacturer's installation instructions.
  - 2. Install tapping sleeve on pipe to be tapped. Position flanged outlet for gate valve.
  - 3. Install gate valve onto tapping sleeve. Comply with AWWA C600. Install valve with stem pointing up and with cast-iron valve box.

4. Use tapping machine compatible with valve and tapping sleeve; cut hole in main. Remove tapping machine and connect water service piping.
  5. Install service clamps and corporation stops in size, quantity, and arrangement required by utility company standards and according to manufacturer's installation instructions.
  6. Install service clamps on pipe to be tapped. Position outlet for corporation stop.
  7. Install corporation stops into service clamps. Install valve with stem pointing up and with cast-iron valve box.
  8. Install curb stop in service piping with head pointing up and with cast-iron service box.
  9. Install manifold for multiple taps in water main.
  10. Use drilling machine compatible with service clamp and corporate stop. Drill hole in main. Remove drilling machine and connect water service piping.
- B. Comply with requirements of NFPA 24 for materials and installation.
- C. Install ductile-iron pipe and ductile-iron and cast-iron fittings according to AWWA C600. Encase ductile iron piping in polyethylene to prevent contact with soil.
- D. Install copper tube and wrought-copper fittings according to CDA No. 404/0 "Copper Tube Handbook."
- E. Bury piping at minimum depth of 3 feet below finished grade and not less than 18 inches below average local frost depth.
- F. Tunneling: Install pipe under streets or other obstructions that cannot be disturbed by tunneling, jacking, or a combination of both.
- G. Shoring or bracing of pits, trenches and other excavations shall be in accordance with the requirements of NCDOT and OSHA.
- H. The subgrade at the bottom of the trench shall be shaped to secure uniform support throughout the length of the pipe. A space shall be excavated under the bell of each pipe to provide space to relieve bearing pressure on the bell and provide room to adequately make the joint.
- I. Open ends of pipe shall be plugged with a standard plug or cap at all times when pipe laying is not in progress. Trench water shall not be permitted to enter pipe.
- J. Backfill material shall be free from stones greater than 4-inches in diameter, construction material debris, frozen material, organic matter, or unstable material. Backfill materials shall be placed in loose lifts of 8-inches or less in depth. All backfill shall be compacted to not less than 95% of the standard Proctor maximum dry density except the final foot beneath pavement or slab areas where this requirement shall be increased to 98% of the standard Proctor maximum dry density.
- K. Install and test fire protection piping and appurtenances in accordance with the specific requirements of the ONWASA and applicable NFPA requirements.

### 3.7 ANCHORAGE INSTALLATION

- A. Anchorages: Install anchorages for tees, plugs and caps, bends, crosses, valves, and hydrant branches. Include anchorages for the following piping systems:
1. Gasketed-Joint, Ductile-Iron Piping: According to AWWA C600.
  2. Fire Service Piping: According to NFPA 24.
- B. Apply full coat of asphalt or other acceptable corrosion-retarding material to surfaces of installed ferrous anchorage devices.
- C. Use thrust blocking anchorages unless noted otherwise. Use mechanically restrained joint pipe and fittings only where specifically noted and approved by the ONWASA.

3.8 FIRE HYDRANT INSTALLATION

- A. Install fire hydrants as indicated on the Drawings. Orient hydrant with pumper nozzle facing adjacent pavement or fire lane.

3.9 ROUGHING-IN FOR WATER METERS

- A. Install roughing-in piping and specialties for water meter installation as indicated on the Drawings and according to ONWASA requirements.

3.10 PIT CONSTRUCTION AND INSTALLATION

- A. Construct pits of poured-in-place concrete or provide precast concrete pits of dimensions indicated, with access frame and cover, ladder, and drain. Include sleeves with waterproof mechanical sleeve seals for pipe entry and exit.
- B. Connect vault drain outlet to storm drain

3.11 BACKFLOW PREVENTER INSTALLATION

- A. Install backflow preventers of type, size, and capacity indicated. Include valves and test cocks. Install according to plumbing and health department authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Do not install bypass around backflow preventer.
- C. Do not install reduced-pressure-principle-type in pit.
- D. Support backflow preventers, valves, and piping on 3000-psi minimum, portland-cement-mix concrete piers.
- E. Contractor shall contract with qualified personnel to perform and provide certification of installed backflow prevention devices.

3.12 FIRE DEPARTMENT CONNECTION INSTALLATION

- A. Install fire department connections in locations indicated in accordance with NFPA 14 and 24.
- B. Install wafer check valve with ball drip valve at each fire department connection. Install concrete or cast iron vault set on #57 washed stone at wafer check valve.
- C. Orient nozzles of FDC toward vehicle travel way.
- D. Install signage out of pedestrian and vehicle travel ways near FDC. Front of sign to face primary vehicle travel way.

3.13 ALARM DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with NFPA 24 for devices and methods of valve supervision. Underground valves with valve box do not require supervision.
- B. Supervisory Switches: Supervise valves in open position.
  - 1. Valves: Install chain and padlock on open OS&Y gate valve.
  - 2. Post Indicators: Install padlock on wrench on indicator post.
- C. Connect alarm devices to building fire alarm system.

3.14 IDENTIFICATION INSTALLATION

- A. Install continuous plastic underground warning tape and tracer wire with above-ground markers (for access to tracer wire) during back-filling of trench for underground water piping in accordance with ONWASA Standards.

### 3.15 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. General: The Contractor shall furnish all materials, labor and equipment to perform all testing and inspections. Refer to the ONWASA Manual of Standards, Specifications and Details for complete testing and inspection requirements.
- B. Perform pressure tests on potable water systems in accordance with AWWA C600 and the specific requirements of section 33 11 00 of the ONWASA Manual of Standards, Specifications and Details.
- C. Contractor shall conduct preliminary testing prior to ensure all test will pass prior to scheduling tests to be witnessed by ONWASA and the Engineer.
- D. Notification: Notify ONWASA and engineer at least 72 hours in advance of test and have witness test.
- E. Test Pressure: Not less than 150 psi
- F. Pressure Testing:

- 1. After completion of pipeline installation, including backfill, but prior to final connection to existing system, conduct concurrent pressure and leakage tests in accordance with AWWA C600
- 2. Provide equipment required to perform leakage and pressure tests.
- 3. Conduct tests for at least two-hour duration.
- 4. Pipeline installations that vary by more than +/-5 psi at completion of the Hydrostatic Pressure Test will calculate the Allowable Leakage Test results. Pipelines that pass the Allowable Leakage Test may be approved at the discretion of the inspecting personnel.
- 5. Before applying test pressure, completely expel air from section of piping under test. Provide corporation cocks so air can be expelled as pipeline is filled with water. After air has been expelled, close corporation cocks and apply test pressure. At conclusion of tests, remove corporation cocks and plug resulting piping openings.
- 6. Slowly bring piping to test pressure and allow system to stabilize prior to conducting leakage test. Do not open or close valves at differential pressures above rated pressure.
- 7. Examine exposed piping, fittings, valves, hydrants, and joints carefully during pressure test. Repair or replace damage or defective pipe, fittings, valves, hydrants, or joints discovered, following pressure test.
- 8. No pipeline installation will be approved when leakage is greater than that determined by the following formula:

$$AL = (L/5280) \times ((D \times 10)/12)$$

*AL = allowable leakage (gal) over 2-hour test at 150-psi*

*L = length of pipe tested (ft)*

*D = nominal diameter of pipe (in)*

- 9. When leakage exceeds specified acceptable volume, locate source and make repairs. Repeat test until specified leakage requirements are met.
  - 10. Test must be witnessed by ONWASA and the Certifying Engineer. Both parties must complete and sign ONWASA's Leakage/Hydrostatic/Chlorination and Flushing Form before the water line will be approved.
- G. Private Fire Service System Flushing & Testing: Perform flushing and all tests as required by NFPA 14 and NFPA 24.

1. Complete and submit "Contractor's Material and Test Certificate for Underground Piping" (NFPA 14) upon satisfactory completion of system flushing and all tests.

H. Chlorination:

1. Verify piping system has been cleaned, inspected, and pressure tested.
2. Perform scheduling and disinfecting activity with start-up, water pressure testing, adjusting and balancing, and demonstration procedures, including coordination with related systems. Notify Engineer and ONWASA at least 72 hours in advance of test and have witness test.
3. Perform disinfection of water distribution system after each line between valves has been tested and all necessary repairs made.
4. Disinfect pipeline installation in accordance with AWWA C651. Use of liquid chlorine is not permitted.
5. Water containing not less than 50 parts per million and not more than 100 parts per million of chlorine shall be placed in the line at a slow rate and in such proportion that the required chlorine content is evenly distributed in the main.
6. Maintain disinfectant in system for 24 hours minimum, with not less than 10 parts per million residual after 24 hours.
7. Upon completion of retention period required for disinfection, the heavily chlorinated water shall be neutralized by chemical application before discharge from the main. A dechlorinating device is required. Chlorine concentration of the water discharged from the main shall be no higher than 0.1ppm in excess of the residual in the existing system or is acceptable for domestic use
8. Flush, circulate, and clean until required cleanliness (purity) is achieved; use municipal domestic water. The minimum flushing rate for pipes shall be as follows:

2"	30 gpm
4"	100 gpm
6"	200 gpm
8"	400 gpm

9. No discharge of heavily chlorinated water into a storm sewer, stream or water body will be permitted. All discharge of chlorinated water shall be done legally. The disposal of chlorinated water is the responsibility of the Contractor and shall be in such a manner as to cause no adverse environmental effects such as fish kills or erosion and in compliance with all Federal, State and Local requirements.
10. Replace permanent system devices removed for disinfection.
11. After final flushing and before pipeline is connected to existing system or placed in service, employ an approved independent testing laboratory to sample, test, and certify water quality suitable for human consumption. Provide testing results to Engineer and ONWASA.

I. Backflow Prevention Device Certification:

1. All new backflow prevention devices shall be tested and certified by an inspector approved by ONWASA prior to operation of the water system. Performance, coordination and submittal of documentation of the testing and certification shall be the responsibility of the Contractor.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 33 30 00 – SITE SANITARY SEWER UTILITIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including the General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. ONWASA's Manual of Standards, Specifications and Details, latest revision.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes sewerage systems outside the building.
- B. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section.
  - 1. Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for cast-in-place concrete structures.
  - 2. Division 33 Section "Sewer Pump Station" for sewer pumps and appurtenances.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Sewerage Piping: System of sewer pipe, fittings, and appurtenances for gravity and pressure flow of sanitary sewage.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Gravity-Flow, Nonpressure-Piping Pressure Ratings: At least equal to system test pressure.
- B. Force Main Piping Pressure Ratings: At least 235-psig.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit each item in this Article according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.
- B. Product data for the following:
  - 1. Cleanouts.
  - 2. Pipe and fittings.
  - 3. Couplings.
  - 4. Manholes and Manhole Appurtenances.
- D. Record drawings at Project closeout of installed water system piping and products according to Division 1.
- E. As-Built survey of installed sanitary sewer mains, manholes and pump station. Perform and submit as-built survey as soon as possible following installation of manholes and sewer main piping. Survey shall be submitted at least 60-days prior to needed use of sewer main.
- F. Inspection and test reports specified in the "Field Quality Control" Article.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. All materials, construction methods and testing shall comply with the requirements of the Onslow Water and Sewer Authority (ONWASA) Manual of Standards, Specifications and Details. The Contractor is required to obtain a copy of the ONWASA Manual for reference during construction and advise the

Architect if conflicts with the Contract Documents are discovered. For bidding purposes, the more stringent specification shall apply.

- B. Environmental Agency Compliance: Comply with regulations pertaining to sanitary sewerage systems.
- C. Product Options: Drawings indicate sizes, profiles, connections, and dimensional requirements of system components and are based on specific manufacturer types indicated. Other manufacturers' products with equal performance characteristics may be considered. Refer to Division 1 Section "Product Substitutions."
- D. All work within any NCDOT right-of-way shall conform to the requirements of the current version of the NCDOT's Policies and Procedures for Accommodating Utilities on Highway Rights of Way, the provisions and conditions of the encroachment agreement(s), and other applicable NCDOT standards and policies. The encroachment agreement(s) are considered part of the project specifications by reference. Copies of the agreement(s) will be provided upon request from the Architect.
- E. Perform As-Built Survey of installed sewer system piping and products. As-built survey shall be signed and seal by a NC Professional Land Surveyor and shall include the following:
  - 1. All manhole invert and rim elevations and horizontal locations with no less than two primary reference dimensions from permanent above grade features.
  - 2. All cleanout and valve locations with no less than two primary reference dimensions from permanent above grade features.
  - 3. Pipe materials, sizes, lengths, and slopes.
  - 4. Pump station.
  - 5. Other sewer system components such as grease traps, etc.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store plastic structures in direct sunlight.
- B. Do not store plastic pipe or fittings in direct sunlight.
- C. Protect pipe, pipe fittings, and seals from dirt and damage.
- D. Handle precast concrete manholes and other structures according to manufacturer's rigging instructions.

#### 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Site Information: Perform site survey, research public utility records, and verify existing utility locations.
- B. Locate existing structures and piping to be closed and abandoned.
- C. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt existing utilities serving facilities occupied by the Owner or others except when permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide acceptable temporary utility services.
  - 1. Notify Architect not less than 48 hours in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
  - 2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without receiving Architect's written permission.

#### 1.9 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Coordinate sanitary sewerage system connections to utility company's sanitary sewer. Obtain all necessary permits for pavement cuts, line taps, etc. from ONWASA.
- B. Coordinate force main connection to existing force main with Owner.
- C. Coordinate with interior building drainage systems.



- D. Coordinate with other utility work.

## PART - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL

- A. All products and materials shall be in accordance with ONWASA Specifications.

### 2.2 PIPES AND FITTINGS

- A. Ductile Iron Pipe (DIP) and Fittings: AWWA C151. Bituminous outside coating per AWWA C153.
  - 1. Pressure Class: 350.
  - 2. Fittings: Ductile Iron, AWWA C110. Compact fittings, ductile iron, AWWA C153. AWWA C110 bituminous coating.
  - 3. Joints:
    - a. Mechanical Joints: AWWA C111.
    - b. Push-on Joints: AWWA C111
    - c. Flanged Joints: AWWA C115 (above-ground installation only).
    - d. Boltless Restrained Joints: Boltless, push-on type, joint restraint independent of joint seal. Conform to pipe manufacturer's specifications. Required for carrier pipe installation through steel casing.
    - e. Tied Restrained Joints: Per ONWASA Standard Specification Section 35-05-19.
  - 4. Pipe and Fitting Interior Lining: One of the following. Refer to ONWASA Standard Specifications for additional information and requirements.
    - a. Amine-cured novalac epoxy containing at least 20% by volume ceramic quartz pigment. Protecto 401 or approved equal.
    - b. Modified polyamine ceramic epoxy. Tnemec Series 431 Perma-Shield PL or approved equal.
- B. Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Gravity Sewer Pipe and Fittings: SDR-35, ASTM D-1784 and ASTM D-3034.
  - 1. Fittings: Ductile iron, AWWA C110. Ductile iron compact fittings, AWWA C153. Transition gasket required.
  - 2. Joints: ASTM D3212 PVC with ASTM F477 flexible elastomeric seals. Solvent-cement couplings are not permitted.
- C. Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Gravity Service Lateral Pipe and Fittings (4-in to 6-in only): Sch-40 PVC, ASTM D-2466.
  - 1. Fittings: Sch-40 PVC, ASTM D-2466.
  - 2. Joints: Solvent-weld, ASTM D-2564. Primer shall be manufactured for thermoplastic piping system.
- D. Steel Encasement Pipe: ASTM A53 or ASTM A139, 35,000-psi minimum yield strength, minimum wall thickness of 0.375-inch, full circumference welded joints in accordance with AWS D1.1 to withstand excavation forces.
  - 1. Coatings: Inside and outside, AWWA C203, ASTM 3034-12454 B and any additional requirements of NCDOT.
  - 2. Pipe Support: 14 gauge stainless steel band, 5/16-in stainless steel flange bolts, heavy duty PVC liner, polyethylene or phenolic skids.
  - 3. Size: The inside diameter of the encasement pipe shall be 12-in for a nominal inside diameter of the carrier pipe of 6-in.

4. Pipe Ends: Fill and seal grout at pipe ends. Mortar conforming to Section 1040 of NCDOT Standard Specifications proportioned as specified by ONWASA.

## 2.3 SPECIAL PIPE COUPLINGS AND FITTINGS

- A. Sleeve-Type Pipe Couplings: Rubber or elastomeric sleeve and band assembly fabricated to match outside diameters of pipes to be joined, for nonpressure joints.
  1. Sleeves for Cast-Iron Soil Pipe: ASTM C 564, rubber.
  3. Sleeves for Plastic Pipe: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal.
  4. Sleeves for Dissimilar Pipes: Compatible with pipe materials being joined.
  5. Bands: Stainless steel, at least one at each pipe insert.

## 2.4 CLEANOUTS

- A. Description: ASME A112.36.2M, round, cast-iron housing with clamping device and round, secured, scoriated, cast-iron cover. Include cast-iron ferrule with inside calk or spigot connection and countersunk, tapered-thread, brass closure plug. Use units with top-loading classifications according to the following applications:
  1. Light Duty: In earth or grass, foot-traffic areas.
  2. Medium Duty: In paved, foot-traffic areas.
  3. Heavy Duty: In vehicle-traffic service areas.
  4. Extra Heavy Duty: In roads.
- B. Sewer Pipe Fitting and Riser to Cleanout: ASTM A 74, service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.

## 2.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Locator Tape: Brightly colored green continuously printed with "SANITARY SEWER" in large letters, minimum 6-in wide by 4-mils thick, with 12-ga copper tracer wire manufactured for direct burial service.
- B. Above-ground Markers: Rhino Tri-View Markers (model no. TVF66GB). ONWASA standard decals shall be placed on all three sides.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 GENERAL

- A. All construction shall conform to the ONWASA Manual of Standards, Specifications and Details and NCDOT as applicable in addition to the requirements state herein.

### 3.2 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavating, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Arrange for installation of green warning tapes directly over piping and at outside edges of underground structures.
  1. Use detectable warning tape over nonferrous piping and over edges of underground structures. Locate 6 inches to 24 inches below finished grade, directly over piping.

### 3.4 SEWERAGE PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. General: Include watertight joints.

- B. Refer to Part 2 of this Section for detailed specifications for pipe and fitting products. Refer to the drawings type of pipe to be installed.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawings (plans and details) indicate the general location and arrangement of underground sewerage piping. Location and arrangement of piping layout take into account many design considerations. Install piping as indicated, to extent practical.
- B. Install all sewer line (pressure and gravity) on 6-in bedding of #57 washed stone. Backfill to the pipe centerline with #57 washed stone.
- C. Install piping beginning at low point of systems, true to grades and alignment indicated with unbroken continuity of invert. Place bell ends of piping facing upstream. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings according to manufacturer's recommendations for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab or drag in line and pull past each joint as it is completed.
- C. Use proper size increasers, reducers, and couplings, where different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings are connected. Reduction of the size of piping in the direction of flow is prohibited.
- D. Install gravity-flow-systems piping at constant slope between points and elevations indicated. Install straight piping runs at constant slope, not less than that specified, where slope is not indicated.
- E. Extend gravity sewerage piping and connect to building's sanitary drains, of sizes and in locations indicated. Terminate piping as indicated.
- F. Install gravity sewerage piping pitched down in direction of flow, at minimum and cover as indicated.
- G. Tunneling: Install pipe under streets or other obstructions that cannot be disturbed, by tunneling, jacking, or a combination of both.
- H. Connect new sewers to structures through stubs, wall castings, wall sleeves, etc. per ONWASA Specifications. All openings into existing structures shall be core-drilled.

### 3.6 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION AND INSTALLATION

- A. General: Join and install pipe and fittings according to the following.
- B. Hub-and-Spigot, Cast-Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings: With rubber compression gaskets according to CISPI "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Volume I. Use gaskets that match class of pipe and fittings.
- C. Ductile-Iron Pipe with Ductile-Iron or Cast-Iron Fittings: With push-on-joint, rubber gaskets according to AWWA C600.
- D. Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Plastic Pipe and Fittings: As follows:
  - 1. Join solvent-cement-joint pipe and fittings with solvent cement according to ASTM D 2855 and ASTM F 402.
  - 2. Join pipe and gasketed fittings with elastomeric seals according to ASTM D 2321.
  - 3. Join profile sewer pipe and ribbed drain pipe and gasketed fittings with elastomeric seals according to ASTM D 2321 and manufacturer's written instruction.
  - 4. Install according to ASTM D 2321.

### 3.7 CLEANOUT INSTALLATION

- A. Install cleanouts and riser extension from sewer pipe to cleanout at grade. Use cast-iron soil pipe fittings in sewer pipes at branches for cleanouts and cast-iron soil pipe for riser extensions to cleanouts. Install piping so cleanouts open in direction of flow in sewer pipe.

- B. Set cleanout frames and covers in earth in a cast-in-place concrete block, 18 by 18 by 12 inches deep. Set with tops 1 inch above surrounding earth grade. Precast cleanout collars shall not be used.
- C. Set cleanout frames and covers in concrete paving with tops flush with surface of paving.

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL – GRAVITY SEWER

- A. Sewer pipe, manholes and wet wells shall be tested in accordance with Section 33-31-13.8 and Section 33-01-30 and video inspected in accordance with Section 33-01-30.16 of the ONWASA Manual of Standards, Specifications and Details.
- B. Clear interior of piping and structures of dirt and superfluous material as the work progresses. Maintain swab or drag in piping and pull past each joint as it is completed.
  - 1. In large, accessible piping, brushes and brooms may be used for cleaning.
  - 2. Place plug in end of incomplete piping at end of day and whenever work stops.
  - 3. Flush piping between manholes and other structures, if required by ONWASA, to remove collected debris.
- C. Inspect interior of piping to determine whether line displacement or other damage has occurred. Inspect after approximately 24 inches of backfill is in place, and again at completion of the Project.
  - 1. Submit separate reports for each system inspection.
  - 2. Defects requiring correction include the following:
    - a. Alignment: Less than full diameter of inside of pipe is visible between structures.
    - b. Deflection: The maximum allowable deflection after installation shall be less than 5 percent. Deflection shall be tested with a ball or mandrel of a size not less than 95 percent of piping inside diameter.
    - c. Crushed, broken, cracked, or otherwise damaged piping.
    - d. Infiltration: Water leakage into piping.
    - e. Exfiltration: Water leakage from or around piping.
    - f. Failure of any ONWASA specified tests.
  - 3. Replace defective piping using new materials and repeat inspections until defects are within allowances specified.
  - 4. Reinspect and repeat procedure until results are satisfactory.
- D. Contractor shall conduct preliminary testing prior to ensure all test will pass prior to scheduling tests to be witnessed by ONWASA and the Engineer.
- E. Perform Deflection Test (mandrel method) in accordance with ONWASA Specifications on all new sewer lines 8-in in diameter and larger.
- F. Clean entire installed gravity sewer system (including laterals) in accordance with ONWASA Specifications prior to television inspection.
- G. Perform television inspection and digital audio visual recording of all sanitary sewer mains and service laterals in accordance with ONWASA specifications. Furnish television inspection reports to ONWASA and the engineer.
- H. Perform Leakage Testing of entire sewer system (including pipes, manholes and laterals) in accordance with ONWASA Specifications.
- I. Test new piping systems and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired for leaks and defects.
  - 1. Do not enclose, cover, or put into service before inspection and approval.

2. Test completed piping systems according to ONWASA Specifications.
3. Schedule tests, and their inspections by authorities having jurisdiction, with at least 72 hours' advance notice.
4. Submit separate reports for each test.
5. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 33 32 00 – SEWER PUMP STATION & FORCE MAIN

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including the General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Submersible grinder wastewater pumps.
  - 2. Fiberglass wet well and appurtenances.
  - 3. Pump controls.
  - 4. Auto-dialer.
  - 5. Sewer force main piping.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit each item in this Article according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.
  - 1. Product data for the following:
    - a. Pumps (including performance curves).
    - b. Lift-out rail system.
    - c. Discharge pipe and fittings.
    - d. Control panel and alarm.
    - e. Wet well, tanks and vaults.
    - f. Hatches and castings.
    - g. Float switches.
    - h. Valves.
    - i. Other appurtenances.
    - j. Control panel.
    - k. Alarms.
    - l. Elapsed time meter.
    - m. Pipes

- C. Inspection and test reports specified in the “Field Quality Control” Article.

- D. Two complete manufacturer’s operations and maintenance manuals with schematics, warranties, etc. for all operating systems.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Pumps and Motors: Pumps and motors are to be engineered, manufactured and assembled in the United States under a written quality assurance program. The written quality assurance program shall have been in effect for at least five years and shall include a written record of periodic internal and external audits to confirm compliance with UL Quality Assurance specifications. Pumps and motors shall be manufactured by ISO-9001 certified companies only.
- B. Pump and Motor Warranty: All components shall be warranted by the installer against defects in material and workmanship for a period of one year after final acceptance. Such warranty shall include replacement of defective items and service costs of qualified labor to make repairs.

- C. All products and construction associated with the pump station shall be warrantied against defects in material and workmanship for at least 1-year from the date of final acceptance.
- D. Listing and Labeling: Provide equipment and accessories that are listed and labeled.
  - 1. The Terms "Listed" and "Labeled": As defined in "National Electrical Code," Article 100.
  - 2. Listing and Labeling Agency Qualifications: A "Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory" (NRTL) as defined in OSHA Regulation 1910.7.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect all materials. Do not store plastic structures in direct sunlight.
- B. Protect pumps and all appurtenances from dirt and damage.

#### 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Site Information: Perform site survey, research public utility records, and verify existing utility locations.

### PART 2 – PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PUMP PERFORMANCE CRITERIA

- A. Heavy duty submersible grinder pumps shall be capable of handling raw unscreened sewage and other similar solids-laden fluids without clogging. The pump shall be driven by a Premium Efficiency *single-phase* motor, providing the highest levels of operational reliability and energy efficiency.
- B. Pumps shall be Sulzer (ABS) Model Piranha SW20/2W Submersible Grinder wastewater pumps or approved equal. The pumps shall be capable of delivering 30 U.S. GPM at a total dynamic head of 75 feet. Shut off head shall be 100 feet (minimum). The motor shall be an integral part of the pump unit. The motor shall be rated as indicated on the drawings. Pumps shall be intended for wet pit installation and shall be supplied with a discharge base and elbow assembly to support the pump. Each pump unit shall be fitted with a guide rail base assembly, suitably long for lifting the pump to the top of the wetwell. The working load rating of the lifting system shall be a minimum of 50% greater than the pump weight. Each pump motor shall be equipped with adequate length of power and control cable sized in accordance with NEC and CSA standards.

#### 2.2 PUMP CONSTRUCTION

- A. General: Major pump components shall be of gray cast iron (ASTM A-48, Class 35B) with smooth surfaces devoid of porosity or other irregularities. All exposed fasteners shall be stainless steel (AISI type 316) construction. All metal surfaces coming into contact with the pumped media (other than the stainless steel components) shall be protected by a factory applied spray coating of zinc phosphate primer followed by a high solids two part epoxy paint finish on the exterior of the pump. The pump shall be equipped with an open lifting hoop suitable for attachment of standard chain fittings, or for hooking from the wet well surface. The hoop shall be stainless steel (AISI 316), and shall be rated to lift a minimum of four times the pump weight.
- B. Seals: Sealing design for the pump/motor assembly shall incorporate machined surfaces fitted with Nitrile (Buna-N) rubber O-rings. Sealing will be the result of controlled compression of rubber O-rings in two planes of the sealing interface. Housing interfaces shall meet with metal-to-metal contact between machined surfaces, and sealing shall be accomplished without requiring a specific torque on the securing fasteners. Rectangular cross sectioned gaskets requiring specific torque limits to achieve compression shall not be considered equal. No secondary sealing compounds shall be required or used.
- C. Grinder Mechanism: The grinder mechanism shall consist of two circular, hardened cutter elements, one rotating and one stationary. The cutter material shall be similar to an AISI 440C stainless steel with the addition of cobalt, vanadium, and molybdenum for superior abrasion resistance and a hardness of



Rockwell C 58-62. The rotating element shall be secured to the end of the pump shaft directly below the impeller by a stainless steel bolt which is mechanically prevented from loosening by a positively engaged ratcheting washer assembly. It shall be keyed to the impeller so that it rotates with the motor. The head of the securing bolt shall be effectively recessed within the cutter element bore to prevent disruption of the flow stream and catching of solid material in the wastewater.

1. The stationary element shall be secured to the Self Cleaning Wear Plate and positioned so that it is concentric to and aligned with the rotating element. Both elements shall incorporate a sinusoidal wave pattern at the grinding interface to create a shearing and cutting action between the elements as the rotating cutter spins.
  2. The rotating cutter shall incorporate an integrated solids deflector to prevent items such as plastic bags from covering the grinder assembly and starving the pump.
  3. All wastewater being pumped by the impeller shall be drawn through the grinder mechanism by the natural suction of the pump impeller and reduced to a particle size approximately 1/8 inch. The grinder mechanism shall not require routine adjustments throughout the life of the grinder assembly.
- D. Impeller: The impeller shall be a semi open multi vane design with a solids passage size sufficient to prevent clogging on the wastewater material that has passed through the integrated grinder assembly. The impeller material shall be gray cast iron, EN-GJL-250 (ASTM A-48, Class 35B). The impeller shall have a slip fit onto the motor shaft and drive key, and shall be securely fastened to the shaft by a stainless steel bolt which also holds the rotating cutter element. The impeller shall be dynamically balanced to the ISO 10816 standard to provide smooth vibration free operation.
- E. Self Cleaning Wear Plate: Wear plate shall be constructed from gray cast iron (ASTM A-48, Class 35B). The wear plate shall be designed to hold and secure the stationary cutter firmly in place, concentric to the rotating cutter. The impeller side of the wear plate shall incorporate an outwardly spiraling V-shaped groove to shred and force stringy solids outward from the impeller and through the pump discharge. The wear plate shall be mounted to the volute with four stainless steel securing screws and four stainless steel adjusting screws to permit close tolerance adjustment between the wear plate and impeller for maximum pump efficiency. Adjustment to allow for wear and to restore peak pumping performance shall be easily accomplished in the field utilizing standard tools, and without requiring disassembly of the pump. The use of fixed or non-adjustable wear plates or rings, or systems that require disassembly of the pump or shimming of the impeller to facilitate adjustment shall not be considered equal.
- F. Pump Volute: The pump volute shall be single piece gray cast iron (ASTM A-48, Class 35B) non-concentric design with centerline discharge. Passages shall be smooth and large enough to pass any solids which may enter the impeller. Discharge size shall be 1.25 inch. The discharge flange design shall permit attachment to the guide rail system, and shall also accept 2" ANSI class 125 flanged fittings. The minimum working pressure of the volute and pump assembly shall be 10 bar (145 psi).

## 2.3 PUMP MOTOR

- A. General: The motor shall meet efficiency standards in accordance with IEC 60034-30, level IE3. Motor rating tests shall be conducted in accordance with IEC 60034-2-1 requirements and shall be certified accurate and correct by a third party certifying agency. A certificate shall be available upon request.
1. The motor shall be housed in a water tight gray cast iron, EN-GJL-250 (ASTM A-48, Class 35B) enclosure capable of continuous submerged operation underwater to a depth of 20 meters (65 feet), and shall have an IP68 protection rating. The motor shall be of the squirrel-cage induction design, NEMA type B, Premium Efficiency. The copper stator windings shall be insulated with moisture resistant Class H insulation materials, rated for 180°C (356°F). The stator shall be press fitted into the stator housing. The use of bolts, pins or other fastening devices requiring penetration of the stator housing is unacceptable. The rotor bars and short circuit rings shall be made of cast aluminum.
  2. The motor shall be designed for continuous duty. The maximum continuous temperature of the pumped liquid shall be 40°C (104°F), and intermittently up to 50°C (122°F). The motor shall be capable of handling up to 15 evenly spaced starts per hour without overheating. The service factor

- (as defined by the NEMA MG1 standard) shall be a minimum of 1.2. The motor shall have a voltage tolerance of +/- 10% from nominal, and a phase to phase voltage imbalance tolerance of 1%. The motor shall be FM and CSA approved for use in NEC Class I, Division I, Groups C & D hazardous locations. The surface temperature rating shall be T3C.
3. The motor shall be capable of operating completely submerged, at full rated power continuously without the need for de-rating or reduced duty cycle. It shall be self cooling via the process fluid surrounding the motor. The motor shall have a NEMA Class A temperature rise
- B. Thermal Protection: Each phase of the motor shall contain a normally closed bi-metallic temperature monitor switch imbedded in the motor windings. These thermal switches shall be connected in series and set to open at 140°C +/- 5°C (284°F). They shall be connected to the control panel, and used in conjunction with, and supplemental to, external motor overload protection.
  - C. Mechanical Seals: Each pump shall be equipped with a tandem mechanical shaft seal system consisting of two totally independent seal assemblies. The seals shall operate in a lubricant reservoir that hydro-dynamically lubricates the lapped seal faces at a constant rate. The lower, primary seal unit, located between the pump and the lubricant chamber, shall contain one stationary industrial duty silicon-carbide seal ring and one rotating industrial duty silicon-carbide seal ring. The stationary ring of the primary seal shall be installed in a seal holding plate of gray cast iron EN-GJL-250 (ASTM A-48, Class 35B). The seal holding plate shall be equipped with swirl disruption ribs to prevent abrasive material from prematurely wearing the seal plate. The upper, secondary seal unit, located between the lubricant chamber and motor housing, shall contain one stationary industrial duty silicon-carbide seal ring, and one rotating one rotating industrial duty silicon-carbide seal ring. Each seal interface shall be held in contact by its own spring system. The seals shall not require routine maintenance, or adjustment, and shall not be dependent on the direction of rotation for proper sealing. Each pump shall be provided with a lubricant chamber for the shaft sealing system which shall provide superior heat transfer and maximum seal cooling. The lubricant chamber shall be designed to prevent overfilling, and to provide lubricant expansion capacity. The drain and inspection plug shall have a positive anti-leak seal, and shall be easily accessible from the outside of the pump. The seal system shall not rely upon the pumped media for lubrication and shall not be damaged when the pump is run dry. Lubricant in the chamber shall be environmentally safe non toxic material.
    1. The following seal types shall not be considered equal: Seals of proprietary design, or seals manufactured by other than major independent seal manufacturing companies. Seals requiring set screws, pins, or other mechanical locking devices to hold the seal in place, conventional double mechanical seals containing either a common single or double spring acting between the upper and lower seal faces, any system requiring a pressure differential to seat the seal and ensure sealing.
  - D. Mechanical Seal Protection System: The primary mechanical seal shall be protected from interference by particles in the waste water, including fibrous materials, by an active Seal Protection System integrated into the impeller and volute, and by the grinder mechanism ahead of the impeller. The back side of the impeller shall be equipped with pump out vanes to eject any fibrous material that attempts to lodge behind the impeller. The volute housing adjacent to the back side pumping vanes of the impeller shall incorporate an outward spiraling groove as described in the "Self Cleaning Wear Plate" section above, to eject solid materials from the mechanical seal area. Fibrous material which attempts to lodge behind the impeller, or wrap around the mechanical seal shall be effectively ejected by the system preventing interference with the mechanical seal. The Seal Protection System shall operate whenever the pump operates, and shall not require adjustment or maintenance in order to function. Grinder pump designs which do not incorporate an active system to protect the primary mechanical seal shall not be considered acceptable for wastewater service.
  - E. Seal Failure Early Warning System: The integrity of the mechanical seal system shall be continuously monitored during pump operation and standby time. An electrical probe shall be provided in a sensing chamber positioned between the primary and secondary mechanical seals for detecting the presence of water contamination within the chamber. The sensing chamber shall be filled with environmentally safe non-toxic oil. A solid-state relay mounted in the pump control panel or in a separate enclosure shall send a low voltage, low amperage signal to the probe, continuously monitoring the conductivity of the liquid in the sensing chamber. If sufficient water enters the sensing chamber through the primary mechanical seal,

the probe shall sense the increase in conductivity and signal the solid state relay in the control panel. The relay shall then energize a warning light on the control panel, or optionally, cause the pump shut down. This system shall provide an early warning of mechanical seal leakage, thereby preventing damage to the submersible pump, and allowing scheduled rather than emergency maintenance. Systems utilizing float switches or any other monitoring devices located in the stator housing rather than in a sensing chamber between the mechanical seals are not considered to be early warning systems, and shall not be considered equal.

- F. Shaft: The pump shaft and motor shaft shall be an integral, one piece unit adequately designed to meet the maximum torque required at any normal start-up condition or operating point in the system. The shaft shall have a full shutoff head design safety factor of 1.7, and the maximum shaft deflection shall not exceed .05 mm (.002 inch) at the lower seal during normal pump operation. Each shaft shall be stainless steel 1.4021 (AISI 420) material, and shall have a polished finish with accurately machined shoulders to accommodate bearings, seals and impeller. Carbon steel, chrome plated, or multi piece welded shafts shall not be considered adequate or equal.
- G. Bearings: Each pump shaft shall rotate on high quality permanently lubricated, greased bearings. The upper bearing shall be a deep grooved ball bearing and the lower bearings shall be a heavy duty double row angular contact ball bearing. Bearings shall be of sufficient size and properly spaced to transfer all radial and axial loads to the pump housing and minimize shaft deflection. L-10 bearing life shall be a minimum of 50,000 hours at flows ranging from ½ of BEP flow to 1.2 times BEP flow (BEP is best efficiency point). The bearings shall be manufactured by a major internationally known manufacturer of high quality bearings, and shall be stamped with the manufacturer's name and size designation on the race. Generic or unbranded bearings from other than major bearing manufacturers shall not be considered acceptable.
- H. Power Cable: The power cables shall be sized according to NEC and CSA standards and shall be of sufficient length to reach the junction box without requiring splices. The outer jacket of the cable shall be oil and water resistant, and shall be capable of continuous submerged operation underwater to a depth of 65 feet.
- I. Cable Entry System: The cable entry system shall consist of submersible plug assembly which allows the cable be easily disconnected from the pump for service or replacement. Cable sealing shall be accomplished by a Nitrile compression grommet with both cylindrical and conical sealing surfaces, flanked by a stainless steel washer and an integrated strain relief. A brass (C3604) compression nut shall be threaded into the cast iron EN-GJL-250 (ASTM A-48, Class 35B) cable plug housing, compressing the grommet ID to the cable while the grommet OD seals against the bore of the cable entry housing. Cable conductors shall be terminated in copper pin connectors which are separated and retained by a circular pin retainer fabricated from high dielectric strength Polyamid (30% GF). Each pin shall pass through its own hole in the pin retainer, maintaining perfect alignment with the mating pins in the motor body. The corresponding motor body pin assembly shall be manufactured from high dielectric strength Polyamid (30% GF), with copper connector pins. The pin assembly shall be sealed with an o-ring to prevent water entry into the motor, and retained in the motor housing bore via a retaining ring. Attachment of the plug assembly to the motor shall engage the corresponding copper pins, creating a complete circuit between the motor and cable. The plug assembly shall be fastened with stainless steel fasteners, and shall be sealed by an o-ring.
  - 1. The cable plug and sealed entry system as part of the motor shall be FM and CSA approved for use in NEC Class I, Division I, Groups C & D hazardous locations. The system shall be anti wicking by design, and shall prevent any water that enters the cable through damage to the jacket from entering the motor. Cable entry designs which utilize potting compounds to provide a water tight seal, or those which do not allow the cable to be easily changed in the field shall not be considered equal.

## 2.4 GUIDE RAIL BASE ASSEMBLY

- A. General: There shall be no need for personnel to enter the wet well to remove or reinstall the pumps. In a wet pit installation, the discharge base & elbow assembly shall be permanently installed in the wet well

and connected to the discharge piping. In order to prevent binding or separation of the pump from the guide rail system, the pumps shall connect to the guide rail base automatically and firmly, guided by one 2 inch guide pipe extending from the base elbow to the top of the station. Systems using guide cable in lieu of rigid guide bars or pipes shall not be considered acceptable. The sliding guide bracket shall be a separate part of the pumping unit.

1. A field replaceable Nitrile (Buna-N) rubber profile gasket or o-ring shall accomplish positive sealing of the pump flange/guide rail bracket to the discharge elbow. Base assemblies which rely solely on metal to metal contact between the pump flange and discharge base elbow as a means of sealing are inherently leak prone, and shall not be considered equal. No portion of the pump shall bear directly on the floor of the sump. The guide rail system shall be available in an optional non-sparking version, approved by Factory Mutual for use in NEC Class 1, Division 1, Group C&D hazardous locations.

## 2.5 CONTROLS

- A. The pumps shall be controlled with an IP Series NEMA 4X outdoor duplex control panel with *float switch relays*, adjustable set-points, data logging, and a high-water alarm.
- B. Marking: All control panels shall be labeled as follows:
  1. Mfgs name, address, and contact phone numbers.
  2. Panel ratings in horsepower, voltage and amperage.
  3. Field wiring guide for installers.
  4. Individual component identification.
  5. Internal wiring numbers.
- C. The panel shall include:
  1. LED display showing system information including level in inches, mode, pump's elapsed time, events (cycles), alarm counter.
  2. Pump circuit breakers.
  3. Control circuit breakers.
  4. Alarm circuit fuse.
  5. Control circuit fuse.
  6. I.E.C. rated motor starters with 3-pole ambient compensated bimetal overload relays.
  7. Pump hand-off-auto switches.
  8. Alarm test switches.
  9. Pump run lights.
  10. Alternator relay (solid state).
  11. Override relay.
  12. Control transformer with primary fusing.
  13. Intrinsically safe relays for float switch connections.
  14. Terminal blocks,
  15. Two (2) ground lugs.
  16. All necessary wiring and brackets.
  17. Separate Manual Disconnect for each pump.
  18. *Float switch* control system for duplex pumps and alarm system.
  19. Elapsed time meter for each pump.
  20. High level alarm light and horn and contact closure for auto dialer.
  21. Test and silence switches for alarm.
  22. Seal failure light for each pump and contact closure for auto dialer.
  23. Control disconnect.
  24. Surge protection.
- D. The control panel shall be fitted with a red alarm light mounted on top of the enclosure and audio alarm horn (83-85-db).

1. The alarm shall have a bright glow and flash during high water conditions. The alarm light and horn shall go out and stop sounding when the water level drops.
- E. All internal wiring shall be neat and color coded. Each wire shall be a different color or stripe (except for ground), and all incoming wires shall terminate into a box clamp type terminal block. All wires shall be 14 GA. Type TEW rated for 105 degrees Celsius.
- F. A schematic diagram (showing wire color) shall be permanently fastened to the inside of the enclosure. An installation and service manual shall also be included with each control panel.
- G. The control panel shall be U.L. listed and labeled to UL 698A as an assembly.
- H. A cycle counter shall be provided for each pump to show the number of cycles (starts) of the pump. The counter shall be energized by an auxiliary contact from the motor starter or contactor and be wired in parallel with the pump run light. The counter shall have a maximum reading of 999,999 cycles (starts). The counter shall be non-resettable.
- I. The control panel shall contain a full inner door. The inner door shall be hinged and contain all lights, switches and overload resets. All circuit breakers shall also be mounted through the inner door.
- J. A delay timer shall be supplied in the control panel. The timer shall delay the starting of the pump when called for. The delay timer shall be adjustable from 0-60 seconds.
- K. The control panel shall contain a phase monitor/relay. The monitor/relay shall protect pump motor(s) against phase loss, under voltage, and phase reversal conditions. When incorrect phase sequence or phase loss occurs or if the three phase voltages fall below the drop out voltages (field adjustable), the monitor/relay shall drop out the pump(s) and signal the panel alarm. The pump(s) and alarm shall return to normal after the condition(s) are corrected.
- L. An E.T.M. shall be provided for each pump to record the actual running time of the motor. The E.T.M. shall be energized by an auxiliary contact from the motor starter or contactor and be wired in parallel with the pump run light. The E.T.M. shall have a maximum reading of 99,999.99 hours. The E.T.M. shall be non-resettable.
- M. A set of dry contacts shall be provided for the remote monitoring of a panel function. Functions shall include high water, low water, seal failure, overtemperature, overload, and pump running conditions. The dry contacts shall close upon the detection of said condition. Contacts shall be rated for 3 amps.
- N. A 115 volt, 15 amp duplex ground fault interrupting receptacle shall be mounted in or adjacent to the control panel. The receptacle shall be protected by a 15 amp circuit breaker. The receptacle shall have a NEMA 5-15R configuration and be powered from the control circuit transformer.
- O. A lightning arrestor (1 PH) shall be supplied in the control panel. The arrestor shall protect the equipment from overvoltages caused by lightning discharges. The arrestor shall be rated at 650 volts RMS L-G.
- P. Pump on, off and alarm levels shall be controlled by mercury tube float switches integral to the package pump system. Switches shall consist of a mercury tube switch sealed in a corrosion-resistant polypropylene housing with a minimum of 18 gauge, 2-wire, SJOW/A jacketed cable. The cable shall be of sufficient length to reach the junction box with no splices. The level controls shall be suspended from a stainless steel bracket so that adjustment or replacement may be done without use of any tools. Level controls shall be UL/CSA listed.

## 2.6 AUTOMATIC ALARM MONITOR DIALER

- A. Alarm Monitor: Provide automatic alarm dialer and necessary switches, contacts, relays, etc. and associated wiring required to monitor and report the alarm conditions as noted herein. Monitor shall be capable of reporting at least 6 different alarm conditions and shall be equipped with a battery back-up.

Monitor shall be provided with a compatible cellular alarm communicator. Monitor/Dialer shall be Interlogix Networx NX-6 or most recent equivalent version by same manufacturer. Cellular communicator shall be Interlogix NetworX-Series panel compatible with the dialer. Dialer and cellular communicator shall be provided in a watertight enclosure.

1. High water alarm (Fault #1).
2. Loss of primary power (Fault #2).

## 2.7 CONTROL SEQUENCE

- A. General: Float switches shall be set at the elevations as indicated on the drawings.
- B. Normal Operation: On rising liquid level in the wet well, a float switch (lead pump on) shall initiate operation of the lead pump. The pump shall continue to operate until the liquid level falls to the elevation where a float switch (pump off) shall stop the pump.
- C. Lag Pump and Alarm: Should the liquid level in the wet well continue to rise with the lead pump operating, a third float switch (lag pump on) shall initiate operation of the lag pump and shall activate the alarm light and horn and automatic dialer system.

## 2.8 WET WELL

- A. Pump station shall be provided as a package unit within a 48" diameter fiberglass basin. The wetwell shall include the following:
  1. Concrete ballast ring poured around integral anti-floatation collar.
  2. Factory pre-assembled schedule 80 PVC discharge piping with gate valves and check valves.
  3. 4-in inlet hub with rubber pipe seal.
  4. Factory pre-assembled galvanized guide rail system.
  5. Stainless steel pump lift-out chain.
  6. Aluminum cover with 1/4" aluminum diamond plate access hatch and galvanized steel vent pipe.
  7. All stainless steel pre-mounted supports brackets.
  8. Pre-mounted, NEMA 4X junction box for electrical connections.

## 2.9 FORCE MAIN PIPING

- A. 2"-3" Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Pipe: ASTM D-1784, SDR-21, ASTM D-2241, pressure rating 200-psi.
  1. Joints: ASTM F477 elastomeric gasket.
  2. PVC Fittings: ASTM D 2466, Sch-40.

## 2.10 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Metallic-Lined Plastic Underground Warning Tapes: Polyethylene plastic tape with metallic core, 6 inches wide by 4 mils thick, solid blue in color with continuously printed caption in black letters "SEWER FORCE MAIN."
- B. Copper Tracer Wire: #12 gauge solid (bare) copper and continuous to the greatest extent possible. The tracer wire shall be securely bonded together at all wire joints with an approved industrial crimp connector to provide electrical continuity.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 GENERAL

- A. Installation shall be performed in accordance with the manufacturer's written instructions and other applicable Division 33 specification sections.

### 3.2 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavation, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."

### 3.3 EXAMINATION

- A. Contractor shall off-load equipment at installation site using equipment of sufficient size and design to prevent injury or damage. Immediately after off-loading, contractor shall inspect complete pump and appurtenances for shipping damage or missing parts. Any damage or discrepancy shall be noted in written claim with shipper prior to accepting delivery. Validate all pump serial numbers and parts lists with shipping documentation. Notify the manufacturer's representative of any unacceptable conditions noted with shipper.

### 3.4 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Install, level, align, and lubricate pump(s) as indicated on project drawings. Installation must be in accordance with written instructions supplied by the manufacturer at time of delivery.
- B. Suction pipe connections are vacuum tight. Fasteners at all pipe connections must be tight. Install pipe with supports and thrust blocks to prevent strain and vibration on pump piping. Install and secure all service lines (level control, air release valve or pump drain lines) as required in wet well.
- C. Check motor and control data plates for compatibility to site voltage. Install and test grounding prior to connecting line voltage to control panel.
- D. Prior to applying electrical power to any motors or control equipment, check all wiring for tight connection. Verify that protective devices (fuses and circuit breakers) conform to project design documents. Manually operate circuit breakers and switches to ensure operation without binding. Open all circuit breakers and disconnects before connecting utility power. Verify line voltage, phase sequence and ground before actual start-up.
- E. After all anchor bolts, piping and control connections are installed, completely fill the grout dam in the pump base with non-shrink grout.

### 3.5 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawings indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated except where deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install components having pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- C. Install piping free of sags and bends.

### 3.6 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Bury piping at minimum depth of 4 feet below finished subgrade.
- B. Tunneling: Install pipe under streets or other obstructions that cannot be disturbed by tunneling, jacking, or a combination of both.
- C. Shoring or bracing of pits, trenches and other excavations shall be in accordance with the requirements of NCDOT and OSHA.

- D. The subgrade at the bottom of the trench shall be shaped to secure uniform support throughout the length of the pipe. A space shall be excavated under the bell of each pipe to provide space to relieve bearing pressure on the bell and provide room to adequately make the joint.
- E. Open ends of pipe shall be plugged with a standard plug or cap at all times when pipe laying is not in progress. Trench water shall not be permitted to enter pipe.
- F. Backfill material shall be free from stones greater than 2-inches in diameter, construction material debris, frozen material, organic matter, or unstable material. Backfill materials shall be placed in loose lifts of 8-inches or less in depth. All backfill shall be compacted to not less than 95% of the standard Proctor maximum dry density except the final foot beneath pavement or slab areas where this requirement shall be increased to 98% of the standard Proctor maximum dry density.
- G. Install continuous plastic underground warning tape and copper tracer wire during back-filling of trench for underground force main piping.

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Pump Operational Test: A representative from the pump manufacturer shall be present at the operational test to review proper operation of the equipment. The Contractor shall provide all materials, labor and equipment needed to verify the entire pump station is operating as designed and intended.
- B. Wet Well Test: Wet well shall be tested for leakage once set in place. Perform either vacuum, air pressure, or hydrostatic tests. Contractor shall furnish all required equipment, water, and labor required for testing. All testing shall be performed in the presence of the Architect.
  - 1. Vacuum Test: A vacuum of 10-in of mercury (Hg) shall be drawn and the vacuum pump shut off. With the valves closed, the time shall be measured for the vacuum to drop to 9-in Hg. If pressure drops in less than 120-sec the wet well will have failed the test and necessary repairs shall be made. Re-testing shall proceed until a satisfactory test is obtained.
  - 2. Air Pressure Test: The wet well shall be pressurized to 5-psi and allowed to stabilize. After stabilization, the pressure shall be decreased to 4-psi and the time for the pressure to drop to 3-psi shall be measured. If the pressure drops in less than 120-sec the wet well will have failed the test. Necessary repairs shall be made and re-testing shall proceed until a satisfactory test is obtained. Smoke may be utilized to assist in locating leaks.
  - 3. Hydrostatic Test: The wet well shall be filled to within 12-in of the top and allowed to soak for 24-hrs. The wet well shall be re-filled and the water level recorded. The water shall remain in the wet well for 24-hrs. and the water level recorded. If the water level falls ½-in or more in 24-hrs. the wet well will have failed the test. Necessary repairs shall be made and re-testing shall proceed until a satisfactory test is obtained.
- C. Pump Station Testing:
  - 1. Following installation, each pump in the pump station shall be subjected to a drawdown test or other similar testing procedure to confirm that the pump is operating at or near the required design operating points.
  - 2. On-Site Testing shall consist of all manual and automatic operating functions under various operating conditions, including full load conditions. The equipment shall also be tested under adverse or emergency conditions. All alarms and remote signals shall also be tested. All defective equipment or malfunctioning systems shall be replaced or corrected, and the full system placed in a fully operational condition.
  - 3. Field test of the pump station's electrical and instrumentation/control systems shall be performed. The basic functions which shall be tested for operation as intended by the pump station design shall include, but shall not be limited to, the following:
    - a. Pump operational functions
    - b. Level-sensing equipment.
    - c. Alarm system.



- d. Auto-dialer system.
  - e. Emergency power system.
- 4. Perform vacuum test of wetwell according to ASTM C 1244.
  - 5. Results of all tests shall be documented and submitted to the Engineer.

D. Force Main Piping Hydrostatic Testing:

- 1. A section of line that is to be hydrostatically tested, shall be slowly filled with water at a rate which will allow complete evacuation of air from the line.
- 2. Fill the line slowly to avoid undue impacts associated with surge and to allow air to evacuate the pipeline. After all air has been expelled from the force main, the line shall be tested to a pressure of 150 psi as measured at the lowest elevation of the line for a duration of 2 hours. The testing period shall not commence until all air has been evacuated and the pressure has stabilized. The pressure gauge used in the hydrostatic test shall be calibrated in increments of 10-psi or less. The pressure gauge shall be liquid-filled and indexed for an operating range of 300-psi or less with a minimum dial size of 3-1/2 inches. At the end of the test period, the leakage shall be measured with an accurate water meter.
- 3. Any measured leakage not within the allowable limits shall require repair of the force main and additional testing until the standards are met. For pipe sizes other than those shown, the Contractor shall test within the allowable leakage amounts as specified by AWWA C600-99. All visible leaks shall be repaired regardless of the amount of leakage.

Test Pressure = 150-psi min.	
Pipe Size (in)	Allowable Leakage (per 1000 ft of pipe)
2	0.17 gal/hour

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank.

## SECTION 33 40 00 - SITE STORM DRAINAGE UTILITIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including the General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes site drainage systems outside the building. Systems include the following:
  - 1. Storm drainage.
  - 2. Foundation drainage connections outside of building.
  - 3. Roof drainage connections outside of building.
- B. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section.
  - 1. Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."
  - 2. Division 31 Section "Sediment and Erosion Controls."
  - 3. Division 3 Section "Cast-In-Place Concrete."
  - 4. Division 22 Sections for storm drainage inside the building.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Drainage Piping: System of pipe, fittings, and appurtenances for gravity flow of storm drainage.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit each item in this Article according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.
- B. As-Built Survey / Record drawings of installed drainage system piping and basins and all stormwater management devices (ponds, wetlands, bio-retention areas). Survey shall be submitted as soon as possible and at least 30-days prior to the project's substantial completion and prior to plant installation in wetlands and other similar devices.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Environmental Agency Compliance: Comply with regulations pertaining to storm drainage systems.
- B. Utility Compliance: Comply with regulations pertaining to storm drainage systems.
- C. Product Options: Drawings indicate sizes, profiles, connections, and dimensional requirements of system components and are based on specific manufacturer types indicated. Other manufacturers' products with equal performance characteristics may be considered. Refer to Division 1 Section "Products."
- D. All work within any NCDOT right-of-way shall conform to the requirements of the current version of the NCDOT's Policies and Procedures for Accommodating Utilities on Highway Rights of Way, the provisions and conditions of the encroachment agreement(s), and other applicable NCDOT standards and policies. The encroachment agreement(s) are considered part of the project specifications by reference. Copies of the agreement(s) will be provided upon request from the Architect.
- E. Perform As-Built Survey of installed drainage system piping and basins and all stormwater management devices (ponds, wetlands, bio-retention areas). As-built survey shall be signed and seal by a NC Professional Land Surveyor and shall include the following:

1. All inlet, junction box and manhole locations with no less than two primary reference dimensions from permanent above grade features.
2. As-built rims and inverts noted.
3. Pipe materials and sizes, plus slopes and distances between structures.
4. As-built dimensions for installed riprap dissipater pads.
5. Topography of embankments and interiors of drained stormwater management ponds, wetlands and bio-retention cells. Topography shall include all survey point elevations.
6. Detailed as-built dimensions and elevations of stormwater management device outlet structures, weirs, orifices, and outlet pipes.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store plastic structures in direct sunlight.
- B. Do not store plastic pipe or fittings in direct sunlight.
- C. Protect pipe, pipe fittings, and seals from dirt and damage.

#### 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Site Information: Perform site survey, research public utility records, and verify existing utility locations.
- B. Locate existing structures and piping to be closed and abandoned.
- C. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt existing utilities serving facilities occupied by the Owner or others except when permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide acceptable temporary utility services.
  1. Notify Architect not less than 48 hours in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
  2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without receiving Architect's written permission.

#### 1.8 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Coordinate storm drainage system connections to utility company's storm sewer.
- B. Coordinate storm drainage system connections to existing on-site storm sewer.
- C. Coordinate with interior building drainage systems.
- D. Coordinate with other utility work.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PIPES AND FITTINGS

- A. General: Refer to plans for specific pipe material applications.
- B. Ductile-Iron Pipe: ANSI/AWWA C150/A21.50 and C151/A21.51, minimum pressure class 250.
  1. Lining: AWWA C104, cement mortar, coal tar epoxy lined.
  2. Gaskets, Glands, and Bolts and Nuts: AWWA C111.
  3. Push-On-Joint-Type Pipe: AWWA C111, rubber gaskets.
  4. Coating: AWWA C151, bituminous coating.
- C. Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Sewer Pipe and Fittings: ASTM D-1785, SCH 40 PVC for solvent-cemented or gasketed joints.
  1. Primer: ASTM F 656.

2. Solvent Cement: ASTM D 2564.
  3. Gaskets: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal.
- D. Reinforced-Concrete Sewer Pipe and Flared End Sections: ASTM C 76, Class III. Provide Class IV where noted on the drawings.
1. Standard Joints: Plastic cement putty seal meeting ASTM C990 and Federal Specification SS-S-00210.
  2. Watertight Joints: O-ring rubber gasket meeting ASTM C-443 with external sealer wrap that is at least 12 inches wide and covers the full circumference of the joint.
    - a. External wrap shall be ConWrap CS-212 from Concrete Sealants, Inc., EZ-Wrap form Press-Seal Gasket Corp., Seal Wrap from Mar-Mac Manufacturing or approved equal. Cover external joint sealer with a 3 foot strip of filter fabric meeting NCDOT Type 4 Engineering Fabrics.
    - b. Watertight joints shall be provided at outlet pipes that penetrate pond embankments and other locations specified on the drawings.
- E. High Density Polyethylene (HDPE) Pipe and Fittings: ASTM F2648. Dual-wall with smooth interior and corrugated exterior. All sizes shall conform to the AASHTO classification Type S or D. N-12 by ADS or approved equal.
1. Watertight Joints: Watertight per ASTM D3212, bell and spigot, rubber gasket, ASTM F477.
  2. Fittings: ASTM F2306, welded on the interior and exterior at all junctions. Only fittings supplied or recommended by the pipe manufacturer shall be used.
- F. Polypropylene Pipe (PP) and Fittings: ASTM F2881 or AASHTO M330. Dual-wall with smooth interior and corrugated exterior. Pipe within public right of way shall comply with NCDOT Specification Section 1032-9. Pipe shall be HP Storm pipe by ADS or approved equal.
1. Watertight Joints: Watertight per ASTM D3212, AASHTO M330, bell and spigot, rubber gasket, ASTM F477.
  2. Fittings: Conform to ASTM F2881 or AASHTO M330. Connections shall be watertight bell and spigot utilizing a welded or integral bell and valley or inline gaskets. Only fittings supplied or recommended by the pipe manufacturer shall be used.

## 2.2 STORM SUB-DRAIN AND FOUNDATION DRAIN PIPING

- A. Storm Sub-Drain Pipe and Fittings: SCH 40 PVC or dual-wall, smooth interior HDPE as specified above, with ½-in drilled perforations. Minimum 4-inch diameter unless otherwise indicated on the drawings. Non perforated pipe shall be used outside of area to be drained to connect sub-drains to drainage inlets.
- B. Filter Fabric: Woven geotextile Drainage (Filter) Fabric as specified in Division 31 Section “Earth Moving.”

## 2.3 SPECIAL PIPE COUPLINGS AND FITTINGS

- A. Connection from roof downspout to underground storm pipe.
1. Vertical stainless-steel downspout adapter with sch. 40 PVC pipe outlet sized to fit over downspout and underground piping. Adapter shall have a self-cleaning debris trap consisting of a hinged cover and removable debris screen. Powder-coat color to be selected by Architect from manufacturer’s full range of colors. As manufactured by Piedmont Pipe Construction.

## 2.4 DROP INLETS AND CATCH BASINS

- A. General: Brick and mortar or precast concrete, of depth, shape, and dimensions indicated. Knock-out “waffle” boxes shall not be used. All structures shall be designed to withstand AASHTO HS-20 loads and meet NCDOT standards.

- B. Brick Inlets: Brick and mortar or precast concrete, of depth, shape, and dimensions indicated.
  - 1. Base, Channel, and Bench: Concrete.
  - 2. Wall: ASTM C 32, Grade MS, clay brick masonry units.
    - a. Option: ASTM C 55, Grade S-II, solid concrete brick masonry units may be used instead of clay brick.
  - 3. Mortar: ASTM C 270, Type S, using ASTM C 150, Type I, portland cement.
- C. Precast Concrete Inlets: ASTM C913, precast, reinforced concrete, of depth, shape, and dimensions indicated designed for HS-20 loading. Precast boxes shall include grade rings to allow adjustment to rim elevations. Knock-out waffle boxes shall not be used.
  - 1. Base Section: 6-inch minimum thickness for floor slab and 4-inch minimum thickness for walls and base riser section, and separate base slab or base section with integral floor.
  - 2. Riser Sections: 4-inch minimum thickness and lengths to provide depth indicated.
  - 3. Top Section: Flat-slab-top type is indicated.
  - 4. Joint Sealant: ASTM C990, bitumen or butyl rubber.
  - 5. Adjusting Rings: Interlocking rings with level or sloped edge in thickness and shape matching catch basin frame and grate. Include sealant recommended by ring manufacturer.
  - 6. Grade Rings: Include two or three reinforced-concrete rings, of 6- to 9-inch total thickness to allow field adjustment of rim elevation.
- D. Steps: Individual FRP steps or deformed, 1/2-inch steel reinforcing rods encased in polypropylene plastic, wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on one step and designed to prevent lateral slippage off step. Cast or anchor steps into sidewalls at 12- to 16-inch intervals. Omit steps if total depth from floor of catch basin to finished grade is less than 42 inches.
- E. Pipe Connectors: ASTM C923, resilient, of size required, for each pipe connecting to base section.
- F. Frames and Grates: ASTM A48, Class 35B, cast iron, H-20 loading. Include flat grate with small square or short-slotted drainage openings as indicated on the drawings.
  - 1. Provide drop inlet grates with openings compliant with ADA standards when located within sidewalk or other pedestrian walking areas and/or where specifically indicated on drawings.
- G. Catch Basin Hood Casting: ASTM A48, Class 35B, cast iron, H-20 loading.

## 2.5 AREA, IN-LINE, BASIN AND FLOOR DRAINS

- A. Floor Drains: 12-inch diameter or 12-inch square top drain, Dura-Coated cast iron body with 6-inch bottom outlet, seepage pan, adjustable extension frame and medium duty slotted grate. Top shall be polished nickel bronze and secured with slotted screws.
- B. Area Drains or Planter Drains: 15-inch square top drain designed to be attached with a watertight connection to vertical HDPE or PVC pipe, ductile iron slotted surface grate, watertight pipe adapters. Grates shall be pedestrian-type where set in pavement or sidewalk. Grates shall be dome-type where set in mulched areas.
- C. In-Line Drains: 12-inch ductile iron drain designed to be attached with a watertight connection to vertical HDPE or PVC pipe, slotted surface grate of shape indicated on the drawings, watertight pipe adapters. Grates shall be pedestrian-type where set in pavement or sidewalk. Grates shall be dome-type where set in mulched areas.

- D. Drain Basin: 15-inch or 18-inch diameter PVC body drain basin with ductile iron grates and integral pipe connection stubs formed to provide a watertight connection to HDPE pipe. Basins shall be as manufactured by Nyloplast or approved equal.

## 2.6 TRENCH DRAINS

- A. Description, General: Modular system of precast, polymer-concrete channel sections, grates, and appurtenances; designed so grates fit into channel recesses without rocking or rattling. Include number of units required to form total lengths indicated.
- B. Medium-Duty Pedestrian Area Drain: Trench drain system in sidewalks and non-vehicular use areas shall be medium-duty sloped-invert, polymer-concrete system and shall include the following components:
  - 1. Channel Sections: Interlocking-joint, precast, modular units with end caps. Include 4-inch minimum inside width and deep, rounded bottom, with built-in invert slope of 0.5 percent minimum and with outlets in number, sizes, and locations indicated. Include extension sections necessary for required depth. ACO KlassikDrain K100 or approved equal.
  - 2. ADA Ductile Iron Grates, 1,100-psi min. loading, ADA compliant, with slots that fit recesses in channels. ACO Type 476D or approved equal.
  - 3. Locking Mechanism: Manufacturer's standard device for securing grates to channel sections.
- C. Heavy-Duty Loading Dock Drain: Trench drain system in loading dock and other vehicular use areas shall be large capacity and heavy-duty sloped-invert, polymer-concrete system.
  - 1. Channel Sections: Interlocking-joint, precast, modular units with end caps. Include 12-inch minimum inside width and deep, rounded bottom, with built-in invert slope of 0.5 percent minimum and with outlets in number, sizes, and locations indicated. Include extension sections necessary for required depth. ACO PwerDrain S300K or approved equal.
  - 2. Ductile Iron Grates with manufacturer's designation "heavy-duty," 3,400-psi min. loading, with slots that fit recesses in channels. ACO S300K Slotted Iron or approved equal.
  - 3. Locking Mechanism: Manufacturer's standard device for securing grates to channel sections.

## 2.7 MANHOLES

- A. Precast Concrete Storm Drainage Manholes: ASTM C-478 precast reinforced concrete, eccentric cone. All structures shall be designed to withstand AASHTO H-20 loads.
  - 1. Base, Channel, and Bench: Concrete.
  - 2. Joint: Preformed flexible plastic gaskets complying with Fed. Spec. SS-S-210A.
  - 3. Size: As required to accommodate proposed pipes indicated on the drawings, 4-ft diameter minimum.
- B. Frames and Covers: ASTM A48, Class 35B, heavy-duty cast iron. Include flat, round grate with 1-1/2" wide slotted drainage openings with a minimum total open area of 150-sq.in.

## 2.8 CLEANOUTS

- A. Description: ASME A112.36.2M, round, cast-iron housing with clamping device and round, secured, scoriated, cast-iron cover. Include cast-iron ferrule with inside calk or spigot connection and countersunk, tapered-thread, brass closure plug. Cleanout shall be rated for "heavy duty" top-loading classifications.
  - 1. Cleanout Box: Cleanouts located in paved areas subject to vehicular traffic shall be protected by an 8-in diameter, ductile-iron cleanout box. 'STORM' marking shall be cast into the lid.

## 2.8 STORMWATER CONTROL MEASURE OUTLET STRUCTURE

- A. Concrete Outlet Structure: Pre-Cast, solid wall, 4,000-psi, reinforced concrete designed to meet H-20 loading of depth, shape, and dimensions indicated. Waffle boxes are not acceptable.
  - 1. Base and ballast in-fill: Concrete.
  - 2. Wall: Solid, reinforced concrete. Provide exterior brick veneer if indicated on drawings.
    - a. Brick: ASTM C 32, Grade MS, clay brick units.
    - b. Mortar: ASTM C 270, Type S, using ASTM C 150, Type I, portland cement.
  - 3. Joints: Pre-Cast structures shall have no section joints below permanent pool elevation.
  - 4. Grout: ASTM C1107, non-shrink, hydraulic cement grout.
  - 5. Interior and Exterior Coatings: Cement-based waterproof coating base coat with tintable, non-toxic epoxy finish coat formulated for immersion in water meeting NSF/ANSI 61 for potable water.
    - a. Cement Coating: BASF MasterSeal 581 or approved equal.
    - b. Epoxy Coating: Pond Armor Pond Shield Epoxy Waterproof Pond Sealant or approved equal.
    - c. Colors to be selected by designer from manufacturer's standard colors.
- B. Pipe Connectors: ASTM C 923, resilient, water-tight flexible connector, of size required, for each pipe connecting to outlet structure.
  - 1. Following installation of pipe connector, grout voids between pipe, connector and outlets structure with non-shrink hydraulic cement grout on inside and outside of outlet structure. Finish grout flush with structure wall.
- C. Frames and Grates: ASTM A48, Class 35B, cast iron, H-20 loading. Include flat grate with slotted drainage openings as indicated on the drawings.
- D. Trash Rack: Aluminum with separate frame a grate with access hatch as detailed on the drawings. Trash racks shall be as manufactured by Trashracks.com or approved equal.
- E. Trash Baffle: Fabricated from 7-gauge Type 316 aluminum sheet and fastened with all stainless steel fasteners.

## 2.9 CONCRETE

- A. General: Cast-in-place concrete according to ACI 318, ACI 350R, and the following:
  - 1. Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I, 3,000-psi.
  - 2. Fine Aggregate: ASTM C 33, sand.
  - 3. Coarse Aggregate: ASTM C 33, crushed gravel.
  - 4. Water: Potable.
- B. Structures: Portland-cement design mix, 4000 psi minimum, with 0.45 maximum water-cement ratio.
  - 1. Reinforcement Fabric: ASTM A 185, steel, welded wire fabric, plain.
  - 2. Reinforcement Bars: ASTM A 615, Grade 60, deformed steel.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavating, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."

### 3.2 SPECIAL PIPE COUPLING AND FITTING APPLICATIONS

- A. Special Pipe Couplings: Use where indicated and where required to join piping and no other appropriate method is specified. Do not use instead of specified joining methods.



### 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawings (plans and details) indicate the general location and arrangement of underground drainage systems piping. Location and arrangement of piping layout take into account many design considerations. Install piping as indicated, to extent practical. Refer to drawings for material and structure types for specific applications.
  - 1. Orient grates of drainage structures in paved areas to align with general pattern of pavement joints and scoring.
- B. Install piping beginning at low point of systems, true to grades and alignment indicated with unbroken continuity of invert. Place bell ends of piping facing upstream. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings according to manufacturer's recommendations for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab or drag in line and pull past each joint as it is completed.
- C. Use proper size increasers, reducers, and couplings, where different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings are connected. Reduction of the size of piping in the direction of flow is prohibited.
- D. Extend drainage piping and connect to building's storm drains, of sizes and in locations indicated. Terminate piping as indicated.
- E. Install drainage piping pitched down in direction of flow, at minimum slope of 1 percent and 36-inch minimum cover, except where otherwise indicated.
- F. Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Plastic Pipe and Fittings: As follows:
  - 1. Join solvent-cement-joint pipe and fittings with solvent cement according to ASTM D 2855 and ASTM F 402.
  - 2. Join pipe and gasketed fittings with elastomeric seals according to ASTM D 2321.
  - 3. Join profile sewer pipe and ribbed drain pipe and gasketed fittings with elastomeric seals according to ASTM D 2321 and manufacturer's written instruction.
  - 4. Install according to ASTM D 2321.
- G. Install PP and HDPE pipe in accordance with ASTM D2321 with the exception that minimum cover in trafficked areas shall be 12-inches.
  - 1. Slightly scarify and grade the trench base to provide a uniform trench bottom. Before installing pipe, bring bedding material or trench bottom to grade along the entire length of the pipe. For 42" pipe and larger, shallow bell holes shall be provided.
  - 2. Trench width shall be wide enough to accommodate compaction equipment. Refer the manufacturer's recommendations. Pipe backfill to springline shall be compacted to 95% Standard Proctor density regardless of pipe location.
  - 3. Provide bedding, haunching and initial backfill of Class 1 or 2 granular materials per manufacturer's recommendation or as detailed on the drawings.
  - 4. Excessive groundwater necessitates dewatering. Pipe will float in standing water, requiring immediate haunching and initial backfill to hold line and grade.
  - 5. Join pipe per manufacturer's instructions.
- H. Join piping made of different materials or dimensions with couplings made for this application. Use couplings that are compatible with and fit both systems' materials and dimensions.
- I. Install stormwater control measure outlet pipes through embankments with concrete support cradle from the bottom of the pipe trench to the springline of the pipe.

### 3.4 CATCH BASIN AND DROP INLET INSTALLATION

- A. Construct inlets to sizes and shapes indicated.

- B. Set frames and grates to elevations indicated.
- C. Install prefabricated area drains per manufacturer's instructions.

### 3.5 TRENCH DRAIN INSTALLATION

- A. Install trench drains in accordance with the manufacturer's written instructions and as indicated on the drawings. Install surrounding concrete with surfaces with 1/4" per foot slopes to rim of grate.
- B. Extend drain pipe from in-line catch basin to large capacity site storm drainage system and install hardware mesh rodent screen over outlet of drain pipe and 12"x24" concrete splash block at discharge of drain pipe.
- C. Utilize half-meter channel sections at curved alignments (such as D-zones of 400-m track). Miter-cut ends of channel sections per manufacturer's instructions to prevent gaps at section joints.
- D. Protect trench drain with non-woven filter fabric under grate during construction. Ensure trench and entire length of outlet pipe are clear of sediment and debris at completion of construction.

### 3.6 CLEANOUT INSTALLATION

- A. Install cleanouts and riser extension from sewer pipe to cleanout at grade. Install piping so cleanouts open in direction of flow in sewer pipe.
- B. In Paved Areas: Cleanouts shall be installed within a protective cleanout box set flush with surface of paving.
- C. In Non-Paved Areas: Set cleanout tops 1 inch above surrounding earth grade.

### 3.6 CLOSING ABANDONED STORM DRAINAGE SYSTEMS

- A. Abandoned Piping: Close open ends of abandoned underground piping that is indicated to remain in place. Include closures strong enough to withstand hydrostatic and earth pressures that may result after ends of abandoned piping have been closed. Use either of the following procedures:
  - 1. Close open ends of piping with at least 8-inch-thick brick masonry bulkheads.
  - 2. Close open ends of piping with threaded metal caps, plastic plugs, or other acceptable methods suitable for size and type of material being closed. Do not use wood plugs.
- B. Abandoned Structures: Excavate around structure as required and use either of the following procedures:
  - 1. Remove structure and close open ends of remaining piping.
  - 2. Backfill to grade according to Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Clear interior of piping and structures of dirt and superfluous material as the work progresses. Maintain swab or drag in piping and pull past each joint as it is completed.
  - 1. In large, accessible piping, brushes and brooms may be used for cleaning.
  - 2. Place plug in end of incomplete piping at end of day and whenever work stops.
  - 3. Flush piping between manholes and other structures, if required by authorities having jurisdiction, to remove collected debris.
- B. Inspect interior of piping to determine whether line displacement or other damage has occurred. Inspect after approximately 24 inches of backfill is in place, and again at completion of the Project.

1. Submit separate reports for each system inspection.
  2. Defects requiring correction include the following:
    - a. Alignment: Less than full diameter of inside of pipe is visible between structures.
    - b. Deflection: Flexible piping with deflection that prevents passage of a ball or cylinder of a size not less than 92.5 percent of piping diameter.
    - c. Crushed, broken, cracked, or otherwise damaged piping.
    - d. Infiltration: Water leakage into piping.
    - e. Exfiltration: Water leakage from or around piping.
  3. Replace defective piping using new materials and repeat inspections until defects are within allowances specified.
  4. Reinspect and repeat procedure until results are satisfactory.
- C. All PP and HDPE pipe and fittings 12-inch in diameter and greater shall be inspected by the pipe supplier/manufacturer following delivery to the construction site for damage caused during transit. Damaged or defective materials shall be removed from the site. A record of this inspection(s) shall be submitted to the Architect. Contractor shall supply documentation of experience in the installation of PP and HDPE storm drainage pipe or shall provide for installation supervision by the supplier/manufacturer.
- D. Test new piping systems and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired for leaks and defects.
1. Do not enclose, cover, or put into service before inspection and approval.
  2. Test completed piping systems according to authorities having jurisdiction.
  3. Schedule tests, and their inspections by authorities having jurisdiction, with at least 24 hours' advance notice.
  4. Submit separate reports for each test.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank.